



FortiOS - CLI Reference

Version 6.0

FORTINET DOCUMENT LIBRARY

<https://docs.fortinet.com>

FORTINET VIDEO GUIDE

<https://video.fortinet.com>

FORTINET BLOG

<https://blog.fortinet.com>

CUSTOMER SERVICE & SUPPORT

<https://support.fortinet.com>

FORTINET TRAINING & CERTIFICATION PROGRAM

<https://www.fortinet.com/support-and-training/training.html>

NSE INSTITUTE

<https://training.fortinet.com>

FORTIGUARD CENTER

<https://fortiguard.com/>

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

<https://www.fortinet.com/doc/legal/EULA.pdf>

FEEDBACK

Email: techdoc@fortinet.com



February 02, 2021

FortiOS 6.0 CLI Reference

01-600-481104-20210202

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Change log	19
FortiOS CLI reference	20
How this guide is organized	20
Availability of commands and options	20
Disclaimer: CLI syntax parameter format	21
Managing firmware with the FortiGate BIOS	22
Accessing the BIOS	22
Navigating the menu	22
Loading firmware	23
Configuring TFTP parameters	23
Initiating TFTP firmware transfer	24
Booting the backup firmware	24
Using the CLI	25
Connecting to the CLI	25
Local console	25
SSH or Telnet access	26
Command syntax	28
Terminology	28
Indentation	29
Notation	31
Optional values and ranges	32
Sub-commands	32
Example of table commands	34
Permissions	35
Increasing the security of administrator accounts	36
Tips	36
Help	36
Shortcuts and key commands	36
Command abbreviation	37
Adding and removing options from lists	37
Environment variables	37
Special characters	38
Using grep to filter get and show command output	39
Language support and regular expressions	40
Screen paging	41
Baud rate	42
Editing the configuration file on an external host	42
config	43
alertemail	44
alertemail setting	44
antivirus	46
antivirus heuristic	46
antivirus profile	47
antivirus quarantine	61

antivirus settings	66
application	68
application custom	68
application list	70
application name	77
application rule-settings	78
authentication	79
authentication rule	79
authentication scheme	81
authentication setting	84
aws	87
aws setting	87
certificate	88
certificate ca	88
certificate crt	91
certificate local	94
dlp	99
dlp filepattern	99
dlp fp-doc-source	102
dlp fp-sensitivity	106
dlp sensor	106
dlp settings	112
dnsfilter	115
dnsfilter domain-filter	115
dnsfilter profile	117
endpoint-control	122
endpoint-control forticlient-ems	122
endpoint-control forticlient-registration-sync	123
endpoint-control profile	124
endpoint-control settings	140
extender-controller	143
extender-controller extender	143
firewall	148
firewall {acl acl6}	150
firewall {address address6}	154
firewall address6-template	169
firewall {addrgrp addgrp6}	170
firewall auth-portal	177
firewall carrier-endpoint-bwl	178
firewall central-snat-map	179
firewall dnstranslation	180
firewall {DoS-policy DoS-policy6}	181
firewall gtp	184
firewall identity-based-route	194
firewall {interface-policy interface-policy6}	195
firewall internet-service	199
firewall internet-service-custom	200
firewall internet-service-custom-group	201

firewall internet-service-group	202
firewall ipmacbinding setting	203
firewall ipmacbinding table	204
firewall {ippool ippool6}	205
firewall ip-translation	207
firewall ipv6-eh-filter	208
firewall ldb-monitor	208
firewall {local-in-policy local-in-policy6}	210
firewall mms-profile	212
firewall {multicast-address multicast-address6}	219
firewall {multicast-policy multicast-policy6}	221
firewall {policy policy6}	223
firewall {policy46 policy64}	273
firewall profile-group	276
firewall profile-protocol-options	277
firewall proxy-address	282
firewall proxy-addgrp	284
firewall proxy-policy	285
firewall schedule group	290
firewall schedule onetime	293
firewall schedule recurring	297
firewall service category	298
firewall service custom	301
firewall service group	313
firewall shaper per-ip-shaper	314
firewall shaper traffic-shaper	314
firewall shaping-policy	315
firewall shaping-profile	319
firewall sniffer	320
firewall ssh host-key	322
firewall ssh local-ca	323
firewall ssh local-key	324
firewall ssh setting	325
firewall ssl setting	326
firewall ssl-server	327
firewall ssl-ssh-profile	330
firewall ttl-policy	338
firewall {vip vip6}	339
firewall {vip46 vip64}	378
firewall {vipgrp vipgrp6}	382
firewall {vipgrp46 vipgrp64}	383
firewall wildcard-fqdn custom	384
firewall wildcard-fqdn group	385
ftp-proxy	386
ftp-proxy explicit	386
icap	389
icap profile	389
icap server	392
ips	394

ips custom	394
ips decoder	397
ips global	397
ips rule	401
ips rule-settings	404
ips sensor	404
ips settings	410
log	412
log {azure-security-center azure-security-center2} filter	413
log {azure-security-center azure-security-center2} setting	415
log custom-field	416
log disk filter	417
log disk setting	418
log eventfilter	420
log {fortianalyzer fortianalyzer-cloud} override-filter	422
log fortianalyzer override-setting	423
log {fortianalyzer fortianalyzer2 fortianalyzer3 fortianalyzer-cloud} filter	424
log {fortianalyzer fortianalyzer2 fortianalyzer3 fortianalyzer-cloud} setting	425
log fortianalyzer-cloud override-setting	427
log fortiguard filter	427
log fortiguard override-filter	428
log fortiguard override-setting	429
log fortiguard setting	429
log gui-display	430
log memory filter	432
log memory global-setting	433
log memory setting	433
log null-device filter	434
log null-device setting	434
log setting	435
log syslogd override-filter	436
log syslogd override-setting	436
log {syslogd syslogd2 syslogd3 syslogd4} filter	438
log {syslogd syslogd2 syslogd3 syslogd4} setting	439
log threat-weight	441
log webtrends filter	448
log webtrends setting	449
monitoring	449
np6-ipsec-engine	450
report	452
report chart	452
report dataset	456
report layout	457
report setting	461
report style	461
report theme	463
router	465
router {access-list access-list6}	466
router aspath-list	468

router auth-path	469
router bfd	469
router bgp	470
router community-list	500
router isis	502
router key-chain	511
router multicast	513
router multicast6	523
router multicast-flow	525
router {ospf ospf6}	525
router {policy policy6}	554
router {prefix-list prefix-list6}	558
router rip	560
router ripng	572
router route-map	580
router setting	590
router {static static6}	591
spamfilter	596
spamfilter bwl	596
spamfilter bword	600
spamfilter dnsbl	603
spamfilter fortishield	605
spamfilter iptrust	607
spamfilter mheader	608
spamfilter options	611
spamfilter profile	611
ssh-filter	616
ssh-filter profile	616
switch-controller	618
switch-controller 802-1X-settings	619
switch-controller custom-command	619
switch-controller global	620
switch-controller igmp-snooping	621
switch-controller lldp-profile	621
switch-controller lldp-settings	623
switch-controller mac-sync-settings	624
switch-controller managed-switch	624
switch-controller qos dot1p-map	635
switch-controller qos ip-dscp-map	638
switch-controller qos qos-policy	639
switch-controller qos queue-policy	640
switch-controller security-policy 802-1X	640
switch-controller security-policy captive-portal	643
switch-controller sflow	644
switch-controller storm-control	645
switch-controller stp-settings	646
switch-controller switch-group	646
switch-controller switch-interface-tag	647
switch-controller switch-log	648

switch-controller switch-profile	649
switch-controller system	650
switch-controller virtual-port-pool	651
switch-controller vlan	652
system	654
system 3g-modem custom	658
system accprofile	658
system admin	667
system affinity-interrupt	676
system affinity-packet-redistribution	676
system alarm	677
system alias	678
system api-user	679
system arp-table	680
system auto-install	681
system auto-script	681
system automation-action	682
system automation-destination	684
system automation-stitch	685
system automation-trigger	686
system auto-scale	688
system autoupdate push-update	688
system autoupdate schedule	688
system autoupdate tunneling	689
system bypass	689
system central-management	690
system cluster-sync	694
system console	698
system csf	699
system custom-language	702
system ddns	702
system dedicated-mgmt	704
system {dhcp server dhcp6 server}	704
system dnp3-proxy	716
system dns	717
system dns-database	719
system dns-server	720
system dscp-based-priority	721
system email-server	721
system external-resource	722
system fips-cc	723
system fm	724
system fortiguard	724
system fortimanager	730
system fortisandbox	731
system fsso-polling	732
system ftm-push	732
system geoip-override	733
system global	734

system gre-tunnel	770
system ha	771
system ha-monitor	792
system interface	793
system ipip-tunnel	831
system {ips-urlfilter-dns ips-urlfilter-dns6}	832
system ipv6-neighbor-cache	832
system ipv6-tunnel	833
system link-monitor	834
system lte-modem	837
system mac-address-table	838
system management-tunnel	839
system mobile-tunnel	840
system modem	841
system nat64	844
system nd-proxy	845
system netflow	845
system network-visibility	846
system np6	846
system npu	858
system ntp	865
system object-tagging	866
system password-policy	867
system password-policy-guest-admin	869
system physical-switch	869
system pppoe-interface	870
system probe-response	871
system proxy-arp	872
system replacemsg admin	873
system replacemsg alertmail	874
system replacemsg auth	877
system replacemsg device-detection-portal	882
system replacemsg ec	883
system replacemsg fortiguard-wf	885
system replacemsg ftp	886
system replacemsg http	889
system replacemsg mail	893
system replacemsg nac-quar	896
system replacemsg nntp	897
system replacemsg spam	899
system replacemsg sslvpn	902
system replacemsg traffic-quota	903
system replacemsg utm	904
system replacemsg webproxy	906
system replacemsg-group	908
system replacemsg-image	917
system resource-limits	917
system sdn-connector	922
system session-helper	926

system session-ttl	928
system settings	930
system sflow	943
system sit-tunnel	944
system sms-server	946
system snmp community	946
system snmp sysinfo	949
system snmp user	949
system storage	951
system stp	952
system switch-interface	953
system tos-based-priority	955
system vdom	956
system vdom-dns	956
system vdom-exception	958
system vdom-link	960
system vdom-netflow	960
system vdom-property	961
system vdom-radius-server	961
system vdom-sflow	962
system virtual-switch	962
system virtual-wan-link	963
system virtual-wire-pair	975
system vxlan	977
system wccp	977
WCCP router mode	979
WCCP client mode	981
system wireless ap-status	982
system wireless settings	982
system zone	983
user	985
user adgrp	987
user device	987
user device-access-list	991
user device-category	992
user device-group	992
user domain-controller	994
user fortitoken	994
user fsso	996
user fsso-polling	998
user group	999
user krb-keytab	1005
user ldap	1006
user local	1011
user password-policy	1016
user peer	1017
user peergrp	1020
user pop3	1021
user quarantine	1022

user radius	1024
user security-exempt-list	1033
user setting	1035
user tacacs+	1040
voip	1043
voip profile	1043
vpn	1063
vpn certificate ca	1064
vpn certificate crt	1066
vpn certificate local	1069
vpn certificate ocsip-server	1073
vpn certificate remote	1075
vpn certificate setting	1076
vpn ipsec concentrator	1079
vpn ipsec forticlient	1080
vpn ipsec {manualkey-interface manualkey}	1081
vpn ipsec {phase1-interface phase1}	1088
vpn ipsec {phase2-interface phase2}	1125
vpn l2tp	1139
vpn ocvpn	1139
vpn pptp	1140
vpn ssl settings	1141
vpn ssl web host-check-software	1151
vpn ssl web portal	1154
vpn ssl web realm	1168
vpn ssl web user-bookmark	1169
vpn ssl web user-group-bookmark	1172
waf	1178
waf main-class	1178
waf profile	1178
waf signature	1187
waf sub-class	1187
wanopt	1188
wanopt auth-group	1188
wanopt cache-service	1190
wanopt content-delivery-network-rule	1191
wanopt peer	1194
wanopt profile	1195
wanopt remote-storage	1201
wanopt settings	1202
wanopt webcache	1203
webfilter	1207
webfilter content	1207
webfilter content-header	1208
webfilter fortiguard	1209
webfilter ftgd-local-cat	1209
webfilter ftgd-local-rating	1210
webfilter ips-urlfilter-cache-setting	1211
webfilter {ips-urlfilter-setting ips-urlfilter-setting6}	1211

webfilter override	1212
webfilter profile	1213
webfilter search-engine	1219
webfilter urlfilter	1219
web-proxy	1222
web-proxy debug-url	1222
web-proxy explicit	1223
web-proxy forward-server	1230
web-proxy forward-server-group	1232
web-proxy global	1234
web-proxy profile	1237
web-proxy url-match	1240
web-proxy wisp	1241
wireless-controller	1244
wireless-controller ap-status	1245
wireless-controller ble-profile	1246
wireless-controller bonjour-profile	1247
wireless-controller global	1248
wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-3gpp-cellular	1251
wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-ip-address-type	1252
wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-nai-realm	1253
wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-network-auth-type	1254
wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-roaming-consortium	1255
wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-venue-name	1255
wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-conn-capability	1256
wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-operator-name	1257
wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-osu-provider	1258
wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-wan-metric	1259
wireless-controller hotspot20 hs-profile	1259
wireless-controller hotspot20 icon	1263
wireless-controller hotspot20 qos-map	1263
wireless-controller inter-controller	1264
wireless-controller qos-profile	1266
wireless-controller setting	1269
wireless-controller timers	1273
wireless-controller utm-profile	1276
wireless-controller vap	1277
wireless-controller vap-group	1296
wireless-controller wids-profile	1297
wireless-controller wtp	1304
wireless-controller wtp-group	1315
wireless-controller wtp-profile	1317
execute	1344
api-user	1344
auto-script	1346
backup	1347
batch	1351
bypass-mode	1352

carrier-license	1353
central-mgmt	1353
cfg reload	1354
cfg save	1354
clear system arp table	1355
cli check-template-status	1355
cli status-msg-only	1356
client-reputation	1356
date	1357
dhcp lease-clear	1357
dhcp lease-list	1357
dhcp6 lease-clear	1357
dhcp6 lease-list	1358
disk	1358
disk raid	1359
disconnect-admin-session	1360
dsscc	1361
enter	1361
erase-disk	1361
extender	1361
factoryreset	1363
factoryreset2	1363
firewall ssh generate local-ca	1363
History	1363
firewall ssh generate local-key	1364
History	1364
formatlogdisk	1364
forticarrier-license	1364
forticlient	1365
FortiClient-NAC	1365
fortiguard-log	1365
fortitoken	1367
fortitoken-mobile	1369
fsso refresh	1369
ha disconnect	1370
ha ignore-hardware-revision	1370
ha manage	1371
ha set-priority	1372
ha synchronize	1372
interface dhcp6client-renew	1372
interface dhcpclient-renew	1373
interface pppoe-reconnect	1373
log backup	1374
log client-reputation-report	1374

log convert-oldlogs	1375
log delete	1375
log delete-all	1376
log delete-oldlogs	1376
log detail	1376
log display	1376
log downgrade-log	1377
log filter	1377
log flush-cache	1378
log flush-cache-all	1378
log {fortianalyzer fortianalyzer-cloud} test-connectivity	1379
log fortiguard test-connectivity	1379
log list	1379
log rebuild-sqldb	1380
log recreate-sqldb	1380
log-report reset	1381
log restore	1381
log roll	1381
log shift-time	1381
log upload	1382
log upload-progress	1382
lte-modem	1382
modem dial	1385
modem hangup	1385
modem trigger	1386
mrouter clear	1386
nsx	1387
pbx	1387
ping	1389
ping6	1389
ping-options, ping6-options	1390
policy-packet-capture delete-all	1393
reboot	1393
replace device	1394
report	1394
restore	1395
History	1395
revision	1400
router clear bfd session	1401
router clear bgp	1401
router clear ospf process	1402
router restart	1402
sdn tag nsx	1403
History	1403

send-fds-statistics	1403
sensor detail	1403
sensor list	1404
set system session filter	1405
set-next-reboot	1408
sfp-mode-sgmii	1408
shutdown	1408
ssh	1409
switch-controller	1409
History	1410
sync-session	1416
system custom-language import	1417
system fortisandbox test-connectivity	1417
tac report	1417
telnet	1417
time	1418
traceroute	1418
tracert6	1419
update-av	1419
update-geo-ip	1419
update-ips	1420
update-list	1420
update-now	1420
update-src-vis	1420
upd-vd-license	1421
upload	1421
usb-device	1423
usb-disk	1423
vpn certificate ca	1424
vpn certificate crl	1425
vpn certificate local export	1425
vpn certificate local generate	1426
History	1426
vpn certificate local import	1429
vpn certificate remote	1430
vpn ipsec tunnel down	1430
vpn ipsec tunnel up	1430
vpn sslvpn del-all	1431
vpn sslvpn del-tunnel	1431
vpn sslvpn del-web	1431
vpn sslvpn list	1431
webcache	1432
History	1432
webfilter quota-reset	1432

wireless-controller delete-wtp-image	1433
wireless-controller hs20-icon	1433
wireless-controller led-blink	1434
History	1434
Additional information	1434
wireless-controller restart-stad	1435
wireless-controller reset-wtp	1435
wireless-controller restart-acd	1435
wireless-controller restart-stad	1436
wireless-controller restart-wtpd	1436
wireless-controller upload-wtp-image	1436
get	1438
application internet-service status	1438
application internet-service-summary	1438
certificate	1438
extender modem-status	1439
extender sys-info	1440
firewall dnstranslation	1440
firewall iprope appctrl	1440
firewall iprope list	1441
firewall proute, proute6	1441
firewall service custom	1442
firewall shaper	1443
grep	1443
gui console status	1444
hardware cpu	1444
hardware memory	1446
hardware nic	1446
hardware npu	1447
hardware status	1450
ips decoder status	1450
ips rule status	1451
ips session	1451
ips view-map	1452
ipsec tunnel	1452
mgmt-data status	1453
pbx branch-office	1453
pbx dialplan	1454
pbx did	1454
pbx extension	1454
pbx ftgd-voice-pkg	1455
pbx global	1455
pbx ringgrp	1456
pbx sip-trunk	1456

pbx voice-menu	1457
router info bfd neighbor	1457
router info bgp	1458
router info isis	1460
router info kernel	1460
router info multicast	1460
router info ospf	1461
router info protocols	1463
router info rip	1463
router info routing-table	1464
router info vrrp	1464
router info6 bgp	1465
router info6 interface	1465
router info6 kernel	1466
router info6 ospf	1466
router info6 protocols	1466
router info6 rip	1466
router info6 routing-table	1467
switch-controller poe	1467
system admin list	1467
system admin status	1468
system arp	1469
system auto-update	1469
system central-management	1469
system checksum	1470
system cmdb status	1470
system fortianalyzer-connectivity	1471
system fortiguard-log-service status	1471
system fortiguard-service status	1472
system ha-nonsync-csum	1472
system ha status	1472
system info admin status	1474
system info admin ssh	1475
system interface physical	1476
system ip-conflict status	1476
system mgmt-csum	1477
system performance firewall	1477
system performance status	1478
History	1478
system performance top	1479
system session list	1480
system session status	1481
system session-helper-info list	1481
system session-info	1482

system source-ip	1483
system startup-error-log	1484
system stp list	1484
system status	1484
History	1485
test	1485
user adgrp	1487
vpn certificate	1488
vpn ike gateway	1488
vpn ipsec tunnel details	1488
vpn ipsec tunnel name	1488
vpn ipsec tunnel summary	1489
vpn ipsec stats crypto	1489
vpn ipsec stats tunnel	1490
vpn ssl monitor	1490
vpn status l2tp	1490
vpn status pptp	1491
vpn status ssl	1491
webfilter categories	1491
webfilter ftgd-statistics	1492
webfilter status	1493
wireless-controller client-info	1494
wireless-controller rf-analysis	1494
wireless-controller scan	1495
wireless-controller spectral-info	1495
wireless-controller status	1496
wireless-controller vap-status	1496
wireless-controller wlchanlisttic	1497
wireless-controller wtp-status	1499
tree	1501

Change log

Date	Change description
June 18, 2020	Updated for FortiOS 6.0.10.
February 03, 2020	Corrected the default value of <code>interval</code> , in the <code>config system link-monitor</code> command.
January 22, 2019	Updated for FortiOS 6.0.9.
December 06, 2019	Updated for FortiOS 6.0.8.
September 23, 2019	Corrected external links in firewall {vip vip6} on page 339 and various other links and cross references.
September 16, 2019	Updated log {azure-security-center azure-security-center2} setting on page 415 and log {azure-security-center azure-security-center2} filter on page 413 .
July 29, 2019	Minor updates.
July 18, 2019	FortiOS 6.0.6 document release. Minor updates.
June 26, 2019	Minor updates.
June 3, 2019	Minor updates.
May 15, 2019	FortiOS 6.0.5 document release. Minor updates.
March 15, 2019	Minor updates.
January 9, 2019	FortiOS 6.0.4 document release. Minor updates.
November 16, 2018	Added more information about using SCP to admin-scp {enable disable} on page 750 .
October 10, 2018	FortiOS 6.0.3 document release. Minor updates.
August 22, 2018	Minor updates.
July 26, 2018	FortiOS 6.0.2 document release. Minor updates.
July 10, 2018	Minor update.
June 5, 2018	FortiOS 6.0.1 document release. Minor updates.
April 30, 2018	Minor updates and fixes throughout.
March 29, 2018	FortiOS 6.0 document release. Minor updates.

FortiOS CLI reference

This document describes FortiOS 6.0 CLI commands used to configure and manage a FortiGate unit from the command line interface (CLI).

Before now, our focus was on documenting the most commonly used CLI commands, or those commands that required more explanation. Therefore, some commands have Supplemental Information sections below the CLI syntax that dive into a little extra detail.

The CLI syntax is created by processing a schema of a particular build of FortiOS 6.0, and reformatting the resulting CLI output into content that resembles the output found in the CLI console.

If you have comments on this content, its format, or requests for commands that are not included, contact us at techdoc@fortinet.com.

How this guide is organized

This document contains the following sections:

[Managing Firmware with the FortiGate BIOS](#) describes how to change firmware at the console during FortiGate unit boot-up.

[Using the CLI](#) describes how to connect to the CLI and some basics of how it works.

[config](#) describes the commands for each configuration branch of the FortiOS CLI.

[execute on page 1344](#) describes execute commands.

[get on page 1438](#) describes get commands.

[tree on page 1501](#) describes the tree command.

Any new changes to commands since the release of FortiOS 6.0 will be shown at the top of each command.

Availability of commands and options

Some FortiOS™ CLI commands and options are not available on all FortiGate units. The CLI displays an error message if you attempt to enter a command or option that is not available. You can use the question mark '?' to verify the commands and options that are available.

Commands and options may not be available for the following reasons:

FortiGate model

All commands are not available on all FortiGate models. For example, low-end FortiGate models do not support the aggregate interface type option of the config system interface command.

Hardware configuration

For example, some AMC module commands are only available when an AMC module is installed.

FortiOS Carrier, FortiGate Voice, FortiWiFi, etc

Commands for extended functionality are not available on all FortiGate models. The CLI Reference includes commands only available for FortiWiFi units, FortiOS Carrier, and FortiGate Voice units.

Disclaimer: CLI syntax parameter format

For the time being, all CLI commands in this guide display their syntax-parameters with braces, or `{ }`. This is a departure from previous versions of the CLI Reference, which used the following criteria:

`< >` - Used for variables

`{ }` - Used for multiple settings

`[]` - Used for settings that are optional

See below for an example:

Current syntax format:

```
config alertemail setting
    set username {string}
    ...
```

Traditional syntax format:

```
config alertemail setting
    set username <string>
    ...
```

We will attempt to reintroduce the traditional formatting for all CLI commands and their syntaxes.

Managing firmware with the FortiGate BIOS

FortiGate units are shipped with firmware installed. Usually firmware upgrades are performed through the web-based manager or by using the CLI `execute restore` command. From the console, you can also interrupt the FortiGate unit's boot-up process to load firmware using the BIOS firmware that is a permanent part of the unit.

Using the BIOS, you can:

- view system information
- format the boot device
- load firmware and reboot
- reboot the FortiGate unit from the backup firmware, which then becomes the default firmware

Accessing the BIOS

The BIOS menu is available only through direct connection to the FortiGate unit's Console port. During boot-up, "Press any key" appears briefly. If you press any keyboard key at this time, boot-up is suspended and the BIOS menu appears. If you are too late, the boot-up process continues as usual.

Navigating the menu

The main BIOS menu looks like this:

```
[C]: Configure TFTP parameters
[R]: Review TFTP paramters
[T]: Initiate TFTP firmware transfer
[F]: Format boot device
[Q]: Quit menu and continue to boot
[I]: System Information
[B]: Boot with backup firmware and set as default
[Q]: Quit menu and continue to boot
[H]: Display this list of options
```

Enter C,R,T,F,I,B,Q, or H:

Typing the bracketed letter selects the option. Input is case-sensitive. Most options present a submenu. An option value in square brackets at the end of the "Enter" line is the default value which you can enter simply by pressing Return. For example,

Enter image download port number [WAN1]:

In most menus, typing H re-lists the menu options and typing Q returns to the previous menu.

Loading firmware

The BIOS can download firmware from a TFTP server that is reachable from a FortiGate unit network interface. You need to know the IP address of the server and the name of the firmware file to download.

The downloaded firmware can be saved as either the default or backup firmware. It is also possible to boot the downloaded firmware without saving it.

Configuring TFTP parameters

Starting from the main BIOS menu

```
[C]: Configure TFTP parameters.
```

Selecting the VLAN (if VLANs are used)

```
[V]: Set local VLAN ID.
```

Choose port and whether to use DHCP

```
[P]: Set firmware download port.
```

The options listed depend on the FortiGate model. Choose the network interface through which the TFTP server can be reached. For example:

```
[0]: Any of port 1 - 7
[1]: WAN1
[2]: WAN2
Enter image download port number [WAN1]:
[D]: Set DHCP mode.
Please select DHCP setting
[1]: Enable DHCP
[2]: Disable DHCP
```

If there is a DHCP server on the network, select [1]. This simplifies configuration. Otherwise, select [2].

Non-DHCP steps

```
[I]: Set local IP address.
Enter local IP address [192.168.1.188]:
```

This is a temporary IP address for the FortiGate unit network interface. Use a unique address on the same subnet to which the network interface connects.

```
[S]: Set local subnet mask.
Enter local subnet mask [255.255.252.0]:
[G]: Set local gateway.
```

The local gateway IP address is needed if the TFTP server is on a different subnet than the one to which the FortiGate unit is connected.

TFTP and filename

```
[T]: Set remote TFTP server IP address.
```

```
Enter remote TFTP server IP address [192.168.1.145]:
[F]: Set firmware file name.
Enter firmware file name [image.out]:
```

Enter [Q] to return to the main menu.

Initiating TFTP firmware transfer

Starting from the main BIOS menu

```
[T]: Initiate TFTP firmware transfer.
Please connect TFTP server to Ethernet port 'WAN1'.

MAC: 00:09:0f:b5:55:28

Connect to tftp server 192.168.1.145 ...

#####
Image Received.
Checking image... OK
Save as Default firmware/Backup firmware/Run image without
saving:[D/B/R]?
```

After you choose any option, the FortiGate unit reboots. If you choose [D] or [B], there is first a pause while the firmware is copied:

```
Programming the boot device now.
.....
.....
```

Booting the backup firmware

You can reboot the FortiGate unit from the backup firmware, which then becomes the default firmware.

Starting from the main BIOS menu

```
[B]: Boot with backup firmware and set as default.
```

If the boot device contains backup firmware, the FortiGate unit reboots. Otherwise the unit responds:

```
Failed to mount filesystem. . .
Mount back up partition failed.
Back up image open failed.
Press 'Y' or 'y' to boot default image.
```


Using the CLI

The command line interface (CLI) is an alternative configuration tool to the GUI or GUI. While the configuration of the GUI uses a point-and-click method, the CLI requires typing commands or uploading batches of commands from a text file, like a configuration script.

This section explains common CLI tasks that an administrator performs on a regular basis and includes the topics:

- [Connecting to the CLI on page 25](#)
- [Command syntax on page 28](#)
- [Sub-commands on page 32](#)
- [Permissions on page 35](#)
- [Tips on page 36](#)

Connecting to the CLI

You can access the CLI in three ways:

- **Local console** — Connect your computer directly to the console port of your FortiGate. Local access is required in some cases:
 - If you are installing your FortiGate for the first time and it is not yet configured to connect to your network, you may only be able to connect to the CLI using a local serial console connection, unless you reconfigure your computer's network settings for a peer connection.
 - Restoring the firmware utilizes a boot interrupt. Network access to the CLI is not available until after the boot process has completed, making local CLI access the only viable option.
- **SSH or Telnet access** — Connect your computer through any network interface attached to one of the network ports on your FortiGate. The network interface must have enabled Telnet or SSH administrative access if you connect using an SSH/Telnet client, or HTTP/HTTPS administrative access if you connect by accessing the **CLI Console** in the GUI. The CLI console can be accessed from the upper-right hand corner of the screen and appears as a slide-out window.
- **FortiExplorer for iOS** — Use the FortiExplorer app on your iOS device to configure, manage, and monitor your FortiGate.

Local console

Local console connections to the CLI are formed by directly connecting your management computer or console to the FortiGate unit, using its DB-9 or RJ-45 console port. To connect to the local console you need:

- A console cable to connect the console port on the FortiGate to a communications port on the computer. Depending on your device, this is one of:
 - null modem cable (DB-9 to DB-9)
 - DB-9 to RJ-45 cable (a DB-9-to-USB adapter can be used)
 - USB to RJ-45 cable

- A computer with an available communications port
- Terminal emulation software

To connect to the CLI using a local serial console connection

1. Using the console cable, connect the FortiGate unit's console port to the serial communications (COM) port on your management computer.
2. Start a terminal emulation program on the management computer, select the COM port, and use the following settings:

Bits per second	9600
Data bits	8
Parity	None
Stop bits	1
Flow control	None

3. Press Enter on the keyboard to connect to the CLI.
4. Log in to the CLI using your username and password (default: *admin* and no password).
You can now enter CLI commands, including configuring access to the CLI through SSH.

SSH or Telnet access

SSH or Telnet access to the CLI is accomplished by connecting your computer to the FortiGate unit using one of its RJ-45 network ports. You can either connect directly, using a peer connection between the two, or through any intermediary network.



If you do not want to use an SSH/Telnet client and you have access to the GUI, you can alternatively access the CLI through the network using the **CLI Console** widget in the GUI.

You must enable SSH and/or Telnet on the network interface associated with that physical network port. If your computer is not connected directly or through a switch, you must also configure the FortiGate unit with a static route to a router that can forward packets from the FortiGate unit to your computer. You can do this using either a local console connection or the GUI.

Requirements

- A computer with an available serial communications (COM) port and RJ-45 port
- Terminal emulation software such as HyperTerminal for Microsoft Windows
- The console cable
- A network cable
- Prior configuration of the operating mode, network interface, and static route.

To enable SSH or Telnet access to the CLI using a local console connection

1. Using the network cable, connect the FortiGate unit's network port either directly to your computer's network port, or to a network through which your computer can reach the FortiGate unit.
2. Note the number of the physical network port.
3. Using a local console connection, connect and log into the CLI.

4. Enter the following command:

```
config system interface
  edit <interface_str>
    set allowaccess <protocols_list>
  end
```

where:

- <interface_str> is the name of the network interface associated with the physical network port and containing its number, such as port1.
- <protocols_list> is the complete, space-delimited list of permitted administrative access protocols, such as https ssh telnet.

5. To confirm the configuration, enter the command to display the network interface's settings:

```
show system interface <interface_str>
```

6. The CLI displays the settings, including the allowed administrative access protocols, for the network interfaces.

Connecting using SSH

Once the FortiGate unit is configured to accept SSH connections, you can use an SSH client on your management computer to connect to the CLI.

Secure Shell (SSH) provides both secure authentication and secure communications to the CLI. FortiGate units support 3DES and Blowfish encryption algorithms for SSH.

Before you can connect to the CLI using SSH, you must first configure a network interface to accept SSH connections. The following procedure uses PuTTY. Steps may vary with other SSH clients.

To connect to the CLI using SSH

1. On your management computer, start an SSH client.
2. In **Host Name (or IP address)**, enter the IP address of a network interface on which you have enabled SSH administrative access.
3. Set **Port** to 22.
4. For the **Connection type**, select **SSH**.
5. Select **Open**. The SSH client connects to the FortiGate unit.

The SSH client may display a warning if this is the first time you are connecting to the FortiGate unit and its SSH key is not yet recognized by your SSH client, or if you have previously connected to the FortiGate unit but used a different IP address or SSH key. This is normal if your management computer is directly connected to the FortiGate unit with no network hosts between them.

6. Click **Yes** to verify the fingerprint and accept the FortiGate unit's SSH key. You will not be able to log in until you have accepted the key.
7. The CLI displays a login prompt.
8. Type a valid administrator account name (such as `admin`) and press **Enter**.

9. Type the password for this administrator account and press **Enter**.

The FortiGate unit displays a command prompt (its hostname followed by a #). You can now enter CLI commands.



If three incorrect login or password attempts occur in a row, you will be disconnected. If this occurs, wait one minute, then reconnect to attempt the login again.

Connecting using Telnet

Once the FortiGate unit is configured to accept Telnet connections, you can use a Telnet client on your management computer to connect to the CLI.



Telnet is not a secure access method. SSH should be used to access the CLI from the Internet or any other untrusted network.

Before you can connect to the CLI using Telnet, you must first configure a network interface to accept Telnet connections.

To connect to the CLI using Telnet

1. On your management computer, start a Telnet client.
2. Connect to a FortiGate network interface on which you have enabled Telnet.
3. Type a valid administrator account name (such as `admin`) and press **Enter**.
4. Type the password for this administrator account and press **Enter**. The FortiGate unit displays a command prompt (its hostname followed by a #). You can now enter CLI commands.



If three incorrect login or password attempts occur in a row, you will be disconnected. If this occurs, wait one minute, then reconnect to attempt the login again.

Command syntax

When entering a command, the CLI console requires that you use valid syntax and conform to expected input constraints. It will reject invalid commands.

Fortinet documentation uses the conventions below to describe valid command syntax.

Terminology

Each command line consists of a command word that is usually followed by configuration data or other specific item that the command uses or affects.

To describe the function of each word in the command line, especially if that nature has changed between firmware versions, Fortinet uses terms with the following definitions.

Command syntax terminology

- **Command** — A word that begins the command line and indicates an action that the FortiGate should perform on a part of the configuration or host on the network, such as `config` or `execute`. Together with other words, such as fields or values, that end when you press the **Enter** key, it forms a command line. Exceptions include multiline command lines, which can be entered using an escape sequence. Valid command lines must be unambiguous if abbreviated. Optional words or other command line permutations are indicated by syntax notation.
- **Sub-command** — A `config` sub-command that is available only when nested within the scope of another command. After entering a command, its applicable sub-commands are available to you until you exit the scope of the command, or until you descend an additional level into another sub-command. Indentation is used to indicate levels of nested commands. Not all top-level commands have sub-commands. Available sub-commands vary by their containing scope.
- **Object** — A part of the configuration that contains tables and /or fields. Valid command lines must be specific enough to indicate an individual object.
- **Table** — A set of fields that is one of possibly multiple similar sets which each have a name or number, such as an administrator account, policy, or network interface. These named or numbered sets are sometimes referenced by other parts of the configuration that use them.
- **Field** — The name of a setting, such as `ip` or `hostname`. Fields in some tables must be configured with values. Failure to configure a required field will result in an invalid object configuration error message, and the FortiGate will discard the invalid table.
- **Value** — A number, letter, IP address, or other type of input that is usually your configuration setting held by a field. Some commands, however, require multiple input values which may not be named but are simply entered in sequential order in the same command line. Valid input types are indicated by constraint notation.
- **Option** — A kind of value that must be one or more words from of a fixed set of options.

Indentation

Indentation indicates levels of nested commands, which indicate what other sub-commands are available from within the scope. The “`next`” and “`end`” lines are used to maintain a hierarchy and flow to CLI commands, especially helping to distinguish those commands with extensive sub-commands.

The “`next`” line is entered at the same indentation-level as the previous “`edit`”, to mark where you would like to finish that table entry and move on to the next table entry; doing so will not mean that you have “left” that sub-command.

next

Below is an example command, with a sub-command of `entries`:

```

config dlp filepattern
  edit <1>
    set name <name>
    set comment [comment]
    config entries
      edit <2>
        set filter-type {pattern | type}
      next
    ←

```

After entering settings for <2> and entering `next`, the <2> table entry has been saved, and you be set back one level of indentation so you can continue to create more `entries` (if you wish).

This hierarchy is best indicated in the CLI console, as the example below is what displays in the console after entering `next`:

```
FGT60E1Q23456789 (entries) #
```



To go-back up an indentation-level from this point on (i.e. to finish configuring the `entries` sub-command), you **cannot** enter `next`; you must enter `end`.

end

Below is the same command and sub-command, except `end` has been entered instead of `next` after the sub-command:

```

config dlp filepattern
  edit <1>
    set name <name>
    set comment [comment]
    config entries
      edit <2>
        set filter-type {pattern | type}
      end
    ←

```

Entering `end` will save the <2> table entry, but bring you out of the sub-command entirely; in this example, you would enter this when you don't wish to continue creating new `entries`.

Again, your hierarchy is best indicated by the CLI console. Below is what displays in the console after entering `end`:

```
FGT60E1Q23456789 (1) #
```

Notation

Brackets, braces, and pipes are used to denote valid permutations of the syntax. Constraint notations, such as `<address_ipv4>`, indicate which data types or string patterns are acceptable value input.

All syntax uses the following conventions:

Convention	Description
Square brackets []	An optional word or series of words. For example: [verbose {1 2 3}] indicates that you may either omit or type both the word <code>verbose</code> and its accompanying option/s, such as <code>verbose 3</code> . See Optional values and ranges below for more information.
Curly braces { }	A word or series of words that is constrained to a set of options delimited by either vertical bars or spaces. You must enter at least one of the options, unless the set of options is surrounded by square brackets [].
Mutually exclusive options - delimited by vertical bars	Both mutually and non-mutually exclusive commands will use curly braces, as they provide multiple options, however mutually exclusive commands will divide each option with a pipe. This indicates that you are permitted to enter one option or the other: {enable disable}
Non-mutually exclusive options - delimited by spaces	Non-mutually exclusive commands do not use pipes to divide their options. In those circumstances, multiple options can be entered at once, as long as they are entered with a space separating each option: {http https ping snmp ssh telnet}
Angle brackets < >	A word constrained by data type. The angled brackets contain a descriptive name followed by an underscore (<code>_</code>) and suffix that indicates the valid data type. For example, <code><retries_int></code> , indicates that you should enter a number of retries as an integer. Data types include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code><xxx_name></code>: A name referring to another part of the configuration, such as <code>policy_A</code>. <code><xxx_index></code>: An index number referring to another part of the configuration, such as <code>0</code> for the first static route. <code><xxx_pattern></code>: A regular expression or word with wild cards that matches possible variations, such as <code>*@example.com</code> to match all email addresses ending in <code>@example.com</code>. <code><xxx_fqdn></code>: A fully qualified domain name (FQDN), such as <code>mail.example.com</code>. <code><xxx_email></code>: An email address, such as <code>admin@example.com</code>. <code><xxx_ipv4></code>: An IPv4 address, such as <code>192.168.1.99</code>.

Convention	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code><xxx_v4mask></code>: A dotted decimal IPv4 netmask, such as <code>255.255.255.0</code>. • <code><xxx_ipv4mask></code>: A dotted decimal IPv4 address and netmask separated by a space, such as <code>192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0</code>. • <code><xxx_ipv4/mask></code>: A dotted decimal IPv4 address and CIDR-notation netmask separated by a slash, such as <code>192.168.1.1/24</code> • <code><xxx_ipv4range></code> : A hyphen (-)-delimited inclusive range of IPv4 addresses, such as <code>192.168.1.1-192.168.1.255</code>. • <code><xxx_ipv6></code>: A colon (:)-delimited hexadecimal IPv6 address, such as <code>3f2e:6a8b:78a3:0d82:1725:6a2f:0370:6234</code>. • <code><xxx_v6mask></code>: An IPv6 netmask, such as <code>/96</code>. • <code><xxx_ipv6mask></code>: A dotted decimal IPv6 address and netmask separated by a space. • <code><xxx_str></code>: A string of characters that is not another data type, such as <code>P@ssw0rd</code>. Strings containing spaces or special characters must be surrounded in quotes or use escape sequences. • <code><xxx_int></code>: An integer number that represents a metric, <code>minutes_int</code> for the number of minutes.

Optional values and ranges

Any field that is optional will use square-brackets, such as `set comment`. This is because it doesn't matter whether it's set or not. The overall config command will still successfully be taken.

Another example of where square-brackets would be used is to show that multiple options can be set, even intermixed with ranges. The example below shows a field that can be set to either a specific value or range, or multiple instances:

```
config firewall service custom
    set iprange <range1> [<range2> <range3> ...]
end
```

Sub-commands

Each command line consists of a command word that is usually followed by configuration data or other specific item that the command uses or affects:

```
get system admin
```

Sub-commands are available from within the scope of some commands. When you enter a sub-command level, the command prompt changes to indicate the name of the current command scope. For example, after entering:

```
config system admin
```

the command prompt becomes:

```
(admin) #
```

Applicable sub-commands are available to you until you exit the scope of the command, or until you descend an additional level into another sub-command.

For example, the `edit` sub-command is available only within a command that affects tables; the `next` sub-command is available only from within the `edit` sub-command:

```
config system interface
  edit port1
    set status up
  next
end
```

Sub-command scope is indicated by indentation.

Available sub-commands vary by command. From a command prompt within `config`, two types of sub-commands might become available:

- commands affecting fields
- commands affecting tables

Commands for tables

clone <table>

Clone (or make a copy of) a table from the current object.

For example, in `config firewall policy`, you could enter the following command to clone security policy 27 to create security policy 30:

```
clone 27 to 30
```

In `config antivirus profile`, you could enter the following command to clone an antivirus profile named `av_pro_1` to create a new antivirus profile named `av_pro_2`:

```
clone av_pro_1 to av_pro_2
```

`clone` may not be available for all tables.

delete <table>

Remove a table from the current object.

For example, in `config system admin`, you could delete an administrator account named `newadmin` by typing `delete newadmin` and pressing Enter. This deletes `newadmin` and all its fields, such as `newadmin`'s first-name and email-address.

`delete` is only available within objects containing tables.

edit <table>

Create or edit a table in the current object.

For example, in `config system admin`:

- edit the settings for the default `admin` administrator account by typing `edit admin`.
- add a new administrator account with the name `newadmin` and edit `newadmin`'s settings by typing `edit newadmin`.

`edit` is an interactive sub-command: further sub-commands are available from within `edit`.

`edit` changes the prompt to reflect the table you are currently editing.

`edit` is only available within objects containing tables.

In objects such as security policies, `<table>` is a sequence number. To create a new entry without the risk of overwriting an existing one, enter `edit 0`. The CLI initially confirms the creation of entry 0, but assigns the next unused number after you finish editing and enter `end`.

end	Save the changes to the current object and exit the <code>config</code> command. This returns you to the top-level command prompt.
get	List the configuration of the current object or table. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In objects, <code>get</code> lists the table names (if present), or fields and their values. • In a table, <code>get</code> lists the fields and their values. For more information on <code>get</code> commands, see the CLI Reference .
purge	Remove all tables in the current object. For example, in <code>config user local</code> , you could type <code>get</code> to see the list of user names, then type <code>purge</code> and then <code>y</code> to confirm that you want to delete all users. <code>purge</code> is only available for objects containing tables. Caution: Back up the FortiGate before performing a <code>purge</code> . <code>purge</code> cannot be undone. To restore purged tables, the configuration must be restored from a backup. Caution: Do not purge <code>system interface</code> or <code>system admin</code> tables. <code>purge</code> does not provide default tables. This can result in being unable to connect or log in, requiring the FortiGate to be formatted and restored.
rename <table> to <table>	Rename a table. For example, in <code>config system admin</code> , you could rename <code>admin3</code> to <code>fwadmin</code> by typing <code>rename admin3 to fwadmin</code> . <code>rename</code> is only available within objects containing tables.
show	Display changes to the default configuration. Changes are listed in the form of configuration commands.

Example of table commands

From within the `system admin` object, you might enter:

```
edit admin_1
```

The CLI acknowledges the new table, and changes the command prompt to show that you are now within the `admin_1` table:

```
new entry 'admin_1' added
(admin_1)#
```

Commands for fields

abort	Exit both the <code>edit</code> and/or <code>config</code> commands without saving the fields.
append	Add an option to an existing list.
end	Save the changes made to the current table or object fields, and exit the <code>config</code> command (to exit without saving, use <code>abort</code> instead).
get	List the configuration of the current object or table. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In objects, <code>get</code> lists the table names (if present), or fields and their values. • In a table, <code>get</code> lists the fields and their values.
move	Move an object within a list, when list order is important. For example, rearranging security policies within the policy list.
next	Save the changes you have made in the current table's fields, and exit the <code>edit</code> command to the object prompt (to save and exit completely to the root prompt, use <code>end</code> instead).

	<p><code>next</code> is useful when you want to create or edit several tables in the same object, without leaving and re-entering the <code>config</code> command each time.</p> <p><code>next</code> is only available from a table prompt; it is not available from an object prompt.</p>
select	<p>Clear all options except for those specified.</p> <p>For example, if a group contains members A, B, C, and D and you remove all users except for B, use the command <code>select member B</code>.</p>
set <field> <value>	<p>Set a field's value.</p> <p>For example, in <code>config system admin</code>, after typing <code>edit admin</code>, you could type <code>set password newpass</code> to change the password of the <code>admin</code> administrator to <code>newpass</code>.</p> <p>Note: When using <code>set</code> to change a field containing a space-delimited list, type the whole new list. For example, <code>set <field> <new-value></code> will replace the list with the <code><new-value></code> rather than appending <code><new-value></code> to the list.</p>
show	Display changes to the default configuration. Changes are listed in the form of configuration commands.
unselect	Remove an option from an existing list.
unset <field>	<p>Reset the table or object's fields to default values.</p> <p>For example, in <code>config system admin</code>, after typing <code>edit admin</code>, typing <code>unset password</code> resets the password of the <code>admin</code> administrator account to the default (in this case, no password).</p>

Example of field commands

To assign the value `my1stExamplePassword` to the `password` field, enter the following command from within the `admin_1` table:

```
set password my1stExamplePassword
```

Next, to save the changes and edit the next administrator's table, enter the `next` command.

Permissions

Access profiles control which CLI commands an administrator account can access. Access profiles assign either read, write, or no access to each area of FortiOS. To view configurations, you must have read access. To make changes, you must have write access. So, depending on the account used to log in to the FortiGate, you may not have complete access to all CLI commands. For complete access to all commands, you must log in with an administrator account that has the `super_admin` access profile. By default the `admin` administrator account has the `super_admin` access profile.

Administrator accounts, with the `super_admin` access profile are similar to a root administrator account that always has full permission to view and change all FortiGate configuration options, including viewing and changing all other administrator accounts and including changing other administrator account passwords.

Increasing the security of administrator accounts

Set strong passwords for all administrator accounts (including the `admin` account) and change passwords regularly.

For more information about increasing the security of administrator accounts, see [System administrator best practices](#).

Tips

Basic features and characteristics of the CLI environment provide support and ease of use for many CLI tasks.

Help

To display brief help during command entry, press the question mark (?) key.

- Press the question mark (?) key at the command prompt to display a list of the commands available and a description of each command.
- Type a word or part of a word, then press the question mark (?) key to display a list of valid word completions or subsequent words, and to display a description of each.

Shortcuts and key commands

Keys	Action
?	List valid word completions or subsequent words. If multiple words could complete your entry, display all possible completions with helpful descriptions of each.
Tab	Complete the word with the next available match. Press the Tab key multiple times to cycle through available matches.
Up arrow, or Ctrl + P	Recall the previous command. Command memory is limited to the current session.
Down arrow, or Ctrl + N	Recall the next command.
Left or Right arrow	Move the cursor left or right within the command line.
Ctrl + A	Move the cursor to the beginning of the command line.
Ctrl + E	Move the cursor to the end of the command line.
Ctrl + B	Move the cursor backwards one word.
Ctrl + F	Move the cursor forwards one word.
Ctrl + D	Delete the current character.
Ctrl + C	Abort current interactive commands, such as when entering multiple lines. If you are not currently within an interactive command such as <code>config</code> or <code>edit</code> , this closes the CLI connection.

Keys	Action
\ then Enter	Continue typing a command on the next line for a multiline command. For each line that you want to continue, terminate it with a backslash (\). To complete the command line, terminate it by pressing the spacebar and then the Enter key, without an immediately preceding backslash.

Command abbreviation

You can abbreviate words in the command line to their smallest number of non-ambiguous characters.

For example, the command `get system status` could be abbreviated to `g sy stat`.

Adding and removing options from lists

When adding options to a list, such as a user group, using the `set` command will remove the previous configuration. For example, if you wish to add user D to a user group that already contains members A, B, and C, the command would need to be `set member A B C D`. If only `set member D` was used, then all former members would be removed from the group.

However, there are additional commands which can be used instead of `set` for changing options in a list.

Additional commands for lists

append	Add an option to an existing list. For example, <code>append member</code> would add user D to a user group while all previous group members are retained
select	Clear all options except for those specified. For example, if a group contains members A, B, C, and D and you remove all users except for B, use the command <code>select member B</code> .
unselect	Remove an option from an existing list. For example, <code>unselect member A</code> would remove member A from a group will all previous group members are retained.

Environment variables

The CLI supports the following environment variables. Variable names are case-sensitive.

Environment variables

\$USERFROM	The management access type (<code>ssh</code> , <code>telnet</code> , <code>jsconsole</code> for the CLI Console widget in the GUI, and so on) and the IP address of the administrator that configured the item.
-------------------	---

\$USERNAME	The account name of the administrator that configured the item.
\$SerialNum	The serial number of the FortiGate unit.

For example, the FortiGate unit's host name can be set to its serial number:

```
config system global
    set hostname $SerialNum
end
```

Special characters

The following special characters, also known as reserved characters, are not permitted in most CLI fields: <, >, (,), #, ', and ". You may be able to enter special characters as part of a string's value by using a special command, enclosing it in quotes, or preceding it with an escape sequence — in this case, a backslash (\) character.

In other cases, different keystrokes are required to input a special character. If you need to enter ? as part of config, you first need to input **CTRL-V**. If you enter ? without first using **CTRL-V**, the question mark has a different meaning in the CLI; it will show available command options in that section.

For example, if you enter ? without **CTRL-V**:

```
edit "*.xe
token line: Unmatched double quote.
```

If you enter ? with **CTRL-V**:

```
edit "*.xe?"
new entry '*.xe?' added
```

Entering special characters

Character	Keys
?	Ctrl + V then ?
Tab	Ctrl + V then Tab
Space (to be interpreted as part of a string value, not to end the string)	Enclose the string in quotation marks: "Security Administrator". Enclose the string in single quotes: 'Security Administrator'. Precede the space with a backslash: Security\ Administrator.
' (to be interpreted as part of a string value, not to end the string)	\'
" (to be interpreted as part of a string value, not to end the string)	\"
\	\\

Using grep to filter get and show command output

In many cases, the `get` and `show` (and `diagnose`) commands may produce a large amount of output. If you are looking for specific information in a large `get` or `show` command output, you can use the `grep` command to filter the output to only display what you are looking for. The `grep` command is based on the standard UNIX `grep`, used for searching text output based on regular expressions.

Use the following command to display the MAC address of the FortiGate unit internal interface:

```
get hardware nic internal | grep Current_HWaddr
Current_HWaddr          00:09:0f:cb:c2:75
```

Use the following command to display all TCP sessions in the session list and include the session list line number in the output:

```
get system session list | grep -n tcp
```

Use the following command to display all lines in HTTP replacement message commands that contain URL (upper or lower case):

```
show system replacemsg http | grep -i url
```

There are three additional options that can be applied to `grep`:

```
-A <num> After
-B <num> Before
-C <num> Context
```

The option `-f` is also available to support contextual output, in order to show the complete configuration. The following example shows the difference in output when `-f` option is used versus when it is not.

Using -f:

```
show | grep -f ldap-group1
config user group
  edit "ldap-group1"
    set member "pc40-LDAP"
  next
end
config firewall policy
  edit 2
    set srcintf "port31"
    set dstintf "port32"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set identity-based enable
    set nat enable
    config identity-based-policy
      edit 1
        set schedule "always"
        set groups "ldap-group1"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "ALL"
      next
    end
  next
end
```

Without using -f:

```
show | grep ldap-group1
edit "ldap-group1"
    set groups "ldap-group1"
```

Language support and regular expressions

Characters such as ñ, é, symbols, and ideographs are sometimes acceptable input. Support varies by the nature of the item being configured. CLI commands, objects, field names, and options must use their exact ASCII characters, but some items with arbitrary names or values may be input using your language of choice. To use other languages in those cases, you must use the correct encoding.

Input is stored using Unicode UTF-8 encoding but is not normalized from other encodings into UTF-8 before it is stored. If your input method encodes some characters differently than in UTF-8, your configured items may not display or operate as expected.

Regular expressions are especially impacted. Matching uses the UTF-8 character values. If you enter a regular expression using another encoding, or if an HTTP client sends a request in an encoding other than UTF-8, matches may not be what you expect.

For example, with Shift-JIS, backslashes (\) could be inadvertently interpreted as the symbol for the Japanese yen (¥) and vice versa. A regular expression intended to match HTTP requests containing money values with a yen symbol therefore may not work if the symbol is entered using the wrong encoding.

For best results, you should:

- use UTF-8 encoding, or
- use only the characters whose numerically encoded values are the same in UTF-8, such as the US-ASCII characters that are also encoded using the same values in ISO 8859-1, Windows code page 1252, Shift-JIS and other encodings, or
- for regular expressions that must match HTTP requests, use the same encoding as your HTTP clients.



HTTP clients may send requests in encodings other than UTF-8. Encodings usually vary by the client's operating system or input language. If you cannot predict the client's encoding, you may only be able to match any parts of the request that are in English, because regardless of the encoding, the values for English characters tend to be encoded identically. For example, English words may be legible regardless of interpreting a web page as either ISO 8859-1 or as GB2312, whereas simplified Chinese characters might only be legible if the page is interpreted as GB2312.

If you configure your FortiGate unit using other encodings, you may need to switch language settings on your management computer, including for your web browser or Telnet/SSH client. For instructions on how to configure your management computer's operating system language, locale, or input method, see its documentation.

If you choose to configure parts of the FortiGate unit using non-ASCII characters, verify that all systems interacting with the FortiGate unit also support the same encodings. You should also use the same encoding throughout the configuration if possible in order to avoid needing to switch the language settings of the GUI and your web browser or Telnet/SSH client while you work.

Similarly to input, your web browser or CLI client should normally interpret display output as encoded using UTF-8. If it does not, your configured items may not display correctly in the GUI or CLI. Exceptions include items such as regular

expressions that you may have configured using other encodings in order to match the encoding of HTTP requests that the FortiGate unit receives.

To enter non-ASCII characters in the CLI console:

1. On your management computer, start your web browser and go to the URL for the FortiGate unit's GUI.
2. Configure your web browser to interpret the page as UTF-8 encoded.
3. Log in to the FortiGate unit.
4. Open the CLI Console from the upper right-hand corner.
5. In the title bar of the **CLI Console** widget, click **Edit** (the pencil icon).
6. Enable **Use external command input box** and select **OK**.
7. The **Command** field appears below the usual input and display area of the **CLI Console**.
8. Type a command in this field and press **Enter**.

In the display area, the **CLI Console** widget displays your previous command interpreted into its character code equivalent, such as:

```
edit \743\601\613\743\601\652
```

and the command's output.

To enter non-ASCII characters in a Telnet/SSH client

1. On your management computer, start your Telnet or SSH client.
2. Configure your Telnet or SSH client to send and receive characters using UTF-8 encoding.
Support for sending and receiving international characters varies by each Telnet/SSH client. Consult the documentation for your Telnet/SSH client.
3. Log in to the FortiGate unit.
4. At the command prompt, type your command and press **Enter**.
You may need to surround words that use encoded characters with single quotes (').
Depending on your Telnet/SSH client's support for your language's input methods and for sending international characters, you may need to interpret them into character codes before pressing Enter.
For example, you might need to enter:

```
edit '\743\601\613\743\601\652'
```
5. The CLI displays your previous command and its output.

Screen paging

You can configure the CLI to pause after displaying each page's worth of text when displaying multiple pages of output. When the display pauses, the last line displays `--More--`. You can then either:

- press the **spacebar** to display the next page.
- type **q** to truncate the output and return to the command prompt.

This may be useful when displaying lengthy output, such as the list of possible matching commands for command completion, or a long list of settings. Rather than scrolling through or possibly exceeding the buffer of your terminal emulator, you can simply display one page at a time.

To configure the CLI Console to pause display when the screen is full:

```
config system console
  set output more
```

```
end
```

Baud rate

You can change the default baud rate of the local console connection.

To change the baud rate enter the following commands:

```
config system console
  set baudrate {9600 | 19200 | 38400 | 57600 | 115200}
end
```

Editing the configuration file on an external host

You can edit the FortiGate configuration on an external host by first backing up the configuration file to a TFTP server. Then edit the configuration file and restore it to the FortiGate unit.

Editing the configuration on an external host can be timesaving if you have many changes to make, especially if your plain text editor provides advanced features such as batch changes.

To edit the configuration on your computer:

1. Use `execute backup` to download the configuration file to a TFTP server, such as your management computer.
2. Edit the configuration file using a plain text editor that supports Unix-style line endings.



Do not edit the first line. The first line(s) of the configuration file (preceded by a # character) contains information about the firmware version and FortiGate model. If you change the model number, the FortiGate unit will reject the configuration file when you attempt to restore it.

3. Use `execute restore` to upload the modified configuration file back to your FortiGate.
The FortiGate downloads the configuration file and checks that the model information is correct. If it is correct, the FortiGate unit loads the configuration file and checks each command for errors. If a command is invalid, the FortiGate unit ignores the command. If the configuration file is valid, the FortiGate unit restarts and loads the new configuration.

config

Use the config commands to change your FortiGate's configuration.

The command branches and commands are in alphabetical order. The information in this section has been extracted and formatted from FortiOS source code. The extracted information includes the command syntax, command descriptions (extracted from CLI help) and default values. This is the first version of this content produced in this way. You can send comments about this content to techdoc@fortinet.com

alertemail

Use the alert email command to configure various alert email settings.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [alertemail setting](#)

alertemail setting

Use this command to configure the FortiGate unit to send an alert email to up to three recipients.

This command can also be configured to send an alert email a certain number of days before FortiGuard licenses expire and/or when the disk usage exceeds a certain threshold amount. You need to configure an SMTP server before configuring alert email settings.

```
config alertemail setting
    set username {string}    Name that appears in the From: field of alert emails (max. 36 characters). size[35]
    set mailto1 {string}     Email address to send alert email to (usually a system administrator) (max. 64 characters).
size[63]
    set mailto2 {string}     Optional second email address to send alert email to (max. 64 characters). size[63]
    set mailto3 {string}     Optional third email address to send alert email to (max. 64 characters). size[63]
    set filter-mode {category | threshold}    How to filter log messages that are sent to alert emails.
        category    Filter based on category.
        threshold    Filter based on severity.
    set email-interval {integer}    Interval between sending alert emails (1 - 99999 min, default = 5). range[1-99999]
    set IPS-logs {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPS logs in alert email.
    set firewall-authentication-failure-logs {enable | disable}    Enable/disable firewall authentication failure logs in
alert email.
    set HA-logs {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HA logs in alert email.
    set IPsec-errors-logs {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPsec error logs in alert email.
    set FDS-update-logs {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiGuard update logs in alert email.
    set PPP-errors-logs {enable | disable}    Enable/disable PPP error logs in alert email.
    set sslvpn-authentication-errors-logs {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSL-VPN authentication error logs in alert
email.
    set antivirus-logs {enable | disable}    Enable/disable antivirus logs in alert email.
    set webfilter-logs {enable | disable}    Enable/disable web filter logs in alert email.
```

```
set configuration-changes-logs {enable | disable} Enable/disable configuration change logs in alert email.
set violation-traffic-logs {enable | disable} Enable/disable violation traffic logs in alert email.
set admin-login-logs {enable | disable} Enable/disable administrator login/logout logs in alert email.
set FDS-license-expiring-warning {enable | disable} Enable/disable FortiGuard license expiration warnings in alert
email.
set log-disk-usage-warning {enable | disable} Enable/disable disk usage warnings in alert email.
set fortiguard-log-quota-warning {enable | disable} Enable/disable FortiCloud log quota warnings in alert email.
set amc-interface-bypass-mode {enable | disable} Enable/disable Fortinet Advanced Mezzanine Card (AMC) interface
bypass mode logs in alert email.
set FIPS-CC-errors {enable | disable} Enable/disable FIPS and Common Criteria error logs in alert email.
set FSSO-disconnect-logs {enable | disable} Enable/disable logging of FSSO collector agent disconnect.
set ssh-logs {enable | disable} Enable/disable SSH logs in alert email.
set FDS-license-expiring-days {integer} Number of days to send alert email prior to FortiGuard license expiration
(1 - 100 days, default = 100). range[1-100]
set local-disk-usage {integer} Disk usage percentage at which to send alert email (1 - 99 percent, default = 75).
range[1-99]
set emergency-interval {integer} Emergency alert interval in minutes. range[1-99999]
set alert-interval {integer} Alert alert interval in minutes. range[1-99999]
set critical-interval {integer} Critical alert interval in minutes. range[1-99999]
set error-interval {integer} Error alert interval in minutes. range[1-99999]
set warning-interval {integer} Warning alert interval in minutes. range[1-99999]
set notification-interval {integer} Notification alert interval in minutes. range[1-99999]
set information-interval {integer} Information alert interval in minutes. range[1-99999]
set debug-interval {integer} Debug alert interval in minutes. range[1-99999]
set severity {option} Lowest severity level to log.
    emergency    Emergency level.
    alert        Alert level.
    critical      Critical level.
    error         Error level.
    warning       Warning level.
    notification  Notification level.
    information   Information level.
    debug         Debug level.
end
```

antivirus

Use antivirus commands to configure antivirus scanning for services, quarantine options, and to enable or disable grayware and heuristic scanning.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [antivirus heuristic](#)
- [antivirus profile](#)
- [antivirus quarantine](#)
- [antivirus settings](#)

antivirus heuristic

Configure the global heuristic options used for antivirus scanning in binary files.

```
config antivirus heuristic
    set mode {pass | block | disable}    Enable/disable heuristics and determine how the system behaves if heuristics
detects a problem.
        pass        Enable heuristics but detected files are passed. If enabled, the system will record a log message.
        block       Enable heuristics and detected files are blocked. If enabled, the system will record a log message.
        disable     Turn off heuristics.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

mode {pass | block | default}

Determine the action to take when heuristics detects a problem:

- **pass:** Enables heuristic scanning, but passes detected files to the recipient. Suspicious files are quarantined if quarantine is enabled.
- **block:** Enables heuristic scanning and blocks detected files. A replacement message is forwarded to the recipient. Blocked files are quarantined if quarantine is enabled.
- **disable:** Disables heuristic scanning (set by default).

antivirus profile

Create and configure antivirus profiles that can be applied to firewall policies. Antivirus profiles configure how virus scanning is applied to sessions accepted by a firewall policy that includes the antivirus profile.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config <protocol> set content-disarm {enable disable} end config content-disarm set original-file-destination {fortisandbox quarantine discard} set office-macro {enable disable} set office-hylink {enable disable} set office-linked {enable disable} set office-embed {enable disable} set pdf-javacode {enable disable} set pdf-embedfile {enable disable} set pdf-act-gotor {enable disable} set pdf-act-launch {enable disable} set pdf-act-uri {enable disable} set pdf-act-sound {enable disable} set pdf-act-movie {enable disable} set pdf-act-java {enable disable} set pdf-act-form {enable disable} set cover-page {enable disable}</pre>	<p>Content Disarm and Reconstruction (CDR) is used to remove exploitable content and replace it with content that is known to be safe. The use of CDR is enabled or disabled separately for each protocol in the profile.</p> <p>Note that all CDR commands are only available when you set the profile's <code>inspection-mode</code> to <code>proxy</code>; CDR is not supported in Flow mode.</p>

Command	Description
<pre> set detect-only {enable disable} next ... </pre>	
<pre> set extended-log {enable disable} </pre>	<p>When extended UTM log is enabled, more HTTP header information will be logged when a UTM event happens.</p> <p>Note that the following HTTP header fields are included in extended-log: http method, client content type, server content type, user agent, referer, and x-forward-for.</p>
<pre> config <protocol> set outbreak-prevention {disabled files full-archive} next ... </pre>	<p>Outbreak prevention uses checksums to filter files in order to preempt and prevent quick virus outbreaks before AV signatures are created.</p> <p>Setting <code>full-archive</code> analyzes files including the contents of archives, as opposed to <code>files</code> which does not include the contents of archives.</p> <p>Note that <code>outbreak-prevention</code> is only available when <code>options</code> is set to <code>scan</code>.</p>
<pre> config <protocol> set archive-block {partiallycorrupted fileslimit timeout ...} set archive-log {partiallycorrupted fileslimit timeout ...} next ... </pre>	<p>Additional options for file blocking and event logging of certain AntiVirus errors. Determine whether to block partially corrupted archives, exceeded archive files limit, and/or log scan timeout.</p>
<pre> config antivirus profile edit {name} # Configure AntiVirus profiles. set name {string} Profile name. size[35] set comment {string} Comment. size[255] set replacemsg-group {string} Replacement message group customized for this profile. size[35] - datasource(s): system.replacemsg-group.name set inspection-mode {proxy flow-based} Inspection mode. proxy Proxy-based inspection. </pre>	


```

        flow-based Flow-based inspection.
    set ftgd-analytics {disable | suspicious | everything} Settings to control which files are uploaded to
FortiSandbox.
        disable Do not upload files to FortiSandbox.
        suspicious Submit files supported by FortiSandbox if heuristics or other methods determine they are sus-
picious.
        everything Submit all files scanned by AntiVirus to FortiSandbox. AntiVirus may not scan all files.
    set analytics-max-upload {integer} Maximum size of files that can be uploaded to FortiSandbox (1 - 395 MBytes,
default = 10). range[1-25809]
    set analytics-wl-filetype {integer} Do not submit files matching this DLP file-pattern to FortiSandbox. range
[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): dlp.filepattern.id
    set analytics-bl-filetype {integer} Only submit files matching this DLP file-pattern to FortiSandbox. range[0-
4294967295] - datasource(s): dlp.filepattern.id
    set analytics-db {disable | enable} Enable/disable using the FortiSandbox signature database to supplement the
AV signature databases.
    set mobile-malware-db {disable | enable} Enable/disable using the mobile malware signature database.
config http
    set options {scan | avmonitor | quarantine} Enable/disable HTTP AntiVirus scanning, monitoring, and quar-
antine.
        scan Enable HTTP antivirus scanning.
        avmonitor Enable HTTP antivirus logging.
        quarantine Enable HTTP antivirus quarantine. Files are quarantined depending on quarantine set-
tings.
    set archive-block {option} Select the archive types to block.
        encrypted Block encrypted archives.
        corrupted Block corrupted archives.
        partiallycorrupted Block partially corrupted archives.
        multipart Block multipart archives.
        nested Block nested archives.
        mailbomb Block mail bomb archives.
        fileslimit Block exceeded archive files limit.
        timeout Block scan timeout.
        unhandled Block archives that FortiOS cannot open.
    set archive-log {option} Select the archive types to log.
        encrypted Log encrypted archives.
        corrupted Log corrupted archives.
        partiallycorrupted Log partially corrupted archives.
        multipart Log multipart archives.
        nested Log nested archives.
        mailbomb Log mail bomb archives.

```

```

        fileslimit      Log exceeded archive files limit.
        timeout         Log scan timeout.
        unhandled       Log archives that FortiOS cannot open.
set emulator {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the virus emulator.
set outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive}  Enable FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention ser-
vice.
        disabled      Disabled.
        files         Analyze files as sent, not the content of archives.
        full-archive  Analyze files including the content of archives.
set content-disarm {disable | enable}  Enable Content Disarm and Reconstruction for this protocol.
config ftp
set options {scan | avmonitor | quarantine}  Enable/disable FTP AntiVirus scanning, monitoring, and quar-
antine.
        scan          Enable FTP antivirus scanning.
        avmonitor     Enable FTP antivirus logging.
        quarantine    Enable FTP antivirus quarantine. Files are quarantined depending on quarantine settings.
set archive-block {option}  Select the archive types to block.
        encrypted     Block encrypted archives.
        corrupted     Block corrupted archives.
        partiallycorrupted Block partially corrupted archives.
        multipart     Block multipart archives.
        nested        Block nested archives.
        mailbomb      Block mail bomb archives.
        fileslimit    Block exceeded archive files limit.
        timeout       Block scan timeout.
        unhandled     Block archives that FortiOS cannot open.
set archive-log {option}  Select the archive types to log.
        encrypted     Log encrypted archives.
        corrupted     Log corrupted archives.
        partiallycorrupted Log partially corrupted archives.
        multipart     Log multipart archives.
        nested        Log nested archives.
        mailbomb      Log mail bomb archives.
        fileslimit    Log exceeded archive files limit.
        timeout       Log scan timeout.
        unhandled     Log archives that FortiOS cannot open.
set emulator {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the virus emulator.
set outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive}  Enable FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention ser-
vice.
        disabled      Disabled.

```

```

        files          Analyze files as sent, not the content of archives.
        full-archive    Analyze files including the content of archives.
config imap
    set options {scan | avmonitor | quarantine}  Enable/disable IMAP AntiVirus scanning, monitoring, and quar-
antine.
        scan          Enable IMAP antivirus scanning.
        avmonitor      Enable IMAP antivirus logging.
        quarantine     Enable IMAP antivirus quarantine. Files are quarantined depending on quarantine set-
tings.

    set archive-block {option}  Select the archive types to block.
        encrypted      Block encrypted archives.
        corrupted       Block corrupted archives.
        partiallycorrupted  Block partially corrupted archives.
        multipart       Block multipart archives.
        nested          Block nested archives.
        mailbomb        Block mail bomb archives.
        fileslimit      Block exceeded archive files limit.
        timeout         Block scan timeout.
        unhandled       Block archives that FortiOS cannot open.

    set archive-log {option}  Select the archive types to log.
        encrypted      Log encrypted archives.
        corrupted       Log corrupted archives.
        partiallycorrupted  Log partially corrupted archives.
        multipart       Log multipart archives.
        nested          Log nested archives.
        mailbomb        Log mail bomb archives.
        fileslimit      Log exceeded archive files limit.
        timeout         Log scan timeout.
        unhandled       Log archives that FortiOS cannot open.

    set emulator {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the virus emulator.
    set executables {default | virus}  Treat Windows executable files as viruses for the purpose of blocking or
monitoring.
        default        Perform standard AntiVirus scanning of Windows executable files.
        virus          Treat Windows executables as viruses.

    set outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive}  Enable FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention ser-
vice.
        disabled       Disabled.
        files          Analyze files as sent, not the content of archives.
        full-archive    Analyze files including the content of archives.

    set content-disarm {disable | enable}  Enable Content Disarm and Reconstruction for this protocol.

```

```

config pop3
    set options {scan | avmonitor | quarantine}  Enable/disable POP3 AntiVirus scanning, monitoring, and quar-
antine.
        scan      Enable POP3 antivirus scanning.
        avmonitor  Enable POP3 antivirus logging.
        quarantine Enable POP3 antivirus quarantine. Files are quarantined depending on quarantine set-
tings.

    set archive-block {option}  Select the archive types to block.
        encrypted      Block encrypted archives.
        corrupted       Block corrupted archives.
        partiallycorrupted  Block partially corrupted archives.
        multipart       Block multipart archives.
        nested          Block nested archives.
        mailbomb         Block mail bomb archives.
        fileslimit       Block exceeded archive files limit.
        timeout          Block scan timeout.
        unhandled        Block archives that FortiOS cannot open.

    set archive-log {option}  Select the archive types to log.
        encrypted      Log encrypted archives.
        corrupted       Log corrupted archives.
        partiallycorrupted  Log partially corrupted archives.
        multipart       Log multipart archives.
        nested          Log nested archives.
        mailbomb         Log mail bomb archives.
        fileslimit       Log exceeded archive files limit.
        timeout          Log scan timeout.
        unhandled        Log archives that FortiOS cannot open.

    set emulator {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the virus emulator.

    set executables {default | virus}  Treat Windows executable files as viruses for the purpose of blocking or
monitoring.
        default  Perform standard AntiVirus scanning of Windows executable files.
        virus    Treat Windows executables as viruses.

    set outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive}  Enable FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention ser-
vice.
        disabled      Disabled.
        files          Analyze files as sent, not the content of archives.
        full-archive   Analyze files including the content of archives.

    set content-disarm {disable | enable}  Enable Content Disarm and Reconstruction for this protocol.
config smtp
    set options {scan | avmonitor | quarantine}  Enable/disable SMTP AntiVirus scanning, monitoring, and

```

```

quarantine.
    scan      Enable SMTP antivirus scanning.
    avmonitor Enable SMTP antivirus logging.
    quarantine Enable SMTP antivirus quarantine. Files are quarantined depending on quarantine set-
tings.

    set archive-block {option} Select the archive types to block.
        encrypted      Block encrypted archives.
        corrupted      Block corrupted archives.
        partiallycorrupted Block partially corrupted archives.
        multipart      Block multipart archives.
        nested         Block nested archives.
        mailbomb       Block mail bomb archives.
        fileslimit     Block exceeded archive files limit.
        timeout        Block scan timeout.
        unhandled      Block archives that FortiOS cannot open.
    set archive-log {option} Select the archive types to log.
        encrypted      Log encrypted archives.
        corrupted      Log corrupted archives.
        partiallycorrupted Log partially corrupted archives.
        multipart      Log multipart archives.
        nested         Log nested archives.
        mailbomb       Log mail bomb archives.
        fileslimit     Log exceeded archive files limit.
        timeout        Log scan timeout.
        unhandled      Log archives that FortiOS cannot open.
    set emulator {enable | disable} Enable/disable the virus emulator.
    set executables {default | virus} Treat Windows executable files as viruses for the purpose of blocking or
monitoring.
        default Perform standard AntiVirus scanning of Windows executable files.
        virus    Treat Windows executables as viruses.
    set outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive} Enable FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention ser-
vice.
        disabled Disabled.
        files    Analyze files as sent, not the content of archives.
        full-archive Analyze files including the content of archives.
    set content-disarm {disable | enable} Enable Content Disarm and Reconstruction for this protocol.
config mapi
    set options {scan | avmonitor | quarantine} Enable/disable MAPI AntiVirus scanning, monitoring, and quar-
antine.
        scan      Enable MAPI antivirus scanning.

```

```

    avmonitor    Enable MAPI antivirus logging.
    quarantine   Enable MAPI antivirus quarantine. Files are quarantined depending on quarantine set-
tings.

    set archive-block {option}    Select the archive types to block.
        encrypted                Block encrypted archives.
        corrupted                Block corrupted archives.
        partiallycorrupted       Block partially corrupted archives.
        multipart                Block multipart archives.
        nested                   Block nested archives.
        mailbomb                 Block mail bomb archives.
        fileslimit               Block exceeded archive files limit.
        timeout                  Block scan timeout.
        unhandled                Block archives that FortiOS cannot open.
    set archive-log {option}       Select the archive types to log.
        encrypted                Log encrypted archives.
        corrupted                Log corrupted archives.
        partiallycorrupted       Log partially corrupted archives.
        multipart                Log multipart archives.
        nested                   Log nested archives.
        mailbomb                 Log mail bomb archives.
        fileslimit               Log exceeded archive files limit.
        timeout                  Log scan timeout.
        unhandled                Log archives that FortiOS cannot open.
    set emulator {enable | disable} Enable/disable the virus emulator.
    set executables {default | virus} Treat Windows executable files as viruses for the purpose of blocking or
monitoring.
        default    Perform standard AntiVirus scanning of Windows executable files.
        virus      Treat Windows executables as viruses.
    set outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive} Enable FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention ser-
vice.
        disabled    Disabled.
        files        Analyze files as sent, not the content of archives.
        full-archive Analyze files including the content of archives.
config nntp
    set options {scan | avmonitor | quarantine} Enable/disable NNTP AntiVirus scanning, monitoring, and quar-
antine.
        scan        Enable NNTP antivirus scanning.
        avmonitor    Enable NNTP antivirus logging.
        quarantine   Enable NNTP antivirus quarantine. Files are quarantined depending on quarantine set-
tings.

```

```

set archive-block {option}    Select the archive types to block.
    encrypted                Block encrypted archives.
    corrupted                Block corrupted archives.
    partiallycorrupted       Block partially corrupted archives.
    multipart                Block multipart archives.
    nested                   Block nested archives.
    mailbomb                 Block mail bomb archives.
    fileslimit               Block exceeded archive files limit.
    timeout                  Block scan timeout.
    unhandled                Block archives that FortiOS cannot open.
set archive-log {option}      Select the archive types to log.
    encrypted                Log encrypted archives.
    corrupted                Log corrupted archives.
    partiallycorrupted       Log partially corrupted archives.
    multipart                Log multipart archives.
    nested                   Log nested archives.
    mailbomb                 Log mail bomb archives.
    fileslimit               Log exceeded archive files limit.
    timeout                  Log scan timeout.
    unhandled                Log archives that FortiOS cannot open.
set emulator {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the virus emulator.
set outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive}  Enable FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention ser-
vice.
    disabled                Disabled.
    files                   Analyze files as sent, not the content of archives.
    full-archive            Analyze files including the content of archives.
config smb
set options {scan | avmonitor | quarantine}  Enable/disable SMB AntiVirus scanning, monitoring, and quar-
antine.
    scan                    Enable SMB antivirus scanning.
    avmonitor               Enable SMB antivirus logging.
    quarantine              Enable SMB antivirus quarantine. Files are quarantined depending on quarantine settings.
set archive-block {option}    Select the archive types to block.
    encrypted                Block encrypted archives.
    corrupted                Block corrupted archives.
    partiallycorrupted       Block partially corrupted archives.
    multipart                Block multipart archives.
    nested                   Block nested archives.
    mailbomb                 Block mail bomb archives.
    fileslimit               Block exceeded archive files limit.

```

```

        timeout          Block scan timeout.
        unhandled        Block archives that FortiOS cannot open.
set archive-log {option} Select the archive types to log.
        encrypted       Log encrypted archives.
        corrupted       Log corrupted archives.
        partiallycorrupted Log partially corrupted archives.
        multipart       Log multipart archives.
        nested          Log nested archives.
        mailbomb        Log mail bomb archives.
        fileslimit      Log exceeded archive files limit.
        timeout         Log scan timeout.
        unhandled       Log archives that FortiOS cannot open.
set emulator {enable | disable} Enable/disable the virus emulator.
set outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive} Enable FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention ser-
vice.
        disabled        Disabled.
        files           Analyze files as sent, not the content of archives.
        full-archive    Analyze files including the content of archives.
config nac-quar
    set infected {none | quar-src-ip} Enable/Disable quarantining infected hosts to the banned user list.
        none           Do not quarantine infected hosts.
        quar-src-ip    Quarantine all traffic from the infected hosts source IP.
    set expiry {string} Duration of quarantine.
    set log {enable | disable} Enable/disable AntiVirus quarantine logging.
config content-disarm
    set original-file-destination {fortisandbox | quarantine | discard} Destination to send original file if
active content is removed.
        fortisandbox   Send original file to configured FortiSandbox.
        quarantine     Send original file to quarantine.
        discard        Original file will be discarded after content disarm.
    set office-macro {disable | enable} Enable/disable stripping of macros in Microsoft Office documents.
    set office-hylink {disable | enable} Enable/disable stripping of hyperlinks in Microsoft Office documents.
    set office-linked {disable | enable} Enable/disable stripping of linked objects in Microsoft Office doc-
uments.
    set office-embed {disable | enable} Enable/disable stripping of embedded objects in Microsoft Office
documents.
    set pdf-javacode {disable | enable} Enable/disable stripping of JavaScript code in PDF documents.
    set pdf-embedfile {disable | enable} Enable/disable stripping of embedded files in PDF documents.
    set pdf-hyperlink {disable | enable} Enable/disable stripping of hyperlinks from PDF documents.
    set pdf-act-gotor {disable | enable} Enable/disable stripping of links to other PDFs in PDF documents.

```



```

        set pdf-act-launch {disable | enable}    Enable/disable stripping of links to external applications in PDF
documents.
        set pdf-act-sound {disable | enable}    Enable/disable stripping of embedded sound files in PDF documents.
        set pdf-act-movie {disable | enable}    Enable/disable stripping of embedded movies in PDF documents.
        set pdf-act-java {disable | enable}    Enable/disable stripping of actions that execute JavaScript code in
PDF documents.
        set pdf-act-form {disable | enable}    Enable/disable stripping of actions that submit data to other targets
in PDF documents.
        set cover-page {disable | enable}    Enable/disable inserting a cover page into the disarmed document.
        set detect-only {disable | enable}    Enable/disable only detect disarmable files, do not alter content.
        set av-virus-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable AntiVirus logging.
        set av-block-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging for AntiVirus file blocking.
        set extended-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable extended logging for antivirus.
        set scan-mode {quick | full}    Choose between full scan mode and quick scan mode.
            quick    Use quick mode scanning. Quick mode uses a smaller database and may be less accurate. Full mode
is recommended.
            full    Full mode virus scanning. Recommended scanning mode. More accurate than quick mode with similar
performance.
        next
    end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

analytics-bl-filetype {1 | 2 | <filepattern_id>}

Note: This entry is only available when **ftgd-analytics** is set to either **suspicious** or **everything**.

File type pattern to blocklist and submit to FortiGuard Analytics:

- **1:** Builtin patterns
- **2:** All executables
- **<filepattern_id>:** Identifier of a defined filepattern. See [DLP filepattern](#) for more information.

analytics-db {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) using antivirus signatures from the FortiSandbox's database as well as signatures from the FortiGate.

analytics-max-upload <mb>

Note: This entry is only available when **ftgd-analytics** is set to either **suspicious** or **everything**.

Maximum file size that can be scanned in megabytes. Set the value between 1-200. The default value is set to 10.

analytics-wl-filetype {1 | 2 | <filepattern_id>}

Note: This entry is only available when **ftgd-analytics** is set to either **suspicious** or **everything**.

File type pattern to allowlist and submit to FortiGuard Analytics:

- **1:** Builtin patterns
- **2:** All executables
- **<filepattern_id>:** Identifier of a defined filepattern. See [DLP filepattern](#) for more information.

av-block-log {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable logging files that are blocked by antivirus.

av-virus-log {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable logging for antivirus scanning.

ftgd-analytics {disable | suspicious | everything}

Choose which files are sent to FortiSandbox for further inspection. Select between the following options:

- **disable:** No files are sent for inspection (set by default).
- **suspicious:** Files that the antivirus engine deems suspicious as sent for inspection.
- **everything:** All files are sent for inspection.

inspection-mode {proxy | flow-based}

Set the inspection mode. Select between the following options:

- **proxy:** Scanning reconstructs content passing through the FortiGate unit and inspects the content for security threats.
- **flow-based:** Scanning takes a snapshot of content packets and uses pattern matching to identify security threats in the content (set by default).

mobile-malware-db {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable using antivirus signatures from the mobile malware signature database as well as signatures from the FortiGate.

replacemsg-group <group-name>

Set a replacement message group to use with antivirus scanning.

scan-mode {quick | full}

Note: This entry is only available when **inspection-mode** is set to **flow-based**.

Choose which scan mode to use for antivirus inspection. Select from the following options:

- **quick:** This mode uses a compact antivirus database and advanced techniques to improve performance.
- **full:** In this mode, content packets are buffered while simultaneously being sent to their destination (set by default).

config {http | ftp | imap | pop3 | smtp | mapi | nntp | smb}

Note: MAPI and NNTP are not configurable for all FortiGate models.

Configure how this profile handles specific protocols.

archive-block {encrypted | corrupted | partiallycorrupted | multipart | nested | mailbomb | fileslimit | timeout | unhandled}

Set which types of archived files to block.

archive-log {encrypted | corrupted | partiallycorrupted | multipart | nested | mailbomb | fileslimit | timeout | unhandled}

Set which types of archived files to log.

content-disarm {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `inspection-mode` of the profile is set to `proxy`.

Enable or disable (by default) Content Disarm and Reconstruction (CDR) for this protocol. CDR is used to remove exploitable content and replace it with content that is known to be safe. As the files are processed through an enabled Proxy-based AntiVirus profile, content that is deemed malicious or unsafe is replaced with content that will allow the traffic to continue, but not put the recipient at risk. Archived ZIP folders can also be processed.

The use of CDR is enabled or disabled separately for each protocol in the profile. This feature is not supported for FTP or MAPI.

Once enabled, a warning will appear showing that all original files subjected to CDR will be discarded. Use the `config content disarm` configuration method to set various CDR options, including the `original-file-destination` in order to retrieve the original files.

emulator {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the virus emulator.

executables {default | virus}

Note: This entry is only available when configuring IMAP, POP3, SMTP, and MAPI.

Set how this profile treats executable files sent with this protocol. Select from the following options:

- **default:** Perform standard antivirus scanning (set by default).
- **virus:** Treat executable files as viruses.

options {scan | avmonitor | quarantine}

Set an action to apply to traffic using this protocol. Select from the following options:

- **scan:** Scan files transferred using this protocol for viruses.
- **avmonitor:** Log detected viruses, but allow them through the firewall without modification.
- **quarantine:** Quarantine files that contain viruses. This feature is available for FortiGates with a hard disk or those connected to a FortiAnalyzer.

config nac-quar

Configure the quarantine settings for this profile.

expiry <duration>

Note: This entry is only available when **infected** is set to **quar-src-ip**.

Set the duration of the quarantine in the days, hours, minutes format `<##d##h##m>`. The default is 5 minutes.

infected {none | quar-src-ip}

Set which infected hosts are added to the banned user list. Select from the following options:

- **none:** No hosts are banned (set by default).
- **quar-src-ip:** All traffic from the source IP is banned.

log {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) logging for antivirus quarantines.

config content disarm

Use this configuration method to set AntiVirus CDR settings, including an original file destination for files to be sent to (if not discarded), and enable or disable stripping of various content such as hyperlinks and embedded objects in various document types.

antivirus quarantine

Configure the antivirus file quarantine options. FortiGate units with a hard disk or a connection to a FortiAnalyzer unit can quarantine files. FortiGate features such as virus scanning can also quarantine files.



MM1, MM3, MM4, and MM7 traffic types are only supported in FortiOS Carrier.

```
config antivirus quarantine
    set agelimit {integer}    Age limit for quarantined files (0 - 479 hours, 0 means forever). range[0-479]
    set maxfilesize {integer}  Maximum file size to quarantine (0 - 500 Mbytes, 0 means unlimited). range[0-500]
    set quarantine-quota {integer}  The amount of disk space to reserve for quarantining files (0 - 4294967295 Mbytes,
depends on disk space). range[0-4294967295]
    set drop-infected {option}    Do not quarantine infected files found in sessions using the selected protocols.
Dropped files are deleted instead of being quarantined.
    imap    IMAP.
    smtp    SMTP.
    pop3    POP3.
    http    HTTP.
    ftp     FTP.
    nntp    NNTP.
    imaps   IMAPS.
    smtps   SMTPS.
```

```
pop3s POP3S.
https HTTPS.
ftps FTPS.
mapi MAPI.
cifs CIFS.
mm1 MM1.
mm3 MM3.
mm4 MM4.
mm7 MM7.

set store-infected {option}    Quarantine infected files found in sessions using the selected protocols.
imap IMAP.
smtp SMTP.
pop3 POP3.
http HTTP.
ftp FTP.
nntp NNTP.
imaps IMAPS.
smtps SMTPS.
pop3s POP3S.
https HTTPS.
ftps FTPS.
mapi MAPI.
cifs CIFS.
mm1 MM1.
mm3 MM3.
mm4 MM4.
mm7 MM7.

set drop-blocked {option}    Do not quarantine dropped files found in sessions using the selected protocols. Dropped
files are deleted instead of being quarantined.
imap IMAP.
smtp SMTP.
pop3 POP3.
http HTTP.
ftp FTP.
nntp NNTP.
imaps IMAPS.
smtps SMTPS.
pop3s POP3S.
ftps FTPS.
mapi MAPI.
```

```
cifs    CIFS.
mm1     MM1.
mm3     MM3.
mm4     MM4.
mm7     MM7.
set store-blocked {option}  Quarantine blocked files found in sessions using the selected protocols.
imap    IMAP.
smtp    SMTP.
pop3    POP3.
http    HTTP.
ftp     FTP.
nntp    NNTP.
imaps   IMAPS.
smtps   SMTPS.
pop3s   POP3S.
ftps    FTPS.
mapi    MAPI.
cifs    CIFS.
mm1     MM1.
mm3     MM3.
mm4     MM4.
mm7     MM7.
set drop-heuristic {option}  Do not quarantine files detected by heuristics found in sessions using the selected
protocols. Dropped files are deleted instead of being quarantined.
imap    IMAP.
smtp    SMTP.
pop3    POP3.
http    HTTP.
ftp     FTP.
nntp    NNTP.
imaps   IMAPS.
smtps   SMTPS.
pop3s   POP3S.
https   HTTPS.
ftps    FTPS.
mapi    MAPI.
cifs    CIFS.
mm1     MM1.
mm3     MM3.
mm4     MM4.
```

```

        mm7      MM7.
    set store-heuristic {option}  Quarantine files detected by heuristics found in sessions using the selected protocols.

        imap     IMAP.
        smtp     SMTP.
        pop3     POP3.
        http     HTTP.
        ftp      FTP.
        nntp     NNTP.
        imaps    IMAPS.
        smtps    SMTPS.
        pop3s    POP3S.
        https    HTTPS.
        ftps     FTPS.
        mapi     MAPI.
        cifs     CIFS.
        mm1      MM1.
        mm3      MM3.
        mm4      MM4.
        mm7      MM7.

    set lowspace {drop-new | ovrw-old}  Select the method for handling additional files when running low on disk space.
        drop-new  Drop (delete) the most recently quarantined files.
        ovrw-old  Overwrite the oldest quarantined files. That is, the files that are closest to being deleted from the quarantine.

    set destination {NULL | disk | FortiAnalyzer}  Choose whether to quarantine files to the FortiGate disk or to FortiAnalyzer or to delete them instead of quarantining them.
        NULL      Files that would be quarantined are deleted.
        disk      Quarantine files to the FortiGate hard disk.
        FortiAnalyzer  FortiAnalyzer
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

agelimit <hours>

Note: This entry is only available when **destination** is set to either **disk** or **FortiAnalyzer**.

Set the age limit in hours for how long files are kept in quarantine. Set the range between 0-479 (or no limit to just under 20 days). The default is 0.

destination {NULL | disk | FortiAnalyzer}

Set the destination where files are quarantined:

- **NULL:** No files are quarantined.
- **disk:** Files are quarantined using the FortiGate's hard disk (if present).
- **FortiAnalyzer:** Files are quarantined using a FortiAnalyzer.

If the FortiGate has a hard disk, the default is **disk**. If no hard disk is available, the default is **NULL**.

drop-blocked {imap | smtp | pop3 | http | ftp | nntp | imaps | smtps | pop3s | https | ftps | mapi | mm1 | mm3 | mm4 | mm7}

Drop blocked files found in traffic for the specified protocols. By default, no files are dropped.

drop-heuristic {imap | smtp | pop3 | http | ftp | nntp | imaps | smtps | pop3s | https | ftps | mapi | mm1 | mm3 | mm4 | mm7}

Drop files found by heuristic scanning in traffic for the specified protocols. By default, no files are dropped.

drop-infected {imap | smtp | pop3 | http | ftp | mm1 | mm3 | mm4 | mm7}

For FortiOS Carrier, drop intercepted files found in traffic for the specified protocols. By default, no files are dropped.

lowspace {drop-new | ovrw-old}

Select the method for handling additional quarantined files when the FortiGate hard disk is running out of space:

- **drop-new:** Drop new quarantine files.
- **ovrw-old:** Overwrite the oldest file, or lowest TTL (set by default).

maxfilesize <mb>

Specify the maximum file size to quarantine in megabytes. Set the range between 0-500. 0 (set by default) means unlimited.

quarantine-quota <mb>

Set the antivirus quarantine quota in megabytes, which is the amount of disk space to reserve for quarantining files. The maximum limit depends on the FortiGate's total disk space. 0 (set by default) means unlimited.

store-blocked {imap | smtp | pop3 | http | ftp | nntp | imaps | smtps | pop3s | https | ftps | mapi | mm1 | mm3 | mm4 | mm7}

Quarantine blocked files found in traffic for the specified protocols. By default, all protocols are specified.

store-heuristic {imap | smtp | pop3 | http | ftp | nntp | imaps | smtps | pop3s | https | ftps | mapi | mm1 | mm3 | mm4 | mm7}

Quarantine files found by heuristic scanning in traffic for the specified protocols. By default, all protocols are specified.

store-infected {imap | smtp | pop3 | http | ftp | nntp | imaps | smtps | pop3s | https | ftps | mapi | mm1 | mm3 | mm4 | mm7}

Quarantine virus infected files found in traffic for the specified protocols. By default, all protocols are specified.

antivirus settings

Configure basic antivirus settings, such as selecting the default antivirus database and enabling or disabling grayware detection as part of antivirus scanning.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set override-timeout <seconds></code>	Override the large file scan timeout value in seconds. Set the range between 30 - 3600 or (30 seconds to one hour). The default value is 0, disabling the command. When disabled, the daemon adjusts the large file scan timeout based on the file size.

```
config antivirus settings
    set default-db {normal | extended | extreme}  Select the AV database to be used for AV scanning.
        normal    Use the normal AntiVirus database.
        extended  Use the extended AntiVirus database.
        extreme   Use all available AntiVirus databases
    set grayware {enable | disable}  Enable/disable grayware detection when an AntiVirus profile is applied to traffic.
    set override-timeout {integer}  Override the large file scan timeout value in seconds (30 - 3600). Zero is the
default value and is used to disable this command. When disabled, the daemon adjusts the large file scan timeout based
```

```
on the file size. range[30-3600]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

default-db {normal | extended | extreme}

Select the database to be used for antivirus scanning. Both proxy and flow inspection modes use these databases.

- **normal:** Use the normal virus database, which includes viruses that are "in the wild," including the commonly seen viruses. For regular antivirus protection, it is sufficient to use this database (set by default).
- **extended:** Use the extended virus database, which includes both "in the wild" viruses and a large collection of "in the zoo" viruses. It is suitable for an enhanced security environment.
- **extreme:** Use the extreme virus database, which includes both "in the wild" viruses and all available "in the zoo" viruses. It is suitable for an enhanced security environment.

grayware {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the detection of grayware, including adware, dial, downloader, hacker tool, keylogger, RAT, and spyware.

application

Use these commands to configure application control.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [application custom](#)
- [application list](#)
- [application name](#)
- [application rule-settings](#)

application custom

Configure custom firewall application definitions for greater application control.

```
config application custom
  edit {tag}
  # Configure custom application signatures.
  set tag {string}    Signature tag. size[63]
  set name {string}   Name of this custom application signature. size[63]
  set id {integer}    Custom application category ID (use ? to view available options). range[0-4294967295]
  set comment {string} Comment. size[63]
  set signature {string} The text that makes up the actual custom application signature. size[1023]
  set category {integer} Custom application category ID (use ? to view available options). range[0-4294967295]
  set protocol {string} Custom application signature protocol.
  set technology {string} Custom application signature technology.
  set behavior {string} Custom application signature behavior.
  set vendor {string} Custom application signature vendor.
  next
end
```

Note that **name** and **id** are not configurable.

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

behavior {All | 2 | 3 | 5 | 6}

Set the application behavior filter to apply:

- **All:** All behaviors
- **2:** Botnet
- **3:** Evasive
- **5:** Excessive-Bandwidth
- **6:** Tunneling

category <ID>

Set the category ID to specify an application category. Type `set category ?` to view all available options.

protocol <ID>

Set the protocol IDs that this application uses. Type `set protocol ?` to view all available options. Separate multiple entries with a space.

signature <string>

Set the application signature. For information about custom application signatures, see [IPS Signatures](#).

technology {All | 0 | 1 | 2 | 4}

Set the technology IDs of those technologies :

- **All:** All technologies
- **0:** Network-Protocol
- **1:** Browser-Based
- **2:** Client-Server
- **4:** Peer-to-Peer

Separate each value with a space to add multiple values.

vendor <ID>

Set the vendor IDs of the vendors to include. Type `set vendor ?` to view all available options. Separate multiple entries with a space.

application list

Configure an application control list and configure the application options.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set extended log {enable disable}</code>	When extended UTM log is enabled, more HTTP header information will be logged when a UTM event happens. Note that the following HTTP header fields are included in extended-log: http method, client content type, server content type, user agent, referer, and x-forward-for.

```
config application list
  edit {name}
  # Configure application control lists.
  set name {string}    List name. size[35]
  set comment {string}  comments size[255]
  set replacemsg-group {string} Replacement message group. size[35] - datasource(s): system.replacemsg-group.-
name
  set extended-log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable extended logging.
  set other-application-action {pass | block}  Action for other applications.
      pass  Allow sessions matching an application in this application list.
      block Block sessions matching an application in this application list.
  set app-replacemsg {disable | enable}  Enable/disable replacement messages for blocked applications.
  set other-application-log {disable | enable}  Enable/disable logging for other applications.
  set unknown-application-action {pass | block}  Pass or block traffic from unknown applications.
```

```

    pass    Pass or allow unknown applications.
    block   Drop or block unknown applications.
set unknown-application-log {disable | enable}  Enable/disable logging for unknown applications.
set p2p-black-list {skype | edonkey | bittorrent}  P2P applications to be black listed.
    skype      Skype.
    edonkey    Edonkey.
    bittorrent Bit torrent.
set deep-app-inspection {disable | enable}  Enable/disable deep application inspection.
set options {option}  Basic application protocol signatures allowed by default.
    allow-dns    Allow DNS.
    allow-icmp   Allow ICMP.
    allow-http   Allow generic HTTP web browsing.
    allow-ssl    Allow generic SSL communication.
    allow-quic   Allow QUIC.
config entries
    edit {id}
    # Application list entries.
    set id {integer}  Entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
    config risk
        edit {level}
        # Risk, or impact, of allowing traffic from this application to occur (1 - 5; Low, Elevated, Medium,
High, and Critical).
        set level {integer}  Risk, or impact, of allowing traffic from this application to occur (1 -
5; Low, Elevated, Medium, High, and Critical). range[0-4294967295]
        next
    config category
        edit {id}
        # Category ID list.
        set id {integer}  Application category ID. range[0-4294967295]
        next
    config sub-category
        edit {id}
        # Application Sub-category ID list.
        set id {integer}  Application sub-category ID. range[0-4294967295]
        next
    config application
        edit {id}
        # ID of allowed applications.
        set id {integer}  Application IDs. range[0-4294967295]
        next

```

```

set protocols {string}    Application protocol filter.
set vendor {string}      Application vendor filter.
set technology {string}   Application technology filter.
set behavior {string}     Application behavior filter.
set popularity {option}   Application popularity filter (1 - 5, from least to most popular).
    1 Popularity level 1.
    2 Popularity level 2.
    3 Popularity level 3.
    4 Popularity level 4.
    5 Popularity level 5.
config parameters
    edit {id}
    # Application parameters.
        set id {integer}    Parameter ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set value {string}  Parameter value. size[63]
    next
set action {pass | block | reset}    Pass or block traffic, or reset connection for traffic from this
application.
    pass    Pass or allow matching traffic.
    block   Block or drop matching traffic.
    reset   Reset sessions for matching traffic.
set log {disable | enable}    Enable/disable logging for this application list.
set log-packet {disable | enable}    Enable/disable packet logging.
set rate-count {integer}    Count of the rate. range[0-65535]
set rate-duration {integer}    Duration (sec) of the rate. range[1-65535]
set rate-mode {periodical | continuous}    Rate limit mode.
    periodical    Allow configured number of packets every rate-duration.
    continuous    Block packets once the rate is reached.
set rate-track {option}    Track the packet protocol field.
    none          none
    src-ip        Source IP.
    dest-ip       Destination IP.
    dhcp-client-mac    DHCP client.
    dns-domain    DNS domain.
set session-ttl {integer}    Session TTL (0 = default). range[0-4294967295]
set shaper {string}    Traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.traffic-shaper.name
set shaper-reverse {string}    Reverse traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.traffic-
shaper.name
set per-ip-shaper {string}    Per-IP traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.per-ip-
shaper.name

```



```
        set quarantine {none | attacker}    Quarantine method.
            none        Quarantine is disabled.
            attacker    Block all traffic sent from attacker's IP address. The attacker's IP address is also
added to the banned user list. The target's address is not affected.
        set quarantine-expiry {string}    Duration of quarantine. (Format ###d##h##m, minimum 1m, maximum
364d23h59m, default = 5m). Requires quarantine set to attacker.
        set quarantine-log {disable | enable}    Enable/disable quarantine logging.
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

app-replacemsg {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable replacement messages for blocked applications.

options {allow-dns | allow-icmp | allow-http | allow-ssl}

Set which basic application protocols are allowed by default:

- **allow-dns**: Allow DNS traffic (set by default).
- **allow-icmp**: Allow ICMP traffic.
- **allow-http**: Allow generic HTTP web browsing.
- **allow-ssl**: Allow generic SSL communication.

other-application-action {pass | block}

Either pass (by default) or block traffic from other applications.

other-application-log {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) logging traffic from other applications.

p2p-black-list {skype | edonkey | bittorrent}

Add P2P applications to a blocklist.

If **p2p-black-list** is set to **skype**, the IPS looks for patterns in new traffic that match patterns in Skype traffic detected within the last three minutes; three minutes is how long information about matched P2P traffic remains in shared memory. If a match is found, the IPS assumes that this new traffic is also Skype traffic.

replacemsg-group <group-name>

Select a replacement message group to use for the control list. To create a replacement message group, see [config system replacemsg-group](#).

unknown-application-action {pass | block}

Either pass (by default) or block traffic from unknown applications.

unknown-application-log {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) logging traffic from unknown applications.

config entries

Configure entries on the application control list.

action {pass | block | reset}

Select the action to apply to matching traffic from the following options:

- **pass:** Allow traffic from the specified application/s.
- **block:** Stop traffic from the specified application/s (set by default).
- **reset:** Reset the network connection.

application <ID>

Set which applications are allowed. Type `set application ?` to view all options.

behavior {all | 2 | 3 | 5 | 6}

Select the application behaviors filter:

- **all**: All behaviors (set by default)
- **2**: Botnet
- **3**: Evasive
- **5**: Excessive-Bandwidth
- **6**: Tunneling

category <ID>

Set the application category. Type `set category ?` to view all options.

Use this option to set a specific category to limit the scope of the `All` setting of the application command. For example, setting **category** to `im` and **application** to `All` will have the list entry include all IM applications. Similarly, the applications listed with the `set application ?` command will be limited to the currently configured category.

log {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable logging for traffic from this list entry when `action` is `pass`.

log-packet {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) packet logging for traffic from this list entry.

popularity {1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5}

Enter the popularity levels of this application, with 1 being the least popular and 5 being the most popular. The default is 1 2 3 4 5.

protocols <ID>

Set which protocols are allowed. Type `set protocols ?` to view all options. The default is `all`.

quarantine {none | attacker}

Set quarantine options for when an attack is detected. The default is `none`.

risk {1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5}

Set the risk level for the applications:

- **1:** Low
- **2:** Elevated
- **3:** Medium
- **4:** High
- **5:** Critical

session-ttl <int>

Set the Session TTL. Setting **session-ttl** to 0 (by default) disables this option, and defaults to the option set in [config system session-ttl](#).

sub-category <ID>

Set the application sub-category. Type `set sub-category ?` to view all options. Enter `all` to include all sub-categories.

tags <string>

Optionally assign object tags.

technology {All | 0 | 1 | 2 | 4}

Select the technologies involved in these applications:

- **All:** All technologies (set by default)
- **0:** Network-Protocol
- **1:** Browser-Based
- **2:** Client-Server
- **4:** Peer-to-Peer

vendor <ID>

Set which application vendors are allowed. Type `set vendor ?` to view all options. The default is `All`. Separate multiple entries with a space.

application name

Use this command to view the application category and ID of each application, among other settings.

This command is read only and cannot be used to change application settings.

```
config application name
  edit {name}
  # Configure application signatures.
  set name {string}    Application name. size[63]
  set id {integer}     Application ID. range[0-4294967295]
  set category {integer} Application category ID. range[0-4294967295]
  set sub-category {integer} Application sub-category ID. range[0-255]
  set popularity {integer} Application popularity. range[0-255]
  set risk {integer}   Application risk. range[0-255]
  set weight {integer} Application weight. range[0-255]
  set protocol {string} Application protocol.
  set technology {string} Application technology.
  set behavior {string} Application behavior.
  set vendor {string}  Application vendor.
  set parameter {string} Application parameter name. size[35]
  config metadata
    edit {id}
    # Meta data.
    set id {integer}   ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set metaid {integer} Meta ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set valueid {integer} Value ID. range[0-4294967295]
  next
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

config application name <application-name>

Name of the application to view. Enter the first letter(s) of the name then use the **Tab** button to get the correct name. You can also type `config application name ?` to view all options.

get

Once viewing an application, use `get` to view information about the application, as shown by the set options in the CLI syntax above. Note that this command is read only and the `set` options cannot be changed or configured.

application rule-settings

Configure application rule settings. This command requires that object-tags have been created in [config system object-tagging](#).

```
config application rule-settings
  edit {id}
    # Configure application rule settings.
    set id {integer}    Rule ID. range[0-4294967295]
  next
end
```

config application rule-settings <ID>

The ID for the rule settings entry.

tags <tag-name>

The tags for the rule settings entry, as created in [config system object-tagging](#).

authentication

Use these commands to configure authentication.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [authentication rule](#)
- [authentication scheme](#)
- [authentication setting](#)

authentication rule

Configure authentication rules based on protocol, address, and other parameters.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set protocol {ssh ...}</code>	New SSH authentication protocol. When user/user-group is set in an SSH proxy policy , firewall authentication can be carried out for SSH proxy traffic.

```
config authentication rule
  edit {name}
    # Configure Authentication Rules.
    set name {string}    Authentication rule name. size[35]
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable this authentication rule.
    set protocol {http | ftp | socks | ssh}  Select the protocol to use for authentication (default = http). Users
connect to the FortiGate using this protocol and are asked to authenticate.
```

```

        http    Use HTTP for authentication.
        ftp     Use FTP for authentication.
        socks   Use SOCKS for authentication.
        ssh     Use SSH for authentication.
    config srcaddr
        edit {name}
        # Select an IPv4 source address from available options. Required for web proxy authentication.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name, firewall.proxy-address.name, firewall.proxy-addrgrp.name
        next
    config srcaddr6
        edit {name}
        # Select an IPv6 source address. Required for web proxy authentication.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name, firewall.addrgrp6.name
        next
        set ip-based {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IP-based authentication. Once a user authenticates all traffic
from the IP address the user authenticated from is allowed.
        set active-auth-method {string}    Select an active authentication method. size[35] - datasource(s): authen-
tication.scheme.name
        set sso-auth-method {string}    Select a single-sign on (SSO) authentication method. size[35] - datasource(s):
authentication.scheme.name
        set web-auth-cookie {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Web authentication cookies (default = disable).
        set transaction-based {enable | disable}    Enable/disable transaction based authentication (default = disable).
        set comments {string}    Comment. size[1023]
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

active-auth-method <name>

Set the active authentication method using the scheme name, as created in [config authentication scheme](#).

ip-based {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable IP-based authentication.

protocol {https | ftp | socks | ssh}

Matching protocol for authentication. The default is `http`.

srcaddr <addr>

Source address or address group name. This option (or **srcaddr6**) must be set.

srcaddr6 <addr>

Source IPv6 address or address group name, available for web proxy only. This option (or **srcaddr**) must be set.

sso-auth-method <name>

Set the Single-Sign-On (SSO) authentication method using the scheme name, as created in [config authentication scheme](#).

status {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the authentication rule status.

transaction-based {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) transaction-based authentication.

web-auth-cookie {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the web authentication cookie.

authentication scheme

Configure authentication schemes.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>set kerberos-keytab <keytab></code>	Specify Kerberos keytab to use, in order to avoid authorization failures when multiple keytabs have been created for multiple domains/servers. Note that <code>kerberos-keytab</code> is only available when <code>method</code> is set to <code>negotiate</code>.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set domain-controller <dc-setting></code>	Add domain controller setting in the authentication scheme. Note that this entry is only available when <code>method</code> is set to <code>ntlm</code> and/or <code>negotiate-ntlm</code> is set to <code>enable</code>.
<pre>set method {ssh-publickey ...} set user-database <server-name> set ssh-ca <ca-cert-name></pre>	<p>New public key based SSH authentication scheme.</p> <p>The user name is embedded in <code>ssh-publickey</code>. User group information will be retrieved if the public key is validated by the CA.</p> <p>Note that both <code>user-database</code> and <code>ssh-ca</code> are only available when <code>method</code> is set to <code>ssh-publickey</code>.</p>

```
config authentication scheme
  edit {name}
  # Configure Authentication Schemes.
  set name {string}    Authentication scheme name. size[35]
  set method {option}  Authentication methods (default = basic).
```

```

        ntlm          NTLM authentication.
        basic         Basic HTTP authentication.
        digest        Digest HTTP authentication.
        form          Form-based HTTP authentication.
        negotiate     Negotiate authentication.
        fsso          Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO) authentication.
        rso           RADIUS Single Sign-On (RSSO) authentication.
        ssh-publickey Public key based SSH authentication.
    set negotiate-ntlm {enable | disable}  Enable/disable negotiate authentication for NTLM (default = disable).
    set kerberos-keytab {string}           Kerberos keytab setting. size[35] - datasource(s): user.krb-keytab.name
    set domain-controller {string}        Domain controller setting. size[35] - datasource(s): user.domain-con-
troller.name
    set fsso-agent-for-ntlm {string}       FSSO agent to use for NTLM authentication. size[35] - datasource(s):
user.fsso.name
    set require-tfa {enable | disable}     Enable/disable two-factor authentication (default = disable).
    set fsso-guest {enable | disable}      Enable/disable user fsso-guest authentication (default = disable).
    config user-database
        edit {name}
            # Authentication server to contain user information; "local" (default) or "123" (for LDAP).
            set name {string}              Authentication server name. size[64] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.datasource.name,user.radius.name,user.tacacs+.name,user.ldap.name,user.group.name
        next
        set ssh-ca {string}               SSH CA name. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.ssh.local-ca.name
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

fsso-guest {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when **method** is set to **ntlm**, **basic**, **digest**, or **negotiate**.

Enable or disable (by default) user fsso-guest.

method {ntlm | basic | digest | form | negotiate | fsso | rso | ssh-publickey}

Configure the authentication method for this scheme.

- **ntlm**: NTLM authentication. Note that this can only be set when an FSSO agent has been configured.
- **basic**: Basic HTTP authentication.
- **digest**: Digest HTTP authentication.
- **form**: Form-based HTTP authentication.
- **negotiate**: Negotiate authentication.
- **fsso**: Fortinet Single Sign-On authentication. Note that this can only be set when an FSSO agent has been configured.
- **rssso**: RADIUS Single Sign-On authentication. Note that this can only be set when an RSSO server has been enabled.
- **ssh-publickey**: Public key based authentication.

negotiate-ntlm {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when **method** is set to **negotiate**.

Enable or disable (by default) NTLM negotiation.

require-tfa {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when **method** is set to **form**.

Enable or disable (by default) two-factor authentication.

user-database <name>

Note: This entry is only available when **method** is set to **basic**, **digest**, or **form**.

Configure the authentication server that contains user information; either local, RADIUS, TACACS+, or LDAP.

authentication setting

Configure authentication schemes and the host/address name and port number for captive portal.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set captive-portal-type {fqdn ip} set captive-portal6 <host-name> set captive-portal-ip6 <ipv6-addr></pre>	<p>New option to determine the captive portal type. When <code>captive-portal-type</code> is set to <code>fqdn</code>, use <code>captive-portal6</code> to set the host name. When <code>captive-portal-type</code> is set to <code>ip</code>, use <code>captive-portal-ip6</code> to set the IP.</p> <p>Kerberos authentication requires the captive portal to be an FQDN address that is resolved to a local IP address. However, it becomes more complicated to setup an FQDN address in a local user deployment. Therefore you can now set the captive portal type to either use an FQDN or IP address.</p>

```
config authentication setting
    set active-auth-scheme {string}    Active authentication method (scheme name). size[35] - datasource(s): authentication.scheme.name
    set sso-auth-scheme {string}    Single-Sign-On authentication method (scheme name). size[35] - datasource(s): authentication.scheme.name
    set captive-portal-type {fqdn | ip}    Captive portal type.
        fqdn    Use FQDN for captive portal.
        ip    Use an IP address for captive portal.
    set captive-portal-ip {ipv4 address any}    Captive portal IP address.
    set captive-portal-ip6 {ipv6 address}    Captive portal IPv6 address.
    set captive-portal {string}    Captive portal host name. size[255] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name
    set captive-portal6 {string}    IPv6 captive portal host name. size[255] - datasource(s): firewall.address6.name
    set captive-portal-port {integer}    Captive portal port number (1 - 65535, default = 0). range[0-65535]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

active-auth-scheme <name>

Set the active authentication method using the scheme name created in [config authentication scheme](#).

captive-portal <name>

Set the captive portal host name.

captive-portal-port <port>

Set the captive portal port number. Set the value between 0-65535. The default is set to 0.

sso-auth-scheme <name>

Set the SSO authentication method using the scheme name created in [config authentication scheme](#).

aws

Use this command to configure AWS settings.

This section includes syntax for the following command:

- [aws setting](#)

aws setting

Configure AWS (Amazon Web Services) settings. These settings are used to integrate AWS API to FGT AWS and AWSONDEMAND for dynamic firewall address objects.

```
config aws setting
    set access-key { string }    AWS access key. size[31]
    set secret-key { password_string }    AWS secret key. size[59]
    set region { string }    AWS region name. size[15]
    set vpc-id { string }    AWS VPC ID. size[15]
    set update-interval { integer }    AWS service update interval (60 - 600 sec, default = 60). range[60-600]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

certificate

Note: The following commands are only available when VDOMs are enabled. Any certificate uploaded to a VDOM is only accessible to that VDOM. Any certificate uploaded to the **Global** VDOM, it is globally accessible by all VDOMs.

Use these commands to configure per-VDOM global certificate settings.

The process for obtaining and installing certificates is as follows:

1. Use the `execute vpn certificate local` command to generate a CSR.
2. Send the CSR to a CA.

The CA sends you the CA certificate, the signed local certificate and the CRL.

3. Use the `certificate local` command to install the signed local certificate.
4. Use the `certificate ca` command to install the CA certificate.
5. Use the `certificate crl` command to install the CRL.

Depending on your terminal software, you can copy the certificate and paste it into the command. The local certificate can update automatically from a Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) server.

To configure certificates outside of VDOMs, use the `config vpn certificate` [ca](#), [crl](#), and [local](#) commands.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [certificate ca](#)
- [certificate crl](#)
- [certificate local](#)

certificate ca

This command is only available when VDOMs are enabled.

Use this command to install Certificate Authority (CA) root certificates for this VDOM. When a CA processes your Certificate Signing Request (CSR), it sends you the CA certificate, the signed local certificate and the CRL.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.5.

Command	Description
<code>set source {factory user bundle}</code>	The fortiguard option has been removed

```
config certificate ca
  edit {name}
  # CA certificate.
  set name {string}    Name. size[79]
  set ca {string}      CA certificate as a PEM file.
  set range {global | vdom}  Either global or VDOM IP address range for the CA certificate.
                        global  Global range.
                        vdom    VDOM IP address range.
  set source {factory | user | bundle}  CA certificate source type.
                        factory  Factory installed certificate.
                        user      User generated certificate.
                        bundle    Bundle file certificate.
  set trusted {enable | disable}  Enable/disable as a trusted CA.
  set scep-url {string}  URL of the SCEP server. size[255]
  set auto-update-days {integer}  Number of days to wait before requesting an updated CA certificate (0 -
4294967295, 0 = disabled). range[0-4294967295]
  set auto-update-days-warning {integer}  Number of days before an expiry-warning message is generated (0 -
4294967295, 0 = disabled). range[0-4294967295]
  set source-ip {ipv4 address}  Source IP address for communications to the SCEP server.
  set last-updated {integer}  Time at which CA was last updated. range[0-4294967295]
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

auto-update-days <days>

This entry is only available when `scep-url` has been set.

Enter how many days before expiry the FortiGate requests an updated CA certificate. Set to 0 (by default) for no auto-update.

For example, if the certificate is expiring in a year and you want to use SCEP to request a new certificate five days before it expires, the value should be 5.

auto-update-days-warning <days>

This entry is only available when `scep-url` has been set.

Enter how many days before expiry the FortiGate sends a warning about updating a CA certificate. Set to 0 (by default) for no warning.

For example, if the certificate is expiring in a year and you want to get a warning five days before it expires, the value should be 5.

ca <cert>

Enter or retrieve the CA certificate as a Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) file.

last-updated <days>

This entry is only available when a `ca` has been set.

Amount of time in days since the CA was last updated.

range {global | vdom}

Either `global` (by default) or `vdom` IP address range for the CA certificate.

scep-url <url>

URL of the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) server.

source {factory | user | bundle}

CA certificate source.

- **factory**: Default certificate that came with the FortiGate
- **user**: User certificate (set by default)
- **bundle**: Certificate from a bundle file

source-ip <ipv4-address>

IPv4 address used to verify that the request is sent from an expected IP.

trusted {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable as a trusted CA.

certificate crl

Note: The following command is only available when VDOMs are enabled.

Use this command to install a Certificate Revocation List (CRL) for this VDOM. When a CA processes your Certificate Signing Request (CSR), it sends you the CA certificate, the signed local certificate and the CRL.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.5.

Command	Description
set source {factory user bundle}	The fortiguard option has been removed

```
config certificate crl
  edit {name}
    # Certificate Revocation List as a PEM file.
    set name {string}    Name. size[35]
    set crl {string}    Certificate Revocation List as a PEM file.
    set range {global | vdom}    Either global or VDOM IP address range for the certificate.
                                global    Global range.
                                vdom      VDOM IP address range.
```

```

    set source {factory | user | bundle}    Certificate source type.
        factory    Factory installed certificate.
        user       User generated certificate.
        bundle     Bundle file certificate.
    set update-vdom {string}    VDOM for CRL update. size[31] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
    set ldap-server {string}    LDAP server name for CRL auto-update. size[35]
    set ldap-username {string}  LDAP server user name. size[63]
    set ldap-password {password_string}  LDAP server user password. size[128]
    set http-url {string}      HTTP server URL for CRL auto-update. size[255]
    set scep-url {string}      SCEP server URL for CRL auto-update. size[255]
    set scep-cert {string}     Local certificate for SCEP communication for CRL auto-update. size[35] - datasource(s):
certificate.local.name
    set update-interval {integer}    Time in seconds before the FortiGate checks for an updated CRL. Set to 0 to
update only when it expires. range[0-4294967295]
    set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IP address for communications to a HTTP or SCEP CA server.
    set last-updated {integer}     Time at which CRL was last updated. range[0-4294967295]
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

crl <pem-file>

The name of the CRL in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format.

http-url <url>

URL of an HTTP server used for automatic CRL certificate updates. The URL *must* begin with either **http://** or **https://**.

last-updated <days>

Note: This entry is only available when a `crl` has been set.

Amount of time in days since the CRL was last updated.

ldap-password <password>

Note: This entry is only available when `ldap-server` has been set. LDAP login password.

ldap-server <name>

Name of the LDAP server defined in `config user ldap` for CRL auto-update.

ldap-username <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `ldap-server` has been set. LDAP login name.

range {global | vdom}

Either `global` (by default) or `vdom` IP address range for the certificate.

scep-cert <cert>

Local certificate used for SCEP communication for CRL auto-update. If a certificate hasn't already been set, the default certificate used is `Fortinet_CA_SSL`.

scep-url <url>

URL of the SCEP server used for automatic CRL certificate updates. The URL *must* begin with either `http://` or `https://`.

source {factory | user | bundle}

CA certificate source:

- **factory:** Default certificate that came with the FortiGate
- **user:** User certificate (set by default)
- **bundle:** Certificate from a bundle file

source-ip <ipv4-address>

IPv4 address used to verify that the request is sent from an expected IP.

update-interval <interval>

Period of time in seconds before the FortiGate unit checks for an updated CRL. Enter 0 (by default) to update the CRL only when it expires.

update-vdom <vdom>

Name of the VDOM for CRL update. This is set to the `root` VDOM by default.

certificate local

Note: The following command is only available when VDOMs are enabled.

Use this command to install local certificates for this VDOM.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.5.

Command	Description
<code>set source {factory user bundle}</code>	The <code>fortiguard</code> option has been removed

```

config certificate local
  edit {name}
    # Local keys and certificates.
    set name {string}    Name. size[35]
    set password {password_string}    Password as a PEM file. size[128]
    set comments {string}    Comment. size[511]
    set private-key {string}    PEM format key, encrypted with a password.
    set certificate {string}    PEM format certificate.
    set csr {string}    Certificate Signing Request.
    set state {string}    Certificate Signing Request State.
    set scep-url {string}    SCEP server URL. size[255]
    set range {global | vdom}    Either a global or VDOM IP address range for the certificate.
      global    Global range.
      vdom      VDOM IP address range.

```

```

    set source {factory | user | bundle}    Certificate source type.
        factory    Factory installed certificate.
        user       User generated certificate.
        bundle     Bundle file certificate.
    set auto-regenerate-days {integer}    Number of days to wait before expiry of an updated local certificate is
requested (0 = disabled). range[0-4294967295]
    set auto-regenerate-days-warning {integer}    Number of days to wait before an expiry warning message is gen-
erated (0 = disabled). range[0-4294967295]
    set scep-password {password_string}    SCEP server challenge password for auto-regeneration. size[128]
    set ca-identifier {string}    CA identifier of the CA server for signing via SCEP. size[255]
    set name-encoding {printable | utf8}    Name encoding method for auto-regeneration.
        printable    Printable encoding (default).
        utf8         UTF-8 encoding.
    set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IP address for communications to the SCEP server.
    set ike-localid {string}    Local ID the FortiGate uses for authentication as a VPN client. size[63]
    set ike-localid-type {asn1dn | fqdn}    IKE local ID type.
        asn1dn    ASN.1 distinguished name.
        fqdn      Fully qualified domain name.
    set last-updated {integer}    Time at which certificate was last updated. range[0-4294967295]
    set enroll-protocol {none | scep | cmpv2}    Certificate enrollment protocol.
        none      None (default).
        scep      Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol.
        cmpv2     Certificate Management Protocol Version 2.
    set cmp-server {string}    'ADDRESS:PORT' for CMP server. size[63]
    set cmp-path {string}    Path location inside CMP server. size[255]
    set cmp-server-cert {string}    CMP server certificate. size[35] - datasource(s): certificate.ca.name
    set cmp-regeneration-method {keyupate | renewal}    CMP auto-regeneration method.
        keyupate    Key Update.
        renewal     Renewal.

next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

auto-regenerate-days <days>

This entry is only available when `scep-url` has been set.

Enter how many days before expiry the FortiGate requests an updated local certificate. Set to 0 (by default) for no auto-update.

For example, if the certificate is expiring in a year and you want to use SCEP to request a new certificate five days before it expires, the value should be 5.

auto-regenerate-days-warning <days>

This entry is only available when `scep-url` has been set.

Enter how many days before expiry the FortiGate sends a warning about updating a local certificate. Set to 0 (by default) for no warning.

For example, if the certificate is expiring in a year and you want to get a warning five days before it expires, the value should be 5.

ca-identifier <name>

This entry is only available when `scep-url` has been set.

CA identifier of the CA server for signing via SCEP.

certificate <certificate>

This is only available for local entries that have certificates assigned to them already.

Certificate in PEM format.

csr <cert>

Certificate Signing Request (CSR) to be signed.

ike-localid <id>

This entry is only available when `ike-localid-type` is set to `fqdn`.

Local ID that the FortiGate will use for authentication purposes as a VPN client.

ike-localid-type <type>

IKE local ID type:

- **asn1dn**: ASN.1 Distinguished Name ID (set by default)
- **fqdn**: Fully Qualified Domain Name ID

last-updated <days>

This entry is only available when a `certificate` has been set.

Amount of time in days since the certificate was last updated.

name-encoding {printable | utf8}

This entry is only available when `scep-url` has been set.

Name encoding method for auto-regeneration:

- **printable:** Printable encoding (also known as Quoted-Printable, or QP encoding) uses printable ASCII alphanumeric characters and the equals (=) sign (set by default).
- **utf8:** UTF-8 encoding uses all possible characters.

password <password>

Password in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format.

private-key <key>

Private key in PEM format, encrypted with the password.

range {global | vdom}

Either `global` (by default) or `vdom` IP address range for the certificate.

scep-password <password>

This entry is only available when `scep-url` has been set.

Password for the SCEP server.

scep-url <url>

URL for the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) server.

source {factory | user | bundle}

Select the certificate's source:

- **factory:** Default certificate that came with the FortiGate
- **user:** User certificate (set by default)
- **bundle:** Certificate from a bundle file

source-ip <ipv4-addr>

Source IP address for communications to the SCEP server.

state <state>

State of the CSR.

dlp

Use these commands to configure Data Leak Prevention (DLP). Note that DLP is only available in proxy-based inspection.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [dlp filepattern](#)
- [dlp fp-doc-source](#)
- [dlp fp-sensitivity](#)
- [dlp sensor](#)
- [dlp settings](#)

dlp filepattern

Use this command to add, edit or delete the file patterns used for DLP file blocking and to set which protocols to check for files to block.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<code>set filetype prc</code>	The <code>prc</code> file type has been removed.
<code>set filetype {mach-o dmg .net xar chm iso crx}</code>	New <code>mach-o</code> , <code>dmg</code> , <code>.net</code> , <code>xar</code> , <code>chm</code> , <code>iso</code> , and <code>crx</code> file types added.

```
config dlp filepattern
edit {id}
# Configure file patterns used by DLP blocking.
set id {integer} ID. range[0-4294967295]
set name {string} Name of table containing the file pattern list. size[35]
set comment {string} Optional comments. size[255]
config entries
```

```
edit {pattern}
# Configure file patterns used by DLP blocking.
  set filter-type {pattern | type}  Filter by file name pattern or by file type.
    pattern  Filter by file name pattern.
    type     Filter by file type.
  set pattern {string}  Add a file name pattern. size[79]
  set file-type {option}  Select a file type.
    7z          Match 7-zip files.
    arj         Match arj compressed files.
    cab         Match Windows cab files.
    lzh         Match lzh compressed files.
    rar         Match rar archives.
    tar         Match tar files.
    zip         Match zip files.
    bzip        Match bzip files.
    gzip        Match gzip files.
    bzip2       Match bzip2 files.
    xz          Match xz files.
    bat         Match Windows batch files.
    msc         Match msc files.
    uue         Match uue files.
    mime        Match mime files.
    base64      Match base64 files.
    binhex      Match binhex files.
    elf         Match elf files.
    exe         Match Windows executable files.
    hta         Match hta files.
    html        Match html files.
    jad          Match jad files.
    class       Match class files.
    cod         Match cod files.
    javascript  Match javascript files.
    msoffice    Match MS-Office files. For example, doc, xls, ppt, and so on.
    msofficex   Match MS-Office XML files. For example, docx, xlsx, pptx, and so on.
    fsg         Match fsg files.
    upx         Match upx files.
    petite      Match petite files.
    aspack      Match aspack files.
    sis         Match sis files.
    hlp         Match Windows help files.
```

```

    activemime Match activemime files.
    jpeg       Match jpeg files.
    gif        Match gif files.
    tiff       Match tiff files.
    png        Match png files.
    bmp        Match bmp files.
    ignored    Match ignored files.
    unknown    Match unknown files.
    mpeg       Match mpeg files.
    mov        Match mov files.
    mp3        Match mp3 files.
    wma        Match wma files.
    wav        Match wav files.
    pdf        Match Acrobat pdf files.
    avi        Match avi files.
    rm         Match rm files.
    torrent    Match torrent files.
    hibun      Match hibun files.
    msi        Match Windows Installer msi files.
    mach-o     Match Mach object files.
    dmg        Match Apple disk image files.
    .net       Match .NET files.
    xar        Match xar archive files.
    chm        Match Windows compiled HTML help files.
    iso        Match ISO archive files.
    crx        Match Chrome extension files.

next
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

config entries

Configure file patterns used by DLP blocking.

file-type <string>

Note: This entry is only available when **filter-type** is set to **type**.

This file type filter examines the file contents to determine the type of file and look for a match to the `file-type` specified. Enter `set file-type ?` to display all available options.

The file name and file extension are ignored. Because of the way the file type filter works, renaming files to make them appear to be of a different type will not allow them past the FortiGate unit without detection.

Two of the available options are not file types:

- **unknown:** To configure a rule affecting every file format the file type filter unit does not recognize. Unknown includes every file format not available in the `file-type` command.
- **ignored:** To configure a rule affecting traffic the FortiGate unit typically does not scan. This includes primarily streaming audio and video.

filter-type {pattern | type}

Filter by file pattern name (set by default) or by file type:

- **pattern:** Filter based on the file name. The pattern may include wildcards (*). For example, blocking `*.scr` will stop all files with a `.scr` file extension.
- **type:** Filter based on examination of the file contents, regardless of the file name. If you block the file type Archive (zip), all zip archives are blocked even if named with a different file extension.

dlp fp-doc-source

Use this command to apply default or custom fingerprint sensitivity levels and add fingerprinting document sources, including the server and filepath for the source files. Configure the FortiGate to connect to a file share on a daily, weekly, or monthly basis.

```
config dlp fp-doc-source
  edit {name}
    # Create a DLP fingerprint database by allowing the FortiGate to access a file server containing files from which to
    create fingerprints.
    set name {string}    Name of the DLP fingerprint database. size[35]
    set server-type {samba}    Protocol used to communicate with the file server. Currently only Samba (SMB) servers
    are supported.
        samba    SAMBA server.
    set server {string}    IPv4 or IPv6 address of the server. size[35]
    set period {none | daily | weekly | monthly}    Frequency for which the FortiGate checks the server for new or
```

changed files.

```

    none      Check the server when the FortiGate starts up.
    daily     Check the server once a day.
    weekly    Check the server once a week.
    monthly   Check the server once a month.

```

```

set vdom {mgmt | current}  Select the VDOM that can communicate with the file server.

```

```

    mgmt      Communicate with the file server through the management VDOM.

```

```

    current   Communicate with the file server through the VDOM containing this DLP fingerprint database con-

```

figuration.

```

    set scan-subdirectories {enable | disable}  Enable/disable scanning subdirectories to find files to create
fingerprints from.

```

```

    set scan-on-creation {enable | disable}  Enable to keep the fingerprint database up to date when a file is
added or changed on the server.

```

```

    set remove-deleted {enable | disable}  Enable to keep the fingerprint database up to date when a file is
deleted from the server.

```

```

    set keep-modified {enable | disable}  Enable so that when a file is changed on the server the FortiGate keeps
the old fingerprint and adds a new fingerprint to the database.

```

```

    set username {string}  User name required to log into the file server. size[35]

```

```

    set password {password_string}  Password required to log into the file server. size[128]

```

```

    set file-path {string}  Path on the server to the fingerprint files (max 119 characters). size[119]

```

```

    set file-pattern {string}  Files matching this pattern on the server are fingerprinted. Optionally use the *
and ? wildcards. size[35]

```

```

    set sensitivity {string}  Select a sensitivity or threat level for matches with this fingerprint database. Add
sensitivities using fp-sensitivity. size[35] - datasource(s): dlp.fp-sensitivity.name

```

```

    set tod-hour {integer}  Hour of the day on which to scan the server (0 - 23, default = 1). range[0-23]

```

```

    set tod-min {integer}  Minute of the hour on which to scan the server (0 - 59). range[0-59]

```

```

    set weekday {option}  Day of the week on which to scan the server.

```

```

        sunday      Sunday

```

```

        monday      Monday

```

```

        tuesday     Tuesday

```

```

        wednesday   Wednesday

```

```

        thursday    Thursday

```

```

        friday       Friday

```

```

        saturday     Saturday

```

```

    set date {integer}  Day of the month on which to scan the server (1 - 31). range[1-31]

```

```

next

```

```

end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

date <date>

Note: This entry is only available when `period` is set to `monthly`.

Date of the month to run scans. Set the value between 1-31. The default is set to 1.

file-path <server-path>

Path on the server to the fingerprint files.

file-pattern <string>

The file pattern to match when using DLP blocking. Can include wildcards and should include file type. For example, enter `set file-pattern "*fortinet.xls"` to match all files that end in `fortinet.xls`.

keep-modified {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) disable keeping old files in the list, in case an old version of a file is still circulating.

period {none | daily | weekly | monthly}

Select the frequency for server checking. Default is `none`.

remove-deleted {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) disable removing chunks of files deleted from the server.

scan-on-creation {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `period` is set to either `daily`, `weekly`, or `monthly`.

Enable (by default) disable force scan of server when document source is created or edited.

scan-subdirectories {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable scanning of subdirectories while fingerprinting documents.

sensitivity <string>

Sensitivity labels must be created with `config dlp fp-sensitivity` before using this command. Specify a sensitivity label to apply to source files. Enter `set sensitivity ?` to display all available labels.

server <ipv4/6-address>

IPv4 or IPv6 address of the server.

server-type {samba}

Enter the type of DLP server. Currently only Samba (SMB) servers are supported.

tod-hour <hour>

Note: This entry is only available when `period` is set to either `daily`, `weekly`, or `monthly`.

Time of day to run scans. Set the value between 0-23; enter the hour only and use 24-hour clock. The default is set to 1.

tod-min <minute>

Note: This entry is only available when `period` is set to either `daily`, `weekly`, or `monthly`.

Time of day to run scans. Set the value between 0-59; enter the minute only. The default is set to 0.

vdom {mgmt | current}

Choose whether to perform document fingerprinting from the current VDOM or the management VDOM. Files might be accessible through the management VDOM that are not accessible through the current VDOM. Default is `mgmt`.

weekday <day>

Note: This entry is only available when `period` is set to `weekly`.

Day of the week to run scans. The default is set to `sunday`.

dlp fp-sensitivity

Use this command to add fingerprinting sensitivity labels that can be applied to document sources and DLP rules. Note that these entries are labels only.

```
config dlp fp-sensitivity
  edit {name}
    # Create self-explanatory DLP sensitivity levels to be used when setting sensitivity under config fp-doc-source.
    set name {string}    DLP Sensitivity Levels. size[35]
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

edit <name>

Enter a self-explanatory string for DLP sensitivity level. It will be used when setting `sensitivity` under `config fp-doc-source`. Enter `edit ?` to display all existing sensitivity levels; by default, the FortiGate device is preconfigured with the default levels of `Critical`, `Private`, and `Warning`.

dlp sensor

Use this command to create a DLP sensor. The DLP sensor includes settings such as action, archive, and severity for each rule or compound rule. A number of preconfigured sensors are provided with your FortiGate. These can be edited to more closely match your needs. Consult the Handbook's discussion of [data leak prevention concepts](#) for more detail.

Use `diagnose test application dlpfingerprint` to view statistics, dump all chunks, or refresh all document sources in all VDOMs.

Command	Description
<code>set extended-log {enable disable}</code>	When extended UTM log is enabled, more HTTP header information will be logged when a UTM event happens.

Command	Description
	Note that the following HTTP header fields are included in extended-log: http method, client content type, server content type, user agent, referer, and x-forward-for.

```

config dlp sensor
  edit {name}
  # Configure DLP sensors.
  set name {string}    Name of the DLP sensor. size[35]
  set comment {string}  Comment. size[255]
  set replacemsg-group {string}  Replacement message group used by this DLP sensor. size[35] - datasource(s): system.replacemsg-group.name
  config filter
    edit {id}
    # Set up DLP filters for this sensor.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set name {string}    Filter name. size[35]
    set severity {option}  Select the severity or threat level that matches this filter.
                        info      Informational.
                        low       Low.
                        medium    Medium.
                        high      High.
                        critical   Critical.
    set type {file | message}  Select whether to check the content of messages (an email message) or files (downloaded files or email attachments).
                        file      Check the contents of downloaded or attached files.
                        message   Check the contents of email messages, web pages, etc.
    set proto {option}    Check messages or files over one or more of these protocols.
                        smtp      SMTP.
                        pop3      POP3.
                        imap      IMAP.
                        http-get   HTTP GET.
                        http-post  HTTP POST.
                        ftp        FTP.
                        nntp       NNTP.
                        mapi       MAPI
                        mm1        MM1
                        mm3        MM3
                        mm4        MM4

```

```

        mm7          MM7
    set filter-by {option}    Select the type of content to match.
        credit-card    Match credit cards.
        ssn            Match social security numbers.
        regexp         Use a regular expression to match content.
        file-type      Match a DLP file pattern list.
        file-size      Match any file over with a size over the threshold.
        fingerprint    Match against a fingerprint sensitivity.
        watermark      Look for defined file watermarks.
        encrypted      Look for encrypted files.
    set file-size {integer}    Match files this size or larger (0 - 4294967295 kbytes). range[0-4294967295]
    set company-identifier {string}    Enter a company identifier watermark to match. Only watermarks that
your company has placed on the files are matched. size[35]
    config fp-sensitivity
        edit {name}
        # Select a DLP file pattern sensitivity to match.
        set name {string}    Select a DLP sensitivity. size[35] - datasource(s): dlp.fp-sensitivity.name
        next
        set match-percentage {integer}    Percentage of fingerprints in the fingerprint databases designated with
the selected fp-sensitivity to match. range[0-100]
        set file-type {integer}    Select the number of a DLP file pattern table to match. range[0-4294967295] -
datasource(s): dlp.filepattern.id
        set regexp {string}    Enter a regular expression to match (max. 255 characters). size[255]
        set archive {disable | enable}    Enable/disable DLP archiving.
        set action {allow | log-only | block | quarantine-ip}    Action to take with content that this DLP sensor
matches.
            allow          Allow the content to pass through the FortiGate and do not create a log message.
            log-only       Allow the content to pass through the FortiGate, but write a log message.
            block          Block the content and write a log message.
            quarantine-ip  Quarantine all traffic from the IP address and write a log message.
        set expiry {string}    Quarantine duration in days, hours, minutes format (dddhmm).
        next
    set dlp-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DLP logging.
    set extended-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable extended logging for data leak prevention.
    set nac-quar-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable NAC quarantine logging.
    set flow-based {enable | disable}    Enable/disable flow-based DLP.
    set full-archive-proto {option}    Protocols to always content archive.
        smtp             SMTP.
        pop3             POP3.
        imap             IMAP.

```

```
        http-get    HTTP GET.
        http-post   HTTP POST.
        ftp         FTP.
        nntp        NNTP.
        mapi        MAPI
        mm1         MM1
        mm3         MM3
        mm4         MM4
        mm7         MM7
    set summary-proto {option}    Protocols to always log summary.
        smtp        SMTP.
        pop3        POP3.
        imap        IMAP.
        http-get    HTTP GET.
        http-post   HTTP POST.
        ftp         FTP.
        nntp        NNTP.
        mapi        MAPI
        mm1         MM1
        mm3         MM3
        mm4         MM4
        mm7         MM7
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

dlp-log {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable logging for data leak prevention.

flow-based {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) Flow-based DLP. It's strongly recommended to keep this set to `disable`, as DLP is primarily a Proxy-based security profile.

full-archive-proto {smtp | pop3 | imap | http-get | http-post ftp | nntp | mapi}

Record a full log for any of the protocols available. This can be useful for forensic investigation, however it should not be used extensively as large amounts of the FortiGate's CPU and RAM are required.

nac-quar-log {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) logging for network access control (NAC) quarantine creation.

replacemsg-group <group_name>

Specify which replacement message group to use, as configured under [config system replacemsg-group](#).

summary-proto {smtp | pop3 | imap | http-get | http-post | ftp | nntp | mapi}

Record a summary log for any of the protocols available. Email messages, for example, would record the recipient's email address and the size of the email.

config filter

Use this configuration method to create DLP filters.

action {allow | log-only | block | quarantine-ip}

Specify action to take when a match is detected:

- **allow:** No action is taken even if the patterns specified in the filter are matched (set by default).
- **log-only:** The FortiGate will take no action on network traffic matching a rule with this action. The filter match is logged.
- **block:** Traffic matching a filter with the block action will not be delivered.
- **quarantine-ip:** Block access through the FortiGate unit for any IP address that sends traffic matching a sensor with this action. The IP address is added to the Banned User list for a duration of time that is determined by `set expiry`.

company-identifier <id>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `file` and `filter-by` is set to `watermark`.

Company identifier for watermarking. Ensures that you are only blocking watermarks that your company has placed on the files, not watermarks with the same name but placed by other companies.

expiry <###d##h##m>

Note: This entry is only available if **action** is set to **quarantine-ip**.

Set the duration of the quarantine in the days, hours, minutes format of ###d##h##m. Set the range between 0d0h1m-364d23h59m. The default is set to 5m.

file-size <kb>

Note: This entry is only available when **type** is set to **file** and **filter-by** is set to **file-size**.

Set the file size in KB. Files over this size will match with the filter. Set the range between 0-4294967295. The default is set to 0.

file-type <integer>

Note: This entry is only available when **type** is set to **file** and **filter-by** is set to **file-type**.

File pattern table for files to match in this filter. Set the range between 0-4294967295. The default is set to 0. There are two predefined options available by default: 1 (builtin-patterns) and 2 (all_executables).

filter-by {credit-card | ssn | regexp | file-type | file-size | fingerprint | watermark | encrypted}

Select a filter for the sensor.

- **credit-card:** Preconfigured sensor that logs the traffic, both files and messages, that contain credit card numbers in the formats used by American Express, MasterCard and Visa (set by default).
- **ssn:** Preconfigured sensor that logs the traffic containing Social Security numbers (with the exception of WebEx invitation emails).
- **regexp:** Match defined regular expression, as determined by `set gexp`.
- **file-type:** Match defined file type.
- **file-size:** Match any file over a certain size threshold.
- **fingerprint:** Match defined fingerprint sensitivity, as determined by `set fp-sensitivity`.
- **watermark:** Match defined file watermarks. Fortinet provides a Linux-based utility that applies a digital watermark to files. The utility adds a small (approximately 100 byte) pattern to the file that is recognized by the DLP watermark filter. The pattern is invisible to the end user. Consult the Handbook's discussion of [data leak prevention concepts](#) for more detail.
- **encrypted:** Look for encrypted files. The filter is a binary one. If the files going through the policy is encrypted, the action is triggered.

fp-sensitivity <sensitivity-level>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `file` and `filter-by` is set to either `fingerprint` or `watermark`.

Match against a fingerprint sensitivity, as configured under [config dlp fp-sensitivity](#).

match-percentage <percentage>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `file` and `filter-by` is set to `fingerprint`.

Percentage of chunks required to constitute a match. Set the range between 0-100. The default is set to 0.

proto {smtp | pop3 | imap | http-get | http-post | ftp | nntp | mapi}

Identify the protocols to detect.

gexp <string>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `file` and `filter-by` is set to either `regexp`.

The FortiGate checks network traffic for the regular expression specified in this regular expression filter. The regular expression library used by Fortinet is a variation of a library called PCRE (Perl Compatible Regular Expressions).

severity {info | low | medium | high | critical}

Set the event severity. The default is set to `medium`.

type {file | message}

Select whether to check messages (e.g. content of an email message) or files (e.g. downloaded files or the content of files attached to an email). The default is set to `message`.

dlp settings

Use this command to designate logical storage settings for the DLP fingerprinting database.


```
config dlp settings
  set storage-device {string}    Storage device name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.storage.name
  set size {integer}            Maximum total size of files within the storage (MB). range[16-4294967295]
  set db-mode {stop-adding | remove-modified-then-oldest | remove-oldest} Behaviour when the maximum size is
reached.
    stop-adding                Stop adding entries.
    remove-modified-then-oldest Remove modified chunks first, then oldest file entries.
    remove-oldest              Remove the oldest files first.
  set cache-mem-percent {integer} Maximum percentage of available memory allocated to caching (1 - 15%). range[1-15]
  set chunk-size {integer}      Maximum fingerprint chunk size. **Changing will flush the entire database**. range[100-
100000]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

storage device <string>

Enter the storage device name, as configured under [config system storage](#).

size <mb>

Enter the maximum total size of files in storage in MB. The default is set to 16.

db-mode {remove-modified-then-oldest | remove-oldest | stop-adding}

Select the method of maintaining the database size:

- **remove-modified-then-oldest:** Remove oldest chunks first, and then remove oldest files.
- **remove-oldest:** Remove oldest files first.
- **stop-adding:** Don't remove files and stop adding to database (set by default).

cache-mem-percent <percentage>

Enter the maximum percentage of available memory allocated to caching. Set the range between 1-15. The default is set to 2.

chunk-size <bytes>

Maximum fingerprint chunk size in bytes.

Changing the chunk size will flush the entire database. Document source fingerprints will repopulate with the next scan. Only manually updated fingerprints will be lost. Set the range between 100-100000 (or 100 bytes to 100 KB). The default is set to 2800. Smaller chunks allow for greater precision, but at the cost of increased processing, database size, and lookups. Note that changing this value will flush the database.

dnsfilter

Use dnsfilter commands to configure domain filter lists and DNS filter profiles.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [dnsfilter domain-filter](#)
- [dnsfilter profile](#)

dnsfilter domain-filter

Use this command to configure static domain filter lists in order to decide access for specific domains.

```
config dnsfilter domain-filter
  edit {id}
  # Configure DNS domain filters.
  set id {integer} ID. range[0-4294967295]
  set name {string} Name of table. size[35]
  set comment {string} Optional comments. size[255]
  config entries
    edit {id}
    # DNS domain filter entries.
    set id {integer} Id. range[0-4294967295]
    set domain {string} Domain entries to be filtered. size[511]
    set type {simple | regex | wildcard} DNS domain filter type.
      simple Simple domain string.
      regex Regular expression domain string.
      wildcard Wildcard domain string.
    set action {block | allow | monitor} Action to take for domain filter matches.
      block Block DNS requests matching the domain filter.
      allow Allow DNS requests matching the domain filter without logging.
      monitor Allow DNS requests matching the domain filter with logging.
    set status {enable | disable} Enable/disable this domain filter.
  next
```

```
    next  
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

config entries

Use this configuration method to specify the static domains, determine their filter types, and the course of action to take upon detection.

action {block | allow | monitor}

Either block (set by default), allow, or monitor when the filter matches the domain.

domain <host-name>

Domain/host name to subject to filtering. Note that this cannot be a URL, as DNS can only resolve host names.

status {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable this static domain filter.

type {simple | regexp | wildcard}

Set the domain type:

- **simple:** Simple domain/host name; requires an exact match (set by default).
- **regexp:** Allow use of rPCRE regular expressions.
- **wildcard:** Allow wildcard characters for partial matching to a domain.

Wildcard entries are converted to regular expressions by FortiOS. As a result of this conversion, wildcards will match any suffix, as long as there is a word boundary following the search term.

For example:

```
config entries
  edit 1
    set domain "*.host"
    set type wildcard
  next
end
```



will match wp36.host **and** wp36.host.pressdns.com, **but not** wp36.host123.pressdnds.com.

To avoid this, use an explicit regular expression search string:

```
config entries
  edit 1
    set domain "^.*\\.host$"
    set type regexp
  next
end
```

dnsfilter profile

Use this command to configure DNS filter profiles in order to utilize FortiGuard category based filters, determine logging options, set the blocked-redirect portal, block botnet C&C sites, and implement safe search limitations.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config domain-filter set external-blocklist [addr1] [addr2] [addr3]</pre>	New external block list option to configure one or more external domain block lists.

Command	Description
next ...	

```

config dnsfilter profile
    edit {name}
        # Configure DNS domain filter profiles.
        set name {string}    Profile name. size[35]
        set comment {string}  Comment. size[255]
        config domain-filter
            set domain-filter-table {integer}  DNS domain filter table ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): dns-
filter.domain-filter.id
        config ftgd-dns
            set options {error-allow | ftgd-disable}  FortiGuard DNS filter options.
                error-allow    Allow all domains when FortiGuard DNS servers fail.
                ftgd-disable   Disable FortiGuard DNS domain rating.
        config filters
            edit {id}
                # FortiGuard DNS domain filters.
                set id {integer}  ID number. range[0-255]
                set category {integer}  Category number. range[0-255]
                set action {block | monitor}  Action to take for DNS requests matching the category.
                    block      Block DNS requests matching the category.
                    monitor    Allow DNS requests matching the category and log the result.
                set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable DNS filter logging for this DNS profile.
            next
            set log-all-domain {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging of all domains visited (detailed DNS logging).
            set sdns-ftgd-err-log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiGuard SDNS rating error logging.
            set sdns-domain-log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable domain filtering and botnet domain logging.
            set block-action {block | redirect}  Action to take for blocked domains.
                block      Return NXDOMAIN for blocked domains.
                redirect   Redirect blocked domains to SDNS portal.
            set redirect-portal {ipv4 address}  IP address of the SDNS redirect portal.
            set block-botnet {disable | enable}  Enable/disable blocking botnet C&C DNS lookups.
            set safe-search {disable | enable}  Enable/disable Google, Bing, and YouTube safe search.
            set youtube-restrict {strict | moderate}  Set safe search for YouTube restriction level.
                strict    Enable strict safe search for YouTube.
                moderate  Enable moderate safe search for YouTube.
        config external-ip-blocklist

```

```
        edit {name}
        # One or more external IP block lists.
        set name {string}    External domain block list name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.external-resource.-
name
        next
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

block-action {block | redirect}

Either return NXDOMAIN or redirect blocked domains to an SDNS portal (set by default).

block-botnet {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) blocking DNS requests to known botnet C&C sites. Note that an AntiVirus subscription is required to receive up-to-date botnet package updates.

log-all-domain {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) logging of all domains visited.

redirect-portal <ip>

IP address of the SDNS blocked-redirect portal page. The default is set to 0.0.0.0, which uses the FortiGuard default (208.91.112.55).

safe-search {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) enforcement of "Safe search" on Google, Bing, and YouTube.

sdns-domain-log {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable logging of domain filtering and botnet domains.

sdns-ftgd-err-log {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable logging of FortiGuard SDNS rating errors.

youtube-restrict {strict | moderate}

Note: This entry is only available when `safe-search` is set to `enable`.

Enable either strict (set by default) or moderate safe search for Youtube.

config domain-filter

Use this configuration method to assign a domain filter to this DNS profile.

domain-filter-table <name>

Name of the domain filter to assign to this DNS profile, as configured under [config dnsfilter domain-filter](#).

config ftgd-dns

Use this configuration method to add FortiGuard DNS options.

options {error-allow | ftgd-disable}

Either allow all domains when FortiGuard SDNS servers fail, or disable the FortiGuard SDNS domain rating.

config filters

Configure FortiGuard filter categories, actions, and log options.

category <id>

Assign FortiGuard categories to the filter. Enter `set category ?` to view all available categories.

action {block | monitor}

Either block or monitor (set by default) when matching this filter's categories.

log {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `action` is set to `block`.

Enable (by default) or disable logging of blocked categories.

endpoint-control

Use endpoint-control commands to configure the following parts of the Endpoint NAC feature:

- Endpoint license registration synchronization
- Endpoint NAC profiles
- Required minimum version of FortiClient Endpoint Security
- FortiClient installer download location

FortiClient profiles and registration can be controlled on the FortiGate. However, in order for FortiClient to register with the FortiGate, FortiTelemetry must be enabled on the interfaces facing the network endpoints. To do this in the CLI, under `config system interface`, **set** `fortiheartbeat` to `enable`.

Use the `config endpoint-control` to configure endpoint control in finer detail. In addition, use the following command to view a list of endpoint users, including their FortiClient UID, which VDOM they belong to, and view their compliance status:

```
diagnose endpoint registration list
```

Endpoint NAC is enabled in firewall policies.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [endpoint-control forticlient-ems](#)
- [endpoint-control forticlient-registration-sync](#)
- [endpoint-control profile](#)
- [endpoint-control settings](#)

endpoint-control forticlient-ems

Use this command to configure FortiClient EMS settings, including the EMS serial number, telemetry listening and upload ports, and determine REST API authentication.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config endpoint-control forticlient-ems</code>	New <code>config</code> command. Configure FortiClient EMS.

```
config endpoint-control forticlient-ems
  edit {name}
    # Configure FortiClient Enterprise Management Server (EMS) entries.
    set name {string}    FortiClient Enterprise Management Server (EMS) name. size[35]
    set address {string}  Firewall address name. size[63] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name
    set serial-number {string}  FortiClient EMS Serial Number. size[16]
    set listen-port {integer}  FortiClient EMS telemetry listen port number. (1 - 65535, default: 8013). range[1-65535]
    set upload-port {integer}  FortiClient EMS telemetry upload port number. (1 - 65535, default: 8014). range[1-65535]
    set rest-api-auth {disable | userpass}  FortiClient EMS REST API authentication.
      disable  Disable FortiClient EMS REST API calls.
      userpass  Authenticate FortiClient EMS REST API with FortiClient EMS username/password combination.
    set https-port {integer}  FortiClient EMS HTTPS access port number. (1 - 65535, default: 443). range[1-65535]
    set admin-username {string}  FortiClient EMS admin username. size[128]
    set admin-password {password_string}  FortiClient EMS admin password. size[68]
    set admin-type {Windows | LDAP}  FortiClient EMS admin type.
      Windows  EMS admin type is Windows.
      LDAP     EMS admin type is LDAP.
  next
end
```

endpoint-control forticlient-registration-sync

Use this command to configure peer FortiGate units for synchronization of Endpoint license registration. Use the `peer-ip` entry to set the IP address of the peer FortiGate. The `peer-name` is set when you use the `edit` command to create the peer FortiGate entry and cannot be changed.



Note that units can synchronize registration data only if they are both running the same version of FortiOS with the same word size (32-bit or 64-bit).

```

config endpoint-control forticlient-registration-sync
    edit {peer-name}
    # Configure FortiClient registration synchronization settings.
    set peer-name {string}    Peer name. size[35]
    set peer-ip {ipv4 address} IP address of the peer FortiGate for endpoint license synchronization.
next
end

```

endpoint-control profile

Use this command to configure an Endpoint NAC profile.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre> config {forticlient-winmac-settings forticlient-android-settings forticlient- ios-settings} set forticlient-ems-compliance {enable disable} set forticlient-ems-compliance-action {block warning} set forticlient-ems-entries [addr1] [addr2] [addr3] next ... </pre>	<p>New options to enforce FortiClient Enterprise Management Server (EMS) compliance.</p>
<pre> config set application-check-rule {present absent} next ... </pre>	<p>Specify whether a process and/or application is present or absent for host checking.</p> <p>In addition, FortiGate now only has to match the process name - matching the SHA256 signature is no longer mandatory (since the process may be updated dynamically and the signature may not match).</p>

Command	Description
<pre> config forticlient-winmac-settings config forticlient-operating-system edit <id> set os-type {mac-os win-xx ubuntu-linux centos-linux redhat-linux fedora-linux} next set forticlient-linux-ver <forticlient-version> end </pre>	Added FortiClient for Linux (Ubuntu, CentOS, Red Hat, and Fedora) support.
<pre> config endpoint-control profile edit {profile-name} # Configure FortiClient endpoint control profiles. set profile-name {string} Profile name. size[35] config forticlient-winmac-settings set forticlient-registration-compliance-action {block warning} FortiClient registration compliance action. block Block access for devices that are operating without a registered version of FortiClient. warning Display a warning for devices that are operating without a registered version of FortiCli- ent. set forticlient-ems-compliance {enable disable} Enable/disable FortiClient Enterprise Management Server (EMS) compliance. set forticlient-ems-compliance-action {block warning} FortiClient EMS compliance action. block Block clients if FortiClient does not have any of the specified EMS servers as online. warning Create a warning if FortiClient does not have any of the specified EMS servers as online. config forticlient-ems-entries edit {name} # FortiClient EMS entries. set name {string} FortiClient EMS name. size[64] - datasource(s): endpoint-control.forticlient- ems.name next set forticlient-security-posture {enable disable} Enable/disable FortiClient security posture check options. set forticlient-security-posture-compliance-action {block warning} FortiClient security posture com- pliance action. block Block devices that fail FortiClient security posture checking. warning Warn devices that fail FortiClient security posture checking. set forticlient-av {enable disable} Enable/disable FortiClient AntiVirus scanning. set av-realtime-protection {enable disable} Enable/disable FortiClient AntiVirus real-time protection. </pre>	

```

set av-signature-up-to-date {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiClient AV signature updates.
set sandbox-analysis {enable | disable}  Enable/disable sending files to FortiSandbox for analysis.
set sandbox-address {string}  FortiSandbox address. size[255]
set os-av-software-installed {enable | disable}  Enable/disable checking for OS recognized AntiVirus soft-
ware.
set forticlient-application-firewall {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the FortiClient application
firewall.
set forticlient-application-firewall-list {string}  FortiClient application firewall rule list. size[35] -
datasource(s): application.list.name
set forticlient-wf {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiClient web filtering.
set forticlient-wf-profile {string}  The FortiClient web filter profile to apply. size[35] - datasource(s):
webfilter.profile.name
set forticlient-system-compliance {enable | disable}  Enable/disable enforcement of FortiClient system com-
pliance.
set forticlient-system-compliance-action {block | warning}  Block or warn clients not compliant with
FortiClient requirements.
    block  Block clients not in compliance with FortiClient requirements.
    warning  Warn clients not in compliance with FortiClient requirements.
set forticlient-minimum-software-version {enable | disable}  Enable/disable requiring clients to run
FortiClient with a minimum software version number.
set forticlient-win-ver {string}  Minimum FortiClient Windows version. size[63]
set forticlient-mac-ver {string}  Minimum FortiClient Mac OS version. size[63]
set forticlient-linux-ver {string}  Minimum FortiClient Linux version. size[63]
config forticlient-operating-system
    edit {id}
        # FortiClient operating system.
        set id {integer}  Operating system entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set os-type {option}  Operating system type.
            custom  Customize OS.
            mac-os  Mac OS.
            win-7  Windows 7.
            win-80  Windows 8.0.
            win-81  Windows 8.1.
            win-10  Windows 10.
            win-2000  Windows 2000.
            win-home-svr  Windows Home Server.
            win-svr-10  Windows Server 10.
            win-svr-2003  Windows Server 2003.
            win-svr-2003-r2  Windows Server 2003 R2.
            win-svr-2008  Windows Server 2008.

```

```

        win-svr-2008-r2    Windows Server 2008 R2.
        win-svr-2012      Windows Server 2012.
        win-svr-2012-r2   Windows Server 2012 R2.
        win-sto-svr-2003  Windows Storage Server 2003.
        win-vista         Windows Vista.
        win-xp            Windows XP.
        ubuntu-linux      Ubuntu Linux.
        centos-linux       CentOS Linux.
        redhat-linux       Redhat Linux.
        fedora-linux       Fedora Linux.
    set os-name {string}   Customize operating system name or Mac OS format:x.x.x size[127]
next
config forticlient-running-app
edit {id}
# Use FortiClient to verify if the listed applications are running on the client.
set id {integer}         Application ID. range[0-4294967295]
set app-name {string}     Application name. size[127]
set application-check-rule {present | absent} Application check rule.
    present              Compliant if application is present.
    absent               Compliant if application is absent.
set process-name {string} Process name. size[127]
set app-sha256-signature {string} App's SHA256 signature. size[64]
set process-name2 {string} Process name. size[127]
set app-sha256-signature2 {string} App's SHA256 Signature. size[64]
set process-name3 {string} Process name. size[127]
set app-sha256-signature3 {string} App's SHA256 Signature. size[64]
set process-name4 {string} Process name. size[127]
set app-sha256-signature4 {string} App's SHA256 Signature. size[64]
next
config forticlient-registry-entry
edit {id}
# FortiClient registry entry.
set id {integer}         Registry entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
set registry-entry {string} Registry entry. size[127]
next
config forticlient-own-file
edit {id}
# Checking the path and filename of the FortiClient application.
set id {integer}         File ID. range[0-4294967295]
set file {string}        File path and name. size[127]

```

```

    next
    set forticlient-log-upload {enable | disable}  Enable/disable uploading FortiClient logs.
    set forticlient-log-upload-level {traffic | vulnerability | event}  Select the FortiClient logs to upload.
        traffic      Upload traffic logs.
        vulnerability Upload vulnerability logs.
        event        Upload event logs.
    set forticlient-log-upload-server {string}  IP address or FQDN of the server to which to upload FortiClient
logs. size[255]
    set forticlient-vuln-scan {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiClient vulnerability scanning.
    set forticlient-vuln-scan-compliance-action {block | warning}  FortiClient vulnerability compliance action.
        block      Block clients if FortiClient vulnerability scanning finds a vulnerability.
        warning    Create a warning if FortiClient vulnerability scanning finds a vulnerability.
    set forticlient-vuln-scan-enforce {option}  Configure the level of the vulnerability found that causes a
FortiClient vulnerability compliance action.
        critical  Finding a critical-level vulnerability causes a FortiClient compliance action.
        high      Finding a high-level vulnerability causes a FortiClient compliance action.
        medium    Finding a medium-level vulnerability causes a FortiClient compliance action.
        low       Finding a low-level vulnerability causes a FortiClient compliance action.
        info      Finding an info-level vulnerability causes a FortiClient compliance action.
    set forticlient-vuln-scan-enforce-grace {integer}  FortiClient vulnerability scan enforcement grace period
(0 - 30 days, default = 1). range[0-30]
    set forticlient-vuln-scan-exempt {enable | disable}  Enable/disable compliance exemption for vul-
nerabilities that cannot be patched automatically.
    config forticlient-android-settings
        set forticlient-wf {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiClient web filtering.
        set forticlient-wf-profile {string}  The FortiClient web filter profile to apply. size[35] - datasource(s):
webfilter.profile.name
        set disable-wf-when-protected {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiClient web category filtering when
protected by FortiGate.
        set forticlient-vpn-provisioning {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiClient VPN provisioning.
        set forticlient-advanced-vpn {enable | disable}  Enable/disable advanced FortiClient VPN configuration.
        set forticlient-advanced-vpn-buffer {string}  Advanced FortiClient VPN configuration. size[32768]
    config forticlient-vpn-settings
        edit {name}
        # FortiClient VPN settings.
        set name {string}  VPN name. size[35]
        set type {ipsec | ssl}  VPN type (IPsec or SSL VPN).
            ipsec  IPsec VPN.
            ssl    SSL VPN.
        set remote-gw {string}  IP address or FQDN of the remote VPN gateway. size[255]

```



```

        set sslvpn-access-port {integer}    SSL VPN access port (1 - 65535). range[1-65535]
        set sslvpn-require-certificate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable requiring SSL VPN client cer-
tificate.

        set auth-method {psk | certificate}    Authentication method.
            psk        Pre-shared key.
            certificate Certificate.
        set preshared-key {password_string}    Pre-shared secret for PSK authentication. size[128]
    next
    config forticlient-ios-settings
        set forticlient-wf {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiClient web filtering.
        set forticlient-wf-profile {string}    The FortiClient web filter profile to apply. size[35] - datasource(s):
webfilter.profile.name
        set disable-wf-when-protected {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiClient web category filtering when
protected by FortiGate.
        set client-vpn-provisioning {enable | disable}    FortiClient VPN provisioning.
        config client-vpn-settings
            edit {name}
            # FortiClient VPN settings.
            set name {string}    VPN name. size[35]
            set type {ipsec | ssl}    VPN type (IPsec or SSL VPN).
                ipsec    IPsec VPN.
                ssl        SSL VPN.
            set vpn-configuration-name {string}    Name of VPN configuration. size[35]
            set vpn-configuration-content {string}    Content of VPN configuration. size[32768]
            set remote-gw {string}    IP address or FQDN of the remote VPN gateway. size[255]
            set sslvpn-access-port {integer}    SSL VPN access port (1 - 65535). range[1-65535]
            set sslvpn-require-certificate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable requiring SSL VPN client cer-
tificate.

            set auth-method {psk | certificate}    Authentication method.
                psk        Pre-shared key.
                certificate Certificate.
            set preshared-key {password_string}    Pre-shared secret for PSK authentication. size[128]
        next
        set distribute-configuration-profile {enable | disable}    Enable/disable configuration profile (.mo-
bileconfig file) distribution.
        set configuration-name {string}    Name of configuration profile. size[35]
        set configuration-content {string}    Content of configuration profile. size[32768]
        set description {string}    Description. size[255]
    config src-addr
        edit {name}

```

```

        # Source addresses.
        set name {string}    Address object from available options. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
    config device-groups
    edit {name}
    # Device groups.
    set name {string}    Device group object from available options. size[64] - datasource(s): user.device-
group.name,user.device-category.name
    next
    config users
    edit {name}
    # Users.
    set name {string}    User name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.local.name
    next
    config user-groups
    edit {name}
    # User groups.
    set name {string}    User group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
    next
    config on-net-addr
    edit {name}
    # Addresses for on-net detection.
    set name {string}    Address object from available options. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
    set replacemsg-override-group {string}    Select an endpoint control replacement message override group from
available options. size[35] - datasource(s): system.replacemsg-group.name
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

device-groups <groups>

Device groups to assign to this endpoint profile, as configured under [config user device-group](#).

on-net-addr <addr>

Addresses for on-net detection.

replacemsg-override-group <group>

Endpoint control replacement message override group, as configured under [config system replacemsg-group](#). Note that the group must have `group-type` set to `ec`.

src-addr <addr>

Source addresses to assign to this endpoint profile.

user-groups <groups>

User groups to assign to this endpoint profile. Note that this is not configurable for the default profile.

users <users>

Users to assign to this endpoint profile. Note that this is not configurable for the default profile.

config forticlient-winmac-settings

Use this configuration method to set FortiClient settings pertaining to Windows and Mac platforms.

av-realtime-protection {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-av` is set to `enable`. Also, `os-av-software-installed` must be set to `disable`.

Enable or disable (by default) FortiClient antivirus realtime protection.

av-signature-up-to-date {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `av-realtime-protection` is set to `enable`.

Enable or disable (by default) FortiClient AntiVirus signature updates.

forticlient-application-firewall {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-security-posture` is set to enable.

Enable or disable (by default) FortiClient application firewall.

forticlient-application-firewall-list

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-application-firewall` is set to enable.

FortiClient application firewall rule list, as configured under [config application list](#).

forticlient-av {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-security-posture` is set to enable.

Enable or disable (by default) FortiClient antivirus scanning.

forticlient-log-upload {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-system-compliance` is set to enable.

Enable (by default) or disable uploading logs to FortiAnalyzer unit via FortiGate unit.

forticlient-log-upload-level {traffic | vulnerability | event}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-system-compliance` is set to enable and `forticlient-log-upload` is set to enable.

Determine which kinds of logs will be reported: traffic log, vulnerability log, or and event log (all are enabled by default).

forticlient-log-upload-server <ip/fqdn>

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-system-compliance` is set to enable and `forticlient-log-upload` is set to enable.

IP address or FQDN of the FortiClient log upload server.

forticlient-mac-ver <version>

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-minimum-software-version` is set to enable.

Minimum FortiClient Mac OS version. The default is set to 5.4.1.

forticlient-minimum-software-version {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-system-compliance` is set to `enable`.

Enable or disable (by default) enforcement of a minimum FortiClient software to meet compliance.

forticlient-security-posture {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) FortiClient security posture. Enabling this feature allows additional options to be configured, including realtime protection, third-party AV, web filtering, and application control firewall.

forticlient-security-posture-compliance-action {block | warning}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-security-posture` is set to `enable`.

Either block or issue a warning (set by default) when the security posture does not meet FortiClient compliance.

forticlient-system-compliance {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable enforcement of FortiClient system compliance.

forticlient-system-compliance-action {block | warning}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-system-compliance` is set to `enable`.

Either block or issue a warning (set by default) when the system does not meet FortiClient compliance.

forticlient-vuln-scan {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable endpoint vulnerability scanning.

forticlient-vuln-scan-compliance-action {block | warning}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-vuln-scan` is set to `enable`.

Either block or issue a warning (set by default) when vulnerability scanning detects non-compliance.

forticlient-vuln-scan-enforce {critical | high | medium | low | info}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-vuln-scan` is set to `enable`.

Enable or disable FortiClient vulnerability scan enforcement levels. The default is set to `high`.

forticlient-vuln-scan-enforce-grace <days>

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-vuln-scan` is set to `enable`.

FortiClient vulnerability scan enforcement grace period in days. Set the range between 0-30. The default is set to 1.

forticlient-vuln-scan-exempt {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-vuln-scan` is set to `enable`.

Enable or disable (by default) compliance exemption for vulnerabilities that cannot be patched automatically.

forticlient-wf {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-security-posture` is set to `enable`.

Enable or disable (by default) FortiClient web category filtering.

forticlient-wf-profile <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-wf` is set to `enable`.

FortiClient web filter profile name, as configured under [config webfilter profile](#).

forticlient-win-ver <version>

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-minimum-software-version` is set to `enable`.

Minimum FortiClient Windows version. The default is set to 5.4.1.

os-av-software-installed {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-av` is set to `enable`. Also, `av-realtime-protection` must be set to `disable`.

Enable or disable (by default) recognition of installed AntiVirus software.

sandbox-address <address>

Note: This entry is only available when `sandbox-analysis` is set to `enable`.

IP address of the FortiSandbox.

sandbox-analysis {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `av-realtime-protection` is set to `enable`.

Enable or disable (by default) sending files to FortiSandbox for analysis.

config forticlient-operating-system

Configure FortiClient operating system options.

os-type <os>

Operating system for FortiClient. Enter `set os-type ?` to view all available options for both Mac and Windows.

config forticlient-running-app

Configure FortiClient running application options.

app-name <name>

Application name.

{app-sha256-signature | app-sha256-signature2 | app-sha256-signature3 | app-sha256-signature4} <signature>

The application's SHA256 signatures (up to a maximum of four).

{process-name | process-name2 | process-name3 | process-name4} <name>

The application's process names (up to a maximum of four).

config forticlient-registry-entry

Configure registry entries.

registry-entry <entry>

Registry entry (up to 127 characters).

config forticlient-own-file

Configure own file paths and names.

file <path-name>

File path and name.

config forticlient-android-settings

Use this configuration method to set FortiClient settings pertaining to Android platforms.

disable-wf-when-protected {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable FortiClient web category filtering when protected by FortiGate.

forticlient-advanced-vpn {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-vpn-provisioning` is set to `enable`.

Enable or disable (by default) advanced FortiClient VPN configuration.

forticlient-advanced-vpn-buffer <content>

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-advanced-vpn` is set to `enable`.

Content of advanced FortiClient VPN configuration.

forticlient-vpn-provisioning {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) FortiClient VPN provisioning.

forticlient-wf {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) FortiClient web category filtering.

forticlient-wf-profile <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-wf` is set to `enable`.

FortiClient web filter profile name, as configured under [config webfilter profile](#).

config forticlient-vpn-settings

Note: This configuration method is only available when `forticlient-vpn-provisioning` is set to `enable` and `forticlient-advanced-vpn` is set to `disable`.

Configure FortiClient VPN provisioning options.

auth-method {psk | certificate}

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `ipsec`.

Either pre-shared key (set by default) or certificate authentication.

preshared-key <key>

Note: This entry is only available when `auth-method` is set to `psk`.

Pre-shared key for PSK authentication.

remote-gw <ip/fqdn>

IP address or FQDN of the VPN gateway.

sslvpn-access-port <port>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `ssl`.

SSL VPN access port. Set the range between 1-65535. The default is set to 443.

sslvpn-require-certificate {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `ssl`.

Enable or disable (by default) requiring an SSL VPN client certificate.

type {ipsec | ssl}

Either IPsec (set by default) or SSL VPN.

config forticlient-ios-settings

Use this configuration method to set FortiClient settings pertaining to iOS platforms.

client-vpn-provisioning {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) client VPN provisioning.

configuration-content <content>

Note: This entry is only available when `distribute-configuration-profile` is set to `enable`.

Content of the configuration profile.

configuration-name <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `distribute-configuration-profile` is set to `enable`.

Name of the configuration profile.

disable-wf-when-protected {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable FortiClient web category filtering when protected by FortiGate.

distribute-configuration-profile {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) configuration profile (.mobileconfig file) distribution.

forticlient-wf {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) FortiClient web category filtering.

forticlient-wf-profile <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-wf` is set to `enable`.

FortiClient web filter profile name, as configured under [config webfilter profile](#).

config client-vpn-settings

Note: This configuration method is only available when `client-vpn-provisioning` is set to `enable`.

Configure client VPN provisioning options.

type {ipsec | ssl}

Either IPsec (set by default) or SSL VPN.

vpn-configuration-content <content>

Content of VPN configuration.

vpn-configuration-name <name>

Name of VPN configuration.

endpoint-control settings

Use this command to designate logical timeout intervals and storage for DLP fingerprinting database.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set forticlient-offline-grace {enable disable} set forticlient-offline-grace-interval <seconds></pre>	<p>Allow an offline grace period for registered and offline FortiClients so that PROBE can be processed and, as a result, endpoint compliance is not triggered.</p> <p>Set the grace interval between 60-600 seconds (the default is set to 120).</p>
<pre>set forticlient-ems-rest-api-call-timeout <milliseconds></pre>	<p>FortiClient Enterprise Management Server (EMS) REST API call timeout in milliseconds, as part of FortiClient EMS compliance. Set the range between 500 - 30000. The default is 5000.</p>

```
config endpoint-control settings
    set forticlient-reg-key-enforce {enable | disable}    Enable/disable requiring or enforcing FortiClient registration
    keys.
    set forticlient-reg-key {password_string}    FortiClient registration key. size[128]
    set forticlient-reg-timeout {integer}    FortiClient registration license timeout (days, min = 1, max = 180, 0 means
unlimited). range[0-180]
    set download-custom-link {string}    Customized URL for downloading FortiClient. size[127]
    set download-location {fortiguard | custom}    FortiClient download location (FortiGuard or custom).
        fortiguard    You can download FortiClient from FortiGuard.
        custom        Specify a custom location for downloading FortiClient. Used when you can't access FortiGuard.
    set forticlient-offline-grace {enable | disable}    Enable/disable grace period for offline registered clients.
    set forticlient-offline-grace-interval {integer}    Grace period for offline registered FortiClient (60 - 600 sec,
default = 120). range[60-600]
    set forticlient-keepalive-interval {integer}    Interval between two KeepAlive messages from FortiClient (20 - 300
```

```
sec, default = 60). range[20-300]
    set forticlient-sys-update-interval {integer}    Interval between two system update messages from FortiClient (30 -
1440 min, default = 720). range[30-1440]
    set forticlient-avdb-update-interval {integer}    Period of time between FortiClient AntiVirus database updates (0 -
24 hours, default = 8). range[0-24]
    set forticlient-warning-interval {integer}    Period of time between FortiClient portal warnings (0 - 24 hours,
default = 1). range[0-24]
    set forticlient-user-avatar {enable | disable}    Enable/disable uploading FortiClient user avatars.
    set forticlient-dereg-unsupported-client {enable | disable}    Enable/disable deregistering unsupported FortiClient
endpoints.
    set forticlient-ems-rest-api-call-timeout {integer}    FortiClient EMS call timeout in milliseconds (500 - 30000 mil-
liseconds, default = 5000). range[500-30000]
end
```

download-custom-link <url>

Note: This entry is only available when `download-location` is set to `custom`.

Customized URL for downloading FortiClient.

download-location {fortiguard | custom}

FortiClient download location. The default is set to `fortiguard`.

forticlient-avdb-update-interval <hours>

Period of time in hours between FortiClient AntiVirus database updates. Set the value between 0-24. The default is set to 8.

forticlient-keepalive-interval <seconds>

Period of time in seconds between two KeepAlive messages from FortiClient. Set the value between 20-300 (or 20 seconds to five minutes). The default is set to 60.

forticlient-reg-key <key>

Note: This entry is only available when `forticlient-reg-key-enforce` is set to `enable`.

FortiClient registration key.

forticlient-reg-key-enforce {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the enforcement of FortiClient registration key.

forticlient-reg-timeout <days>

FortiClient registration license timeout in days. Set the value between 1-180 (or one day to approximately six months). The default is set to 7. Set to 0 for no timeout.

forticlient-sys-update-interval <minutes>

Period of time in minutes between two system update messages from FortiClient. Set the value between 30-1440 (or 30 minutes to one day). The default is set to 720.

forticlient-user-avatar {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable uploading of FortiClient user avatars.

forticlient-warning-interval <hours>

Period of time in hours between the FortiClient warning portal being shown. Set the value between 0-24. The default is set to 1.

extender-controller

Use this command to configure the FortiExtender controller.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [extender-controller extender](#)

extender-controller extender

Use this command to configure the FortiExtender controller. This includes basic configurations, setting the role to primary or secondary, dial-mode settings, AT commands, mode of operation (LTE | 3G | 2G), SIM settings, and more.

To learn more about FortiExtender, including Admin Guides, Release Notes, and Hardware Manuals, see [FortiExtender resources](#) on our Fortinet Documentation Library website. The Release Notes also include a list of modems supported by the FortiExtender.

```
config extender-controller extender
  edit {id}
  # Extender controller configuration.
  set id {string}    FortiExtender serial number. size[19]
  set admin {disable | discovered | enable}    FortiExtender Administration (enable or disable).
  set ifname {string}    FortiExtender interface name. size[15]
  set vdom {integer}    VDOM range[0-4294967295]
  set role {none | primary | secondary}    FortiExtender work role(Primary, Secondary, None).
    none      FortiExtender is not supplying any service.
    primary   FortiExtender is supplying primary service.
    secondary FortiExtender is standby for primary FortiExtender.
  set mode {standalone | redundant}    FortiExtender mode.
    standalone Standalone.
    redundant   Redundant for an interface.
  set dial-mode {dial-on-demand | always-connect}    Dial mode (dial-on-demand or always-connect).
    dial-on-demand The dial action is controlled by user.
    always-connect  auto dial.
  set redial {option}    Number of redials allowed based on failed attempts.
    none Forever.
    1     One attempt.
```

```
2      Two attempts.
3      Three attempts.
4      Four attempts.
5      Five attempts.
6      Six attempts.
7      Seven attempts.
8      Eight attempts.
9      Nine attempts.
10     Ten attempts.
set redundant-intf {string}    Redundant interface. size[15]
set dial-status {integer}     Dial status. range[0-4294967295]
set conn-status {integer}     Connection status. range[0-4294967295]
set ext-name {string}         FortiExtender name. size[31]
set description {string}      Description. size[31]
set quota-limit-mb {integer}   Monthly quota limit (MB). range[0-10485760]
set billing-start-day {integer} Billing start day. range[1-28]
set at-dial-script {string}    Initialization AT commands specific to the MODEM. size[127]
set modem-passwd {password_string} MODEM password. size[27]
set initiated-update {enable | disable} Allow/disallow network initiated updates to the MODEM.
set modem-type {cdma | gsm/lte | wimax} MODEM type (CDMA, GSM/LTE or WIMAX).
    cdma      CDMA
    gsm/lte   GSM/LTE
    wimax     WIMAX
set ppp-username {string}      PPP username. size[31]
set ppp-password {password_string} PPP password. size[27]
set ppp-auth-protocol {auto | pap | chap} PPP authentication protocol (PAP,CHAP or auto).
    auto      AUTO
    pap       PAP
    chap      CHAP
set ppp-echo-request {enable | disable} Enable/disable PPP echo request.
set wimax-carrier {string}     WiMax carrier. size[31]
set wimax-realm {string}       WiMax realm. size[31]
set wimax-auth-protocol {tls | ttls} WiMax authentication protocol(TLS or TTLS).
    tls       TLS
    ttls      TTLS
set sim-pin {password_string}  SIM PIN. size[27]
set access-point-name {string}  Access point name(APN). size[63]
set multi-mode {option}        MODEM mode of operation(3G,LTE,etc).
    auto      AUTO
    auto-3g   Auto 3G(3G or less)
```



```
        force-lte Force LTE
        force-3g Force 3G
        force-2g Force 2G
    set roaming {enable | disable} Enable/disable MODEM roaming.
    set cdma-nai {string} NAI for CDMA MODEMS. size[31]
    set aaa-shared-secret {password_string} AAA shared secret. size[27]
    set ha-shared-secret {password_string} HA shared secret. size[27]
    set primary-ha {string} Primary HA. size[31]
    set secondary-ha {string} Secondary HA. size[31]
    set cdma-aaa-spi {string} CDMA AAA SPI. size[31]
    set cdma-ha-spi {string} CDMA HA SPI. size[31]
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

set modem-type { cdma | gsm/lte | wimax }

The modem type (by default

- **cmda**: A CMDA (Code Division Multiple Access) modem.
- **gsm/lte**: A GSM (Global System for Mobile Communications)/ LTE (Long Term Evolution) modem.
- **wimax**: A WiMax (Worldwide Interoperability for Microwave Access) modem.

set quota-limit-mb {integer}

Monthly quota limit of **0** to **10485760MB** (approximately 10.5 Terabytes).

set billing-start-day {integer}

Set the day of the month when the billing period starts, anywhere from the first day of the month to the 28th day.

set dial mode {dial-on-demand | always-connect}

The dial mode:

- **dial-on-demand**: Automatically initiates a connection when the user makes a request.
- **always-connect**: Automatically initiates a connection whenever the device is turned on.

set role {none | primary | secondary}

The default work role is set to none by default, but can be set to primary or secondary based on the role.

- **primary**: The FortiExtender can act as a primary WAN connection, particularly in locations like small branch offices, retail "pop-up" stores, Point of Sale systems and remote kiosks type systems.
- **secondary**: The FortiExtender can act as a backup or secondary failover WAN link.

set admin {enable | discovered | disable}

The administration mode for this unit is set to enable by default, but can be set to discovered, or disable.

- **enable**: Manage this FortiExtender unit.
- **discovered**: Manage discovered units.
- **disable**: Do not manage this FortiExtender unit.

set multi-mode {auto | auto-3G | force-lte | force-3g | force-2g }

The MODEM mode of operation is set to **auto** by default, but can be set to **auto-3G**, **force-lte**, **force-3g** and **force-2g**. For related documentation on the differences between 3G, and LTE configurations see: [Modems](#).

- **auto**: Automatically selects the mode (either 3G or LTE).
- **auto-3G**: Enables automatic selection of modes 3G or less.
- **force-lte**: Enables selection of LTE mode only.
- **force-3g**: Enables selection of 3G mode only.
- **force-2g**: Enables selection of 2G mode only.

firewall

Use firewall commands to configure firewall policies and the data they use.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- `firewall acl | acl6`
- `firewall address | address6`
- `firewall address6-template`
- `firewall addrgrp | addgrp6`
- `firewall auth-portal`
- `firewall central-snat-map`
- `firewall carrier-endpoint-bwl`
- `firewall dnstranslation`
- `firewall DoS-policy | DoS-policy6`
- `firewall gtp`
- `firewall identity-based-route`
- `firewall interface-policy | interface-policy6`
- `firewall internet-service`
- `firewall internet-service-custom`
- `firewall internet-service-custom-group`
- `firewall internet-service-group`
- `firewall ipmacbinding setting`
- `firewall ipmacbinding table`
- `firewall ippool | ippool6`
- `firewall ip-translation`
- `firewall ipv6-eh-filter`
- `firewall ldb-monitor`
- `firewall local-in-policy | local-in-policy6`
- `firewall mms-profile`
- `firewall multicast-address | multicast-address6`

- [firewall multicast-policy | multicast-policy6](#)
- [firewall policy | policy6](#)
- [firewall policy46 | policy64](#)
- [firewall profile-group](#)
- [firewall profile-protocol-options](#)
- [firewall proxy-address](#)
- [firewall proxy-addrgrp](#)
- [firewall proxy-policy](#)
- [firewall schedule group](#)
- [firewall schedule onetime](#)
- [firewall schedule recurring](#)
- [firewall service category](#)
- [firewall service custom](#)
- [firewall service group](#)
- [firewall shaper per-ip-shaper](#)
- [firewall shaper traffic-shaper](#)
- [firewall shaping-policy](#)
- [firewall shaping-profile](#)
- [firewall sniffer](#)
- [firewall ssh host-key](#)
- [firewall ssh local-ca](#)
- [firewall ssh local-key](#)
- [firewall ssh setting](#)
- [firewall ssl setting](#)
- [firewall ssl-server](#)
- [firewall ssl-ssh-profile](#)
- [firewall ttl-policy](#)
- [firewall vip | vip6](#)
- [firewall vip46 | vip64](#)
- [firewall vipgrp | vipgrp6](#)
- [firewall vipgrp46 | vipgrp64](#)
- [firewall wildcard-fqdn custom](#)
- [firewall wildcard-fqdn group](#)

firewall {acl | acl6}

Use this command to create/configure access control lists for IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

Use `firewall acl` for IPv4 access control lists.

Use `firewall acl6` for IPv6 access control lists.

```
config firewall acl
  edit {policyid}
  # Configure IPv4 access control list.
  set policyid {integer}    Policy ID. range[0-9999]
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable access control list status.
  set comments {string}    Comment. size[1023]
  set interface {string}    Interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.zone.name,system.interface.name
  config srcaddr
    edit {name}
    # Source address name.
    set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
  next
  config dstaddr
    edit {name}
    # Destination address name.
    set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
  next
  config service
    edit {name}
    # Service name.
    set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name
  next
next
end

config firewall acl6
  edit {policyid}
  # Configure IPv6 access control list.
  set policyid {integer}    Policy ID. range[0-9999]
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable access control list status.
```

```
    set comments {string}    Comment. size[1023]
    set interface {string}    Interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.zone.name,system.interface.name
    config srcaddr
        edit {name}
        # Source address name.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
        next
    config dstaddr
        edit {name}
        # Destination address name.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
        next
    config service
        edit {name}
        # Service name.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name
        next
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

Managing objects

Some commands such as this center around the management and configuration of programming objects that are discrete chunks of information that are intended to be consistent for the purpose of being used by other processes within the software. These objects are used so that by changing the settings of the object, that information is changed throughout the software where-ever it is used. In reality, these objects are a number of values in the row of a table in the software, but it is simpler to think of them as a self-contained objects.

The configuration of settings within the individual objects is the most common activity in the configuration process, but there is also a need to manage the objects as a whole and there are some commands that are used for that purpose.

Depending on which configuration command you are using these are some of the object management commands that will be available to you (not all options will be available for all objects):

edit

This command is used to select or create an individual object for the purpose of configuring or editing setting values.

Some objects use a string of characters and others use an ID number, where the number is an integer. To know which identification type is being used, check the listing of options above. If the option refers to a variable with ID in the name or the value type is designated as "{ integer }", it uses an ID number. If the variable used is along the lines of "{ name }" or the value type is designated as "{ string }", it will have a name that you can enter.

{ string }

To get a list of all of the existing objects, type the command:

```
edit ?
```

If you are creating a new object, just type the name you wish to use after the `edit` command. If there are spaces in the name, use quotation marks.

{ integer } or ID #

When creating a new object with an ID #, you can use the command:

```
edit 0
```

The system will automatically give the new object an ID # of the next available number.

delete

This command is used to delete an existing object.

```
delete <object name> or <object ID #>
```

- The <address_name> can be a string of up to 64 characters.

purge

Used delete all of the existing objects for this type of configuration object. It deletes all of the values within the table that holds the information about these objects within the VDOM.

- There are no options, parameters or qualifiers. Just use the enter key after entering the command
- This command has a serious impact. Use cautiously.

move

Some objects, usually those that are policies or similar in function, are handled in a sequential process so there order is important. The move command is used to change the sequence of these objects in relation to each other. The syntax for this command is:

```
move <id#> [before|after] <id#>
```

The command is essential a sentence stating move one object before or after another.

rename

Used to change the name of the object.

```
rename <name of object> to <new name of object>
```

show

This command will show the non-default contents of all the objects of this type. IPv4 and IPv6 versions of the type are treated separately.

The command `show full-configuration` will give you an output of all the current settings regardless of whether the values are default or not.

dstaddr

This value will be chosen from an existing list of address options that have already been configured. Information on creating a new address though the CLI can be found at [firewall {address | address6} on page 154](#)

interface

This value will be chosen from an existing list of the devices interfaces.

service

This value will be chosen from an existing list of service options that have already been configured. Information on creating a new service through the CLI can be found at [firewall service custom on page 301](#)

srcaddr

This value will be chosen from an existing list of address options that have already been configured. Information on creating a new address through the CLI can be found at [firewall {address | address6} on page 154](#)

firewall {address | address6}

Use this command to configure firewall addresses used in firewall policies. An IPv4 firewall address is a set of one or more IP addresses, represented as a domain name, an IP address and a subnet mask, or an IP address range. An IPv6 firewall address is an IPv6 address prefix. Addresses, address groups, and virtual IPs must have unique names to avoid confusion in firewall policies. If an address is selected in a policy, it cannot be deleted until it is deselected from the policy.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config firewall address6 edit <name> set type {template ...} set template <ipv6-template> set host-type {any specific} set host <ipv6-addr> config subnet-segment ...</pre>	<p>New template type in <code>firewall address6</code>.</p> <p>Note that the <code>subnet-segment</code> configuration method in this command is only available when <code>template</code> has been set. Use the new firewall address6-template command and create templates to be referenced in this command.</p> <p>Also note that <code>template</code> and <code>host-type</code> are only available when <code>type</code> is set to <code>template</code>, and <code>host</code> is only available when <code>host-type</code> is set to <code>specific</code>.</p>
<pre>config firewall address6 edit <name> set type {fqdn ...} set cache-ttl <seconds></pre>	<p>New fqdn type in <code>firewall address6</code>, along with <code>cache-ttl</code> to set the minimal TTL in seconds of individual IPv6 addresses in FQDN cache.</p> <p>Note that <code>cache-ttl</code> is only available when <code>type</code> is set to <code>fqdn</code>.</p>

```

config firewall address
    edit {name}
    # Configure IPv4 addresses.
    set name {string}    Address name. size[63]
    set uuid {uuid}      Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
    set subnet {ipv4 classnet any}    IP address and subnet mask of address.
    set type {option}    Type of address.
        ipmask          Standard IPv4 address with subnet mask.
        iprange          Range of IPv4 addresses between two specified addresses (inclusive).
        fqdn             Fully Qualified Domain Name address.
        geography        IP addresses from a specified country.
        wildcard         Standard IPv4 using a wildcard subnet mask.
        wildcard-fqdn    Fully Qualified Domain Name with wildcard characters.
        dynamic          Dynamic address object for SDN.
    set start-ip {ipv4 address any}    First IP address (inclusive) in the range for the address.
    set end-ip {ipv4 address any}      Final IP address (inclusive) in the range for the address.
    set fqdn {string}    Fully Qualified Domain Name address. size[255]
    set country {string} IP addresses associated to a specific country. size[2]
    set wildcard-fqdn {string}    Fully Qualified Domain Name with wildcard characters. size[255]
    set cache-ttl {integer}    Defines the minimal TTL of individual IP addresses in FQDN cache measured in seconds.
range[0-86400]
    set wildcard {ipv4 classnet any}    IP address and wildcard netmask.
    set sdn {option}    SDN.
        aci            Application Centric Infrastructure.
        aws            Amazon Web Services.
        azure          Microsoft Azure.
        gcp            Google Cloud Platform.
        nsx            VMware NSX.
        nuage          Nuage Virtualized Services Platform.
        oci            Oracle Cloud Infrastructure.
        openstack      OpenStack.
    set tenant {string}    Tenant. size[35]
    set organization {string}    Organization domain name (Syntax: organization/domain). size[35]
    set epg-name {string}    Endpoint group name. size[255]
    set subnet-name {string}    Subnet name. size[255]
    set sdn-tag {string}    SDN Tag. size[15]
    set policy-group {string}    Policy group name. size[15]
    set comment {string}    Comment. size[255]
    set visibility {enable | disable}    Enable/disable address visibility in the GUI.
    set associated-interface {string}    Network interface associated with address. size[35] - datasource(s):

```

```

system.interface.name,system.zone.name
    set color {integer}    Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
    set filter {string}    Match criteria filter. size[255]
    set obj-id {string}    Object ID for NSX. size[255]
    config list
        edit {ip}
        # IP address list.
        set ip {string}    IP. size[35]
    next
    config tagging
        edit {name}
        # Config object tagging.
        set name {string}  Tagging entry name. size[63]
        set category {string}  Tag category. size[63] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.category
        config tags
            edit {name}
            # Tags.
            set name {string}  Tag name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.tags.name
        next
    next
    set allow-routing {enable | disable}  Enable/disable use of this address in the static route configuration.
next
end

config firewall address6
    edit {name}
    # Configure IPv6 firewall addresses.
    set name {string}  Address name. size[63]
    set uuid {uuid}    Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
    set type {option}  Type of IPv6 address object (default = ipprefix).
        ipprefix  Uses the IP prefix to define a range of IPv6 addresses.
        iprange   Range of IPv6 addresses between two specified addresses (inclusive).
        fqdn      Fully qualified domain name.
        dynamic   Dynamic address object for SDN.
        template  Template.
    set sdn {nsx}      SDN.
        nsx       VMware NSX.
    set ip6 {ipv6 network}  IPv6 address prefix (format: xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx/xxx).
    set start-ip {ipv6 address}  First IP address (inclusive) in the range for the address (format:
xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx).
    set end-ip {ipv6 address}  Final IP address (inclusive) in the range for the address (format:

```

```

xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx).
    set fqdn {string}    Fully qualified domain name. size[255]
    set cache-ttl {integer}    Minimal TTL of individual IPv6 addresses in FQDN cache. range[0-86400]
    set visibility {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the visibility of the object in the GUI.
    set color {integer}    Integer value to determine the color of the icon in the GUI (range 1 to 32, default = 0,
which sets the value to 1). range[0-32]
    set obj-id {string}    Object ID for NSX. size[255]
    config list
        edit {ip}
        # IP address list.
            set ip {string}    IP. size[89]
        next
    config tagging
        edit {name}
        # Config object tagging
            set name {string}    Tagging entry name. size[63]
            set category {string}    Tag category. size[63] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.category
        config tags
            edit {name}
            # Tags.
                set name {string}    Tag name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.tags.name
            next
        next
    set comment {string}    Comment. size[255]
    set template {string}    IPv6 address template. size[63] - datasource(s): firewall.address6-template.name
    config subnet-segment
        edit {name}
        # IPv6 subnet segments.
            set name {string}    Name. size[63]
            set type {any | specific}    Subnet segment type.
                any    Wildcard.
                specific    Specific subnet segment address.
            set value {string}    Subnet segment value. size[35]
        next
    set host-type {any | specific}    Host type.
        any    Wildcard.
        specific    Specific host address.
    set host {ipv6 address}    Host Address.
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

Syntax

```
config firewall {address | address6}
               {edit|delete|rename|get|show} <name_str>
```

Managing objects

Some commands such as this center around the management and configuration of programming objects that are discrete chunks of information that are intended to be consistent for the purpose of being used by other processes within the software. These objects are used so that by changing the settings of the object, that information is changed throughout the software where-ever it is used. In reality, these objects are a number of values in the row of a table in the software, but it is simpler to think of them as a self-contained objects.

The configuration of settings within the individual objects is the most common activity in the configuration process, but there is also a need to manage the objects as a whole and there are some commands that are used for that purpose.

Depending on which configuration command you are using these are some of the object management commands that will be available to you (not all options will be available for all objects):

edit

This command is used to select or create an individual object for the purpose of configuring or editing setting values.

Some objects use a string of characters and others use an ID number, where the number is an integer. To know which identification type is being used, check the listing of options above. If the option refers to a variable with ID in the name or the value type is designated as "{ integer }", it uses an ID number. If the variable used is along the lines of "{ name }" or the value type is designated as "{ string }", it will have a name that you can enter.

{ string }

To get a list of all of the existing objects, type the command:

```
edit ?
```

If you are creating a new object, just type the name you wish to used after the `edit` command. If there are spaces in the name, use quotation marks.

{ integer } or ID #

When creating a new object with an ID #, you can use the command:

```
edit 0
```

The system will automatically give the new object an ID # of the next available number.

delete

This command is used to delete an existing object.

```
delete <object name> or <object ID #>
```

- The <address_name> can be a string of up to 64 characters.

purge

Used delete all of the existing objects for this type of configuration object. It deletes all of the values within the table that holds the information about these objects within the VDOM.

- There are no options, parameters or qualifiers. Just use the enter key after entering the command
- This command has a serious impact. Use cautiously.

move

Some objects, usually those that are policies or similar in function, are handled in a sequential process so there order is important. The move command is used to change the sequence of these objects in relation to each other. The syntax for this command is:

```
move <id#> [before|after] <id#>
```

The command is essential a sentence stating move one object before or after another.

rename

Used to change the name of the object.

```
rename <name of object> to <new name of object>
```

show

This command will show the non-default contents of all the objects of this type. IPv4 and IPv6 versions of the type are treated separately.

The command `show full-configuration` will give you an output of all the current settings regardless of whether the values are default or not.

name

This field is a unique name given to represent the address object. This setting is for both IPv4 and IPv6. This setting is first defined when using the `edit` command to edit an address object that does not currently exist. This setting is available for both `address` and `address6`. The `name` field of an address object cannot be changed from within the object. It can be changed by using the `rename` command in the `config firewall address` or `config firewall address6` context.

uuid

Each object has a Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) that is automatically assigned. It is a 128 bit value written in hexadecimal. It can be edited.

This setting is available for both `address` and `address6`.

Syntax:

```
set uuid <uuid>
```

Default value: autogenerated

Example:

```
config firewall address
  edit example.com
    set uuid d38e0dca-b80c-51e6-1180-6863e1b9ea9a
end
```

subnet

The IP address and subnet mask of the address. By using different subnet masks a single IP address can be defined or a group of addresses. This setting is only available for `address`. This option is available only if the `type` option is set to `ipmask`.

Syntax:

```
set subnet <ipv4-classnet-any>
```

Default value: 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

Example:

```
config firewall address
    edit example.com
        set type ipmask
        set subnet 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.255
        or ...
        set subnet 192.168.1.1/32
    end
```

type

This field sets the type of address object. There are two sets of types for addresses. The first is for IPv4 addresses the second is for IPv6.

IPv4 types

- `ipmask` - a standard IPv4 address with subnet mask
- `iprange` - a range of IPv4 addresses between two specified addresses (inclusive).
- `fqdn` - a Fully Qualified Domain Name address
- `geography` - IP addresses from a specified country
- `wildcard` - a standard IPv4 using a wildcard subnet mask
- `wildcard-fqdn` - a Fully Qualified Domain Name with wildcard characters

IPv6 types

- `ipprefix` - uses the IP prefix to define a range of IPv6 addresses
- `iprange` - a range of IPv6 addresses between two specified addresses (inclusive).

Syntax:

```
set type {ipmask | iprange | fqdn | geography | wildcard | wildcard-fqdn}
```

Default value: ipmask or

```
set type {ipprefix | iprange}
```

Default value: ipprefix

Example:

```
config firewall address
    edit example.com
        set type ipmask
    end
```

ip6

This is for the IPv6 address prefix. This setting is only available for address6.

Syntax:

```
set ip6 <ipv6-network>
```

Default value: ::/0

Example:

```
config firewall address6
    edit example.com
        set ip6 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::1/64
    end
```

start-ip

The first IP address (inclusive) in the range for the address. This setting is available for both address and address6. This option is available only if the type option is set to iprange.

Syntax:

```
set start-ip <ipv4-address-any>
```

Default value: 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 or

```
set start-ip <ipv6-address>
```

Default value: ::

Example:

```
config firewall address
edit example.com
set type iprange
set start-ip 192.168.1.43
or ...
config firewall address6
edit example.com
set type iprange
set start-ip 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::1
```

end-ip

The final IP address (inclusive) in the range for the address. This setting is available for both `address` and `address6`. This option is available only if the `type` option is set to `iprange`.

Syntax:

```
set end-ip <ipv4-address-any>
```

Default value: 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 or

```
set end-ip <ipv6-address>
```

Default value: ::

Example:

```
config firewall address
edit example.com
set type iprange
set end-ip 192.168.1.201
or ...
config firewall address6
edit example.com
```

```
    set type iprange
set end-ip 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::89
```

fqdn

This setting defines a Fully qualified domain name which is normally translated to an IP address by a DNS server. This setting is only available for `address`. This option is available only if the `type` option is set to `fqdn`.

Syntax:

```
set fqdn <string>
```

Example:

```
config firewall address
    edit example.com
        set type fqdn
        set fqdn example.com
    end
```

country

This field is used to set the country and all of its IP addresses. This setting is only available for `address`. This option is available only if the `type` option is set to `geography`. The options in this field are 2 character country code that represent different countries or other options. To get a listing type the command `set country ?`.

Syntax:

```
set country <2 character string>
```

Example:

```
config firewall address
    edit example.com
        set type geography
        set country US
```

```
end
```

wildcard-fqdn

A Fully Qualified Domain Name, but using wildcard symbols in place of some of the characters. This setting is only available for `address`. This option is available only if the `type` option is set to `wildcard-fqdn`.

Syntax:

```
set wildcard-fqdn <string>
```

Example:

```
config firewall address
    edit example.com
        set wildcard-fqdn *.example.com
    end
```

cache-ttl

This setting defines the minimal TTL (time to live) of individual IP addresses in FQDN cache. The TTL is measured in seconds. This setting is only available for `address`. This option is available only if the `type` option is set to `fqdn`.

Syntax:

```
set cache-ttl <integer>
```

Default value: 0 Example:

```
config firewall address
    edit example.com
        set cache-ttl 3600
```

wildcard

This setting defines an IP address and a wildcard netmask. This setting is only available for `address`. This option is available only if the `type` option is set to `wildcard`.

Syntax:

```
set wildcard <ipv4-classnet-any>
```

Default value: 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

Example:

```
config firewall address
    edit example.com
        set wildcard 192.168.0.0 255.255.0.64
    end
```

comment

Field used to store descriptive information about the address. The field is limited to 63 characters. Enclose the string in single quotes to enter special characters or spaces. This setting is available for both `address` and `address6`.

Syntax:

```
set comment <var-string>
```

Example:

```
config firewall address
    edit example.com
        set comment "Address for the Example Company website"
    end
```

visibility

Enables or disables the ability to see the address in the GUI. This setting is available for both `address` and `address6`.

Syntax:

```
set visibility {enable | disable}
```

Default value: enable

Example:

```
config firewall address
    edit example.com
        set visibility disable
    end
```

associated-interface

Use this option to associate the address to a specific interface on the FortiGate. The address will only be available for selection if the associated interface is associated to the policy. The option to choose any interface is also available. This setting is only available for `address`.

Syntax:

```
set associated-interface <string>
```

Example:

```
config firewall address
    edit example.com
        set associated-interface wan1
    end
```

color

This setting determines the color of the icon in the GUI. There are 32 defined colors numbered 1 to 32. 0 will set the color to default which is color number 1. This setting is available for both `address` and `address6`.

Syntax:

```
set color <integer>
```

Default value: 0

Example:

```
config firewall address
    edit example.com
        set color 15
    end
```

tags

Used to assign a custom tag to the address object. The tags need to be preconfigured in `config system object-tagging` and the same list of tags can be used anywhere that the tag setting is available. To see what tags are available for use, use the command `set tags ?`. Separate multiple values with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append|clear} tags <name_of_tag>
```

Example:

```
config system object-tagging
    edit example-tag1
    next
    edit example-tag2
    next
    edit "example tag 3"
    next
end
```

This setting is available for both `address` and `address6`.

```
config firewall address
    edit example.com
        config tagging
            edit example-tags
                set tags example-tag1 example-tag2
```



```
        append "example tag 3"
      next
    end
  next
end
```

allow-routing

Enable/disable use of this address in the static route configuration. This setting is only available for `address`.

Syntax:

```
set allow-routing {enable | disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

Example:

```
config firewall address
  edit example.com
    set allow-routing enable
end
```

firewall address6-template

Use this command to configure IPv6 address templates that share a prefix. Using templates for addresses reduces the chance of configuring an incorrect address due to a typographical error.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config firewall address6-template</code>	New <code>config</code> command.

Command	Description
	<p>Configure IPv6 address templates.</p> <p>Note that the <code>subnet-segment</code> configuration method in this command is only available when <code>subnet-segment-count</code> has been set to a value.</p> <p>Use templates created here in the <code>firewall {address address6}</code>.</p>

```

config firewall address6-template
    edit {name}
        # Configure IPv6 address templates.
        set name {string}    IPv6 address template name. size[63]
        set ip6 {ipv6 network}    IPv6 address prefix.
        set subnet-segment-count {integer}    Number of IPv6 subnet segments. range[1-6]
        config subnet-segment
            edit {id}
                # IPv6 subnet segments.
                set id {integer}    Subnet segment ID. range[0-4294967295]
                set name {string}    Subnet segment name. size[63]
                set bits {integer}    Number of bits. range[1-16]
                set exclusive {enable | disable}    Enable/disable exclusive value.
            config values
                edit {name}
                    # Subnet segment values.
                    set name {string}    Subnet segment value name. size[63]
                    set value {string}    Subnet segment value. size[35]
                next
            next
        next
    end

```

firewall {addrgrp | addgrp6}

Use this command to configure firewall address groups used in firewall policies. You can organize related firewall addresses into firewall address groups to simplify firewall policy configuration. For example, rather than creating three separate firewall policies for three firewall addresses, you could create a firewall address group consisting of the three firewall addresses, then create one firewall policy using that firewall address group. Addresses, address groups, and virtual IPs must all have unique names to avoid confusion in firewall policies. If an address group is selected in a policy, it cannot be deleted unless it is first deselected in the policy. An address group can be a member of another address group.

```
config firewall addrgrp
  edit {name}
  # Configure IPv4 address groups.
  set name {string}    Address group name. size[63]
  set uuid {uuid}      Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
  config member
    edit {name}
    # Address objects contained within the group.
    set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name
  next
  set comment {string}  Comment. size[255]
  set visibility {enable | disable}  Enable/disable address visibility in the GUI.
  set color {integer}   Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
  config tagging
    edit {name}
    # Config object tagging.
    set name {string}    Tagging entry name. size[63]
    set category {string}  Tag category. size[63] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.category
    config tags
      edit {name}
      # Tags.
      set name {string}    Tag name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.tags.name
    next
  next
  set allow-routing {enable | disable}  Enable/disable use of this group in the static route configuration.
next
end

config firewall addrgrp6
  edit {name}
  # Configure IPv6 address groups.
  set name {string}    IPv6 address group name. size[63]
  set uuid {uuid}      Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
  set visibility {enable | disable}  Enable/disable address group6 visibility in the GUI.
  set color {integer}  Integer value to determine the color of the icon in the GUI (1 - 32, default = 0, which
sets the value to 1). range[0-32]
  set comment {string}  Comment. size[255]
  config member
    edit {name}
    # Address objects contained within the group.
    set name {string}    Address6/addrgrp6 name. size[64] - datasource(s):
```

```
firewall.address6.name, firewall.addrgrp6.name
    next
    config tagging
    edit {name}
    # Config object tagging.
    set name {string}    Tagging entry name. size[63]
    set category {string} Tag category. size[63] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.category
    config tags
    edit {name}
    # Tags.
    set name {string}    Tag name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.tags.name
    next
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

Syntax

```
config firewall {addrgrp | addrgrp6}
    {edit|delete|purge|rename|get|show} <name_str>
```

Managing address objects

The configuration of specific address object is the most common activity when using the config firewall address command but some commands affect the address objects as a whole.

edit

Used to select which individual policy to configure or edit values.

```
edit <address_group>
```

To get a list of all of the existing address objects, type the command:

```
Command Prompt (addrgrp) # edit ?  
or  
Command Prompt (addrgrp6) # edit ?
```

If you are creating a new address object, just type the name you wish to use after the `edit` command. If there are spaces in the name, use quotation marks.

delete

Used to delete an existing address object

```
delete <address_group>
```

- The `<address_group>` can be a string of up to 64 characters.

purge

Used to delete all of the existing `addrgrp` or `addrgrp6` objects. It deletes all of the values within the table that holds the information about `addrgrp` or `addrgrp6` objects within the VDOM.

```
purge
```

- There are no options, parameters or qualifiers. Just use the enter key after entering the command
- This command has a serious impact. Use cautiously.

rename

Used to change the name of the `addrgrp` or `addrgrp6` object.

```
rename <address_group> to <new_address_group>
```

name

This field is a unique name given to represent the address group object. This setting is for both IPv4 and IPv6. This setting is first defined when using the `edit` command to edit an address group object that does not currently exist. The name field of an address object cannot be changed from within the object. It can be changed by using the `rename` command in the `config firewall addrgrp` or `config firewall addrgrp6` context.

uuid

Each address has a Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) that is automatically assigned. It is a 128 bit value written in hexadecimal. It can be edited. This settings is for both IPv4 and IPv6.

Syntax:

```
set uuid <uuid>
```

Default value: autogenerated

Example:

```
config firewall addrgrp
    edit example_group
        set uuid d38e0dca-b80c-51e6-1180-6863e1b9ea9a
    end
```

member

Defines the address objects that are members of the address group. The value is a <string> that should be the name of one of the existing address objects configured on the device. A group cannot contain both IPv4 and IPv6 address objects. Separate multiple interfaces with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append} members <name of address object> [<name of address object> ...]
```

Example:

```
config firewall addrgrp
    edit example_group
        set member example_address1
        or ...
        set member example_address1 example_address2
        or ...
        append example_address3
    end
```

comment

Field used to store descriptive information about the address group. The field is limited to 63 characters. Enclose the string in single quotes to enter special characters or spaces. This settings is for both IPv4 and IPv6.

Syntax:

```
set comment <var-string>
```

Example:

```
config firewall addrgrp
    edit example.com
        set comment "Addresses for Vendor Websites"
    end
```

visibility

Enables or disables the ability to see the address group in the GUI. This settings is for both IPv4 and IPv6.

Syntax:

```
set visibility {enable | disable}
```

Default value: enable

Example:

```
config firewall addrgrp
    edit example_group
        set visibility disable
    end
```

color

This setting determines the color of the icon in the GUI. There are 32 defined colors numbered 1 to 32. 0 will set the color to default which is color number 1. This settings is for both IPv4 and IPv6.

Syntax:

```
set color <integer>
```

Default value: 0

Example:

```
config firewall addrgrp
    edit example_group
        set color 7
end
```

tags

Used to assign a custom tag to the address group object. The tags need to be preconfigured in `config system object-tagging` and the same list of tags can be used anywhere that the tag setting is available. To see what tags are available for use, use the command `set tags ?`. This settings is for both IPv4 and IPv6. Separate multiple values with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append|clear} tags <name_of_tag>
```

Example:

```
config system object-tagging
    edit example-tag1
    next
    edit example-tag2
    next
    edit "example tag 3"
    next
end

config firewall addrgrp
    edit example.com
        config tagging
```



```
        edit example-tags
            set tags example-tag1 example-tag2
            append "example tag 3"
        next
    end
next
end
```

allow-routing

Enable/disable use of this address group in the static route configuration. This option is only available for IPv4.

Syntax:

```
set allow-routing {enable | disable}
```

Default value: disable

Example:

```
config firewall addrgrp
    edit example_group
        set allow-routing enable
    end
```

firewall auth-portal

Use this command to configure captive portals to the FortiGate devices.

```
config firewall auth-portal
    config groups
        edit {name}
            # Firewall user groups permitted to authenticate through this portal. Separate group names with spaces.
            set name {string}    Group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
        next
    set portal-addr {string}    Address (or FQDN) of the authentication portal. size[63]
    set portal-addr6 {string}    IPv6 address (or FQDN) of authentication portal. size[63]
```

```

    set identity-based-route {string}    Name of the identity-based route that applies to this portal. size[35] - data-
source(s): firewall.identity-based-route.name
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall carrier-endpoint-bwl

Use this FortiOS Carrier command to create and maintain carrier endpoint blocklists and allow lists.

```

config firewall carrier-endpoint-bwl
  edit {id}
    # Carrier end point black/white list tables.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set name {string}    Name of table. size[35]
    set comment {string}    Optional comments. size[255]
    config entries
      edit {carrier-endpoint}
        # Carrier end point black/white list.
        set carrier-endpoint {string}    End point to act on. size[63]
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable specified action(s) for this end point.
        set pattern-type {wildcard | regexp | simple}    Wildcard pattern or regular expression.
          wildcard    Wildcard pattern.
          regexp      Perl regular expression.
          simple      Simple entry (single end point).
        set action {block | exempt | exempt-mass-mms}    Action to take on this end point
          block        Block user messages.
          exempt        Exempt user messages from all scanning.
          exempt-mass-mms    Skip mass MMS scanning.
        set log-action {archive}    Action to take on this end point
          archive    Content archive user messages.
      next
    next
  end

```

firewall central-snat-map

Use this command to create NAT rules as well as NAT mappings that are set up by the global firewall table. Multiple NAT rules can be added on a FortiGate and these NAT rules can be used in firewall policies.

A Typical NAT rule consists of:

- source ip address
- original port number
- translated ip address
- translated port number

IP addresses can be single address or multiple addresses that are predefined with an IP pool. Similarly, port numbers can also be a single port or a range of ports.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set comments [comment]</code>	Comments field added for Central SNAT policy.

```
config firewall central-snat-map
  edit {policyid}
    # Configure central SNAT policies.
    set policyid {integer}    Policy ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the active status of this policy.
    config orig-addr
      edit {name}
        # Original address.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name
      next
    config srcintf
      edit {name}
        # Source interface name from available interfaces.
        set name {string}    Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name, system.zone.name
      next
```

```

config dst-addr
    edit {name}
        # Destination address name from available addresses.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
config dstintf
    edit {name}
        # Destination interface name from available interfaces.
        set name {string}    Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name,system.zone.name
    next
config nat-ippool
    edit {name}
        # Name of the IP pools to be used to translate addresses from available IP Pools.
        set name {string}    IP pool name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ippool.name
    next
    set protocol {integer}    Integer value for the protocol type (0 - 255). range[0-255]
    set orig-port {string}    Original TCP port (0 to 65535).
    set nat-port {string}    Translated port or port range (0 to 65535).
    set nat {disable | enable}    Enable/disable source NAT.
    set comments {string}    Comment. size[1023]
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall dnstranslation

Use this command to add, edit or delete a DNS translation entry. If DNS translation is configured, the FortiGate unit rewrites the payload of outbound DNS query replies from internal DNS servers, replacing the resolved names' internal network IP addresses with external network IP address equivalents, such as a virtual IP address on a FortiGate unit's external network interface. This allows external network hosts to use an internal network DNS server for domain name resolution of hosts located on the internal network.

```

config firewall dnstranslation
    edit {id}
        # Configure DNS translation.

```

```

        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set src {ipv4 address}    IPv4 address or subnet on the internal network to compare with the resolved address in
DNS query replies. If the resolved address matches, the resolved address is substituted with dst.
        set dst {ipv4 address}    IPv4 address or subnet on the external network to substitute for the resolved address
in DNS query replies. Can be single IP address or subnet on the external network, but number of addresses must equal num-
ber of mapped IP addresses in src.
        set netmask {ipv4 netmask}    If src and dst are subnets rather than single IP addresses, enter the netmask for
both src and dst.
        next
    end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall {DoS-policy | DoS-policy6}

Use these commands to configure Denial of Service (DoS) policies: Dos-policy applies to IPv4 traffic, Dos-policy6 applies to IPv6 traffic. FortiGate Intrusion Protection uses Denial of Service (DoS) sensors to identify network traffic anomalies that do not fit known or preset traffic patterns. Four statistical anomaly types for the TCP, UDP, and ICMP protocols can be identified.

Flooding	If the number of sessions targeting a single destination in one second is over a threshold, the destination is experiencing flooding.
Scan	If the number of sessions from a single source in one second is over a threshold, the source is scanning.
Source session limit	If the number of concurrent sessions from a single source is over a threshold, the source session limit is reached.
Destination session limit	If the number of concurrent sessions to a single destination is over a threshold, the destination session limit is reached.

Enable or disable logging for each anomaly, and select the action taken in response to detecting an anomaly. Configure the anomaly thresholds to detect traffic patterns that could represent an attack.



It is important to estimate the normal and expected traffic on the network before changing the default anomaly thresholds. Setting the thresholds too low could cause false positives, and setting the thresholds too high could allow some attacks.

The list of anomalies can be updated only when the FortiGate firmware image is upgraded.

```
config firewall DoS-policy
  edit {policyid}
  # Configure IPv4 DoS policies.
  set policyid {integer}    Policy ID. range[0-9999]
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable this policy.
  set comments {string}    Comment. size[1023]
  set interface {string}    Incoming interface name from available interfaces. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.zone.name,system.interface.name
  config srcaddr
    edit {name}
    # Source address name from available addresses.
    set name {string}    Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
  next
  config dstaddr
    edit {name}
    # Destination address name from available addresses.
    set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
  next
  config service
    edit {name}
    # Service object from available options.
    set name {string}    Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name
  next
  config anomaly
    edit {name}
    # Anomaly name.
    set name {string}    Anomaly name. size[63]
    set status {disable | enable}  Enable/disable this anomaly.
    set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable anomaly logging.
    set action {pass | block | proxy}  Action taken when the threshold is reached.
      pass  Allow traffic but record a log message if logging is enabled.
      block Block traffic if this anomaly is found.
```

```

        proxy    Use a proxy to control the traffic flow.
        set quarantine {none | attacker}    Quarantine method.
            none        Quarantine is disabled.
            attacker    Block all traffic sent from attacker's IP address. The attacker's IP address is also
added to the banned user list. The target's address is not affected.
        set quarantine-expiry {string}    Duration of quarantine. (Format ###d##h##m, minimum 1m, maximum
364d23h59m, default = 5m). Requires quarantine set to attacker.
        set quarantine-log {disable | enable}    Enable/disable quarantine logging.
        set threshold {integer}    Anomaly threshold. Number of detected instances per minute that triggers the
anomaly action. range[1-2147483647]
        set threshold(default) {integer}    Number of detected instances per minute which triggers action (1 -
2147483647, default = 1000). Note that each anomaly has a different threshold value assigned to it. range[0-4294967295]
    next
next
end

config firewall DoS-policy6
    edit {policyid}
    # Configure IPv6 DoS policies.
        set policyid {integer}    Policy ID. range[0-9999]
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this policy.
        set comments {string}    Comment. size[1023]
        set interface {string}    Incoming interface name from available interfaces. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.zone.name,system.interface.name
    config srcaddr
        edit {name}
        # Source address name from available addresses.
        set name {string}    Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    next
    config dstaddr
        edit {name}
        # Destination address name from available addresses.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    next
    config service
        edit {name}
        # Service object from available options.
        set name {string}    Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name

```

```

    next
  config anomaly
    edit {name}
      # Anomaly name.
      set name {string}    Anomaly name. size[63]
      set status {disable | enable}    Enable/disable this anomaly.
      set log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable anomaly logging.
      set action {pass | block | proxy}    Action taken when the threshold is reached.
        pass    Allow traffic but record a log message if logging is enabled.
        block    Block traffic if this anomaly is found.
        proxy    Use a proxy to control the traffic flow.
      set quarantine {none | attacker}    Quarantine method.
        none    Quarantine is disabled.
        attacker    Block all traffic sent from attacker's IP address. The attacker's IP address is also
added to the banned user list. The target's address is not affected.
      set quarantine-expiry {string}    Duration of quarantine. (Format ###d##h##m, minimum 1m, maximum
364d23h59m, default = 5m). Requires quarantine set to attacker.
      set quarantine-log {disable | enable}    Enable/disable quarantine logging.
      set threshold {integer}    Anomaly threshold. Number of detected instances per minute that triggers the
anomaly action. range[1-2147483647]
      set threshold(default) {integer}    Number of detected instances per minute which triggers action (1 -
2147483647, default = 1000). Note that each anomaly has a different threshold value assigned to it. range[0-4294967295]
    next
  next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall gtp

Use this FortiOS Carrier command to configure firewall GTP options.

```

config firewall gtp
  edit {name}
    # Configure GTP.
    set name {string}    Profile name. size[63]

```



```
set comment {string}    Comment. size[255]
set remove-if-echo-expires {enable | disable}    remove if echo response expires
set remove-if-recovery-differ {enable | disable}    remove upon different Recovery IE
set send-delete-when-timeout {enable | disable}    send DELETE request to path endpoints when GTPv0/v1 tunnel
timeout.
set send-delete-when-timeout-v2 {enable | disable}    send DELETE request to path endpoints when GTPv2 tunnel
timeout.
set gtp-in-gtp {allow | deny}    gtp in gtp
    allow    Allow setting.
    deny    Deny setting.
set unknown-version-action {allow | deny}    action for unknown gtp version
    allow    Allow setting.
    deny    Deny setting.
set min-message-length {integer}    min message length range[0-4294967295]
set max-message-length {integer}    max message length range[0-4294967295]
set control-plane-message-rate-limit {integer}    control plane message rate limit range[0-4294967295]
set rate-sampling-interval {integer}    rate sampling interval (1-3600 seconds) range[1-3600]
set echo-request-interval {integer}    echo request interval (in seconds) range[0-4294967295]
set user-plane-message-rate-limit {integer}    user plane message rate limit range[0-4294967295]
set tunnel-limit {integer}    tunnel limit range[0-4294967295]
set global-tunnel-limit {string}    Global tunnel limit. size[63] - datasource(s): gtp.tunnel-limit.name
set tunnel-timeout {integer}    Established tunnel timeout (in seconds). range[0-4294967295]
set half-open-timeout {integer}    Half-open tunnel timeout (in seconds). range[1-300]
set half-close-timeout {integer}    Half-close tunnel timeout (in seconds). range[1-30]
set default-apn-action {allow | deny}    default apn action
    allow    Allow setting.
    deny    Deny setting.
set default-imsi-action {allow | deny}    default imsi action
    allow    Allow setting.
    deny    Deny setting.
set default-policy-action {allow | deny}    default advanced policy action
    allow    Allow setting.
    deny    Deny setting.
set default-ip-action {allow | deny}    default action for encapsulated IP traffic
    allow    Allow setting.
    deny    Deny setting.
set default-noip-action {allow | deny}    default action for encapsulated non-IP traffic
    allow    Allow setting.
    deny    Deny setting.
set apn-filter {enable | disable}    apn filter
```

```
set imsi-filter {enable | disable}    imsi filter
set policy-filter {enable | disable}  Advanced policy filter
set ie-remover {enable | disable}     IE removal policy.
set ip-filter {enable | disable}      IP filter for encapsulated traffic
set noip-filter {enable | disable}    non-IP filter for encapsulated traffic
set monitor-mode {enable | disable}   GTP monitor mode
set forwarded-log {enable | disable}  log forwarded
set denied-log {enable | disable}     log denied
set rate-limited-log {enable | disable} log rate limited
set state-invalid-log {enable | disable} log state invalid
set tunnel-limit-log {enable | disable} tunnel limit
set extension-log {enable | disable}  log in extension format
set traffic-count-log {enable | disable} log tunnel traffic counter
set log-freq {integer}                Logging of frequency of GTP-C packets. range[0-4294967295]
set gtpu-forwarded-log {enable | disable} Enable/disable logging of forwarded GTP-U packets.
set gtpu-denied-log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging of denied GTP-U packets.
set gtpu-log-freq {integer}            Logging of frequency of GTP-U packets. range[0-4294967295]
set log-gtpu-limit {integer}           the user data log limit (0-512 bytes) range[0-512]
set log-imsi-prefix {string}          IMSI prefix for selective logging. size[15]
set log-msisdn-prefix {string}        the msisdn prefix for selective logging size[15]
set invalid-reserved-field {allow | deny} Invalid reserved field in GTP header
    allow Allow setting.
    deny Deny setting.
set reserved-ie {allow | deny}        reserved information element
    allow Allow setting.
    deny Deny setting.
set miss-must-ie {allow | deny}       Missing mandatory information element
    allow Allow setting.
    deny Deny setting.
set out-of-state-message {allow | deny} Out of state GTP message
    allow Allow setting.
    deny Deny setting.
set out-of-state-ie {allow | deny}    Out of state information element.
    allow Allow setting.
    deny Deny setting.
set spoof-src-addr {allow | deny}     Spoofed source address for Mobile Station.
    allow Allow setting.
    deny Deny setting.
set handover-group {string}           Handover SGSN group size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name
```

```

        set authorized-sgsns {string}    Authorized SGSN group size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
        set invalid-sgsns-to-log {string} Invalid SGSN group to be logged size[63] - datasource(s):
firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
        set authorized-ggsns {string}    Authorized GGSN group size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    config apn
        edit {id}
        # APN.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        config apnmember
            edit {name}
            # APN member.
            set name {string}    APN name. size[64] - datasource(s): gtp.apn.name,gtp.apngrp.name
        next
        set action {allow | deny}    Action.
            allow    Allow setting.
            deny    Deny setting.
        set selection-mode {ms | net | vrf}    APN selection mode.
            ms    Mobile Station provided APN.
            net    Network provided APN.
            vrf    Subscription verified.
    next
    config imsi
        edit {id}
        # IMSI.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set mcc-mnc {string}    MCC MNC. size[15]
        set msisdn-prefix {string}    MSISDN prefix. size[15]
        config apnmember
            edit {name}
            # APN member.
            set name {string}    APN name. size[64] - datasource(s): gtp.apn.name,gtp.apngrp.name
        next
        set action {allow | deny}    Action.
            allow    Allow setting.
            deny    Deny setting.
        set selection-mode {ms | net | vrf}    APN selection mode.
            ms    Mobile Station provided APN.
            net    Network provided APN.

```

```
        vrf Subscription verified.
    next
config policy
    edit {id}
    # Policy.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    config apnmember
        edit {name}
        # APN member.
        set name {string}    APN name. size[64] - datasource(s): gtp.apn.name,gtp.apngrp.name
    next
    set messages {create-req | create-res | update-req | update-res}    GTP messages.
        create-req    Create PDP context request.
        create-res    Create PDP context response.
        update-req    Update PDP context request.
        update-res    Update PDP context response.
    set apn-sel-mode {ms | net | vrf}    APN selection mode.
        ms    Mobile Station provided APN.
        net    Network provided APN.
        vrf    Subscription verified.
    set max-apn-restriction {option}    Maximum APN restriction value.
        all    All.
        public-1    Public-1.
        public-2    Public-2.
        private-1    Private-1.
        private-2    Private-2.
    set imsi {string}    IMSI prefix. size[15]
    set msisdn {string}    MSISDN prefix. size[15]
    set rat-type {option}    RAT Type.
        any    Any RAT.
        utran    UTRAN.
        geran    GERAN.
        wlan    WLAN.
        gan    GAN.
        hspa    HSPA.
    set rai {string}    RAI pattern. size[40]
    set uli {string}    ULI pattern. size[40]
    set imei {string}    IMEI(SV) pattern. size[40]
    set action {allow | deny}    Action.
        allow    Allow setting.
```

```

        deny    Deny setting.
    next
    set addr-notify {ipv4 address any}    overbilling notify address
    set port-notify {integer}    overbilling notify port range[0-65535]
    set interface-notify {string}    overbilling interface size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set context-id {integer}    Overbilling context. range[0-4294967295]
    config ie-remove-policy
        edit {id}
        # IE remove policy.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set sgsn-addr {string}    SGSN address name. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
        set remove-ies {option}    GTP IEs to be removed.
            apn-restriction    APN Restriction.
            rat-type            RAT Type.
            rai                RAI.
            uli                ULI.
            imei                IMEI.
    next
    config ip-policy
        edit {id}
        # IP policy.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set srcaddr {string}    Source address name. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
        set dstaddr {string}    Destination address name. size[63] - datasource(s):
firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
        set action {allow | deny}    Action.
            allow    Allow setting.
            deny    Deny setting.
    next
    config noip-policy
        edit {id}
        # No IP policy.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set type {etsi | ietf}    Protocol field type.
            etsi    ESTI.
            ietf    IETF.
        set start {integer}    Start of protocol range (0 - 255). range[0-255]
        set end {integer}    End of protocol range (0 - 255). range[0-255]

```

```

        set action {allow | deny} Action.
            allow Allow setting.
            deny Deny setting.
    next
set message-filter-v0v1 {string} Message filter. size[63] - datasource(s): gtp.message-filter-v0v1.name
set message-filter-v2 {string} Message filter. size[63] - datasource(s): gtp.message-filter-v2.name
set ie-white-list-v0v1 {string} IE white list. size[63] - datasource(s): gtp.ie-white-list.name
set ie-white-list-v2 {string} IE white list. size[63] - datasource(s): gtp.ie-white-list.name
config ie-validation
    set imsi {enable | disable} Validate IMSI.
    set rai {enable | disable} Validate RAI.
    set reordering-required {enable | disable} Validate re-ordering required.
    set ms-validated {enable | disable} Validate MS validated.
    set selection-mode {enable | disable} Validate selection mode.
    set nsapi {enable | disable} Validate NSAPI.
    set charging-ID {enable | disable} Validate charging ID.
    set end-user-addr {enable | disable} Validate end user address.
    set mm-context {enable | disable} Validate MM context.
    set pdp-context {enable | disable} Validate PDP context.
    set gsn-addr {enable | disable} Validate GSN address.
    set msisdn {enable | disable} Validate MSISDN.
    set qos-profile {enable | disable} Validate Quality of Service(QoS) profile.
    set apn-restriction {enable | disable} Validate APN restriction.
    set rat-type {enable | disable} Validate RAT type.
    set uli {enable | disable} Validate user location information.
    set ms-tzone {enable | disable} Validate MS time zone.
    set imei {enable | disable} Validate IMEI(SV).
    set charging-gateway-addr {enable | disable} Validate charging gateway address.
config message-rate-limit
    set echo-request {integer} Rate limit for echo requests (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set echo-reponse {integer} Rate limit for echo response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set version-not-support {integer} Rate limit for version not supported (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set create-pdp-request {integer} Rate limit for create PDP context request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set create-pdp-response {integer} Rate limit for create PDP context response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set update-pdp-request {integer} Rate limit for update PDP context request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set update-pdp-response {integer} Rate limit for update PDP context response (packets per second). range

```

```
[0-4294967295]
    set delete-pdp-request {integer}    Rate limit for delete PDP context request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set delete-pdp-response {integer}    Rate limit for delete PDP context response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set create-aa-pdp-request {integer}    Rate limit for create AA PDP context request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set create-aa-pdp-response {integer}    Rate limit for create AA PDP context response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set delete-aa-pdp-request {integer}    Rate limit for delete AA PDP context request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set delete-aa-pdp-response {integer}    Rate limit for delete AA PDP context response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set error-indication {integer}    Rate limit for error indication (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set pdu-notify-request {integer}    Rate limit for PDU notify request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set pdu-notify-response {integer}    Rate limit for PDU notify response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set pdu-notify-rej-request {integer}    Rate limit for PDU notify reject request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set pdu-notify-rej-response {integer}    Rate limit for PDU notify reject response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set support-ext-hdr-notify {integer}    Rate limit for support extension headers notification (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set send-route-request {integer}    Rate limit for send routing information for GPRS request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set send-route-response {integer}    Rate limit for send routing information for GPRS response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set failure-report-request {integer}    Rate limit for failure report request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set failure-report-response {integer}    Rate limit for failure report response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set note-ms-request {integer}    Rate limit for note MS GPRS present request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set note-ms-response {integer}    Rate limit for note MS GPRS present response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set identification-request {integer}    Rate limit for identification request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set identification-response {integer}    Rate limit for identification response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
```

```
set sgsn-context-request {integer} Rate limit for SGSN context request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set sgsn-context-response {integer} Rate limit for SGSN context response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set sgsn-context-ack {integer} Rate limit for SGSN context acknowledgement (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set fwd-relocation-request {integer} Rate limit for forward relocation request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set fwd-relocation-response {integer} Rate limit for forward relocation response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set fwd-relocation-complete {integer} Rate limit for forward relocation complete (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set relocation-cancel-request {integer} Rate limit for relocation cancel request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set relocation-cancel-response {integer} Rate limit for relocation cancel response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set fwd-srns-context {integer} Rate limit for forward SRNS context (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set fwd-reloc-complete-ack {integer} Rate limit for forward relocation complete acknowledge (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set fwd-srns-context-ack {integer} Rate limit for forward SRNS context acknowledge (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set ran-info {integer} Rate limit for RAN information relay (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set mbms-notify-request {integer} Rate limit for MBMS notification request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set mbms-notify-response {integer} Rate limit for MBMS notification response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set mbms-notify-rej-request {integer} Rate limit for MBMS notification reject request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set mbms-notify-rej-response {integer} Rate limit for MBMS notification reject response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set create-mbms-request {integer} Rate limit for create MBMS context request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set create-mbms-response {integer} Rate limit for create MBMS context response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set update-mbms-request {integer} Rate limit for update MBMS context request (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set update-mbms-response {integer} Rate limit for update MBMS context response (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
set delete-mbms-request {integer} Rate limit for delete MBMS context request (packets per second). range
```



```
[0-4294967295]
    set delete-mbms-response {integer}    Rate limit for delete MBMS context response (packets per second). range
[0-4294967295]
    set mbms-reg-request {integer}    Rate limit for MBMS registration request (packets per second). range[0-
4294967295]
    set mbms-reg-response {integer}    Rate limit for MBMS registration response (packets per second). range[0-
4294967295]
    set mbms-de-reg-request {integer}    Rate limit for MBMS de-registration request (packets per second). range
[0-4294967295]
    set mbms-de-reg-response {integer}    Rate limit for MBMS de-registration response (packets per second).
range[0-4294967295]
    set mbms-ses-start-request {integer}    Rate limit for MBMS session start request (packets per second). range
[0-4294967295]
    set mbms-ses-start-response {integer}    Rate limit for MBMS session start response (packets per second).
range[0-4294967295]
    set mbms-ses-stop-request {integer}    Rate limit for MBMS session stop request (packets per second). range
[0-4294967295]
    set mbms-ses-stop-response {integer}    Rate limit for MBMS session stop response (packets per second). range
[0-4294967295]
    set g-pdu {integer}    Rate limit for G-PDU (packets per second). range[0-4294967295]
    set rate-limit-mode {per-profile | per-stream | per-apn}    GTP rate limit mode.
        per-profile    Per-profile rate limiting.
        per-stream    Per-stream rate limiting.
        per-apn    Per-APN rate limiting.
    set warning-threshold {integer}    Warning threshold for rate limiting (0 - 99 percent). range[0-99]
    config message-rate-limit-v0
        set echo-request {integer}    Rate limit (packets/s) for echo request. range[0-4294967295]
        set create-pdp-request {integer}    Rate limit (packets/s) for create PDP context request. range[0-
4294967295]
        set delete-pdp-request {integer}    Rate limit (packets/s) for delete PDP context request. range[0-
4294967295]
        config message-rate-limit-v1
            set echo-request {integer}    Rate limit (packets/s) for echo request. range[0-4294967295]
            set create-pdp-request {integer}    Rate limit (packets/s) for create PDP context request. range[0-
4294967295]
            set delete-pdp-request {integer}    Rate limit (packets/s) for delete PDP context request. range[0-
4294967295]
        config message-rate-limit-v2
            set echo-request {integer}    Rate limit (packets/s) for echo request. range[0-4294967295]
            set create-session-request {integer}    Rate limit (packets/s) for create session request. range[0-
```

```

4294967295]
    set delete-session-request {integer}    Rate limit (packets/s) for delete session request. range[0-
4294967295]
    config per-apn-shaper
        edit {id}
        # Per APN shaper.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set apn {string}    APN name. size[63] - datasource(s): gtp.apn.name
        set version {integer}    GTP version number: 0 or 1. range[0-1]
        set rate-limit {integer}    Rate limit (packets/s) for create PDP context request. range[0-1000000]
    next
next
end

```

firewall identity-based-route

Use this command to define identity-based routes.

```

config firewall identity-based-route
    edit {name}
    # Configure identity based routing.
    set name {string}    Name. size[35]
    set comments {string}    Comments. size[127]
    config rule
        edit {id}
        # Rule.
        set id {integer}    Rule ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set gateway {ipv4 address}    IPv4 address of the gateway (Format: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx , Default: 0.0.0.0).
        set device {string}    Outgoing interface for the rule. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        config groups
            edit {name}
            # Select one or more group(s) from available groups that are allowed to use this route. Separate
group names with a space.
            set name {string}    Group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
        next
    next
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall {interface-policy | interface-policy6}

DoS policies, called interface policies in the CLI, are primarily used to apply DoS sensors to network traffic based on the FortiGate interface it is leaving or entering as well as the source and destination addresses. DoS sensors are a traffic anomaly detection feature to identify network traffic that does not fit known or common traffic patterns and behavior. A common example of anomalous traffic is the denial of service attack. A denial of service occurs when an attacking system starts an abnormally large number of sessions with a target system. The large number of sessions slows down or disables the target system so legitimate users can no longer use it. You can also use the Interface-policy command to invoke an IPS sensor as part of a DoS policy.

The `interface-policy` command is used for DoS policies applied to IPv4 addresses. For IPv6 addresses, use `interface-policy6` instead.

```
config firewall interface-policy
    edit {policyid}
        # Configure IPv4 interface policies.
        set policyid {integer}    Policy ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this policy.
        set comments {string}    Comments. size[1023]
        set logtraffic {all | utm | disable}    Logging type to be used in this policy (Options: all | utm | disable,
Default: utm).
            all        Log all sessions accepted or denied by this policy.
            utm        Log traffic that has a security profile applied to it.
            disable    Disable all logging for this policy.
        set address-type {ipv4 | ipv6}    Policy address type (IPv4 or IPv6).
            ipv4    IPv4.
            ipv6    IPv6.
        set interface {string}    Monitored interface name from available interfaces. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.zone.name,system.interface.name
        config srcaddr
            edit {name}
                # Address object to limit traffic monitoring to network traffic sent from the specified address or range.
                set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
            next
        config dstaddr
            edit {name}
                # Address object to limit traffic monitoring to network traffic sent to the specified address or range.
```

```

        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
    config service
        edit {name}
        # Service object from available options.
        set name {string}    Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name
    next
    set application-list-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable application control.
    set application-list {string}    Application list name. size[35] - datasource(s): application.list.name
    set ips-sensor-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPS.
    set ips-sensor {string}    IPS sensor name. size[35] - datasource(s): ips.sensor.name
    set dsri {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DSRI.
    set av-profile-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable antivirus.
    set av-profile {string}    Antivirus profile. size[35] - datasource(s): antivirus.profile.name
    set webfilter-profile-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable web filtering.
    set webfilter-profile {string}    Web filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s): webfilter.profile.name
    set spamfilter-profile-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable antispam.
    set spamfilter-profile {string}    Antispam profile. size[35] - datasource(s): spamfilter.profile.name
    set dlp-sensor-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DLP.
    set dlp-sensor {string}    DLP sensor name. size[35] - datasource(s): dlp.sensor.name
    set scan-botnet-connections {disable | block | monitor}    Enable/disable scanning for connections to Botnet serv-
ers.
        disable    Do not scan for connections to botnet servers.
        block    Block connections to botnet servers.
        monitor    Log connections to botnet servers.
    set label {string}    Label. size[63]
next
end

config firewall interface-policy6
    edit {policyid}
    # Configure IPv6 interface policies.
    set policyid {integer}    Policy ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this policy.
    set comments {string}    Comments. size[1023]
    set logtraffic {all | utm | disable}    Logging type to be used in this policy (Options: all | utm | disable,
Default: utm).
        all    Log all sessions accepted or denied by this policy.
        utm    Log traffic that has a security profile applied to it.
        disable    Disable all logging for this policy.

```

```

    set address-type {ipv4 | ipv6}    Policy address type (IPv4 or IPv6).
        ipv4  IPv4.
        ipv6  IPv6.
    set interface {string}    Monitored interface name from available interfaces. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.zone.name,system.interface.name
    config srcaddr6
        edit {name}
        # IPv6 address object to limit traffic monitoring to network traffic sent from the specified address or
range.
            set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
        next
    config dstaddr6
        edit {name}
        # IPv6 address object to limit traffic monitoring to network traffic sent to the specified address or range.
            set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
        next
    config service6
        edit {name}
        # Service name.
            set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name
        next
    set application-list-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable application control.
    set application-list {string}    Application list name. size[35] - datasource(s): application.list.name
    set ips-sensor-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPS.
    set ips-sensor {string}    IPS sensor name. size[35] - datasource(s): ips.sensor.name
    set dsri {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DSRI.
    set av-profile-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable antivirus.
    set av-profile {string}    Antivirus profile. size[35] - datasource(s): antivirus.profile.name
    set webfilter-profile-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable web filtering.
    set webfilter-profile {string}    Web filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s): webfilter.profile.name
    set spamfilter-profile-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable antispam.
    set spamfilter-profile {string}    Antispam profile. size[35] - datasource(s): spamfilter.profile.name
    set dlp-sensor-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DLP.
    set dlp-sensor {string}    DLP sensor name. size[35] - datasource(s): dlp.sensor.name
    set scan-botnet-connections {disable | block | monitor}    Enable/disable scanning for connections to Botnet serv-
ers.
        disable    Do not scan for connections to botnet servers.

```

```
        block    Block connections to botnet servers.
        monitor  Log connections to botnet servers.
    set label {string}    Label. size[63]
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

application_list

Enter the name of the application block/allowlist the FortiGate unit uses when examining network traffic.

This option is available only when `application-list-status` is set to enable.

av-profile

This is available when `av-profile-status` is enabled.

dlp-profile

This is available when `dlp-profile-status` is enabled.

ips-sensor

This option is available only when `ips-sensor-status` is set to enable.

service

Enter a service to limit traffic monitoring to only the selected type. You may also specify a service group, or multiple services separated by spaces.

spamfilter-profile

Enter the spamfilter profile to apply. This is available when `spamfilter-profile-status` is enabled.

webfilter-profile

This is available when `webfilter-profile-status` is enabled.

firewall internet-service

Use this command to configure existing Internet Service objects.

```
config firewall internet-service
edit {id}
# Show Internet Service application.
set id {integer}    Internet Service ID. range[0-4294967295]
set name {string}   Internet Service name. size[63]
set reputation {integer} Reputation level of the Internet Service. range[0-4294967295]
set icon-id {integer} Icon ID of Internet Service. range[0-4294967295]
set sld-id {integer} Second Level Domain. range[0-4294967295]
set direction {src | dst | both} How this service may be used in a firewall policy (source, destination or
both).
    src As source in the firewall policy.
    dst As destination in the firewall policy.
    both Both directions in the firewall policy.
set database {isdb | irdb} Database name this Internet Service belongs to.
    isdb Internet Service Database.
    irdb Internet RRR Database.
set offset {integer} Offset of Internet Service ID. range[0-4294967295]
config entry
edit {id}
# Entries in the Internet Service database.
set id {integer}    Entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
set protocol {integer} Integer value for the protocol type as defined by IANA (0 - 255). range[0-255]
set port {integer}  Integer value for the TCP/IP port (0 - 65535). range[0-65535]
```

```

        set ip-range-number {integer}    Total number of IP ranges. range[0-4294967295]
        set ip-number {integer}    Total number of IP addresses. range[0-65535]
    next
next
end

```

firewall internet-service-custom

Use this command to create and configure custom Internet Service objects.

```

config firewall internet-service-custom
    edit {name}
        # Configure custom Internet Services.
        set name {string}    Internet Service name. size[63]
        set master-service-id {integer}    Internet Service ID in the InternetService database. range[0-4294967295] -
datasource(s): firewall.internet-service.id
        set comment {string}    Comment. size[255]
        config entry
            edit {id}
                # Entries added to the Internet Service database and custom database.
                set id {integer}    Entry ID(1-255). range[0-255]
                set protocol {integer}    Integer value for the protocol type as defined by IANA (0 - 255). range[0-255]
                config port-range
                    edit {id}
                        # Port ranges in the custom entry.
                        set id {integer}    Custom entry port range ID. range[0-4294967295]
                        set start-port {integer}    Integer value for starting TCP/UDP/SCTP destination port in range (1
to 65535). range[1-65535]
                        set end-port {integer}    Integer value for ending TCP/UDP/SCTP destination port in range (1 to
65535). range[1-65535]
                    next
                config dst
                    edit {name}
                        # Destination address or address group name.
                        set name {string}    Select the destination address or address group object from available
options. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
                    next
                next
            config disable-entry

```



```

edit {id}
# Disable entries in the Internet Service database.
set id {integer}    Disable entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
set protocol {integer} Integer value for the protocol type as defined by IANA (0 - 255). range[0-255]
set port {integer}   Integer value for the TCP/IP port (0 - 65535). range[0-65535]
config ip-range
edit {id}
# IP ranges in the disable entry.
set id {integer}    Disable entry range ID. range[0-4294967295]
set start-ip {ipv4 address any} Start IP address.
set end-ip {ipv4 address any} End IP address.
next
next
end

```

firewall internet-service-custom-group

Use this command to create and configure custom Internet Service object groups.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
config firewall internet-service-custom-group	New config command. Configure custom Internet Service objects groups.

```

config firewall internet-service-custom-group
edit {name}
# Configure custom Internet Service group.
set name {string}    Custom Internet Service group name. size[63]
set comment {string} Comment. size[255]
config member
edit {name}
# Custom Internet Service group members.

```

```
        set name {string}    Group member name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-service-custom.name
      next
    next
  end
```

firewall internet-service-group

Use this command to configure existing Internet Service object groups.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
config firewall internet-service-group	New config command. Configure existing Internet Service object groups.

```
config firewall internet-service-group
  edit {name}
  # Configure group of Internet Service.
  set name {string}    Internet Service group name. size[63]
  set comment {string}  Comment. size[255]
  config member
    edit {id}
    # Internet Service group member.
    set id {integer}    Internet Service ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-ser-
vice.id
  next
next
end
```

firewall ipmacbinding setting

Use this command to configure IP to MAC address binding settings. IP/MAC binding protects the FortiGate unit and/or the network from IP address spoofing attacks. IP spoofing attacks attempt to use the IP address of a trusted computer to connect to, or through, the FortiGate unit from a different computer. It is simple to change a computer's IP address to mimic that of a trusted host, but MAC addresses are often added to Ethernet cards at the factory, and are more difficult to change. By requiring that traffic from trusted hosts reflect both the IP address and MAC address known for that host, fraudulent connections are more difficult to construct.

To configure the table of IP addresses and the MAC addresses bound to them, see [firewall ipmacbinding table on page 204](#). To enable or disable IP/MAC binding for an individual FortiGate unit network interface, see [ipmac in system interface on page 793](#).



If IP/MAC binding is enabled, and the IP address of a host with an IP or MAC address in the IP/MAC table is changed, or a new computer is added to the network, update the IP/MAC table. If you do not update the IP/MAC binding list, the new or changed hosts will not have access to or through the FortiGate unit. For details on updating the IP/MAC binding table, see [firewall ipmacbinding table on page 204](#).



If a client receives an IP address from the FortiGate unit's DHCP server, the client's MAC address is automatically registered in the IP/MAC binding table. This can simplify IP/MAC binding configuration, but can also neutralize protection offered by IP/MAC binding if untrusted hosts are allowed to access the DHCP server. Use caution when enabling and providing access to the DHCP server.

```
config firewall ipmacbinding setting
    set bindthroughfw {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of IP/MAC binding to filter packets that would normally go
through the firewall.
    set bindtofw {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of IP/MAC binding to filter packets that would normally go to
the firewall.
    set undefinedhost {allow | block}    Select action to take on packets with IP/MAC addresses not in the binding list
(default = block).
        allow    Allow packets from MAC addresses not in the IP/MAC list.
        block    Block packets from MAC addresses not in the IP/MAC list.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

undefinedhost

This option is available only when either or both `bindthroughfw` and `bindtofw` are enabled.

firewall ipmacbinding table

Use this command to configure IP and MAC address pairs in the IP/MAC binding table. You can bind multiple IP addresses to the same MAC address, but you cannot bind multiple MAC addresses to the same IP address.

To configure the IP/MAC binding settings, see [firewall ipmacbinding setting on page 203](#) . To enable or disable IP/MAC binding for an individual FortiGate unit network interface, see [ipmac in system interface on page 793](#) .

```
config firewall ipmacbinding table
  edit {seq-num}
    # Configure IP to MAC address pairs in the IP/MAC binding table.
    set seq-num {integer}    Entry number. range[0-4294967295]
    set ip {ipv4 address}    IPv4 address portion of the pair (format: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx).
    set mac {mac address}    MAC address portion of the pair (format: xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx in hexadecimal).
    set name {string}       Name of the pair (optional, default = no name). size[35]
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable this IP-mac binding pair.
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

ip

To allow all packets with the MAC address, regardless of the IP address, set the IP address to `0.0.0.0`.

mac

To allow all packets with the IP address, regardless of the MAC address, set the MAC address to `00:00:00:00:00:00`.

status

Packets not matching any IP/MAC binding will be dropped. Packets matching an IP/MAC binding will be matched against the firewall policy list.

firewall {ippool | ippool6}

Use the `firewall ippool` command to configure IPv4 IP address pools.

Use the `firewall ippool6` command to configure IPv6 IP address pools.

Use IP pools to add NAT policies that translate source addresses to addresses randomly selected from the IP pool, rather than the IP address assigned to that FortiOS™ unit interface. In Transparent mode, IP pools are available only from the FortiGate CLI.

An IP pool defines a single IP address or a range of IP addresses. A single IP address in an IP pool becomes a range of one IP address. For example, if you enter an IP pool as `1.1.1.1` the IP pool is actually the address range `1.1.1.1` to `1.1.1.1`.

If a FortiGate interface IP address overlaps with one or more IP pool address ranges, the interface responds to ARP requests for all of the IP addresses in the overlapping IP pools.

For example, consider a FortiGate unit with the following IP addresses for the port1 and port2 interfaces:

- port1 IP address: `1.1.1.1/255.255.255.0` (range is `1.1.1.0-1.1.1.255`)
- port2 IP address: `2.2.2.2/255.255.255.0` (range is `2.2.2.0-2.2.2.255`)

And the following IP pools:

- IP_pool_1: `1.1.1.10-1.1.1.20`
- IP_pool_2: `2.2.2.10-2.2.2.20`
- IP_pool_3: `2.2.2.30-2.2.2.40`

The port1 interface overlap IP range with IP_pool_1 is:

- $(1.1.1.0-1.1.1.255) \text{ and } (1.1.1.10-1.1.1.20) = 1.1.1.10-1.1.1.20$

The port2 interface overlap IP range with IP_pool_2 is:

- $(2.2.2.0-2.2.2.255) \& (2.2.2.10-2.2.2.20) = 2.2.2.10-2.2.2.20$

The port2 interface overlap IP range with IP_pool_3 is:

- $(2.2.2.0-2.2.2.255) \& (2.2.2.30-2.2.2.40) = 2.2.2.30-2.2.2.40$

And the result is:

- The port1 interface answers ARP requests for 1.1.1.10–1.1.1.20
- The port2 interface answers ARP requests for 2.2.2.10–2.2.2.20 and for 2.2.2.30–2.2.2.40

Select NAT in a firewall policy and then select Dynamic IP Pool and select an IP pool.

With dynamic PAT configuration, the FortiGate unit leaves the source port unchanged at first. If another device has already used that port, the FortiGate unit selects the source port randomly from the pool.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set pba-timeout <seconds></code>	Configure port block allocation (PBA) timeout in seconds. Set the range between 3-300 (or three seconds to five minutes). The default is set to 30. Note that pba-timeout is only available when type is set to port-block-allocation.

```
config firewall ippool
    edit {name}
        # Configure IPv4 IP pools.
        set name {string}    IP pool name. size[35]
        set type {overload | one-to-one | fixed-port-range | port-block-allocation}    IP pool type (overload, one-to-one, fixed port range, or port block allocation).
            overload          IP addresses in the IP pool can be shared by clients.
            one-to-one        One to one mapping.
            fixed-port-range   Fixed port range.
            port-block-allocation    Port block allocation.
        set startip {ipv4 address any}    First IPv4 address (inclusive) in the range for the address pool (format xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, Default: 0.0.0.0).
        set endip {ipv4 address any}    Final IPv4 address (inclusive) in the range for the address pool (format xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, Default: 0.0.0.0).
        set source-startip {ipv4 address any}    First IPv4 address (inclusive) in the range of the source addresses to be translated (format xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, Default: 0.0.0.0).
        set source-endip {ipv4 address any}    Final IPv4 address (inclusive) in the range of the source addresses to be translated (format xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, Default: 0.0.0.0).
        set block-size {integer}    Number of addresses in a block (64 to 4096, default = 128). range[64-4096]
        set num-blocks-per-user {integer}    Number of addresses blocks that can be used by a user (1 to 128, default =
```

```

8). range[1-128]
    set pba-timeout {integer}    Port block allocation timeout (seconds). range[3-300]
    set permit-any-host {disable | enable}    Enable/disable full cone NAT.
    set arp-reply {disable | enable}    Enable/disable replying to ARP requests when an IP Pool is added to a policy
(default = enable).
    set arp-intf {string}    Select an interface from available options that will reply to ARP requests. (If blank,
any is selected). size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set associated-interface {string}    Associated interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set comments {string}    Comment. size[255]
next
end

config firewall ippool6
    edit {name}
    # Configure IPv6 IP pools.
    set name {string}    IPv6 IP pool name. size[35]
    set startip {ipv6 address}    First IPv6 address (inclusive) in the range for the address pool (format
xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx, Default: ::).
    set endip {ipv6 address}    Final IPv6 address (inclusive) in the range for the address pool (format
xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx, Default: ::).
    set comments {string}    Comment. size[255]
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall ip-translation

Use this command to configure IP address translation.

```

config firewall ip-translation
    edit {transid}
    # Configure firewall IP-translation.
    set transid {integer}    IP translation ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set type {SCTP}    IP translation type (option: SCTP).
                        SCTP SCTP

```

```
        set startip {ipv4 address any}    First IPv4 address (inclusive) in the range of the addresses to be translated
(format xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, default: 0.0.0.0).
        set endip {ipv4 address any}     Final IPv4 address (inclusive) in the range of the addresses to be translated
(format xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, default: 0.0.0.0).
        set map-startip {ipv4 address any} Address to be used as the starting point for translation in the range
(format xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, default: 0.0.0.0).
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall ipv6-eh-filter

Introduction.

```
config firewall ipv6-eh-filter
    set hop-opt {enable | disable}    Enable/disable blocking packets with the Hop-by-Hop Options header (default = disable).
    set dest-opt {enable | disable}    Enable/disable blocking packets with Destination Options headers (default = disable).
    set hdopt-type {integer}    Block specific Hop-by-Hop and/or Destination Option types (max. 7 types, each between 0 and 255, default = 0). range[0-255]
    set routing {enable | disable}    Enable/disable blocking packets with Routing headers (default = enable).
    set routing-type {integer}    Block specific Routing header types (max. 7 types, each between 0 and 255, default = 0). range[0-255]
    set fragment {enable | disable}    Enable/disable blocking packets with the Fragment header (default = disable).
    set auth {enable | disable}    Enable/disable blocking packets with the Authentication header (default = disable).
    set no-next {enable | disable}    Enable/disable blocking packets with the No Next header (default = disable)
end
```

firewall ldb-monitor

Use this command to configure health check settings.

Health check settings can be used by load balancing VIPs to determine if a real server is currently responsive before forwarding traffic. One health check is sent per interval using the specified protocol, port and HTTP-GET, where applicable to the protocol. If the server does not respond during the timeout period, the health check fails and, if retries are configured, another health check is performed. If all health checks fail, the server is deemed unavailable, and another real server is selected to receive the traffic according to the selected load balancing algorithm.

Health check settings can be re-used by multiple real servers. For details on enabling health checking and using configured health check settings, see [firewall {vip | vip6} on page 339](#).

```
config firewall ldb-monitor
    edit {name}
        # Configure server load balancing health monitors.
        set name {string}    Monitor name. size[35]
        set type {ping | tcp | http | passive-sip}    Select the Monitor type used by the health check monitor to check
the health of the server (PING | TCP | HTTP).
            ping            PING health monitor.
            tcp            TCP-connect health monitor.
            http            HTTP-GET health monitor.
            passive-sip    passive-sip health monitor
        set interval {integer}    Time between health checks (5 - 65635 sec, default = 10). range[5-65535]
        set timeout {integer}    Time to wait to receive response to a health check from a server. Reaching the timeout
means the health check failed (1 - 255 sec, default = 2). range[1-255]
        set retry {integer}    Number health check attempts before the server is considered down (1 - 255, default = 3).
range[1-255]
        set port {integer}    Service port used to perform the health check. If 0, health check monitor inherits port con-
figured for the server (0 - 65635, default = 0). range[0-65535]
        set http-get {string}    URL used to send a GET request to check the health of an HTTP server. size[255]
        set http-match {string}    String to match the value expected in response to an HTTP-GET request. size[255]
        set http-max-redirects {integer}    The maximum number of HTTP redirects to be allowed (0 - 5, default = 0).
range[0-5]
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall {local-in-policy | local-in-policy6}

Use these commands to create firewall policies for traffic destined for the FortiGate unit itself.

Command	Description
<code>set comments [comment]</code>	Comments field added, for both <code>local-in-policy</code> and <code>local-in-policy6</code> .

```

config firewall local-in-policy
  edit {policyid}
    # Configure user defined IPv4 local-in policies.
    set policyid {integer}    User defined local in policy ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set ha-mgmt-intf-only {enable | disable}    Enable/disable dedicating the HA management interface only for local-in policy.
    set intf {string}    Incoming interface name from available options. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-tem.zone.name,system.interface.name
    config srcaddr
      edit {name}
        # Source address object from available options.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
      next
    config dstaddr
      edit {name}
        # Destination address object from available options.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
      next
    set action {accept | deny}    Action performed on traffic matching the policy (default = deny).
      accept    Allow traffic matching this policy.
      deny    Deny or block traffic matching this policy.
    config service
      edit {name}
        # Service object from available options.
        set name {string}    Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name
      next
      set schedule {string}    Schedule object from available options. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-wall.schedule.onetime.name,firewall.schedule.recurring.name,firewall.schedule.group.name
      set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this local-in policy.
      set comments {string}    Comment. size[1023]

```

```

    next
end

config firewall local-in-policy6
    edit {policyid}
    # Configure user defined IPv6 local-in policies.
    set policyid {integer}    User defined local in policy ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set intf {string}    Incoming interface name from available options. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.zone.name,system.interface.name
    config srcaddr
        edit {name}
        # Source address object from available options.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    next
    config dstaddr
        edit {name}
        # Destination address object from available options.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    next
    set action {accept | deny}    Action performed on traffic matching the policy (default = deny).
        accept    Allow local-in traffic matching this policy.
        deny    Deny or block local-in traffic matching this policy.
    config service
        edit {name}
        # Service object from available options. Separate names with a space.
        set name {string}    Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name
    next
    set schedule {string}    Schedule object from available options. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.schedule.onetime.name,firewall.schedule.recurring.name,firewall.schedule.group.name
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this local-in policy.
    set comments {string}    Comment. size[1023]
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall mms-profile

Use this FortiOS Carrier command to configure Multimedia messaging service (MMS) features, including Virus Outbreak Prevention.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set mm1-outbreak-prevention {disabled files full-archive} set mm3-outbreak-prevention {disabled files full-archive} set mm4-outbreak-prevention {disabled files full-archive} set mm7-outbreak-prevention {disabled files full-archive}</pre>	Outbreak prevention uses checksums to filter files in order to preempt and prevent quick virus outbreaks before AV signatures are created.
<pre>config firewall mms-profile edit {name} # Configure MMS profiles. set name {string} Profile name. size[35] set comment {string} Comment. size[255] set replacemsg-group {string} Replacement message group. size[35] - datasource(s): system.replacemsg-group.- name set mmsbwordthreshold {integer} MMS banned word threshold. range[0-2147483647] set mmlcomfortinterval {integer} MM1 comfort interval (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295] set mm7comfortinterval {integer} MM7 comfort interval (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295] set mmlcomfortamount {integer} MM1 comfort amount (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295] set mm7comfortamount {integer} MM7 comfort amount (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295] set mms-carrier-endpoint-filter-log {enable disable} Enable/disable logging for MMS end point filter block- ing. set mms-antispam-mass-log {enable disable} Enable/disable logging for MMS antispam mass. set mms-notification-log {enable disable} Enable/disable logging for MMS notification messages. set mms-checksum-log {enable disable} Enable/disable MMS content checksum logging. set mms-av-virus-log {enable disable} Enable/disable logging for MMS antivirus scanning. set mms-av-block-log {enable disable} Enable/disable logging for MMS antivirus file blocking. set mms-av-oversize-log {enable disable} Enable/disable logging for MMS antivirus oversize file blocking. set mms-web-content-log {enable disable} Enable/disable logging for MMS web content blocking.</pre>	

```

set mm1-addr-hdr {string}    HTTP header field (for MM1) containing user address. size[35]
set mm7-addr-hdr {string}    HTTP header field (for MM7) containing user address. size[35]
set mm1-addr-source {http-header | cookie}    Source for MM1 user address.
    http-header    Retrieve from HTTP header value.
    cookie         Retrieve from cookie value.
set mm7-addr-source {http-header | cookie}    Source for MM7 user address.
    http-header    Retrieve from HTTP header value.
    cookie         Retrieve from cookie value.
set mm1-convert-hex {enable | disable}    Enable/disable converting user address from HEX string for MM1.
set mm7-convert-hex {enable | disable}    Enable/disable conversion of user address from HEX string for MM7.
set carrier-endpoint-prefix {enable | disable}    Enable/disable prefixing of end point values.
set carrier-endpoint-prefix-string {string}    String with which to prefix End point values. size[7]
set carrier-endpoint-prefix-range-min {integer}    Minimum end point length to be prefixed (1 - 48). range[1-48]
set carrier-endpoint-prefix-range-max {integer}    Maximum length of end point value that can be prefixed (1 -
48). range[1-48]
set remove-blocked-const-length {enable | disable}    Enable/disable MMS replacement of blocked file constant
length.
set mm1 {option}    MM1 options.
    avmonitor        No blocking for scan, file block, or oversize (log only).
    oversize         Block oversized file/email.
    quarantine       Quarantine.
    scan             Scan.
    bannedword       Content block.
    chunkedbypass    Bypass chunked transfer encoded sites.
    clientcomfort    Prevent client timeout.
    servercomfort    Prevent server timeout.
    carrier-endpoint-bwl    Carrier end point filtering.
    remove-blocked   Removal of files which would otherwise be blocked.
    mms-checksum     MMS content checksum.
set mm1-retrieve-scan {enable | disable}    Enable/disable scanning on MM1 retrieve configuration messages.
set mm3 {option}    MM3 options.
    avmonitor        No blocking for scan, file block, or oversize (log only).
    oversize         Block oversized file/email.
    quarantine       Quarantine.
    scan             Scan.
    bannedword       Content block.
    fragmail         Pass fragmented email.
    splice           Splice mode.
    carrier-endpoint-bwl    Carrier end point filtering.
    remove-blocked   Removal of files which would otherwise be blocked.

```

```

        mms-checksum          MMS content checksum.
set mm4 {option}    MM4 options.
    avmonitor              No blocking for scan, file block, or oversize (log only).
    oversize               Block oversized file/email.
    quarantine             Quarantine.
    scan                   Scan.
    bannedword             Content block.
    fragmail              Pass fragmented email.
    splice                 Splice mode.
    carrier-endpoint-bwl   Carrier end point filtering.
    remove-blocked        Removal of files which would otherwise be blocked.
    mms-checksum          MMS content checksum.
set mm7 {option}    MM7 options.
    avmonitor              No blocking for scan, file block, or oversize (log only).
    oversize               Block oversized file/email.
    quarantine             Quarantine.
    scan                   Scan.
    bannedword             Content block.
    chunkedbypass          Bypass chunked transfer encoded sites.
    clientcomfort          Prevent client timeout.
    servercomfort          Prevent server timeout.
    carrier-endpoint-bwl   Carrier end point filtering.
    remove-blocked        Removal of files which would otherwise be blocked.
    mms-checksum          MMS content checksum.
set mm1oversizelimit {integer} Maximum file size to scan (1 - 819200 kB). range[1-819200]
set mm3oversizelimit {integer} Maximum file size to scan (1 - 819200 kB). range[1-819200]
set mm4oversizelimit {integer} Maximum file size to scan (1 - 819200 kB). range[1-819200]
set mm7oversizelimit {integer} Maximum file size to scan (1 - 819200 kB). range[1-819200]
set mm1-outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive} Enable FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention ser-
vice.
    disabled              Disabled.
    files                 Only analyze files. Don't open archives.
    full-archive          Analyze files and unpack archives.
set mm3-outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive} Enable FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention ser-
vice.
    disabled              Disabled.
    files                 Only analyze files. Don't open archives.
    full-archive          Analyze files and unpack archives.
set mm4-outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive} Enable FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention ser-
vice.

```

```

        disabled      Disabled.
        files          Only analyze files. Don't open archives.
        full-archive   Analyze files and unpack archives.
set mm7-outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive}  Enable FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention ser-
vice.
        disabled      Disabled.
        files          Only analyze files. Don't open archives.
        full-archive   Analyze files and unpack archives.
config notification
edit {protocol}
# Notification configuration.
set protocol {string}  Protocol. size[13]
set msg-protocol {mm1 | mm3 | mm4 | mm7}  Protocol to use for sending notification messages.
        mm1  Use MM1 for notifications.
        mm3  Use MM3 for notifications.
        mm4  Use MM4 for notifications.
        mm7  Use MM7 for notifications.
set msg-type {submit-req | deliver-req}  MM7 message type.
        submit-req  MM7 notification is directed towards an MMSC.
        deliver-req MM7 notification is directed towards a VASP.
set detect-server {enable | disable}  Enable/disable automatic server address determination.
set mmsc-hostname {string}  Host name or IP address of the MMSC. size[63]
set mmsc-url {string}  URL used on the MMSC for sending MMS messages. size[63]
set mmsc-port {integer}  Port used on the MMSC for sending MMS messages (1 - 65535). range[1-65535]
set mmsc-username {string}  User name required for authentication with the MMSC. size[31]
set mmsc-password {password_string}  Password required for authentication with the MMSC. size[27]
set user-domain {string}  Domain name to which the user addresses belong. size[63]
set vasp-id {string}  VASP identifier. size[31]
set vas-id {string}  VAS identifier. size[31]
set from-in-header {enable | disable}  Enable/disable insertion of from address in HTTP header.
set rate-limit {integer}  Rate limit for sending notification messages (0 - 250). range[0-250]
set tod-window-start {string}  Time of day window start.
set tod-window-end {string}  Obsolete.
set tod-window-duration {string}  Time of day window duration.
set days-allowed {option}  Weekdays on which notification messages may be sent.
        sunday      Sunday.
        monday       Monday.
        tuesday      Tuesday.
        wednesday    Wednesday.
        thursday     Thursday.

```

```

        friday      Friday.
        saturday    Saturday.
set alert-src-msisdn {string}    Specify from address for alert messages. size[124]
set bword-int-mode {hours | minutes}    Banned word notification interval mode.
        hours      Interval in hours.
        minutes    Interval in minutes.
set bword-int {integer}    Banned word notification send interval. range[1-1440]
set bword-status {enable | disable}    Banned word notification status.
set file-block-int-mode {hours | minutes}    File block notification interval mode.
        hours      Interval in hours.
        minutes    Interval in minutes.
set file-block-int {integer}    File block notification send interval. range[1-1440]
set file-block-status {enable | disable}    File block notification status.
set carrier-endpoint-bwl-int-mode {hours | minutes}    Carrier end point black/white list notification
interval mode.
        hours      Interval in hours.
        minutes    Interval in minutes.
set carrier-endpoint-bwl-int {integer}    Carrier end point black/white list notification send interval.
range[1-1440]
set carrier-endpoint-bwl-status {enable | disable}    Carrier end point black/white list notification
status.
set flood-int-mode {hours | minutes}    Flood notification interval mode.
        hours      Interval in hours.
        minutes    Interval in minutes.
set flood-int {integer}    Flood notification send interval. range[1-1440]
set flood-status {enable | disable}    Flood notification status.
set dupe-int-mode {hours | minutes}    Duplicate notification interval mode.
        hours      Interval in hours.
        minutes    Interval in minutes.
set dupe-int {integer}    Duplicate notification send interval. range[1-1440]
set dupe-status {enable | disable}    Duplicate notification status.
set alert-int-mode {hours | minutes}    Alert notification interval mode.
        hours      Interval in hours.
        minutes    Interval in minutes.
set alert-int {integer}    Alert notification send interval. range[1-1440]
set alert-status {enable | disable}    Alert notification status.
set mms-checksum-int-mode {hours | minutes}    MMS checksum notification interval mode.
        hours      Interval in hours.
        minutes    Interval in minutes.
set mms-checksum-int {integer}    MMS checksum notification send interval. range[1-1440]

```



```

        set mms-checksum-status {enable | disable}    MMS checksum notification status.
        set virus-int-mode {hours | minutes}    Virus notification interval mode.
            hours    Interval in hours.
            minutes  Interval in minutes.
        set virus-int {integer}    Virus notification send interval. range[1-1440]
        set virus-status {enable | disable}    Virus notification status.
    next
config notif-msisdn
    edit {msisdn}
        # Notification for MSISDNs.
        set msisdn {string}    Recipient MSISDN. size[124]
        set threshold {option}    Thresholds on which this MSISDN will receive an alert.
            flood-thresh-1    MMS flood threshold level 1.
            flood-thresh-2    MMS flood threshold level 2.
            flood-thresh-3    MMS flood threshold level 3.
            dupe-thresh-1    MMS duplicate threshold level 1.
            dupe-thresh-2    MMS duplicate threshold level 2.
            dupe-thresh-3    MMS duplicate threshold level 3.
    next
config flood
    edit {protocol}
        # Flood configuration.
        set protocol {string}    Protocol. size[3]
        set status1 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable status1 detection.
        set window1 {integer}    Window to count messages over (1 - 2880 min). range[1-2880]
        set limit1 {integer}    Maximum number of messages allowed. range[1-2147483647]
        set action1 {option}    Action to take when threshold reached.
            block    Block user messages.
            archive    Content archive user messages.
            log    Log user messages.
            archive-first    Content archive only first message.
            alert-notif    Send an alert notification message.
        set block-time1 {integer}    Duration for which action takes effect (0 - 35791 min). range[0-35791]
        set status2 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable status2 detection.
        set window2 {integer}    Window to count messages over (1 - 2880 min). range[1-2880]
        set limit2 {integer}    Maximum number of messages allowed. range[1-2147483647]
        set action2 {option}    Action to take when threshold reached.
            block    Block user messages.
            archive    Content archive user messages.
            log    Log user messages.

```

```

        archive-first Content archive only first message.
        alert-notif   Send an alert notification message.
set block-time2 {integer} Duration for which action takes effect (0 - 35791 min). range[0-35791]
set status3 {enable | disable} Enable/disable status3 detection.
set window3 {integer} Window to count messages over (1 - 2880 min). range[1-2880]
set limit3 {integer} Maximum number of messages allowed. range[1-2147483647]
set action3 {option} Action to take when threshold reached.
    block          Block user messages.
    archive         Content archive user messages.
    log             Log user messages.
    archive-first   Content archive only first message.
    alert-notif     Send an alert notification message.
set block-time3 {integer} Duration action takes effect (0 - 35791 min). range[0-35791]
next
config dupe
edit {protocol}
# Duplicate configuration.
set protocol {string} Protocol. size[3]
set status1 {enable | disable} Enable/disable status1 detection.
set window1 {integer} Window to count messages over (1 - 2880 min). range[1-2880]
set limit1 {integer} Maximum number of messages allowed. range[1-2147483647]
set action1 {option} Action to take when threshold reached.
    block          Block user messages.
    archive         Content archive user messages.
    log             Log user messages.
    archive-first   Content archive only first message.
    alert-notif     Send an alert notification message.
set block-time1 {integer} Duration for which action takes effect (0 - 35791 min). range[0-35791]
set status2 {enable | disable} Enable/disable status2 detection.
set window2 {integer} Window to count messages over (1 - 2880 min). range[1-2880]
set limit2 {integer} Maximum number of messages allowed. range[1-2147483647]
set action2 {option} Action to take when threshold reached.
    block          Block user messages.
    archive         Content archive user messages.
    log             Log user messages.
    archive-first   Content archive only first message.
    alert-notif     Send an alert notification message.
set block-time2 {integer} Duration for which action takes effect (0 - 35791 min). range[0-35791]
set status3 {enable | disable} Enable/disable status3 detection.
set window3 {integer} Window to count messages over (1 - 2880 min). range[1-2880]

```

```

        set limit3 {integer}    Maximum number of messages allowed. range[1-2147483647]
        set action3 {option}    Action to take when threshold reached.
            block                Block user messages.
            archive              Content archive user messages.
            log                  Log user messages.
            archive-first        Content archive only first message.
            alert-notif          Send an alert notification message.
        set block-time3 {integer} Duration action takes effect (0 - 35791 min). range[0-35791]
    next
    set mml-retr-dupe {enable | disable} Enable/disable duplicate scanning of MM1 retr.
    set carrierendpointbwltable {integer} Carrier end point filter table ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s):
firewall.carrier-endpoint-bwl.id
    set avnotificationtable {integer} AntiVirus notification table ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): anti-
virus.notification.id
    set mms-checksum-table {integer} MMS content checksum table ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s):
antivirus.mms-checksum.id
    set bwordtable {integer} MMS banned word table ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): webfilter.content.id
    next
end

```

firewall {multicast-address | multicast-address6}

Use this command to configure multicast firewall addresses used in firewall multicast policies. Addresses, address groups, and Virtual IPs must have unique names to avoid confusion in firewall policies. If an address is selected in a policy, it cannot be deleted until it is deselected from the policy.

```

config firewall multicast-address
    edit {name}
        # Configure multicast addresses.
        set name {string}    Multicast address name. size[63]
        set type {multicastrange | broadcastmask}    Type of address object: multicast IP address range or broadcast
IP/mask to be treated as a multicast address.
            multicastrange    Multicast range.
            broadcastmask    Broadcast IP/mask.
        set subnet {ipv4 classnet any}    Broadcast address and subnet.
        set start-ip {ipv4 address any}    First IPv4 address (inclusive) in the range for the address.
        set end-ip {ipv4 address any}    Final IPv4 address (inclusive) in the range for the address.
        set comment {string}    Comment. size[255]
        set visibility {enable | disable}    Enable/disable visibility of the multicast address on the GUI.
        set associated-interface {string}    Interface associated with the address object. When setting up a policy, only

```

```
addresses associated with this interface are available. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set color {integer} Integer value to determine the color of the icon in the GUI (1 - 32, default = 0, which
sets value to 1). range[0-32]
    config tagging
        edit {name}
        # Config object tagging.
        set name {string} Tagging entry name. size[63]
        set category {string} Tag category. size[63] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.category
        config tags
            edit {name}
            # Tags.
            set name {string} Tag name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.tags.name
        next
    next
next
end

config firewall multicast-address6
    edit {name}
    # Configure IPv6 multicast address.
    set name {string} IPv6 multicast address name. size[63]
    set ip6 {ipv6 network} IPv6 address prefix (format: xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx/xxx).
    set comment {string} Comment. size[255]
    set visibility {enable | disable} Enable/disable visibility of the IPv6 multicast address on the GUI.
    set color {integer} Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
    config tagging
        edit {name}
        # Config object tagging.
        set name {string} Tagging entry name. size[63]
        set category {string} Tag category. size[63] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.category
        config tags
            edit {name}
            # Tags.
            set name {string} Tag name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.tags.name
        next
    next
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall {multicast-policy | multicast-policy6}

Use this command to configure a source NAT IP. This command can also be used in Transparent mode to enable multicast forwarding by adding a multicast policy.

The matched forwarded (outgoing) IP multicast source IP address is translated to the configured IP address. For additional options related to multicast, see `multicast-forward {enable | disable}` in [system settings on page 930](#) and `tp-mc-skip-policy {enable | disable}` in [system global on page 734](#).

```
config firewall multicast-policy
    edit {id}
    # Configure multicast NAT policies.
    set id {integer}    Policy ID. range[0-4294967294]
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this policy.
    set logtraffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging traffic accepted by this policy.
    set srcintf {string}    Source interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name,system.zone.name
    set dstintf {string}    Destination interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name,system.zone.name
    config srcaddr
        edit {name}
        # Source address objects.
        set name {string}    Source address objects. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
        next
    config dstaddr
        edit {name}
        # Destination address objects.
        set name {string}    Destination address objects. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.multicast-address.-name
        next
    set snat {enable | disable}    Enable/disable substitution of the outgoing interface IP address for the original source IP address (called source NAT or SNAT).
    set snat-ip {ipv4 address}    IPv4 address to be used as the source address for NATed traffic.
    set dnat {ipv4 address any}    IPv4 DNAT address used for multicast destination addresses.
    set action {accept | deny}    Accept or deny traffic matching the policy.
    accept    Accept traffic matching the policy.
```

```

        deny    Deny or block traffic matching the policy.
        set protocol {integer}    Integer value for the protocol type as defined by IANA (0 - 255, default = 0). range[0-
255]
        set start-port {integer}    Integer value for starting TCP/UDP/SCTP destination port in range (1 - 65535, default
= 1). range[0-65535]
        set end-port {integer}    Integer value for ending TCP/UDP/SCTP destination port in range (1 - 65535, default =
1). range[0-65535]
        set auto-asic-offload {enable | disable}    Enable/disable offloading policy traffic for hardware acceleration.
    next
end

config firewall multicast-policy6
    edit {id}
    # Configure IPv6 multicast NAT policies.
    set id {integer}    Policy ID. range[0-4294967294]
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this policy.
    set logtraffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging traffic accepted by this policy.
    set srcintf {string}    IPv6 source interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name,system.zone.name
    set dstintf {string}    IPv6 destination interface name. size[35] - datasource(s):
system.interface.name,system.zone.name
    config srcaddr
        edit {name}
        # IPv6 source address name.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[79] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    next
    config dstaddr
        edit {name}
        # IPv6 destination address name.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[79] - datasource(s): firewall.multicast-address6.name
    next
    set action {accept | deny}    Accept or deny traffic matching the policy.
        accept    Accept.
        deny    Deny.
    set protocol {integer}    Integer value for the protocol type as defined by IANA (0 - 255, default = 0). range[0-
255]
    set start-port {integer}    Integer value for starting TCP/UDP/SCTP destination port in range (1 - 65535, default
= 1). range[0-65535]
    set end-port {integer}    Integer value for ending TCP/UDP/SCTP destination port in range (1 - 65535, default =
65535). range[0-65535]

```

```
        set auto-asic-offload {enable | disable}    Enable/disable offloading policy traffic for hardware acceleration.
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall {policy | policy6}

Used to change firewall policies or their individual configurations. In addition to editing an existing policy, policies can be added, deleted, moved or cloned. It is also possible to purge all of the policy content from the table that holds them.

- Use `config firewall policy` for IPv4 policies
- Use `config firewall policy6` for IPv6 policies

Firewall policies control all traffic passing through the FortiGate unit. Firewall policies are instructions used by the FortiGate unit to decide what to do with a connection request. The policy directs the firewall to allow the connection, deny the connection, require authentication before the connection is allowed, or apply IPSec processing. The commands `config firewall policy` and `config firewall policy6` enter the system into the correct context of the configuration file to make changes to firewall policies. From here, a specific policy is chosen to be acted upon.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config application group</code>	New configuration method to apply application groups for policies in NGFW policy-based mode, in which either applications and/or categories can be set as members.
<code>set devices {amazon-device ...}</code>	New Amazon device type category.
<code>set ssh-filter-profile <name></code>	Assign SSH profiles to IPv6 firewall policies, as part of supporting

Command	Description
	SSH traffic through IPv6.
<pre> set internet-service {enable disable} set internet-service-id <service-id> set internet-service-custom <service-name> set internet-service-src {enable disable} set internet-service-src-id <source-id> set internet-service-src-custom <source-name> </pre>	<p>The Internet Service Database (ISDB) and IP Reputation Database (IRDB) enhances traffic shaping criteria for firewall policies. To use Internet services in a policy, you must set the source and destination to one of the Internet services.</p> <p>For all related commands to be available, both <code>internet-service</code> and <code>internet-service-src</code> must be set to <code>enable</code>.</p>
<pre> config firewall policy edit {policyid} # Configure IPv4 policies. set policyid {integer} Policy ID. range[0-4294967294] set name {string} Policy name. size[35] set uuid {uuid} Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset). config srcintf edit {name} # Incoming (ingress) interface. set name {string} Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name,system.zone.name next config dstintf edit {name} # Outgoing (egress) interface. set name {string} Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name,system.zone.name next config srcaddr edit {name} # Source address and address group names. set name {string} Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name next config dstaddr edit {name} # Destination address and address group names. set name {string} Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire- wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name,firewall.vip.name,firewall.vipgrp.name next </pre>	


```

        set internet-service {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of Internet Services for this policy. If enabled,
destination address and service are not used.
        config internet-service-id
            edit {id}
            # Internet Service ID.
            set id {integer}    Internet Service ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-ser-
vice.id
        next
        config internet-service-custom
            edit {name}
            # Custom Internet Service name.
            set name {string}    Custom Internet Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-service-
custom.name
        next
        set internet-service-src {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of Internet Services in source for this policy.
If enabled, source address is not used.
        config internet-service-src-id
            edit {id}
            # Internet Service source ID.
            set id {integer}    Internet Service ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-ser-
vice.id
        next
        config internet-service-src-custom
            edit {name}
            # Custom Internet Service source name.
            set name {string}    Custom Internet Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-service-
custom.name
        next
        set rtp-nat {disable | enable}    Enable Real Time Protocol (RTP) NAT.
        config rtp-addr
            edit {name}
            # Address names if this is an RTP NAT policy.
            set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
        next
        set learning-mode {enable | disable}    Enable to allow everything, but log all of the meaningful data for secur-
ity information gathering. A learning report will be generated.
        set action {accept | deny | ipsec}    Policy action (allow/deny/ipsec).
            accept    Allows session that match the firewall policy.
            deny    Blocks sessions that match the firewall policy.
            ipsec    Firewall policy becomes a policy-based IPsec VPN policy.

```

```

    set send-deny-packet {disable | enable}    Enable to send a reply when a session is denied or blocked by a fire-
wall policy.
    set firewall-session-dirty {check-all | check-new}    How to handle sessions if the configuration of this fire-
wall policy changes.
        check-all    Flush all current sessions accepted by this policy. These sessions must be started and re-
matched with policies.
        check-new    Continue to allow sessions already accepted by this policy.
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable or disable this policy.
    set schedule {string}    Schedule name. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.schedule.onetime.name, firewall.schedule.recurring.name, firewall.schedule.group.name
    set schedule-timeout {enable | disable}    Enable to force current sessions to end when the schedule object times
out. Disable allows them to end from inactivity.
    config service
        edit {name}
        # Service and service group names.
        set name {string}    Service and service group names. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name, firewall.service.group.name
        next
        set dscp-match {enable | disable}    Enable DSCP check.
        set dscp-negate {enable | disable}    Enable negated DSCP match.
        set dscp-value {string}    DSCP value.
        set tcp-session-without-syn {all | data-only | disable}    Enable/disable creation of TCP session without SYN
flag.
            all        Enable TCP session without SYN.
            data-only    Enable TCP session data only.
            disable    Disable TCP session without SYN.
        set utm-status {enable | disable}    Enable to add one or more security profiles (AV, IPS, etc.) to the firewall
policy.
        set profile-type {single | group}    Determine whether the firewall policy allows security profile groups or
single profiles only.
            single    Do not allow security profile groups.
            group    Allow security profile groups.
        set profile-group {string}    Name of profile group. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.profile-group.name
        set av-profile {string}    Name of an existing Antivirus profile. size[35] - datasource(s): anti-
virus.profile.name
        set webfilter-profile {string}    Name of an existing Web filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s):
webfilter.profile.name
        set dnsfilter-profile {string}    Name of an existing DNS filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s): dns-
filter.profile.name
        set spamfilter-profile {string}    Name of an existing Spam filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s):

```

```

spamfilter.profile.name
    set dlp-sensor {string}    Name of an existing DLP sensor. size[35] - datasource(s): dlp.sensor.name
    set ips-sensor {string}    Name of an existing IPS sensor. size[35] - datasource(s): ips.sensor.name
    set application-list {string}    Name of an existing Application list. size[35] - datasource(s): applic-
ation.list.name
    set voip-profile {string}    Name of an existing VoIP profile. size[35] - datasource(s): voip.profile.name
    set icap-profile {string}    Name of an existing ICAP profile. size[35] - datasource(s): icap.profile.name
    set waf-profile {string}    Name of an existing Web application firewall profile. size[35] - datasource(s): waf.-
profile.name
    set ssh-filter-profile {string}    Name of an existing SSH filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s): ssh-
filter.profile.name
    set profile-protocol-options {string}    Name of an existing Protocol options profile. size[35] - datasource(s):
firewall.profile-protocol-options.name
    set ssl-ssh-profile {string}    Name of an existing SSL SSH profile. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.ssl-ssh-
profile.name
    set logtraffic {all | utm | disable}    Enable or disable logging. Log all sessions or security profile sessions.
        all        Log all sessions accepted or denied by this policy.
        utm        Log traffic that has a security profile applied to it.
        disable    Disable all logging for this policy.
    set logtraffic-start {enable | disable}    Record logs when a session starts and ends.
    set capture-packet {enable | disable}    Enable/disable capture packets.
    set auto-asic-offload {enable | disable}    Enable/disable offloading security profile processing to CP pro-
cessors.
    set np-acceleration {enable | disable}    Enable/disable UTM Network Processor acceleration.
    set wanopt {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WAN optimization.
    set wanopt-detection {active | passive | off}    WAN optimization auto-detection mode.
        active    Active WAN optimization peer auto-detection.
        passive    Passive WAN optimization peer auto-detection.
        off        Turn off WAN optimization peer auto-detection.
    set wanopt-passive-opt {default | transparent | non-transparent}    WAN optimization passive mode options. This
option decides what IP address will be used to connect server.
        default        Allow client side WAN opt peer to decide.
        transparent    Use address of client to connect to server.
        non-transparent    Use local FortiGate address to connect to server.
    set wanopt-profile {string}    WAN optimization profile. size[35] - datasource(s): wanopt.profile.name
    set wanopt-peer {string}    WAN optimization peer. size[35] - datasource(s): wanopt.peer.peer-host-id
    set webcache {enable | disable}    Enable/disable web cache.
    set webcache-https {disable | enable}    Enable/disable web cache for HTTPS.
    set traffic-shaper {string}    Traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.traffic-shaper.name
    set traffic-shaper-reverse {string}    Reverse traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.traffic-

```

```

shaper.name
    set per-ip-shaper {string}    Per-IP traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.per-ip-shaper.name
    config application
        edit {id}
        # Application ID list.
        set id {integer}    Application IDs. range[0-4294967295]
    next
    config app-category
        edit {id}
        # Application category ID list.
        set id {integer}    Category IDs. range[0-4294967295]
    next
    config url-category
        edit {id}
        # URL category ID list.
        set id {integer}    URL category ID. range[0-4294967295]
    next
    config app-group
        edit {name}
        # Application group names.
        set name {string}    Application group names. size[64] - datasource(s): application.group.name
    next
    set nat {enable | disable}    Enable/disable source NAT.
    set permit-any-host {enable | disable}    Accept UDP packets from any host.
    set permit-stun-host {enable | disable}    Accept UDP packets from any Session Traversal Utilities for NAT (STUN)
host.
    set fixedport {enable | disable}    Enable to prevent source NAT from changing a session's source port.
    set ippool {enable | disable}    Enable to use IP Pools for source NAT.
    config poolname
        edit {name}
        # IP Pool names.
        set name {string}    IP pool name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ippool.name
    next
    set session-ttl {integer}    TTL in seconds for sessions accepted by this policy (0 means use the system default
session TTL). range[300-604800]
    set vlan-cos-fwd {integer}    VLAN forward direction user priority: 255 passthrough, 0 lowest, 7 highest. range
[0-7]
    set vlan-cos-rev {integer}    VLAN reverse direction user priority: 255 passthrough, 0 lowest, 7 highest.. range
[0-7]
    set inbound {enable | disable}    Policy-based IPsec VPN: only traffic from the remote network can initiate a

```

```

VPN.
    set outbound {enable | disable}    Policy-based IPsec VPN: only traffic from the internal network can initiate a
VPN.
    set natinbound {enable | disable}    Policy-based IPsec VPN: apply destination NAT to inbound traffic.
    set natoutbound {enable | disable}    Policy-based IPsec VPN: apply source NAT to outbound traffic.
    set wccp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable forwarding traffic matching this policy to a configured WCCP
server.
    set ntlm {enable | disable}    Enable/disable NTLM authentication.
    set ntlm-guest {enable | disable}    Enable/disable NTLM guest user access.
    config ntlm-enabled-browsers
        edit {user-agent-string}
        # HTTP-User-Agent value of supported browsers.
        set user-agent-string {string}    User agent string. size[64]
    next
    set fsso {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Fortinet Single Sign-On.
    set wssso {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WiFi Single Sign On (WSSO).
    set rssso {enable | disable}    Enable/disable RADIUS single sign-on (RSSO).
    set fsso-agent-for-ntlm {string}    FSSO agent to use for NTLM authentication. size[35] - datasource(s): user-
.fsso.name
    config groups
        edit {name}
        # Names of user groups that can authenticate with this policy.
        set name {string}    Group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
    next
    config users
        edit {name}
        # Names of individual users that can authenticate with this policy.
        set name {string}    Names of individual users that can authenticate with this policy. size[64] - data-
source(s): user.local.name
    next
    config devices
        edit {name}
        # Names of devices or device groups that can be matched by the policy.
        set name {string}    Device or group name. size[35] - datasource(s): user.device.alias,user.device-group.-
name,user.device-category.name
    next
    set auth-path {enable | disable}    Enable/disable authentication-based routing.
    set disclaimer {enable | disable}    Enable/disable user authentication disclaimer.
    set vpntunnel {string}    Policy-based IPsec VPN: name of the IPsec VPN Phase 1. size[35] - datasource(s):
vpn.ipsec.phasel.name,vpn.ipsec.manualkey.name

```

```

    set natip {ipv4 classnet}    Policy-based IPsec VPN: source NAT IP address for outgoing traffic.
    set match-vip {enable | disable}    Enable to match packets that have had their destination addresses changed by
a VIP.
    set diffserv-forward {enable | disable}    Enable to change packet's DiffServ values to the specified diff-
servcode-forward value.
    set diffserv-reverse {enable | disable}    Enable to change packet's reverse (reply) DiffServ values to the spe-
cified diffservcode-rev value.
    set diffservcode-forward {string}    Change packet's DiffServ to this value.
    set diffservcode-rev {string}    Change packet's reverse (reply) DiffServ to this value.
    set tcp-mss-sender {integer}    Sender TCP maximum segment size (MSS). range[0-65535]
    set tcp-mss-receiver {integer}    Receiver TCP maximum segment size (MSS). range[0-65535]
    set comments {string}    Comment. size[1023]
    set label {string}    Label for the policy that appears when the GUI is in Section View mode. size[63]
    set global-label {string}    Label for the policy that appears when the GUI is in Global View mode. size[63]
    set auth-cert {string}    HTTPS server certificate for policy authentication. size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.cer-
tificate.local.name
    set auth-redirect-addr {string}    HTTP-to-HTTPS redirect address for firewall authentication. size[63]
    set redirect-url {string}    URL users are directed to after seeing and accepting the disclaimer or authen-
tivating. size[255]
    set identity-based-route {string}    Name of identity-based routing rule. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.identity-based-route.name
    set block-notification {enable | disable}    Enable/disable block notification.
    config custom-log-fields
        edit {field-id}
            # Custom fields to append to log messages for this policy.
            set field-id {string}    Custom log field. size[35] - datasource(s): log.custom-field.id
        next
    set replacemsg-override-group {string}    Override the default replacement message group for this policy. size
[35] - datasource(s): system.replacemsg-group.name
    set srcaddr-negate {enable | disable}    When enabled srcaddr specifies what the source address must NOT be.
    set dstaddr-negate {enable | disable}    When enabled dstaddr specifies what the destination address must NOT be.
    set service-negate {enable | disable}    When enabled service specifies what the service must NOT be.
    set internet-service-negate {enable | disable}    When enabled internet-service specifies what the service must
NOT be.
    set internet-service-src-negate {enable | disable}    When enabled internet-service-src specifies what the ser-
vice must NOT be.
    set timeout-send-rst {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sending RST packets when TCP sessions expire.
    set captive-portal-exempt {enable | disable}    Enable to exempt some users from the captive portal.
    set ssl-mirror {enable | disable}    Enable to copy decrypted SSL traffic to a FortiGate interface (called SSL
mirroring).

```

```

    config ssl-mirror-intf
        edit {name}
            # SSL mirror interface name.
            set name {string} Mirror Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name,system.zone.name
        next
        set scan-botnet-connections {disable | block | monitor} Block or monitor connections to Botnet servers or dis-
able Botnet scanning.
            disable Do not scan connections to botnet servers.
            block Block connections to botnet servers.
            monitor Log connections to botnet servers.
        set dsri {enable | disable} Enable DSRI to ignore HTTP server responses.
        set radius-mac-auth-bypass {enable | disable} Enable MAC authentication bypass. The bypassed MAC address must
be received from RADIUS server.
        set delay-tcp-npu-session {enable | disable} Enable TCP NPU session delay to guarantee packet order of 3-way
handshake.
        set vlan-filter {string} Set VLAN filters.
    next
end

config firewall policy6
    edit {policyid}
        # Configure IPv6 policies.
        set policyid {integer} Policy ID. range[0-4294967294]
        set name {string} Policy name. size[35]
        set uuid {uuid} Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
        config srcintf
            edit {name}
                # Incoming (ingress) interface.
                set name {string} Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.zone.name,system.interface.name
            next
        config dstintf
            edit {name}
                # Outgoing (egress) interface.
                set name {string} Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name,system.zone.name
            next
        config srcaddr
            edit {name}
                # Source address and address group names.
                set name {string} Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name

```

```

    next
    config dstaddr
        edit {name}
        # Destination address and address group names.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name,firewall.vip6.name,firewall.vipgrp6.name
        next
        set action {accept | deny | ipsec}    Policy action (allow/deny/ipsec).
            accept    Allows session that match the firewall policy.
            deny    Blocks sessions that match the firewall policy.
            ipsec    Firewall policy becomes a policy-based IPsec VPN policy.
        set firewall-session-dirty {check-all | check-new}    How to handle sessions if the configuration of this fire-
wall policy changes.
            check-all    Flush all current sessions accepted by this policy. These sessions must be started and re-
matched with policies.
            check-new    Continue to allow sessions already accepted by this policy.
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable or disable this policy.
        set vlan-cos-fwd {integer}    VLAN forward direction user priority: 255 passthrough, 0 lowest, 7 highest range[0-
7]
        set vlan-cos-rev {integer}    VLAN reverse direction user priority: 255 passthrough, 0 lowest, 7 highest range[0-
7]
        set schedule {string}    Schedule name. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.schedule.onetime.name,firewall.schedule.recurring.name,firewall.schedule.group.name
        config service
            edit {name}
            # Service and service group names.
            set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name
            next
            set dscp-match {enable | disable}    Enable DSCP check.
            set dscp-negate {enable | disable}    Enable negated DSCP match.
            set dscp-value {string}    DSCP value.
            set tcp-session-without-syn {all | data-only | disable}    Enable/disable creation of TCP session without SYN
flag.
                all    Enable TCP session without SYN.
                data-only    Enable TCP session data only.
                disable    Disable TCP session without SYN.
            set utm-status {enable | disable}    Enable AV/web/ips protection profile.
            set profile-type {single | group}    Determine whether the firewall policy allows security profile groups or
single profiles only.

```



```

        single Do not allow security profile groups.
        group Allow security profile groups.
    set profile-group {string} Name of profile group. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.profile-group.name
    set av-profile {string} Name of an existing Antivirus profile. size[35] - datasource(s): anti-
virus.profile.name
    set webfilter-profile {string} Name of an existing Web filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s):
webfilter.profile.name
    set spamfilter-profile {string} Name of an existing Spam filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s): spam-
filter.profile.name
    set dlp-sensor {string} Name of an existing DLP sensor. size[35] - datasource(s): dlp.sensor.name
    set ips-sensor {string} Name of an existing IPS sensor. size[35] - datasource(s): ips.sensor.name
    set application-list {string} Name of an existing Application list. size[35] - datasource(s): applic-
ation.list.name
    set voip-profile {string} Name of an existing VoIP profile. size[35] - datasource(s): voip.profile.name
    set icap-profile {string} Name of an existing ICAP profile. size[35] - datasource(s): icap.profile.name
    set ssh-filter-profile {string} Name of an existing SSH filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s): ssh-fil-
ter.profile.name
    set profile-protocol-options {string} Name of an existing Protocol options profile. size[35] - datasource(s):
firewall.profile-protocol-options.name
    set ssl-ssh-profile {string} Name of an existing SSL SSH profile. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.ssl-ssh-
profile.name
    set logtraffic {all | utm | disable} Enable or disable logging. Log all sessions or security profile sessions.
        all Log all sessions accepted or denied by this policy.
        utm Log traffic that has a security profile applied to it.
        disable Disable all logging for this policy.
    set logtraffic-start {enable | disable} Record logs when a session starts and ends.
    set auto-asic-offload {enable | disable} Enable/disable policy traffic ASIC offloading.
    set np-acceleration {enable | disable} Enable/disable UTM Network Processor acceleration.
    set traffic-shaper {string} Reverse traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.traffic-shaper-
.name
    set traffic-shaper-reverse {string} Reverse traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.traffic-
shaper.name
    set per-ip-shaper {string} Per-IP traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.per-ip-shaper.name
    config application
        edit {id}
        # Application ID list.
        set id {integer} Application IDs. range[0-4294967295]
        next
    config app-category
        edit {id}

```

```

        # Application category ID list.
        set id {integer}    Category IDs. range[0-4294967295]
    next
config url-category
    edit {id}
    # URL category ID list.
    set id {integer}    URL category ID. range[0-4294967295]
    next
config app-group
    edit {name}
    # Application group names.
    set name {string}    Application group names. size[64] - datasource(s): application.group.name
    next
set nat {enable | disable}    Enable/disable source NAT.
set fixedport {enable | disable}    Enable to prevent source NAT from changing a session's source port.
set ippool {enable | disable}    Enable to use IP Pools for source NAT.
config poolname
    edit {name}
    # IP Pool names.
    set name {string}    IP pool name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ippool6.name
    next
set session-ttl {integer}    Session TTL in seconds for sessions accepted by this policy. 0 means use the system
default session TTL. range[300-604800]
set inbound {enable | disable}    Policy-based IPsec VPN: only traffic from the remote network can initiate a
VPN.
set outbound {enable | disable}    Policy-based IPsec VPN: only traffic from the internal network can initiate a
VPN.
set natinbound {enable | disable}    Policy-based IPsec VPN: apply destination NAT to inbound traffic.
set natoutbound {enable | disable}    Policy-based IPsec VPN: apply source NAT to outbound traffic.
set send-deny-packet {enable | disable}    Enable/disable return of deny-packet.
set vpntunnel {string}    Policy-based IPsec VPN: name of the IPsec VPN Phase 1. size[35] - datasource(s):
vpn.ipsec.phasel.name,vpn.ipsec.manualkey.name
    set diffserv-forward {enable | disable}    Enable to change packet's DiffServ values to the specified diff-
servcode-forward value.
    set diffserv-reverse {enable | disable}    Enable to change packet's reverse (reply) DiffServ values to the spe-
cified diffservcode-rev value.
    set diffservcode-forward {string}    Change packet's DiffServ to this value.
    set diffservcode-rev {string}    Change packet's reverse (reply) DiffServ to this value.
    set tcp-mss-sender {integer}    Sender TCP maximum segment size (MSS). range[0-65535]
    set tcp-mss-receiver {integer}    Receiver TCP maximum segment size (MSS). range[0-65535]

```

```

set comments {string}    Comment. size[1023]
set label {string}    Label for the policy that appears when the GUI is in Section View mode. size[63]
set global-label {string}    Label for the policy that appears when the GUI is in Global View mode. size[63]
set rsso {enable | disable}    Enable/disable RADIUS single sign-on (RSSO).
config custom-log-fields
    edit {field-id}
        # Log field index numbers to append custom log fields to log messages for this policy.
        set field-id {string}    Custom log field. size[35] - datasource(s): log.custom-field.id
    next
set replacemsg-override-group {string}    Override the default replacement message group for this policy. size
[35] - datasource(s): system.replacemsg-group.name
set srcaddr-negate {enable | disable}    When enabled srcaddr specifies what the source address must NOT be.
set dstaddr-negate {enable | disable}    When enabled dstaddr specifies what the destination address must NOT be.
set service-negate {enable | disable}    When enabled service specifies what the service must NOT be.
config groups
    edit {name}
        # Names of user groups that can authenticate with this policy.
        set name {string}    Group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
    next
config users
    edit {name}
        # Names of individual users that can authenticate with this policy.
        set name {string}    Names of individual users that can authenticate with this policy. size[64] - data-
source(s): user.local.name
    next
config devices
    edit {name}
        # Names of devices or device groups that can be matched by the policy.
        set name {string}    Device or group name. size[35] - datasource(s): user.device.alias,user.device-group.-
name,user.device-category.name
    next
set timeout-send-rst {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sending RST packets when TCP sessions expire.
set ssl-mirror {enable | disable}    Enable to copy decrypted SSL traffic to a FortiGate interface (called SSL
mirroring).
config ssl-mirror-intf
    edit {name}
        # SSL mirror interface name.
        set name {string}    Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.zone.name,system.interface.name
    next
set dsri {enable | disable}    Enable DSRI to ignore HTTP server responses.

```

```
        set vlan-filter {string}    Set VLAN filters.
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

Managing policy objects

The configuration of specific policy options or settings is the most common activity when using the firewall policy command but some commands affect the policy objects as a whole.

edit

Used to select which individual policy to configure or edit values.

Syntax:

```
edit <policyid>
```

- Choosing 0 as the <policyid> will add a new policy using the next available number as the <policyid>. While first editing the policy the context at the command prompt will indicate that the <policyid> is 0 but subsequent editing will require going to the new <policyid>.

delete

Used to delete an existing firewall policy

Syntax:

```
delete <policyid>
```

- The <policyid> can be an integer value between 0 and 4294967294

purge

Used delete all of the existing firewall policies. It deletes all of the values within the table that holds the information about firewall policies within the VDOM.

Syntax:

```
purge
```

- There are no options, parameters or qualifiers. Just use the enter key after entering the command
- This command has a serious impact. Use cautiously.

move

Used to move the position of a policy, relative to another policy, in the sequence order of how policies are applied.

Syntax:

```
move <policyid> {after | before} <policyid>
```

clone

Used to copy all of the attributes of an existing policy to another policy.

Syntax:

```
clone <policyid> to <policyid>
```

Options and settings within a policy**name**

A unique name given to the policy. By default, this is a required field but the requirement can be disabled.

Syntax:

```
set name <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
```

```
        set name example
    or..
        set name "example policy name"
end
```

uuid

Each policy has a Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) that is automatically assigned. It is a 128 bit value written in hexadecimal. It can be edited.

Syntax:

```
set uuid <uuid_value>
```

Default value: autogenerated

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set uuid a3c9ccb8-a84a-51e6-d72c-6a5189cadb83
end
```

srcintf

Sets the source interface of the traffic that the policy will manage. The value is a <string> that should be the name of one of the existing interfaces configured on the device. Separate multiple interfaces with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append} srcintf <name_of_interface> [<name_of_interface> ...]
```

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set srcintf port1
    or ...
        set srcintf port2 port3
```

```
        or ...
        append srcintf port4
end
```

dstintf

Sets the destination interface of the traffic that the policy will manage. The value is a <string> that should be the name of one of the existing interfaces configured on the device. Separate multiple interfaces with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append} dstintf <name_of_interface> [<name_of_interface> ...]
```

Example:

```
config firewall policy
  edit 0
  set dstintf port11
  or ...
  set dstintf port12 port13
  or ...
  append dstintf port14
end
```

srcaddr

Sets the source address object(s), whose traffic will be managed by this policy. More than once object can be assigned to this option. Separate multiple addresses with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append} srcaddr <address_object> [<address_object> ...]
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
  edit 0
  set srcaddr example_address1
```

```
    or ...
    set srcaddress "example address2" "example_address3"
    or ...
    append srcaddr example_address4
end
```

dstaddr

Sets the destination address object(s), whose traffic will be managed by this policy. More than once object can be assigned to this option. Separate multiple addresses with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append} dstaddr <address_object> [<address_object> ...]
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
    set dstaddr example_address1
    or ...
    set dstaddr "example address2" "example_address3"
    or ...
    append dstaddr example_address4
end
```

rtp-nat

Enables or disables the application of source NAT to RTP packets received by the firewall policy. This field is used for redundant SIP configurations. If `rtp-nat` is enabled you must add one or more firewall addresses to the `rtp-addr` field.

Syntax:

```
set rtp-nat {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

rtp-addr

Used to enter one or more RTP firewall addresses for the policy. This field is only available when `rtp-nat` is enabled. Separate multiple addresses with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append} rtp-addr <address_object> [<address_object> ...]
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set rtp-addr example_address1
        or ...
        set rtp-addr "example address 2" "example_address3
        or ...
        append example_address4
    end
```

learning-mode

Enables or disables a specialized action option that monitors and logs traffic based on hard coded security profiles.

Syntax:

```
set learning-mode {enable|disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

action

Sets the action that the FortiGate unit will perform on traffic matching this firewall policy.

- `accept` — Allow packets that match the firewall policy. Optionally, also enable `nat` to make this a NAT policy (NAT mode only).
- `deny` — Deny packets that match the firewall policy.
- `ipsec` — Allow and apply IPSec VPN. You must specify the `vpntunnel` attribute. You may also enable or disable the `inbound`, `outbound`, `natoutbound`, and `natinbound` attributes and/or specify a `natip` value.

Limitations:

- If `learning-mode` is enabled the `action` setting will not be available
- For IPv6 policies, only `accept` and `deny` options are available.

Syntax:

```
set action [accept|deny|ipsec]
```

Default value: `deny`

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set action accept
    end
```

send-deny-packet

Enables or disables the ability to send a packet in reply to denied TCP, UDP or ICMP traffic. When `deny-tcp-with-icmp` is enabled in system settings, a Communication Prohibited ICMP packet is sent. Otherwise, denied TCP traffic is sent a TCP reset.

Syntax:

```
set send-deny-packet {enable|disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

firewall-session-dirty

Used to determine whether changes to a firewall policy affect all sessions or just new ones.

- `check-all` — flushes all current sessions in order to re-evaluate them
- `check-new` — keeps existing sessions and applies policy change only to new sessions

This field is available if `firewall-session-dirty` in `config system settings` is set to `check-policy-option`.

Syntax:

```
set firewall-session-dirty [check-all|check-new]
```

Default value: check-all

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set firewall-session-dirty check-new
    end
```

status

Enables or disables a policy.

Syntax:

```
set status {enable|disable}
```

Default value: enable

schedule

Sets the schedule used by the policy. The variable is the name of the existing one-time or reoccurring schedule, or schedule group.

Syntax:

```
set schedule <schedule_object>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set schedule work_week
    end
```

schedule-timeout

When enabled, sessions are forced to end when the schedule's end time is reached. If disabled, sessions can go past the schedule's end time, but no new sessions can start.

Syntax:

```
set schedule-timeout {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

service

Used to set the services matched by the policy. The variable can be one or more services or service groups. Separate multiple services with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append} service <service_object> [<service_object> ...]
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
    set service http
    or ...
    set service http "Email Access"
    or ...
    append service ftp
end
```

utm-status

Enables or disables adding security profiles on the firewall policy. If enabled, at least one profile must be added to the policy. This setting is not available until the source, destination, and action (`accept`) parameters of the policy have been configured.

Syntax:

```
set utm-status {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

profile-type

Sets whether or not to use individual UTM profiles or a UTM profile group to the firewall policy.

Syntax:

```
set profile-type {single | group}
```

Default value: single

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set profile-type group
    end
```

profile-group

Determines the name of a UTM profile group in the firewall policy. This option is available if `profile-type` is set to `group`.

Syntax:

```
set profile-group <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set profile-group example_profile_group
    end
```

av-profile

Sets the name of the antivirus profile associated with the firewall policy. This field is available only if `utm-status` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set av-profile <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set av-profile default_av_profile
    end
```

webfilter-profile

Sets the name of the webfilter profile associated with the firewall policy. This field is available only if `utm-status` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set webfilter-profile <string>
```

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set webfilter-profile "example web profile"
    end
```

dnsfilter-profile

Sets the name of the DNS filter profile associated with the firewall policy. This field is available only if `utm-status` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set dnsfilter-profile <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
```

```
        set dnsfilter-profile dns_for_developers
    end
```

spamfilter-profile

Sets the name of the spam filter profile associated with the firewall policy. This field is available only if `utm-status` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set spamfilter-profile <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set spamfilter-profile spam-filter1
    end
```

dlp-sensor

Sets the name of the DLP sensor profile associated with the firewall policy. This field is available only if `utm-status` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set dlp-sensor <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set dlp-sensor dlp-classified
    end
```

ips-sensor

Sets the name of the IPS profile associated with the firewall policy. This field is available only if `utm-status` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set ips-sensor <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set ips-sensor production_ips
    end
```

application-list

Sets the name of the pre-packaged list of applications associated with the firewall policy. This field is available only if `utm-status` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set application-list <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set application-list allowed-apps
    end
```

casi-profile

Sets the name of the CASI profile associated with the firewall policy. This field is available only if `utm-status` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set casi-profile <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
```



```
        set casi-profile casi-default
    end
```

voip-profile

Sets the name of the VoIP profile associated with the firewall policy. This field is available only if `utm-status` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set voip-profile <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set voip-profile voip-example
    end
```

icap-profile

Sets the name of the ICAP profile associated with the firewall policy. This field is available only if `utm-status` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set icap-profile <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set icap-profile icap-test
    end
```

waf-profile

Sets the name of the WAF profile associated with the firewall policy. This field is available only if `utm-status` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set waf-profile <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set waf-profile waf-profile1
    end
```

profile-protocol-options

Sets the name of the protocol options profile associated with the firewall policy.

Syntax:

```
set profile-protocol-options <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set profile-protocol-options company_default
    end
```

ssl-ssh-profile

Sets the name of the SSL/SSH profile associated with the firewall policy. This field is available only if `utm-status` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set ssl-ssh-profile <string>
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
```

```
        set ssl-ssh-profile default-profile
    end
```

logtraffic

Used to set how traffic logs are recorded for this policy.

- **all** - record logs for all traffic accepted by this policy
- **utm log traffic** traffic that has a security profile applied to it
- **disable** - disable logging for this policy

Syntax:

```
set logtraffic {all | utm | disable}
```

Default value: utm

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set logtraffic utm
    end
```

logtraffic-start

Enables or disables the ability to log session starts and stops.

Syntax:

```
set logtraffic-start {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

capture-packet

Enables or disables the packet capture feature. This is available if the **logtraffic** setting is **all** or **utm**.

Default value: disable

Syntax:

```
set capture-packet {enable|disable}set
```

auto-asic-offload {disable | enable}

Enables or disables offloading policy traffic to CPx processors. Disabling `auto-asic-offload` also disables offloading traffic to NPx processors.

Syntax:

```
set auto-asic-offload {enable|disable}
```

Default value: enable

wanopt

Enables or disables the use the WAN optimization feature on this policy. This feature is only available if the `action setting` is `accept`.

Syntax:

```
set wanopt {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

wanopt-detection

Used to select the wanopt peer auto-detection mode.

Syntax:

```
set wanopt-detection {active | passive | off}
```

Default value: off

Example:

```
config firewall policy
  edit 0
```

```
        set wanopt-detection active
    end
```

wanopt-passive-opt

Used to set passive WAN Optimization policy address translation behavior.

- **default** - Use the transparent setting in the WAN Optimization profile added to the active policy (client-side configuration).
- **transparent** - Impose transparent mode (override the active policy transparent mode setting). Packets exiting the FortiGate keep their original source addresses.
- **non-transparent** - Impose non-transparent mode (override the active policy transparent mode setting). Packets exiting the FortiGate have their source address changed to the address of the server-side FortiGate unit interface that sends the packets to the servers.

Syntax:

```
set wanopt-passive-opt {default | transparent | non-transparent}
```

Default value: default

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set wanopt-passive-opt transparent
    end
```

wanopt-profile

Sets the name of the WAN optimization profile associated with the firewall policy.

Syntax:

```
set wanopt-profile <string>
```

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
```

```
        set wanopt-profile "Company default WANopt"  
    end
```

wanopt-peer

Used to set the WAN optimization peer.

Syntax:

```
set wanopt-peer <string>
```

webcache

Enables or disables the WAN optimization web caching for HTTP traffic accepted by the firewall policy. This option is available only on FortiGate units that support WAN Optimization and web caching.

Syntax:

```
set webcache {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

webcache-https

Sets the level of webcaching for HTTPS traffic.

- `disable` — no caching of HTTPS traffic
- `enable` — caching of HTTPS traffic

This field is available only if `webcache` is enabled. This field is not available if `srcintf` is `ftp-proxy` or `wanopt`.

Syntax:

```
set webcache-https {disable| enable}
```

Default value: disable

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set webcache enable
        set webcache-https enable
    end
```

traffic-shaper

Select a traffic shaper for the policy. A traffic shaper controls the bandwidth available to, and sets the priority of the traffic processed by, the policy.

Syntax:

```
set traffic-shaper <string>
```

traffic-shaper-reverse

Select a reverse traffic shaper. For example, if the traffic direction that a policy controls is from port1 to port2, select this option will also apply the policy shaping configuration to traffic from port2 to port1.

Syntax:

```
set traffic-shaper-reverse <string>
```

per-ip-shaper

Enter the name of the per-IP traffic shaper to associate with this policy. For information about per-IP traffic shapers, see `firewall shaper per-ip-shaper`.

Syntax:

```
set per-ip-shaper <string>
```

nat

Enables or disables the use of Network Address Translation (NAT)

Syntax:

```
set nat {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

permit-any-host

Enables or disables the ability to accept UDP packets from any host. This can help support the FaceTime application on NAT'd iPhones.

Syntax:

```
set permit-any-host {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

permit-stun-host

Enables or disables the ability to accept UDP packets from any Session Traversal Utilities for NAT (STUN) host. This can help support the FaceTime application on NAT'd iPhones.

Syntax:

```
set permit-stun-host {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

fixedport

Enables or disables the ability to preserve packets' source port number, which may otherwise be changed by a NAT policy. Some applications do not function correctly if the source port number is changed, and may require this option. If `fixedport` is `enable`, you should usually also enable IP pools; if you do not configure an IP pool for the policy, only one connection can occur at a time for this port.

Syntax:

```
set fixedport {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

ippool

Enables or disables the use of ippools for NAT. When the `action` is set to `accept` and NAT is enabled, the `ippool` function allows a NAT policy to translate the source address to an address randomly selected from the first IP pool added to the destination interface of the policy.

Syntax:

```
set ippool {enable|disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

poolname

The name of the IP pool to be used for NAT. To use this option requires that `ippool` be enabled. Separate multiple addresses with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append} poolname <ippool> [<ippool> ...]
```

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
    set poolname testpool1
    or ...
    append poolname "testpool 1" "testpool2"
    or ...
    clear poolname
end
```

session-ttl

Used to set the timeout value in the policy to override the global timeout setting defined by using `config system session-ttl`. When it is on default value, it will not take effect. Value is in seconds.

Syntax:

```
set session-ttl <integer>
```

Default value: 0

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set session-ttl 3600
    end
```

vlan-cos-fwd

Used to set the VLAN forward direction user priority, CoS. Range 0 (lowest) to 7 (highest), 255 for passthrough.

Syntax:

```
set vlan-cos-fwd <integer>
```

Default value: 255

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set vlan-cos-fwd 7
    end
```

vlan-cos-rev

Used to set the VLAN reverse direction user priority, CoS. Range 0 (lowest) to 7 (highest), 255 for passthrough.

Syntax:

```
set vlan-cos-rev <integer>
```

Default value: 255

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set vlan-cos-rev 3
    end
```

inbound

When `action` is set to `ipsec`, this setting enables or disables traffic from computers on the remote private network to initiate an IPsec VPN tunnel.

Syntax:

```
set inbound {enable | disable}
```

Default value: disable

outbound

When `action` is set to `ipsec`, this setting enables or disables traffic from computers on the local private network to initiate an IPsec VPN tunnel.

Syntax:

```
set outbound {enable | disable}
```

Default value: disable

natinbound

Enables or disables the function of translating the source addresses IP packets emerging from an IPsec tunnel into the IP address of the FortiGate unit's network interface to the local private network. This option appears only if `action` is `ipsec`.

Syntax:

```
set natinbound {enable | disable}
```

Default value: disable

natoutbound

Enables or disables the function of translating the source addresses of outbound encrypted packets into the IP address of the FortiGate unit's outbound interface. Enable this attribute in combination with the `natip` attribute to change the source addresses of IP packets before they go into the tunnel. This option appears only if attribute to change the source addresses of IP packets before they go into the tunnel. This option appears only if `action` is `ipsec`.

Syntax:

```
set natoutbound {enable | disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

wccp

Enables or disables Web Cache Coordination Protocol (WCCP). If enabled, the traffic accepted by this policy is sent to a configured WCCP server as configured by the `config system wccp` command.

Syntax:

```
set wccp {enable|disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

ntlm

Enables or disables Directory Service authentication via NTLM. If you enable this option, you must also define the user groups. This field is available only if the `groups` or `users` fields are specified.

Syntax:

```
set ntlm {enable|disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

ntlm-guest

Enables or disables NTLM guest user access.

Syntax:

```
set ntlm-guest {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

ntlm-enabled-browsers

Sets the value for the HTTP-User-Agent of supported browsers. Enclose each string in quotes and separate strings with a space. Browsers with non-matching strings get guest access.

Syntax:

```
{set|append|clear} ntlm-enabled-browsers <user_agent_string>
```

fsso

Enables or disables Fortinet Single Sign On. This field is available when `groups` is populated.

Syntax:

```
set fsso {enable|disable}
```

Default value: enable

wssso

Enables or disables WiFi Single Sign On.

Syntax:

```
set wssso {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

rssso

Enables or disables RADIUS-based single sign-on (SSO) for this policy.

Syntax:

```
set rso {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

fso-agent-for-ntlm

Specify FSO agent for NTLM authentication.

Syntax:

```
set fso-agent-for-ntlm <string>
```

groups

A listing of the names of the user groups allowed to use this policy. Separate multiple groups with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append} groups <user-group_object> [<user-group_object> ...]
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
  edit 0
  set groups group1
  or ...
  set groups group2 "Group 3"
  or ...
  append groups group4
end
```

users

A listing of the names of the users allowed to use this policy. Separate multiple users with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append} users <user_object> [<user_object> ...]
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set users adam
        or ...
        set users burt "Charlie C"
        or ...
        append users david
    end
```

devices

A listing of the names of devices or device categories that apply to this policy. Separate multiple devices with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append} devices <device_object> [<device_object> ...]
```

Examples:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set devices "adams pc"
        or ...
        set user bob-pc linux-pc
        or ...
        append user windows-pc
    end
```

auth-path

Enables or disables authentication-based routing. You must also specify a RADIUS server, and the RADIUS server must be configured to supply the name of an object specified in `config router auth-path`. For details on configuring authentication-based routes, see `router auth-path`. This field is

available only when the FortiGate unit is operating in NAT mode and the `groups` or `users` fields are specified.

Syntax:

```
set auth-path {enable|disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

disclaimer

Enables or disables the display of the authentication disclaimer page, which is configured with other replacement messages. The user must accept the disclaimer to connect to the destination.

Syntax:

```
set disclaimer {enable|disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

vpntunnel

Sets the name of a Phase 1 IPsec VPN configuration to apply to the IPsec tunnel. This field is available only if `action` is `ipsec`.

Syntax:

```
set vpntunnel <string>
```

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set vpntunnel "TunnelA Phase 1"
    end
```

natip

Used to specify the source IP address and subnet mask to apply to outbound clear text packets before they are sent through the tunnel. If you do not specify a `natip` value when `natoutbound` is enabled, the source addresses of outbound encrypted packets are translated into the IP address of the FortiGate unit's

external interface. When a `natip` value is specified, the FortiGate unit uses a static subnetwork-to-subnetwork mapping scheme to translate the source addresses of outbound IP packets into corresponding IP addresses on the subnetwork that you specify. For example, if the source address in the firewall encryption policy is 192.168.1.0/24 and the `natip` value is 172.16.2.0/24, a source address of 192.168.1.7 will be translated to 172.16.2.7. This field is available only if `ipsec` and `natoutbound` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set natip <IP_address> <IPv4mask>
```

match-vip

Enables or disables the function of matching DNATed packets. If you want to explicitly drop a packet that is not matched with a firewall policy and write a log message when this happens, you can add a general policy (source and destination address set to `all`) to the bottom of a policy list and configure the firewall policy to DENY packets and record a log message when a packet is dropped. In some cases, when a virtual IP performs destination NAT (DNAT) on a packet, the translated packet may not be accepted by a firewall policy. If this happens, the packet is silently dropped and therefore not matched with the general policy at the bottom of the policy list. To catch these packets, enable `match-vip` in the general policy. Then the DNATed packets that are not matched by a VIP policy are matched with the general policy where they can be explicitly dropped and logged.

Syntax:

```
set match-vip {enable|disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

diffserv-forward

Enables or disables application of the differentiated services code point (DSCP) value to the DSCP field of forward (original) traffic. If enabled, `diffservcode-forward` also needs to be configured.

Syntax:

```
set diffserv-forward {enable|disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

diffserv-reverse

Enables or disables application of the differentiated services code point (DSCP) value to the DSCP field of reverse (reply) traffic. If enabled, `diffservcode-rev` also needs to be configured.

Syntax:

```
set diffserv-reverse {enable | disable}
```

Default value: disable

diffservcode-forward

Used to set the differentiated services code point (DSCP) value that the FortiGate unit will apply to the field of originating (forward) packets. The value is 6 bits binary. The valid range is 000000-111111. This option appears only if `diffserv-forward` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set diffservcode-forward <binary>
```

Default value: 000000

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set diffservcode-forward 001001
    end
```

diffservcode-rev

Used to set the differentiated services code point (DSCP) value that the FortiGate unit will apply to the field of reply (reverse) packets. The value is 6 bits binary. The valid range is 000000-111111. This option appears only if `diffserv-rev` is enabled.

Syntax:

```
set diffservcode-rev <binary>
```

Default value: 000000

tcp-mss-sender

Used to set the TCP Maximum Segment Size (MSS) number for the sender. When a FortiGate unit is configured to use PPPoE to connect to an ISP, certain web sites may not be accessible to users. This occurs because a PPPoE frame takes an extra 8 bytes off the standard Ethernet MTU of 1500. When the server sends the large packet with DF bit set to 1, the ADSL provider's router either does not send an "ICMP fragmentation needed" packet or the packet is dropped along the path to the web server. In either case, the web server never knows fragmentation is required to reach the client. Used to set the TCP Maximum Segment Size (MSS) number for the sender. When a FortiGate unit is configured to use PPPoE to connect to an ISP, certain web sites may not be accessible to users. This occurs because a PPPoE frame takes an extra 8 bytes off the standard Ethernet MTU of 1500. When the server sends the large packet with DF bit set to 1, the ADSL provider's router either does not send an "ICMP fragmentation needed" packet or the packet is dropped along the path to the web server. In either case, the web server never knows fragmentation is required to reach the client.

Syntax:

```
set tcp-mss-sender <integer>
```

tcp-mss-receiver

Used to set the TCP MSS number for the receiver.

Syntax:

```
set tcp-mss-receiver <integer>
```

Default value: 0

comments

Field to store descriptive information about the policy such as its intended purpose and targets. The field is limited to 63 characters. Enclose the string in single quotes to enter special characters or spaces.

Syntax:

```
set comments <string>
```

Default value: 0

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set comments "Default outgoing traffic policy for corporate users"
    end
```

label

Used to set a label for this policy. The label is visible in the GUI in Section View.

Syntax:

```
set label <string>
```

global-label

Puts policy in the named subsection in the web-based manager. Subsection is created if it does not already exist.

Syntax:

```
set global-label <string>
```

auth-cert

Used to select an HTTPS server certificate for policy authentication. `self-sign` is the built-in, self-signed certificate; if you have added other certificates, you may select them instead. This field is available only if the `groups` or `users` fields are specified.

Syntax:

```
set auth-cert <string>
```

auth-redirect-addr

Used to set the IP address or domain name to redirect user HTTP requests after accepting the authentication disclaimer. The redirect URL could be to a web page with extra information (for example, terms of usage). To prevent web browser security warnings, this should match the CN field of the specified `auth-cert`, which is usually a fully qualified domain name (FQDN). This field is available only if the `groups` or `users` fields are specified.

Syntax:

```
set auth-redirect-addr <string>
```

redirect-url

Set the URL, if any, that the user is redirected to after authenticating and/or accepting the user authentication disclaimer. This field is available only if `disclaimer` is set to `enable`.

Syntax:

```
set redirect-url <string>
```

identity-based-route

Used to specify an identity-based route to be associated with the policy. Identity-based routes are defined in `firewall identity-based-route`.

Syntax:

```
set identity-based-route <string>
```

block-notification

Enables or disables the feature that displays the Fortinet Bar in the browser when a site is blocked and provides a block page via HTTP/HTTPS.

Syntax:

```
set block-notification {enable|disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

custom-log-fields

Used to enter log field index numbers to append one or more custom log fields to the log message for this policy. This option takes effect only if logging is enabled for the policy, and requires that you first define custom log fields. Separate multiple values with a space.

Syntax:

```
{set|append|clear} custom-log-fields <string> [<string> ...]
```

replacemsg-override-group

Used to select a replacement message override group from the available configured groups. This will override the default replacement message for this policy.

Syntax:

```
set replacemsg-override-group <string>
```

srcaddr-negate

Enables or disables the negate source address match function. When enabled, this causes the `srcaddr` field to specify what the source address must **not** be.

Syntax:

```
set srcaddr-negate {enable|disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

dstaddr-negate

Enables or disables the negate destination address match function. When enabled, this causes the `dstaddr` field to specify what the destination address must **not** be.

Syntax:

```
set dstaddr-negate {enable|disable}
```

Default value: `disable`

service-negate

Enables or disables the negate service match function. When enabled, this causes the `service` field to specify what the service traffic must **not** be.

Syntax:

```
set service-negate {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

timeout-send-rst

Enables or disables the sending of RST packet upon TCP session expiration.

Syntax:

```
set timeout-send-rst {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

captive-portal-exempt

Enables or disables the exemption of users of this policy from the captive portal interface.

Syntax:

```
set captive-portal-exempt {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

ssl-mirror

Enables or disables the SSL mirror function. This feature sends a copy of traffic decrypted by SSL inspection to one or more FortiGate interfaces so that it can be collected by raw packet capture tool for archiving and analysis. This feature is only available if the inspection mode is set do flow-based. Enables or disables the SSL mirror function. This feature sends a copy of traffic decrypted by SSL inspection to one or more FortiGate interfaces so that it can be collected by raw packet capture tool for archiving and analysis. This feature is only available if the inspection mode is set do flow-based.

Syntax:

```
set ssl-mirror {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

ssl-mirror-intf

Used to set the name of the SSL interface mirror. The value must be one of the existing interface names.

Syntax:

```
{set|append|clear} ssl-mirror-intf <string> [<string> ...]
```

Example:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set ssl-mirror-intf port11
        or ...
        set ssl-mirror-intf port12 port13
        or ...
        append ssl-mirror-intf port14
    end
```

scan-botnet-connections

Sets the scanning level traffic for connections to Botnet servers.

Syntax:

```
set scan-botnet-connections {disable | block | monitor}
```

Default value: disable

dsri

Enables or disables Disable Server Response Inspection (DSRI) which is used to assist performance when only using URL filtering as it allows the system to ignore the HTTP server responses.

Syntax:

```
set dsri {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

delay-tcp-npu-sessoin

Enables or disables the TCP NPU session delay in order to guarantee packet order of 3-way handshake.

Syntax:

```
set delay-tcp-npu-sessoin {enable|disable}
```

Default value: disable

firewall {policy46 | policy64}

Use this command to configure IPv6 <-> IPv4 policies.

- Use `config firewall policy46` for IPv4-to-IPv6 policies
- Use `config firewall policy64` for IPv6-to-IPv4 policies

Each policy has a Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) that is automatically assigned. To view it, use the command `get firewall policy46` or `get firewall policy64` and look for the `uuid` field.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set ippool {enable disable} set poolname <name></pre>	Enable or disable the use of IP pools for NAT46 policies.

```
config firewall policy46
  edit {policyid}
  # Configure IPv4 to IPv6 policies.
  set permit-any-host {enable | disable}  Enable/disable allowing any host.
  set policyid {integer}  Policy ID. range[0-4294967294]
  set uuid {uuid}  Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
  set srcintf {string}  Source interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.zone.name,system.interface.name
  set dstintf {string}  Destination interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name,system.zone.name
```

```

config srcaddr
    edit {name}
    # Source address objects.
    set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
config dstaddr
    edit {name}
    # Destination address objects.
    set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.vip46.name,firewall.vipgrp46.name
    next
set action {accept | deny}    Accept or deny traffic matching the policy.
    accept    Accept matching traffic.
    deny      Deny matching traffic.
set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this policy.
set schedule {string}    Schedule name. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.schedule.onetime.name,firewall.schedule.recurring.name,firewall.schedule.group.name
config service
    edit {name}
    # Service name.
    set name {string}    Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name
    next
set logtraffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable traffic logging for this policy.
set traffic-shaper {string}    Traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.traffic-shaper.name
set traffic-shaper-reverse {string}    Reverse traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.traffic-
shaper.name
set per-ip-shaper {string}    Per IP traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.per-ip-shaper.name
set fixedport {enable | disable}    Enable/disable fixed port for this policy.
set tcp-mss-sender {integer}    TCP Maximum Segment Size value of sender (0 - 65535, default = 0). range[0-65535]
set tcp-mss-receiver {integer}    TCP Maximum Segment Size value of receiver (0 - 65535, default = 0) range[0-
65535]
set comments {string}    Comment. size[1023]
set ippool {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of IP Pools for source NAT.
config poolname
    edit {name}
    # IP Pool names.
    set name {string}    IP pool name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ippool6.name
    next
next
end

```

```
config firewall policy64
    edit {policyid}
    # Configure IPv6 to IPv4 policies.
    set policyid {integer}    Policy ID. range[0-4294967294]
    set uuid {uuid}    Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
    set srcintf {string}    Source interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.zone.name,system.interface.name
    set dstintf {string}    Destination interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name,system.zone.name
    config srcaddr
        edit {name}
        # Source address name.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
        next
    config dstaddr
        edit {name}
        # Destination address name.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name,firewall.vip64.name,firewall.vipgrp64.name
        next
    set action {accept | deny}    Policy action.
        accept    Action accept.
        deny    Action deny.
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable policy status.
    set schedule {string}    Schedule name. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.schedule.onetime.name,firewall.schedule.recurring.name,firewall.schedule.group.name
    config service
        edit {name}
        # Service name.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name
        next
    set logtraffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable policy log traffic.
    set permit-any-host {enable | disable}    Enable/disable permit any host in.
    set traffic-shaper {string}    Traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.traffic-shaper.name
    set traffic-shaper-reverse {string}    Reverse traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.traffic-
shaper.name
    set per-ip-shaper {string}    Per-IP traffic shaper. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.per-ip-shaper.name
    set fixedport {enable | disable}    Enable/disable policy fixed port.
    set ippool {enable | disable}    Enable/disable policy64 IP pool.
```

```

config poolname
    edit {name}
        # Policy IP pool names.
        set name {string}    IP pool name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ippool.name
    next
    set tcp-mss-sender {integer}    TCP MSS value of sender. range[0-65535]
    set tcp-mss-receiver {integer}    TCP MSS value of receiver. range[0-65535]
    set comments {string}    Comment. size[1023]
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall profile-group

Use this command to create profile groups. A profile group can contain an antivirus profile, IPS sensor, web filter profile, email filter profile, DLP sensor, application control list, a VoIP profile, an MMS profile and a replacement message group. You can use a profile group in a firewall policy if you set the `firewall policy profile-type` field to `group`.

```

config firewall profile-group
    edit {name}
        # Configure profile groups.
        set name {string}    Profile group name. size[35]
        set av-profile {string}    Name of an existing Antivirus profile. size[35] - datasource(s): anti-
virus.profile.name
        set webfilter-profile {string}    Name of an existing Web filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s):
webfilter.profile.name
        set dnsfilter-profile {string}    Name of an existing DNS filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s): dns-
filter.profile.name
        set spamfilter-profile {string}    Name of an existing Spam filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s):
spamfilter.profile.name
        set dlp-sensor {string}    Name of an existing DLP sensor. size[35] - datasource(s): dlp.sensor.name
        set ips-sensor {string}    Name of an existing IPS sensor. size[35] - datasource(s): ips.sensor.name
        set application-list {string}    Name of an existing Application list. size[35] - datasource(s): applic-
ation.list.name
        set voip-profile {string}    Name of an existing VoIP profile. size[35] - datasource(s): voip.profile.name

```

```
    set icap-profile {string}    Name of an existing ICAP profile. size[35] - datasource(s): icap.profile.name
    set waf-profile {string}    Name of an existing Web application firewall profile. size[35] - datasource(s): waf.-
profile.name
    set ssh-filter-profile {string}    Name of an existing SSH filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s): ssh-
filter.profile.name
    set profile-protocol-options {string}    Name of an existing Protocol options profile. size[35] - datasource(s):
firewall.profile-protocol-options.name
    set ssl-ssh-profile {string}    Name of an existing SSL SSH profile. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.ssl-ssh-
profile.name
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall profile-protocol-options

Use this command to configure protocol options.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>set strip-x-forwarded-for {enable disable}</code>	<p>Enable or disable the stripping of the HTTP X-Forwarded-For header. Enabling this feature replaces the X-Forwarded-For value with 1.1.1.1.</p> <p>IPS is best for on-the-fly packet inspection. If the data payload is modified, any current packets would be dropped and new packets would need to be generated and delivered. This feature helps alleviate this issue.</p> <p>Note that this command is only available in Flow-based NGFW Mode.</p>

```

config firewall profile-protocol-options
    edit {name}
    # Configure protocol options.
    set name {string}    Name. size[35]
    set comment {string} Optional comments. size[255]
    set replacemsg-group {string}    Name of the replacement message group to be used size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.replacemsg-group.name
    set oversize-log {disable | enable}    Enable/disable logging for antivirus oversize file blocking.
    set switching-protocols-log {disable | enable}    Enable/disable logging for HTTP/HTTPS switching protocols.
    config http
        set ports {integer}    Ports to scan for content (1 - 65535, default = 80). range[1-65535]
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the active status of scanning for this protocol.
        set inspect-all {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the inspection of all ports for the protocol.
        set options {clientcomfort | servercomfort | oversize | chunkedbypass}    One or more options that can be
        applied to the session.
            clientcomfort    Prevent client timeout.
            servercomfort    Prevent server timeout.
            oversize        Block oversized file/email.
            chunkedbypass    Bypass chunked transfer encoded sites.
        set comfort-interval {integer}    Period of time between start, or last transmission, and the next client com-
        fort transmission of data (1 - 900 sec, default = 10). range[1-900]
        set comfort-amount {integer}    Amount of data to send in a transmission for client comforting (1 - 10240
        bytes, default = 1). range[1-10240]
        set range-block {disable | enable}    Enable/disable blocking of partial downloads.
        set http-policy {disable | enable}    Enable/disable HTTP policy check.
        set strip-x-forwarded-for {disable | enable}    Enable/disable stripping of HTTP X-Forwarded-For header.
        set post-lang {option}    ID codes for character sets to be used to convert to UTF-8 for banned words and DLP
        on HTTP posts (maximum of 5 character sets).
            jisx0201        Japanese Industrial Standard 0201.
            jisx0208        Japanese Industrial Standard 0208.
            jisx0212        Japanese Industrial Standard 0212.
            gb2312          Guojia Biaozhun 2312 (simplified Chinese).
            ksc5601-ex      Wansung Korean standard 5601.
            euc-jp          Extended Unicode Japanese.
            sjis            Shift Japanese Industrial Standard.
            iso2022-jp      ISO 2022 Japanese.
            iso2022-jp-1    ISO 2022-1 Japanese.
            iso2022-jp-2    ISO 2022-2 Japanese.
            euc-cn          Extended Unicode Chinese.
            ces-gbk         Extended GB2312 (simplified Chinese).

```

```

        hz                Hanzi simplified Chinese.
        ces-big5          Big-5 traditional Chinese.
        euc-kr            Extended Unicode Korean.
        iso2022-jp-3      ISO 2022-3 Japanese.
        iso8859-1         ISO 8859 Part 1 (Western European).
        tis620            Thai Industrial Standard 620.
        cp874             Code Page 874 (Thai).
        cp1252            Code Page 1252 (Western European Latin).
        cp1251            Code Page 1251 (Cyrillic).
    set fortinet-bar {enable | disable}  Enable/disable Fortinet bar on HTML content.
    set fortinet-bar-port {integer}      Port for use by Fortinet Bar (1 - 65535, default = 8011). range[1-65535]
    set streaming-content-bypass {enable | disable}  Enable/disable bypassing of streaming content from buffering.

    set switching-protocols {bypass | block}  Bypass from scanning, or block a connection that attempts to switch protocol.
        bypass  Bypass connections when switching protocols.
        block   Block connections when switching protocols.
    set oversize-limit {integer}  Maximum in-memory file size that can be scanned (1 - 383 MB, default = 10). range[1-25809]
    set uncompressed-oversize-limit {integer}  Maximum in-memory uncompressed file size that can be scanned (0 - 383 MB, 0 = unlimited, default = 10). range[0-25809]
    set uncompressed-nest-limit {integer}  Maximum nested levels of compression that can be uncompressed and scanned (2 - 100, default = 12). range[2-100]
    set scan-bzip2 {enable | disable}  Enable/disable scanning of BZip2 compressed files.
    set block-page-status-code {integer}  Code number returned for blocked HTTP pages (non-FortiGuard only) (100 - 599, default = 403). range[100-599]
    set retry-count {integer}  Number of attempts to retry HTTP connection (0 - 100, default = 0). range[0-100]
config ftp
    set ports {integer}  Ports to scan for content (1 - 65535, default = 21). range[1-65535]
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the active status of scanning for this protocol.
    set inspect-all {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the inspection of all ports for the protocol.
    set options {option}  One or more options that can be applied to the session.
        clientcomfort  Prevent client timeout.
        oversize       Block oversized file/email.
        splice         Enable splice mode.
        bypass-rest-command  Bypass REST command.
        bypass-mode-command  Bypass MODE command.
    set comfort-interval {integer}  Period of time between start, or last transmission, and the next client comfort transmission of data (1 - 900 sec, default = 10). range[1-900]
    set comfort-amount {integer}  Amount of data to send in a transmission for client comforting (1 - 10240

```

```

bytes, default = 1). range[1-10240]
    set oversize-limit {integer}    Maximum in-memory file size that can be scanned (1 - 383 MB, default = 10).
range[1-25809]
    set uncompressed-oversize-limit {integer}    Maximum in-memory uncompressed file size that can be scanned (0
- 383 MB, 0 = unlimited, default = 10). range[0-25809]
    set uncompressed-nest-limit {integer}    Maximum nested levels of compression that can be uncompressed and
scanned (2 - 100, default = 12). range[2-100]
    set scan-bzip2 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable scanning of BZip2 compressed files.
config imap
    set ports {integer}    Ports to scan for content (1 - 65535, default = 143). range[1-65535]
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the active status of scanning for this protocol.
    set inspect-all {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the inspection of all ports for the protocol.
    set options {fragmail | oversize}    One or more options that can be applied to the session.
        fragmail    Pass fragmented email.
        oversize    Block oversized file/email.
    set oversize-limit {integer}    Maximum in-memory file size that can be scanned (1 - 383 MB, default = 10).
range[1-25809]
    set uncompressed-oversize-limit {integer}    Maximum in-memory uncompressed file size that can be scanned (0
- 383 MB, 0 = unlimited, default = 10). range[0-25809]
    set uncompressed-nest-limit {integer}    Maximum nested levels of compression that can be uncompressed and
scanned (2 - 100, default = 12). range[2-100]
    set scan-bzip2 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable scanning of BZip2 compressed files.
config mapi
    set ports {integer}    Ports to scan for content (1 - 65535, default = 135). range[1-65535]
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the active status of scanning for this protocol.
    set options {fragmail | oversize}    One or more options that can be applied to the session.
        fragmail    Pass fragmented email.
        oversize    Block oversized file/email.
    set oversize-limit {integer}    Maximum in-memory file size that can be scanned (1 - 383 MB, default = 10).
range[1-25809]
    set uncompressed-oversize-limit {integer}    Maximum in-memory uncompressed file size that can be scanned (0
- 383 MB, 0 = unlimited, default = 10). range[0-25809]
    set uncompressed-nest-limit {integer}    Maximum nested levels of compression that can be uncompressed and
scanned (2 - 100, default = 12). range[2-100]
    set scan-bzip2 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable scanning of BZip2 compressed files.
config pop3
    set ports {integer}    Ports to scan for content (1 - 65535, default = 110). range[1-65535]
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the active status of scanning for this protocol.
    set inspect-all {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the inspection of all ports for the protocol.
    set options {fragmail | oversize}    One or more options that can be applied to the session.

```



```
        fragmail Pass fragmented email.
        oversize Block oversized file/email.
        set oversize-limit {integer} Maximum in-memory file size that can be scanned (1 - 383 MB, default = 10).
range[1-25809]
        set uncompressed-oversize-limit {integer} Maximum in-memory uncompressed file size that can be scanned (0
- 383 MB, 0 = unlimited, default = 10). range[0-25809]
        set uncompressed-nest-limit {integer} Maximum nested levels of compression that can be uncompressed and
scanned (2 - 100, default = 12). range[2-100]
        set scan-bzip2 {enable | disable} Enable/disable scanning of BZip2 compressed files.
config smtp
        set ports {integer} Ports to scan for content (1 - 65535, default = 25). range[1-65535]
        set status {enable | disable} Enable/disable the active status of scanning for this protocol.
        set inspect-all {enable | disable} Enable/disable the inspection of all ports for the protocol.
        set options {fragmail | oversize | splice} One or more options that can be applied to the session.
            fragmail Pass fragmented email.
            oversize Block oversized file/email.
            splice Enable splice mode.
        set oversize-limit {integer} Maximum in-memory file size that can be scanned (1 - 383 MB, default = 10).
range[1-25809]
        set uncompressed-oversize-limit {integer} Maximum in-memory uncompressed file size that can be scanned (0
- 383 MB, 0 = unlimited, default = 10). range[0-25809]
        set uncompressed-nest-limit {integer} Maximum nested levels of compression that can be uncompressed and
scanned (2 - 100, default = 12). range[2-100]
        set scan-bzip2 {enable | disable} Enable/disable scanning of BZip2 compressed files.
        set server-busy {enable | disable} Enable/disable SMTP server busy when server not available.
config nntp
        set ports {integer} Ports to scan for content (1 - 65535, default = 119). range[1-65535]
        set status {enable | disable} Enable/disable the active status of scanning for this protocol.
        set inspect-all {enable | disable} Enable/disable the inspection of all ports for the protocol.
        set options {oversize | splice} One or more options that can be applied to the session.
            oversize Block oversized file/email.
            splice Enable splice mode.
        set oversize-limit {integer} Maximum in-memory file size that can be scanned (1 - 383 MB, default = 10).
range[1-25809]
        set uncompressed-oversize-limit {integer} Maximum in-memory uncompressed file size that can be scanned (0
- 383 MB, 0 = unlimited, default = 10). range[0-25809]
        set uncompressed-nest-limit {integer} Maximum nested levels of compression that can be uncompressed and
scanned (2 - 100, default = 12). range[2-100]
        set scan-bzip2 {enable | disable} Enable/disable scanning of BZip2 compressed files.
config dns
```

```

        set ports {integer}    Ports to scan for content (1 - 65535, default = 53). range[1-65535]
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the active status of scanning for this protocol.
    config mail-signature
        set status {disable | enable}    Enable/disable adding an email signature to SMTP email messages as they pass
through the FortiGate.
        set signature {string}    Email signature to be added to outgoing email (if the signature contains spaces,
enclose with quotation marks). size[1023]
        set rpc-over-http {enable | disable}    Enable/disable inspection of RPC over HTTP.
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall proxy-address

Use this command to configure the objects for proxy type addresses.

```

config firewall proxy-address
    edit {name}
        # Web proxy address configuration.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[35]
        set uuid {uuid}    Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
        set type {option}    Proxy address type.
            host-regex    Host regular expression.
            url    HTTP URL.
            category    FortiGuard URL category.
            method    HTTP request method.
            ua    HTTP request user agent.
            header    HTTP request header.
            src-advanced    HTTP advanced source criteria.
            dst-advanced    HTTP advanced destination criteria.
        set host {string}    Address object for the host. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name, firewall.proxy-address.name
        set host-regex {string}    Host name as a regular expression. size[255]
        set path {string}    URL path as a regular expression. size[255]
        set query {string}    Match the query part of the URL as a regular expression. size[255]
    end
end

```

```
set referrer {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of referrer field in the HTTP header to match the address.
config category
  edit {id}
    # FortiGuard category ID.
    set id {integer}    FortiGuard category id. range[0-4294967295]
  next
set method {option}    HTTP request methods to be used.
  get      GET method.
  post     POST method.
  put      PUT method.
  head     HEAD method.
  connect  CONNECT method.
  trace    TRACE method.
  options  OPTIONS method.
  delete   DELETE method.
set ua {option}    Names of browsers to be used as user agent.
  chrome   Google Chrome.
  ms       Microsoft Internet Explorer or EDGE.
  firefox  Mozilla Firefox.
  safari   Apple Safari.
  other    Other browsers.
set header-name {string}    Name of HTTP header. size[79]
set header {string}    HTTP header name as a regular expression. size[255]
set case-sensitivity {disable | enable}    Enable to make the pattern case sensitive.
config header-group
  edit {id}
    # HTTP header group.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set header-name {string}    HTTP header. size[79]
    set header {string}    HTTP header regular expression. size[255]
    set case-sensitivity {disable | enable}    Case sensitivity in pattern.
  next
set color {integer}    Integer value to determine the color of the icon in the GUI (1 - 32, default = 0, which
sets value to 1). range[0-32]
config tagging
  edit {name}
    # Config object tagging.
    set name {string}    Tagging entry name. size[63]
    set category {string}    Tag category. size[63] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.category
  config tags
```

```

        edit {name}
        # Tags.
        set name {string}    Tag name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.tags.name
        next
    next
    set comment {string}    Optional comments. size[255]
    set visibility {enable | disable}    Enable/disable visibility of the object in the GUI.
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall proxy-addrgrp

Use this command to configure a group of proxy type address objects.

```

config firewall proxy-addrgrp
    edit {name}
    # Web proxy address group configuration.
    set name {string}    Address group name. size[63]
    set type {src | dst}    Source or destination address group type.
        src Source group.
        dst Destination group.
    set uuid {uuid}    Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
    config member
        edit {name}
        # Members of address group.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.proxy-address.name,firewall.proxy-
addrgrp.name
        next
        set color {integer}    Integer value to determine the color of the icon in the GUI (1 - 32, default = 0, which
sets value to 1). range[0-32]
        config tagging
            edit {name}
            # Config object tagging.
            set name {string}    Tagging entry name. size[63]

```

```
        set category {string}    Tag category. size[63] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.category
    config tags
        edit {name}
        # Tags.
        set name {string}    Tag name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.tags.name
    next
next
set comment {string}    Optional comments. size[255]
set visibility {enable | disable}    Enable/disable visibility of the object in the GUI.
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall proxy-policy

Use this command to configure proxy policies. These policies used to be referred to as explicit proxy policies.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set proxy {ssh ssh-tunnel ...}</pre>	New SSH explicit proxy types to support SSH proxy policy for SSH sessions, and access control for TCP/IP port forwarding traffic.
<pre>set proxy ssh set srcaddr6 <src-addr6> set dstaddr6 <dst-addr6></pre>	When <code>proxy</code> is set to <code>ssh</code> , the IPv6 versions of the source or destination address options are available, as part of supporting SSH traffic through IPv6.

```

config firewall proxy-policy
    edit {policyid}
    # Configure proxy policies.
    set uuid {uuid}    Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
    set policyid {integer}    Policy ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set proxy {option}    Type of explicit proxy.
        explicit-web      Explicit Web Proxy
        transparent-web    Transparent Web Proxy
        ftp                Explicit FTP Proxy
        ssh                SSH Proxy
        ssh-tunnel         SSH Tunnel
        wanopt             WANopt Tunnel
    config srcintf
        edit {name}
        # Source interface names.
        set name {string}    Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name,system.zone.name
        next
    config dstintf
        edit {name}
        # Destination interface names.
        set name {string}    Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name,system.zone.name
        next
    config srcaddr
        edit {name}
        # Source address objects.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name,firewall.proxy-address.name,firewall.proxy-addrgrp.name,system.external-
resource.name
        next
    config poolname
        edit {name}
        # Name of IP pool object.
        set name {string}    IP pool name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ippool.name
        next
    config dstaddr
        edit {name}
        # Destination address objects.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name,firewall.proxy-address.name,firewall.proxy-addrgrp.-
name,firewall.vip.name,firewall.vipgrp.name,firewall.vip46.name,firewall.vipgrp46.name,system.external-resource.name

```

```

        next
        set internet-service {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of Internet Services for this policy. If enabled,
destination address and service are not used.
        set internet-service-negate {enable | disable}    When enabled, Internet Services match against any internet ser-
vice EXCEPT the selected Internet Service.
        config internet-service-id
        edit {id}
        # Internet Service ID.
        set id {integer}    Internet Service ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-ser-
vice.id
        next
        config internet-service-custom
        edit {name}
        # Custom Internet Service name.
        set name {string}    Custom name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-service-custom.name
        next
        config service
        edit {name}
        # Name of service objects.
        set name {string}    Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name
        next
        set srcaddr-negate {enable | disable}    When enabled, source addresses match against any address EXCEPT the spe-
cified source addresses.
        set dstaddr-negate {enable | disable}    When enabled, destination addresses match against any address EXCEPT the
specified destination addresses.
        set service-negate {enable | disable}    When enabled, services match against any service EXCEPT the specified
destination services.
        set action {accept | deny | redirect}    Accept or deny traffic matching the policy parameters.
        accept    Action accept.
        deny    Action deny.
        redirect    Action redirect.
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the active status of the policy.
        set schedule {string}    Name of schedule object. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.schedule.onetime.name,firewall.schedule.recurring.name,firewall.schedule.group.name
        set logtraffic {all | utm | disable}    Enable/disable logging traffic through the policy.
        all    Log all sessions.
        utm    UTM event and matched application traffic log.
        disable    Disable traffic and application log.
        set session-ttl {integer}    TTL in seconds for sessions accepted by this policy (0 means use the system default

```

```

session TTL). range[300-604800]
    config srcaddr6
        edit {name}
        # IPv6 source address objects.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name,system.external-resource.name
        next
    config dstaddr6
        edit {name}
        # IPv6 destination address objects.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.ad-
dress6.-
name,fire-
wall.addrgrp6.name,firewall.vip6.name,firewall.vipgrp6.name,firewall.vip64.name,firewall.vipgrp64.name,system.external-
resource.name
        next
    config groups
        edit {name}
        # Names of group objects.
        set name {string}    Group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
        next
    config users
        edit {name}
        # Names of user objects.
        set name {string}    Group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.local.name
        next
    set http-tunnel-auth {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HTTP tunnel authentication.
    set webproxy-forward-server {string}    Name of web proxy forward server. size[63] - datasource(s): web-proxy.-
forward-server.name,web-proxy.forward-server-group.name
    set webproxy-profile {string}    Name of web proxy profile. size[63] - datasource(s): web-proxy.profile.name
    set transparent {enable | disable}    Enable to use the IP address of the client to connect to the server.
    set webcache {enable | disable}    Enable/disable web caching.
    set webcache-https {disable | enable}    Enable/disable web caching for HTTPS (Requires deep-inspection enabled
in ssl-ssh-profile).
    set disclaimer {disable | domain | policy | user}    Web proxy disclaimer setting: by domain, policy, or user.
        disable    Disable disclaimer.
        domain    Display disclaimer for domain
        policy    Display disclaimer for policy
        user    Display disclaimer for current user

```



```

        set utm-status {enable | disable}    Enable the use of UTM profiles/sensors/lists.
        set profile-type {single | group}    Determine whether the firewall policy allows security profile groups or
single profiles only.
            single    Do not allow security profile groups.
            group     Allow security profile groups.
        set profile-group {string}    Name of profile group. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.profile-group.name
        set av-profile {string}    Name of an existing Antivirus profile. size[35] - datasource(s): anti-
virus.profile.name
        set webfilter-profile {string}    Name of an existing Web filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s):
webfilter.profile.name
        set spamfilter-profile {string}    Name of an existing Spam filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s): spam-
filter.profile.name
        set dlp-sensor {string}    Name of an existing DLP sensor. size[35] - datasource(s): dlp.sensor.name
        set ips-sensor {string}    Name of an existing IPS sensor. size[35] - datasource(s): ips.sensor.name
        set application-list {string}    Name of an existing Application list. size[35] - datasource(s): applic-
ation.list.name
        set icap-profile {string}    Name of an existing ICAP profile. size[35] - datasource(s): icap.profile.name
        set waf-profile {string}    Name of an existing Web application firewall profile. size[35] - datasource(s): waf.-
profile.name
        set ssh-filter-profile {string}    Name of an existing SSH filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s): ssh-
filter.profile.name
        set profile-protocol-options {string}    Name of an existing Protocol options profile. size[35] - datasource(s):
firewall.profile-protocol-options.name
        set ssl-ssh-profile {string}    Name of an existing SSL SSH profile. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.ssl-ssh-
profile.name
        set replacemsg-override-group {string}    Authentication replacement message override group. size[35] - data-
source(s): system.replacemsg-group.name
        set logtraffic-start {enable | disable}    Enable/disable policy log traffic start.
        set label {string}    VDOM-specific GUI visible label. size[63]
        set global-label {string}    Global web-based manager visible label. size[63]
        set scan-botnet-connections {disable | block | monitor}    Enable/disable scanning of connections to Botnet serv-
ers.
            disable    Do not scan connections to botnet servers.
            block      Block connections to botnet servers.
            monitor     Log connections to botnet servers.
        set comments {string}    Optional comments. size[1023]
        set redirect-url {string}    Redirect URL for further explicit web proxy processing. size[1023]
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall schedule group

This command is used to configure schedule groups.

```
config firewall schedule group
    edit {name}
    # Schedule group configuration.
    set name {string}    Schedule group name. size[31]
    config member
        edit {name}
        # Schedules added to the schedule group.
        set name {string}    Schedule name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.schedule.onetime.name, firewall.schedule.recurring.name
        next
        set color {integer}    Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

Syntax

```
config firewall schedule group {edit|delete|purge|rename|get|show}
```

Managing schedule group objects

The configuration of specific schedule group objects is the most common activity when using the `config firewall schedule group` command but some commands affect the address objects as a whole.

edit

Used to select which individual schedule group to configure or edit values.

```
edit <schedule group>
```

To get a list of all of the existing schedule group objects, type the command:

```
Command Prompt (group) # edit ?
```

If you are creating a new schedule group object, just type the name you wish to use after the edit command. If there are spaces in the name, use quotation marks.

delete

Used to delete an existing schedule object

```
delete
```

The can be a string of up to 64 characters.

purge

Used delete all of the existing schedule group objects. It deletes all of the values within the table that holds the information about schedule group objects within the VDOM.

```
purge
```

There are no options, parameters or qualifiers. Just use the enter key after entering the command This command has a serious impact. Use cautiously.

rename

Used to change the name of the schedule group object.

```
rename <schedule group> to <schedule group>
```

Options and settings within a Schedule Group

name

This field is a unique name given to represent the schedule group object. This setting is first defined when using the edit command to edit a category that does not currently exist. The name field of a schedule group object cannot be changed from within the object. It can be changed by using the rename command in the config firewall schedule group context.

member

Defines the schedule objects that are members of the schedule group. The value is a that should be the name of one of the existing schedule objects configured on the device. A group cannot contain other groups Separate multiple interfaces with spaces.

Syntax:

```
{set|append} members <schedule group>[ ...]
```

Example:

```
config firewall schedule group
    edit example_group
    set member example_schedule1
    or ...
    set member example_schedule1 example_schedule2
    or ...
    append example_schedule3
end
```

color

This setting determines the color of the icon in the GUI. There are 32 defined colors numbered 1 to 32. 0 will set the color to default which is color number 1.

Syntax:

```
set color <integer>
```

Default value: 0

Example:

```
config firewall schedule group
    edit generic-schedule group-name
        set color 15
end
```

firewall schedule onetime

This command is used to add, edit, delete or rename one-time schedules.

Schedule objects are used to control when policies are active or inactive. The one-time schedule is for policies that are effective once for a specified period of time and then not used again.

```
config firewall schedule onetime
    edit {name}
        # Onetime schedule configuration.
        set name {string}    Onetime schedule name. size[31]
        set start {string}    Schedule start date and time, format hh:mm yyyy/mm/dd.
        set end {string}      Schedule end date and time, format hh:mm yyyy/mm/dd.
        set color {integer}    Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
        set expiration-days {integer} Write an event log message this many days before the schedule expires. range[0-100]
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

Syntax

```
config firewall schedule onetime {edit|delete|purge|rename|get|show}
```

Managing service group objects

The configuration of a specific onetime schedule object is the most common activity when using the `config firewall schedule onetime` command but some commands affect the schedule objects as a whole.

edit

Used to select which individual schedule to configure or edit values.

```
edit <onetime schedule>
```

To get a list of all of the existing service group objects, type the command:

```
Command Prompt (onetime) # edit ?
```

If you are creating a new onetime schedule object, just type the name you wish to use after the `edit` command. If there are spaces in the name, use quotation marks.

delete

Used to delete an existing onetime schedule

```
delete <onetime schedule>
```

- The `<onetime schedule>` can be a string of up to 64 characters.

purge

Used to delete all of the existing onetime schedule objects. It deletes all of the values within the table that holds the information about service group objects within the VDOM.

```
purge
```

- There are no options, parameters or qualifiers. Just use the enter key after entering the command
- This command has a serious impact. Use cautiously.

rename

Used to change the name of the onetime schedule object.

```
rename <onetime schedule> to <new_onetime_schedule>
```

Options and settings within a onetime schedule

name

This field is a unique name given to represent the onetime schedule object. This setting is first defined when using the edit command to edit a category that does not currently exist. The name field of a onetime schedule object cannot be changed from within the object. It can be changed by using the rename command in the `config firewall schedule onetime` context.

start

This field is for specifying the starting date and time of the schedule object.

Syntax:

<hh:mm> <yyyy/mm/dd>

- hh - hours in the 24-hour clock: 00 to 23
- mm - Minutes in quarter hour increments: 15, 30, or 45
- yyyy - Year, the range being: 2001-2050
- mm - Months: 01 to 12
- dd - Day of the month: 01 to 31

Default value: 00:00 2001/01/01

end

Enter the ending day and time of the schedule.

Syntax:

<hh:mm> <yyyy/mm/dd>

- hh - hours in the 24-hour clock: 00 to 23
- mm - Minutes in quarter hour increments: 15, 30, or 45
- yyyy - Year, the range being: 2001-2050
- mm - Months: 01 to 12
- dd - Day of the month: 01 to 31

Default value: 00:00 2001/01/01

Example of setting the times

- Set the start time to 1:30 p.m. on August 4, 2018
- Set the end time to 12:45 a.m. on August 31, 2018

```
config firewall schedule onetime
    edit schedule1
        set start 13:30 2018/08/04
        set end 00:45 2018/08/31
    end
```

color

This setting determines the color of the icon in the GUI. There are 32 defined colors numbered 1 to 32. 0 will set the color to default which is color number 1.

Syntax

```
set color <integer>
```

Default value: 0

Example:

```
config firewall schedule onetime
    edit schedule1
        set color 15
    end
```

expiration-days

This field specifies how many days before the expiration of the schedule an event log will be generated in order to warn of the impending cancellation of the schedule. The content of the field is an integer. To generate an event, the range is 1 to 100 days. To disable the generation of the event log, enter 0.

Example

```
config firewall schedule onetime
    edit schedule1
        set expiration-days 5
    end
```

Default value: 3

firewall schedule recurring

Use this command to add, edit, and delete recurring schedules used in firewall policies.

Use scheduling to control when policies are active or inactive. Use recurring schedules to create policies that repeat weekly. Use recurring schedules to create policies that are effective only at specified times of the day or on specified days of the week.



If a recurring schedule is created with a stop time that occurs before the start time, the schedule starts at the start time and finishes at the stop time on the next day. You can use this technique to create recurring schedules that run from one day to the next. To create a recurring schedule that runs for 24 hours, set the start and stop times to the same time.

```
config firewall schedule recurring
    edit {name}
        # Recurring schedule configuration.
        set name {string}    Recurring schedule name. size[31]
        set start {string}    Time of day to start the schedule, format hh:mm.
        set end {string}      Time of day to end the schedule, format hh:mm.
        set day {option}      One or more days of the week on which the schedule is valid. Separate the names of the days
with a space.
            sunday           Sunday.
            monday           Monday.
            tuesday          Tuesday.
            wednesday        Wednesday.
            thursday         Thursday.
            friday           Friday.
            saturday         Saturday.
            none             None.
        set color {integer}   Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
```

```
    next  
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall service category

Use this command to create new categories or add comments to firewall service categories. To assign services to categories, use the `firewall service custom` command. The adding or editing the name of a service category are the most common tasks when using the `config firewall service category` command but some commands affect the address objects as a whole.

```
config firewall service category  
    edit {name}  
    # Configure service categories.  
        set name {string}    Service category name. size[63]  
        set comment {string}  Comment. size[255]  
    next  
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

edit

Used to add an additional category or select which individual category to edit.

Syntax:

```
edit <category_name>
```

To create a new service category, just type the `category_name` you wish to use after the `edit` command. A new category will be created using the `category_name` supplied. If you require spaces in the name you can:

- Use quotation marks around the entire `category_name`
- Use the escape character before the space character. Example: for the `category_name` `Web Access` type `Web\ Access`

To get a list of all of the existing categories, type the command:

```
Command Prompt (category) # edit ?
```

delete

Used to delete an existing category

Syntax:

```
delete <category_name>
```

purge

Used delete all of the existing categories. It deletes all of the values within the table that holds the categories.

Syntax:

```
purge
```

- There are no options, parameters or qualifiers. Just use the enter key after entering the command
- This command has a serious impact. Use cautiously.

rename

Used to change the name of the category.

Syntax:

```
rename <category_name> to <new_category_name>
```

move

Used to move the position of a category, relative to another category, in the order of their listing.

Syntax:

```
move <category_name> {after | before} <category_name>
```

clone

Used to copy all of the attributes of an existing category to a new category.

Syntax:

```
clone <category_name> to <category_name>
```

name

This field is a unique name given to represent the address object. This setting is first defined when using the edit command to edit a category that does not currently exist. The name field of an address object cannot be changed from within the object. It can be changed by using the rename command in the `config firewall service category` context.

comment

Field used to store descriptive information about the category such as the type of services that should be included in the category. Enclose the string in quotes to enter special characters or spaces.

Syntax:

```
set comment <string>
```

Example:

```
config firewall service category
    edit "Custom Category"
        set comment "For services that are proprietary to the company."
    end
```

firewall service custom

This command is used to configure firewall services.

```
config firewall service custom
edit {name}
# Configure custom services.
set name {string}    Custom service name. size[63]
set proxy {enable | disable}  Enable/disable web proxy service.
set category {string}  Service category. size[63] - datasource(s): firewall.service.category.name
set protocol {option}  Protocol type based on IANA numbers.
    TCP/UDP/SCTP    TCP, UDP and SCTP.
    ICMP            ICMP.
    ICMP6           ICMP6.
    IP              IP.
    HTTP            HTTP - for web proxy.
    FTP             FTP - for web proxy.
    CONNECT         Connect - for web proxy.
    SOCKS-TCP       Socks TCP - for web proxy.
    SOCKS-UDP       Socks UDP - for web proxy.
    ALL             All - for web proxy.
set helper {option}  Helper name.
    auto            Automatically select helper based on protocol and port.
    disable         Disable helper.
    ftp            FTP.
    tftp           TFTP.
    ras            RAS.
    h323           H323.
    tns            TNS.
    mms            MMS.
    sip            SIP.
    pptp           PPTP.
    rtsp           RTSP.
    dns-udp        DNS UDP.
    dns-tcp        DNS TCP.
    pmap           PMAP.
    rsh            RSH.
    dcerpc         DCERPC.
    mgcp           MGCP.
    gtp-c          GTP-C.
```

```

        gtp-u      GTP-U.
        gtp-b      GTP-B.
set iprange {string}    Start and end of the IP range associated with service.
set fqdn {string}      Fully qualified domain name. size[255]
set protocol-number {integer}  IP protocol number. range[0-254]
set icmptype {integer}  ICMP type. range[0-4294967295]
set icmpcode {integer}  ICMP code. range[0-255]
set tcp-portrange {string}  Multiple TCP port ranges.
set udp-portrange {string}  Multiple UDP port ranges.
set sctp-portrange {string} Multiple SCTP port ranges.
set tcp-halfclose-timer {integer}  Wait time to close a TCP session waiting for an unanswered FIN packet (1 -
86400 sec, 0 = default). range[0-86400]
set tcp-halfopen-timer {integer}  Wait time to close a TCP session waiting for an unanswered open session
packet (1 - 86400 sec, 0 = default). range[0-86400]
set tcp-timewait-timer {integer}  Set the length of the TCP TIME-WAIT state in seconds (1 - 300 sec, 0 =
default). range[0-300]
set udp-idle-timer {integer}  UDP half close timeout (0 - 86400 sec, 0 = default). range[0-86400]
set session-ttl {integer}  Session TTL (300 - 604800, 0 = default). range[300-604800]
set check-reset-range {disable | strict | default}  Configure the type of ICMP error message verification.
        disable  Disable RST range check.
        strict   Check RST range strictly.
        default  Using system default setting.
set comment {string}  Comment. size[255]
set color {integer}   Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
set visibility {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the visibility of the service on the GUI.
set app-service-type {disable | app-id | app-category}  Application service type.
        disable  Disable application type.
        app-id    Application ID.
        app-category  Applicatin category.
config app-category
    edit {id}
        # Application category ID.
        set id {integer}  Application category id. range[0-4294967295]
    next
config application
    edit {id}
        # Application ID.
        set id {integer}  Application id. range[0-4294967295]
    next
next

```

```
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

Managing service objects

The configuration of specific service is the most common activity when using the firewall policy command but some commands affect the service objects as a whole.

edit

Used to select which individual service to configure or edit values.

Syntax:

```
config firewall service custom  
(custom) # edit <service>
```

- To get a list of all of the existing address objects, type the command:

```
(custom) # edit ?
```

If you are creating a new service object, just type the name you wish to use after the `edit` command. If there are spaces in the name, use quotation marks.

delete

Used to delete an existing service

Syntax:

```
config firewall service custom  
(custom) # delete <service>
```

purge

Used to delete all of the existing firewall policies. It deletes all of the values within the table within the VDOM.

Syntax:

```
config firewall service custom
(custom) # purge
```

- There are no options, parameters or qualifiers. Just use the enter key after entering the command
- This command has a serious impact. Use cautiously.

rename

Used to change the name of the service object.

```
config firewall service custom
(custom) # rename <service_name> to <new_service_name>
```

Options and settings within a service

explicit-proxy

Enable to configure this service as an explicit web proxy service. The service will be available to explicit proxy firewall policies but not to regular firewall policies.

Syntax

```
set explicit-proxy {enable | disable}
```

Default value: disable

category

Assign the service to a service category. These categories are created and managed using the command `firewall service`.

Syntax

```
set category <category_name>
```

Example

```
config firewall services custom
    (custom) # edit sample_service
    (sample_service) # set category "web services"
(sample_service) # end
```

protocol

Select the protocol used by the service. These protocols are available when `explicit-proxy` is disabled. If you select TCP/UDP/SCTP you must specify the `tcp-portrange`, `udp-portrange`, or `sctp-portrange`.

Syntax

```
set protocol {ICMP | ICMP6 | IP | TCP/UDP/SCTP}
```

Default value: TCP/UDP/SCTP A different set of protocols are available when `explicit-proxy` is enabled.

```
set protocol {ALL | CONNECT | FTP | HTTP | SOCKS-TCP | SOCKS-UDP}
```

Default value: ALL

Example

```
config firewall service custom
    (custom) # edit sample-service
    (sample-service) # set explicit-proxy enable
    (sample-service) # set protocol FTP
(sample-service) # end
```

iprange

Enter an IP address or address range for this service.

Syntax

```
set iprange <ip_address[-<ip_address>]>
```

Default value: 0.0.0.0

Example

```
config firewall service custom
    (custom) # edit sample-service
        (sample-service) # set iprange 192.168.0.64-192.168.0.128
    (sample-service) # end
```

fqdn

Enter a fully-qualified domain name (FQDN) for this service.

Syntax

```
set fqdn <fqdn_str>
```

Example

```
config firewall service custom
    (custom) # edit sample-service
        (sample-service) # set fqdn example.com
    (sample-service) # end
```

protocol-number (0,4294967295)

For an IP service, enter the IP protocol number. For information on protocol numbers, see <http://www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers/protocol-numbers.xhtml>.

Syntax

```
set protocol-number <protocol_int>
```

Default value: 0

Example

```
config firewall service custom
    (custom) # edit sample-service
    (sample-service) # set protocol-number 6
(sample-service) # end
```

icmptype

Enter the ICMP type number. The range for type_int is from 0-255. Find ICMP type and code numbers at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/icmp-parameters/icmp-parameters.xhtml#icmp-parameters-types>.

Syntax

```
set icmptype <type_int>
```

Example

```
config firewall service custom
    (custom) # edit sample-service
    (sample-service) # set icmptype 8
(sample-service) # end
```

icmpcode

Enter the ICMP code number. Find ICMP type and code numbers at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/icmp-parameters/icmp-parameters.xhtml#icmp-parameters-types>.

Syntax

```
set icmpcode <code_int>
```

Example

```
config firewall service custom
    (custom) # edit sample-service
    (sample-service) # set icmpcode 13
(sample-service) # end
```

tcp-portrange

For TCP services, enter the destination and source port ranges.

- If the destination port range can be any port, enter 0-65535.
- If the destination is only a single port, simply enter a single port number for `dstportlow_int` and no value for `dstporthigh_int`.
- If the source port can be any port, no source port need be added.
- If source port can be any port, no source port need be added.
- If the source port is only a single port, simply enter a single port number for `srcportlow_int` and no value for `srcporthigh_int`.

The total number of TCP, UDP, and SCTP port ranges cannot exceed 16.

Syntax

```
set tcp-portrange <dstportlow_int>[-<dstporthigh_int>: <srcportlow_int>-<srcporthigh_int>]
```

Example

```
config firewall service custom
    (custom) # edit sample-service
    (sample-service) # set tcp-portrange 100-150:1100-1150
(sample-service) # end
```

or if multiple ranges, separate the ranges with a space.

```
config firewall service custom
    (custom) # edit sample-service
    (sample-service) # set tcp-portrange 100-150:1100-1150 2000-2100:4000:4100
    (sample-service) # end
```

udp-portrange

For UDP services, enter the destination and source port ranges.

- If the destination port range can be any port, enter 0-65535.
- If the destination is only a single port, simply enter a single port number for `dstportlow_int` and no value for `dstporthigh_int`.
- If source port can be any port, no source port need be added.
- If the source port is only a single port, simply enter a single port number for `srcportlow_int` and no value for `srcporthigh_int`.

The total number of TCP, UDP, and SCTP port ranges cannot exceed 16.

Syntax

```
set udp-portrange <dstportlow_int>[-<dstporthigh_int>: <srcportlow_int>-<srcporthigh_int>]
```

sctp-portrange

For SCTP services, enter the destination and source port ranges.

- If the destination port range can be any port, enter 0-65535.
- If the destination is only a single port, simply enter a single port number for `dstportlow_int` and no value for `dstporthigh_int`.
- If source port can be any port, no source port need be added.
- If the source port is only a single port, simply enter a single port number for `srcportlow_int` and no value for `srcporthigh_int`.

The total number of TCP, UDP, and SCTP port ranges cannot exceed 16.

Syntax

```
set sctp-portrange <dstportlow_int>[-<dstporthigh_int>: <srcportlow_int>-<srcporthigh_int>]
```

tcp-halfclose-timer (0,86400)

Enter how many seconds the FortiGate unit should wait to close a session after one peer has sent a FIN packet but the other has not responded. The valid range is from 1 to 86400 seconds. Enter 0 to use the global setting defined in `system global`. This is available when protocol is TCP/UDP/SCTP.

Syntax

```
set tcp-halfclose-timer <seconds>
```

Default value: 0

Example:

```
config firewall service custom
    (custom) # edit sample-service
    (sample-service) # set tcp-halfclose-timer 3600
(sample-service) # end
```

tcp-halfopen-timer (0,86400)

Enter how many seconds the FortiGate unit should wait to close a session after one peer has sent an open session packet but the other has not responded. The valid range is from 1 to 86400 seconds. Enter 0 to use the global setting defined in `system global`. This is available when `protocol` is TCP/UDP/SCTP.

Syntax

```
set tcp-halfopen-timer <seconds>
```

Default value: 0

tcp-timewait-timer

Set the length of the TCP TIME-WAIT state in seconds. As described in [RFC 793](#), the “TIME-WAIT state represents waiting for enough time to pass to be sure the remote TCP received the acknowledgment of its connection termination request”. Reducing the time of the TIME-WAIT state means the FortiGate unit can close terminated sessions faster which means more new sessions can be opened before the session limit is reached. The valid range is 0 to 300 seconds. A value of 0 sets the TCP TIME-WAIT to 0 seconds Enter 0 to use the global setting defined in `system global`. This is available when `protocol` is TCP/UDP/SCTP.

Syntax

```
set tcp-timewait-timer <seconds_int>
```

Default value: 0

Example:

```
config firewall service custom
    (custom) # edit sample-service
        (sample-service) # set tcp-timewait-timer 60
    (sample-service) # end
```

udp-idle-timer

Enter the number of seconds before an idle UDP connection times out. The valid range is from 1 to 86400 seconds. Enter 0 to use the global setting defined in `system global`. This is available when `protocol` is TCP/UDP/SCTP.

Syntax

```
set udp-idle-timer <seconds>
```

Default value: 0

session-ttl

Enter the default session timeout in seconds. The valid range is from 300 - 604,800 seconds. Enter 0 to use either the per-policy session-ttl or per-VDOM session-ttl, as applicable. This is available when protocol is TCP/UDP/SCTP.

Syntax

```
set session-ttl <seconds>
```

Default value: 0

Example:

```
config firewall service custom
    (custom) # edit sample-service
    (sample-service) # set session-ttl 3600
(sample-service) # end
```

check-reset-range

Configure ICMP error message verification.

- **disable** — The FortiGate unit does not validate ICMP error messages.
- **strict** — If the FortiGate unit receives an ICMP error packet that contains an embedded IP(A,B) | TCP(C,D) header, then if FortiOS can locate the A:C->B:D session it checks to make sure that the sequence number in the TCP header is within the range recorded in the session. If the sequence number is not in range then the ICMP packet is dropped. If `log-invalid-packet` is enabled the FortiGate unit logs that the ICMP packet was dropped. Strict checking also affects how the anti-replay option checks packets.
- **default** — Use the global setting defined in system global.

This field is available when protocol is TCP/UDP/SCTP. This field is not available if explicit-proxy is enabled.

Syntax

```
set check-reset-range {disable | strict | default}
```

Default value: default

comment

Field to store descriptive information about the service such as its intended purpose.

Syntax

```
set comment <string>
```

color

This setting determines the color of the icon in the GUI. There are 32 defined colors numbered 1 to 32. 0 will set the color to default which is color number 1.
This setting determines the color of the icon in the GUI. There are 32 defined colors numbered 1 to 32. 0 will set the color to default which is color number 1.

Syntax

```
set color <integer>
```

Default value: 0

Example:

```
config firewall service custom
    edit generic-custom-service
        set color 15
end
```

visibility

Enable visibility to include this service in firewall policy service selection.

Syntax

```
set visibility {enable | disable}
```


Default value: enable

firewall service group

Use this command to configure firewall service groups.

To simplify policy creation, you can create groups of services and then add one policy to provide or block access for all the services in the group. A service group can contain predefined services and custom services in any combination. A service group cannot contain another service group.



To edit a service group, enter all of the members of the service group, both those changing and those staying the same.

```
config firewall service group
  edit {name}
  # Configure service groups.
    set name {string}    Address group name. size[35]
    config member
      edit {name}
      # Service objects contained within the group.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name, firewall.service.group.name
      next
      set proxy {enable | disable}    Enable/disable web proxy service group.
      set comment {string}    Comment. size[255]
      set color {integer}    Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall shaper per-ip-shaper

Use this command to configure traffic shaping that is applied per IP address, instead of per policy or per shaper. As with the shared traffic shaper, you select per-IP traffic shapers in firewall policies.

```
config firewall shaper per-ip-shaper
    edit {name}
        # Configure per-IP traffic shaper.
        set name {string}    Traffic shaper name. size[35]
        set max-bandwidth {integer}    Upper bandwidth limit enforced by this shaper (0 - 16776000). 0 means no limit.
Units depend on the bandwidth-unit setting. range[0-16776000]
        set bandwidth-unit {kbps | mbps | gbps}    Unit of measurement for maximum bandwidth for this shaper (Kbps, Mbps
or Gbps).
            kbps    Kilobits per second.
            mbps    Megabits per second.
            gbps    Gigabits per second.
        set max-concurrent-session {integer}    Maximum number of concurrent sessions allowed by this shaper (0 -
2097000). 0 means no limit. range[0-2097000]
        set diffserv-forward {enable | disable}    Enable/disable changing the Forward (original) DiffServ setting
applied to traffic accepted by this shaper.
        set diffserv-reverse {enable | disable}    Enable/disable changing the Reverse (reply) DiffServ setting applied
to traffic accepted by this shaper.
        set diffservcode-forward {string}    Forward (original) DiffServ setting to be applied to traffic accepted by
this shaper.
        set diffservcode-rev {string}    Reverse (reply) DiffServ setting to be applied to traffic accepted by this
shaper.
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall shaper traffic-shaper

Use this command to configure shared traffic shaping that is applied to and shared by all traffic accepted by a firewall policy. As with the per-IP traffic shaper, you select shared traffic shapers in firewall policies.

```

config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit {name}
        # Configure shared traffic shaper.
        set name {string}    Traffic shaper name. size[35]
        set guaranteed-bandwidth {integer}    Amount of bandwidth guaranteed for this shaper (0 - 16776000). Units depend
on the bandwidth-unit setting. range[0-16776000]
        set maximum-bandwidth {integer}    Upper bandwidth limit enforced by this shaper (0 - 16776000). 0 means no
limit. Units depend on the bandwidth-unit setting. range[0-16776000]
        set bandwidth-unit {kbps | mbps | gbps}    Unit of measurement for guaranteed and maximum bandwidth for this
shaper (Kbps, Mbps or Gbps).
            kbps    Kilobits per second.
            mbps    Megabits per second.
            gbps    Gigabits per second.
        set priority {low | medium | high}    Higher priority traffic is more likely to be forwarded without delays and
without compromising the guaranteed bandwidth.
            low        Low priority.
            medium    Medium priority.
            high        High priority.
        set per-policy {disable | enable}    Enable/disable applying a separate shaper for each policy. For example, if
enabled the guaranteed bandwidth is applied separately for each policy.
        set diffserv {enable | disable}    Enable/disable changing the DiffServ setting applied to traffic accepted by
this shaper.
        set diffservcode {string}    DiffServ setting to be applied to traffic accepted by this shaper.
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall shaping-policy

Use this command to configure policies that are based on traffic shaping.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre> set internet-service {enable disable} set internet-service-id <service-id> set internet-service-custom <service-name> set internet-service-src {enable disable} set internet-service-src-id <source-id> set internet-service-src-custom <source-name> </pre>	<p>The Internet Service Database (ISDB) and IP Reputation Database (IRDB) enhances traffic shaping criteria for traffic shaping policies. To use Internet services in a traffic shaping policy, you must set the source and destination to one of the Internet services.</p> <p>For all related commands to be available, both <code>internet-service</code> and <code>internet-service-src</code> must be set to <code>enable</code>.</p>

```

config firewall shaping-policy
    edit {id}
    # Configure shaping policies.
    set id {integer}    Shaping policy ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set comment {string}    Comments. size[255]
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this traffic shaping policy.
    set ip-version {4 | 6}    Apply this traffic shaping policy to IPv4 or IPv6 traffic.
        4    Use IPv4 addressing for Configuration Method.
        6    Use IPv6 addressing for Configuration Method.
    config srcaddr
        edit {name}
        # IPv4 source address and address group names.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
    config dstaddr
        edit {name}
        # IPv4 destination address and address group names.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
    config srcaddr6
        edit {name}
        # IPv6 source address and address group names.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    next
    config dstaddr6
        edit {name}
        # IPv6 destination address and address group names.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name

```

```

        next
        set internet-service {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of Internet Services for this policy. If enabled,
destination address and service are not used.
        config internet-service-id
        edit {id}
        # Internet Service ID.
        set id {integer}    Internet Service ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-ser-
vice.id
        next
        config internet-service-custom
        edit {name}
        # Custom Internet Service name.
        set name {string}    Custom Internet Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-service-
custom.name
        next
        set internet-service-src {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of Internet Services in source for this policy.
If enabled, source address is not used.
        config internet-service-src-id
        edit {id}
        # Internet Service source ID.
        set id {integer}    Internet Service ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-ser-
vice.id
        next
        config internet-service-src-custom
        edit {name}
        # Custom Internet Service source name.
        set name {string}    Custom Internet Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-service-
custom.name
        next
        config service
        edit {name}
        # Service and service group names.
        set name {string}    Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name
        next
        set schedule {string}    Schedule name. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.schedule.onetime.name,firewall.schedule.recurring.name,firewall.schedule.group.name
        config users
        edit {name}
        # Apply this traffic shaping policy to individual users that have authenticated with the FortiGate.

```

```

        set name {string}    User name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.local.name
    next
config groups
    edit {name}
    # Apply this traffic shaping policy to user groups that have authenticated with the FortiGate.
    set name {string}    Group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
    next
config application
    edit {id}
    # IDs of one or more applications that this shaper applies application control traffic shaping to.
    set id {integer}    Application IDs. range[0-4294967295]
    next
config app-category
    edit {id}
    # IDs of one or more application categories that this shaper applies application control traffic shaping to.
    set id {integer}    Category IDs. range[0-4294967295]
    next
config url-category
    edit {id}
    # IDs of one or more FortiGuard Web Filtering categories that this shaper applies traffic shaping to.
    set id {integer}    URL category ID. range[0-4294967295]
    next
config dstintf
    edit {name}
    # One or more outgoing (egress) interfaces.
    set name {string}    Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name,system.zone.name
    next
    set traffic-shaper {string}    Traffic shaper to apply to traffic forwarded by the firewall policy. size[35] -
datasource(s): firewall.shaper.traffic-shaper.name
    set traffic-shaper-reverse {string}    Traffic shaper to apply to response traffic received by the firewall
policy. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.shaper.traffic-shaper.name
    set per-ip-shaper {string}    Per-IP traffic shaper to apply with this policy. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.shaper.per-ip-shaper.name
    set class-id {integer}    Traffic class ID. range[2-31]
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall shaping-profile

Use this command to configure traffic shaping profiles.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config firewall shaping-profile</code>	Configure traffic shaping profiles and determine bandwidth limits for individual entries by priority and percentage. Once created, these can then be applied to interfaces using the new <code>egress-shaping-profile</code> command under <code>system interface</code> .

```
config firewall shaping-profile
  edit {profile-name}
  # Configure shaping profiles.
  set profile-name {string}    Shaping profile name. size[35]
  set comment {string}        Comment. size[1023]
  set default-class-id {integer}  Default class ID to handle unclassified packets (including all local traffic).
  range[2-31]
  config shaping-entries
    edit {id}
    # Define shaping entries of this shaping profile.
    set id {integer}    ID number. range[0-4294967295]
    set class-id {integer}  Class ID. range[2-31]
    set priority {high | medium | low}  Priority.
      high    High priority.
      medium  Medium priority.
      low     Low priority.
    set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage {integer}  Guaranteed bandwidth in percentage. range[0-100]
    set maximum-bandwidth-percentage {integer}    Maximum bandwidth in percentage. range[1-100]
  next
next
end
```

firewall sniffer

Use this command to configure sniffer policies.

```
config firewall sniffer
  edit {id}
  # Configure sniffer.
  set id {integer}    Sniffer ID. range[0-9999]
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the active status of the sniffer.
  set logtraffic {all | utm | disable}  Either log all sessions, only sessions that have a security profile
applied, or disable all logging for this policy.
    all      Log all sessions accepted or denied by this policy.
    utm      Log traffic that has a security profile applied to it.
    disable  Disable all logging for this policy.
  set ipv6 {enable | disable}  Enable/disable sniffing IPv6 packets.
  set non-ip {enable | disable}  Enable/disable sniffing non-IP packets.
  set interface {string}  Interface name that traffic sniffing will take place on. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name
  set host {string}  Hosts to filter for in sniffer traffic (Format examples: 1.1.1.1, 2.2.2.0/24,
3.3.3.3/255.255.255.0, 4.4.4.0-4.4.4.240). size[63]
  set port {string}  Ports to sniff (Format examples: 10, :20, 30:40, 50-, 100-200). size[63]
  set protocol {string}  Integer value for the protocol type as defined by IANA (0 - 255). size[63]
  set vlan {string}  List of VLANs to sniff. size[63]
  set application-list-status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable application control profile.
  set application-list {string}  Name of an existing application list. size[35] - datasource(s): applic-
ation.list.name
  set ips-sensor-status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IPS sensor.
  set ips-sensor {string}  Name of an existing IPS sensor. size[35] - datasource(s): ips.sensor.name
  set dsri {enable | disable}  Enable/disable DSRI.
  set av-profile-status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable antivirus profile.
  set av-profile {string}  Name of an existing antivirus profile. size[35] - datasource(s): anti-
virus.profile.name
  set webfilter-profile-status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable web filter profile.
  set webfilter-profile {string}  Name of an existing web filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s): web-
filter.profile.name
  set spamfilter-profile-status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable spam filter.
  set spamfilter-profile {string}  Name of an existing spam filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s): spam-
filter.profile.name
  set dlp-sensor-status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable DLP sensor.
  set dlp-sensor {string}  Name of an existing DLP sensor. size[35] - datasource(s): dlp.sensor.name
```



```

set ips-dos-status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IPS DoS anomaly detection.
config anomaly
  edit {name}
    # Configuration method to edit Denial of Service (DoS) anomaly settings.
    set name {string}  Anomaly name. size[63]
    set status {disable | enable}  Enable/disable this anomaly.
    set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable anomaly logging.
    set action {pass | block | proxy}  Action taken when the threshold is reached.
      pass  Allow traffic but record a log message if logging is enabled.
      block Block traffic if this anomaly is found.
      proxy Use a proxy to control the traffic flow.
    set quarantine {none | attacker}  Quarantine method.
      none      Quarantine is disabled.
      attacker  Block all traffic sent from attacker's IP address. The attacker's IP address is also
added to the banned user list. The target's address is not affected.
    set quarantine-expiry {string}  Duration of quarantine. (Format ###d##h##m, minimum 1m, maximum
364d23h59m, default = 5m). Requires quarantine set to attacker.
    set quarantine-log {disable | enable}  Enable/disable quarantine logging.
    set threshold {integer}  Anomaly threshold. Number of detected instances per minute that triggers the
anomaly action. range[1-2147483647]
    set threshold(default) {integer}  Number of detected instances per minute which triggers action (1 -
2147483647, default = 1000). Note that each anomaly has a different threshold value assigned to it. range[0-4294967295]
  next
  set scan-botnet-connections {disable | block | monitor}  Enable/disable scanning of connections to Botnet serv-
ers.
    disable  Do not scan connections to botnet servers.
    block    Block connections to botnet servers.
    monitor  Log connections to botnet servers.
  set max-packet-count {integer}  Maximum packet count (1 - 1000000, default = 10000). range[1-1000000]
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall ssh host-key

Use this command to define trusted SSH host keys for specific SSH servers.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config firewall ssh host-key</code>	New config command. Define trusted SSH host keys for specific SSH servers.

```
config firewall ssh host-key
  edit {name}
    # SSH proxy host public keys.
    set name {string}  SSH public key name. size[35]
    set status {trusted | revoked}  Set the trust status of the public key.
        trusted  The public key is trusted.
        revoked  The public key is revoked.
    set type {option}  Set the type of the public key.
        RSA      The type of the public key is RSA.
        DSA      The type of the public key is DSA.
        ECDSA    The type of the public key is ECDSA.
        ED25519  The type of the public key is ED25519.
        RSA-CA   The type of the public key is from RSA CA.
        DSA-CA   The type of the public key is from DSA CA.
        ECDSA-CA The type of the public key is from ECDSA CA.
        ED25519-CA The type of the public key is from ED25519 CA.
    set nid {256 | 384 | 521}  Set the nid of the ECDSA key.
        256  The NID is ecdsa-sha2-nistp256.
        384  The NID is ecdsa-sha2-nistp384.
        521  The NID is ecdsa-sha2-nistp521.
    set ip {ipv4 address any}  IP address of the SSH server.
    set port {integer}  Port of the SSH server. range[0-4294967295]
    set hostname {string}  Hostname of the SSH server. size[255]
    set public-key {string}  SSH public key. size[32768]
```

```
    next
end
```

firewall ssh local-ca

Use this command to define trusted/untrusted CAs for host key signing. Any host key signed by the trust CA is trusted unless the host key is revoked.

FortiGate has two built-in SSH CAs:

- Fortinet_SSH_CA
- Fortinet_SSH_CA_Untrusted

The CAs are used to re-sign a server host key with local host-key using the trusted/untrusted CA when the server host key is trusted or untrusted.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
config firewall ssh local-ca	New config command. Define trusted/untrusted CAs for host key signing.

```
config firewall ssh local-ca
    edit {name}
    # SSH proxy local CA.
    set name {string}    SSH proxy local CA name. size[35]
    set password {password_string}    Password for SSH private key. size[128]
    set private-key {string}    SSH proxy private key, encrypted with a password.
    set public-key {string}    SSH proxy public key.
    set source {built-in | user}    SSH proxy local CA source type.
        built-in    Built-in SSH proxy local keys.
        user        User imported SSH proxy local keys.
    next
end
```

firewall ssh local-key

Use this command to define local host key templates for trusted re-signing. They are generated automatically by default.

The system creates different types of local host keys as default re-signing templates:

- Fortinet_SSH_RSA2048
- Fortinet_SSH_DSA1024
- Fortinet_SSH_ECDSA256
- Fortinet_SSH_ECDSA384
- Fortinet_SSH_ECDSA512
- Fortinet_SSH_ED25519
- Fortinet_SSH_RSA1024

Administrators can load their own local host keys and use them for MITM re-signing under `config firewall ssh setting`.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config firewall ssh local-key</code>	New <code>config</code> command. Define local host key templates for trusted re-signing

```
config firewall ssh local-key
edit {name}
# SSH proxy local keys.
set name {string}    SSH proxy local key name. size[35]
set password {password_string} Password for SSH private key. size[128]
set private-key {string} SSH proxy private key, encrypted with a password.
set public-key {string} SSH proxy public key.
set source {built-in | user} SSH proxy local key source type.
    built-in Built-in SSH proxy local keys.
    user User imported SSH proxy local keys.
next
end
```

firewall ssh setting

Use this command to configure per VDOM SSH settings.

Please note the following:

- When a host key is trusted and signed by a CA, SSH proxy re-signs according type of host key using trusted CA.
- When a host is trusted but not signed, SSH proxy sends back according to the type of host key.
- When a host key is untrusted and signed by a CA, SSH proxy re-signs a temporary host key (one hour life time) using untrusted CA.
- When a host is trusted but not signed, SSH proxy sends back a temporary host key (one hour life time).

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config firewall ssh setting</code>	New config command. Configure per VDOM SSH settings.

```
config firewall ssh setting
    set caname {string}    CA certificate used by SSH Inspection. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.ssh.local-ca.name
    set untrusted-caname {string}    Untrusted CA certificate used by SSH Inspection. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.ssh.local-ca.name
    set hostkey-rsa2048 {string}    RSA certificate used by SSH proxy. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.ssh.local-key.-
name
    set hostkey-dsa1024 {string}    DSA certificate used by SSH proxy. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.ssh.local-
key.name
    set hostkey-ecdsa256 {string}    ECDSA nid256 certificate used by SSH proxy. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.ssh.local-key.name
    set hostkey-ecdsa384 {string}    ECDSA nid384 certificate used by SSH proxy. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.ssh.local-key.name
    set hostkey-ecdsa521 {string}    ECDSA nid384 certificate used by SSH proxy. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.ssh.local-key.name
    set hostkey-ed25519 {string}    ED25519 hostkey used by SSH proxy. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.ssh.local-key.-
name
    set host-trusted-checking {enable | disable}    Enable/disable host trusted checking.
end
```

firewall ssl setting

Use this command to configure SSL proxy settings so that you can apply antivirus scanning, web filtering, FortiGuard web filtering, spam filtering, data leak prevention (DLP), and content archiving to HTTPS, IMAPS, POP3S, and SMTPS traffic by using the config firewall profile command.

To perform SSL content scanning and inspection, the FortiGate unit does the following:

- intercepts and decrypts HTTPS, IMAPS, POP3S, and SMTPS sessions between clients and servers (FortiGate SSL acceleration speeds up decryption)
- applies content inspection to decrypted content, including:
 - HTTPS, IMAPS, POP3S, and SMTPS Antivirus, DLP., and content archiving
 - HTTPS web filtering and FortiGuard web filtering
 - IMAPS, POP3S, and SMTPS spam filtering
- re-encrypts the sessions and forwards them to their destinations.

```
config firewall ssl setting
    set proxy-connect-timeout {integer}    Time limit to make an internal connection to the appropriate proxy process (1
- 60 sec, default = 30). range[1-60]
    set ssl-dh-bits {768 | 1024 | 1536 | 2048}    Bit-size of Diffie-Hellman (DH) prime used in DHE-RSA negotiation
(default = 2048).
        768    768-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
        1024   1024-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
        1536   1536-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
        2048   2048-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
    set ssl-send-empty-frags {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sending empty fragments to avoid attack on CBC IV (for
SSL 3.0 and TLS 1.0 only).
    set no-matching-cipher-action {bypass | drop}    Bypass or drop the connection when no matching cipher is found.
        bypass Bypass connection.
        drop   Drop connection.
    set cert-cache-capacity {integer}    Maximum capacity of the host certificate cache (0 - 500, default = 200). range
[0-500]
    set cert-cache-timeout {integer}    Time limit to keep certificate cache (1 - 120 min, default = 10). range[1-120]
    set session-cache-capacity {integer}    Capacity of the SSL session cache (--Obsolete--) (1 - 1000, default = 500).
range[0-1000]
    set session-cache-timeout {integer}    Time limit to keep SSL session state (1 - 60 min, default = 20). range[1-60]
    set kxp-queue-threshold {integer}    Maximum length of the CP KXP queue. When the queue becomes full, the proxy
switches cipher functions to the main CPU (0 - 512, default = 16). range[0-512]
    set ssl-queue-threshold {integer}    Maximum length of the CP SSL queue. When the queue becomes full, the proxy
switches cipher functions to the main CPU (0 - 512, default = 32). range[0-512]
```

```

    set abbreviate-handshake {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of SSL abbreviated handshake.
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall ssl-server

Use this command set up connections to SSL servers.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
set ssl-min-version ssl-3.0	The <code>ssl-3.0</code> option has been removed from <code>ssl-min-version</code> .

```

config firewall ssl-server
    edit {name}
    # Configure SSL servers.
        set name {string}    Server name. size[35]
        set ip {ipv4 address any}    IPv4 address of the SSL server.
        set port {integer}    Server service port (1 - 65535, default = 443). range[1-65535]
        set ssl-mode {half | full}    SSL/TLS mode for encryption and decryption of traffic.
            half    Client to FortiGate SSL.
            full    Client to FortiGate and FortiGate to Server SSL.
        set add-header-x-forwarded-proto {enable | disable}    Enable/disable adding an X-Forwarded-Proto header to forwarded requests.
        set mapped-port {integer}    Mapped server service port (1 - 65535, default = 80). range[1-65535]
        set ssl-cert {string}    Name of certificate for SSL connections to this server (default = "Fortinet_CA_SSL").
size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.local.name
        set ssl-dh-bits {768 | 1024 | 1536 | 2048}    Bit-size of Diffie-Hellman (DH) prime used in DHE-RSA negotiation (default = 2048).

```

```

    768    768-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
    1024   1024-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
    1536   1536-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
    2048   2048-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
set ssl-algorithm {high | medium | low}    Relative strength of encryption algorithms accepted in negotiation.
    high    High encryption. Allow only AES and ChaCha
    medium  Medium encryption. Allow AES, ChaCha, 3DES, and RC4.
    low     Low encryption. Allow AES, ChaCha, 3DES, RC4, and DES.
set ssl-client-renegotiation {allow | deny | secure}    Allow or block client renegotiation by server.
    allow   Allow a SSL client to renegotiate.
    deny    Abort any SSL connection that attempts to renegotiate.
    secure  Reject any SSL connection that does not offer a RFC 5746 Secure Renegotiation Indication.
set ssl-min-version {tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2}    Lowest SSL/TLS version to negotiate.
    tls-1.0 TLS 1.0.
    tls-1.1 TLS 1.1.
    tls-1.2 TLS 1.2.
set ssl-max-version {tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2}    Highest SSL/TLS version to negotiate.
    tls-1.0 TLS 1.0.
    tls-1.1 TLS 1.1.
    tls-1.2 TLS 1.2.
set ssl-send-empty-frags {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sending empty fragments to avoid attack on CBC IV.
set url-rewrite {enable | disable}    Enable/disable rewriting the URL.
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

edit <ssl-server-name>

Enter a name for the SSL server. It can be any name and this name is not used by other FortiGate configurations.

add-header-x-forwarded-proto

Optionally add X-Forwarded-Proto header. This is available when `ssl-mode` is `half`.

Default Value: `enable`

ip

Enter an IP address for the SSL server. This IP address should be the same as the IP address of the HTTP server that this SSL server will be offloading for. When a session is accepted by a WAN optimization rule with SSL offloading enabled, the destination IP address of the session is matched with this IP address to select the SSL server configuration to use.

port

Enter a port number to be used by the SSL server. Usually this would be port 443 for an HTTPS server. When a session is accepted by a WAN optimization rule with SSL offloading enabled, the destination port of the session is matched with this port to select the SSL server configuration to use.

ssl-mode

Default Value: `full`

ssl-cert

Select the certificate to be used for this SSL server. The certificate should be the HTTP server CA used by the HTTP server that this SSL server configuration will be offloading for.

The certificate must be a local certificate added to the FortiGate unit using the `config vpn certificate local` command. For more information, see [vpn certificate local on page 1069](#).

The certificate key size must be 1024 or 2048 bits. 4096-bit keys are not supported.

Default Value: `1024`

ssl-dh-bits

Select the size of the Diffie-Hellman prime used in DHE_RSA negotiation. Larger primes may cause a performance reduction but are more secure.

ssl-min-version

Select the lowest or oldest SSL/TLS version to offer when negotiating.

ssl-max-version

Select the highest or newest SSL/TLS version to offer when negotiating.

ssl-send-empty-frags

Enable or disable sending empty fragments before sending the actual payload. Sending empty fragments is a technique used to avoid cipher-block chaining (CBC) plaintext attacks if the initiation vector (IV) is known. Also called the CBC IV. Some SSL implementations are not compatible with sending empty fragments. Change `ssl-sendempty-frags` to `disable` if required by your SSL implementation.

Default Value: `enable`

url-rewrite

Enable to rewrite Location header of HTTP redirection response(3XX response). This is available when `ssl-mode` is `half`.

Default Value: `disable`

firewall ssl-ssh-profile

Use this command to configure UTM deep inspection options profiles for firewall policies. Deep inspection options configure how UTM functionality identifies secure content protocols such as HTTPS, FTPS, and SMTPS. Client comforting options are controlled by the corresponding non-secure protocol options in [firewall profile-protocol-options on page 277](#).

To configure the `ssl-server`, change `client-cert-request` from `bypass`.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config ssh set ssh-policy-check {enable disable} set ssh-tun-policy-check {enable disable} next ...</pre>	Options to enable SSH proxy and SSH tunnel policy check . When <code>ssh-policy-check</code> is enabled, proxy will check "SSH proxy" policy for SSH traffic and check "SSH tunnel" policy for TCP/IP port forwarding traffic.
<pre>config ssh set unsupported-version {bypass block} next</pre>	Option to either bypass or block unsupported versions of SSH. Note that deep scan is only supported by SSH 2.0.

Command	Description
...	
<pre>config ssh set ssh-algorithm {compatible high-encryption} next ...</pre>	<p>The level of SSH encryption can be set for SSH sessions on a per-profile basis.</p> <p>Either use a broader set of encryption algorithms to be used (better for compatibility), or only allow AES-CTR, AES-GCM and high encryption algorithms to be used for the session.</p>
<pre>config firewall ssl-ssh-profile edit {name} # Configure SSL/SSH protocol options. set name {string} Name. size[35] set comment {string} Optional comments. size[255] config ssl set inspect-all {disable certificate-inspection deep-inspection} Level of SSL inspection. disable Disable. certificate-inspection Inspect SSL handshake only. deep-inspection Full SSL inspection. set client-cert-request {bypass inspect block} Action based on client certificate request. bypass Bypass the session. inspect Inspect the session. block Block the session. set unsupported-ssl {bypass inspect block} Action based on the SSL encryption used being unsupported. bypass Bypass the session. inspect Inspect the session. block Block the session. set allow-invalid-server-cert {enable disable} When enabled, allows SSL sessions whose server certificate validation failed. set untrusted-cert {allow block ignore} Allow, ignore, or block the untrusted SSL session server certificate. allow Allow the untrusted server certificate. block Block the connection when an untrusted server certificate is detected. ignore Always take the server certificate as trusted. config https set ports {integer} Ports to use for scanning (1 - 65535, default = 443). range[1-65535] set status {disable certificate-inspection deep-inspection} Configure protocol inspection status. disable Disable.</pre>	

```

        certificate-inspection  Inspect SSL handshake only.
        deep-inspection         Full SSL inspection.
set client-cert-request {bypass | inspect | block}  Action based on client certificate request.
        bypass  Bypass the session.
        inspect Inspect the session.
        block   Block the session.
set unsupported-ssl {bypass | inspect | block}  Action based on the SSL encryption used being unsupported.
        bypass  Bypass the session.
        inspect Inspect the session.
        block   Block the session.
set allow-invalid-server-cert {enable | disable}  When enabled, allows SSL sessions whose server cer-
tificate validation failed.
set untrusted-cert {allow | block | ignore}  Allow, ignore, or block the untrusted SSL session server cer-
tificate.
        allow  Allow the untrusted server certificate.
        block  Block the connection when an untrusted server certificate is detected.
        ignore Always take the server certificate as trusted.
config ftps
set ports {integer}  Ports to use for scanning (1 - 65535, default = 443). range[1-65535]
set status {disable | deep-inspection}  Configure protocol inspection status.
        disable  Disable.
        deep-inspection  Full SSL inspection.
set client-cert-request {bypass | inspect | block}  Action based on client certificate request.
        bypass  Bypass the session.
        inspect Inspect the session.
        block   Block the session.
set unsupported-ssl {bypass | inspect | block}  Action based on the SSL encryption used being unsupported.
        bypass  Bypass the session.
        inspect Inspect the session.
        block   Block the session.
set allow-invalid-server-cert {enable | disable}  When enabled, allows SSL sessions whose server cer-
tificate validation failed.
set untrusted-cert {allow | block | ignore}  Allow, ignore, or block the untrusted SSL session server cer-
tificate.
        allow  Allow the untrusted server certificate.
        block  Block the connection when an untrusted server certificate is detected.
        ignore Always take the server certificate as trusted.
config imaps
set ports {integer}  Ports to use for scanning (1 - 65535, default = 443). range[1-65535]
set status {disable | deep-inspection}  Configure protocol inspection status.

```

```

        disable          Disable.
        deep-inspection  Full SSL inspection.
    set client-cert-request {bypass | inspect | block}  Action based on client certificate request.
        bypass          Bypass the session.
        inspect         Inspect the session.
        block           Block the session.
    set unsupported-ssl {bypass | inspect | block}  Action based on the SSL encryption used being unsupported.
        bypass          Bypass the session.
        inspect         Inspect the session.
        block           Block the session.
    set allow-invalid-server-cert {enable | disable}  When enabled, allows SSL sessions whose server cer-
tificate validation failed.
    set untrusted-cert {allow | block | ignore}  Allow, ignore, or block the untrusted SSL session server cer-
tificate.
        allow          Allow the untrusted server certificate.
        block           Block the connection when an untrusted server certificate is detected.
        ignore         Always take the server certificate as trusted.
config pop3s
    set ports {integer}  Ports to use for scanning (1 - 65535, default = 443). range[1-65535]
    set status {disable | deep-inspection}  Configure protocol inspection status.
        disable          Disable.
        deep-inspection  Full SSL inspection.
    set client-cert-request {bypass | inspect | block}  Action based on client certificate request.
        bypass          Bypass the session.
        inspect         Inspect the session.
        block           Block the session.
    set unsupported-ssl {bypass | inspect | block}  Action based on the SSL encryption used being unsupported.
        bypass          Bypass the session.
        inspect         Inspect the session.
        block           Block the session.
    set allow-invalid-server-cert {enable | disable}  When enabled, allows SSL sessions whose server cer-
tificate validation failed.
    set untrusted-cert {allow | block | ignore}  Allow, ignore, or block the untrusted SSL session server cer-
tificate.
        allow          Allow the untrusted server certificate.
        block           Block the connection when an untrusted server certificate is detected.
        ignore         Always take the server certificate as trusted.
config smtps
    set ports {integer}  Ports to use for scanning (1 - 65535, default = 443). range[1-65535]
    set status {disable | deep-inspection}  Configure protocol inspection status.

```

```

        disable          Disable.
        deep-inspection  Full SSL inspection.
set client-cert-request {bypass | inspect | block}  Action based on client certificate request.
        bypass          Bypass the session.
        inspect         Inspect the session.
        block           Block the session.
set unsupported-ssl {bypass | inspect | block}  Action based on the SSL encryption used being unsupported.
        bypass          Bypass the session.
        inspect         Inspect the session.
        block           Block the session.
set allow-invalid-server-cert {enable | disable}  When enabled, allows SSL sessions whose server certificate validation failed.
set untrusted-cert {allow | block | ignore}  Allow, ignore, or block the untrusted SSL session server certificate.
        allow           Allow the untrusted server certificate.
        block           Block the connection when an untrusted server certificate is detected.
        ignore          Always take the server certificate as trusted.
config ssh
set ports {integer}  Ports to use for scanning (1 - 65535, default = 443). range[1-65535]
set status {disable | deep-inspection}  Configure protocol inspection status.
        disable          Disable.
        deep-inspection  Full SSL inspection.
set inspect-all {disable | deep-inspection}  Level of SSL inspection.
        disable          Disable.
        deep-inspection  Full SSL inspection.
set unsupported-version {bypass | block}  Action based on SSH version being unsupported.
        bypass           Bypass the session.
        block            Block the session.
set ssh-policy-check {disable | enable}  Enable/disable SSH policy check.
set ssh-tun-policy-check {disable | enable}  Enable/disable SSH tunnel policy check.
set ssh-algorithm {compatible | high-encryption}  Relative strength of encryption algorithms accepted during negotiation.
        compatible       Allow a broader set of encryption algorithms for best compatibility.
        high-encryption  Allow only AES-CTR, AES-GCM ciphers and high encryption algorithms.
set whitelist {enable | disable}  Enable/disable exempting servers by FortiGuard whitelist.
config ssl-exempt
edit {id}
# Servers to exempt from SSL inspection.
set id {integer}  ID number. range[0-512]
set type {option}  Type of address object (IPv4 or IPv6) or FortiGuard category.

```

```

        fortiguard-category FortiGuard category.
        address             Firewall IPv4 address.
        address6            Firewall IPv6 address.
        wildcard-fqdn       Fully Qualified Domain Name with wildcard characters.
        regex               Regular expression FQDN.
    set fortiguard-category {integer} FortiGuard category ID. range[0-255]
    set address {string} IPv4 address object. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name
    set address6 {string} IPv6 address object. size[63] - datasource(s):
firewall.address6.name, firewall.addrgrp6.name
    set wildcard-fqdn {string} Exempt servers by wildcard FQDN. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.wildcard-fqdn.custom.name, firewall.wildcard-fqdn.group.name
    set regex {string} Exempt servers by regular expression. size[255]
next
set server-cert-mode {re-sign | replace} Re-sign or replace the server's certificate.
    re-sign Multiple clients connecting to multiple servers.
    replace Protect an SSL server.
set use-ssl-server {disable | enable} Enable/disable the use of SSL server table for SSL offloading.
set caname {string} CA certificate used by SSL Inspection. size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.cer-
tificate.local.name
set untrusted-caname {string} Untrusted CA certificate used by SSL Inspection. size[35] - datasource(s):
vpn.certificate.local.name
set server-cert {string} Certificate used by SSL Inspection to replace server certificate. size[35] - data-
source(s): vpn.certificate.local.name
config ssl-server
    edit {id}
    # SSL servers.
    set id {integer} SSL server ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set ip {ipv4 address any} IPv4 address of the SSL server.
    set https-client-cert-request {bypass | inspect | block} Action based on client certificate request
during the HTTPS handshake.
        bypass Bypass the session.
        inspect Inspect the session.
        block Block the session.
    set smtps-client-cert-request {bypass | inspect | block} Action based on client certificate request
during the SMTPS handshake.
        bypass Bypass the session.
        inspect Inspect the session.
        block Block the session.
    set pop3s-client-cert-request {bypass | inspect | block} Action based on client certificate request

```

```

during the POP3S handshake.
    bypass    Bypass the session.
    inspect   Inspect the session.
    block     Block the session.
    set imaps-client-cert-request {bypass | inspect | block}  Action based on client certificate request
during the IMAPS handshake.
    bypass    Bypass the session.
    inspect   Inspect the session.
    block     Block the session.
    set ftps-client-cert-request {bypass | inspect | block}  Action based on client certificate request dur-
ing the FTPS handshake.
    bypass    Bypass the session.
    inspect   Inspect the session.
    block     Block the session.
    set ssl-other-client-cert-request {bypass | inspect | block}  Action based on client certificate
request during an SSL protocol handshake.
    bypass    Bypass the session.
    inspect   Inspect the session.
    block     Block the session.
    next
    set ssl-anomalies-log {disable | enable}  Enable/disable logging SSL anomalies.
    set ssl-exemptions-log {disable | enable}  Enable/disable logging SSL exemptions.
    set rpc-over-https {enable | disable}  Enable/disable inspection of RPC over HTTPS.
    set mapi-over-https {enable | disable}  Enable/disable inspection of MAPI over HTTPS.
  next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

allow-invalid-server-cert

During the SSL handshake, a number of checks are made to verify the validity of the certificate.

One source of the checks, is against a CA certificate store inside FortiOS. This is the same CA bundle used by the browser Mozilla Firefox.

Updates to the store are:

- With each new version of FortiOS
- Via internal FGD
- Possible with some builds via FTP

Details of the CA certificate store can be found at: <https://curl.haxx.se/docs/caextract.html>

The following checks are made for validity:

Validity Check	Description
Signature	One of the things being checked against the CA bundle is the certificate signature. These signatures are generated via directly signing by the CA's private key.
Expiration date	All certificates have an expiry date. The date, based on the devices clock/calendar is compared to the expiry date of the certificate.
Revoked list	Periodically, certificates are revoked. If a certificate has been revoked it is put on a list. Whenever a certificate is being verified, it is checked against this list.
Self signed certificate	In the case of self-signed certificates, the IPS engine and proxy have different handling. IPS engine will keep and use the certificate self-signed certificate, but the public key will be replaced so that SSL inspection can take place. The proxy engine will re-sign the certificate with the untrusted CA certificate. The mechanics are similar but the net effect for the user is similar. The user will get warnings from browsers. The users can choose to remember the self-signed certificate in some browsers, but cannot do the same thing with the certificate re-signed with the untrusted CA.
Intermediate CA with a weak hash algorithm, such as MD5, SHA1	<p>Some browsers like Chrome or Firefox will give a warning because of a weak signature algorithm (visit https://sha1-intermediate.badssl.com to test).</p> <p>In the IPS Engine, in order to convey the weak intermediate CA back to client, the signature hash algorithm is downgraded in the re-signed server certificate to the weakest algorithm used in the original certificate chain.</p> <p>In the Proxy Engine - In the case of a weak signature algorithm, the Proxy engine will treat the connection as untrusted, and re-sign the server certificate with the untrusted CA. The final user experience is different. Instead of a warning like "NET::ERR_CERT_WEAK_SIGNATURE_ALGORITHM" that you would get in Chrome, you will get a warning that the certificate couldn't be verified (because of the signing CA is not trusted or imported into the user's web browser).</p>

firewall ttl-policy

Use this command to create Generalized TTL Security Mechanism (GTSM) policies.

```
config firewall ttl-policy
  edit {id}
  # Configure TTL policies.
  set id {integer} ID. range[0-4294967295]
  set status {enable | disable} Enable/disable this TTL policy.
  set action {accept | deny} Action to be performed on traffic matching this policy (default = deny).
    accept Allow traffic matching this policy.
    deny Deny or block traffic matching this policy.
  set srcintf {string} Source interface name from available interfaces. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.zone.name,system.interface.name
  config srcaddr
    edit {name}
    # Source address object(s) from available options. Separate multiple names with a space.
    set name {string} Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
  next
  config service
    edit {name}
    # Service object(s) from available options. Separate multiple names with a space.
    set name {string} Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name,firewall.service.group.name
  next
  set schedule {string} Schedule object from available options. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.schedule.onetime.name,firewall.schedule.recurring.name,firewall.schedule.group.name
  set ttl {string} Value/range to match against the packet's Time to Live value (format: ttl[ - ttl_high], 1 -
255).
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall {vip | vip6}

Configure firewall virtual IPs (VIPs) and their associated addresses and port mappings (NAT). Use VIPs to configure destination NAT and server load balancing.

For information about FortiOS Firewall VIPs in general, see [Virtual IPs](#). For information about server load balancing with FortiOS Firewall VIPs see [Server Load Balancing](#).

Proxy mode is required for persistence, HTTP Multiplexing, SSL offloading and other advanced HTTP and SSL features.



SSL server types are not available on all FortiGate models.

```
config firewall vip
  edit {name}
    # Configure virtual IP for IPv4.
    set name {string}    Virtual IP name. size[63]
    set id {integer}     Custom defined ID. range[0-65535]
    set uuid {uuid}      Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
    set comment {string} Comment. size[255]
    set type {option}    Configure a static NAT, load balance, server load balance, DNS translation, or FQDN VIP.
                        static-nat      Static NAT.
                        load-balance    Load balance.
                        server-load-balance Server load balance.
                        dns-translation DNS translation.
                        fqdn            Fully qualified domain name.
    set dns-mapping-ttl {integer} DNS mapping TTL (Set to zero to use TTL in DNS response, default = 0). range[0-604800]
    set ldb-method {option} Method used to distribute sessions to real servers.
                        static          Distribute to server based on source IP.
                        round-robin     Distribute to server based round robin order.
                        weighted        Distribute to server based on weight.
                        least-session   Distribute to server with lowest session count.
                        least-rtt       Distribute to server with lowest Round-Trip-Time.
                        first-alive     Distribute to the first server that is alive.
                        http-host       Distribute to server based on host field in HTTP header.
    config src-filter
      edit {range}
```

```

        # Source address filter. Each address must be either an IP/subnet (x.x.x.x/n) or a range (x.x.x.x-y.y.y.y).
        Separate addresses with spaces.
        set range {string}    Source-filter range. size[64]
    next
    config service
    edit {name}
    # Service name.
    set name {string}    Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name, firewall.service.group.name
    next
    set extip {string}    IP address or address range on the external interface that you want to map to an address or
address range on the destination network.
    config extaddr
    edit {name}
    # External FQDN address name.
    set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
    config mappedip
    edit {range}
    # IP address or address range on the destination network to which the external IP address is mapped.
    set range {string}    Mapped IP range. size[64]
    next
    set mapped-addr {string}    Mapped FQDN address name. size[63] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name
    set extintf {string}    Interface connected to the source network that receives the packets that will be for-
warded to the destination network. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set arp-reply {disable | enable}    Enable to respond to ARP requests for this virtual IP address. Enabled by
default.
    set server-type {option}    Protocol to be load balanced by the virtual server (also called the server load bal-
ance virtual IP).
        http    HTTP
        https   HTTPS
        imaps    IMAPS
        pop3s    POP3S
        smtps    SMTPS
        ssl      SSL
        tcp      TCP
        udp      UDP
        ip       IP
    set persistence {none | http-cookie | ssl-session-id}    Configure how to make sure that clients connect to the
same server every time they make a request that is part of the same session.

```

```

        none          None.
        http-cookie   HTTP cookie.
        ssl-session-id SSL session ID.
    set nat-source-vip {disable | enable}  Enable/disable forcing the source NAT mapped IP to the external IP for
all traffic.
    set portforward {disable | enable}  Enable/disable port forwarding.
    set protocol {tcp | udp | sctp | icmp}  Protocol to use when forwarding packets.
        tcp    TCP.
        udp    UDP.
        sctp   Sctp.
        icmp   ICMP.
    set extport {string}  Incoming port number range that you want to map to a port number range on the destination
network.
    set mappedport {string}  Port number range on the destination network to which the external port number range
is mapped.
    set gratuitous-arp-interval {integer}  Enable to have the VIP send gratuitous ARPs. 0=disabled. Set from 5 up
to 8640000 seconds to enable. range[5-8640000]
    config srcintf-filter
        edit {interface-name}
        # Interfaces to which the VIP applies. Separate the names with spaces.
        set interface-name {string}  Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        next
    set portmapping-type {1-to-1 | m-to-n}  Port mapping type.
        1-to-1  One to one.
        m-to-n  Many to many.
    config realservers
        edit {id}
        # Select the real servers that this server load balancing VIP will distribute traffic to.
        set id {integer}  Real server ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set ip {ipv4 address any}  IP address of the real server.
        set port {integer}  Port for communicating with the real server. Required if port forwarding is
enabled. range[1-65535]
        set status {active | standby | disable}  Set the status of the real server to active so that it can
accept traffic, or on standby or disabled so no traffic is sent.
            active  Server status active.
            standby Server status standby.
            disable Server status disable.
        set weight {integer}  Weight of the real server. If weighted load balancing is enabled, the server with
the highest weight gets more connections. range[1-255]
        set holddown-interval {integer}  Time in seconds that the health check monitor continues to monitor and

```

```

unresponsive server that should be active. range[30-65535]
    set healthcheck {disable | enable | vip}    Enable to check the responsiveness of the real server before
forwarding traffic.
    set http-host {string}    HTTP server domain name in HTTP header. size[63]
    set max-connections {integer}    Max number of active connections that can be directed to the real
server. When reached, sessions are sent to other real servers. range[0-2147483647]
    set monitor {string}    Name of the health check monitor to use when polling to determine a virtual
server's connectivity status. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ldb-monitor.name
    set client-ip {string}    Only clients in this IP range can connect to this real server.
    next
    set http-cookie-domain-from-host {disable | enable}    Enable/disable use of HTTP cookie domain from host field
in HTTP.
    set http-cookie-domain {string}    Domain that HTTP cookie persistence should apply to. size[35]
    set http-cookie-path {string}    Limit HTTP cookie persistence to the specified path. size[35]
    set http-cookie-generation {integer}    Generation of HTTP cookie to be accepted. Changing invalidates all exist-
ing cookies. range[0-4294967295]
    set http-cookie-age {integer}    Time in minutes that client web browsers should keep a cookie. Default is 60
seconds. 0 = no time limit. range[0-525600]
    set http-cookie-share {disable | same-ip}    Control sharing of cookies across virtual servers. same-ip means a
cookie from one virtual server can be used by another. Disable stops cookie sharing.
        disable    Only allow HTTP cookie to match this virtual server.
        same-ip    Allow HTTP cookie to match any virtual server with same IP.
    set https-cookie-secure {disable | enable}    Enable/disable verification that inserted HTTPS cookies are secure.
    set http-multiplex {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HTTP multiplexing.
    set http-ip-header {enable | disable}    For HTTP multiplexing, enable to add the original client IP address in
the XForwarded-For HTTP header.
    set http-ip-header-name {string}    For HTTP multiplexing, enter a custom HTTPS header name. The original client
IP address is added to this header. If empty, X-Forwarded-For is used. size[35]
    set outlook-web-access {disable | enable}    Enable to add the Front-End-Https header for Microsoft Outlook Web
Access.
    set weblogic-server {disable | enable}    Enable to add an HTTP header to indicate SSL offloading for a WebLogic
server.
    set websphere-server {disable | enable}    Enable to add an HTTP header to indicate SSL offloading for a
WebSphere server.
    set ssl-mode {half | full}    Apply SSL offloading between the client and the FortiGate (half) or from the client
to the FortiGate and from the FortiGate to the server (full).
        half    Client to FortiGate SSL.
        full    Client to FortiGate and FortiGate to Server SSL.
    set ssl-certificate {string}    The name of the SSL certificate to use for SSL acceleration. size[35] - data-
source(s): vpn.certificate.local.name

```

```

    set ssl-dh-bits {option}    Number of bits to use in the Diffie-Hellman exchange for RSA encryption of SSL ses-
sions.
        768    768-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
        1024   1024-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
        1536   1536-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
        2048   2048-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
        3072   3072-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
        4096   4096-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
    set ssl-algorithm {high | medium | low | custom}    Permitted encryption algorithms for SSL sessions according to
encryption strength.
        high    High encryption. Allow only AES and ChaCha.
        medium  Medium encryption. Allow AES, ChaCha, 3DES, and RC4.
        low     Low encryption. Allow AES, ChaCha, 3DES, RC4, and DES.
        custom  Custom encryption. Use config ssl-cipher-suites to select the cipher suites that are allowed.
config ssl-cipher-suites
    edit {priority}
    # SSL/TLS cipher suites acceptable from a client, ordered by priority.
    set priority {integer}    SSL/TLS cipher suites priority. range[0-4294967295]
    set cipher {option}    Cipher suite name.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-
POLY1305-SHA256.
        TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-CHACHA20-
POLY1305-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-
SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-
SHA256.

```

SHA256.	TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-
	TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
SHA384.	TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA384	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-
SHA384.	TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-
SHA.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-
SHA384.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA384	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-
SHA384.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA.
SHA256.	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
SHA.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA.	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DSS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA.	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-


```

SHA256.          TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA256          Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.          TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA256          Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA256.          TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA256          Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA256.          TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA                      Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA                      Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256              Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.          TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384              Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-
SHA384.          TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256              Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.          TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384              Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-
SHA384.          TLS-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA                          Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256                  Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256.
                  TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384                  Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384.
                  TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256            Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.          TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384            Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-
SHA384.          TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256          Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC_
SHA256.          TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384          Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC_
SHA384.          TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA                    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA.
                  TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA              Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA                Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA                      Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-MD5                          Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-MD5.
                  TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA                          Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA.
                  TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA                      Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA                      Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA                          Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA.
set versions {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2} SSL/TLS versions that the cipher suite can be
used with.
ssl-3.0  SSL 3.0.
tls-1.0  TLS 1.0.

```

```

        tls-1.1 TLS 1.1.
        tls-1.2 TLS 1.2.

    next
    set ssl-server-algorithm {option}    Permitted encryption algorithms for the server side of SSL full mode ses-
sions according to encryption strength.
        high    High encryption. Allow only AES and ChaCha.
        medium  Medium encryption. Allow AES, ChaCha, 3DES, and RC4.
        low     Low encryption. Allow AES, ChaCha, 3DES, RC4, and DES.
        custom  Custom encryption. Use ssl-server-cipher-suites to select the cipher suites that are allowed.
        client  Use the same encryption algorithms for both client and server sessions.
    config ssl-server-cipher-suites
        edit {priority}
        # SSL/TLS cipher suites to offer to a server, ordered by priority.
        set priority {integer}    SSL/TLS cipher suites priority. range[0-4294967295]
        set cipher {option}    Cipher suite name.
            TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-
POLY1305-SHA256.
            TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-CHACHA20-
POLY1305-SHA256.
            TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-
SHA256.
            TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
            TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
            TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256.
            TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256.
            TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256.
            TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384.
            TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
            TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
            TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256.
            TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256.
            TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256.
            TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384.
            TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
            TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-
SHA256.
            TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-
SHA256.
            TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
            TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA384    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-

```

SHA384.	TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-
SHA384.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-
SHA.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-
SHA256.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA384	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-
SHA384.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-
SHA384.	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA.	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DSS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA.	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA256.		

```

SHA256.          TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA256          Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA256.          TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA                    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA                    Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256              Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.          TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384              Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-
SHA384.          TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256              Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.          TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384              Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-
SHA384.          TLS-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA                          Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256                  Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256.
                  TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384                  Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384.
                  TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256            Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.          TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384            Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-
SHA384.          TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256          Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC_
SHA256.          TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384          Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC_
SHA384.          TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA                    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA.
                  TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA              Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA                Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA                    Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-MD5                          Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-MD5.
                  TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA                          Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA.
                  TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA                      Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA                      Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA.
                  TLS-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA                          Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA.
set versions {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2}  SSL/TLS versions that the cipher suite can be
used with.
                ssl-3.0  SSL 3.0.
                tls-1.0  TLS 1.0.
                tls-1.1  TLS 1.1.
                tls-1.2  TLS 1.2.
next
set ssl-pfs {require | deny | allow}  Select the cipher suites that can be used for SSL perfect forward secrecy

```

(PFS). Applies to both client and server sessions.

require Allow only Diffie-Hellman cipher-suites, so PFS is applied.

deny Allow only non-Diffie-Hellman cipher-suites, so PFS is not applied.

allow Allow use of any cipher suite so PFS may or may not be used depending on the cipher suite selected.

set ssl-min-version {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2} Lowest SSL/TLS version acceptable from a client.

ssl-3.0 SSL 3.0.

tls-1.0 TLS 1.0.

tls-1.1 TLS 1.1.

tls-1.2 TLS 1.2.

set ssl-max-version {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2} Highest SSL/TLS version acceptable from a client.

ssl-3.0 SSL 3.0.

tls-1.0 TLS 1.0.

tls-1.1 TLS 1.1.

tls-1.2 TLS 1.2.

set ssl-server-min-version {option} Lowest SSL/TLS version acceptable from a server. Use the client setting by default.

ssl-3.0 SSL 3.0.

tls-1.0 TLS 1.0.

tls-1.1 TLS 1.1.

tls-1.2 TLS 1.2.

client Use same value as client configuration.

set ssl-server-max-version {option} Highest SSL/TLS version acceptable from a server. Use the client setting by default.

ssl-3.0 SSL 3.0.

tls-1.0 TLS 1.0.

tls-1.1 TLS 1.1.

tls-1.2 TLS 1.2.

client Use same value as client configuration.

set ssl-send-empty-frags {enable | disable} Enable/disable sending empty fragments to avoid CBC IV attacks (SSL 3.0 & TLS 1.0 only). May need to be disabled for compatibility with older systems.

set ssl-client-fallback {disable | enable} Enable/disable support for preventing Downgrade Attacks on client connections (RFC 7507).

set ssl-client-renegotiation {allow | deny | secure} Allow, deny, or require secure renegotiation of client sessions to comply with RFC 5746.

allow Allow a SSL client to renegotiate.

deny Abort any client initiated SSL re-negotiation attempt.

secure Abort any client initiated SSL re-negotiation attempt that does not use RFC 5746 Secure Renegotiation.

set ssl-client-session-state-type {disable | time | count | both} How to expire SSL sessions for the segment

```

of the SSL connection between the client and the FortiGate.
    disable Do not keep session states.
    time     Expire session states after this many minutes.
    count    Expire session states when this maximum is reached.
    both     Expire session states based on time or count, whichever occurs first.
    set ssl-client-session-state-timeout {integer}  Number of minutes to keep client to FortiGate SSL session
state. range[1-14400]
    set ssl-client-session-state-max {integer}      Maximum number of client to FortiGate SSL session states to keep.
range[1-10000]
    set ssl-server-session-state-type {disable | time | count | both}  How to expire SSL sessions for the segment
of the SSL connection between the server and the FortiGate.
    disable Do not keep session states.
    time     Expire session states after this many minutes.
    count    Expire session states when this maximum is reached.
    both     Expire session states based on time or count, whichever occurs first.
    set ssl-server-session-state-timeout {integer}  Number of minutes to keep FortiGate to Server SSL session
state. range[1-14400]
    set ssl-server-session-state-max {integer}      Maximum number of FortiGate to Server SSL session states to keep.
range[1-10000]
    set ssl-http-location-conversion {enable | disable}  Enable to replace HTTP with HTTPS in the reply's Location
HTTP header field.
    set ssl-http-match-host {enable | disable}  Enable/disable HTTP host matching for location conversion.
    set ssl-hpkp {disable | enable | report-only}  Enable/disable including HPKP header in response.
    set ssl-hpkp-primary {string}  Certificate to generate primary HPKP pin from. size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.cer-
tificate.local.name, vpn.certificate.ca.name
    set ssl-hpkp-backup {string}  Certificate to generate backup HPKP pin from. size[35] - datasource(s):
vpn.certificate.local.name, vpn.certificate.ca.name
    set ssl-hpkp-age {integer}  Number of seconds the client should honour the HPKP setting. range[60-157680000]
    set ssl-hpkp-report-uri {string}  URL to report HPKP violations to. size[255]
    set ssl-hpkp-include-subdomains {disable | enable}  Indicate that HPKP header applies to all subdomains.
    set ssl-hsts {disable | enable}  Enable/disable including HSTS header in response.
    set ssl-hsts-age {integer}  Number of seconds the client should honour the HSTS setting. range[60-157680000]
    set ssl-hsts-include-subdomains {disable | enable}  Indicate that HSTS header applies to all subdomains.
config monitor
    edit {name}
        # Name of the health check monitor to use when polling to determine a virtual server's connectivity status.
        set name {string}  Health monitor name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ldb-monitor.name
    next
    set max-embryonic-connections {integer}  Maximum number of incomplete connections. range[0-100000]
    set color {integer}  Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]

```

```

    next
end

config firewall vip6
    edit {name}
    # Configure virtual IP for IPv6.
    set name {string}    Virtual ip6 name. size[63]
    set id {integer}     Custom defined ID. range[0-65535]
    set uuid {uuid}     Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
    set comment {string} Comment. size[255]
    set type {static-nat | server-load-balance}    Configure a static NAT or server load balance VIP.
        static-nat        Static NAT.
        server-load-balance    Server load balance.
    config src-filter
        edit {range}
        # Source IP6 filter (x:x:x:x:x:x:x/x). Separate addresses with spaces.
        set range {string}    Source-filter range. size[79]
        next
    set extip {string}    IP address or address range on the external interface that you want to map to an address or
address range on the destination network.
    set mappedip {string}    Mapped IP address range in the format startIP-endIP.
    set arp-reply {disable | enable}    Enable to respond to ARP requests for this virtual IP address. Enabled by
default.
    set portforward {disable | enable}    Enable port forwarding.
    set protocol {tcp | udp | sctp}    Protocol to use when forwarding packets.
        tcp    TCP.
        udp    UDP.
        sctp    SCTP.
    set extport {string}    Incoming port number range that you want to map to a port number range on the destination
network.
    set mappedport {string}    Port number range on the destination network to which the external port number range
is mapped.
    set color {integer}    Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
    set ldb-method {option}    Method used to distribute sessions to real servers.
        static        Distribute sessions based on source IP.
        round-robin    Distribute sessions based round robin order.
        weighted        Distribute sessions based on weight.
        least-session    Sends new sessions to the server with the lowest session count.
        least-rtt        Distribute new sessions to the server with lowest Round-Trip-Time.
        first-alive        Distribute sessions to the first server that is alive.
        http-host        Distribute sessions to servers based on host field in HTTP header.

```

```

    set server-type {option}    Protocol to be load balanced by the virtual server (also called the server load bal-
ance virtual IP).
        http    HTTP
        https   HTTPS
        imaps   IMAPS
        pop3s   POP3S
        smtps   SMTPS
        ssl     SSL
        tcp     TCP
        udp     UDP
        ip      IP

    set persistence {none | http-cookie | ssl-session-id}    Configure how to make sure that clients connect to the
same server every time they make a request that is part of the same session.
        none          None.
        http-cookie    HTTP cookie.
        ssl-session-id SSL session ID.
config realservers
    edit {id}
        # Select the real servers that this server load balancing VIP will distribute traffic to.
        set id {integer}    Real server ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set ip {ipv6 address}    IPv6 address of the real server.
        set port {integer}    Port for communicating with the real server. Required if port forwarding is
enabled. range[1-65535]
        set status {active | standby | disable}    Set the status of the real server to active so that it can
accept traffic, or on standby or disabled so no traffic is sent.
            active    Server status active.
            standby   Server status standby.
            disable   Server status disable.
        set weight {integer}    Weight of the real server. If weighted load balancing is enabled, the server with
the highest weight gets more connections. range[1-255]
        set holddown-interval {integer}    Time in seconds that the health check monitor continues to monitor an
unresponsive server that should be active. range[30-65535]
        set healthcheck {disable | enable | vip}    Enable to check the responsiveness of the real server before
forwarding traffic.
        set http-host {string}    HTTP server domain name in HTTP header. size[63]
        set max-connections {integer}    Max number of active connections that can directed to the real server.
When reached, sessions are sent to other real servers. range[0-2147483647]
        set monitor {string}    Name of the health check monitor to use when polling to determine a virtual
server's connectivity status. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ldb-monitor.name
        set client-ip {string}    Only clients in this IP range can connect to this real server.

```



```

    next
    set http-cookie-domain-from-host {disable | enable}    Enable/disable use of HTTP cookie domain from host field
in HTTP.
    set http-cookie-domain {string}    Domain that HTTP cookie persistence should apply to. size[35]
    set http-cookie-path {string}    Limit HTTP cookie persistence to the specified path. size[35]
    set http-cookie-generation {integer}    Generation of HTTP cookie to be accepted. Changing invalidates all exist-
ing cookies. range[0-4294967295]
    set http-cookie-age {integer}    Time in minutes that client web browsers should keep a cookie. Default is 60
seconds. 0 = no time limit. range[0-525600]
    set http-cookie-share {disable | same-ip}    Control sharing of cookies across virtual servers. same-ip means a
cookie from one virtual server can be used by another. Disable stops cookie sharing.
        disable    Only allow HTTP cookie to match this virtual server.
        same-ip    Allow HTTP cookie to match any virtual server with same IP.
    set https-cookie-secure {disable | enable}    Enable/disable verification that inserted HTTPS cookies are secure.
    set http-multiplex {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HTTP multiplexing.
    set http-ip-header {enable | disable}    For HTTP multiplexing, enable to add the original client IP address in
the XForwarded-For HTTP header.
    set http-ip-header-name {string}    For HTTP multiplexing, enter a custom HTTPS header name. The original client
IP address is added to this header. If empty, X-Forwarded-For is used. size[35]
    set outlook-web-access {disable | enable}    Enable to add the Front-End-Https header for Microsoft Outlook Web
Access.
    set weblogic-server {disable | enable}    Enable to add an HTTP header to indicate SSL offloading for a WebLogic
server.
    set websphere-server {disable | enable}    Enable to add an HTTP header to indicate SSL offloading for a
WebSphere server.
    set ssl-mode {half | full}    Apply SSL offloading between the client and the FortiGate (half) or from the client
to the FortiGate and from the FortiGate to the server (full).
        half    Client to FortiGate SSL.
        full    Client to FortiGate and FortiGate to Server SSL.
    set ssl-certificate {string}    The name of the SSL certificate to use for SSL acceleration. size[35] - data-
source(s): vpn.certificate.local.name
    set ssl-dh-bits {option}    Number of bits to use in the Diffie-Hellman exchange for RSA encryption of SSL ses-
sions.
        768    768-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
        1024    1024-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
        1536    1536-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
        2048    2048-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
        3072    3072-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
        4096    4096-bit Diffie-Hellman prime.
    set ssl-algorithm {high | medium | low | custom}    Permitted encryption algorithms for SSL sessions according to

```

```

encryption strength.
    high      Use AES or 3DES.
    medium    Use AES, 3DES, or RC4.
    low       Use AES, 3DES, RC4, or DES.
    custom    Use config ssl-cipher-suites to select the cipher suites that are allowed.
config ssl-cipher-suites
    edit {priority}
    # SSL/TLS cipher suites acceptable from a client, ordered by priority.
    set priority {integer}    SSL/TLS cipher suites priority. range[0-4294967295]
    set cipher {option}      Cipher suite name.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-SHA256      Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-
POLY1305-SHA256.
        TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-SHA256    Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-CHACHA20-
POLY1305-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-SHA256        Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-
SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA                  Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA                  Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256               Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256               Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256               Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384               Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA                  Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA                  Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256               Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256               Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256               Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384               Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA                  Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256             Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-
SHA256.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256             Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-
SHA256.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA                  Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA384             Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-
SHA384.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384             Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-
SHA384.
        TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA              Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-
SHA.

```

SHA256.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256	Cipher suite	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-
SHA384.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA384	Cipher suite	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-
SHA384.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384	Cipher suite	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256	Cipher suite	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384	Cipher suite	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.			
SHA256.	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
SHA.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA.	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite	TLS-DSS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA.	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA256.	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-

```

SHA256.
                                TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384
                                Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-
SHA384.
                                TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256
                                Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.
                                TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384
                                Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-
SHA384.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384.
                                TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256
                                Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.
                                TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384
                                Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-
SHA384.
                                TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256
                                Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC_
SHA256.
                                TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384
                                Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC_
SHA384.
                                TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA.
                                TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
                                TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-MD5
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-MD5.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA.
                                TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA.
                                TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA.
                                set versions {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2}
                                SSL/TLS versions that the cipher suite can be
used with.
                                ssl-3.0  SSL 3.0.
                                tls-1.0  TLS 1.0.
                                tls-1.1  TLS 1.1.
                                tls-1.2  TLS 1.2.
                                next
                                set ssl-server-algorithm {option}  Permitted encryption algorithms for the server side of SSL full mode ses-
sions according to encryption strength.
                                high      Use AES or 3DES.
                                medium    Use AES, 3DES, or RC4.
                                low       Use AES, 3DES, RC4, or DES.
                                custom    Use config ssl-server-cipher-suites to select the cipher suites that are allowed.

```

```

        client Use the same encryption algorithms for client and server sessions.
config ssl-server-cipher-suites
    edit {priority}
    # SSL/TLS cipher suites to offer to a server, ordered by priority.
    set priority {integer} SSL/TLS cipher suites priority. range[0-4294967295]
    set cipher {option} Cipher suite name.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-SHA256 Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-
POLY1305-SHA256.
        TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-SHA256 Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-CHACHA20-
POLY1305-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-SHA256 Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CHACHA20-POLY1305-
SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256 Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256 Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256 Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384 Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256 Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256 Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256 Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256.
        TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384 Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256 Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-
SHA256.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256 Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-
SHA256.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA384 Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-
SHA384.
        TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384 Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-
SHA384.
        TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-
SHA.
        TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256 Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-
SHA256.
        TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256 Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-
SHA256.

```

SHA384.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA384	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-
SHA384.	TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384	Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-CBC-SHA256.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-128-GCM-SHA256.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-CBC-SHA256.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-AES-256-GCM-SHA384.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.		
SHA256.	TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA.		
SHA.	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DSS-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA.		
SHA.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA.		
SHA.	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA256.		
SHA256.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.		
SHA256.	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.		
SHA256.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA256.		
SHA256.	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-CAMELLIA-256-CBC-
SHA256.		
	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA.
	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.		
SHA384.	TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-
	TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256	Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-

```

SHA256.
                                TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384
                                Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-
SHA384.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-SEED-CBC-SHA.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384.
                                TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256
                                Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-
SHA256.
                                TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384
                                Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-
SHA384.
                                TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC-SHA256
                                Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-128-CBC_
SHA256.
                                TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC-SHA384
                                Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-ECDSA-WITH-ARIA-256-CBC_
SHA384.
                                TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA.
                                TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
                                TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-3DES-EDE-CBC-SHA.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-MD5
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-MD5.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-RC4-128-SHA.
                                TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA.
                                TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-DHE-DSS-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA.
                                TLS-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA
                                Cipher suite TLS-RSA-WITH-DES-CBC-SHA.
                                set versions {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2}
                                SSL/TLS versions that the cipher suite can be
used with.
                                ssl-3.0  SSL 3.0.
                                tls-1.0  TLS 1.0.
                                tls-1.1  TLS 1.1.
                                tls-1.2  TLS 1.2.
                                next
                                set ssl-pfs {require | deny | allow} Select the cipher suites that can be used for SSL perfect forward secrecy
(PFS). Applies to both client and server sessions.
                                require Allow only Diffie-Hellman cipher-suites, so PFS is applied.
                                deny Allow only non-Diffie-Hellman cipher-suites, so PFS is not applied.
                                allow Allow use of any cipher suite so PFS may or may not be used depending on the cipher suite selec-
ted.
                                set ssl-min-version {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2} Lowest SSL/TLS version acceptable from a client.
                                ssl-3.0  SSL 3.0.
                                tls-1.0  TLS 1.0.
                                tls-1.1  TLS 1.1.

```

```

        tls-1.2  TLS 1.2.
set ssl-max-version {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2}  Highest SSL/TLS version acceptable from a client.
        ssl-3.0  SSL 3.0.
        tls-1.0  TLS 1.0.
        tls-1.1  TLS 1.1.
        tls-1.2  TLS 1.2.
set ssl-server-min-version {option}  Lowest SSL/TLS version acceptable from a server. Use the client setting by
default.
        ssl-3.0  SSL 3.0.
        tls-1.0  TLS 1.0.
        tls-1.1  TLS 1.1.
        tls-1.2  TLS 1.2.
        client   Use same value as client configuration.
set ssl-server-max-version {option}  Highest SSL/TLS version acceptable from a server. Use the client setting
by default.
        ssl-3.0  SSL 3.0.
        tls-1.0  TLS 1.0.
        tls-1.1  TLS 1.1.
        tls-1.2  TLS 1.2.
        client   Use same value as client configuration.
set ssl-send-empty-frags {enable | disable}  Enable/disable sending empty fragments to avoid CBC IV attacks
(SSL 3.0 & TLS 1.0 only). May need to be disabled for compatibility with older systems.
set ssl-client-fallback {disable | enable}  Enable/disable support for preventing Downgrade Attacks on client
connections (RFC 7507).
set ssl-client-renegotiation {allow | deny | secure}  Allow, deny, or require secure renegotiation of client
sessions to comply with RFC 5746.
        allow   Allow a SSL client to renegotiate.
        deny    Abort any SSL connection that attempts to renegotiate.
        secure  Reject any SSL connection that does not offer a RFC 5746 Secure Renegotiation Indication.
set ssl-client-session-state-type {disable | time | count | both}  How to expire SSL sessions for the segment
of the SSL connection between the client and the FortiGate.
        disable Do not keep session states.
        time    Expire session states after this many minutes.
        count   Expire session states when this maximum is reached.
        both    Expire session states based on time or count, whichever occurs first.
set ssl-client-session-state-timeout {integer}  Number of minutes to keep client to FortiGate SSL session
state. range[1-14400]
set ssl-client-session-state-max {integer}  Maximum number of client to FortiGate SSL session states to keep.
range[1-10000]
set ssl-server-session-state-type {disable | time | count | both}  How to expire SSL sessions for the segment

```



```

of the SSL connection between the server and the FortiGate.
    disable    Do not keep session states.
    time       Expire session states after this many minutes.
    count      Expire session states when this maximum is reached.
    both       Expire session states based on time or count, whichever occurs first.
    set ssl-server-session-state-timeout {integer}    Number of minutes to keep FortiGate to Server SSL session
state. range[1-14400]
    set ssl-server-session-state-max {integer}    Maximum number of FortiGate to Server SSL session states to keep.
range[1-10000]
    set ssl-http-location-conversion {enable | disable}    Enable to replace HTTP with HTTPS in the reply's Location
HTTP header field.
    set ssl-http-match-host {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HTTP host matching for location conversion.
    set ssl-hpkp {disable | enable | report-only}    Enable/disable including HPKP header in response.
    set ssl-hpkp-primary {string}    Certificate to generate primary HPKP pin from. size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.cer-
tificate.local.name,vpn.certificate.ca.name
    set ssl-hpkp-backup {string}    Certificate to generate backup HPKP pin from. size[35] - datasource(s):
vpn.certificate.local.name,vpn.certificate.ca.name
    set ssl-hpkp-age {integer}    Number of minutes the web browser should keep HPKP. range[60-157680000]
    set ssl-hpkp-report-uri {string}    URL to report HPKP violations to. size[255]
    set ssl-hpkp-include-subdomains {disable | enable}    Indicate that HPKP header applies to all subdomains.
    set ssl-hsts {disable | enable}    Enable/disable including HSTS header in response.
    set ssl-hsts-age {integer}    Number of seconds the client should honour the HSTS setting. range[60-157680000]
    set ssl-hsts-include-subdomains {disable | enable}    Indicate that HSTS header applies to all subdomains.
config monitor
    edit {name}
        # Name of the health check monitor to use when polling to determine a virtual server's connectivity status.
        set name {string}    Health monitor name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ldb-monitor.name
    next
    set max-embryonic-connections {integer}    Maximum number of incomplete connections. range[0-100000]
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

uuid

Each VIP has a Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) that is automatically assigned. It is a 128 bit value written in hexadecimal. It can be edited.

comment <comment>

Add a comment about the VIP.

type {dns-translation | load-balance | server-load-balance | static-nat}

Select the type of static or dynamic NAT applied by the virtual IP.

- `dns-translation` dynamic VIP with DNS translation.
- `load-balance` dynamic NAT load balancing with server selection from an IP address range.
- `server-load-balance` dynamic NAT load balancing with server selection from among up to eight real servers, determined by your selected load balancing algorithm and server responsiveness monitors. Includes SSL offloading.
- `static-nat` Static NAT (the default).
- `fqdn` dynamic fully qualified domain name (FQDN) VIP.

ldb-method {first-alive | http-host | least-rtt | least-session | round-robin | static | weighted}

Select the method used by the virtual server to distribute sessions to the real servers. You add real servers to the virtual server using `config real servers`.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance`.

`first-alive` Always directs requests to the first alive real server. In this case “first” refers to the order of the real servers in the virtual server configuration. For example, if you add real servers A, B and C in that order, then traffic always goes to A as long as it is alive. If A goes down then traffic goes to B and if B goes down the traffic goes to C. If A comes back up, traffic goes to A. Real servers are ordered in the virtual server configuration in the order in which you add them, with the most recently added real server last. If you want to change the order you must delete and re-add real servers as required.

`http-host` Load balance HTTP requests by the contents of the HOST header.

`least-rtt` Directs requests to the real server with the least round trip time. The round trip time is determined by a Ping monitor and is defaulted to 0 if no Ping monitors are defined.

`least-session` Directs requests to the real server that has the least number of current connections. This method works best in environments where the real servers or other equipment you are load balancing have similar capabilities.

`round-robin` Directs request to the next real server, and treats all real servers as equals regardless of response time or number of connections. Unresponsive real servers are avoided. A separate real server is required.

`static` (the default) Distributes sessions evenly across all real servers according to the session source IP address. This load balancing method provides some persistence because all sessions from the same source address would always go to the same server. However, the distribution is stateless, so if a real server is added or removed (or goes up or down) the distribution is changed so persistence will be lost. Separate real servers are not required.

(the default) Distributes sessions evenly across all real servers according to the session source IP address. This load balancing method provides some persistence because all sessions from the same source address would always go to the same server. However, the distribution is stateless, so if a real server is added or removed (or goes up or down) the distribution is changed so persistence will be lost. Separate real servers are not required.

`weighted` Real servers with a higher weight value receive a larger percentage of connections at any one time. Server weights can be set in `config realservers set weight`.

dns-mapping-ttl

Enter time-to-live for DNS response. Range 0 to 604 800. Available when type is `dns-translation`. Default is 0 which means use the DNS server's response time.

src-filter <address> [<address>...]

Enter a source address filter. Each address must be either an IP/subnet (x.x.x.x/n) or a range (x.x.x.x-y.y.y). Separate addresses by spaces.

extip <address>[-<address>]

Enter the IP address or address range on the external interface that you want to map to an address or address range on the destination network.

If type is `static-nat` and `mappedip` is an IP address range, the FortiGate unit uses `extip` as the first IP address in the external IP address range, and calculates the last IP address required to create an equal number of external and mapped IP addresses for one-to-one mapping.

To configure a dynamic virtual IP that accepts connections destined for any IP address, set `extip` to 0.0.0.0.

mappedip <address> [<address>...]

Enter the IP address or IP address range on the destination network to which the external IP address is mapped.

If type is `static-nat` and `mappedip` is an IP address range, FortiOS uses `extip` as the first IP address in the external IP address range, and calculates the last IP address required to create an equal number of external and mapped IP addresses for one-to-one mapping.

If type is `load-balance` and `mappedip` is an IP address range, the FortiGate unit uses `extip` as a single IP address to create a one-to-many mapping.

Input each address (separated by spaces) in the format of IP (x.x.x.x), IP subnet (x.x.x.x/y) or IP range (x.x.x.x-y.y.y).

extintf <name>

Enter the name of the interface connected to the source network that receives the packets that will be forwarded to the destination network. The interface name can be any FortiGate network interface, VLAN subinterface, IPSec VPN interface, or modem interface.

arp-reply {disable | enable}

Enable to respond to ARP requests for this virtual IP address. Enabled by default.

server-type {http | https | imaps | ip | pop3s | smtps | ssl | tcp | udp}

If the type is `server-load-balance`, select the protocol to be load balanced by the virtual server (also called the server load balance virtual IP). If you select a general protocol such as `ip`, `tcp`, or `udp` the virtual server load balances all IP, TCP, or UDP sessions. If you select specific protocols such as `http`, `https`, or `ssl` you can apply additional server load balancing features such as persistence and HTTP multiplexing.

- `http` load balance only HTTP sessions with destination port number that matches the `extport` setting. Change `extport` to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 80 for HTTP sessions). You can also configure `httpmultiplex`. You can also set persistence to `http-cookie` and configure `http-cookiedomain`, `http-cookie-path`, `http-cookiegeneration`, `http-cookie-age`, and `httpcookie-share` settings for cookie persistence.
- `https` load balance only HTTPS sessions with destination port number that matches the `extport` setting. Change `extport` to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 443 for HTTPS sessions). You can also configure `httpmultiplex` and set persistence to `httpcookie` and configure the same `http-cookie` options as for `http` virtual servers plus the `httpscookie-secure` option. You can also set persistence to `ssl-session-id`. You can also configure the SSL options such as `ssl-mode` and `ssl-certificate` and so on. `https` is available on FortiGate units that support SSL acceleration.
- `imaps` load balance only IMAPS sessions with destination port number that matches the `extport` setting. Change `extport` to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 993 for IMAPS sessions).
- `ip` load balance all sessions accepted by the firewall policy that contains this server load balance virtual IP. Since all sessions are load balanced you don't have to set the `extport`.
- `pop3s` load balance only POP3S sessions with destination port number that matches the `extport` setting. Change `extport` to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 995 for POP3S sessions).
- `smtps` load balance only SMTPS sessions with destination port number that matches the `extport` setting. Change `extport` to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 465 for SMTPS sessions).
- `ssl` load balance only SSL sessions with destination port number that matches the `extport` setting. Change `extport` to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced. You can also configure the SSL options such as `ssl-mode` and `ssl-certificate` and so on.
- `tcp` load balance only TCP sessions with destination port number that matches the `extport` setting. Change `extport` to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced.

- `udp` load balance only UDP sessions with destination port number that matches the `extport` setting. Change `extport` to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced.

persistence {none | http-cookie | ssl-session-id}

If the `type` is `server-load-balance`, configure persistence for a virtual server to make sure that clients connect to the same server every time they make a request that is part of the same session.

When you configure persistence, the FortiGate load balances a new session to a real server according to the `ldb-method`. If the session has an HTTP cookie or an SSL session ID, the FortiGate unit sends all subsequent sessions with the same HTTP cookie or SSL session ID to the same real server.

Persistence is disabled by default. You can configure persistence if . If the session has an HTTP cookie or an SSL session ID, the FortiGate unit sends all subsequent sessions with the same HTTP cookie or SSL session ID to the same real server.

Persistence is disabled by default. You can configure persistence if `server-type` is set to `http`, `https`, or `ssl`.

- `none` No persistence. Sessions are distributed solely according to the `ldb-method`. Setting `ldbmethod` to `static` (the default) results in behavior equivalent to persistence.
- `http-cookie` all HTTP or HTTPS sessions with the same HTTP session cookie are sent to the same real server. `http-cookie` is available if `server-type` is set to `https` or `ssl`. If you select this option you can also configure `httpcookie-domain`, `http-cookie-path`, `httpcookie-generation`, `http-cookie-age`, and `http-cookie-share` for HTTP and these settings plus `https-cookie-secure` for HTTPS.
- `ssl-session-id` all sessions with the same SSL session ID are sent to the same real server. `sslsession-id` is available if `server-type` is set to `https` or `ssl`.

nat-source-vip {disable | enable}

Enable (the default) to prevent unintended servers from using a virtual IP. The virtual IP will be used as the source IP address for connections from the server through the FortiGate.

Disable to use the actual IP address of the server (or the FortiGate destination interface if using NAT) as the source address of connections from the server that pass through the FortiGate unit.

portforward {disable | enable}

Select to enable port forwarding. You must also specify the port forwarding mappings by configuring `extport` and `mappedport`. Disabled by default.

protocol {sctp | tcp | udp | icmp}

Select the protocol to use when forwarding packets. The default is `tcp`.

extport <port-number>

External port number range that you want to map to a port number range on the destination network.

This option only appears if `portforward` is enabled. If `portforward` is enabled and you want to configure a static NAT virtual IP that maps a range of external port numbers to a range of destination port numbers, set `extport` to the port number range. Then set `mappedport` to the start and end of the destination port range.

When using port number ranges, the external port number range corresponds to a mapped port number range containing an equal number of port numbers, and each port number in the external range is always translated to the same port number in the mapped range.

If `type` is `server-load-balance`, `extport` is available unless `server-type` is `ip`. The value of `extport` changes to 80 if `server-type` is `http` and to 443 if `server-type` is `https`.

config realservers

The following are the options for `config realservers`, and are available only if `type` is `server-load-balance`.

ip <server-ip>

Enter the IP address of a server in this server load balancing cluster.

port

Enter the port used if port forwarding is enabled.

status {active | disable | standby}

Select whether the server is in the pool of servers currently being used for server load balanced traffic, the server is on standby, or is disabled. Default is `active`.

- `active` The FortiGate unit may forward traffic to the server unless its health check monitors determine that the server is unresponsive, at which time the FortiGate unit temporarily uses a server whose `status` is `standby`. The healthcheck monitor will continue to monitor the unresponsive server for the duration of `holddown-interval`. If this server becomes reliably responsive again, it will be restored to active use, and the standby server will revert to standby.
- `disable` The FortiGate unit does not forward traffic to this server, and does not perform health checks. You might use this option to conserve server load balancing resources when you know that a server will be unavailable for a long period, such as when the server is down for repair.

- **standby** If a server whose status is `active` becomes unresponsive, the FortiGate temporarily uses a responsive server whose status is `standby` until the server whose status is `active` again becomes reliably responsive. If multiple responsive `standby` servers are available, the FortiGate selects the standby server with the greatest weight. If a standby server becomes unresponsive, the FortiGate selects another responsive server whose status is `standby`.

holddown-interval <interval>

Enter the amount of time in seconds that the health check monitor continues to monitor the status of a server whose status is `active` after it has been detected to be unresponsive. Default is 300 seconds.

If the server is detected to be continuously responsive during this interval, a server whose status is `standby` is removed from current use and replaced with this server, which is then used by server load balanced traffic. In this way, server load balancing prefers to use active servers, if they are responsive.

If the server is detected to be unresponsive during the first holddown interval, the server remains out of use for server load balanced traffic, the health check monitor will double the holddown interval once, and continue to monitor the server for the duration of the doubled holddown interval. The health check monitor continues to monitor the server for additional iterations of the doubled holddown interval until connectivity to the server becomes reliable, at which time the holddown interval reverts to the configured interval, and the newly responsive active server replaces the standby server in the pool of servers currently in use. In effect, if the status of a server is `active` but the server is habitually unresponsive, the health check monitor is less likely to restore the server to use by server load balanced traffic until the server's connectivity becomes more reliable.

This option applies only to real servers whose status is `active`, but have been detected to be unresponsive or down.

healthcheck {`disable` | `enable`}

Enable to check the responsiveness of the server before forwarding traffic. You must also configure `monitor`. Disabled by default.

max-connections <number>

Enter the limit on the number of active connections directed to a real server. If the maximum number of connections is reached for the real server, the FortiGate unit will automatically switch all further connection requests to another server until the connection number drops below the specified limit.

The default of 0 means unlimited connections.

client-ip <ip_range_ipv4> [<ip_range_ipv4>] [<ip_range_ipv4>] [<ip_range_ipv4>]

Restrict the clients that can connect to a real server according to the client's source IP address. Use the `client-ip` option to enter up to four client source IP addresses or address ranges. Separate each IP address or range with a space. The following example shows how to add a single IP address and an IP address range:

```
set client-ip 192.168.1.90 192.168.1.100-192.168.1.120
```

Use the `client-ip` option if you have multiple real servers in a server load balance VIP and you want to control which clients use which real server according to the client's source IP address. Different real servers in the same virtual server can have the same or overlapping IP addresses and ranges. If an overlap occurs, sessions from the overlapping source addresses are load balanced among the real servers with the overlapping addresses.

If you do not specify a `client-ip` all clients can use the real server.

weight <weight>

Enter the weight value of a specific server. Servers with a greater weight receive a greater proportion of forwarded connections, or, if their `status` is `standby`, are more likely to be selected to temporarily replace servers whose `status` is `active`, but that are unresponsive. Valid weight values are between 1 and 255. Default is 1.

This option is available only if `ldb-method` is `weighted`.

mappedport <port>

Enter the port number range on the destination network to which the external port number range is mapped.

You can also enter a port number range to forward packets to multiple ports on the destination network.

gratuitous-arp-interval <time>

Configure sending of gratuitous ARP packets by a virtual IP. You can set the time interval between sending the packets. The default is 0, which disables this feature.

srcintf-filter <interface> [<interface>...]

Enter names of the interfaces to which the VIP applies. Separate names with spaces.

http-cookie-domain-from-host {enable | disable}

If enabled, when the FortiGate unit adds a SetCookie to the HTTP(S) response, the Domain attribute in the SetCookie is set to the value of the Host: header, if there was one.

If there was no Host: header, the Domain attribute is set to the value of `http-cookie-domain` if it is set and if it is not then the Domain attribute will not be included in the SetCookie.

This option is available when `type` is `server-loadbalance`, `server-type` is `http` or `https` and `persistence` is `http-cookie`. Disabled by default.

http-cookie-domain <domain>

Configure HTTP cookie persistence to restrict the domain that the cookie should apply to. Enter the domain name to restrict the cookie to.

This option is available when `type` is `server-loadbalance`, `server-type` is `http` or `https` and `persistence` is `http` or `https`.

http-cookie-path <path>

Configure HTTP cookie persistence to limit the cookies to a particular path, for example `/new/path`.

This option is available when `type` is `server-loadbalance`, `server-type` is `http` or `https` and `persistence` is `http` or `https`.

http-cookie-generation <generation>

Configure HTTP cookie persistence to invalidate all cookies that have already been generated. The exact value of the generation is not important, only that it is different from any generation that has already been used.

This option is available when `type` is `server-loadbalance`, `server-type` is `http` or `https` and `persistence` is `http` or `https`.

http-cookie-age <age>

Configure HTTP cookie persistence to change how long the browser caches the cookie. Enter an age in minutes or set the age to 0 to make the browser keep the cookie indefinitely. The range is 0 to 525600 minutes. The default age is 60 minutes.

This option is available when `type` is `server-loadbalance`, `server-type` is `http` or `https` and `persistence` is `http` or `https`.

http-cookie-share {disable | same-ip}

Configure HTTP cookie persistence to control the sharing of cookies across more than one virtual server. The default setting `same-ip` means that any cookie generated by one virtual server can be used by another virtual server in the same virtual domain.

Disable to make sure that a cookie generated for a virtual server cannot be used by other virtual servers.

This option is available when `type` is `server-loadbalance`, `server-type` is `http` or `https` and `persistence` is `http` or `https`.

https-cookie-secure {disable | enable}

Configure HTTP cookie persistence to enable or disable using secure cookies for HTTPS sessions. Secure cookies are disabled by default because they can interfere with cookie sharing across HTTP and HTTPS virtual servers. If enabled, then the `Secure` tag is added to the cookie inserted by the FortiGate unit.

This option is available when `type` is `server-loadbalance`, `server-type` is `http` or `https` and `persistence` is `http` or `https`.

http-multiplex {disable | enable}

Enable to use the FortiGate to multiplex multiple client connections into a few connections between the FortiGate and the real server. This can improve performance by reducing server overhead associated with establishing multiple connections. The server must be HTTP/1.1 compliant. Disabled by default.

This option is only available if `server-type` is `http` or `https`.

http-ip-header {disable | enable}

In HTTP multiplexing is enabled, set `http-ip-header` to `enable` to add the original client IP address in the `XForwarded-For` HTTP header. This can be useful in an HTTP multiplexing configuration if you want to be able to see the original client IP address in log messages on the destination web server. If this option is disabled, the HTTP header. This can be useful in an HTTP multiplexing configuration if you want to be able to see the original client IP address in log messages on the destination web server. If this option is disabled, the `XForwarded-For` header will contain the IP address of the FortiGate unit. Disabled by default.

If enabled the `http-ip-header-name` option appears and you can specify a different header to add the client IP address to.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-load-balance`, `server-type` is `http` or `https` and `http-multiplex` is enabled.

http-ip-header-name <name>

In an HTTP multiplex configuration, if you enable `http-ip-header` you can use the `http-ip-header-name` option to add the original client IP address to a custom http header. Use this option to specify the name of the header to add the IP address to.

The destination server extracts the original client IP address from this header to record log messages that include client IP addresses. If you leave this option blank (the default) the original client IP address is added to the `XForwarded-For` header.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-load-balance`, `server-type` is `http` or `https` and `http-multiplex` is enabled and `http-ip-header` is enabled.

outlook-web-access {disable | enable}

If the FortiGate unit provides SSL offloading for Microsoft Outlook Web Access then the Outlook server expects to see a `Front-End-Https: on` header inserted into the HTTP headers as described in this [Microsoft Technical Note](#). If `outlook-web-access` is enabled the FortiGate adds this header to all HTTP requests. Disabled by default.

This options is available when `type` is `server-load-balance` is enabled and `server-type` is `http` or `https`.

weblogic-server {disable | enable}

Enable or disable adding an HTTP header to indicate SSL offloading for a WebLogic server. Disabled by default.

websphere-server {disable | enable}

Enable or disable adding an HTTP header to indicate SSL offloading for a WebSphere server. Disabled by default.

ssl-mode {full | half}

Select whether or not to accelerate SSL communications with the destination by using the FortiGate to perform SSL operations, and indicate which segments of the connection will receive SSL offloading. Accelerating SSL communications in this way is also called SSL offloading.

- `half` (the default) apply SSL acceleration only between the client and the FortiGate. The segment between the FortiGate and the server is clear text. This results in better performance, but cannot be used in failover configurations where the failover path does not have an SSL accelerator.
- `full` apply SSL acceleration to both parts of the connection: the segment between the client and the FortiGate, and the segment between the FortiGate and the server. The segment between the FortiGate and the server is encrypted, but the handshakes are accelerated. This results in performance which is less than if `ssl-mode` is set to `half`, but still improved over no SSL acceleration, and can be used in failover configurations where the failover path does not have an SSL accelerator. If the server is already configured to use SSL, this also enables SSL acceleration without requiring changes to the server's configuration. If this option is set to `full` then several `ssl-server` options appear and you can apply different SSL features (such as encryption levels) to the client connection and to the server connection.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`.

ssl-certificate <name>

The name of the SSL certificate to use for SSL acceleration.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`. If `ssl-mode` is set to `full`, the same certificate is used for client and server communication.

ssl-dh-bits <bits>

Enter the number of bits used in the Diffie-Hellman exchange for RSA encryption of the SSL connection. Larger prime numbers are associated with greater cryptographic strength. Default is 2048. Values include 768, 1024, 1536, 2048, 3072, and 4096.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`. If `ssl-mode` is set to `full`, the `ssl-dh-bits` setting is used for client and server communication.

ssl-algorithm {high | medium | low | custom}

Set the permitted encryption algorithms for SSL sessions according to encryption strength.

- `high` (the default) permit only high encryption algorithms: AES or 3DES.
- `medium` permit high (AES, 3DES) or medium (RC4) algorithms.
- `low` permit high (AES, 3DES), medium (RC4), or low (DES) algorithms.
- `custom` only allow some cipher suites to be used. Use `config ssl-cipher-suites` to select the cipher suites that are allowed.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`. If `ssl-mode` is set to `full` and `ssl-server-algorithm` is set to `client`, the `ssl-algorithm` setting applies to both client and server communication.

If `ssl-server-algorithm` is not set to `client`, the `ssl-algorithm` setting only applies to client communication. You can use the `ssl-server-algorithm` option to select different algorithms for server communication.

config ssl-cipher-suites

Choose one or more SSL cipher suites to use for SSL sessions. Only available if `ssl-algorithm` is set to `custom`. You can also use this command to list the supported SSL cipher suites available to all FortiOS SSL encryption/decryption applications.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`. If `ssl-mode` is set to `full` and `ssl-server-algorithm` is set to `client`, the configured setting applies to both client and server communication.

If `ssl-server-algorithm` is not set to `client`, the `config ssl-cipher-suites` configuration only applies to client communication. You can use `config ssl-cipher-suites` to select different cipher suites for server communication.

cipher <cipher-suite-name>

Set the cipher suite name to use. Use `?` to list the available cipher suite names.

versions {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1}

Select the SSL/TLS versions that are supported.

ssl-server-algorithm {high | medium | low | custom}

Set the permitted encryption algorithms for SSL server sessions according to encryption strength.

- `high` (the default) permit only high encryption algorithms: AES or 3DES.
- `medium` permit high (AES, 3DES) or medium (RC4) algorithms.
- `low` permit high (AES, 3DES), medium (RC4), or low (DES) algorithms.
- `custom` only allow some cipher suites to be used. Use `config ssl-server-cipher-suites` to select the cipher suites that are allowed.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`, and `ssl-mode` is `full`.

config ssl-server-cipher-suites

Choose one or more SSL cipher suites to use for SSL server sessions. Only available if `ssl-server-algorithm` is set to `custom`. You can also use this command to list the supported SSL cipher suites available to all FortiOS SSL encryption/decryption applications.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`, `ssl-mode` is `full`, and `ssl-server-algorithm` is `custom`.

cipher <cipher-suite-name>

Set the cipher suite name to use. Use `?` to list the available cipher suite names.

versions {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1}

Select the SSL/TLS versions that are supported.

ssl-pfs {allow | deny | require}

Select handling of perfect forward secrecy (PFS) by controlling the cipher suites that can be selected. Applies to both client and server sessions.

- `allow` allow use of any cipher suite so PFS may or may not be used depending on the cipher suite selected.
- `deny` allow only non-Diffie-Hellman cipher-suites, so PFS is not applied.
- `require` allow only Diffie-Hellman cipher-suites, so PFS is applied. This is the default setting.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`, and `ssl-algorithm` is not set to `custom`.

ssl-min-version {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2}

The lowest version of SSL/TLS to allow in SSL sessions. Default is `tls-1.0`.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`. If `ssl-mode` is set to `full` and `ssl-server-min-version` is set to `client`, the configured setting applies to both client and server communication. If `ssl-server-min-version` is not set to `client`, this option only applies to client communication.

The default is `tls-1.1`.

ssl-max-version {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2}

The highest version of SSL/TLS to allow in SSL sessions. Default is `tls-1.2`.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`. If `ssl-mode` is set to `full` and `ssl-server-max-version` is set to `client`, the configured setting applies to both client and server communication. If `ssl-server-max-version` is not set to `client`, this option only applies to client communication.

ssl-server-min-version {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2 | client}

The lowest version of SSL/TLS to allow in SSL server sessions. Default is `client` which means the `ssl-min-version` applies to both client and server sessions.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`, and `ssl-mode` is set to `full`.

ssl-server-max-version {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2 | client}

The highest version of SSL/TLS to allow in SSL server sessions. Default is `client` which means the `ssl-max-version` applies to both client and server sessions.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`, and `ssl-mode` is set to `full`.

ssl-send-empty-frags {disable | enable}

Select to precede the record with empty fragments to thwart attacks on CBC IV. You might disable this option if SSL acceleration will be used with an old or buggy SSL implementation which cannot properly handle empty fragments. Enabled by default.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`, and applies only to SSL 3.0 and TLS 1.0.

ssl-client-fallback {disable | enable}

Enable (the default) to prevent Downgrade Attacks on client connections ([RFC 7507](#)).

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`.

ssl-client-renegotiation {allow | deny | secure}

Select the SSL secure renegotiation policy. Secure renegotiation complies with [RFC 5746](#) Secure Negotiation Indication.

The vulnerability [CVE-2009-3555](#) affects all SSL/TLS servers that support re-negotiation. FortiOS when configured for SSL/TLS offloading is operating as a SSL/TLS server. The IETF is working on a TLS protocol change that will fix the problem identified by CVE-2009-3555 while still supporting re-negotiation. Until that protocol change is available, you can use the `ssl-client-renegotiation` option to disable support for SSL/TLS re-negotiation.

- `allow` (the default) allow, but do not require secure renegotiation.
- `deny` do not allow renegotiation.
- `secure` require secure renegotiation.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`.

ssl-client-session-state-type {both | client | disable | time}

The method the FortiGate should use to expire SSL sessions for the segment of the SSL connection between the client and the FortiGate.

- **both** (the default) expire SSL session states when either `ssl-client-session-state-max` or `ssl-client-session-state-timeout` is exceeded, regardless of which occurs first.
- **count** expire SSL session states when `ssl-client-session-state-max` is exceeded.
- **disable** expire all SSL session states.
- **time** expire SSL session states when `ssl-client-session-state-timeout` is exceeded.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`.

ssl-client-session-state-timeout <timeout>

The number of minutes to keep the SSL session states for the segment of the SSL connection between the client and the FortiGate unit. Default is 30 minutes. Range is 1 to 14400.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`.

ssl-client-session-state-max <states>

The maximum number of SSL session states to keep for the segment of the SSL connection between the client and the FortiGate unit. Default is 1000. Range is 0 to 100000.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`.

ssl-server-session-state-type {both | count |disable | time}

The method the FortiGate should use to expire SSL sessions for the segment of the SSL connection between the server and the FortiGate.

- **both** (the default) expire SSL session states when either `ssl-server-session-state-max` or `ssl-server-session-state-timeout` is exceeded, regardless of which occurs first.
- **count** expire SSL session states when `ssl-server-session-state-max` is exceeded.
- **disable** expire all SSL session states.
- **time** expire SSL session states when `ssl-server-session-state-timeout` is exceeded.

This option appears only if `ssl-mode` is `full`.

ssl-server-session-state-timeout <time>

The number of minutes to keep the SSL session states for the segment of the SSL connection between the server and the FortiGate. Default is 30 minutes. Range is 1 to 14400.

This option appears only if `ssl-mode` is `full`.

ssl-server-session-state-max

The maximum number of SSL session states to keep for the segment of the SSL connection between the client and the FortiGate unit. Default is 1000. Range is 0 to 100000.

This option appears only if `ssl-mode` is `full`.

ssl-http-location-conversion {disable | enable}

Select to replace `http` with `https` in the reply's `Location` HTTP header field. For example, the reply, `Location: http://example.com/` would be converted to `Location: https://example.com/`. Disabled by default.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `https`.

ssl-http-match-host {disable | enable}

Enable (the default setting) to apply `Location` conversion to the reply's HTTP header only if the host name portion of `Location` matches the request's `Host` field, or, if the `Host` field does not exist, the host name portion of the request's URI.

If this option is disabled, conversion occurs regardless of whether the host names in the request and the reply match.

For example, if `ssl-http-match-host` is enabled, and a request contains `Host: example.com` and the reply contains `Location: http://example.cc/`, the `Location` field does not match the `Host` field of the original request and the reply's `Location` field remains unchanged. If the reply contains `Location: http://example.com/`, however, then the FortiGate detects the matching host name and converts the reply field to `Location: https://example.com/`.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `https` and `ssl-http-location-conversion` is `enable`.

monitor <name>

The name of the health check monitor for use when polling to determine a virtual server's connectivity status.

max-embryonic-connections <number>

The maximum number of partially established SSL or HTTP connections. This should be greater than the maximum number of connections you want to establish per second. Default is 1000. Range is 0 to 100000.

This option appears only if `type` is `server-loadbalance` and `server-type` is `http`, `ssl`, `https`, `imaps`, `pop3s`, or `smtps`.

portmapping-type {1-to-1 | m-to-n}

The type of port mapping.

- `1-to-1` one-to-one mapping (the default).
- `m-to-n` load balancing (many to many).

This option appears when `type` is not set to `server-load-balance`.

color <integer>

The color of the icon in the GUI. There are 32 defined colors numbered 1 to 32. To see the colors available, you can edit the VIP from the GUI. 1 is the default color which is black. 0 sets the color to the default color.

firewall {vip46 | vip64}

Use these commands to configure:

- Static NAT virtual IPv4 addresses for IPv6 addresses
- Static NAT virtual IPv6 addresses for IPv4 addresses.

```
config firewall vip46
    edit {name}
    # Configure IPv4 to IPv6 virtual IPs.
    set name {string}    VIP46 name. size[63]
    set id {integer}     Custom defined id. range[0-65535]
    set uuid {uuid}      Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
    set comment {string} Comment. size[255]
    set type {static-nat | server-load-balance}    VIP type: static NAT or server load balance.
        static-nat        Static NAT.
        server-load-balance    Server load balance.
    config src-filter
```

```
edit {range}
# Source IP filter (x.x.x.x/x).
    set range {string}    Src-filter range. size[79]
next
set extip {string}    Start-external-IP [-end-external-IP].
set mappedip {string}    Start-mapped-IP [-end mapped-IP].
set arp-reply {disable | enable}    Enable ARP reply.
set portforward {disable | enable}    Enable port forwarding.
set protocol {tcp | udp}    Mapped port protocol.
    tcp    TCP.
    udp    UDP.
set extport {string}    External service port.
set mappedport {string}    Mapped service port.
set color {integer}    Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
set ldb-method {option}    Load balance method.
    static        Distribute sessions based on source IP.
    round-robin    Distribute sessions based round robin order.
    weighted        Distribute sessions based on weight.
    least-session    Distribute sessions to the server with the lowest session count.
    least-rtt        Distribute sessions to the server with the lowest Round-Trip-Time.
    first-alive        Distribute sessions to the first server that is alive.
set server-type {http | tcp | udp | ip}    Server type.
    http    HTTP
    tcp    TCP
    udp    UDP
    ip    IP
config realservers
edit {id}
# Real servers.
    set id {integer}    Real server ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set ip {ipv6 address}    Mapped server IPv6.
    set port {integer}    Mapped server port. range[1-65535]
    set status {active | standby | disable}    Server administrative status.
        active    Server status active.
        standby    Server status standby.
        disable    Server status disable.
    set weight {integer}    weight range[1-255]
    set holddown-interval {integer}    Hold down interval. range[30-65535]
    set healthcheck {disable | enable | vip}    Per server health check.
    set max-connections {integer}    Maximum number of connections allowed to server. range[0-2147483647]
```

```

        set monitor {string}    Health monitors. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ldb-monitor.name
        set client-ip {string}    Restrict server to a client IP in this range.
    next
config monitor
    edit {name}
    # Health monitors.
        set name {string}    Health monitor name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ldb-monitor.name
    next
next
end

config firewall vip64
    edit {name}
    # Configure IPv6 to IPv4 virtual IPs.
        set name {string}    VIP64 name. size[63]
        set id {integer}    Custom defined id. range[0-65535]
        set uuid {uuid}    Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
        set comment {string}    Comment. size[255]
        set type {static-nat | server-load-balance}    VIP type: static NAT or server load balance.
            static-nat        Static NAT.
            server-load-balance    Server load balance.
    config src-filter
        edit {range}
        # Source IP6 filter (x:x:x:x:x:x:x/x).
            set range {string}    Src-filter range. size[79]
        next
        set extip {string}    Start-external-IP [-end-external-IP].
        set mappedip {string}    Start-mapped-IP [-end-mapped-IP].
        set arp-reply {disable | enable}    Enable ARP reply.
        set portforward {disable | enable}    Enable port forwarding.
        set protocol {tcp | udp}    Mapped port protocol.
            tcp    TCP.
            udp    UDP.
        set extport {string}    External service port.
        set mappedport {string}    Mapped service port.
        set color {integer}    Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
        set ldb-method {option}    Load balance method.
            static        Distribute sessions based on source IP.
            round-robin    Distribute sessions based round robin order.
            weighted        Distribute sessions based on weight.
            least-session    Distribute sessions to the server with the lowest session count.

```

```

        least-rtt      Distribute sessions to the server with the lowest Round-Trip-Time.
        first-alive    Distribute sessions to the first server that is alive.
set server-type {http | tcp | udp | ip}  Server type.
    http  HTTP
    tcp   TCP
    udp   UDP
    ip    IP
config realservers
    edit {id}
    # Real servers.
        set id {integer}  Real server ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set ip {ipv4 address any}  Mapped server IP.
        set port {integer}  Mapped server port. range[1-65535]
        set status {active | standby | disable}  Server administrative status.
            active  Server status active.
            standby Server status standby.
            disable Server status disable.
        set weight {integer}  weight range[1-255]
        set holddown-interval {integer}  Hold down interval. range[30-65535]
        set healthcheck {disable | enable | vip}  Per server health check.
        set max-connections {integer}  Maximum number of connections allowed to server. range[0-2147483647]
        set monitor {string}  Health monitors. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ldb-monitor.name
        set client-ip {string}  Restrict server to a client IP in this range.
    next
config monitor
    edit {name}
    # Health monitors.
        set name {string}  Health monitor name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.ldb-monitor.name
    next
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall {vipgrp | vipgrp6}

You can create virtual IP groups to facilitate firewall policy traffic control. For example, on the DMZ interface, if you have two email servers that use Virtual IP mapping, you can put these two VIPs into one VIP group and create one external-to-DMZ policy, instead of two policies, to control the traffic.

Firewall policies using VIP Groups are matched by comparing both the member VIP IP address(es) and port number(s).

Use `vipgrp` for creating groups of IPv4 VIPs.

Use `vipgrp6` for creating groups of IPv6 VIPs.

```
config firewall vipgrp
  edit {name}
    # Configure IPv4 virtual IP groups.
    set name {string}    VIP group name. size[63]
    set uuid {uuid}      Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
    set interface {string} interface size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set color {integer}   Integer value to determine the color of the icon in the GUI (range 1 to 32, default = 0,
which sets the value to 1). range[0-32]
    set comments {string} Comment. size[255]
    config member
      edit {name}
        # Member VIP objects of the group (Separate multiple objects with a space).
        set name {string}    VIP name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.vip.name
      next
    next
  end

config firewall vipgrp6
  edit {name}
    # Configure IPv6 virtual IP groups.
    set name {string}    IPv6 VIP group name. size[63]
    set uuid {uuid}      Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
    set color {integer}   Integer value to determine the color of the icon in the GUI (range 1 to 32, default = 0,
which sets the value to 1). range[0-32]
    set comments {string} Comment. size[255]
    config member
      edit {name}
        # Member VIP objects of the group (Separate multiple objects with a space).
        set name {string}    IPv6 VIP name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.vip6.name
      next
    next
  end
```

```
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall {vipgrp46 | vipgrp64}

Use these commands to create VIP46 and VIP64 virtual IP groups.

```
config firewall vipgrp46
    edit {name}
        # Configure IPv4 to IPv6 virtual IP groups.
        set name {string}    VIP46 group name. size[63]
        set uuid {uuid}      Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
        set color {integer}   Integer value to determine the color of the icon in the GUI (range 1 to 32, default = 0,
which sets the value to 1). range[0-32]
        set comments {string} Comment. size[255]
        config member
            edit {name}
                # Member VIP objects of the group (Separate multiple objects with a space).
                set name {string}    VIP46 name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.vip46.name
            next
        next
    end

config firewall vipgrp64
    edit {name}
        # Configure IPv6 to IPv4 virtual IP groups.
        set name {string}    VIP64 group name. size[63]
        set uuid {uuid}      Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
        set color {integer}   Integer value to determine the color of the icon in the GUI (range 1 to 32, default = 0,
which sets the value to 1). range[0-32]
        set comments {string} Comment. size[255]
        config member
            edit {name}
                # Member VIP objects of the group (Separate multiple objects with a space).
```

```
        set name {string}    VIP64 name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.vip64.name
    next
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

firewall wildcard-fqdn custom

Use this command to configure custom wildcard FQDN addresses.

Wildcard FQDN addresses are stored in two tables: one under `firewall address`, and the second under `firewall wildcard-fqdn custom`. The wildcard FQDN in `firewall address` is used by `proxy-policy`. The wildcard FQDN in `firewall wildcard-fqdn custom` is used by `ssl-exempt` in `ssl-ssh-profile`.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config firewall wildcard-fqdn custom</code>	New <code>config</code> command. Configure custom wildcard FQDN addresses.

```
config firewall wildcard-fqdn custom
edit {name}
# Config global/VDOM Wildcard FQDN address.
set name {string}    Address name. size[63]
set uuid {uuid}      Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
set wildcard-fqdn {string}    Wildcard FQDN. size[255]
set color {integer}   GUI icon color. range[0-32]
set comment {string}  Comment. size[255]
set visibility {enable | disable}  Enable/disable address visibility.
```



```
    next
end
```

firewall wildcard-fqdn group

Note: This command can only be accessed in VDOMs.

Use this command to configure wildcard FQDN address groups for VDOMs. These groups can include both Global and VDOM FQDN addresses.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config firewall wildcard-fqdn group</code>	New config command. Configure wildcard FQDN address groups.

```
config firewall wildcard-fqdn group
    edit {name}
    # Config global Wildcard FQDN address groups.
    set name {string}    Address group name. size[63]
    set uuid {uuid}      Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually reset).
    config member
        edit {name}
        # Address group members.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.wildcard-fqdn.custom.name
        next
    set color {integer}    GUI icon color. range[0-32]
    set comment {string}    Comment. size[255]
    set visibility {enable | disable}    Enable/disable address visibility.
    next
end
```

ftp-proxy

Use this command to configure File Transfer Protocol (FTP) explicit proxy settings.

You can use the FortiGate explicit FTP proxy and interface settings to enable explicit FTP proxying on one or more interfaces. When enabled, the FortiGate unit becomes a FTP proxy server. All FTP sessions received by interfaces with explicit FTP proxy enabled are intercepted by the explicit FTP proxy relayed to their destinations.

To use the explicit FTP proxy, users must add the IP address of a FortiGate interface and the explicit proxy port number to the proxy configuration settings of their FTP clients.

This section includes syntax for the following command:

- `ftp-proxy explicit`

ftp-proxy explicit

Use this command to enable the explicit FTP proxy, and configure the TCP port used by the explicit FTP proxy.

```
config ftp-proxy explicit
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the explicit FTP proxy.
    set incoming-port {string}       Accept incoming FTP requests on one or more ports.
    set incoming-ip {ipv4 address any} Accept incoming FTP requests from this IP address. An interface must have this
IP address.
    set outgoing-ip {ipv4 address any} Outgoing FTP requests will leave from this IP address. An interface must have
this IP address.
    set sec-default-action {accept | deny} Accept or deny explicit FTP proxy sessions when no FTP proxy firewall
policy exists.
        accept Accept requests. All explicit FTP proxy traffic is accepted whether there is an explicit FTP proxy
policy or not
        deny Deny requests unless there is a matching explicit FTP proxy policy.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

status

Enable/disable the explicit FTP proxy for FTP sessions.

incoming-port

Enter the port number that traffic from FTP clients use to connect to the explicit FTP proxy. The range is 0 to 65535. Explicit FTP proxy users must configure their FTP client proxy settings to use this port.

Default value: 21

incoming-ip

Enter the IP address of a FortiGate unit interface that should accept sessions for the explicit FTP proxy. Use this command to restrict the explicit FTP proxy to only accepting sessions from one FortiGate interface.

The destination IP address of explicit FTP proxy sessions should match this IP address.

This field is visible in NAT mode only.

outgoing-ip

Enter the IP address of a FortiGate unit interface that explicit FTP proxy sessions should exit the FortiGate unit from. Use this command to restrict the explicit FTP proxy to only allowing sessions to exit from one FortiGate interface.

This IP address becomes the source address of FTP proxy sessions exiting the FortiGate unit.

This field is visible in NAT mode only.

sec-default-action

Configure the explicit FTP proxy to block (`deny`) or `accept` sessions if firewall policies have not been added for the explicit FTP proxy. To add firewall policies for the explicit FTP proxy add a firewall policy and set the source interface to ftp-proxy.

The default setting denies access to the explicit FTP proxy before adding a firewall policy. If you set this option to accept the explicit FTP proxy server accepts sessions even if you haven't added an ftp-proxy firewall policy.

icap

Use these commands to configure Internet Content Adaptation Protocol (ICAP) profiles and servers.

This feature can be used to offload value-added services to an external server. ICAP services can include Ad insertion, virus scanning, content translation, HTTP header or URL manipulation, language translation and content filtering.

Create ICAP profiles and add them to security policies.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [icap profile](#)
- [icap server](#)

icap profile

Use this command to configure an ICAP profile in order to determine how the ICAP server will process request and response messages.

```
config icap profile
  edit {name}
    # Configure ICAP profiles.
    set replacemsg-group {string} Replacement message group. size[35] - datasource(s): system.replacemsg-group.-
name
  set name {string} ICAP profile name. size[35]
  set request {disable | enable} Enable/disable whether an HTTP request is passed to an ICAP server.
  set response {disable | enable} Enable/disable whether an HTTP response is passed to an ICAP server.
  set streaming-content-bypass {disable | enable} Enable/disable bypassing of ICAP server for streaming content.
  set request-server {string} ICAP server to use for an HTTP request. size[35] - datasource(s): icap.server.name
  set response-server {string} ICAP server to use for an HTTP response. size[35] - datasource(s): icap.serv-
er.name
  set request-failure {error | bypass} Action to take if the ICAP server cannot be contacted when processing an
HTTP request.
    error Error.
    bypass Bypass.
  set response-failure {error | bypass} Action to take if the ICAP server cannot be contacted when processing an
HTTP response.
```

```

        error    Error.
        bypass   Bypass.
    set request-path {string}    Path component of the ICAP URI that identifies the HTTP request processing service.
size[127]
    set response-path {string}    Path component of the ICAP URI that identifies the HTTP response processing service.
size[127]
    set methods {option}    The allowed HTTP methods that will be sent to ICAP server for further processing.
        delete    Forward HTTP request or response with DELETE method to ICAP server for further processing.
        get        Forward HTTP request or response with GET method to ICAP server for further processing.
        head       Forward HTTP request or response with HEAD method to ICAP server for further processing.
        options    Forward HTTP request or response with OPTIONS method to ICAP server for further processing.
        post       Forward HTTP request or response with POST method to ICAP server for further processing.
        put        Forward HTTP request or response with PUT method to ICAP server for further processing.
        trace      Forward HTTP request or response with TRACE method to ICAP server for further processing.
        other      Forward HTTP request or response with All other methods to ICAP server for further processing.

    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

methods {delete | get | head | options | post | put | trace | other}

Allowed HTTP methods that will be sent to an ICAP server for further processing; this is only configurable in the CLI. All methods are enabled by default.

replacemsg-group <name>

Replacement message group to assign to the profile, as configured under [config system replacemsg-group](#).

request {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) whether an HTTP request is passed to an ICAP server.

request-failure {error | bypass}

Note: This entry is only available when `request` is set to `enable`.

Action to take if the ICAP server cannot be contacted when processing an HTTP request. The default is set to `error`.

request-path <path>

Note: This entry is only available when `request` is set to `enable`.

Path component of the ICAP URI that identifies the HTTP request processing service. For instance, if the Windows share name was "Processes", and the directory within the share was "Content-Filter", the path would be "/Processes/Content-Filter/".

request-server <ip>

Note: This entry is only available when `request` is set to `enable`.

ICAP server to use for HTTP requests, as configured under [config icap server](#).

response {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) whether an HTTP request is passed to an ICAP server.

response-failure {error | bypass}

Note: This entry is only available when `response` is set to `enable`.

Action to take if the ICAP server cannot be contacted when processing an HTTP response. The default is set to `error`.

response-path <path>

Note: This entry is only available when `response` is set to `enable`.

Path component of the ICAP URI that identifies the HTTP response processing service. For instance, if the Windows share name was "Processes", and the directory within the share was "Content-Filter", the path would be "/Processes/Content-Filter/".

response-server <ip>

Note: This entry is only available when `response` is set to `enable`.

ICAP server to use for HTTP responses, as configured under [config icap server](#).

streaming-content-bypass {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) streaming media to ignore offloading to an ICAP server.

icap server

Use this command to configure an ICAP server.

If you enable ICAP in a security policy, HTTP traffic intercepted by the policy is transferred to an ICAP server in the ICAP profile added to the policy. Responses from the ICAP server are returned to the FortiGate unit which forwards them to an HTTP client or server.

You can offload HTTP responses or HTTP requests (or both) to the same or different ICAP servers.

If the FortiGate unit supports HTTPS inspection, HTTPS traffic intercepted by a policy that includes an ICAP profile is also offloaded to the ICAP server in the same way as HTTP traffic.

When configuring ICAP on the FortiGate unit, you must configure an ICAP profile (see [config icap profile](#)) that contains the ICAP server information; this profile is then applied to a security policy.

```
config icap server
  edit {name}
    # Configure ICAP servers.
    set name {string}    Server name. size[35]
    set ip-version {4 | 6}  IP version.
        4  IPv4 ICAP address.
        6  IPv6 ICAP address.
    set ip-address {ipv4 address any}  IPv4 address of the ICAP server.
    set ip6-address {ipv6 address}    IPv6 address of the ICAP server.
    set port {integer}    ICAP server port. range[1-65535]
    set max-connections {integer}    Maximum number of concurrent connections to ICAP server. Must not be less than
wad-worker-count. range[1-65535]
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

ip-version {4 | 6}

Specify the IP version of the ICAP server (before entering the `ip-address` or `ip6-address` entry). The default is set to 4.

max-connections <limit>

Maximum number of concurrent connections that can be made to the ICAP server. Set the value between 1-65535. The default is set to 100.

port <port>

Port number to be used for communication between the FortiGate and the ICAP server. Set the value between 1-65535. The default is set to 1344.

ips

Use `ips` commands to configure IPS sensors to define which signatures are used to examine traffic and what actions are taken when matches are discovered. DoS sensors can also be defined to examine traffic for anomalies.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- `ips custom`
- `ips decoder`
- `ips global`
- `ips rule`
- `ips rule-settings`
- `ips sensor`
- `ips settings`

ips custom

Use this command to configure custom IPS sensors which use signatures in order to detect attacks.

The FortiGate's predefined signatures cover common attacks. These signatures can be listed with the `config ips rule ?` command. Details about the default settings of each signature can be displayed with the `get` command.

If an unusual application or platform is being used, add custom signatures based on the security alerts released by the application and platform vendors. Custom signatures can be used to block or allow specific traffic and provide the power and flexibility to customize FortiGate Intrusion Protection for diverse network environments.

You can only edit custom IPS signatures. A single custom signature can be used in multiple sensors with different settings in each.



Custom signatures are an advanced feature. This document assumes the user has previous experience writing intrusion detection signatures.

```
config ips custom
  edit {tag}
    # Configure IPS custom signature.
    set tag {string}    Signature tag. size[63]
    set signature {string}    Custom signature enclosed in single quotes. size[1023]
    set sig-name {string}    Signature name. size[63]
    set rule-id {integer}    Signature ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set severity {string}    Relative severity of the signature, from info to critical. Log messages generated by the
signature include the severity.
    set location {string}    Protect client or server traffic.
    set os {string}    Operating system(s) that the signature protects. Blank for all operating systems.
    set application {string}    Applications to be protected. Blank for all applications.
    set protocol {string}    Protocol(s) that the signature scans. Blank for all protocols.
    set status {disable | enable}    Enable/disable this signature.
    set log {disable | enable}    Enable/disable logging.
    set log-packet {disable | enable}    Enable/disable packet logging.
    set action {pass | block}    Default action (pass or block) for this signature.
        pass    Pass or allow matching traffic.
        block    Block or drop matching traffic.
    set comment {string}    Comment. size[63]
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

action {block | pass}

Block or pass (set by default) this signature.

application [<app1> <app2> ...]

Application(s) that the signature scans. Enter `set application ?` to see all available applications. Separate each entry with a space for multiple protocols. Blank (set by default) for all applications.

location {client | server}

Specify the type of system to be protected.

log {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable logging for IPS.

log-packet {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) packet logging for this signature.

os {all | other | windows | linux | bsd | solaris | macos}

Operating system(s) that the signature protects. Blank (set by default) for all operating systems. Enter `other` to include all unlisted operating systems.

protocol [<pro1> <pro2> ...]

Protocol(s) that the signature scans. Enter `set protocol ?` to see all available protocols. Separate each entry with a space for multiple protocols. Blank (set by default) for all protocols.

severity {all | info | low | medium | high | critical}

Relative importance of signature, from info to critical. Log messages generated by the signature include the severity.

signature <signature>

The custom signature enclosed in single quotes. For more information, see [Custom IPS and Application Control Signature Guide](#).

status {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the status of the signature when it is included in an IPS Sensor.

ips decoder

The Intrusion Protection system looks for certain types of traffic on specific ports. Use this command to change ports if your configuration uses non-standard ports.

Note that only some of the decoder options available will allow you to change their port number (using `port_list`); all other entries are read-only. Enter `config ips decoder ?` to view all available IPS decoders.

You cannot assign specific ports to decoders that are set to `auto` by default. These decoders can detect their traffic on any port. Specifying individual ports is not necessary.

```
config ips decoder
  edit {name}
  # Configure IPS decoder.
    set name {string}  Decoder name. size[63]
    config parameter
      edit {name}
      # IPS group parameters.
        set name {string}  Parameter name. size[31]
        set value {string}  Parameter value. size[199]
      next
    next
end
```

ips global

This command sets IPS global operating parameters.

```
config ips global
  set fail-open {enable | disable}  Enable to allow traffic if the IPS process crashes. Default is disable and IPS
  traffic is blocked when the IPS process crashes.
  set database {regular | extended}  Regular or extended IPS database. Regular protects against the latest common and
  in-the-wild attacks. Extended includes protection from legacy attacks.
    regular  IPS regular database package.
    extended IPS extended database package.
  set traffic-submit {enable | disable}  Enable/disable submitting attack data found by this FortiGate to FortiGuard.
  set anomaly-mode {periodical | continuous}  Global blocking mode for rate-based anomalies.
    periodical  After an anomaly is detected, allow the number of packets per second according to the anomaly
  configuration.
```

```

        continuous Block packets once an anomaly is detected. Overrides individual anomaly settings.
    set session-limit-mode {accurate | heuristic} Method of counting concurrent sessions used by session limit anomalies. Choose between greater accuracy (accurate) or improved performance (heuristics).
        accurate Accurately count concurrent sessions, demands more resources.
        heuristic Use heuristics to estimate the number of concurrent sessions. Acceptable in most cases.
    set intelligent-mode {enable | disable} Enable/disable IPS adaptive scanning (intelligent mode). Intelligent mode optimizes the scanning method for the type of traffic.
    set socket-size {integer} IPS socket buffer size. Max and default value depend on available memory. Can be changed to tune performance.
    set engine-count {integer} Number of IPS engines running. If set to the default value of 0, FortiOS sets the number to optimize performance depending on the number of CPU cores. range[0-255]
    set sync-session-ttl {enable | disable} Enable/disable use of kernel session TTL for IPS sessions.
    set np-accel-mode {none | basic} Acceleration mode for IPS processing by NPx processors.
        none NPx acceleration disabled.
        basic NPx acceleration enabled.
    set ips-reserve-cpu {disable | enable} Enable/disable IPS daemon's use of CPUs other than CPU 0
    set cp-accel-mode {none | basic | advanced} IPS Pattern matching acceleration/offloading to CPx processors.
        none CPx acceleration/offloading disabled.
        basic Offload basic pattern matching to CPx processors.
        advanced Offload more types of pattern matching resulting in higher throughput than basic mode. Requires two CP8s or one CP9.
    set skype-client-public-ipaddr {string} Public IP addresses of your network that receive Skype sessions. Helps identify Skype sessions. Separate IP addresses with commas. size[255]
    set deep-app-insp-timeout {integer} Timeout for Deep application inspection (1 - 2147483647 sec., 0 = use recommended setting). range[0-2147483647]
    set deep-app-insp-db-limit {integer} Limit on number of entries in deep application inspection database (1 - 2147483647, 0 = use recommended setting) range[0-2147483647]
    set exclude-signatures {none | industrial} Excluded signatures.
        none No signatures excluded.
        industrial Exclude industrial signatures.
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

anomaly-mode {continuous | periodical}

Specify blocking mode for rate-based anomaly:

- **continuous:** After an anomaly is detected, allow the configured number of packets per second (set by default).
- **periodical:** Block all packets once an anomaly is detected. Overrides individual anomaly settings.

cp-accel-mode {none | basic | advanced}

Note: This entry is only available on FortiGate models with Content Processors (CPs). In addition, the `advanced` option is only available on FortiGate models with two or more CP8s or one or more CP9s.

CP8 or CP9 acceleration/offloading of pattern matching:

- **none:** CP8 or CP9 acceleration disabled.
- **basic:** offload basic pattern matching to CP8 or CP9 processors.
- **advanced:** (the default) offloads more types of pattern matching resulting in higher throughput than basic mode.

For more information see [Hardware Acceleration](#).

database {regular | extended}

Identify which IPS database to use. The default is set to `regular`, which protects against the latest common and in-the-wild attacks. To include protection from legacy attacks, set to `extended`.

Note that the extended database may affect the performance of the FortiGate unit so depending on the model of the FortiGate unit the extended database package may not be enabled by default.

deep-app-insp-db-limit <limit>

Maximum number of application database entries. Set the value between 1-2147483647. Default is 100000.

deep-app-insp-timeout <seconds>

Period of time in seconds after which inactive application database entries are deleted. Set the value between 1-2147483647. The default is set to 86400 (or one day).

engine-count <limit>

Number of intrusion protection engines to run. Multi-processor FortiGate units can more efficiently process traffic with multiple engines running. When set to 0 (by default), the FortiGate unit determines the optimal number of intrusion protection engines.

exclude-signatures {none | industrial}

Hide industrial signatures, which are used by a specialized customer base. Excluded signatures don't appear on the GUI.

- **none:** No signatures excluded
- **industrial:** Exclude industrial signatures (set by default).

fail-open {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) fail-open. When enabled, if IPS should cease to function, crucial network traffic will not be blocked and firewall will continue to operate while the problem is resolved. When disabled, if the IPS process fails, IPS traffic is blocked.

intelligent-mode {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable IPS adaptive scanning (intelligent mode) so that, for some traffic, the FortiGate can quickly finish scanning and offload the traffic to NPU or kernel. Intelligent mode optimizes the scanning method for the type of traffic.

np-accel-mode {none | basic}

Note: This entry is only available on FortiGate models with Network Processors (NPs).

Acceleration mode for IPS processing by NPx processors:

- **none:** Disables NP acceleration.
- **basic:** Enables NP acceleration.

session-limit-mode {accurate | heuristic}

Select the method that session limit anomalies use to estimate concurrent sessions. Use these options to choose between optimal performance and more accurate information.

- **accurate:** Accurately counts the concurrent sessions. This option requires more resources than the default `heuristics` method.
- **heuristic:** Uses heuristics to estimate concurrent sessions. Results may be less accurate but still acceptable in most cases (set by default).

skype-client-public-ipaddr <ip-addr-list>

Note: Separate IP addresses with commas, not spaces.

Public IP addresses of your network that receive Skype sessions. This helps the FortiGate unit identify Skype sessions properly in the **Sessions** dashboard widget and when attempting to detect/block them.

socket-size <mb>

Intrusion protection buffer size in MB. The default value varies by model, depending on available physical memory. FortiGate 100D models, for example, are set by default to 64.

sync-session-ttl {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) use of kernel session TTL for IPS sessions.

traffic-submit {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) submission of attack characteristics to FortiGuard Service.

ips rule

The IPS sensors use signatures to detect attacks. The FortiGate's predefined signatures cover common attacks. These signatures can be listed with the `config ips rule ?` command. Details about the default settings of each signature can be displayed with the `get` command.

If an unusual application or platform is being used, add custom signatures based on the security alerts released by the application and platform vendors. Custom signatures can be used to block or allow specific traffic and provide the power and flexibility to customize FortiGate Intrusion Protection for diverse network environments.

Note that you can only edit custom IPS signatures (see [config ips custom](#)); `config ips rule` is a read-only command. Enter `config ips rule ?` to show all available rules.

```
config ips rule
  edit {name}
  # Configure IPS rules.
    set name {string}    Rule name. size[63]
    set status {disable | enable}  Enable/disable status.
    set log {disable | enable}    Enable/disable logging.
    set log-packet {disable | enable}  Enable/disable packet logging.
    set action {pass | block}    Action.
      pass    Pass or allow matching traffic.
```

```

        block Block or drop matching traffic.
set group {string} Group. size[63]
set severity {string} Severity.
set location {string} Vulnerable location.
set os {string} Vulnerable operation systems.
set application {string} Vulnerable applications.
set service {string} Vulnerable service.
set rule-id {integer} Rule ID. range[0-4294967295]
set rev {integer} Revision. range[0-4294967295]
set date {integer} Date. range[0-4294967295]
config metadata
    edit {id}
    # Meta data.
        set id {integer} ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set metaid {integer} Meta ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set valueid {integer} Value ID. range[0-4294967295]
    next
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

Example config ips rule

This example shows how to display the current configuration of the MS.Windows.JPEG.DHT.Information.Disclosure signature.

```

config ips rule MS.Windows.JPEG.DHT.Information.Disclosure
(MS.Windows.JPEG.DHT.Information.Disclosure) # get
name           : MS.Windows.JPEG.DHT.Information.Disclosure
status         : enable
log            : disable
log-packet     : disable
action         : block
group          : operating_system
severity       : critical
location       : server, client
os             : Windows

```

```
application      : IE
service          : TCP, HTTP, FTP, SMTP, POP3, IMAP, NNTP
rule-id          : 39723
rev              : 5.583
date             : 1420444800
```

action {block | pass}

Block or pass (set by default) this signature.

application [<app1> <app2> ...]

Application(s) that the signature scans.

location {client | server}

Type of system to be protected.

log {enable | disable}

Enable or disable logging for IPS.

log-packet {enable | disable}

Enable or disable packet logging for this signature.

os {all | other | windows | linux | bsd | solaris | macos}

Operating system(s) that the signature protects.

protocol [<pro1> <pro2> ...]

Protocol(s) that the signature scans.

severity {all | info | low | medium | high | critical}

Relative importance of signature, from info to critical. Log messages generated by the signature include the severity.

signature <signature>

The custom signature enclosed in single quotes. For more information, see [Custom IPS and Application Control Signature Guide](#).

status {enable | disable}

Enable or disable the status of the signature when it is included in an IPS Sensor.

ips rule-settings

Use this command to assign object tags (as configured under [config system object-tagging](#)) to the IPS rule settings.

```
config ips rule-settings
  edit {id}
    # Configure IPS rule setting.
    set id {integer}    Rule ID. range[0-4294967295]
  next
end
```

ips sensor

The IPS sensors use signatures to detect attacks. IPS sensors are made up of filters and override rules. Each filter specifies a number of signature attributes and all signatures matching all the specified attributes are included in the filter.

Command	Description
<pre>set extended log {enable disable}</pre>	<p>When extended UTM log is enabled, more HTTP header information will be logged when a UTM event happens.</p> <p>Note that the following HTTP header fields are included in extended-log: http method, client content type, server content type, user agent, referer, and x-forward-for.</p>

```
config ips sensor
  edit {name}
    # Configure IPS sensor.
    set name {string}    Sensor name. size[35]
```

```

set comment {string}    Comment. size[255]
set replacemsg-group {string}    Replacement message group. size[35] - datasource(s): system.replacemsg-group.-
name
set block-malicious-url {disable | enable}    Enable/disable malicious URL blocking.
set extended-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable extended logging.
config entries
  edit {id}
    # IPS sensor filter.
    set id {integer}    Rule ID in IPS database (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295]
    config rule
      edit {id}
        # Identifies the predefined or custom IPS signatures to add to the sensor.
        set id {integer}    Rule IPS. range[0-4294967295]
      next
      set location {string}    Protect client or server traffic.
      set severity {string}    Relative severity of the signature, from info to critical. Log messages generated by the signature include the severity.
      set protocol {string}    Protocols to be examined. set protocol ? lists available protocols. all includes all protocols. other includes all unlisted protocols.
      set os {string}    Operating systems to be protected. all includes all operating systems. other includes all unlisted operating systems.
      set application {string}    Applications to be protected. set application ? lists available applications. all includes all applications. other includes all unlisted applications.
      set status {disable | enable | default}    Status of the signatures included in filter. default enables the filter and only use filters with default status of enable. Filters with default status of disable will not be used.
      set log {disable | enable}    Enable/disable logging of signatures included in filter.
      set log-packet {disable | enable}    Enable/disable packet logging. Enable to save the packet that triggers the filter. You can download the packets in pcap format for diagnostic use.
      set log-attack-context {disable | enable}    Enable/disable logging of attack context: URL buffer, header buffer, body buffer, packet buffer.
      set action {pass | block | reset | default}    Action taken with traffic in which signatures are detected.
        pass    Pass or allow matching traffic.
        block    Block or drop matching traffic.
        reset    Reset sessions for matching traffic.
        default    Pass or drop matching traffic, depending on the default action of the signature.
      set rate-count {integer}    Count of the rate. range[0-65535]
      set rate-duration {integer}    Duration (sec) of the rate. range[1-65535]
      set rate-mode {periodical | continuous}    Rate limit mode.
        periodical    Allow configured number of packets every rate-duration.

```

```

        continuous Block packets once the rate is reached.
set rate-track {option} Track the packet protocol field.
    none none
    src-ip Source IP.
    dest-ip Destination IP.
    dhcp-client-mac DHCP client.
    dns-domain DNS domain.
config exempt-ip
    edit {id}
        # Traffic from selected source or destination IP addresses is exempt from this signature.
        set id {integer} Exempt IP ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set src-ip {ipv4 classnet} Source IP address and netmask.
        set dst-ip {ipv4 classnet} Destination IP address and netmask.
    next
set quarantine {none | attacker} Quarantine method.
    none Quarantine is disabled.
    attacker Block all traffic sent from attacker's IP address. The attacker's IP address is also
added to the banned user list. The target's address is not affected.
    set quarantine-expiry {string} Duration of quarantine. (Format ###d##h##m, minimum 1m, maximum
364d23h59m, default = 5m). Requires quarantine set to attacker.
    set quarantine-log {disable | enable} Enable/disable quarantine logging.
next
config filter
    edit {name}
        # IPS sensor filter.
        set name {string} Filter name. size[31]
        set location {string} Vulnerability location filter.
        set severity {string} Vulnerability severity filter.
        set protocol {string} Vulnerable protocol filter.
        set os {string} Vulnerable OS filter.
        set application {string} Vulnerable application filter.
        set status {disable | enable | default} Selected rules status.
        set log {disable | enable} Enable/disable logging of selected rules.
        set log-packet {disable | enable} Enable/disable packet logging of selected rules.
        set action {pass | block | reset | default} Action of selected rules.
            pass Pass or allow matching traffic.
            block Block or drop matching traffic.
            reset Reset sessions for matching traffic.
            default Pass or drop matching traffic, depending on the default action of the signature.
        set quarantine {none | attacker} Quarantine IP or interface.

```

```

        none      Quarantine is disabled.
        attacker  Block all traffic sent from attacker's IP address. The attacker's IP address is also
added to the banned user list. The target's address is not affected.
        set quarantine-expiry {integer}    Duration of quarantine in minute. range[1-2147483647]
        set quarantine-log {disable | enable}  Enable/disable logging of selected quarantine.
    next
config override
edit {rule-id}
# IPS override rule.
set rule-id {integer}    Override rule ID. range[0-4294967295]
set status {disable | enable}  Enable/disable status of override rule.
set log {disable | enable}    Enable/disable logging.
set log-packet {disable | enable}  Enable/disable packet logging.
set action {pass | block | reset}  Action of override rule.
    pass  Pass or allow matching traffic.
    block Block or drop matching traffic.
    reset Reset sessions for matching traffic.
set quarantine {none | attacker}  Quarantine IP or interface.
    none      Quarantine is disabled.
    attacker  Block all traffic sent from attacker's IP address. The attacker's IP address is also
added to the banned user list. The target's address is not affected.
    set quarantine-expiry {integer}    Duration of quarantine in minute. range[1-2147483647]
    set quarantine-log {disable | enable}  Enable/disable logging of selected quarantine.
config exempt-ip
edit {id}
# Exempted IP.
set id {integer}    Exempt IP ID. range[0-4294967295]
set src-ip {ipv4 classnet}  Source IP address and netmask.
set dst-ip {ipv4 classnet}  Destination IP address and netmask.
next
next
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

block-malicious-url {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) blocking of malicious URLs.

replacemsg-group <replacemsg_str>

Specify the replacement message group.

config entries**rule <rule1_int> [<rule2_int> <rule3_int> ...]**

Use rule ID to identify the predefined or custom IPS signatures to add to sensor.

location {all | client | server}

Specify the type of system to be protected. Default is `all`.

severity {all | info | low | medium | high | critical}

Relative importance of signature, from info to critical. Default is `all`.

protocol <prot1_str> [<prot2_str> <prot3_str> . . .]

Specify protocols to be examined.

- `?` lists available protocols.
- `all` includes all protocols.
- `other` includes all unlisted protocols

os {all | other | windows | linux | bsd | solaris | macos}

Specify operating systems to be protected. Default is `all`.

- `all` includes all operating systems.
- `other` includes all unlisted operating systems

application <app1_str> [<app2_str> <app3_str>. . .]

Specify applications to be protected.

- `?` lists available applications.
- `all` includes all applications.
- `other` includes all unlisted applications.

tags <tag_str>

Assign a custom tag filter to the IPS sensor. Tag must first be configured by using `config system object-tagging`. To see what tags are available for use, use the command `set tags ?`. Separate multiple values with a space.

status {default | enable | disable}

Specify status of the signatures included in filter. Default is `default`.

- `default` enables the filter and only use filters with default status of `enable`. Filters with default status of `disable` will not be used.

log {default | enable | disable}

Specify the logging status of the signatures included in the filter. Default is `default`.

- `default` enable logging for only the filters with a default logging status of `enable`. Filters with a default logging status of `disable` will not be logged.

log-packet {enable | disable}

Enable/disable packet logging. `enable` saves the packet that triggers the filter. Default is `disable`.

You can download the packets in `pcap` format for diagnostic use.

log-attack-context {default | enable | disable}

Enable/disable logging of attack context: URL buffer, header buffer, body buffer, packet buffer. Default is `disable`.

action {block | default | pass | reject}

Specify what action is taken with traffic in which signatures are detected. Default is `default`.

- `block` will drop the session with offending traffic.
- `pass` allow the traffic.
- `reject` reset the session.
- `default` either pass or drop matching traffic, depending on the default action of each signature.

quarantine {attacker | none}

Specify how the FortiGate will quarantine attackers. Default is `none`.

- `attacker` blocks all traffic sent from attacker's IP address. The attacker's IP address is also added to the banned user list. The target's address is not affected.
- `none` disables the adding of addresses to the quarantine.

config exempt-ip

This subcommand is available after rule has been set.

edit <exempt-ip_id>

Enter the ID number of an `exempt-ip` entry. For a list of the `exempt-ip` entries in the IPS sensor, enter `?` instead of an ID. Enter a new ID to create a new `exempt-ip`.

dst-ip <ip4mask>

Enter destination IP address and netmask to exempt.

src-ip <ip4mask>

Enter source IP address and netmask to exempt.

ips settings

This command configures settings for IPS packet logging.

```
config ips settings
    set packet-log-history {integer}    Number of packets to capture before and including the one in which the IPS
```

```
signature is detected (1 - 255). range[1-255]
  set packet-log-post-attack {integer}    Number of packets to log after the IPS signature is detected (0 - 255). range
[0-255]
  set packet-log-memory {integer}    Maximum memory can be used by packet log (64 - 8192 kB). range[64-8192]
  set ips-packet-quota {integer}    Maximum amount of disk space in MB for logged packets when logging to disk. Range
depends on disk size. range[0-4294967295]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

packet-log-history <packets_int>

Specify number of packets to capture before and including the one in which the IPS signature is detected. Range: 0 - 255. Default is 1. If the value is more than 1, the packet containing the signature is saved in the packet log, as well as those preceding it. For example, if `packet-log-history` is set to 7, the FortiGate unit will save the packet containing the IPS signature match and the six before it.

Setting `packet-log-history` to a value larger than 1 can affect the performance of the FortiGate unit because network traffic must be buffered. The performance penalty depends on the model, the setting, and the traffic load.

packet-log-post-attack <packets_int>

Specify how many packets to log after the IPS signature is detected. Range: 0 - 255. Default is 0. If `packet-log-post-attack` is set to 10, the FortiGate unit will save the ten packets following the one containing the IPS signature match.

packet-log-memory <KB_int>

Specify the maximum amount of memory to use for logging packets to memory. Acceptable range: 64 - 8192 KB. Default is 256.

ips-packet-quota <MB_int>

Specify maximum amount of disk space to use for logged packets when logging to disk. Range: 0 - 4294967295 MB. Default is 0. This command affects only logging to disk.

log

Use the config log commands to set the logging type, the logging severity level, and the logging location for the FortiGate unit.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- log {azure-security-center | azure-security-center2} filter
- log {azure-security-center | azure-security-center2} setting
- log custom-field
- log disk filter
- log disk setting
- log eventfilter
- log fortianalyzer override-filter
- log fortianalyzer override-setting
- log {fortianalyzer | fortianalyzer2 | fortianalyzer3} filter
- log {fortianalyzer | fortianalyzer2 | fortianalyzer3} setting
- log fortianalyzer-cloud override-setting
- log fortiguard filter
- log fortiguard override-filter
- log fortiguard override-setting
- log fortiguard setting
- log gui-display
- log memory filter
- log memory global-setting
- log memory setting
- log null-device filter
- log null-device setting
- log setting
- log syslogd override-filter
- log syslogd override-setting
- log {syslogd | syslogd2 | syslogd3 | syslogd4} filter

- [log {syslogd | syslogd2 | syslogd3 | syslogd4} setting](#)
- [log threat-weight](#)
- [log webtrends filter](#)
- [log webtrends setting](#)

log {azure-security-center | azure-security-center2} filter

Use this command to configure log filter settings to determine which logs will be recorded and sent to the Azure Security Center service.

Filter settings are only available if your FortiGate has been configured to work with Azure Security Center using the `azure-security-center` setting command.



The exact same entries can be found under the `azure-security-center2 filter` command.

```
config log azure-security-center filter
  set severity {option}    Lowest severity level to log.
    emergency             Emergency level.
    alert                 Alert level.
    critical              Critical level.
    error                 Error level.
    warning               Warning level.
    notification          Notification level.
    information            Information level.
    debug                 Debug level.
  set forward-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable forward traffic logging.
  set local-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable local in or out traffic logging.
  set multicast-traffic {enable | disable} Enable/disable multicast traffic logging.
  set sniffer-traffic {enable | disable}   Enable/disable sniffer traffic logging.
  set anomaly {enable | disable}           Enable/disable anomaly logging.
  set voip {enable | disable}              Enable/disable VoIP logging.
  set gtp {enable | disable}               Enable/disable GTP messages logging.
  set dns {enable | disable}               Enable/disable detailed DNS event logging.
  set ssh {enable | disable}               Enable/disable SSH logging.
  set filter {string}                     Log filter for the log device. size[511]
```

```
    set filter-type {include | exclude}    Include/exclude logs that match the filter.
        include    Include logs that match the filter.
        exclude    Exclude logs that match the filter.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

The `filter` option is set by including the logid list and/or its level as filters. Possibilities include:

- `logid(...)`
- `traffic-level(...)`
- `event-level(...)`
- `virus-level(...)`
- `webfilter-level(...)`
- `ips-level(...)`
- `emailfilter-level(...)`
- `anomaly-level(...)`
- `voip-level(...)`
- `dlp-level(...)`
- `app-ctrl-level(...)`
- `waf-level(...)`
- `gtp-level(...)`
- `dns-level(...)`

Example 1

```
config log azure-security-center
  config setting
    set filter "logid(40704,32042)"
```

Example 2

```
config log azure-security-center
  config setting
    set filter "event-level(information)"
```

The available levels are as the following: emergency, alert, critical, error, warning, notice, information, debugdebug



Due to Azure Security Center retiring its firewall solution integration, this feature is no longer supported. See [Retirement of Security Center features \(July 2019\)](#). For a replacement integration, see [Azure Sentinel](#).

log {azure-security-center | azure-security-center2} setting

Use this command to connect and configure logging to the Azure Security Center service.

You must have an active Azure Security Center account to provide the data needed to configure these settings.



The exact same entries can be found under the `azure-security-center2 setting` command.

```
config log azure-security-center setting
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable Azure Security Center logging.
  set appliance-id {string}  Appliance ID. size[128]
  set policy-saskey {string}  Policy saskey. size[128]
  set policy-name {string}  Policy name. size[128]
  set eventhub-name {string}  Event hub name. size[128]
  set servicebus-namespace {string}  Service bus namespace. size[128]
  config custom-field-name
    edit {id}
    # Custom field name for CEF format logging.
    set id {integer}  Entry ID. range[0-255]
    set name {string}  Field name. size[35]
    set custom {string}  Field custom name. size[35]
  next
end
```



Due to Azure Security Center retiring its firewall solution integration, this feature is no longer supported. See [Retirement of Security Center features \(July 2019\)](#). For a replacement integration, see [Azure Sentinel](#).

log custom-field

Use `log custom-field` to create custom fields that will be included with log messages.

Note: 'id' will not appear in log messages, it is only used for database purposes.

```
config log custom-field
  edit {id}
    # Configure custom log fields.
    set id {string}    field ID <string>. size[35]
    set name {string}  Field name (max: 15 characters). size[15]
    set value {string} Field value (max: 15 characters). size[15]
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

edit <id>

A table value for custom fields in log messages. Edit to create new and configure the custom fields using the following entries:

name <name>

The name of the field, which will appear in log messages.

value <value>

The content of the field, which will appear in log messages.

log disk filter

Use this command to configure log filter settings to determine which logs will be recorded by the disk log.

This command is available only on FortiGate units with hard disks.

```
config log disk filter
    set severity {option}    Log to disk every message above and including this severity level.
        emergency           Emergency level.
        alert               Alert level.
        critical            Critical level.
        error              Error level.
        warning            Warning level.
        notification       Notification level.
        information        Information level.
        debug              Debug level.
    set forward-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable forward traffic logging.
    set local-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable local in or out traffic logging.
    set multicast-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable multicast traffic logging.
    set sniffer-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sniffer traffic logging.
    set anomaly {enable | disable}    Enable/disable anomaly logging.
    set voip {enable | disable}    Enable/disable VoIP logging.
    set dlp-archive {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DLP archive logging.
    set gtp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable GTP messages logging.
    set dns {enable | disable}    Enable/disable detailed DNS event logging.
    set ssh {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSH logging.
    set event {enable | disable}    Enable/disable event logging.
    set system {enable | disable}    Enable/disable system activity logging.
    set radius {enable | disable}    Enable/disable RADIUS messages logging.
    set ipsec {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPsec negotiation messages logging.
    set dhcp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DHCP service messages logging.
    set ppp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable L2TP/PPTP/PPPoE logging.
    set admin {enable | disable}    Enable/disable admin login/logout logging.
    set ha {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HA logging.
    set auth {enable | disable}    Enable/disable firewall authentication logging.
    set pattern {enable | disable}    Enable/disable pattern update logging.
    set sslvpn-log-auth {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSL user authentication logging.
    set sslvpn-log-adm {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSL administrator login logging.
    set sslvpn-log-session {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSL session logging.
    set vip-ssl {enable | disable}    Enable/disable VIP SSL logging.
```

```
set ldb-monitor {enable | disable}    Enable/disable VIP real server health monitoring logging.
set wan-opt {enable | disable}        Enable/disable WAN optimization event logging.
set wireless-activity {enable | disable}  Enable/disable wireless activity event logging.
set cpu-memory-usage {enable | disable}  Enable/disable CPU & memory usage logging every 5 minutes.
set filter {string}                   Disk log filter. size[511]
set filter-type {include | exclude}    Include/exclude logs that match the filter.
    include Include logs that match the filter.
    exclude Exclude logs that match the filter.

end
```

log disk setting

Use this command to configure log settings for logging to the local disk.

Disk logging is only available for FortiGate units with an internal hard disk. You can also use this command to configure the FortiGate unit to upload current log files to an FTP server every time the log files are rolled.

```
config log disk setting
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable local disk logging.
    set ips-archive {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IPS packet archiving to the local disk.
    set max-log-file-size {integer}    Maximum log file size before rolling (1 - 100 Mbytes). range[1-100]
    set max-policy-packet-capture-size {integer}  Maximum size of policy sniffer in MB (0 means unlimited). range[0-4294967295]
    set roll-schedule {daily | weekly}  Frequency to check log file for rolling.
        daily Check the log file once a day.
        weekly Check the log file once a week.
    set roll-day {option}             Day of week on which to roll log file.
        sunday    Sunday
        monday    Monday
        tuesday   Tuesday
        wednesday Wednesday
        thursday  Thursday
        friday    Friday
        saturday  Saturday
    set roll-time {string}             Time of day to roll the log file (hh:mm).
    set diskfull {overwrite | nolog}   Action to take when disk is full. The system can overwrite the oldest log messages or stop logging when the disk is full (default = overwrite).
        overwrite Overwrite the oldest logs when the log disk is full.
        nolog      Stop logging when the log disk is full.
```

```

set log-quota {integer}    Disk log quota (MB). range[0-4294967295]
set dlp-archive-quota {integer}    DLP archive quota (MB). range[0-4294967295]
set report-quota {integer}    Report quota (MB). range[0-4294967295]
set maximum-log-age {integer}    Delete log files older than (days). range[0-3650]
set upload {enable | disable}    Enable/disable uploading log files when they are rolled.
set upload-destination {ftp-server}    The type of server to upload log files to. Only FTP is currently supported.
    ftp-server    Upload rolled log files to an FTP server.
set uploadip {ipv4 address}    IP address of the FTP server to upload log files to.
set uploadport {integer}    TCP port to use for communicating with the FTP server (default = 21). range[0-65535]
set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IP address to use for uploading disk log files.
set uploaduser {string}    Username required to log into the FTP server to upload disk log files. size[35]
set uploadpass {password_string}    Password required to log into the FTP server to upload disk log files. size[128]
set uploadaddr {string}    The remote directory on the FTP server to upload log files to. size[63]
set uploadtype {option}    Types of log files to upload. Separate multiple entries with a space.
    traffic        Upload traffic log.
    event          Upload event log.
    virus          Upload anti-virus log.
    webfilter      Upload web filter log.
    IPS            Upload IPS log.
    spamfilter     Upload spam filter log.
    dlp-archive    Upload DLP archive.
    anomaly        Upload anomaly log.
    voip           Upload VoIP log.
    dlp            Upload DLP log.
    app-ctrl       Upload application control log.
    waf            Upload web application firewall log.
    netscan        Upload network vulnerability scanning log.
    gtp            Upload GTP log.
    dns            Upload DNS log.
set uploadsched {disable | enable}    Set the schedule for uploading log files to the FTP server (default = disable =
upload when rolling).
set uploadtime {string}    Time of day at which log files are uploaded if uploadsched is enabled (hh:mm or hh).
set upload-delete-files {enable | disable}    Delete log files after uploading (default = enable).
set upload-ssl-conn {default | high | low | disable}    Enable/disable encrypted FTPS communication to upload log
files.
    default        FTPS with high and medium encryption algorithms.
    high           FTPS with high encryption algorithms.
    low            FTPS with low encryption algorithms.
    disable        Disable FTPS communication.
set full-first-warning-threshold {integer}    Log full first warning threshold as a percent (1 - 98, default = 75).

```

```
range[1-98]
    set full-second-warning-threshold {integer}    Log full second warning threshold as a percent (2 - 99, default = 90).
range[2-99]
    set full-final-warning-threshold {integer}    Log full final warning threshold as a percent (3 - 100, default = 95).
range[3-100]
end
```

log eventfilter

Use `log eventfilter` to select which Event log messages will be recorded.

Note: `event` must be enabled for any of the other options to appear. Disabling it overrides all other enabled log types in this category.

```
config log eventfilter
    set event {enable | disable}    Enable/disable event logging.
    set system {enable | disable}    Enable/disable system event logging.
    set vpn {enable | disable}    Enable/disable VPN event logging.
    set user {enable | disable}    Enable/disable user authentication event logging.
    set router {enable | disable}    Enable/disable router event logging.
    set wireless-activity {enable | disable}    Enable/disable wireless event logging.
    set wan-opt {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WAN optimization event logging.
    set endpoint {enable | disable}    Enable/disable endpoint event logging.
    set ha {enable | disable}    Enable/disable ha event logging.
    set compliance-check {enable | disable}    Enable/disable PCI DSS compliance check logging.
    set security-rating {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Security Rating result logging.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

event {enable | disable}

Enable or disable logging of all Event logs, which track various FortiGate system and function events.

system {enable | disable}

Enable or disable logging of system activity messages, HA activity messages, CPU & memory usage, VIP realserver health monitoring, and AMC interface bypass mode messages.

vpn {enable | disable}

Enable or disable logging of VPN messages, IPSec negotiation messages, SSL user authentication, administration and session messages.

user {enable | disable}

Enable or disable logging of user authentication events.

router {enable | disable}

Enable or disable logging of router activity and state change events.

wireless-activity {enable | disable}

Enable or disable logging of wireless activity and state change events.

wan-opt {enable | disable}

Enable or disable logging of WAN Optimization activity and state change events.

endpoint {enable | disable}

Enable or disable logging of Endpoint Control activity and state change events.

ha {enable | disable}

Enable or disable logging of all HA activity and state change events.

compliance-check {enable | disable}

Enable or disable logging of all Compliance-related system events.

log {fortianalyzer | fortianalyzer-cloud} override-filter

Use this command within a VDOM to override the global configuration created with the `config log {fortianalyzer | fortianalyzer-cloud} filter` command. These settings configure log filtering for FortiAnalyzer logging devices.



The exact same entries can be found under the `fortianalyzer`, and `fortianalyzer-cloud override-filter` commands.

```
config log fortianalyzer override-filter
  set severity {option}   Lowest severity level to log.
    emergency             Emergency level.
    alert                  Alert level.
    critical               Critical level.
    error                  Error level.
    warning                Warning level.
    notification           Notification level.
    information             Information level.
    debug                  Debug level.
  set forward-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable forward traffic logging.
  set local-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable local in or out traffic logging.
  set multicast-traffic {enable | disable} Enable/disable multicast traffic logging.
  set sniffer-traffic {enable | disable}   Enable/disable sniffer traffic logging.
  set anomaly {enable | disable}           Enable/disable anomaly logging.
  set voip {enable | disable}              Enable/disable VoIP logging.
  set dlp-archive {enable | disable}        Enable/disable DLP archive logging.
  set gtp {enable | disable}               Enable/disable GTP messages logging.
  set dns {enable | disable}               Enable/disable detailed DNS event logging.
  set ssh {enable | disable}               Enable/disable SSH logging.
  set filter {string}                     FortiAnalyzer log filter. size[511]
  set filter-type {include | exclude}      Include/exclude logs that match the filter.
    include Include logs that match the filter.
    exclude Exclude logs that match the filter.
end
```

log fortianalyzer override-setting

Use this command within a VDOM to override the global configuration created with the `config log fortianalyzer setting` command. These settings configure logging for FortiAnalyzer logging devices.

```
config log fortianalyzer override-setting
    set faz-type {integer}    Hidden setting index of FortiAnalyzer. range[0-4294967295]
    set override {enable | disable}    Enable/disable overriding FortiAnalyzer settings or use global settings.
    set use-management-vdom {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of management VDOM IP address as source IP for logs
sent to FortiAnalyzer.
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging to FortiAnalyzer.
    set ips-archive {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPS packet archive logging.
    set server {string}    The remote FortiAnalyzer. size[63]
    set hmac-algorithm {sha256 | sha1}    FortiAnalyzer IPsec tunnel HMAC algorithm.
        sha256    Use SHA256 as HMAC algorithm.
        sha1    Step down to SHA1 as the HMAC algorithm.
    set enc-algorithm {high-medium | high | low}    Enable/disable sending FortiAnalyzer log data with SSL encryption.
        high-medium    Encrypt logs using high and medium encryption algorithms.
        high    Encrypt logs using high encryption algorithms.
        low    Encrypt logs using all encryption algorithms.
    set ssl-min-proto-version {option}    Minimum supported protocol version for SSL/TLS connections (default is to fol-
low system global setting).
        default    Follow system global setting.
        SSLv3    SSLv3.
        TLSv1    TLSv1.
        TLSv1-1    TLSv1.1.
        TLSv1-2    TLSv1.2.
    set conn-timeout {integer}    FortiAnalyzer connection time-out in seconds (for status and log buffer). range[1-3600]
    set monitor-keepalive-period {integer}    Time between OFTP keepalives in seconds (for status and log buffer). range
[1-120]
    set monitor-failure-retry-period {integer}    Time between FortiAnalyzer connection retries in seconds (for status
and log buffer). range[1-86400]
    set mgmt-name {string}    Hidden management name of FortiAnalyzer. size[35]
    set certificate {string}    Certificate used to communicate with FortiAnalyzer. size[35] - datasource(s): cer-
tificate.local.name
    set source-ip {string}    Source IPv4 or IPv6 address used to communicate with FortiAnalyzer. size[63]
    set __change_ip {integer}    Hidden attribute. range[0-255]
    set upload-option {store-and-upload | realtime | 1-minute | 5-minute}    Enable/disable logging to hard disk and then
uploading to FortiAnalyzer.
        store-and-upload    Log to hard disk and then upload to FortiAnalyzer.
```

```

        realtime      Log directly to FortiAnalyzer in real time.
        1-minute      Log directly to FortiAnalyzer at most every 1 minute.
        5-minute      Log directly to FortiAnalyzer at most every 5 minutes.
set upload-interval {daily | weekly | monthly}  Frequency to upload log files to FortiAnalyzer.
        daily        Upload log files to FortiAnalyzer once a day.
        weekly       Upload log files to FortiAnalyzer once a week.
        monthly      Upload log files to FortiAnalyzer once a month.
set upload-day {string}  Day of week (month) to upload logs.
set upload-time {string} Time to upload logs (hh:mm).
set reliable {enable | disable}  Enable/disable reliable logging to FortiAnalyzer.
end

```

log {fortianalyzer | fortianalyzer2 | fortianalyzer3 | fortianalyzer-cloud} filter

Use this command to configure log filter settings to determine which logs will be recorded and sent to up to three FortiAnalyzer log management devices.



The exact same entries can be found under the `fortianalyzer`, `fortianalyzer2`, `fortianalyzer3`, and `fortianalyzer-cloud` filter commands.

```

config log fortianalyzer filter
    set severity {option}  Lowest severity level to log.
        emergency      Emergency level.
        alert          Alert level.
        critical        Critical level.
        error           Error level.
        warning         Warning level.
        notification    Notification level.
        information      Information level.
        debug           Debug level.
    set forward-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable forward traffic logging.
    set local-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable local in or out traffic logging.
    set multicast-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable multicast traffic logging.
    set sniffer-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable sniffer traffic logging.
    set anomaly {enable | disable}  Enable/disable anomaly logging.
    set voip {enable | disable}  Enable/disable VoIP logging.
    set dlp-archive {enable | disable}  Enable/disable DLP archive logging.

```



```

set gtp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable GTP messages logging.
set dns {enable | disable}    Enable/disable detailed DNS event logging.
set ssh {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSH logging.
set filter {string}           FortiAnalyzer log filter. size[511]
set filter-type {include | exclude} Include/exclude logs that match the filter.
                                include Include logs that match the filter.
                                exclude Exclude logs that match the filter.
end

```

log {fortianalyzer | fortianalyzer2 | fortianalyzer3 | fortianalyzer-cloud} setting

Use this command to connect and configure logging to up to three FortiAnalyzer log management devices.



The exact same entries can be found under the `fortianalyzer`, `fortianalyzer2`, `fortianalyzer3`, and `fortianalyzer-cloud` settings commands.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<pre>set ssl-min-proto-version {default SSLv3 TLSv1 TLSv1-1 TLSv1-2}</pre>	<p>Set the minimum SSL version that can be used for SSL/TLS-protected FortiAnalyzer sessions.</p> <p>The default value is <code>default</code> which means to follow the global minimum set by the <code>ssl-min-proto-version</code> option of the <code>config system global</code> command.</p>

```

config log fortianalyzer setting
set faz-type {integer}    Hidden setting index of FortiAnalyzer. range[0-4294967295]
set status {enable | disable} Enable/disable logging to FortiAnalyzer.
set ips-archive {enable | disable} Enable/disable IPS packet archive logging.
set server {string}       The remote FortiAnalyzer. size[63]. This command is not available for FortiAnalyzer Cloud.
set hmac-algorithm {sha256 | sha1} FortiAnalyzer IPsec tunnel HMAC algorithm.

```

```

        sha256  Use SHA256 as HMAC algorithm.
        sha1    Step down to SHA1 as the HMAC algorithm.
set enc-algorithm {high-medium | high | low}  Enable/disable sending FortiAnalyzer log data with SSL encryption.
        high-medium  Encrypt logs using high and medium encryption algorithms.
        high         Encrypt logs using high encryption algorithms.
        low          Encrypt logs using all encryption algorithms.
set ssl-min-proto-version {option}  Minimum supported protocol version for SSL/TLS connections (default is to fol-
low system global setting).
        default  Follow system global setting.
        SSLv3   SSLv3.
        TLSv1   TLSv1.
        TLSv1-1 TLSv1.1.
        TLSv1-2 TLSv1.2.
set conn-timeout {integer}  FortiAnalyzer connection time-out in seconds (for status and log buffer). range[1-3600]
set monitor-keepalive-period {integer}  Time between OFTP keepalives in seconds (for status and log buffer). range
[1-120]
set monitor-failure-retry-period {integer}  Time between FortiAnalyzer connection retries in seconds (for status
and log buffer). range[1-86400]
set mgmt-name {string}  Hidden management name of FortiAnalyzer. size[35]
set certificate {string}  Certificate used to communicate with FortiAnalyzer. size[35] - datasource(s): cer-
tificate.local.name
set source-ip {string}  Source IPv4 or IPv6 address used to communicate with FortiAnalyzer. size[63]
set __change_ip {integer}  Hidden attribute. range[0-255]
set upload-option {store-and-upload | realtime | 1-minute | 5-minute}  Enable/disable logging to hard disk and then
uploading to FortiAnalyzer.
        store-and-upload  Log to hard disk and then upload to FortiAnalyzer.
        realtime          Log directly to FortiAnalyzer in real time.
        1-minute          Log directly to FortiAnalyzer at most every 1 minute.
        5-minute          Log directly to FortiAnalyzer at most every 5 minutes.
set upload-interval {daily | weekly | monthly}  Frequency to upload log files to FortiAnalyzer.
        daily  Upload log files to FortiAnalyzer once a day.
        weekly Upload log files to FortiAnalyzer once a week.
        monthly Upload log files to FortiAnalyzer once a month.
set upload-day {string}  Day of week (month) to upload logs.
set upload-time {string}  Time to upload logs (hh:mm).
set reliable {enable | disable}  Enable/disable reliable logging to FortiAnalyzer. This command is not available
for FortiAnalyzer Cloud.
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

ssl-min-proto-version {default | SSLv3 | TLSv1 | TLSv1-1 | TLSv1-2}

Set the minimum SSL version that can be used for SSL/TLS-protected FortiAnalyzer sessions.

The default value is `default` which means to follow the global minimum set by the `ssl-min-proto-version` option of the `config system global` command.

log fortianalyzer-cloud override-setting

Use this command within a VDOM to override the global configuration created with the `config log fortianalyzer-cloud setting` command. These settings configure logging for FortiAnalyzer logging devices.

```
config log fortianalyzer-cloud override-setting
    set faz-type {integer}    Hidden setting index of FortiAnalyzer. range[0-4294967295]
    set override {enable | disable}    Enable/disable overriding FortiAnalyzer settings or use global settings.
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging to FortiAnalyzer.
end
```

log fortiguard filter

Use this command to configure log filter settings to determine which logs will be recorded and sent to the FortiCloud log retention service.

Filter settings are only available if an active FortiCloud subscription is associated with the device.

```
config log fortiguard filter
    set severity {option}    Lowest severity level to log.
        emergency            Emergency level.
        alert                Alert level.
        critical              Critical level.
        error                 Error level.
        warning               Warning level.
        notification          Notification level.
        information           Information level.
```

```
        debug          Debug level.
set forward-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable forward traffic logging.
set local-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable local in or out traffic logging.
set multicast-traffic {enable | disable} Enable/disable multicast traffic logging.
set sniffer-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable sniffer traffic logging.
set anomaly {enable | disable}          Enable/disable anomaly logging.
set voip {enable | disable}             Enable/disable VoIP logging.
set dlp-archive {enable | disable}      Enable/disable DLP archive logging.
set gtp {enable | disable}              Enable/disable GTP messages logging.
set dns {enable | disable}              Enable/disable detailed DNS event logging.
set ssh {enable | disable}              Enable/disable SSH logging.
set filter {string}                    FortiCloud log filter. size[511]
set filter-type {include | exclude}     Include/exclude logs that match the filter.
        include        Include logs that match the filter.
        exclude        Exclude logs that match the filter.
```

end

log fortiguard override-filter

Use this command within a VDOM to override the global configuration created with the config log fortiguard filter command. These settings configure log filtering for the FortiCloud log retention service.

```
config log fortiguard override-filter
    set severity {option}  Lowest severity level to log.
        emergency         Emergency level.
        alert              Alert level.
        critical           Critical level.
        error              Error level.
        warning            Warning level.
        notification       Notification level.
        information        Information level.
        debug              Debug level.
set forward-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable forward traffic logging.
set local-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable local in or out traffic logging.
set multicast-traffic {enable | disable} Enable/disable multicast traffic logging.
set sniffer-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable sniffer traffic logging.
set anomaly {enable | disable}          Enable/disable anomaly logging.
set voip {enable | disable}             Enable/disable VoIP logging.
set dlp-archive {enable | disable}      Enable/disable DLP archive logging.
```

```
set gtp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable GTP messages logging.
set dns {enable | disable}    Enable/disable detailed DNS event logging.
set ssh {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSH logging.
set filter {string}          FortiCloud log filter. size[511]
set filter-type {include | exclude} Include/exclude logs that match the filter.
                             include Include logs that match the filter.
                             exclude Exclude logs that match the filter.
end
```

log fortiguard override-setting

Use this command within a VDOM to override the global configuration created with the config log fortiguard setting command. These settings configure logging for the FortiCloud log retention service.

```
config log fortiguard override-setting
  set override {enable | disable}  Overriding FortiCloud settings for this VDOM or use global settings.
  set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging to FortiCloud.
  set upload-option {store-and-upload | realtime | 1-minute | 5-minute}  Configure how log messages are sent to
  FortiCloud.
      store-and-upload  Log to the hard disk and then upload logs to FortiCloud.
      realtime          Log directly to FortiCloud in real time.
      1-minute          Log directly to FortiCloud at 1-minute intervals.
      5-minute          Log directly to FortiCloud at 5-minute intervals.
  set upload-interval {daily | weekly | monthly}  Frequency of uploading log files to FortiCloud.
      daily            Upload log files to FortiCloud once a day.
      weekly           Upload log files to FortiCloud once a week.
      monthly          Upload log files to FortiCloud once a month.
  set upload-day {string}          Day of week to roll logs.
  set upload-time {string}         Time of day to roll logs (hh:mm).
end
```

log fortiguard setting

Use this command to connect and configure logging to the FortiCloud log retention service.

These settings are only available if an active FortiCloud subscription is associated with the device.

```

config log fortiguard setting
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging to FortiCloud.
    set upload-option {store-and-upload | realtime | 1-minute | 5-minute}    Configure how log messages are sent to
FortiCloud.
        store-and-upload    Log to the hard disk and then upload logs to FortiCloud.
        realtime            Log directly to FortiCloud in real time.
        1-minute            Log directly to FortiCloud at 1-minute intervals.
        5-minute            Log directly to FortiCloud at 5-minute intervals.
    set upload-interval {daily | weekly | monthly}    Frequency of uploading log files to FortiCloud.
        daily    Upload log files to FortiCloud once a day.
        weekly    Upload log files to FortiCloud once a week.
        monthly    Upload log files to FortiCloud once a month.
    set upload-day {string}    Day of week to roll logs.
    set upload-time {string}    Time of day to roll logs (hh:mm).
    set enc-algorithm {high-medium | high | low}    Enable and set the SSL security level for for sending encrypted logs
to FortiCloud.
        high-medium    Encrypt logs using high and medium encryption.
        high            Encrypt logs using high encryption.
        low            Encrypt logs using low encryption.
    set ssl-min-proto-version {option}    Minimum supported protocol version for SSL/TLS connections (default is to fol-
low system global setting).
        default    Follow system global setting.
        SSLv3    SSLv3.
        TLSv1    TLSv1.
        TLSv1-1    TLSv1.1.
        TLSv1-2    TLSv1.2.
    set conn-timeout {integer}    FortiGate Cloud connection timeout, in seconds (1 - 3600).
    set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IP address used to connect FortiCloud.
end

```

log gui-display

Use `log gui-display` to customize which logging content is visible in the GUI.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
set fortiview-local-traffic	Option has been removed.
set location {memory disk fortianalyzer forticloud}	Option has been removed. Log & Report and FortiView no longer use this setting. Instead the best enabled log device is used.

```
config log gui-display
    set resolve-hosts {enable | disable}    Enable/disable resolving IP addresses to hostname in log messages on the GUI
using reverse DNS lookup
    set resolve-apps {enable | disable}    Resolve unknown applications on the GUI using Fortinet's remote application
database.
    set fortiview-unscanned-apps {enable | disable}    Enable/disable showing unscanned traffic in FortiView application
charts.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

resolve-hosts {enable | disable}

If enabled, Log & Report GUI pages will display resolved hostnames using reverse DNS lookup.

resolve-apps {enable | disable}

If enabled, the FortiGate will search the Internet Service Database to resolve unknown applications in traffic logs.

fortiview-unscanned-apps {enable | disable}

Determines whether FortiView will display unscanned applications or not.

log memory filter

Use this command to configure log filter settings to determine which logs will be recorded and sent to the FortiGate system memory.

```
config log memory filter
    set severity {option}    Log every message above and including this severity level.
        emergency    Emergency level.
        alert        Alert level.
        critical      Critical level.
        error         Error level.
        warning       Warning level.
        notification  Notification level.
        information   Information level.
        debug         Debug level.
    set forward-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable forward traffic logging.
    set local-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable local in or out traffic logging.
    set multicast-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable multicast traffic logging.
    set sniffer-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sniffer traffic logging.
    set anomaly {enable | disable}    Enable/disable anomaly logging.
    set voip {enable | disable}    Enable/disable VoIP logging.
    set gtp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable GTP messages logging.
    set dns {enable | disable}    Enable/disable detailed DNS event logging.
    set ssh {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSH logging.
    set event {enable | disable}    Enable/disable event logging.
    set system {enable | disable}    Enable/disable system activity logging.
    set radius {enable | disable}    Enable/disable RADIUS messages logging.
    set ipsec {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPsec negotiation messages logging.
    set dhcp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DHCP service messages logging.
    set ppp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable L2TP/PPTP/PPPoE logging.
    set admin {enable | disable}    Enable/disable admin login/logout logging.
    set ha {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HA logging.
    set auth {enable | disable}    Enable/disable firewall authentication logging.
    set pattern {enable | disable}    Enable/disable pattern update logging.
    set sslvpn-log-auth {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSL user authentication logging.
    set sslvpn-log-adm {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSL administrator login logging.
    set sslvpn-log-session {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSL session logging.
    set vip-ssl {enable | disable}    Enable/disable VIP SSL logging.
    set ldb-monitor {enable | disable}    Enable/disable VIP real server health monitoring logging.
    set wan-opt {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WAN optimization event logging.
    set wireless-activity {enable | disable}    Enable/disable wireless activity event logging.
```



```
set cpu-memory-usage {enable | disable}    Enable/disable CPU & memory usage logging every 5 minutes.
set filter {string}    Memory log filter. size[511]
set filter-type {include | exclude}    Include/exclude logs that match the filter.
    include    Include logs that match the filter.
    exclude    Exclude logs that match the filter.
end
```

log memory global-setting

Use this command to configure log threshold warnings and the maximum memory buffer size, for logging to the FortiGate system memory.

The FortiGate system memory has a limited capacity and only displays the most recent log entries. Traffic logs are not stored in the memory buffer, due to the high volume of traffic information. After all available memory is used, by default, the FortiGate unit begins to overwrite the oldest messages. All memory log entries are deleted when the FortiGate unit restarts.

```
config log memory global-setting
    set max-size {integer}    Maximum amount of memory that can be used for memory logging in bytes. range[0-4294967295]
    set full-first-warning-threshold {integer}    Log full first warning threshold as a percent (1 - 98, default = 75).
range[1-98]
    set full-second-warning-threshold {integer}    Log full second warning threshold as a percent (2 - 99, default = 90).
range[2-99]
    set full-final-warning-threshold {integer}    Log full final warning threshold as a percent (3 - 100, default = 95).
range[3-100]
end
```

log memory setting

Use this command to connect and configure logging to the FortiGate system memory.

The FortiGate system memory has a limited capacity and only displays the most recent log entries. Traffic logs are not stored in the memory buffer, due to the high volume of traffic information. After all available memory is used, by default, the FortiGate unit begins to overwrite the oldest messages. All memory log entries are deleted when the FortiGate unit restarts.

```
config log memory setting
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging to the FortiGate's memory.
    set diskfull {overwrite}    Action to take when memory is full.
```

```
        overwrite Overwrite the oldest logs when the system memory reserved for logging is full.  
end
```

log null-device filter

Use this command to filter which log types will trigger statistics collection when no external or remote logging devices are available. Log data is not saved, but general statistics about traffic volume will be saved.

```
config log null-device filter  
    set severity {option} Lowest severity level to log.  
        emergency Emergency level.  
        alert Alert level.  
        critical Critical level.  
        error Error level.  
        warning Warning level.  
        notification Notification level.  
        information Information level.  
        debug Debug level.  
    set forward-traffic {enable | disable} Enable/disable forward traffic logging.  
    set local-traffic {enable | disable} Enable/disable local in or out traffic logging.  
    set multicast-traffic {enable | disable} Enable/disable multicast traffic logging.  
    set sniffer-traffic {enable | disable} Enable/disable sniffer traffic logging.  
    set anomaly {enable | disable} Enable/disable anomaly logging.  
    set voip {enable | disable} Enable/disable VoIP logging.  
    set gtp {enable | disable} Enable/disable GTP messages logging.  
    set dns {enable | disable} Enable/disable detailed DNS event logging.  
    set ssh {enable | disable} Enable/disable SSH logging.  
    set filter {string} Null-device log filter. size[511]  
    set filter-type {include | exclude} Include/exclude logs that match the filter.  
        include Include logs that match the filter.  
        exclude Exclude logs that match the filter.  
end
```

log null-device setting

Use this command to enable/disable statistics collection when no external or remote logging devices are available. Log data is not saved, but general statistics about traffic volume will be saved.

```
config log null-device setting
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable statistics collection for when no external logging destination, such
as FortiAnalyzer, is present (data is not saved).
end
```

log setting

Use this command to enable/disable general log settings and features.

```
config log setting
    set resolve-ip {enable | disable}    Enable/disable adding resolved domain names to traffic logs if possible.
    set resolve-port {enable | disable}    Enable/disable adding resolved service names to traffic logs.
    set log-user-in-upper {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logs with user-in-upper.
    set fwpolicy-implicit-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable implicit firewall policy logging.
    set fwpolicy6-implicit-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable implicit firewall policy6 logging.
    set log-invalid-packet {enable | disable}    Enable/disable invalid packet traffic logging.
    set local-in-allow {enable | disable}    Enable/disable local-in-allow logging.
    set local-in-deny-unicast {enable | disable}    Enable/disable local-in-deny-unicast logging.
    set local-in-deny-broadcast {enable | disable}    Enable/disable local-in-deny-broadcast logging.
    set local-out {enable | disable}    Enable/disable local-out logging.
    set daemon-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable daemon logging.
    set neighbor-event {enable | disable}    Enable/disable neighbor event logging.
    set brief-traffic-format {enable | disable}    Enable/disable brief format traffic logging.
    set user-anonymize {enable | disable}    Enable/disable anonymizing user names in log messages.
    set fortiview-weekly-data {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiView weekly data.
    set expolicy-implicit-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable explicit proxy firewall implicit policy logging.
    set log-policy-comment {enable | disable}    Enable/disable inserting policy comments into traffic logs.
    set log-policy-name {enable | disable}    Enable/disable inserting policy name into traffic logs.
    config custom-log-fields
        edit {field-id}
            # Custom fields to append to all log messages.
            set field-id {string}    Custom log field. size[35] - datasource(s): log.custom-field.id
        next
    end
```

log syslogd override-filter

Use this command within a VDOM to override the global configuration created with the `config log syslogd filter` command. These settings configure log filtering for remote Syslog logging servers.

```
config log syslogd override-filter
    set severity {option}    Lowest severity level to log.
        emergency    Emergency level.
        alert        Alert level.
        critical      Critical level.
        error         Error level.
        warning       Warning level.
        notification  Notification level.
        information   Information level.
        debug         Debug level.
    set forward-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable forward traffic logging.
    set local-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable local in or out traffic logging.
    set multicast-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable multicast traffic logging.
    set sniffer-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sniffer traffic logging.
    set anomaly {enable | disable}    Enable/disable anomaly logging.
    set voip {enable | disable}    Enable/disable VoIP logging.
    set gtp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable GTP messages logging.
    set dns {enable | disable}    Enable/disable detailed DNS event logging.
    set ssh {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSH logging.
    set filter {string}    Syslog filter. size[511]
    set filter-type {include | exclude}    Include/exclude logs that match the filter.
        include    Include logs that match the filter.
        exclude    Exclude logs that match the filter.
end
```

log syslogd override-setting

Use this command within a VDOM to override the global configuration created with the `config log syslogd setting` command. These settings configure logging for remote Syslog logging servers.

```
config log syslogd override-setting
    set override {enable | disable}    Enable/disable override syslog settings.
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable remote syslog logging.
    set server {string}    Address of remote syslog server. size[63]
```

```
set mode {udp | legacy-reliable | reliable} Remote syslog logging over UDP/Reliable TCP.
    udp Enable syslogging over UDP.
    legacy-reliable Enable legacy reliable syslogging by RFC3195 (Reliable Delivery for Syslog).
    reliable Enable reliable syslogging by RFC6587 (Transmission of Syslog Messages over TCP).
set port {integer} Server listen port. range[0-65535]
set facility {option} Remote syslog facility.
    kernel Kernel messages.
    user Random user-level messages.
    mail Mail system.
    daemon System daemons.
    auth Security/authorization messages.
    syslog Messages generated internally by syslog.
    lpr Line printer subsystem.
    news Network news subsystem.
    uucp Network news subsystem.
    cron Clock daemon.
    authpriv Security/authorization messages (private).
    ftp FTP daemon.
    ntp NTP daemon.
    audit Log audit.
    alert Log alert.
    clock Clock daemon.
    local0 Reserved for local use.
    local1 Reserved for local use.
    local2 Reserved for local use.
    local3 Reserved for local use.
    local4 Reserved for local use.
    local5 Reserved for local use.
    local6 Reserved for local use.
    local7 Reserved for local use.
set source-ip {string} Source IP address of syslog. size[63]
set format {default | csv | cef} Log format.
    default Syslog format.
    csv CSV (Comma Separated Values) format.
    cef CEF (Common Event Format) format.
set enc-algorithm {high-medium | high | low | disable} Enable/disable reliable syslogging with TLS encryption.
    high-medium SSL communication with high and medium encryption algorithms.
    high SSL communication with high encryption algorithms.
    low SSL communication with low encryption algorithms.
    disable Disable SSL communication.
```

```

    set ssl-min-proto-version {option}    Minimum supported protocol version for SSL/TLS connections (default is to fol-
low system global setting).
        default    Follow system global setting.
        SSLv3      SSLv3.
        TLSv1      TLSv1.
        TLSv1-1    TLSv1.1.
        TLSv1-2    TLSv1.2.
    set certificate {string}    Certificate used to communicate with Syslog server. size[35] - datasource(s): cer-
tificate.local.name
    config custom-field-name
        edit {id}
        # Custom field name for CEF format logging.
        set id {integer}    Entry ID. range[0-255]
        set name {string}    Field name. size[35]
        set custom {string}    Field custom name. size[35]
    next
end

```

log {syslogd | syslogd2 | syslogd3 | syslogd4} filter

Use this command to configure log filter settings to determine which logs will be recorded and sent to up to four remote Syslog logging servers.



The exact same entries can be found under the `syslogd`, `syslogd2`, `syslogd3`, and `syslogd4` filter commands.

```

config log syslogd filter
    set severity {option}    Lowest severity level to log.
        emergency    Emergency level.
        alert        Alert level.
        critical      Critical level.
        error         Error level.
        warning       Warning level.
        notification  Notification level.
        information   Information level.
        debug         Debug level.
    set forward-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable forward traffic logging.

```

```

set local-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable local in or out traffic logging.
set multicast-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable multicast traffic logging.
set sniffer-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable sniffer traffic logging.
set anomaly {enable | disable}  Enable/disable anomaly logging.
set voip {enable | disable}  Enable/disable VoIP logging.
set gtp {enable | disable}  Enable/disable GTP messages logging.
set dns {enable | disable}  Enable/disable detailed DNS event logging.
set ssh {enable | disable}  Enable/disable SSH logging.
set filter {string}  Syslog filter. size[511]
set filter-type {include | exclude}  Include/exclude logs that match the filter.
    include  Include logs that match the filter.
    exclude  Exclude logs that match the filter.
end

```

log {syslogd | syslogd2 | syslogd3 | syslogd4} setting

Use this command to connect and configure logging to up to four remote Syslog logging servers.



The exact same entries can be found under the `syslogd`, `syslogd2`, `syslogd3`, and `syslogd4` setting commands.

Command	Description
<code>set mode {udp legacy-reliable reliable}</code>	Determine how UTM events are logged and trasmitted when a UTM event occurs.
<code>set enc-algorithm {high-medium high medium low}</code>	To conform with RFC 5425 (syslog on an encrypted TLS connection over TCP) and general logging security standards for syslog, reliable syslog encryption is now customizable.
<code>set certificate <name></code>	Certificate used to communicate with Syslog server.

```

config log syslogd setting
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable remote syslog logging.

```

```
set server {string}    Address of remote syslog server. size[63]
set mode {udp | legacy-reliable | reliable}  Remote syslog logging over UDP/Reliable TCP.
    udp                Enable syslogging over UDP.
    legacy-reliable    Enable legacy reliable syslogging by RFC3195 (Reliable Delivery for Syslog).
    reliable           Enable reliable syslogging by RFC6587 (Transmission of Syslog Messages over TCP).
set port {integer}    Server listen port. range[0-65535]
set facility {option} Remote syslog facility.
    kernel            Kernel messages.
    user              Random user-level messages.
    mail              Mail system.
    daemon            System daemons.
    auth              Security/authorization messages.
    syslog            Messages generated internally by syslog.
    lpr               Line printer subsystem.
    news              Network news subsystem.
    uucp              Network news subsystem.
    cron              Clock daemon.
    authpriv          Security/authorization messages (private).
    ftp               FTP daemon.
    ntp               NTP daemon.
    audit             Log audit.
    alert             Log alert.
    clock             Clock daemon.
    local0            Reserved for local use.
    local1            Reserved for local use.
    local2            Reserved for local use.
    local3            Reserved for local use.
    local4            Reserved for local use.
    local5            Reserved for local use.
    local6            Reserved for local use.
    local7            Reserved for local use.
set source-ip {string} Source IP address of syslog. size[63]
set format {default | csv | cef}  Log format.
    default           Syslog format.
    csv               CSV (Comma Separated Values) format.
    cef               CEF (Common Event Format) format.
set enc-algorithm {high-medium | high | low | disable}  Enable/disable reliable syslogging with TLS encryption.
    high-medium       SSL communication with high and medium encryption algorithms.
    high              SSL communication with high encryption algorithms.
    low               SSL communication with low encryption algorithms.
```



```

        disable      Disable SSL communication.
    set ssl-min-proto-version {option}    Minimum supported protocol version for SSL/TLS connections (default is to fol-
low system global setting).
        default      Follow system global setting.
        SSLv3        SSLv3.
        TLSv1        TLSv1.
        TLSv1-1      TLSv1.1.
        TLSv1-2      TLSv1.2.
    set certificate {string}    Certificate used to communicate with Syslog server. size[35] - datasource(s): cer-
tificate.local.name
    config custom-field-name
        edit {id}
        # Custom field name for CEF format logging.
        set id {integer}    Entry ID. range[0-255]
        set name {string}    Field name. size[35]
        set custom {string}    Field custom name. size[35]
    next
end

```

log threat-weight

Use `log threat-weight` to enable and customize the threat-weight feature, which assigns logs a threat score based on configurable factors.

Note: `status` must be enabled for the rest of the options to be available.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<pre> set malware-detected {disable low medium high critical} set botnet-connection-detected {disable low medium high critical} </pre>	<p>Removed <code>malware-detected</code> and <code>botnet-connection-detected</code> options from <code>log threat-weight</code> settings.</p>

Command	Description
<pre>config malware set virus-infected {disable low medium high critical} set virus-blocked {disable low medium high critical} set command-blocked {disable low medium high critical} set oversized {disable low medium high critical} set virus-scan-error {disable low medium high critical} set switch-proto {disable low medium high critical} set mimefragmented {disable low medium high critical} set virus-file-type-executable {disable low medium high critical} set virus-outbreak-prevention {disable low medium high critical} set botnet-connection {disable low medium high critical}</pre>	<p>Configuration method added for setting antivirus malware threat weight settings. The default values for each setting are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • virus-infected: critical • virus-blocked: low • command-blocked: disable • oversized: disable • virus-scan-error: high • switch-proto: disable • mimefragmented: disable • virus-filetype-executable: medium • virus-outbreak-prevention: high • botnet-connection: critical

```
config log threat-weight
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the threat weight feature.
  config level
    set low {integer}    Low level score value (1 - 100). range[1-100]
    set medium {integer}  Medium level score value (1 - 100). range[1-100]
    set high {integer}    High level score value (1 - 100). range[1-100]
    set critical {integer} Critical level score value (1 - 100). range[1-100]
  set blocked-connection {option} Threat weight score for blocked connections.
    disable  Disable threat weight scoring for blocked connections.
    low      Use the low level score for blocked connections.
    medium   Use the medium level score for blocked connections.
    high     Use the high level score for blocked connections.
    critical Use the critical level score for blocked connections.
  set failed-connection {option} Threat weight score for failed connections.
    disable  Disable threat weight scoring for failed connections.
    low      Use the low level score for failed connections.
    medium   Use the medium level score for failed connections.
    high     Use the high level score for failed connections.
    critical Use the critical level score for failed connections.
  set url-block-detected {option} Threat weight score for URL blocking.
    disable  Disable threat weight scoring for URL blocking.
    low      Use the low level score for URL blocking.
```

```
    medium    Use the medium level score for URL blocking.
    high      Use the high level score for URL blocking.
    critical  Use the critical level score for URL blocking.
config malware
  set virus-infected {option}  Threat weight score for virus (infected) detected.
    disable  Disable threat weight scoring for virus (infected) detected.
    low      Use the low level score for virus (infected) detected.
    medium   Use the medium level score for virus (infected) detected.
    high     Use the high level score for virus (infected) detected.
    critical  Use the critical level score for virus (infected) detected.
  set virus-blocked {option}  Threat weight score for virus (blocked) detected.
    disable  Disable threat weight scoring for virus (blocked) detected.
    low      Use the low level score for virus (blocked) detected.
    medium   Use the medium level score for virus (blocked) detected.
    high     Use the high level score for virus (blocked) detected.
    critical  Use the critical level score for virus (blocked) detected.
  set command-blocked {option} Threat weight score for blocked command detected.
    disable  Disable threat weight scoring for blocked command detected.
    low      Use the low level score for blocked command detected.
    medium   Use the medium level score for blocked command detected.
    high     Use the high level score for blocked command detected.
    critical  Use the critical level score for blocked command detected.
  set oversized {option}  Threat weight score for oversized file detected.
    disable  Disable threat weight scoring for oversized file detected.
    low      Use the low level score for oversized file detected.
    medium   Use the medium level score for oversized file detected.
    high     Use the high level score for oversized file detected.
    critical  Use the critical level score for oversized file detected.
  set virus-scan-error {option} Threat weight score for virus (scan error) detected.
    disable  Disable threat weight scoring for virus (scan error) detected.
    low      Use the low level score for virus (scan error) detected.
    medium   Use the medium level score for virus (scan error) detected.
    high     Use the high level score for virus (scan error) detected.
    critical  Use the critical level score for virus (scan error) detected.
  set switch-proto {option} Threat weight score for switch proto detected.
    disable  Disable threat weight scoring for switch proto detected.
    low      Use the low level score for switch proto detected.
    medium   Use the medium level score for switch proto detected.
    high     Use the high level score for switch proto detected.
    critical  Use the critical level score for switch proto detected.
```

```
set mimefragmented {option} Threat weight score for mimefragmented detected.
    disable Disable threat weight scoring for mimefragmented detected.
    low Use the low level score for mimefragmented detected.
    medium Use the medium level score for mimefragmented detected.
    high Use the high level score for mimefragmented detected.
    critical Use the critical level score for mimefragmented detected.
set virus-file-type-executable {option} Threat weight score for virus (filetype executable) detected.
    disable Disable threat weight scoring for virus (filetype executable) detected.
    low Use the low level score for virus (filetype executable) detected.
    medium Use the medium level score for virus (filetype executable) detected.
    high Use the high level score for virus (filetype executable) detected.
    critical Use the critical level score for virus (filetype executable) detected.
set virus-outbreak-prevention {option} Threat weight score for virus (outbreak prevention) event.
    disable Disable threat weight scoring for virus (outbreak prevention) event.
    low Use the low level score for virus (outbreak prevention) event.
    medium Use the medium level score for virus (outbreak prevention) event.
    high Use the high level score for virus (outbreak prevention) event.
    critical Use the critical level score for virus (outbreak prevention) event.
set botnet-connection {option} Threat weight score for detected botnet connections.
    disable Disable threat weight scoring for detected botnet connections.
    low Use the low level score for detected botnet connections.
    medium Use the medium level score for detected botnet connections.
    high Use the high level score for detected botnet connections.
    critical Use the critical level score for detected botnet connections.
set content-disarm {option} Threat weight score for virus (content disarm) detected.
    disable Disable threat weight scoring for virus (content disarm) detected.
    low Use the low level score for virus (content disarm) detected.
    medium Use the medium level score for virus (content disarm) detected.
    high Use the high level score for virus (content disarm) detected.
    critical Use the critical level score for virus (content disarm) detected.
config ips
    set info-severity {option} Threat weight score for IPS info severity events.
        disable Disable threat weight scoring for IPS info severity events.
        low Use the low level score for IPS info severity events.
        medium Use the medium level score for IPS info severity events.
        high Use the high level score for IPS info severity events.
        critical Use the critical level score for IPS info severity events.
    set low-severity {option} Threat weight score for IPS low severity events.
        disable Disable threat weight scoring for IPS low severity events.
        low Use the low level score for IPS low severity events.
```

```

        medium    Use the medium level score for IPS low severity events.
        high      Use the high level score for IPS low severity events.
        critical  Use the critical level score for IPS low severity events.
set medium-severity {option} Threat weight score for IPS medium severity events.
        disable  Disable threat weight scoring for IPS medium severity events.
        low      Use the low level score for IPS medium severity events.
        medium   Use the medium level score for IPS medium severity events.
        high     Use the high level score for IPS medium severity events.
        critical  Use the critical level score for IPS medium severity events.
set high-severity {option} Threat weight score for IPS high severity events.
        disable  Disable threat weight scoring for IPS high severity events.
        low      Use the low level score for IPS high severity events.
        medium   Use the medium level score for IPS high severity events.
        high     Use the high level score for IPS high severity events.
        critical  Use the critical level score for IPS high severity events.
set critical-severity {option} Threat weight score for IPS critical severity events.
        disable  Disable threat weight scoring for IPS critical severity events.
        low      Use the low level score for IPS critical severity events.
        medium   Use the medium level score for IPS critical severity events.
        high     Use the high level score for IPS critical severity events.
        critical  Use the critical level score for IPS critical severity events.

config web
edit {id}
# Web filtering threat weight settings.
set id {integer} Entry ID. range[0-255]
set category {integer} Threat weight score for web category filtering matches. range[0-255]
set level {option} Threat weight score for web category filtering matches.
        disable  Disable threat weight scoring for web category filtering matches.
        low      Use the low level score for web category filtering matches.
        medium   Use the medium level score for web category filtering matches.
        high     Use the high level score for web category filtering matches.
        critical  Use the critical level score for web category filtering matches.

next
config geolocation
edit {id}
# Geolocation-based threat weight settings.
set id {integer} Entry ID. range[0-255]
set country {string} Country code. size[2]
set level {option} Threat weight score for Geolocation-based events.
        disable  Disable threat weight scoring for Geolocation-based events.

```

```

        low      Use the low level score for Geolocation-based events.
        medium   Use the medium level score for Geolocation-based events.
        high     Use the high level score for Geolocation-based events.
        critical  Use the critical level score for Geolocation-based events.
    next
config application
edit {id}
# Application-control threat weight settings.
set id {integer}    Entry ID. range[0-255]
set category {integer}  Application category. range[0-65535]
set level {option}    Threat weight score for Application events.
        disable   Disable threat weight scoring for Application events.
        low      Use the low level score for Application events.
        medium   Use the medium level score for Application events.
        high     Use the high level score for Application events.
        critical  Use the critical level score for Application events.
next
end

```

status {enable | disable}

Enable threat-weight calculation in logs.

config level

Use the below subcommands to set the scores for the four levels of threats.

- edit low <value>
- edit medium <value>
- edit high <value>
- edit critical <value>

blocked-connection {disable | low | medium | high | critical}

Set the threat-weight score for blocked-connection errors. `disable` assigns no score.

failed-connection {disable | low | medium | high | critical}

Set the threat-weight score for failed-connection errors. `disable` assigns no score.

url-block-detected {disable | low | medium | high | critical}

Set the threat-weight score for URL blocking events. `disable` assigns no score.

config ips

Use the following subcommands to set the threat score assigned to IPS events at different severity levels:

- `set info-severity {disable | low | medium | high | critical}`
- `set low-severity {disable | low | medium | high | critical}`
- `set medium-severity {disable | low | medium | high | critical}`
- `set high-severity {disable | low | medium | high | critical}`
- `set critical-severity {disable | low | medium | high | critical}`

config web

Specific FortiGuard Web Filtering Categories that might appear in logs can be assigned a threat score, using the below commands:

edit <id>

A table value for custom threat score assignments for Categories. Edit to create new and configure the custom assignments using the following commands:

category <value>

The Category that will have a threat score assigned to it. You can view a list of Categories by entering `set category ?`.

level {disable | low | medium | high | critical}

The threat score assigned to the Web Filtering Category.

config geolocation

Specific geographic locations that might appear in logs can be assigned a threat score, using the below commands:

edit <id>

A table value for custom threat score assignments for countries. Edit to create new and configure the custom assignments using the following commands:

country <country code>

The country that will have a threat score assigned to it. You can view a list of country codes by entering `set country ?`.

level {disable | low | medium | high | critical}

The threat score assigned to the country.

config application

Specific FortiGuard Application categories that might appear in logs can be assigned a threat score, using the below commands:

edit <id>

A table value for custom threat score assignments for categories. Edit to create new and configure the custom assignments using the following commands:

category <value>

The application category that will have a threat score assigned to it. You can view a list of categories by entering `set category ?`.

level {disable | low | medium | high | critical}

The threat score assigned to the Application category.

log webtrends filter

Use this command to configure log filter settings to determine which logs will be recorded and sent to a connected NetIQ WebTrends firewall reporting server.

```
config log webtrends filter
  set severity {option}  Lowest severity level to log to WebTrends.
    emergency           Emergency level.
    alert               Alert level.
    critical            Critical level.
    error              Error level.
    warning            Warning level.
    notification        Notification level.
    information         Information level.
```



```
        debug          Debug level.
set forward-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable forward traffic logging.
set local-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable local in or out traffic logging.
set multicast-traffic {enable | disable} Enable/disable multicast traffic logging.
set sniffer-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable sniffer traffic logging.
set anomaly {enable | disable}          Enable/disable anomaly logging.
set voip {enable | disable}             Enable/disable VoIP logging.
set gtp {enable | disable}              Enable/disable GTP messages logging.
set dns {enable | disable}              Enable/disable detailed DNS event logging.
set ssh {enable | disable}              Enable/disable SSH logging.
set filter {string}                    Webtrends log filter. size[511]
set filter-type {include | exclude}    Include/exclude logs that match the filter.
        include        Include logs that match the filter.
        exclude        Exclude logs that match the filter.

end
```

log webtrends setting

Use this command to connect and configure logging to a NetIQ WebTrends firewall reporting server.

FortiGate log formats comply with WebTrends Enhanced Log Format (WELF) and are compatible with NetIQ WebTrends Security Reporting Center and Firewall Suite 4.1 and later.

```
config log webtrends setting
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging to WebTrends.
    set server {string}            Address of the remote WebTrends server. size[63]
end
```

monitoring

Use the following command to configure system monitoring features.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [np6-ipsec-engine](#)

np6-ipsec-engine

Use this command to configure NP6 IPsec engine status monitoring. NP6 IPsec engine status monitoring writes a system event log message if the IPsec engines in an NP6 processor become locked after receiving malformed packets.

If an IPsec engine becomes locked, that particular engine can no longer process IPsec traffic, reducing the capacity of the NP6 processor. The only way to recover from a locked IPsec engine is to restart the FortiGate device. If you notice an IPsec performance reduction over time on your NP6 accelerated FortiGate device, you could enable NP6 IPsec engine monitoring and check log messages to determine if your NP6 IPsec engines are becoming locked.

History

This command is new as of FortiOS 6.0.3.

```
config monitoring np6-ipsec-engine
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable NP6 IPsec engine status monitoring.
    set interval {integer}    IPsec engine status check interval (1 - 60 seconds, default = 1). range[1-60]
    set threshold {string}    IPsec engine status check threshold (x x x x x x x x, 8 integers from <1> to <255>, default
= 15 15 12 12 8 8 5 5). Example: Log is generated if IPsec engine 0 is busy each of every 15 consecutive interval
checks.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

status {disable | enable}

Enable or disable (default = disable) NP6 IPsec engine status monitoring.

interval

Set the IPsec engine status check time interval in seconds (range 1 to 60 seconds, default = 1).

threshold <engine-1-threshold> <engine-2-threshold>...<engine-8-threshold>

Set engine status check thresholds. An NP6 processor has eight IPsec engines and you can set a threshold for each engine. NP6 IPsec engine status monitoring regularly checks the status of all eight engines in all NP6 processors in the FortiGate device.

Each threshold can be an integer between 1 and 255 and represents the number of times the NP6 IPsec engine status check detects that the NP6 processor is busy before generating a log message.

The default thresholds are 15 15 12 12 8 8 5 5. Any IPsec engine exceeding its threshold triggers the event log message. The default interval and thresholds have been set to work for most network topologies based on a balance of timely reporting a lock-up and accuracy and on how NP6 processors distribute sessions to their IPsec engines. The default settings mean:

- If engine 1 or 2 are busy for 15 checks (15 seconds) trigger an event log message.
- If engine 3 or 4 are busy for 12 checks (15 seconds) trigger an event log message.
- And so on.

NP6 IPsec engine monitoring writes three levels of log messages:

- Information if an IPsec engine is found to be busy.
- Warning if an IPsec engine exceeds a threshold.
- Critical if a lockup is detected, meaning an IPsec engine continues to exceed its threshold.

The log messages include the NP6 processor and engine affected.

Example:

```
config monitoring np6-ipsec-engine
  set status enable
  set interval 5
  set threshold 10 10 8 8 6 6 4 4
end
```

report

Use these commands to manually configure local PDF reports.



Please note that all `config report` commands are only available when local reports are enabled:

```
config log disk setting
    set status enable
end
```

Please note that these commands are only available when local reports are enabled:

Syntax

```
config log disk setting
    set status enable
end
```

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [report chart](#)
- [report dataset](#)
- [report layout](#)
- [report setting](#)
- [report style](#)
- [report theme](#)

report chart

Use the following command to configure a chart or widget.

You can edit the settings of existing widgets or you can add new widgets. To add a new widget you need to have a dataset for it as well as a title. You can also configure the widget to be a graph in various formats or a table and you can also optionally configure details about the appearance of the graph or table.

```
config report chart
  edit {name}
  # Report chart widget configuration.
  set name {string}    Chart Widget Name size[71]
  set policy {integer}  Used by monitor policy. range[0-4294967295]
  set type {graph | table}  Chart type.
    graph Graph.
    table Table.
  set period {last24h | last7d}  Time period.
    last24h Last 24 hours.
    last7d  Last 7 days.
  config drill-down-charts
    edit {id}
    # Drill down charts.
    set id {integer}    Drill down chart ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set chart-name {string}  Drill down chart name. size[71]
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable this drill down chart.
  next
  set comments {string}  Comment. size[127]
  set dataset {string}   Bind dataset to chart. size[71]
  set category {option}  Category.
    misc      Miscellaneous.
    traffic   Traffic.
    event     Event.
    virus     Virus.
    webfilter Webfilter.
    attack    Attack.
    spam      Spam.
    dlp       Data leak prevention.
    app-ctrl  Application control.
    vulnerability Vulnerability.
  set favorite {no | yes} Favorite.
    no  Not a favorite chart.
    yes Favorite chart.
  set graph-type {option}  Graph type.
    none None.
    bar  Bar Chart.
    pie  Pie Chart.
    line Line Chart.
    flow flow Chart.
```

```

set style {auto | manual}    Style.
    auto    Auto.
    manual  Manual.
set dimension {2D | 3D}    Dimension.
    2D  2D graphic.
    3D  3D graphic.
config x-series
    set databind {string}    X-series value expression. size[127]
    set caption {string}    X-series caption. size[35]
    set caption-font-size {integer}    X-series caption font size. range[5-20]
    set font-size {integer}    X-series label font size. range[5-20]
    set label-angle {45-degree | vertical | horizontal}    X-series label angle.
        45-degree    45-degree.
        vertical    Vertical.
        horizontal    Horizontal.
    set is-category {yes | no}    X-series represent category or not.
        yes    X-series is category.
        no    X-series is not category.
    set scale-unit {option}    Scale unit.
        minute    Minute.
        hour    Hour.
        day    Day.
        month    Month.
        year    Year.
    set scale-step {integer}    Scale step. range[1-65535]
    set scale-direction {decrease | increase}    Scale increase or decrease.
        decrease    Decrease.
        increase    Increase.
    set scale-format {option}    Date/time format.
        YYYY-MM-DD-HH-MM    YYYY/MM/DD HH:MM
        YYYY-MM-DD HH    YYYY/MM/DD HH
        YYYY-MM-DD    YYYY/MM/DD
        YYYY-MM    YYYY/MM
        YYYY    YYYY
        HH-MM    HH:MM
        MM-DD    MM:DD
    set unit {string}    X-series unit. size[35]
config y-series
    set databind {string}    Y-series value expression. size[127]
    set caption {string}    Y-series caption. size[35]

```

```

set caption-font-size {integer}    Y-series caption font size. range[5-20]
set font-size {integer}    Y-series label font size. range[5-20]
set label-angle {45-degree | vertical | horizontal}    Y-series label angle.
    45-degree    45-degree.
    vertical    Vertical.
    horizontal    Horizontal.
set group {string}    Y-series group option. size[127]
set unit {string}    Y-series unit. size[35]
set extra-y {enable | disable}    Allow another Y-series value
set extra-databind {string}    Extra Y-series value. size[127]
set y-legend {string}    First Y-series legend type/name. size[35]
set extra-y-legend {string}    Extra Y-series legend type/name. size[35]
config category-series
    set databind {string}    Category series value expression. size[127]
    set font-size {integer}    Font size of category-series title. range[5-20]
config value-series
    set databind {string}    Value series value expression. size[127]
set title {string}    Chart title. size[63]
set title-font-size {integer}    Font size of chart title. range[0-4294967295]
set background {string}    Chart background. size[11]
set color-palette {string}    Color palette (system will pick color automatically by default). size[11]
set legend {enable | disable}    Enable/Disable Legend area.
set legend-font-size {integer}    Font size of legend area. range[0-4294967295]
config column
    edit {id}
    # Table column definition.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set header-value {string}    Display name of table header. size[127]
        set detail-value {string}    Detail value of column. size[127]
        set footer-value {string}    Footer value of column. size[127]
        set detail-unit {string}    Detail unit of column. size[35]
        set footer-unit {string}    Footer unit of column. size[35]
    config mapping
        edit {id}
        # Show detail in certain display value for certain condition.
            set id {integer}    id range[0-4294967295]
            set op {option}    Comparision operater.
                none    None.
                greater    Greater than.
                greater-equal    Greater than or equal to.

```

```

                less            Less than.
                less-equal      Less than or equal to.
                equal           Equal to.
                between          Between value 1 and value 2.
            set value-type {integer | string}  Value type.
                integer Integer.
                string String.
            set value1 {string}  Value 1. size[127]
            set value2 {string}  Value 2. size[127]
            set displayname {string}  Display name. size[127]
        next
    next
end

```

report dataset

Use the following command to configure report data sets.

You can configure existing data sets or add new ones, by creating SQL queries.

```

config report dataset
    edit {name}
        # Report dataset configuration.
        set name {string}  Name. size[71]
        set policy {integer}  Used by monitor policy. range[0-4294967295]
        set query {string}  SQL query statement. size[2303]
        config field
            edit {id}
                # Fields.
                set id {integer}  Field ID (1 to number of columns in SQL result). range[0-4294967295]
                set type {text | integer | double}  Field type.
                    text Text.
                    integer Integer.
                    double Double.
                set name {string}  Name. size[71]
                set displayname {string}  Display name. size[127]
            next
        config parameters
            edit {id}

```



```

        # Parameters.
        set id {integer}    Parameter ID (1 to number of columns in SQL result). range[0-4294967295]
        set display-name {string}    Display name. size[127]
        set field {string}    SQL field name. size[127]
        set data-type {option}    Data type.
            text            Text.
            integer         Integer.
            double           Double.
            long-integer     Long integer.
            date-time        Date and time.

    next
next
end

```

report layout

Use this command configure report layouts.

Layouts help you define the content of your reports. You can create sub-styles for page headers, page footers and the body section of the report. You can also schedule a reporting cycle and set a specific time and day for generating reports. You can select a layout from a pre-defined list or you can create your own report layout. Once you have all layout parameters set, you can save it and use it in any report. You can use the following options to customize layouts or create new layouts.

```

config report layout
edit {name}
# Report layout configuration.
set name {string}    Report layout name. size[35]
set title {string}    Report title. size[127]
set subtitle {string}    Report subtitle. size[127]
set description {string}    Description. size[127]
set style-theme {string}    Report style theme. size[35]
set options {option}    Report layout options.
    include-table-of-content    Include table of content in the report.
    auto-numbering-heading      Prepend heading with auto numbering.
    view-chart-as-heading       Auto add heading for each chart.
    show-html-navbar-before-heading    Show HTML navigation bar before each heading.
    dummy-option                Use this option if you need none of the above options.
set format {pdf}    Report format.
    pdf    PDF.

```

```

set schedule-type {demand | daily | weekly}    Report schedule type.
    demand    Run on demand.
    daily     Schedule daily.
    weekly    Schedule weekly.
set day {option}    Schedule days of week to generate report.
    sunday    Sunday.
    monday    Monday.
    tuesday   Tuesday.
    wednesday Wednesday.
    thursday  Thursday.
    friday    Friday.
    saturday  Saturday.
set time {string}    Schedule time to generate report [hh:mm].
set cutoff-option {run-time | custom}    Cutoff-option is either run-time or custom.
    run-time    Run time.
    custom      Custom.
set cutoff-time {string}    Custom cutoff time to generate report [hh:mm].
set email-send {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sending emails after reports are generated.
set email-recipients {string}    Email recipients for generated reports. size[511]
set max-pdf-report {integer}    Maximum number of PDF reports to keep at one time (oldest report is overwritten).
range[1-365]
config page
    set paper {a4 | letter}    Report page paper.
        a4        A4 paper.
        letter    Letter paper.
    set column-break-before {heading1 | heading2 | heading3}    Report page auto column break before heading.
        heading1    Column break before heading 1.
        heading2    Column break before heading 2.
        heading3    Column break before heading 3.
    set page-break-before {heading1 | heading2 | heading3}    Report page auto page break before heading.
        heading1    Page break before heading 1.
        heading2    Page break before heading 2.
        heading3    Page break before heading 3.
    set options {header-on-first-page | footer-on-first-page}    Report page options.
        header-on-first-page    Show header on first page.
        footer-on-first-page    Show footer on first page.
config header
    set style {string}    Report header style. size[71]
    config header-item
        edit {id}

```

```
# Configure report header item.
  set id {integer}    Report item ID. range[0-4294967295]
  set description {string}  Description. size[63]
  set type {text | image}  Report item type.
    text  Text.
    image Image.
  set style {string}    Report item style. size[71]
  set content {string}  Report item text content. size[511]
  set img-src {string}  Report item image file name. size[127]
next
config footer
  set style {string}    Report footer style. size[71]
config footer-item
  edit {id}
  # Configure report footer item.
    set id {integer}    Report item ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set description {string}  Description. size[63]
    set type {text | image}  Report item type.
      text  Text.
      image Image.
    set style {string}    Report item style. size[71]
    set content {string}  Report item text content. size[511]
    set img-src {string}  Report item image file name. size[127]
  next
config body-item
  edit {id}
  # Configure report body item.
    set id {integer}    Report item ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set description {string}  Description. size[63]
    set type {text | image | chart | misc}  Report item type.
      text  Text.
      image Image.
      chart Chart.
      misc  Miscellaneous.
    set style {string}    Report item style. size[71]
    set top-n {integer}  Value of top. range[0-4294967295]
    set hide {enable | disable}  Enable/disable hide item in report.
  config parameters
    edit {id}
    # Parameters.
```

```

        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set name {string}   Field name that match field of parameters defined in dataset. size[127]
        set value {string}  Value to replace corresponding field of parameters defined in dataset. size
[1023]
    next
    set text-component {text | heading1 | heading2 | heading3}  Report item text component.
        text      Normal text.
        heading1  Heading 1.
        heading2  Heading 2.
        heading3  Heading 3.
    set content {string}  Report item text content. size[511]
    set img-src {string}  Report item image file name. size[127]
    set list-component {bullet | numbered}  Report item list component.
        bullet      Bullet list.
        numbered    Numbered list.
    config list
        edit {id}
        # Configure report list item.
        set id {integer}    List entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set content {string} List entry content. size[127]
    next
    set chart {string}  Report item chart name. size[71]
    set chart-options {include-no-data | hide-title | show-caption}  Report chart options.
        include-no-data  Include chart with no data.
        hide-title       Hide chart title.
        show-caption      Show chart caption.
    set drill-down-items {string}  Control how drill down charts are shown. size[11]
    set drill-down-types {string}  Control whether keys from the parent being combined or not. size[7]
    set table-column-widths {string}  Report item table column widths. size[179]
    set table-caption-style {string}  Table chart caption style. size[71]
    set table-head-style {string}  Table chart head style. size[71]
    set table-odd-row-style {string}  Table chart odd row style. size[71]
    set table-even-row-style {string}  Table chart even row style. size[71]
    set misc-component {hline | page-break | column-break | section-start}  Report item miscellaneous com-
ponent.
        hline      Horizontal line.
        page-break  Page break.
        column-break  Column break.
        section-start  Section start.
    set column {integer}  Report section column number. range[0-4294967295]

```

```

        set title {string}    Report section title. size[511]
    next
next
end

```

report setting

Use this command to configure report settings.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
set top-n <integer>	Number of items to populate. Set the range between 100 - 4000.

```

config report setting
    set pdf-report {enable | disable}    Enable/disable PDF report.
    set fortiview {enable | disable}    Enable/disable historical FortiView.
    set report-source {forward-traffic | sniffer-traffic | local-deny-traffic}    Report log source.
        forward-traffic    Report includes forward traffic logs.
        sniffer-traffic    Report includes sniffer traffic logs.
        local-deny-traffic    Report includes local deny traffic logs.
    set web-browsing-threshold {integer}    Web browsing time calculation threshold (3 - 15 min). range[3-15]
    set top-n {integer}    Number of items to populate (100 - 4000). range[100-4000]
end

```

report style

Use this command configure the report styles.

Report styles help you configure font, paragraph and page properties of your reports. For example you can set the font type, size and color as well as page background color and page margins. You can select a style from a pre-defined list or you can create your own report style. Once you have all style parameters set, you can save it and use it on any reports. You can use the following options to customize or create report styles.

```
config report style
edit {name}
# Report style configuration.
set name {string}    Report style name. size[71]
set options {option}  Report style options.
    font    Font.
    text    Text.
    color    Color.
    align    Align.
    size    Size.
    margin    Margin.
    border    Border.
    padding    Padding.
    column    Column.
set font-family {option}  Font family.
    Verdana    Verdana.
    Arial    Arial.
    Helvetica    Helvetica.
    Courier    Courier.
    Times    Times Roman.
set font-style {normal | italic}  Font style.
    normal    Normal.
    italic    Italic.
set font-weight {normal | bold}  Font weight.
    normal    Normal.
    bold    Bold.
set font-size {string}  Font size. size[15]
set line-height {string}  Text line height. size[15]
set fg-color {string}  Foreground color. size[15]
set bg-color {string}  Background color. size[15]
set align {left | center | right | justify}  Alignment.
    left    Align left.
    center    Align center.
    right    Align right.
    justify    Align justify.
set width {string}  Width. size[15]
set height {string}  Height. size[15]
set margin-top {string}  Margin top. size[15]
set margin-right {string}  Margin right. size[15]
set margin-bottom {string}  Margin bottom. size[15]
```

```

    set margin-left {string}    Margin left. size[15]
    set border-top {string}     Border top.
    set border-right {string}   Border right.
    set border-bottom {string}  Border bottom.
    set border-left {string}    Border left.
    set padding-top {string}     Padding top. size[15]
    set padding-right {string}   Padding right. size[15]
    set padding-bottom {string}  Padding bottom. size[15]
    set padding-left {string}    Padding left. size[15]
    set column-span {none | all} Column span.
                                none Does not span.
                                all  Span across all columns.
    set column-gap {string}     Column gap. size[15]
next
end

```

report theme

Use this command configure themes for your reports.

Themes help you configure some of the main characteristics of your report outlook. For example you can configure the page orientation of the report or create sub-styles for title headings. You can select a theme from a pre-defined list or you can create your own report theme. Once you have all theme parameters set, you can save it and use it on any reports. You can use the following options to customize or create report themes.

```

config report theme
  edit {name}
  # Report themes configuration
    set name {string}    Report theme name. size[35]
    set page-orient {portrait | landscape}  Report page orientation.
        portrait  Portrait Orientation.
        landscape Landscape Orientation.
    set column-count {1 | 2 | 3}  Report page column count.
        1  One Column.
        2  Two Columns.
        3  Three Columns.
    set default-html-style {string}  Default HTML report style. size[71]
    set default-pdf-style {string}   Default PDF report style. size[71]
    set page-style {string}          Report page style. size[71]
    set page-header-style {string}   Report page header style. size[71]

```

```
set page-footer-style {string}    Report page footer style. size[71]
set report-title-style {string}    Report title style. size[71]
set report-subtitle-style {string}  Report subtitle style. size[71]
set toc-title-style {string}       Table of contents title style. size[71]
set toc-heading1-style {string}     Table of contents heading style. size[71]
set toc-heading2-style {string}     Table of contents heading style. size[71]
set toc-heading3-style {string}     Table of contents heading style. size[71]
set toc-heading4-style {string}     Table of contents heading style. size[71]
set heading1-style {string}         Report heading style. size[71]
set heading2-style {string}         Report heading style. size[71]
set heading3-style {string}         Report heading style. size[71]
set heading4-style {string}         Report heading style. size[71]
set normal-text-style {string}      Normal text style. size[71]
set bullet-list-style {string}      Bullet list style. size[71]
set numbered-list-style {string}    Numbered list style. size[71]
set image-style {string}            Image style. size[71]
set hline-style {string}            Horizontal line style. size[71]
set graph-chart-style {string}      Graph chart style. size[71]
set table-chart-style {string}      Table chart style. size[71]
set table-chart-caption-style {string} Table chart caption style. size[71]
set table-chart-head-style {string} Table chart head row style. size[71]
set table-chart-odd-row-style {string} Table chart odd row style. size[71]
set table-chart-even-row-style {string} Table chart even row style. size[71]
next
end
```


router

FortiOS supports many advanced routing functions and is compatible with industry standard Internet routers. A FortiGate can communicate with other routers to determine the best route for a packet.



Access lists, key-chains, route maps, and prefix lists are referenced by other parts of the router configuration. Because of this, you should configure any necessary access lists and router paths first.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- `router access-list | access-list6`
- `router aspath-list`
- `router auth-path`
- `router bfd`
- `router bgp`
- `router community-list`
- `router isis`
- `router key-chain`
- `router multicast | multicast6`
- `router multicast-flow`
- `router ospf | ospf6`
- `router policy | policy6`
- `router prefix-list | prefix-list6`
- `router rip`
- `router ripng`
- `router route-map`
- `router setting`
- `router static | static6`

router {access-list | access-list6}

Use this command to configure routing access lists for either IPv4 (`access-list`) or IPv6 (`access-list6`).

Access lists are filters used by FortiGate routing processes. Each rule in an access list consists of a prefix (IP address and netmask), the action to take for this prefix (permit or deny), and whether to match the prefix exactly or to match the prefix and any more specific prefix.

The FortiGate attempts to match a packet against the rules in an access list starting at the top of the list. If it finds a match for the prefix, it takes the action specified for that prefix. If no match is found the default action is deny.



If you are setting a prefix of 128.0.0.0, use the format 128.0.0.0/1. The default route, 0.0.0.0/0 can not be exactly matched with an access list; a prefix list must be used for this purpose. For more information, see [router {prefix-list | prefix-list6} on page 558](#).

```
config router access-list
  edit {name}
    # Configure access lists.
    set name {string}    Name. size[35]
    set comments {string} Comment. size[127]
    config rule
      edit {id}
        # Rule.
        set id {integer}  Rule ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set action {permit | deny}  Permit or deny this IP address and netmask prefix.
            permit  Permit or allow this IP address and netmask prefix.
            deny    Deny this IP address and netmask prefix.
        set prefix {string}  IPv4 prefix to define regular filter criteria, such as "any" or subnets.
        set wildcard {string}  Wildcard to define Cisco-style wildcard filter criteria.
        set exact-match {enable | disable}  Enable/disable exact match.
        set flags {integer}  Flags. range[0-4294967295]
      next
    next
  end

config router access-list6
  edit {name}
    # Configure IPv6 access lists.
```

```
set name {string}    Name. size[35]
set comments {string} Comment. size[127]
config rule
  edit {id}
    # Rule.
    set id {integer}    Rule ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set action {permit | deny}    Permit or deny this IP address and netmask prefix.
        permit    Permit or allow this IP address and netmask prefix.
        deny      Deny this IP address and netmask prefix.
    set prefix6 {string}    IPv6 prefix to define regular filter criteria, such as "any" or subnets.
    set exact-match {enable | disable}    Enable/disable exact prefix match.
    set flags {integer}    Flags. range[0-4294967295]
  next
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

edit {name}

The name of the access list. An access list and a prefix list cannot have the same name.

action {permit | deny}

Set the action to take for this prefix. The default is `permit`.

exact-match {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) matching only the configured prefix.

wildcard {string}

Note: This variable is only used for IPv4 access lists.

Enter the IP address and reverse (wildcard) mask to process. The value of the mask (for example, 0.0.255.0) determines which address bits to match. A value of 0 means that an exact match is required, while a binary value of 1 indicates that part of the binary network address does not have to match. You can specify discontinuous masks (for example, to process “even” or “odd” networks according to any network address octet).

For best results, do not specify a wildcard attribute unless `prefix` is set to `any`.

router aspath-list

Use this command to set or unset BGP AS-path list parameters. By default, BGP uses an ordered list of Autonomous System (AS) numbers to describe the route that a packet takes to reach its destination. A list of these AS numbers is called the AS path. You can filter BGP routes using AS path lists.

When the FortiGate receives routing updates from other autonomous systems, it can perform operations on updates from neighbors and choose the shortest path to a destination. The shortest path is determined by counting the AS numbers in the AS path. The path that has the least AS numbers is considered the shortest AS path.

Use the `config router aspath-list` command to define an access list that examines the `AS_PATH` attributes of BGP routes to match routes. Each entry in the list defines a rule for matching and selecting routes based on the setting of the `AS_PATH` attribute.

The default rule in an AS path list that denies the matching of all routes, which the FortiGate applies last.

```
config router aspath-list
    edit {name}
        # Configure Autonomous System (AS) path lists.
        set name {string}    AS path list name. size[35]
        config rule
            edit {id}
                # AS path list rule.
                set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
                set action {deny | permit}    Permit or deny route-based operations, based on the route's AS_PATH attribute.
                deny    Deny route-based operations.
                permit    Permit route-based operations.
                set regexp {string}    Regular-expression to match the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) AS paths. size[63]
            next
        next
    next
```

```
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

regex {string}

Specify the regular expression that will be compared to the AS_PATH attribute (for example, ^730\$).

The value is used to match AS numbers. Delimit a complex regular expression value using double-quotation marks.

router auth-path

Authentication based routing allows firewall policies to direct network traffic flows.

This command configures a RADIUS object on your FortiGate unit. The same object is required to be configured on the RADIUS server.



This command is not available when the FortiGate is in Transparent mode.

```
config router auth-path
  edit {name}
    # Configure authentication based routing.
    set name {string}    Name of the entry. size[15]
    set device {string}  Outgoing interface. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set gateway {ipv4 address}  Gateway IP address.
  next
end
```

router bfd

Use this command to enable Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) when there is no dynamic routing active.

```
config router bfd
  config neighbor
    edit {ip}
      # neighbor
      set ip {ipv4 address}    IPv4 address of the BFD neighbor.
      set interface {string}   Interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    next
  end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

router bgp

Use this command to set or unset BGP-4 routing parameters. BGP can be used to perform Classless Interdomain Routing (CIDR) and to route traffic between different autonomous systems or domains using an alternative route if a link between a FortiGate and a BGP peer (such as an ISP router) fails. FortiOS BGP4 complies with RFC 1771 and supports IPv4 addressing.

When BGP is enabled, the FortiGate sends routing table updates to the upstream ISP router whenever any part of the routing table changes. The update advertises which routes can be used to reach the FortiGate. In this way, routes are made known from the border of the internal network outwards (routes are pushed forward) instead of relying on upstream routers to propagate alternative paths to the FortiGate.

FortiGate BGP supports the following extensions to help manage large numbers of BGP peers:

- Communities — The FortiGate can set the COMMUNITY attribute of a route to assign the route to predefined paths (see RFC 1997). The FortiGate can also examine the COMMUNITY attribute of learned routes to perform local filtering and/or redistribution.
- Internal BGP (IBGP) route reflectors — The FortiGate can operate as a route reflector or participate as a client in a cluster of IBGP peers (see RFC 1966).
- External BGP (EBGP) confederations — The FortiGate can operate as a confederation member, using its AS confederation identifier in all transactions with peers that are not members of its confederation (see RFC 3065).

FortiOS supports IPv6 over BGP4 via the BGP4+ protocol defined in RFC 2545 and RFC 2858. IPv6 configuration for BGP is accomplished with the `aggregate-address6`, `network6`, and `redistribute6` variables. Also almost every variable in `config neighbor` has an IPv4 and IPv6 version such as `activate` and `activate6`.

```
config router bgp
  set as {integer}    Router AS number, valid from 1 to 4294967295, 0 to disable BGP. range[0-4294967295]
```

```
set router-id {ipv4 address any} Router ID.
set keepalive-timer {integer} Frequency to send keep alive requests. range[0-65535]
set holdtime-timer {integer} Number of seconds to mark peer as dead. range[3-65535]
set always-compare-med {enable | disable} Enable/disable always compare MED.
set bestpath-as-path-ignore {enable | disable} Enable/disable ignore AS path.
set bestpath-cmp-confed-aspath {enable | disable} Enable/disable compare federation AS path length.
set bestpath-cmp-routerid {enable | disable} Enable/disable compare router ID for identical EBGp paths.
set bestpath-med-confed {enable | disable} Enable/disable compare MED among confederation paths.
set bestpath-med-missing-as-worst {enable | disable} Enable/disable treat missing MED as least preferred.
set client-to-client-reflection {enable | disable} Enable/disable client-to-client route reflection.
set dampening {enable | disable} Enable/disable route-flap dampening.
set deterministic-med {enable | disable} Enable/disable enforce deterministic comparison of MED.
set ebgp-multipath {enable | disable} Enable/disable EBGp multi-path.
set ibgp-multipath {enable | disable} Enable/disable IBGP multi-path.
set enforce-first-as {enable | disable} Enable/disable enforce first AS for EBGp routes.
set fast-external-failover {enable | disable} Enable/disable reset peer BGP session if link goes down.
set log-neighbour-changes {enable | disable} Enable logging of BGP neighbour's changes
set network-import-check {enable | disable} Enable/disable ensure BGP network route exists in IGP.
set ignore-optional-capability {enable | disable} Don't send unknown optional capability notification message
set cluster-id {ipv4 address any} Route reflector cluster ID.
set confederation-identifier {integer} Confederation identifier. range[1-4294967295]
config confederation-peers
    edit {peer}
        # Confederation peers.
        set peer {string} Peer ID. size[64]
    next
set dampening-route-map {string} Criteria for dampening. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
set dampening-reachability-half-life {integer} Reachability half-life time for penalty (min). range[1-45]
set dampening-reuse {integer} Threshold to reuse routes. range[1-20000]
set dampening-suppress {integer} Threshold to suppress routes. range[1-20000]
set dampening-max-suppress-time {integer} Maximum minutes a route can be suppressed. range[1-255]
set dampening-unreachability-half-life {integer} Unreachability half-life time for penalty (min). range[1-45]
set default-local-preference {integer} Default local preference. range[0-4294967295]
set scan-time {integer} Background scanner interval (sec), 0 to disable it. range[5-60]
set distance-external {integer} Distance for routes external to the AS. range[1-255]
set distance-internal {integer} Distance for routes internal to the AS. range[1-255]
set distance-local {integer} Distance for routes local to the AS. range[1-255]
set synchronization {enable | disable} Enable/disable only advertise routes from iBGP if routes present in an IGP.
set graceful-restart {enable | disable} Enable/disable BGP graceful restart capabilities.
set graceful-restart-time {integer} Time needed for neighbors to restart (sec). range[1-3600]
```

```
set graceful-stalepath-time {integer}    Time to hold stale paths of restarting neighbor (sec). range[1-3600]
set graceful-update-delay {integer}      Route advertisement/selection delay after restart (sec). range[1-3600]
set graceful-end-on-timer {enable | disable}  Enable/disable to exit graceful restart on timer only.
config aggregate-address
    edit {id}
    # BGP aggregate address table.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set prefix {ipv4 classnet any}    Aggregate prefix.
    set as-set {enable | disable}    Enable/disable generate AS set path information.
    set summary-only {enable | disable}    Enable/disable filter more specific routes from updates.
    next
config aggregate-address6
    edit {id}
    # BGP IPv6 aggregate address table.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set prefix6 {ipv6 prefix}    Aggregate IPv6 prefix.
    set as-set {enable | disable}    Enable/disable generate AS set path information.
    set summary-only {enable | disable}    Enable/disable filter more specific routes from updates.
    next
config neighbor
    edit {ip}
    # BGP neighbor table.
    set ip {string}    IP/IPv6 address of neighbor. size[45]
    set advertisement-interval {integer}    Minimum interval (sec) between sending updates. range[1-600]
    set allowas-in-enable {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv4 Enable to allow my AS in AS path.
    set allowas-in-enable6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv6 Enable to allow my AS in AS path.
    set allowas-in {integer}    IPv4 The maximum number of occurrence of my AS number allowed. range[1-10]
    set allowas-in6 {integer}    IPv6 The maximum number of occurrence of my AS number allowed. range[1-10]
    set attribute-unchanged {as-path | med | next-hop}    IPv4 List of attributes that should be unchanged.
        as-path    AS path.
        med        MED.
        next-hop    Next hop.
    set attribute-unchanged6 {as-path | med | next-hop}    IPv6 List of attributes that should be unchanged.
        as-path    AS path.
        med        MED.
        next-hop    Next hop.
    set activate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable address family IPv4 for this neighbor.
    set activate6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable address family IPv6 for this neighbor.
    set bfd {enable | disable}    Enable/disable BFD for this neighbor.
    set capability-dynamic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable advertise dynamic capability to this neighbor.
```



```

    set capability-orf {none | receive | send | both}    Accept/Send IPv4 ORF lists to/from this neighbor.
        none      None.
        receive   Receive ORF lists.
        send      Send ORF list.
        both      Send and receive ORF lists.
    set capability-orf6 {none | receive | send | both}    Accept/Send IPv6 ORF lists to/from this neighbor.
        none      None.
        receive   Receive ORF lists.
        send      Send ORF list.
        both      Send and receive ORF lists.
    set capability-graceful-restart {enable | disable}    Enable/disable advertise IPv4 graceful restart cap-
ability to this neighbor.
    set capability-graceful-restart6 {enable | disable}   Enable/disable advertise IPv6 graceful restart cap-
ability to this neighbor.
    set capability-route-refresh {enable | disable}      Enable/disable advertise route refresh capability to this
neighbor.
    set capability-default-originate {enable | disable}  Enable/disable advertise default IPv4 route to this
neighbor.
    set capability-default-originate6 {enable | disable} Enable/disable advertise default IPv6 route to this
neighbor.
    set dont-capability-negotiate {enable | disable}    Don't negotiate capabilities with this neighbor
    set ebgp-enforce-multihop {enable | disable}        Enable/disable allow multi-hop EBGp neighbors.
    set link-down-failover {enable | disable}           Enable/disable failover upon link down.
    set stale-route {enable | disable}                  Enable/disable stale route after neighbor down.
    set next-hop-self {enable | disable}                Enable/disable IPv4 next-hop calculation for this neighbor.
    set next-hop-self6 {enable | disable}               Enable/disable IPv6 next-hop calculation for this neighbor.
    set override-capability {enable | disable}          Enable/disable override result of capability negotiation.
    set passive {enable | disable}                      Enable/disable sending of open messages to this neighbor.
    set remove-private-as {enable | disable}            Enable/disable remove private AS number from IPv4 outbound
updates.
    set remove-private-as6 {enable | disable}           Enable/disable remove private AS number from IPv6 outbound
updates.
    set route-reflector-client {enable | disable}       Enable/disable IPv4 AS route reflector client.
    set route-reflector-client6 {enable | disable}      Enable/disable IPv6 AS route reflector client.
    set route-server-client {enable | disable}          Enable/disable IPv4 AS route server client.
    set route-server-client6 {enable | disable}         Enable/disable IPv6 AS route server client.
    set shutdown {enable | disable}                    Enable/disable shutdown this neighbor.
    set soft-reconfiguration {enable | disable}         Enable/disable allow IPv4 inbound soft reconfiguration.
    set soft-reconfiguration6 {enable | disable}        Enable/disable allow IPv6 inbound soft reconfiguration.
    set as-override {enable | disable}                 Enable/disable replace peer AS with own AS for IPv4.

```

```

        set as-override6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable replace peer AS with own AS for IPv6.
        set strict-capability-match {enable | disable}    Enable/disable strict capability matching.
        set default-originate-routemap {string}    Route map to specify criteria to originate IPv4 default. size[35]
- datasource(s): router.route-map.name
        set default-originate-routemap6 {string}    Route map to specify criteria to originate IPv6 default. size[35]
- datasource(s): router.route-map.name
        set description {string}    Description. size[63]
        set distribute-list-in {string}    Filter for IPv4 updates from this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.access-list.name
        set distribute-list-in6 {string}    Filter for IPv6 updates from this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.access-list6.name
        set distribute-list-out {string}    Filter for IPv4 updates to this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.access-list.name
        set distribute-list-out6 {string}    Filter for IPv6 updates to this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.access-list6.name
        set ebgp-multihop-ttl {integer}    EBGp multihop TTL for this peer. range[1-255]
        set filter-list-in {string}    BGP filter for IPv4 inbound routes. size[35] - datasource(s): router.aspath-
list.name
        set filter-list-in6 {string}    BGP filter for IPv6 inbound routes. size[35] - datasource(s): router.aspath-
list.name
        set filter-list-out {string}    BGP filter for IPv4 outbound routes. size[35] - datasource(s): router.aspath-
list.name
        set filter-list-out6 {string}    BGP filter for IPv6 outbound routes. size[35] - datasource(s): router-
.aspath-list.name
        set interface {string}    Interface size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        set maximum-prefix {integer}    Maximum number of IPv4 prefixes to accept from this peer. range[1-4294967295]
        set maximum-prefix6 {integer}    Maximum number of IPv6 prefixes to accept from this peer. range[1-
4294967295]
        set maximum-prefix-threshold {integer}    Maximum IPv4 prefix threshold value (1 - 100 percent). range[1-100]
        set maximum-prefix-threshold6 {integer}    Maximum IPv6 prefix threshold value (1 - 100 percent). range[1-
100]
        set maximum-prefix-warning-only {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv4 Only give warning message when
limit is exceeded.
        set maximum-prefix-warning-only6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv6 Only give warning message when
limit is exceeded.
        set prefix-list-in {string}    IPv4 Inbound filter for updates from this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.prefix-list.name
        set prefix-list-in6 {string}    IPv6 Inbound filter for updates from this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.prefix-list6.name
        set prefix-list-out {string}    IPv4 Outbound filter for updates to this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):

```

```

router.prefix-list.name
    set prefix-list-out6 {string}    IPv6 Outbound filter for updates to this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.prefix-list6.name
    set remote-as {integer}    AS number of neighbor. range[1-4294967295]
    set local-as {integer}    Local AS number of neighbor. range[0-4294967295]
    set local-as-no-prepend {enable | disable}    Do not prepend local-as to incoming updates.
    set local-as-replace-as {enable | disable}    Replace real AS with local-as in outgoing updates.
    set retain-stale-time {integer}    Time to retain stale routes. range[0-65535]
    set route-map-in {string}    IPv4 Inbound route map filter. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
    set route-map-in6 {string}    IPv6 Inbound route map filter. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
    set route-map-out {string}    IPv4 Outbound route map filter. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
    set route-map-out6 {string}    IPv6 Outbound route map filter. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.-
name
    set send-community {standard | extended | both | disable}    IPv4 Send community attribute to neighbor.
        standard    Standard.
        extended    Extended.
        both        Both.
        disable     Disable
    set send-community6 {standard | extended | both | disable}    IPv6 Send community attribute to neighbor.
        standard    Standard.
        extended    Extended.
        both        Both.
        disable     Disable
    set keep-alive-timer {integer}    Keep alive timer interval (sec). range[0-65535]
    set holdtime-timer {integer}    Interval (sec) before peer considered dead. range[3-65535]
    set connect-timer {integer}    Interval (sec) for connect timer. range[0-65535]
    set unsuppress-map {string}    IPv4 Route map to selectively unsuppress suppressed routes. size[35] - data-
source(s): router.route-map.name
    set unsuppress-map6 {string}    IPv6 Route map to selectively unsuppress suppressed routes. size[35] - data-
source(s): router.route-map.name
    set update-source {string}    Interface to use as source IP/IPv6 address of TCP connections. size[15] - data-
source(s): system.interface.name
    set weight {integer}    Neighbor weight. range[0-65535]
    set restart-time {integer}    Graceful restart delay time (sec, 0 = global default). range[0-3600]
    set password {password_string}    Password used in MD5 authentication. size[128]
    config conditional-advertise
        edit {advertise-routemap}
        # Conditional advertisement.
        set advertise-routemap {string}    Name of advertising route map. size[35] - datasource(s): router-
.route-map.name

```

```

        set condition-routemap {string}    Name of condition route map. size[35] - datasource(s): router-
.route-map.name
        set condition-type {exist | non-exist}    Type of condition.
            exist        True if condition route map is matched.
            non-exist    True if condition route map is not matched.
    next
next
config neighbor-group
edit {name}
# BGP neighbor group table.
    set name {string}    Neighbor group name. size[45]
    set advertisement-interval {integer}    Minimum interval (sec) between sending updates. range[1-600]
    set allowas-in-enable {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv4 Enable to allow my AS in AS path.
    set allowas-in-enable6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv6 Enable to allow my AS in AS path.
    set allowas-in {integer}    IPv4 The maximum number of occurrence of my AS number allowed. range[1-10]
    set allowas-in6 {integer}    IPv6 The maximum number of occurrence of my AS number allowed. range[1-10]
    set attribute-unchanged {as-path | med | next-hop}    IPv4 List of attributes that should be unchanged.
        as-path    AS path.
        med        MED.
        next-hop    Next hop.
    set attribute-unchanged6 {as-path | med | next-hop}    IPv6 List of attributes that should be unchanged.
        as-path    AS path.
        med        MED.
        next-hop    Next hop.
    set activate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable address family IPv4 for this neighbor.
    set activate6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable address family IPv6 for this neighbor.
    set bfd {enable | disable}    Enable/disable BFD for this neighbor.
    set capability-dynamic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable advertise dynamic capability to this neighbor.
    set capability-orf {none | receive | send | both}    Accept/Send IPv4 ORF lists to/from this neighbor.
        none        None.
        receive    Receive ORF lists.
        send        Send ORF list.
        both        Send and receive ORF lists.
    set capability-orf6 {none | receive | send | both}    Accept/Send IPv6 ORF lists to/from this neighbor.
        none        None.
        receive    Receive ORF lists.
        send        Send ORF list.
        both        Send and receive ORF lists.
    set capability-graceful-restart {enable | disable}    Enable/disable advertise IPv4 graceful restart cap-
ability to this neighbor.

```

```

        set capability-graceful-restart6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable advertise IPv6 graceful restart cap-
ability to this neighbor.
        set capability-route-refresh {enable | disable}    Enable/disable advertise route refresh capability to this
neighbor.
        set capability-default-originate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable advertise default IPv4 route to this
neighbor.
        set capability-default-originate6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable advertise default IPv6 route to this
neighbor.
        set dont-capability-negotiate {enable | disable}    Don't negotiate capabilities with this neighbor
        set ebgp-enforce-multihop {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allow multi-hop EBGp neighbors.
        set link-down-failover {enable | disable}    Enable/disable failover upon link down.
        set stale-route {enable | disable}    Enable/disable stale route after neighbor down.
        set next-hop-self {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv4 next-hop calculation for this neighbor.
        set next-hop-self6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv6 next-hop calculation for this neighbor.
        set override-capability {enable | disable}    Enable/disable override result of capability negotiation.
        set passive {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sending of open messages to this neighbor.
        set remove-private-as {enable | disable}    Enable/disable remove private AS number from IPv4 outbound
updates.
        set remove-private-as6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable remove private AS number from IPv6 outbound
updates.
        set route-reflector-client {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv4 AS route reflector client.
        set route-reflector-client6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv6 AS route reflector client.
        set route-server-client {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv4 AS route server client.
        set route-server-client6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv6 AS route server client.
        set shutdown {enable | disable}    Enable/disable shutdown this neighbor.
        set soft-reconfiguration {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allow IPv4 inbound soft reconfiguration.
        set soft-reconfiguration6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allow IPv6 inbound soft reconfiguration.
        set as-override {enable | disable}    Enable/disable replace peer AS with own AS for IPv4.
        set as-override6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable replace peer AS with own AS for IPv6.
        set strict-capability-match {enable | disable}    Enable/disable strict capability matching.
        set default-originate-routemap {string}    Route map to specify criteria to originate IPv4 default. size[35]
- datasource(s): router.route-map.name
        set default-originate-routemap6 {string}    Route map to specify criteria to originate IPv6 default. size[35]
- datasource(s): router.route-map.name
        set description {string}    Description. size[63]
        set distribute-list-in {string}    Filter for IPv4 updates from this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.access-list.name
        set distribute-list-in6 {string}    Filter for IPv6 updates from this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.access-list6.name
        set distribute-list-out {string}    Filter for IPv4 updates to this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):

```

```

router.access-list.name
    set distribute-list-out6 {string}    Filter for IPv6 updates to this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.access-list6.name
    set ebgp-multihop-ttl {integer}      EBGp multihop TTL for this peer. range[1-255]
    set filter-list-in {string}          BGP filter for IPv4 inbound routes. size[35] - datasource(s): router.aspath-
list.name
    set filter-list-in6 {string}          BGP filter for IPv6 inbound routes. size[35] - datasource(s): router.aspath-
list.name
    set filter-list-out {string}          BGP filter for IPv4 outbound routes. size[35] - datasource(s): router.aspath-
list.name
    set filter-list-out6 {string}          BGP filter for IPv6 outbound routes. size[35] - datasource(s): router-
.aspath-list.name
    set interface {string}                Interface size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set maximum-prefix {integer}           Maximum number of IPv4 prefixes to accept from this peer. range[1-4294967295]
    set maximum-prefix6 {integer}          Maximum number of IPv6 prefixes to accept from this peer. range[1-
4294967295]
    set maximum-prefix-threshold {integer} Maximum IPv4 prefix threshold value (1 - 100 percent). range[1-100]
    set maximum-prefix-threshold6 {integer} Maximum IPv6 prefix threshold value (1 - 100 percent). range[1-
100]
    set maximum-prefix-warning-only {enable | disable} Enable/disable IPv4 Only give warning message when
limit is exceeded.
    set maximum-prefix-warning-only6 {enable | disable} Enable/disable IPv6 Only give warning message when
limit is exceeded.
    set prefix-list-in {string}            IPv4 Inbound filter for updates from this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.prefix-list.name
    set prefix-list-in6 {string}           IPv6 Inbound filter for updates from this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.prefix-list6.name
    set prefix-list-out {string}           IPv4 Outbound filter for updates to this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.prefix-list.name
    set prefix-list-out6 {string}          IPv6 Outbound filter for updates to this neighbor. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.prefix-list6.name
    set remote-as {integer}                AS number of neighbor. range[1-4294967295]
    set local-as {integer}                 Local AS number of neighbor. range[0-4294967295]
    set local-as-no-prepend {enable | disable} Do not prepend local-as to incoming updates.
    set local-as-replace-as {enable | disable} Replace real AS with local-as in outgoing updates.
    set retain-stale-time {integer}         Time to retain stale routes. range[0-65535]
    set route-map-in {string}              IPv4 Inbound route map filter. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
    set route-map-in6 {string}             IPv6 Inbound route map filter. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
    set route-map-out {string}             IPv4 Outbound route map filter. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
    set route-map-out6 {string}            IPv6 Outbound route map filter. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-

```

```

map.name
    set send-community {standard | extended | both | disable}    IPv4 Send community attribute to neighbor.
        standard Standard.
        extended Extended.
        both Both.
        disable Disable
    set send-community6 {standard | extended | both | disable}    IPv6 Send community attribute to neighbor.
        standard Standard.
        extended Extended.
        both Both.
        disable Disable
    set keep-alive-timer {integer}    Keep alive timer interval (sec). range[0-65535]
    set holdtime-timer {integer}    Interval (sec) before peer considered dead. range[3-65535]
    set connect-timer {integer}    Interval (sec) for connect timer. range[0-65535]
    set unsuppress-map {string}    IPv4 Route map to selectively unsuppress suppressed routes. size[35] - data-
source(s): router.route-map.name
    set unsuppress-map6 {string}    IPv6 Route map to selectively unsuppress suppressed routes. size[35] - data-
source(s): router.route-map.name
    set update-source {string}    Interface to use as source IP/IPv6 address of TCP connections. size[15] - data-
source(s): system.interface.name
    set weight {integer}    Neighbor weight. range[0-65535]
    set restart-time {integer}    Graceful restart delay time (sec, 0 = global default). range[0-3600]
    next
config neighbor-range
    edit {id}
    # BGP neighbor range table.
        set id {integer}    Neighbor range ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set prefix {ipv4 classnet}    Neighbor range prefix.
        set max-neighbor-num {integer}    Maximum number of neighbors. range[1-1000]
        set neighbor-group {string}    Neighbor group name. size[63] - datasource(s): router.bgp.neighbor-group.name
    next
config neighbor-range6
    edit {id}
    # BGP IPv6 neighbor range table.
        set id {integer}    IPv6 neighbor range ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set prefix6 {ipv6 network}    IPv6 prefix.
        set max-neighbor-num {integer}    Maximum number of neighbors. range[1-1000]
        set neighbor-group {string}    Neighbor group name. size[63] - datasource(s): router.bgp.neighbor-group.name
    next
config network

```

```

    edit {id}
    # BGP network table.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set prefix {ipv4 classnet}    Network prefix.
        set backdoor {enable | disable}    Enable/disable route as backdoor.
        set route-map {string}    Route map to modify generated route. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.-
name
    next
config network6
    edit {id}
    # BGP IPv6 network table.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set prefix6 {ipv6 network}    Network IPv6 prefix.
        set backdoor {enable | disable}    Enable/disable route as backdoor.
        set route-map {string}    Route map to modify generated route. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.-
name
    next
config redistribute
    edit {name}
    # BGP IPv4 redistribute table.
        set name {string}    Distribute list entry name. size[35]
        set status {enable | disable}    Status
        set route-map {string}    Route map name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
    next
config redistribute6
    edit {name}
    # BGP IPv6 redistribute table.
        set name {string}    Distribute list entry name. size[35]
        set status {enable | disable}    Status
        set route-map {string}    Route map name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
    next
config admin-distance
    edit {id}
    # Administrative distance modifications.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set neighbour-prefix {ipv4 classnet}    Neighbor address prefix.
        set route-list {string}    Access list of routes to apply new distance to. size[35] - datasource(s): router-
.access-list.name
        set distance {integer}    Administrative distance to apply (1 - 255). range[1-255]
    next

```



```
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

About BGP timers:

The BGP timers are just to allow for faster route convergence in the case an interface goes down. You can experiment with these settings based on your needs/requirements:

holdtime-timer — how long the router will wait for a keepalive message before declaring a router offline. A shorter time will find an off-line router faster.

keepalive-timer — how often the router sends out keepalive messages to neighbor routers to maintain those sessions.

advertising-interval -- Set the minimum amount of time (in seconds) that the FortiGate unit waits before sending a BGP routing update to the BGP neighbor.

scan-time -- Configure the background scanner interval (in seconds) for next-hop route scanning.

as {integer}

Enter an integer to specify the local autonomous system (AS) number of the FortiGate. The range is from 1 to 4 294 967 295. A value of 0 disables BGP (disabled by default).

When `local_as_id` number is different than `remote-as` of the specified BGP neighbor, an External BGP (EBGP) session is started. Otherwise, an Internal BGP (IBGP) session is started.

bestpath-med-missing-as-worst {enable | disable}

Note: This field is only available when `bestpath-med-confed` is enabled.

Enable or disable (by default) treating any confederation path with a missing MED metric as the least preferred path.

client-to-client-reflection {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable client-to-client route reflection between IBGP peers. If the clients are fully meshed, route reflection may be disabled.

cluster-id {ipv4 address any}

Set the identifier of the route reflector in the cluster ID to which the FortiGate belongs. If 0 is specified, the FortiGate operates as the route reflector and its `router-id` value is used as the `cluster-id` value. If the FortiGate identifies its own cluster ID in the `CLUSTER_LIST` attribute of a received route, the route is ignored to prevent looping.

dampening {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) route-flap dampening on all BGP routes. A flapping route is unstable and continually transitions down and up (see RFC 2439).

If you enable dampening, you may optionally set `dampening-route-map` or define the associated values individually using the `dampening-*` fields.

dampening-max-suppress-time <minutes>

Note: This field is only available when `dampening` is enabled.

Set the maximum time that a route can be suppressed (1 to 255 minutes, default = 60). A route may continue to accumulate penalties while it is suppressed. However, the route cannot be suppressed longer than the maximum time.

dampening-reachability-half-life <minutes>

Note: This field is only available when `dampening` is enabled.

Set the time after which any penalty assigned to a reachable (but flapping) route is decreased by half (1 to 45 minutes, default = 15).

dampening-reuse {integer}

Note: This field is only available when `dampening` is enabled.

Set a dampening reuse limit based on the number of accumulated penalties (1 to 20 000, default = 750). If the penalty assigned to a flapping route decreases enough to fall below the specified limit, the route is not suppressed.

dampening-route-map <route map>

Note: This field is only available when `dampening` is enabled.

Specify the route map that contains criteria for dampening. You must create a route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

dampening-suppress {integer}

Note: This field is only available when `dampening` is enabled.

Set a dampening-suppression limit based on the number of accumulated penalties (1 to 20 000, default = 2 000). A route is suppressed (not advertised) when its penalty exceeds the specified limit.

dampening-unreachability-half-life <minutes>

Note: This field is only available when `dampening` is enabled.

Set the time after which the penalty on a route that is considered unreachable is decreased by half (1 to 45 minutes, default = 15).

distance-external {integer}

Set the administrative distance of EBGp routes (1 to 255, default = 20). If you set this value, you must also set `distance-internal` and `distance-local`.

distance-internal {integer}

Note: This field is only available when `distance-external` is set.

Set the administrative distance of IBGP routes (1 to 255, default = 200).

distance-local {integer}

Note: This field is only available when `distance-external` is set.

Set the administrative distance of local BGP routes (1 to 255, default = 200).

graceful-restart {disable | enable}

Enable or disable (by default) BGP support for the graceful restart feature.

Graceful restart limits the effects of software problems by allowing forwarding to continue when the control plane of the router fails. It also reduces routing flaps by stabilizing the network.

graceful-restart-time <seconds>

Note: This field is only available when `graceful-restart` is enabled.

Set the time needed for neighbors to restart after a graceful restart (1 to 3600 seconds, default = 120).

graceful-stalepath-time <seconds>

Note: This field is only available when `graceful-restart` is enabled.

Set the time to hold stale paths of restarting neighbors (1 to 3600 seconds, default = 360).

graceful-update-delay <seconds>

Note: This field is only available when `graceful-restart` is enabled.

Set the time that route advertisement and selection is delayed after a graceful restart (1 to 3600 seconds, default = 120)

router-id {ipv4 address any}

Specify a fixed identifier for the FortiGate. A value of 0.0.0.0 is not allowed. If `router-id` is not explicitly set, the highest IP address of the VDOM will be used.

config admin-distance

Use this subcommand to set administrative distance modifications for bgp routes.

route-list <access list>

The list of routes this distance will be applied to. The routes in this list must have been configured in the access list, see [router {access-list | access-list6}](#) on [page 466](#).

config aggregate-address, config aggregate-address6

Use this subcommand to set or unset BGP aggregate-address table parameters. The subcommand creates a BGP aggregate entry in the routing table. Use `aggregate-address` for IPv4 routing and `aggregate-address6` for IPv6 routing.

When you aggregate routes, routing becomes less precise because path details are not readily available for routing purposes. The aggregate address represents addresses in several autonomous systems. Aggregation reduces the length of the network mask until it masks only the bits that are common to all of the addresses being summarized.

as-set {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the generation of an unordered list of AS numbers to include in the path information. When enabled, a `set-atomic-aggregate` value does not have to be specified.

config neighbor

Use this subcommand to set or unset BGP neighbor configuration settings. The subcommand adds a BGP neighbor configuration to the FortiGate.

allowas-in {integer}

Note: This field is available when `allowas-in-enable` is enabled.

Set the maximum number of occurrences your AS number is allowed in (IPv4).

allowas-in6 {integer}

Note: This field is available when `allowas-in-enable6` is enabled.

Set the maximum number of occurrences your AS number is allowed in (IPv6).

attribute-unchanged {as-path | med | next-hop}

Propagate unchanged BGP attributes to the BGP neighbor using one of the following methods (IPv4):

- To advertise unchanged AS_PATH attributes, select `as-path`.
- To advertise unchanged MULTI_EXIT_DISC attributes, select `med`.
- To advertise the IP address of the next-hop router interface (even when the address has not changed), select `next-hop`.
- An empty set (default) is a supported value.

attribute-unchanged6 {as-path | med | next-hop}

Propagate unchanged BGP attributes to the BGP neighbor using one of the following methods (IPv6):

- To advertise unchanged AS_PATH attributes, select `as-path`.
- To advertise unchanged MULTI_EXIT_DISC attributes, select `med`.
- To advertise the IP address of the next-hop router interface (even when the address has not changed), select `next-hop`.
- An empty set (default) is a supported value.

capability-orf {none | receive | send | both}

Enable advertising of Outbound Routing Filter (ORF) prefix-list capability to the BGP neighbor using one of the following methods (IPv4)

- `none`: disable the advertising of ORF prefix-list capability (default).
- `receive`: enable receive capability.
- `send`: enable send capability.
- `both`: enable send and receive capability.

distribute-list-in <access list>

Limit route updates from the BGP neighbor based on the Network Layer Reachability Information (NLRI) defined in the specified access list (IPv4).

You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

distribute-list-in6 <access list>

Limit route updates from the BGP neighbor based on the Network Layer Reachability Information (NLRI) defined in the specified access list (IPv6).

You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

distribute-list-out <access list>

Limit route updates to the BGP neighbor based on the NLRI defined in the specified access list (IPv4).

You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

distribute-list-out6 <access list>

Limit route updates to the BGP neighbor based on the NLRI defined in the specified access list (IPv6).

You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

ebgp-multihop-ttl <hop counts>

Note: This field is available when `ebgp-enforce-multihop` is enabled.

Define a TTL value for BGP packets sent to the BGP neighbor (1 - 255 hop counts, default = 255)

filter-list-in <access list>

Limit inbound BGP routes according to the specified access list (IPv4). You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6}](#) on page 466.

filter-list-in6 <access list>

Limit inbound BGP routes according to the specified access list (IPv6). You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6}](#) on page 466.

filter-list-out <access list>

Limit outbound BGP routes according to the specified access list (IPv4). You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6}](#) on page 466.

filter-list-out6 <access list>

Limit outbound BGP routes according to the specified access list (IPv6). You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6}](#) on page 466.

holdtime-timer <seconds>

Note: This field is available when `graceful-restart` is enabled.

The amount of time that must expire before the FortiGate declares the BGP neighbor down (3 - 65 535 seconds, no default). This value overrides the global `holdtime-timer` value.

maximum-prefix {integer}

Set the maximum number of NLRI prefixes to accept from the BGP neighbor (1 - 4 294 967 295, no default) (IPv4). When the maximum is reached, the FortiGate disconnects the BGP neighbor.

Changing this value on the FortiGate does not disconnect the BGP neighbor. However, if the neighbor goes down because it reaches the maximum number of prefixes and you increase the value afterward, the neighbor will be reset.

maximum-prefix6 {integer}

Set the maximum number of NLRI prefixes to accept from the BGP neighbor (1 - 4 294 967 295, no default) (IPv6). When the maximum is reached, the FortiGate disconnects the BGP neighbor.

Changing this value on the FortiGate does not disconnect the BGP neighbor. However, if the neighbor goes down because it reaches the maximum number of prefixes and you increase the value afterward, the neighbor will be reset.

maximum-prefix-threshold {integer}

Note: This field is available when `maximum-prefix` is set.

Specify the threshold that must be exceeded before a warning message about the maximum number of NLRI prefixes is displayed (1 - 100, default = 75) (IPv4).

maximum-prefix-threshold6 {integer}

Note: This field is available when `maximum-prefix` is set.

Specify the threshold that must be exceeded before a warning message about the maximum number of NLRI prefixes is displayed (1 - 100, default = 75) (IPv6).

maximum-prefix-warning-only {enable | disable}

Note: This field is available when `maximum-prefix` is set.

Enable or disable (by default) the display of a warning when the `maximum-prefix-threshold` has been reached (IPv4).

maximum-prefix-warning-only6 {enable | disable}

Note: This field is available when `maximum-prefix6` is set.

Enable or disable (by default) the display of a warning when the `maximum-prefix-threshold` has been reached (IPv6).

prefix-list-in {string}

Limit route updates from a BGP neighbor based on the Network Layer Reachability Information (NLRI) in the specified prefix list (IPv4). The prefix list defines the NLRI prefix and length advertised in a route.

You must create the prefix list before it can be selected here, see [router {prefix-list | prefix-list6} on page 558](#).

prefix-list-in6 {string}

Limit route updates from a BGP neighbor based on the Network Layer Reachability Information (NLRI) in the specified prefix list (IPv6). The prefix list defines the NLRI prefix and length advertised in a route.

You must create the prefix list before it can be selected here, see [router {prefix-list | prefix-list6} on page 558](#).

prefix-list-out {string}

Limit route updates to a BGP neighbor based on the NLRI in the specified prefix list (IPv4). The prefix list defines the NLRI prefix and length advertised in a route.

You must create the prefix list before it can be selected here, see [router {prefix-list | prefix-list6} on page 558](#).

prefix-list-out6 {string}

Limit route updates to a BGP neighbor based on the NLRI in the specified prefix list (IPv6). The prefix list defines the NLRI prefix and length advertised in a route.

You must create the prefix list before it can be selected here, see [router {prefix-list | prefix-list6} on page 558](#).

remote-as {integer}

Adds a BGP neighbor to the FortiGate configuration and sets the AS number of the neighbor (1 - 65 535, no default).

If the number is identical to the AS number of the FortiGate, the FortiGate communicates with the neighbor using internal BGP (IBGP). Otherwise, the neighbor is an external peer and the FortiGate uses EBGP to communicate with the neighbor.

retain-stale-time <seconds>

Note: This field is available when `capability-graceful-restart` is enabled.

Specify the time that stale routes to the BGP neighbor will be retained (1 - 65 535 seconds, default = 0).

route-map-in <route map>

Limit route updates or change the attributes of route updates from the BGP neighbor according to the specified route map (IPv4). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

route-map-in6 <route map>

Limit route updates or change the attributes of route updates from the BGP neighbor according to the specified route map (IPv6). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

route-map-out <route map>

Limit route updates or change the attributes of route updates to the BGP neighbor according to the specified route map (IPv4). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

route-map-out6 <route map>

Limit route updates or change the attributes of route updates to the BGP neighbor according to the specified route map (IPv6). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

send-community {standard | extended | both | disable}

Enable sending the COMMUNITY attribute to the BGP neighbor using one of the following methods (IPv4):

- **standard**: advertise standard capabilities
- **extended**: advertise extended capabilities
- **both**: advertise extended and standard capabilities (default)
- **disable**: disable the advertising of the COMMUNITY attribute

send-community6 {standard | extended | both | disable}

Enable sending the COMMUNITY attribute to the BGP neighbor using one of the following methods (IPv6):

- **standard**: advertise standard capabilities
- **extended**: advertise extended capabilities
- **both**: advertise extended and standard capabilities (default)
- **disable**: disable the advertising of the COMMUNITY attribute

unsuppress-map <route map>

Specify the name of the route map to selectively unsuppress suppressed routes (IPv4). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

unsuppress-map6 <route map>

Specify the name of the route map to selectively unsuppress suppressed routes (IPv6). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

config conditional-advertise

Use this subcommand to set BGP conditional advertising.

advertise-routemap <route map>

Specify the name of the advertising route map. You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

condition-routemap <route map>

Specify the name of the condition route map. You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

condition-type {exist | non-exist}

Select the type of condition: `exist` if route map is matched (default), `non-exist` if route map is not matched.

config neighbor-group

Use this subcommand to set or unset BGP neighbor group settings.

allowas-in {integer}

Note: This field is available when `allowas-in-enable` is enabled.

Set the maximum number of occurrences your AS number is allowed in (IPv4).

allowas-in6 {integer}

Note: This field is available when `allowas-in-enable6` is enabled.

Set the maximum number of occurrences your AS number is allowed in (IPv6).

attribute-unchanged {as-path | med | next-hop}

Propagate unchanged BGP attributes to the BGP neighbor using one of the following methods (IPv4):

- To advertise unchanged AS_PATH attributes, select `as-path`.
- To advertise unchanged MULTI_EXIT_DISC attributes, select `med`.
- To advertise the IP address of the next-hop router interface (even when the address has not changed), select `next-hop`.
- An empty set (default) is a supported value.

attribute-unchanged6 {as-path | med | next-hop}

Propagate unchanged BGP attributes to the BGP neighbor using one of the following methods (IPv6):

- To advertise unchanged AS_PATH attributes, select `as-path`.
- To advertise unchanged MULTI_EXIT_DISC attributes, select `med`.
- To advertise the IP address of the next-hop router interface (even when the address has not changed), select `next-hop`.
- An empty set (default) is a supported value.

capability-orf {none | receive | send | both}

Enable advertising of Outbound Routing Filter (ORF) prefix-list capability to the BGP neighbor using one of the following methods (IPv4)

- `none`: disable the advertising of ORF prefix-list capability (default).
- `receive`: enable receive capability.
- `send`: enable send capability.
- `both`: enable send and receive capability.

default-originate-routemap <route map>

Set the route map used to specify criteria to originate default (IPv4). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

default-originate-routemap6 <route map>

Set the route map used to specify criteria to originate default (IPv6). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

distribute-list-in <access list>

Limit route updates from the BGP neighbor based on the Network Layer Reachability Information (NLRI) defined in the specified access list (IPv4). You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

distribute-list-in6 <access list>

Limit route updates from the BGP neighbor based on the Network Layer Reachability Information (NLRI) defined in the specified access list (IPv6). You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

distribute-list-out <access list>

Limit route updates to the BGP neighbor based on the NLRI defined in the specified access list (IPv4). You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

distribute-list-out6 <access list>

Limit route updates to the BGP neighbor based on the NLRI defined in the specified access list (IPv6). You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

ebgp-multihop-ttl <hop counts>

Note: This field is available when `ebgp-enforce-multihop` is enabled.

Define a TTL value for BGP packets sent to the BGP neighbor (1 - 255 hop counts, default = 255)

filter-list-in <access list>

Limit inbound BGP routes according to the specified AS-path list (IPv4). You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

filter-list-in6 <access list>

Limit inbound BGP routes according to the specified AS-path list (IPv6).

You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

filter-list-out <access list>

Limit outbound BGP routes according to the specified AS-path list (IPv4).

You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

filter-list-out6 <access list>

Limit outbound BGP routes according to the specified AS-path list (IPv6).

You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

holdtime-timer {integer}

Note: This field is available when `graceful-restart` is enabled.

The amount of time that must expire before the FortiGate declares the BGP neighbor down (3 - 65 535 seconds, no default). This value overrides the global `holdtime-timer` value.

maximum-prefix {integer}

Set the maximum number of NLRI prefixes to accept from the BGP neighbor (1 - 4 294 967 295, no default) (IPv4). When the maximum is reached, the FortiGate disconnects the BGP neighbor.

Changing this value on the FortiGate does not disconnect the BGP neighbor. However, if the neighbor goes down because it reaches the maximum number of prefixes and you increase the value afterward, the neighbor will be reset.

maximum-prefix6 {integer}

Set the maximum number of NLRI prefixes to accept from the BGP neighbor (1 - 4 294 967 295, no default) (IPv6). When the maximum is reached, the FortiGate disconnects the BGP neighbor.

Changing this value on the FortiGate does not disconnect the BGP neighbor. However, if the neighbor goes down because it reaches the maximum number of prefixes and you increase the value afterward, the neighbor will be reset.

maximum-prefix-threshold {integer}

Note: This field is available when `maximum-prefix` is set.

Specify the threshold that must be exceeded before a warning message about the maximum number of NLRI prefixes is displayed (1 - 100, default = 75) (IPv4).

maximum-prefix-threshold6 {integer}

Note: This field is available when `maximum-prefix` is set.

Specify the threshold that must be exceeded before a warning message about the maximum number of NLRI prefixes is displayed (1 - 100, default = 75) (IPv6).

maximum-prefix-warning-only {enable | disable}

Note: This field is available when `maximum-prefix` is set.

Enable or disable (by default) the display of a warning when the `maximum-prefix-threshold` has been reached (IPv4).

maximum-prefix-warning-only6 {enable | disable}

Note: This field is available when `maximum-prefix6` is set.

Enable or disable (by default) the display of a warning when the `maximum-prefix-threshold` has been reached (IPv6).

prefix-list-in {string}

Limit route updates from a BGP neighbor based on the Network Layer Reachability Information (NLRI) in the specified prefix list (IPv4). The prefix list defines the NLRI prefix and length advertised in a route.

You must create the prefix list before it can be selected here, see [router {prefix-list | prefix-list6}](#) on page 558.

prefix-list-in6 {string}

Limit route updates from a BGP neighbor based on the Network Layer Reachability Information (NLRI) in the specified prefix list (IPv6). The prefix list defines the NLRI prefix and length advertised in a route.

You must create the prefix list before it can be selected here, see [router {prefix-list | prefix-list6} on page 558](#).

prefix-list-out {string}

Limit route updates to a BGP neighbor based on the NLRI in the specified prefix list (IPv4). The prefix list defines the NLRI prefix and length advertised in a route.

You must create the prefix list before it can be selected here, see [router {prefix-list | prefix-list6} on page 558](#).

prefix-list-out6 {string}

Limit route updates to a BGP neighbor based on the NLRI in the specified prefix list (IPv6). The prefix list defines the NLRI prefix and length advertised in a route.

You must create the prefix list before it can be selected here, see [router {prefix-list | prefix-list6} on page 558](#).

remote-as {integer}

Adds a BGP neighbor to the FortiGate configuration and sets the AS number of the neighbor (1 - 65 535, no default).

If the number is identical to the AS number of the FortiGate, the FortiGate communicates with the neighbor using internal BGP (IBGP). Otherwise, the neighbor is an external peer and the FortiGate uses EBGP to communicate with the neighbor.

retain-stale-time {integer}

Note: This field is available when `capability-graceful-restart` is enabled.

Specify the time that stale routes to the BGP neighbor will be retained (1 - 65 535 seconds, default = 0).

route-map-in <route map>

Limit route updates or change the attributes of route updates from the BGP neighbor according to the specified route map (IPv4). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

route-map-in6 <route map>

Limit route updates or change the attributes of route updates from the BGP neighbor according to the specified route map (IPv6). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

route-map-out <route map>

Limit route updates or change the attributes of route updates to the BGP neighbor according to the specified route map (IPv4). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

route-map-out6 <route map>

Limit route updates or change the attributes of route updates to the BGP neighbor according to the specified route map (IPv6). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

route-reflector-client {enable | disable}

Note: This field is available when `remote-as` is identical to the FortiGate AS number.

Enable or disable (by default) the operation of the FortiGate unit as a route reflector and identify the BGP neighbor as a route reflector client (IPv4).

Inbound routes for route reflectors can change the `next-hop`, `local-preference`, `med`, and `as-path` attributes of IBGP routes for local route selection, while outbound IBGP routes do not take into effect these attributes.

route-reflector-client6 {enable | disable}

Note: This field is available when `remote-as` is identical to the FortiGate AS number.

Enable or disable (by default) the operation of the FortiGate unit as a route reflector and identify the BGP neighbor as a route reflector client (IPv6).

Inbound routes for route reflectors can change the `next-hop`, `local-preference`, `med`, and `as-path` attributes of IBGP routes for local route selection, while outbound IBGP routes do not take into effect these attributes.

send-community {standard | extended | both | disable}

Enable sending the COMMUNITY attribute to the BGP neighbor using one of the following methods (IPv4):

- `standard`: advertise standard capabilities
- `extended`: advertise extended capabilities

- `both`: advertise extended and standard capabilities (default)
- `disable`: disable the advertising of the COMMUNITY attribute

send-community6 {standard | extended | both | disable}

Enable sending the COMMUNITY attribute to the BGP neighbor using one of the following methods (IPv6):

- `standard`: advertise standard capabilities
- `extended`: advertise extended capabilities
- `both`: advertise extended and standard capabilities (default)
- `disable`: disable the advertising of the COMMUNITY attribute

unsuppress-map <route map>

Specify the name of the route map to selectively unsuppress suppressed routes (IPv4). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

unsuppress-map6 <route map>

Specify the name of the route map to selectively unsuppress suppressed routes (IPv6). You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

config neighbor-range, config neighbor-range6

Use this subcommand to set or unset BGP neighbor range settings. Use `neighbor-range` for IPv4 and `neighbor-range6` for IPv6.

neighbor-group {string}

Specify the name of the neighbor group. You must create the group before it may be selected here.

config network, config network6

Use this subcommand to set or unset BGP network configuration parameters. The subcommand is used to advertise a BGP network by specifying the IP addresses making up the local BGP network. Use `network` for IPv4 and `network6` for IPv6.

route-map <route map>

Specify the name of the route map that will be used to modify the attributes of the route before it is advertised. You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

config redistribute, config redistribute6 {connected | isis | static | rip | ospf}

Use this subcommand to set or unset BGP redistribution table parameters. Use `redistribute` for IPv4 and `redistribute6` for IPv6.

You can enable BGP to provide connectivity between connected, static, RIP, and/or OSPF routes. BGP redistributes the routes from one protocol to another. When a large internetwork is divided into multiple routing domains, use the subcommand to redistribute routes to the various domains.

The BGP redistribution table contains five static entries. You cannot add entries to the table. The entries are defined as follows:

- `connected`: Redistribute routes learned from a direct connection to the destination network
- `isis`: Redistribute routes learned from ISIS
- `static`: Redistribute the static routes defined in the FortiGate unit routing table
- `rip`: Redistribute routes learned from RIP
- `ospf`: Redistribute routes learned from OSPF

route-map <route map>

Specify the name of the route map that identifies the routes to redistribute. If a route map is not specified, all routes are redistributed to BGP. You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

router community-list

Use this command to identify BGP routes according to their COMMUNITY attributes (see RFC 1997). Each entry in the community list defines a rule for matching and selecting routes based on the setting of the COMMUNITY attribute. The default rule in a community list (which the FortiGate applies last) denies the matching of all routes.

```
config router community-list
  edit {name}
  # Configure community lists.
  set name {string}    Community list name. size[35]
  set type {standard | expanded}  Community list type (standard or expanded).
                                standard  Standard community list type.
                                expanded  Expanded community list type.
  config rule
    edit {id}
    # Community list rule.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set action {deny | permit}  Permit or deny route-based operations, based on the route's COMMUNITY
```

```
attribute.  
    deny      Deny route-based operations.  
    permit    Permit or allow route-based operations.  
    set regexp {string}  Ordered list of COMMUNITY attributes as a regular expression. size[255]  
    set match {string}   Community specifications for matching a reserved community. size[255]  
next  
next  
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

type {standard | expanded}

Specify the type of community to match. If you select `expanded`, you must also specify a regular expression.

match {string}

Note: This field is available when `type` is set to `standard`.

Specify the criteria for matching a reserved community.

- Use decimal notation to match one or more COMMUNITY attributes having the syntax `AA:NN`, where `AA` represents an AS, and `NN` is the community identifier. Delimit complex expressions with double-quotation marks (for example, `"123:234 345:456"`).
- To match all routes in the Internet community, type `internet`.
- To match all routes in the LOCAL_AS community, type `local-as`. Matched routes are not advertised locally.
- To select all routes in the NO_ADVERTISE community, type `no-advertise`. Matched routes are not advertised.
- To select all routes in the NO_EXPORT community, type `no-export`. Matched routes are not advertised to EBGp peers. If a confederation is configured, the routes are advertised within the confederation.

regexp {string}

Note: This field is available when `type` is set to `expanded`.

Specify an ordered list of COMMUNITY attributes as a regular expression. The value or values are used to match a community. Delimit a complex regular expression value using double-quotation marks.

router isis

You can enable and configure IS-IS on your FortiGate if this routing protocol is in use on your network. IS-IS is described in [RFC 1142](#).



For each routing protocol, you can also use a redistribute command to redistribute IS-IS routes with the other protocol.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set default-originate6 {enable disable} set adjacency-check6 {enable disable} set redistribute6-l1 {enable disable} set redistribute6-l2 {enable disable} set redistribute6-l1-list <integer> set redistribute6-l2-list <integer></pre>	New IPv6 IS-IS related global settings.
<pre>set adv-passive-only {enable disable} set adv-passive-only6 {enable disable}</pre>	Enable or disable (by default) IS-IS advertisement of IPv4 and/or IPv6 passive interfaces only.
<pre>config redistribute6 <protocol> edit <protocol-name> set status {enable disable} set metric <integer> set metric-type {external internal} set level {level-1-2 level-1 level-2} set routemap <name> next</pre>	New IPv6 redistribute option.

Command	Description
...	
<pre>config summary-address6 edit <name> set prefix6 <ipv6-prefix> set level {level-1-2 level-1 level-2} next ...</pre>	New IPv6 IS-IS summary address option.
<pre>config isis-interface edit <name> set status6 {enable disable} next ...</pre>	Enable or disable (by default) IPv6 for the IS-IS interface.
<pre>config isis-interface edit <name> set network-type {loopback ...} next ...</pre>	New loopback network type for the IS-IS interface.

```
config router isis
  set is-type {level-1-2 | level-1 | level-2-only}  IS type.
    level-1-2      Level 1 and 2.
    level-1        Level 1 only.
    level-2-only   Level 2 only.
  set adv-passive-only {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IS-IS advertisement of passive interfaces only.
  set adv-passive-only6 {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IPv6 IS-IS advertisement of passive interfaces only.
  set auth-mode-l1 {password | md5}  Level 1 authentication mode.
    password  Password.
    md5       MD5.
  set auth-mode-l2 {password | md5}  Level 2 authentication mode.
    password  Password.
    md5       MD5.
  set auth-password-l1 {password_string}  Authentication password for level 1 PDUs. size[128]
  set auth-password-l2 {password_string}  Authentication password for level 2 PDUs. size[128]
  set auth-keychain-l1 {string}  Authentication key-chain for level 1 PDUs. size[35] - datasource(s): router.key-chain.name
```

```

    set auth-keychain-l2 {string}    Authentication key-chain for level 2 PDUs. size[35] - datasource(s): router.key-
chain.name
    set auth-sendonly-l1 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable level 1 authentication send-only.
    set auth-sendonly-l2 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable level 2 authentication send-only.
    set ignore-lsp-errors {enable | disable}    Enable/disable ignoring of LSP errors with bad checksums.
    set lsp-gen-interval-l1 {integer}    Minimum interval for level 1 LSP regenerating. range[1-120]
    set lsp-gen-interval-l2 {integer}    Minimum interval for level 2 LSP regenerating. range[1-120]
    set lsp-refresh-interval {integer}    LSP refresh time in seconds. range[1-65535]
    set max-lsp-lifetime {integer}    Maximum LSP lifetime in seconds. range[350-65535]
    set spf-interval-exp-l1 {string}    Level 1 SPF calculation delay.
    set spf-interval-exp-l2 {string}    Level 2 SPF calculation delay.
    set dynamic-hostname {enable | disable}    Enable/disable dynamic hostname.
    set adjacency-check {enable | disable}    Enable/disable adjacency check.
    set adjacency-check6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv6 adjacency check.
    set overload-bit {enable | disable}    Enable/disable signal other routers not to use us in SPF.
    set overload-bit-suppress {external | interlevel}    Suppress overload-bit for the specific prefixes.
        external    External.
        interlevel    Inter-level.
    set overload-bit-on-startup {integer}    Overload-bit only temporarily after reboot. range[5-86400]
    set default-originate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable distribution of default route information.
    set default-originate6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable distribution of default IPv6 route information.
    set metric-style {option}    Use old-style (ISO 10589) or new-style packet formats
        narrow        Use old style of TLVs with narrow metric.
        wide        Use new style of TLVs to carry wider metric.
        transition    Send and accept both styles of TLVs during transition.
        narrow-transition    Narrow and accept both styles of TLVs during transition.
        narrow-transition-l1    Narrow-transition level-1 only.
        narrow-transition-l2    Narrow-transition level-2 only.
        wide-l1        Wide level-1 only.
        wide-l2        Wide level-2 only.
        wide-transition    Wide and accept both styles of TLVs during transition.
        wide-transition-l1    Wide-transition level-1 only.
        wide-transition-l2    Wide-transition level-2 only.
        transition-l1    Transition level-1 only.
        transition-l2    Transition level-2 only.
    set redistribute-l1 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable redistribution of level 1 routes into level 2.
    set redistribute-l1-list {string}    Access-list for route redistribution from l1 to l2. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.access-list.name
    set redistribute-l2 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable redistribution of level 2 routes into level 1.
    set redistribute-l2-list {string}    Access-list for route redistribution from l2 to l1. size[35] - datasource(s):

```



```
router.access-list.name
  set redistribute6-l1 {enable | disable}  Enable/disable redistribution of level 1 IPv6 routes into level 2.
  set redistribute6-l1-list {string}  Access-list for IPv6 route redistribution from l1 to l2. size[35] - datasource
(s): router.access-list6.name
  set redistribute6-l2 {enable | disable}  Enable/disable redistribution of level 2 IPv6 routes into level 1.
  set redistribute6-l2-list {string}  Access-list for IPv6 route redistribution from l2 to l1. size[35] - datasource
(s): router.access-list6.name
  config isis-net
    edit {id}
      # IS-IS net configuration.
      set id {integer}  isis-net ID. range[0-4294967295]
      set net {string}  IS-IS net xx.xxxx. ... .xxxx.xx.
    next
  config isis-interface
    edit {name}
      # IS-IS interface configuration.
      set name {string}  IS-IS interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
      set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable interface for IS-IS.
      set status6 {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IPv6 interface for IS-IS.
      set network-type {broadcast | point-to-point | loopback}  IS-IS interface's network type
        broadcast  Broadcast.
        point-to-point  Point-to-point.
        loopback  Loopback.
      set circuit-type {level-1-2 | level-1 | level-2}  IS-IS interface's circuit type
        level-1-2  Level 1 and 2.
        level-1  Level 1.
        level-2  Level 2.
      set csnp-interval-l1 {integer}  Level 1 CSNP interval. range[1-65535]
      set csnp-interval-l2 {integer}  Level 2 CSNP interval. range[1-65535]
      set hello-interval-l1 {integer}  Level 1 hello interval. range[0-65535]
      set hello-interval-l2 {integer}  Level 2 hello interval. range[0-65535]
      set hello-multiplier-l1 {integer}  Level 1 multiplier for Hello holding time. range[2-100]
      set hello-multiplier-l2 {integer}  Level 2 multiplier for Hello holding time. range[2-100]
      set hello-padding {enable | disable}  Enable/disable padding to IS-IS hello packets.
      set lsp-interval {integer}  LSP transmission interval (milliseconds). range[1-4294967295]
      set lsp-retransmit-interval {integer}  LSP retransmission interval (sec). range[1-65535]
      set metric-l1 {integer}  Level 1 metric for interface. range[1-63]
      set metric-l2 {integer}  Level 2 metric for interface. range[1-63]
      set wide-metric-l1 {integer}  Level 1 wide metric for interface. range[1-16777214]
      set wide-metric-l2 {integer}  Level 2 wide metric for interface. range[1-16777214]
```

```

        set auth-password-l1 {password_string}    Authentication password for level 1 PDUs. size[128]
        set auth-password-l2 {password_string}    Authentication password for level 2 PDUs. size[128]
        set auth-keychain-l1 {string}             Authentication key-chain for level 1 PDUs. size[35] - datasource(s): router-
.key-chain.name
        set auth-keychain-l2 {string}             Authentication key-chain for level 2 PDUs. size[35] - datasource(s): router-
.key-chain.name
        set auth-send-only-l1 {enable | disable}   Enable/disable authentication send-only for level 1 PDUs.
        set auth-send-only-l2 {enable | disable}   Enable/disable authentication send-only for level 2 PDUs.
        set auth-mode-l1 {md5 | password}          Level 1 authentication mode.
            md5            MD5.
            password       Password.
        set auth-mode-l2 {md5 | password}          Level 2 authentication mode.
            md5            MD5.
            password       Password.
        set priority-l1 {integer}                  Level 1 priority. range[0-127]
        set priority-l2 {integer}                  Level 2 priority. range[0-127]
        set mesh-group {enable | disable}          Enable/disable IS-IS mesh group.
        set mesh-group-id {integer}                Mesh group ID <0-4294967295>, 0: mesh-group blocked. range[0-4294967295]
    next
config summary-address
    edit {id}
    # IS-IS summary addresses.
        set id {integer}    Summary address entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set prefix {ipv4 classnet any}    Prefix.
        set level {level-1-2 | level-1 | level-2}    Level.
            level-1-2    Level 1 and 2.
            level-1      Level 1.
            level-2      Level 2.
    next
config summary-address6
    edit {id}
    # IS-IS IPv6 summary address.
        set id {integer}    Prefix entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set prefix6 {ipv6 prefix}    IPv6 prefix.
        set level {level-1-2 | level-1 | level-2}    Level.
            level-1-2    Level 1 and 2.
            level-1      Level 1.
            level-2      Level 2.
    next
config redistribute

```

```

edit {protocol}
# IS-IS redistribute protocols.
  set protocol {string}    Protocol name. size[35]
  set status {enable | disable}  Status.
  set metric {integer}    Metric. range[0-4261412864]
  set metric-type {external | internal}  Metric type.
    external  External.
    internal  Internal.
  set level {level-1-2 | level-1 | level-2}  Level.
    level-1-2  Level 1 and 2.
    level-1    Level 1.
    level-2    Level 2.
  set routemap {string}    Route map name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
next
config redistribute6
edit {protocol}
# IS-IS IPv6 redistribution for routing protocols.
  set protocol {string}    Protocol name. size[35]
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable redistribution.
  set metric {integer}    Metric. range[0-4261412864]
  set metric-type {external | internal}  Metric type.
    external  External metric type.
    internal  Internal metric type.
  set level {level-1-2 | level-1 | level-2}  Level.
    level-1-2  Level 1 and 2.
    level-1    Level 1.
    level-2    Level 2.
  set routemap {string}    Route map name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

auth-keychain-l1 {string}

Note: This field is available when `auth-mode-l1` is set to `md5`.

Authentication key-chain for level 1 PDUs. You must create the key-chain before it can be selected here, see [router key-chain on page 511](#).

auth-keychain-l2 {string}

Note: This field is available when `auth-mode-l2` is set to `md5`.

Authentication key-chain for level 2 PDUs. You must create the key-chain before it can be selected here, see [router key-chain on page 511](#).

auth-password-l1 {string}

Note: This field is available when `auth-mode-l1` is set to `password`.

Authentication password for level 1 PDUs.

auth-password-l2 {string}

Note: This field is available when `auth-mode-l2` is set to `password`.

Authentication password for level 2 PDUs.

is-type {level-1 | level-1-2 | level-2-only}

Set the ISIS level to use, choosing one of the following:

- `level-1`: intra-area
- `level-1-2`: both intra- and inter-area (default)
- `level-2-only`: inter-area

metric-style {narrow | narrow-transition | narrow-transition-l1 | narrow-transition-l2 | transition | transition-l1 | transition-l2 | wide | wide-l1 | wide-l2 | wide-transition | wide-transition-l1 | wide-transition-l2}

Use old-style (ISO 10589) or new-style packet formats.

- `narrow`: Use old style of TLVs with narrow metric (default)
- `narrow-transition`: narrow, and accept both styles of TLVs during transition
- `narrow-transition-l1`: narrow-transition level-1 only
- `narrow-transition-l2`: narrow-transition level-2 only
- `transition`: Send and accept both styles of TLVs during transition
- `transition-l1`: transition level-1 only
- `transition-l2`: transition level-2 only

- `wide`: Use new style of TLVs to carry wider metric
- `wide-l1`: wide level-1 only
- `wide-l2`: wide level-2 only
- `wide-transition`: wide, and accept both styles of TLVs during transition
- `wide-transition-l1`: wide-transition level-1 only
- `wide-transition-l2`: wide-transition level-2 only

overload-bit-on-startup <seconds>

Set overload-bit only temporarily after reboot (5 - 86 400 seconds).

To disable, use the command `unset overload-bit-on-startup`; the command `set overload-bit-on-startup 0` is invalid.

overload-bit-suppress {external | interlevel}

Suppress overload-bit for the specific prefixes.

To disable, use the command `unset overload-bit-suppress`.

redistribute-l1 {enable | disable}

Redistribute level 1 routes into level 2. If enabled, configure `redistribute-l1-list`.

redistribute-l1-list <access-list>

Note: This field is available when `redistribute-l1` is enabled.

Access-list for redistribute l1 to l2. You must create the access-list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6}](#) on page 466.

redistribute-l2 {enable | disable}

Redistribute level 2 routes into level 1. If enabled, configure `redistribute-l2-list`.

redistribute-l2-list <access-list>

Note: This field is available when `redistribute-l2` is enabled.

Access-list for redistribute l2 to l1. You must create the access-list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6}](#) on page 466.

config isis-interface

Use this subcommand to configure FortiGate interfaces for IS-IS.

auth-keychain-l1 {string}

Note: This field is available when `auth-mode-l1` is set to `md5`.

Authentication key-chain for level 1 PDUs. You must create the key-chain before it can be selected here, see [router key-chain on page 511](#).

auth-keychain-l2 {string}

Note: This field is available when `auth-mode-l2` is set to `md5`.

Authentication key-chain for level 2 PDUs. You must create the key-chain before it can be selected here, see [router key-chain on page 511](#).

auth-password-l1 {string}

Note: This field is available when `auth-mode-l1` is set to `password`.

Authentication password for level 1 PDUs.

auth-password-l2 {string}

Note: This field is available when `auth-mode-l2` is set to `password`.

Authentication password for level 2 PDUs.

circuit-type {level-1 | level-1-2 | level-2-only}

Set the ISIS circuit type to use for the interface, choosing one of the following:

- `level-1`: intra-area
- `level-1-2`: both intra- and inter-area (default)
- `level-2-only`: inter-area

config {redistribute | redistribute6} {bgp | connected | ospf | rip | static}

Use these subcommands to redistribute IPv4 and/or IPv6 routes from other routing protocols using IS-IS.

level {level-1 | level-1-2 | level-2}

Set the ISIS level type to use for distributing routes, choosing one of the following:

- `level-1`: intra-area
- `level-1-2`: both intra- and inter-area
- `level-2`: inter-area (default)

route-map {string}

Enter a route map name. You must create the route map before it can be selected here, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

config {summary-address | summary-address6}

Use these subcommands to add IPv4 and/or IPv6 IS-IS summary addresses.

level {level-1 | level-1-2 | level-2}

Set the ISIS level to use for the summary database, choosing one of the following:

- `level-1`: intra-area
- `level-1-2`: both intra- and inter-area
- `level-2`: inter-area (default)

router key-chain

Use this command to manage RIP version 2 authentication keys.

RIP version 2 uses authentication keys to ensure that the routing information exchanged between routers is reliable. For authentication to work, both the sending and receiving routers must be set to use authentication, and must be configured with the same keys.

A key-chain is a list of one or more keys and the send and receive lifetimes for each key. Keys are used for authenticating routing packets only during the specified lifetimes. The FortiGate migrates from one key to the next according to the scheduled send and receive lifetimes. The sending and receiving routers should have their system dates and times synchronized, but overlapping the key lifetimes ensures that a key is always available even if there is some difference in the system times.

```
config router key-chain
    edit {name}
        # Configure key-chain.
        set name {string}    Key-chain name. size[35]
        config key
            edit {id}
                # Configuration method to edit key settings.
                set id {string}    Key ID (0 - 2147483647). size[10]
                set accept-lifetime {string}    Lifetime of received authentication key (format: hh:mm:ss day month
year).
                set send-lifetime {string}    Lifetime of sent authentication key (format: hh:mm:ss day month year).
                set key-string {string}    Password for the key (max. = 35 characters). size[35]
            next
        next
    end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

accept-lifetime <start> <end>

Set the time period during which the key can be received. The start time has the syntax `hh:mm:ss day month year`. The end time provides a choice of three settings: `hh:mm:ss day month year`; a duration from 1 to 2147483646 seconds; or `infinite` for a key that never expires

The valid settings for `hh:mm:ss day month year` are:

- `hh: 0 - 23`
- `mm: 0 - 59`
- `ss: 0 - 59`
- `day: 1 - 31`
- `month: 1 - 12`
- `year: 1993 - 2035`

send-lifetime <start> <end>

Set the time period during which the key can be received. The start time has the syntax `hh:mm:ss day month year`. The end time provides a choice of three settings: `hh:mm:ss day month year`; a duration from 1 to 2147483646 seconds; or `infinite` for a key that never expires

The valid settings for `hh:mm:ss day month year` are:

- `hh`: 0 - 23
- `mm`: 0 - 59
- `ss`: 0 - 59
- `day`: 1 - 31
- `month`: 1 - 12
- `year`: 1993 - 2035

router multicast

A FortiGate can operate as a Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) version 2 router. FortiOS supports PIM sparse mode (RFC 4601) and PIM dense mode (RFC 3973) and can service multicast servers or receivers on the network segment to which a FortiGate interface is connected.

You can configure a FortiGate unit to support PIM using the `config router multicast` CLI command. When PIM is enabled, the FortiGate unit allocates memory to manage mapping information. The FortiGate unit communicates with neighboring PIM routers to acquire mapping information and if required, processes the multicast traffic associated with specific multicast groups.



Multicast routing is not supported in Transparent mode.

To configure a PIM domain:

1. If you will be using sparse mode, determine appropriate paths for multicast packets.
2. Make a note of the interfaces that will be PIM-enabled. These interfaces may run a unicast routing protocol.
3. If you will be using sparse mode and want multicast packets to be handled by specific (static) RPs, record the IP addresses of the PIM-enabled interfaces on those RPs.
4. Enable PIM version 2 on all participating routers between the source and receivers. Use the `config router multicast` command to set global operating parameters.
5. Configure the PIM routers that have good connections throughout the PIM domain to be candidate BSRs.

6. If sparse mode is enabled, configure one or more of the PIM routers to be candidate RPs.
7. If required, adjust the default settings of PIM-enabled interface(s).



To support PIM communications, the sending/receiving applications and all connecting PIM routers in between must be enabled with PIM version 2. PIM can use static routes, RIP, OSPF, or BGP to forward multicast packets to their destinations. To enable source-to-destination packet delivery, either sparse mode or dense mode must be enabled on the PIM-router interfaces. Sparse mode routers cannot send multicast messages to dense mode routers. In addition, if a FortiGate is located between a source and a PIM router, two PIM routers, or is connected directly to a receiver, you must create a firewall policy manually to pass encapsulated (multicast) packets or decapsulated data (IP traffic) between the source and destination.

```
config router multicast
    set route-threshold {integer}    Generate warnings when the number of multicast routes exceeds this number, must not
    be greater than route-limit. range[1-2147483647]
    set route-limit {integer}    Maximum number of multicast routes. range[1-2147483647]
    set multicast-routing {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IP multicast routing.
    config pim-sm-global
        set message-interval {integer}    Period of time between sending periodic PIM join/prune messages in seconds (1 -
        65535, default = 60). range[1-65535]
        set join-prune-holdtime {integer}    Join/prune holdtime (1 - 65535, default = 210). range[1-65535]
        set accept-register-list {string}    Sources allowed to register packets with this Rendezvous Point (RP). size
        [35] - datasource(s): router.access-list.name
        set accept-source-list {string}    Sources allowed to send multicast traffic. size[35] - datasource(s): router-
        .access-list.name
        set bsr-candidate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allowing this router to become a bootstrap router (BSR).
        set bsr-interface {string}    Interface to advertise as candidate BSR. size[15] - datasource(s): sys-
        tem.interface.name
        set bsr-priority {integer}    BSR priority (0 - 255, default = 0). range[0-255]
        set bsr-hash {integer}    BSR hash length (0 - 32, default = 10). range[0-32]
        set bsr-allow-quick-refresh {enable | disable}    Enable/disable accept BSR quick refresh packets from neighbors.
        set cisco-register-checksum {enable | disable}    Checksum entire register packet(for old Cisco IOS com-
        patibility).
        set cisco-register-checksum-group {string}    Cisco register checksum only these groups. size[35] - datasource
        (s): router.access-list.name
        set cisco-crp-prefix {enable | disable}    Enable/disable making candidate RP compatible with old Cisco IOS.
        set cisco-ignore-rp-set-priority {enable | disable}    Use only hash for RP selection (compatibility with old
        Cisco IOS).
        set register-rp-reachability {enable | disable}    Enable/disable check RP is reachable before registering pack-
        ets.
```

```

    set register-source {disable | interface | ip-address}  Override source address in register packets.
        disable      Use source address of RPF interface.
        interface    Use primary IP of an interface.
        ip-address   Use a local IP address.
    set register-source-interface {string}  Override with primary interface address. size[15] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name
    set register-source-ip {ipv4 address}  Override with local IP address.
    set register-supression {integer}  Period of time to honor register-stop message (1 - 65535 sec, default = 60).
range[1-65535]
    set null-register-retries {integer}  Maximum retries of null register (1 - 20, default = 1). range[1-20]
    set rp-register-keepalive {integer}  Timeout for RP receiving data on (S,G) tree (1 - 65535 sec, default =
185). range[1-65535]
    set spt-threshold {enable | disable}  Enable/disable switching to source specific trees.
    set spt-threshold-group {string}  Groups allowed to switch to source tree. size[35] - datasource(s): router-
.access-list.name
    set ssm {enable | disable}  Enable/disable source specific multicast.
    set ssm-range {string}  Groups allowed to source specific multicast. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-
list.name
    set register-rate-limit {integer}  Limit of packets/sec per source registered through this RP (0 - 65535,
default = 0 which means unlimited). range[0-65535]
    config rp-address
        edit {id}
        # Statically configure RP addresses.
        set id {integer}  ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set ip-address {ipv4 address}  RP router address.
        set group {string}  Groups to use this RP. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list.name
    next
    config interface
        edit {name}
        # PIM interfaces.
        set name {string}  Interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        set ttl-threshold {integer}  Minimum TTL of multicast packets that will be forwarded (applied only to new
multicast routes) (1 - 255, default = 1). range[1-255]
        set pim-mode {sparse-mode | dense-mode}  PIM operation mode.
            sparse-mode  sparse-mode
            dense-mode  dense-mode
        set passive {enable | disable}  Enable/disable listening to IGMP but not participating in PIM.
        set bfd {enable | disable}  Enable/disable Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) Bidirectional Forwarding
Detection (BFD).
        set neighbour-filter {string}  Routers acknowledged as neighbor routers. size[35] - datasource(s):

```

```

router.access-list.name
    set hello-interval {integer}    Interval between sending PIM hello messages (0 - 65535 sec, default = 30).
range[1-65535]
    set hello-holdtime {integer}    Time before old neighbor information expires (0 - 65535 sec, default = 105).
range[1-65535]
    set cisco-exclude-genid {enable | disable}    Exclude GenID from hello packets (compatibility with old Cisco
IOS).
    set dr-priority {integer}    DR election priority. range[1-4294967295]
    set propagation-delay {integer}    Delay flooding packets on this interface (100 - 5000 msec, default = 500).
range[100-5000]
    set state-refresh-interval {integer}    Interval between sending state-refresh packets (1 - 100 sec, default
= 60). range[1-100]
    set rp-candidate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable compete to become RP in elections.
    set rp-candidate-group {string}    Multicast groups managed by this RP. size[35] - datasource(s): router-
.access-list.name
    set rp-candidate-priority {integer}    Router's priority as RP. range[0-255]
    set rp-candidate-interval {integer}    RP candidate advertisement interval (1 - 16383 sec, default = 60).
range[1-16383]
    set multicast-flow {string}    Acceptable source for multicast group. size[35] - datasource(s): router-
.multicast-flow.name
    set static-group {string}    Statically set multicast groups to forward out. size[35] - datasource(s): router-
.multicast-flow.name
    config join-group
        edit {address}
            # Join multicast groups.
            set address {ipv4 address any}    Multicast group IP address.
        next
    config igmp
        set access-group {string}    Groups IGMP hosts are allowed to join. size[35] - datasource(s): router-
.access-list.name
        set version {3 | 2 | 1}    Maximum version of IGMP to support.
            3    Version 3 and lower.
            2    Version 2 and lower.
            1    Version 1.
        set immediate-leave-group {string}    Groups to drop membership for immediately after receiving IGMPv2
leave. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list.name
        set last-member-query-interval {integer}    Timeout between IGMPv2 leave and removing group (1 - 65535
msec, default = 1000). range[1-65535]
        set last-member-query-count {integer}    Number of group specific queries before removing group (2 - 7,
default = 2). range[2-7]

```

```
        set query-max-response-time {integer}    Maximum time to wait for a IGMP query response (1 - 25 sec,  
default = 10). range[1-25]  
        set query-interval {integer}    Interval between queries to IGMP hosts (1 - 65535 sec, default = 125).  
range[1-65535]  
        set query-timeout {integer}    Timeout between queries before becoming querier for network (60 - 900,  
default = 255). range[60-900]  
        set router-alert-check {enable | disable}    Enable/disable require IGMP packets contain router alert  
option.  
        next  
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

route-threshold {integer}

Specify the number of multicast routes that can be added to the routing table before a warning message is displayed (1 - 2 147 483 674, default = 2 147 483 674) The `route-threshold` value must be lower than the `route-limit`.

config interface

Use this subcommand to change interface-related PIM settings, including the mode of operation (sparse or dense). Global settings do not override interface-specific settings.

cisco-exclude-genid {enable | disable}

Note: This field is available when `pim-mode` is `sparse-mode`.

Enable or disable (by default) including a generation ID in hello messages sent to neighboring PIM routers. A GenID value may be included for compatibility with older Cisco IOS routers.

dr-priority {integer}

Note: This field is available when `pim-mode` is `sparse-mode`.

Assign a priority to FortiGate unit Designated Router (DR) candidacy (1 to 4 294 967 294, default = 1). The value is compared to that of other DR interfaces connected to the same network segment, and the router having the highest DR priority is selected to be the DR. If two DR priority values are the same, the interface having the highest IP address is selected.

hello-holdtime <seconds>

Specify the amount of time that a PIM neighbor may consider the information in a hello message to be valid (1 - 65 535 seconds, default = 150).

If the `hello-interval` attribute is modified and the `hello-holdtime` attribute has never been set explicitly, the `hello-holdtime` attribute is automatically set to 3.5 x `hello-interval`.

hello-interval <seconds>

Specify the amount of time that the FortiGate waits between sending hello messages to neighboring PIM routers (1 - 65 535 seconds, default = 30).

Changing the `hello-interval` attribute may automatically update the `hello-holdtime` attribute.

multicast-flow {string}

Connect the named multicast flow to this interface. You must create the multicast flow before it can be selected here, see [router multicast-flow on page 525](#).

neighbour-filter <access list>

Establish or terminate adjacency with PIM neighbors having the IP addresses given in the specified access list. You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

propagation-delay <milliseconds>

Note: This field is available when `pim-mode` is `dense-mode`.

Specify the amount of time that the FortiGate waits to send prune-override messages (100 - 5 000, default = 500).

rp-candidate {enable | disable}

Note: This field is available when `pim-mode` is `sparse-mode`.

Enable or disable (by default) the FortiGate interface offering Rendezvous Point (RP) services.

rp-candidate-group <access list>

Note: This field is available when `rp-candidate` is enabled.

Set the RP candidacy to be advertised to certain multicast groups, based on prefixes given in the specified access list. You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

rp-candidate-interval <seconds>

Note: This field is available when `rp-candidate` is enabled.

Set the amount of time that the FortiGate waits between sending RP announcement messages (1 - 16 383 seconds, default = 60).

rp-candidate-priority {string}

Note: This field is available when `rp-candidate` is enabled.

Assign a priority to FortiGate unit Rendezvous Point (RP) candidacy (0 - 255, default = 192).

The BSR compares the value to that of other RP candidates that can service the same multicast group, and the router having the highest RP priority is selected to be the RP for that multicast group. If two RP priority values are the same, the RP candidate having the highest IP address on its RP interface is selected.

state-refresh-interval <seconds>

Note: This field is available when `pim-mode` is `dense-mode`.

Set the amount of time that the FortiGate waits between sending state-refresh messages (1 - 100 seconds, default = 60).

When a state-refresh message is received by a downstream router, the prune state on the downstream router is refreshed.

static-group {string}

Statistically set multicast groups to forward out using a multicast flow. . You must create the multicast flow before it can be selected here, see [router multicast-flow on page 525](#).

config igmp

Use this subcommand to configure Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) for multicast interfaces.

access-group <access list>

Set the groups that IGMP hosts are allowed to join, based on prefixes given in the specified access list. You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

immediate-leave-group <access list>

Note: This field is available when `version` is set to 2 or 3.

Configure a FortiGate DR to stop sending traffic and IGMP queries to receivers after receiving an IGMP version 2 group-leave message from any member of the multicast groups identified in the specified access list. You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

last-member-query-count {string}

Note: This field is available when `version` is set to 2 or 3.

Specify the number of times that a FortiGate unit DR sends an IGMP query to the last member of a multicast group after receiving an IGMP version 2 group-leave message.

last-member-query-interval <milliseconds>

Note: This field is available when `version` is set to 2 or 3.

Set the amount of time that a FortiGate unit DR waits for the last member of a multicast group to respond to an IGMP query (1000 - 25 500 milliseconds, default = 1 000).

If no response is received before the specified time expires and the FortiGate unit DR has already sent an IGMP query last-member-query-count times, the FortiGate unit DR removes the member from the group and sends a prune message to the associated RP.

config pim-sm-global



These global settings apply only to sparse mode PIM-enabled interfaces. Global PIM settings do not override interface-specific PIM settings.

Use this subcommand to configure a DR to send multicast packets to a particular RP by specifying the IP address of the RP through the config `rp-address` variable. The IP address must be directly accessible to the DR. If multicast packets from more than one multicast group can pass through the same RP, you can use an access list to specify the associated multicast group addresses.

accept-register-list <access list>

Configure which sources are allowed to register packets with this RP, using the source IP addresses given in the specified access list. You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

accept-source-list <access list>

Configure which sources are allowed to send multicast traffic, using the source IP addresses given in the specified access list. You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

bsr-hash <number of bits>

Note: This field is available when `bsr-candidate` is enabled.

Set the length of the mask to apply to multicast group addresses in order to derive a single RP for one or more multicast groups (0 - 32, default = 10). For example, a value of 24 means that the first 24 bits of the group address are significant. All multicast groups having the same seed hash belong to the same RP.

bsr-interface <interface name>

Note: This field is available when `bsr-candidate` is enabled.

Specify the name of the PIM-enabled interface through which the FortiGate unit may announce BSR candidacy.

bsr-priority {string}

Note: This field is available when `bsr-candidate` is enabled.

Assign a priority to FortiGate unit BSR candidacy (0 - 255, default = 0). This value is compared to that of other BSR candidates and the candidate having the highest priority is selected to be the BSR. If two BSR priority values are the same, the BSR candidate having the highest IP address on its BSR interface is selected.

cisco-register-checksum-group <access list>

Note: This field is available when `cisco-register-checksum` is enabled.

Identify on which PIM packets to perform a whole-packet register checksum based on the multicast group addresses in the specified access list. You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

You may choose to register checksums on entire PIM packets for compatibility with older Cisco IOS routers.

register-source {disable | interface | ip-address}

Select a method of overriding the source address in register packets:

- `disable`: retain the IP address of the FortiGate unit DR interface that faces the RP.
- `interface`: change the IP source address of a register packet to the IP address of a particular FortiGate unit interface. The `register-source-interface` attribute specifies the interface name.
- `ip-address`: change the IP source address of a register packet to a particular IP address. The `register-source-ip` attribute specifies the IP address (default).

register-source-interface <interfacename>

Note: This field is available when `register-source` is set to `interface`.

Enter the name of the FortiGate unit interface.

register-source-ip <IPv4 address>

Note: This field is available when `register-source` is set to `ip-address`.

Enter the IP source address to include in the register message.

rp-register-keepalive <seconds>

Set the frequency with which the FortiGate sends keepalive messages to a DR (1 - 65 535, default = 185). The two routers exchange keepalive messages to maintain a link for as long as the source continues to generate traffic.

If the `register-suppression` attribute is modified on the RP and the `rp-register-keepalive` attribute has never been set explicitly, the `rp-register-keepalive` attribute is set to $(3 \times \text{register-suppression}) + 5$ automatically.

spt-threshold-group <access list>

Note: This field is available when `spt-threshold` is enabled.

Build an SPT only for the multicast group addresses given in the specified access list. You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

ssm {enable | disable}

Note: This field is available when `IGMP version` on the interface is set to 3.

Enable (by default) or disable Source Specific Multicast (SSM) interactions (see RFC 3569).

ssm-range <access list>

Note: This field is available when `ssm` is enabled.

Enable SSM only for the multicast addresses given in the specified access list. You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

By default, multicast addresses in the 232.0.0.0 to 232.255.255.255 (232/8) range are used to support SSM interactions.

config rp-address

Note: This subcommand is available when `pim-mode` is `sparse-mode`.

Use this subcommand to statically configure RP addresses.

group <access list>

Configure a single static RP for the multicast group addresses given in the specified access list. You must create the access list before it can be selected here, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

If an RP for any of these group addresses is already known to the BSR, the static RP address is ignored and the RP known to the BSR is used instead.

router multicast6

Use this command to configure the FortiGate unit as an IPv6 Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) version 2 router.



Multicast routing is not supported in Transparent mode.

```
config router multicast6
  set multicast-routing {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IPv6 multicast routing.
  set multicast-pmtu {enable | disable}  Enable/disable PMTU for IPv6 multicast.
  config interface
    edit {name}
      # Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) interfaces.
      set name {string}  Interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
      set hello-interval {integer}  Interval between sending PIM hello messages (1 - 65535 sec, default = 30)..
range[1-65535]
      set hello-holdtime {integer}  Time before old neighbour information expires (1 - 65535 sec, default = 105).
range[1-65535]
      next
    config pim-sm-global
      set register-rate-limit {integer}  Limit of packets/sec per source registered through this RP (0 means unlim-
ited). range[0-65535]
      config rp-address
        edit {id}
          # Statically configured RP addresses.
          set id {integer}  ID of the entry. range[0-4294967295]
          set ip6-address {ipv6 address}  RP router IPv6 address.
        next
      end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

config interface

Use this subcommand to configure the multicast6 interface.

hello-holdtime <seconds>

Specify the amount of time that a PIM neighbor may consider the information in a hello message to be valid (1 - 65 535 seconds, default = 105).

If the `hello-interval` attribute is modified and the `hello-holdtime` attribute has never been set explicitly, the `hello-holdtime` attribute is automatically set to 3.5 x `hello-interval`.

hello-interval <seconds>

Set the amount of time that the FortiGate unit waits between sending hello messages to neighboring PIM routers (1 - 65 535, default = 30).

Changing the `hello-interval` attribute may automatically update the `hello-holdtime` attribute .

router multicast-flow

Use this command to configure the source allowed for a multicast flow when using PIM-SM or PIM-SSM.

```
config router multicast-flow
  edit {name}
  # Configure multicast-flow.
  set name {string}    Name. size[35]
  set comments {string} Comment. size[127]
  config flows
    edit {id}
    # Multicast-flow entries.
    set id {integer}    Flow ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set group-addr {ipv4 address any}    Multicast group IP address.
    set source-addr {ipv4 address any}    Multicast source IP address.
  next
next
end
```

router {ospf | ospf6}

Use this command to configure Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) protocol settings on the FortiGate unit. More information on OSPF can be found in RFC 2328.

OSPF is a link state protocol capable of routing larger networks than the simpler distance vector RIP protocol. An OSPF autonomous system (AS) or routing domain is a group of areas connected to a backbone area. A router connected to more than one area is an area border router (ABR). Routing information is contained in a link state database. Routing information is communicated between routers using link state advertisements (LSAs).

Bi-directional Forwarding Detection (BFD) is a protocol used by BGP and OSPF. It is used to quickly locate hardware failures in the network. Routers running BFD communicate with each other, and if a timer runs out on a connection then that router is declared down. BFD then communicates this information to the routing protocol and the routing information is updated. BFD support can only be configured through the CLI.

```
config router ospf
  set abr-type {cisco | ibm | shortcut | standard}  Area border router type.
    cisco      Cisco.
    ibm        IBM.
    shortcut   Shortcut.
    standard   Standard.

  set auto-cost-ref-bandwidth {integer}  Reference bandwidth in terms of megabits per second. range[1-1000000]
  set distance-external {integer}  Administrative external distance. range[1-255]
  set distance-inter-area {integer}  Administrative inter-area distance. range[1-255]
  set distance-intra-area {integer}  Administrative intra-area distance. range[1-255]
  set database-overflow {enable | disable}  Enable/disable database overflow.
  set database-overflow-max-lsas {integer}  Database overflow maximum LSAs. range[0-4294967295]
  set database-overflow-time-to-recover {integer}  Database overflow time to recover (sec). range[0-65535]
  set default-information-originate {enable | always | disable}  Enable/disable generation of default route.
  set default-information-metric {integer}  Default information metric. range[1-16777214]
  set default-information-metric-type {1 | 2}  Default information metric type.
    1  Type 1.
    2  Type 2.

  set default-information-route-map {string}  Default information route map. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-
map.name
  set default-metric {integer}  Default metric of redistribute routes. range[1-16777214]
  set distance {integer}  Distance of the route. range[1-255]
  set rfc1583-compatible {enable | disable}  Enable/disable RFC1583 compatibility.
  set router-id {ipv4 address any}  Router ID.
  set spf-timers {string}  SPF calculation frequency.
  set bfd {enable | disable}  Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD).
  set log-neighbour-changes {enable | disable}  Enable logging of OSPF neighbour's changes
  set distribute-list-in {string}  Filter incoming routes. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list.-
name,router.prefix-list.name
  set distribute-route-map-in {string}  Filter incoming external routes by route-map. size[35] - datasource(s):
router.route-map.name
  set restart-mode {none | lls | graceful-restart}  OSPF restart mode (graceful or LLS).
    none          Hitless restart disabled.
```

```
lls                LLS mode.
graceful-restart   Graceful Restart Mode.
set restart-period {integer}    Graceful restart period. range[1-3600]
config area
edit {id}
# OSPF area configuration.
set id {ipv4 address any}    Area entry IP address.
set shortcut {disable | enable | default}    Enable/disable shortcut option.
set authentication {none | text | md5}    Authentication type.
    none    None.
    text    Text.
    md5     MD5.
set default-cost {integer}    Summary default cost of stub or NSSA area. range[0-4294967295]
set nssa-translator-role {candidate | never | always}    NSSA translator role type.
    candidate    Candidate.
    never        Never.
    always      Always.
set stub-type {no-summary | summary}    Stub summary setting.
    no-summary   No summary.
    summary      Summary.
set type {regular | nssa | stub}    Area type setting.
    regular      Regular.
    nssa         NSSA.
    stub         Stub.

set nssa-default-information-originate {enable | always | disable}    Redistribute, advertise, or do not originate Type-7 default route into NSSA area.
set nssa-default-information-originate-metric {integer}    OSPF default metric. range[0-16777214]
set nssa-default-information-originate-metric-type {1 | 2}    OSPF metric type for default routes.
    1    Type 1.
    2    Type 2.
set nssa-redistribution {enable | disable}    Enable/disable redistribute into NSSA area.
config range
edit {id}
# OSPF area range configuration.
set id {integer}    Range entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
set prefix {ipv4 classnet any}    Prefix.
set advertise {disable | enable}    Enable/disable advertise status.
set substitute {ipv4 classnet any}    Substitute prefix.
set substitute-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable substitute status.
next
```

```

config virtual-link
edit {name}
# OSPF virtual link configuration.
set name {string}    Virtual link entry name. size[35]
set authentication {none | text | md5}    Authentication type.
    none    None.
    text    Text.
    md5     MD5.
set authentication-key {password_string}    Authentication key. size[8]
set md5-key {string}    MD5 key.
set dead-interval {integer}    Dead interval. range[1-65535]
set hello-interval {integer}    Hello interval. range[1-65535]
set retransmit-interval {integer}    Retransmit interval. range[1-65535]
set transmit-delay {integer}    Transmit delay. range[1-65535]
set peer {ipv4 address any}    Peer IP.
next
config filter-list
edit {id}
# OSPF area filter-list configuration.
set id {integer}    Filter list entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
set list {string}    Access-list or prefix-list name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list.-
name,router.prefix-list.name
set direction {in | out}    Direction.
    in    In.
    out    Out.
next
next
config ospf-interface
edit {name}
# OSPF interface configuration.
set name {string}    Interface entry name. size[35]
set interface {string}    Configuration interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
set ip {ipv4 address}    IP address.
set authentication {none | text | md5}    Authentication type.
    none    None.
    text    Text.
    md5     MD5.
set authentication-key {password_string}    Authentication key. size[8]
set md5-key {string}    MD5 key.
set prefix-length {integer}    Prefix length. range[0-32]

```



```
set retransmit-interval {integer} Retransmit interval. range[1-65535]
set transmit-delay {integer} Transmit delay. range[1-65535]
set cost {integer} Cost of the interface, value range from 0 to 65535, 0 means auto-cost. range[0-65535]
set priority {integer} Priority. range[0-255]
set dead-interval {integer} Dead interval. range[0-65535]
set hello-interval {integer} Hello interval. range[0-65535]
set hello-multiplier {integer} Number of hello packets within dead interval. range[3-10]
set database-filter-out {enable | disable} Enable/disable control of flooding out LSAs.
set mtu {integer} MTU for database description packets. range[576-65535]
set mtu-ignore {enable | disable} Enable/disable ignore MTU.
set network-type {option} Network type.
    broadcast Broadcast.
    non-broadcast Non-broadcast.
    point-to-point Point-to-point.
    point-to-multipoint Point-to-multipoint.
    point-to-multipoint-non-broadcast Point-to-multipoint and non-broadcast.
set bfd {global | enable | disable} Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD).
set status {disable | enable} Enable/disable status.
set resync-timeout {integer} Graceful restart neighbor resynchronization timeout. range[1-3600]
next
config network
edit {id}
# OSPF network configuration.
set id {integer} Network entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
set prefix {ipv4 classnet} Prefix.
set area {ipv4 address any} Attach the network to area.
next
config neighbor
edit {id}
# OSPF neighbor configuration are used when OSPF runs on non-broadcast media
set id {integer} Neighbor entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
set ip {ipv4 address} Interface IP address of the neighbor.
set poll-interval {integer} Poll interval time in seconds. range[1-65535]
set cost {integer} Cost of the interface, value range from 0 to 65535, 0 means auto-cost. range[0-65535]
set priority {integer} Priority. range[0-255]
next
config passive-interface
edit {name}
# Passive interface configuration.
set name {string} Passive interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
```

```
    next
config summary-address
  edit {id}
  # IP address summary configuration.
  set id {integer}    Summary address entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
  set prefix {ipv4 classnet}    Prefix.
  set tag {integer}    Tag value. range[0-4294967295]
  set advertise {disable | enable}    Enable/disable advertise status.
  next
config distribute-list
  edit {id}
  # Distribute list configuration.
  set id {integer}    Distribute list entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
  set access-list {string}    Access list name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list.name
  set protocol {connected | static | rip}    Protocol type.
    connected    Connected type.
    static        Static type.
    rip            RIP type.
  next
config redistribute
  edit {name}
  # Redistribute configuration.
  set name {string}    Redistribute name. size[35]
  set status {enable | disable}    status
  set metric {integer}    Redistribute metric setting. range[0-16777214]
  set routemap {string}    Route map name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
  set metric-type {1 | 2}    Metric type.
    1    Type 1.
    2    Type 2.
  set tag {integer}    Tag value. range[0-4294967295]
  next
end

config router ospf6
  set abr-type {cisco | ibm | standard}    Area border router type.
    cisco    Cisco.
    ibm        IBM.
    standard    Standard.
  set auto-cost-ref-bandwidth {integer}    Reference bandwidth in terms of megabits per second. range[1-1000000]
  set default-information-originate {enable | always | disable}    Enable/disable generation of default route.
  set log-neighbour-changes {enable | disable}    Enable logging of OSPFv3 neighbour's changes
```

```

set default-information-metric {integer}    Default information metric. range[1-16777214]
set default-information-metric-type {1 | 2}    Default information metric type.
    1    Type 1.
    2    Type 2.
set default-information-route-map {string}    Default information route map. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-
map.name
set default-metric {integer}    Default metric of redistribute routes. range[1-16777214]
set router-id {ipv4 address any}    A.B.C.D, in IPv4 address format.
set spf-timers {string}    SPF calculation frequency.
set bfd {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD).
config area
    edit {id}
    # OSPF6 area configuration.
    set id {ipv4 address any}    Area entry IP address.
    set default-cost {integer}    Summary default cost of stub or NSSA area. range[0-16777215]
    set nssa-translator-role {candidate | never | always}    NSSA translator role type.
        candidate    Candidate.
        never        Never.
        always       Always.
    set stub-type {no-summary | summary}    Stub summary setting.
        no-summary   No summary.
        summary       Summary.
    set type {regular | nssa | stub}    Area type setting.
        regular      Regular.
        nssa          NSSA.
        stub          Stub.
    set nssa-default-information-originate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable originate type 7 default into
NSSA area.
    set nssa-default-information-originate-metric {integer}    OSPFv3 default metric. range[0-16777214]
    set nssa-default-information-originate-metric-type {1 | 2}    OSPFv3 metric type for default routes.
        1    Type 1.
        2    Type 2.
    set nssa-redistribution {enable | disable}    Enable/disable redistribute into NSSA area.
config range
    edit {id}
    # OSPF6 area range configuration.
    set id {integer}    Range entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set prefix6 {ipv6 network}    IPv6 prefix.
    set advertise {disable | enable}    Enable/disable advertise status.
next

```

```

config virtual-link
    edit {name}
        # OSPF6 virtual link configuration.
        set name {string}    Virtual link entry name. size[35]
        set dead-interval {integer}    Dead interval. range[1-65535]
        set hello-interval {integer}    Hello interval. range[1-65535]
        set retransmit-interval {integer}    Retransmit interval. range[1-65535]
        set transmit-delay {integer}    Transmit delay. range[1-65535]
        set peer {ipv4 address any}    A.B.C.D, peer router ID.
    next
next
config ospf6-interface
    edit {name}
        # OSPF6 interface configuration.
        set name {string}    Interface entry name. size[35]
        set area-id {ipv4 address any}    A.B.C.D, in IPv4 address format.
        set interface {string}    Configuration interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        set retransmit-interval {integer}    Retransmit interval. range[1-65535]
        set transmit-delay {integer}    Transmit delay. range[1-65535]
        set cost {integer}    Cost of the interface, value range from 0 to 65535, 0 means auto-cost. range[0-65535]
        set priority {integer}    priority range[0-255]
        set dead-interval {integer}    Dead interval. range[1-65535]
        set hello-interval {integer}    Hello interval. range[1-65535]
        set status {disable | enable}    Enable/disable OSPF6 routing on this interface.
        set network-type {option}    Network type.
            broadcast                broadcast
            point-to-point            point-to-point
            non-broadcast              non-broadcast
            point-to-multipoint        point-to-multipoint
            point-to-multipoint-non-broadcast    point-to-multipoint and non-broadcast.
        set bfd {global | enable | disable}    Enable/disable Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD).
        set mtu {integer}    MTU for OSPFv3 packets. range[576-65535]
        set mtu-ignore {enable | disable}    Enable/disable ignoring MTU field in DBD packets.
    config neighbor
        edit {ip6}
            # OSPFv3 neighbors are used when OSPFv3 runs on non-broadcast media
            set ip6 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 link local address of the neighbor.
            set poll-interval {integer}    Poll interval time in seconds. range[1-65535]
            set cost {integer}    Cost of the interface, value range from 0 to 65535, 0 means auto-cost. range[0-
65535]

```

```

        set priority {integer}    priority range[0-255]
    next
next
config redistribute
edit {name}
# Redistribute configuration.
set name {string}    Redistribute name. size[35]
set status {enable | disable}    status
set metric {integer}    Redistribute metric setting. range[0-16777214]
set routemap {string}    Route map name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
set metric-type {1 | 2}    Metric type.
    1    Type 1.
    2    Type 2.
next
config passive-interface
edit {name}
# Passive interface configuration.
set name {string}    Passive interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
next
config summary-address
edit {id}
# IPv6 address summary configuration.
set id {integer}    Summary address entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
set prefix6 {ipv6 network}    IPv6 prefix.
set advertise {disable | enable}    Enable/disable advertise status.
set tag {integer}    Tag value. range[0-4294967295]
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

abr-type

Specify the behavior of a FortiGate unit acting as an OSPF area border router (ABR) when it has multiple attached areas and has no backbone connection. Selecting the ABR type compatible with the routers on your network can reduce or eliminate the need for configuring and maintaining virtual links. For more information, see RFC 3509.

auto-cost-ref-bandwidth

Enter the Mbits per second for the reference bandwidth. Values can range from 1 to 65535.

bfd

Select one of the Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) options for this interface.

- enable - start BFD on this interface
- disable - stop BFD on this interface
- global - use the global settings instead of explicitly setting BFD per interface.

database-overflow

Enable or disable dynamically limiting link state database size under overflow conditions. Enable this command for FortiGate units on a network with routers that may not be able to maintain a complete link state database because of limited resources.

database-overflow-max-lsas

If you have enabled `database-overflow`, set the limit for the number of external link state advertisements (LSAs) that the FortiGate unit can keep in its link state database before entering the overflow state. The `lsas_integer` must be the same on all routers attached to the OSPF area and the OSPF backbone. The valid range for `lsas_integer` is 0 to 4294967294.

database-overflow-time-to-recover

Enter the time, in seconds, after which the FortiGate unit will attempt to leave the overflow state. If `seconds_integer` is set to 0, the FortiGate unit will not leave the overflow state until restarted. The valid range for `seconds_integer` is 0 to 65535.

default-information-metric

Specify the metric for the default route set by the `default-information-originate` command. The valid range for `metric_integer` is 1 to 16777214.

default-information-metric-type

Specify the OSPF external metric type for the default route set by the `default-information-originate` command.

default-information-originate

Enter enable to advertise a default route into an OSPF routing domain.

Use always to advertise a default route even if the FortiGate unit does not have a default route in its routing table.

default-information-route-map

If you have set `default-information-originate` to `always`, and there is no default route in the routing table, you can configure a route map to define the parameters that OSPF uses to advertise the default route.

default-metric

Specify the default metric that OSPF should use for redistributed routes. The valid range for `metric_integer` is 1 to 16777214.

distance

Configure the administrative distance for all OSPF routes. Using administrative distance you can specify the relative priorities of different routes to the same destination. A lower administrative distance indicates a more preferred route. The valid range for `distance_integer` is 1 to 255.

distance-external

Change the administrative distance of all external OSPF routes. The range is from 1 to 255.

distance-inter-area

Change the administrative distance of all inter-area OSPF routes. The range is from 1 to 255.

distance-intra-area

Change the administrative distance of all intra-area OSPF routes. The range is from 1 to 255.

distribute-list-in

Limit route updates from the OSPF neighbor based on the Network Layer Reachability Information (NLRI) defined in the specified access list. You must create the access list before it can be selected here.

See [router {access-list | access-list6}](#) on page 466

passive-interface

OSPF routing information is not sent or received through the specified interface.

restart-mode

Select the restart mode from:

- `graceful-restart` - (also known as hitless restart) when FortiGate unit goes down it advertises to neighbors how long it will be down to reduce traffic
- `lls` - Enable Link-local Signaling (LLS) mode
- `none` - hitless restart (graceful restart) is disabled

restart-period

Enter the time in seconds the restart is expected to take.

rfc1583-compatible

Enable or disable RFC 1583 compatibility. RFC 1583 compatibility should be enabled only when there is another OSPF router in the network that only supports RFC 1583.

When RFC 1583 compatibility is enabled, routers choose the path with the lowest cost. Otherwise, routers choose the lowest cost intra-area path through a non-backbone area.

router-id

Set the router ID. The router ID is a unique number, in IP address dotted decimal format, that is used to identify an OSPF router to other OSPF routers within an area. The router ID should not be changed while OSPF is running.

A router ID of 0.0.0.0 is not allowed.

spf-timers

Change the default shortest path first (SPF) calculation delay time and frequency.

The `delay_integer` is the time, in seconds, between when OSPF receives information that will require an SPF calculation and when it starts an SPF calculation. The valid range for `delay_integer` is 0 to 4294967295.

The `hold_integer` is the minimum time, in seconds, between consecutive SPF calculations. The valid range for `hold_integer` is 0 to 4294967295.

OSPF updates routes more quickly if the SPF timers are set low; however, this uses more CPU. A setting of 0 for `spf-timers` can quickly use up all available CPU.

config router ospf

Use this command to set the router ID of the FortiGate unit. Additional configuration options are supported.

- The `router-id` field is required. All other fields are optional.
- The descriptions of the variables for this subcommand are found above.

config area

Use this subcommand to set OSPF area related parameters. Routers in an OSPF autonomous system (AS) or routing domain are organized into logical groupings called areas. Areas are linked together by area border routers (ABRs). There must be a backbone area that all areas can connect to. You can use a virtual link to connect areas that do not have a physical connection to the backbone. Routers within an OSPF area maintain link state databases for their own areas.

FortiGate units support the three main types of areas—stub areas, Not So Stubby areas (NSSA), and regular areas. A stub area only has a default route to the rest of the OSPF routing domain. NSSA is a type of stub area that can import AS external routes and send them to the backbone, but cannot receive AS external routes from the backbone or other areas. All other areas are considered regular areas.

You can use access or prefix lists for OSPF area filter lists. For more information, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#) and [router {prefix-list | prefix-list6} on page 558](#).

You can use the `config range` subcommand to summarize routes at an area boundary. If the network numbers in an area are contiguous, the ABR advertises a summary route that includes all the networks within the area that are within the specified range.

You can configure a virtual link using the `config virtual-link` subcommand to connect an area to the backbone when the area has no direct connection to the backbone. A virtual link allows traffic from the area to transit a directly connected area to reach the backbone. The transit area cannot be a stub area. Virtual links can only be set up between two ABRs.



If you define a filter list, the `direction` and `list` fields are required. If you define a range, the `prefix` field is required. If you define a virtual link, the `peer` field is required. All other fields are optional.

If you configure authentication for interfaces, the authentication configured for the area is overridden.

edit

Type the IP address of the area. An address of 0.0.0.0 indicates the backbone area.

authentication

Define the authentication used for OSPF packets sent and received in this area. Choose one of:

- `none` — no authentication is used.
- `text` — the authentication key is sent as plain text.
- `md5` — the authentication key is used to generate an MD5 hash.

Both text mode and MD5 mode only guarantee the authenticity of the OSPF packet, not the confidentiality of the information in the packet.

In text mode the key is sent in clear text over the network, and is only used to prevent network problems that can occur if a misconfigured router is mistakenly added to the area.

Authentication passwords or keys are defined per interface.

default-cost

Enter the metric to use for the summary default route in a stub area or not so stubby area (NSSA). A lower default cost indicates a more preferred route.

The valid range for `cost_integer` is 1 to 16777214.

nssa-default-information-originate

Enter enable to advertise a default route in a not so stubby area. Affects NSSA ABRs or NSSA Autonomous System Boundary Routers only.

nssa-default-information-originate-metric

Specify the metric (an integer) for the default route set by the `nssa-default-information-originate` field.

nssa-default-information-originate-metric-type

Specify the OSPF external metric type for the default route set by the nssa-default-information-originate field.

nssa-redistribution

Enable or disable redistributing routes into a NSSA area.

nssa-translator-role

A NSSA border router can translate the Type 7 LSAs used for external route information within the NSSA to Type 5 LSAs used for distributing external route information to other parts of the OSPF routing domain. Usually a NSSA will have only one NSSA border router acting as a translator for the NSSA.

You can set the translator role to always to ensure this FortiGate unit always acts as a translator if it is in a NSSA, even if other routers in the NSSA are also acting as translators.

You can set the translator role to candidate to have this FortiGate unit participate in the process for electing a translator for a NSSA.

You can set the translator role to never to ensure this FortiGate unit never acts as the translator if it is in a NSSA.

shortcut

Use this command to specify area shortcut parameters.

stub-type

Enter no-summary to prevent an ABR sending summary LSAs into a stub area. Enter summary to allow an ABR to send summary LSAs into a stub area.

type

Set the area type:

- Select nssa for a not so stubby area.
- Select regular for a normal OSPF area.
- Select stub for a stub area.

This is not available for area 0.0.0.0.

config filter-list variables

edit

Enter an ID number for the filter list. The number must be an integer.

direction

Set the direction for the filter.

- Enter `in` to filter incoming packets.
- Enter `out` to filter outgoing packets.

list

Enter the name of the access list or prefix list to use for this filter list.

config range variables

edit

Enter an ID number for the range. The number must be an integer in the 0 to 4,294,967,295 range.

advertise

Enable or disable advertising the specified range.

prefix

Specify the range of addresses to summarize. Format: `x.x.x.x x.x.x.x`.

substitute

Enter a prefix to advertise instead of the prefix defined for the range. Format: `x.x.x.x x.x.x.x`. The prefix `0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0` is not allowed.

substitute-status

Enable or disable using a substitute prefix.

config virtual-link variables**edit**

Enter a name for the virtual link.

authentication

Define the type of authentication used for OSPF packets sent and received over this virtual link. Choose one of:

- `none` — no authentication is used.
- `text` — the authentication key is sent as plain text.
- `md5` — the authentication key is used to generate an MD5 hash.

Both text mode and MD5 mode only guarantee the authenticity of the OSPF packet, not the confidentiality of the information in the packet.

In text mode the key is sent in clear text over the network, and is only used only to prevent network problems that can occur if a misconfigured router is mistakenly added to the area.

authentication-key

Enter the password to use for `text` authentication. The maximum length for the `authentication-key` is 15 characters.

The `authentication-key` used must be the same on both ends of the virtual link.

This field is only available when `authentication` is set to `text`.

dead-interval

The time in seconds to wait for a hello packet before declaring a router down. The value of the `dead-interval` should be four times the value of the `hello-interval`.

Both ends of the virtual link must use the same value for `dead-interval`.

The valid range for `seconds_integer` is 1 to 65535.

hello-interval

The time, in seconds, between hello packets.

Both ends of the virtual link must use the same value for `hello-interval`.

The value for `dead-interval` should be four times larger than the `hello-interval` value.

The valid range for `seconds_integer` is 1 to 65535.

md5-key

This field is available when authentication is set to `md5`.

Enter the key ID and password to use for MD5 authentication.

Example:

```
set md5-key 6 "ENCyYKaPSrY89CeXn66WUybbLZQ5YM="
```

Both ends of the virtual link must use the same key ID and key.

The valid range for `id_integer` is 1 to 255. `key_str` is an alphanumeric string of up to 16 characters.

peer

The router id of the remote ABR.

`0.0.0.0` is not allowed.

retransmit-interval

The time, in seconds, to wait before sending a LSA retransmission. The value for the retransmit interval must be greater than the expected round-trip delay for a packet. The valid range for `seconds_integer` is 1 to 65535.

transmit-delay

The estimated time, in seconds, required to send a link state update packet on this virtual link.

OSPF increments the age of the LSAs in the update packet to account for transmission and propagation delays on the virtual link.

Increase the value for `transmit-delay` on low speed links.

The valid range for `seconds_integer` is 1 to 65535.



Example:

This example shows how to configure a stub area with the id 15.1.1.1, a stub type of summary, a default cost of 20, and MD5 authentication.

```
config router ospf
  config area
    edit 15.1.1.1
      set type stub
      set stub-type summary
      set default-cost 20
      set authentication md5
    end
  end
```



Example:

This example shows how to use a filter list named `acc_list1` to filter packets entering area 15.1.1.1.

```
config router ospf
  config area
    edit 15.1.1.1
      config filter-list
        edit 1
          set direction in
          set list acc_list1
        end
      end
    end
```

**Example:**

This example shows how to set the prefix for range 1 of area 15.1.1.1.

```
config router ospf
  config area
    edit 15.1.1.1
      config range
        edit 1
          set prefix 1.1.0.0 255.255.0.0
        end
      end
    end
```

**Example:**

This example shows how to configure a virtual link.

```
config router ospf
  config area
    edit 15.1.1.1
      config virtual-link
        edit vlnk1
          set peer 1.1.1.1
        end
      end
    end
```

config distribute-list

Use this subcommand to filter the networks for routing updates using an access list. Routes not matched by any of the distribution lists will not be advertised.

You must configure the access list that you want the distribution list to use before you configure the distribution list. To configure an access list, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

The access-list and protocol fields are required.

edit

Enter an ID number for the distribution list. The number must be an integer.

access-list

Enter the name of the access list to use for this distribution list.

protocol

Advertise only the routes discovered by the specified protocol and that are permitted by the named access list.



Example:

This example shows how to configure distribution list 2 to use an access list named `acc_list1` for all static routes.

```
config router ospf
  config distribute-list
    edit 2
      set access-list acc_list1
      set protocol static
    end
  end
```

config neighbor

Use this subcommand to manually configure an OSPF neighbor on non-broadcast networks. OSPF packets are unicast to the specified neighbor address. You can configure multiple neighbors.

The `ip` field is required. All other fields are optional.

edit

Enter an ID number for the OSPF neighbor. The number must be an integer.

cost

Enter the cost to use for this neighbor. The valid range for `cost_integer` is 1 to 65535.

ip

Enter the IP address of the neighbor.

poll-interval

Enter the time, in seconds, between hello packets sent to the neighbor in the down state. The value of the poll interval must be larger than the value of the hello interval. The valid range for `seconds_integer` is 1 to 65535.

priority

Enter a priority number for the neighbor. The valid range for `priority_integer` is 0 to 255.



Example

This example shows how to manually add a neighbor.

```
config router ospf
  config neighbor
    edit 1
      set ip 192.168.21.63
    end
  end
```

config network

Use this subcommand to identify the interfaces to include in the specified OSPF area. The `prefix` field can define one or multiple interfaces.

The `area` and `prefix` fields are required.

edit

Enter an ID number for the network. The number must be an integer.

area

The ID number of the area to be associated with the prefix.

prefix

Enter the IP address and netmask for the OSPF network.

**Example:**

Use the following command to enable OSPF for the interfaces attached to networks specified by the IP address 10.0.0.0 and the netmask 255.255.255.0 and to add these interfaces to area 10.1.1.1.

```
config router ospf
config network
edit 2
set area 10.1.1.1
set prefix 10.0.0.0 255.255.255.0
end
end
```

config ospf-interface

Use this subcommand to configure interface related OSPF settings.

The `interface` field is required. All other fields are optional. If you configure authentication for the interface, authentication for areas is not used.

edit

Enter a descriptive name for this OSPF interface configuration. To apply this configuration to a FortiGate unit interface, set the `interface <name_str>` attribute.

authentication

Define the authentication used for OSPF packets sent and received by this interface. Choose one of:

- `none` — no authentication is used.
- `text` — the authentication key is sent as plain text.
- `md5` — the authentication key is used to generate an MD5 hash.

Both text mode and MD5 mode only guarantee the authenticity of the update packet, not the confidentiality of the routing information in the packet.

In text mode the key is sent in clear text over the network, and is only used only to prevent network problems that can occur if a misconfigured router is mistakenly added to the network.

All routers on the network must use the same authentication type.

authentication-key

This field is available when `authentication` is set to `text`.

Enter the password to use for `text` authentication.

The `authentication-key` must be the same on all neighboring routers.

The maximum length for the `authentication-key` is 15 characters.

bfd

Select to enable Bi-directional Forwarding Detection (BFD). It is used to quickly detect hardware problems on the network.

This command enables this service on this interface.

cost

Specify the cost (metric) of the link. The cost is used for shortest path first calculations.

database-filter-out

Enable or disable flooding LSAs out of this interface.

dead-interval

The time, in seconds, to wait for a hello packet before declaring a router down. The value of the `dead-interval` should be four times the value of the `hello-interval`.

All routers on the network must use the same value for `dead-interval`.

The valid range for `seconds_integer` is 1 to 65535.

hello-interval

The time, in seconds, between hello packets.

All routers on the network must use the same value for `hello-interval`.

The value of the `dead-interval` should be four times the value of the `hello-interval`.

The valid range for `seconds_integer` is 1 to 65535.

hello-multiplier

Enter the number of hello packets to send within the dead interval. Range 3-10. 0 disables.

interface

Enter the name of the interface to associate with this OSPF configuration. The interface might be a virtual IPsec or GRE interface.

ip

Enter the IP address of the interface named by the `interface` field.

It is possible to apply different OSPF configurations for different IP addresses defined on the same interface.

md5-key

This field is available when `authentication` is set to `md5`.

Enter the key ID and password to use for MD5 authentication.

Example:

```
set md5-key 6 "ENCyYKaPSrY89CeXn66WUybbLZQ5YM="
```

You can add more than one key ID and key pair per interface. However, you cannot unset one key without unsetting all of the keys.

The key ID and key must be the same on all neighboring routers.

The valid range for `id_integer` is 1 to 255. `key_str` is an alphanumeric string of up to 16 characters.

mtu

Change the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) size included in database description packets sent out this interface. The valid range for `mtu_integer` is 576 to 65535.

mtu-ignore

Use this command to control the way OSPF behaves when the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) in the sent and received database description packets does not match.

When `mtu-ignore` is enabled, OSPF will stop detecting mismatched MTUs and go ahead and form an adjacency.

When `mtu-ignore` is disabled, OSPF will detect mismatched MTUs and not form an adjacency.

`mtu-ignore` should only be enabled if it is not possible to reconfigure the MTUs so that they match on both ends of the attempted adjacency connection.

network-type

Specify the type of network to which the interface is connected.

OSPF supports four different types of network. This command specifies the behavior of the OSPF interface according to the network type. Choose one of:

- broadcast
- non-broadcast
- point-to-multipoint
- point-to-multipoint-non-broadcast
- point-to-point

If you specify `non-broadcast`, you must also configure neighbors using “config neighbor”.

prefix-length

Set the size of the OSPF hello network mask. Range 0 to 32.

priority

Set the router priority for this interface.

Router priority is used during the election of a designated router (DR) and backup designated router (BDR).

An interface with router priority set to 0 can not be elected DR or BDR. The interface with the highest router priority wins the election. If there is a tie for router priority, router ID is used.

Point-to-point networks do not elect a DR or BDR; therefore, this setting has no effect on a point-to-point network.

The valid range for `priority_integer` is 0 to 255.

resync-timeout

Enter the synchronizing timeout for graceful restart interval in seconds. This is the period for this interface to synchronize with a neighbor.

retransmit-interval

The time, in seconds, to wait before sending a LSA retransmission. The value for the retransmit interval must be greater than the expected round-trip delay for a packet. The valid range for `seconds_integer` is 1 to 65535.

status

Enable or disable OSPF on this interface.

transmit-delay

The estimated time, in seconds, required to send a link state update packet on this interface.

OSPF increments the age of the LSAs in the update packet to account for transmission and propagation delays on the interface.

Increase the value for `transmit-delay` on low speed links.

The valid range for `seconds_integer` is 1 to 65535.



Example

This example shows how to assign an OSPF interface configuration named `test` to the interface named `internal` and how to configure text authentication for this interface.

```
config router ospf
  config ospf-interface
    edit test
      set interface internal
      set ip 192.168.20.3
      set authentication text
      set authentication-key a2b3c4d5e
    end
  end
```

config redistribute

Use this subcommand to redistribute routes learned from BGP, RIP, static routes, or a direct connection to the destination network.

The OSPF redistribution table contains four static entries. You cannot add entries to the table. The entries are defined as follows:

- `bgp` — Redistribute routes learned from BGP.
- `connected` — Redistribute routes learned from a direct connection to the destination network.
- `isis` — Redistribute routes learned from ISIS.
- `static` — Redistribute the static routes defined in the FortiGate unit routing table.
- `rip` — Redistribute routes learned from RIP.

When you enter the subcommand, end the command with one of the four static entry names (that is, `config redistribute {bgp | connected | isis | static | rip}`).

All fields are optional.

metric

Enter the metric to be used for the redistributed routes. The range for the metric is from 1 to 16777214.

metric-type

Specify the external link type to be used for the redistributed routes.

routemap

Enter the name of the route map to use for the redistributed routes. For information on how to configure route maps, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

status

Enable or disable redistributing routes.

tag

Specify a tag for redistributed routes. The valid range for integer variable is 0 to 4294967295.



Example

This example shows how to enable route redistribution from RIP, using a metric of 3 and a route map named rtmp2.

```
config router ospf
  config redistribute rip
    set metric 3
    set routemap rtmp2
    set status enable
  end
```

config summary-address

edit

Enter an ID number for the summary address. The number must be an integer.

advertise

Advertise or suppress the summary route that matches the specified prefix.

prefix

Enter the prefix (IP address and netmask) to use for the summary route. The prefix 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 is not allowed.

tag

Specify a tag for the summary route.

The valid range for integer variable is 0 to 4294967295.

router {policy | policy6}

Use this command to add, move, edit or delete a route policy. When you create a policy route, any packets that match the policy are forwarded to the IP address of the next-hop gateway through the specified outbound interface.

You can configure the FortiGate unit to route packets based on:

- a source address
- a protocol, service type, or port range
- the inbound interface
- type of service (TOS)

When the FortiGate unit receives a packet, it starts at the top of the policy routing list and attempts to match the packet with a policy in ascending order. If no packets match the policy route, the FortiGate unit routes the packet using the routing table. Route policies are processed before static routing. You can change the order of policy routes using the move command.



For static routing, any number of static routes can be defined for the same destination. When multiple routes for the same destination exist, the FortiGate unit chooses the route having the lowest administrative distance. Route redundancy is not available for policy routing: any packets that match a route policy are forwarded according to the route specified in the policy.

```
config router policy
  edit {seq-num}
  # Configure IPv4 routing policies.
  set seq-num {integer}    Sequence number. range[1-65535]
  config input-device
    edit {name}
    # Incoming interface name.
    set name {string}    Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
  next
  config src
    edit {subnet}
    # Source IP and mask (x.x.x.x/x).
    set subnet {string}    IP and mask. size[64]
  next
  config srcaddr
    edit {name}
    # Source address name.
    set name {string}    Address/group name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
  next
  set src-negate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable negating source address match.
  config dst
    edit {subnet}
    # Destination IP and mask (x.x.x.x/x).
    set subnet {string}    IP and mask. size[64]
  next
  config dstaddr
    edit {name}
    # Destination address name.
    set name {string}    Address/group name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
  next
  set dst-negate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable negating destination address match.
  set action {deny | permit}    Action of the policy route.
  deny    Do not search policy route table.
  permit    Use this policy route for forwarding.
  set protocol {integer}    Protocol number (0 - 255). range[0-255]
  set start-port {integer}    Start destination port number (0 - 65535). range[0-65535]
  set end-port {integer}    End destination port number (0 - 65535). range[0-65535]
  set start-source-port {integer}    Start source port number (0 - 65535). range[0-65535]
```

```

        set end-source-port {integer}    End source port number (0 - 65535). range[0-65535]
        set gateway {ipv4 address}    IP address of the gateway.
        set output-device {string}    Outgoing interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        set tos {string}    Type of service bit pattern.
        set tos-mask {string}    Type of service evaluated bits.
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this policy route.
        set comments {string}    Optional comments. size[255]
    next
end

config router policy6
    edit {seq-num}
    # Configure IPv6 routing policies.
        set seq-num {integer}    Sequence number. range[0-4294967295]
        set input-device {string}    Incoming interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        set src {ipv6 network}    Source IPv6 prefix.
        set dst {ipv6 network}    Destination IPv6 prefix.
        set protocol {integer}    Protocol number (0 - 255). range[0-255]
        set start-port {integer}    Start destination port number (1 - 65535). range[1-65535]
        set end-port {integer}    End destination port number (1 - 65535). range[1-65535]
        set gateway {ipv6 address}    IPv6 address of the gateway.
        set output-device {string}    Outgoing interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        set tos {string}    Type of service bit pattern.
        set tos-mask {string}    Type of service evaluated bits.
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this policy route.
        set comments {string}    Optional comments. size[255]
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

end-port <port number>

Note: This field is available when `protocol` is 6 (TCP), 17 (UDP), or 132 (SCTP).

Set the end destination port number (0 to 65 535, default = 65 535).

You must configure both the `start-port` and `end-port` fields for destination port range matching to take effect. To specify a range, the `start-port` value must be lower than the `end-port` value. To specify a single port, the `start-port` value must be identical to the `end-port` value.

end-source-port <port number>

Note: This field is available when `protocol` is 6 (TCP), 17 (UDP), or 132 (SCTP).

Set the port range for source IP.

protocol <protocol number>

Enter the protocol number to match (0 - 255). A value of 0 disables the feature.

RFC 5237 describes protocol numbers and you can find a list of the assigned protocol numbers [here](#). Commonly used protocol include: 1 (ICMP), 6 (TCP), 17 (UDP), 47 (GRE), and 92 (MTP).

start-source-port <port number>

Note: This field is available when `protocol` is 6 (TCP), 17 (UDP), or 132 (SCTP).

Set the start destination port number (0 to 65 535, default = 65 535).

You must configure both the `start-port` and `end-port` fields for destination port range matching to take effect. To specify a range, the `start-port` value must be lower than the `end-port` value. To specify a single port, the `start-port` value must be identical to the `end-port` value.

tos <hex mask>

The type of service (TOS) mask to match after applying the `tos-mask`. This is an 8-bit hexadecimal pattern that can be from 00 to FF.

The `tos` mask attempts to match the quality of service for this profile. Each bit in the mask represents a different aspect of quality. A `tos` mask of 0010 would indicate reliability is important, but with normal delay and throughput. The hex mask for this pattern would be 04.

tos-mask <hex mask>

This value determines which bits in the IP header's TOS field are significant. This is an 8-bit hexadecimal mask that can be from 00 to FF.

Typically, only bits 3 through 6 are used for TOS, so it is necessary to mask out the other bits. To mask out everything but bits 3 through 6, the hex mask would be 1E.

router {prefix-list | prefix-list6}

Use this command to configure prefix lists, which are enhanced versions of an access list that allows you to control the length of the prefix netmask. Each rule in a prefix list consists of a prefix (IP address and netmask), the action to take for this prefix (permit or deny), and maximum and minimum prefix length settings. Use `prefix-list` for IPv4 and `prefix-list6` for IPv6.

The FortiGate attempts to match a packet against the rules in a prefix list starting at the top of the list. If it finds a match for the prefix it takes the action specified for that prefix. If no match is found the default action is deny. A prefix-list should be used to match the default route 0.0.0.0/0.

```
config router prefix-list
  edit {name}
    # Configure IPv4 prefix lists.
    set name {string}    Name. size[35]
    set comments {string} Comment. size[127]
    config rule
      edit {id}
        # IPv4 prefix list rule.
        set id {integer}  Rule ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set action {permit | deny}  Permit or deny this IP address and netmask prefix.
        permit  Allow or permit packets that match this rule.
        deny    Deny packets that match this rule.
        set prefix {string}  IPv4 prefix to define regular filter criteria, such as "any" or subnets.
        set ge {integer}    Minimum prefix length to be matched (0 - 32). range[0-32]
        set le {integer}    Maximum prefix length to be matched (0 - 32). range[0-32]
        set flags {integer}  Flags. range[0-4294967295]
      next
    next
  end

config router prefix-list6
  edit {name}
    # Configure IPv6 prefix lists.
    set name {string}    Name. size[35]
    set comments {string} Comment. size[127]
    config rule
      edit {id}
        # IPv6 prefix list rule.
        set id {integer}  Rule ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set action {permit | deny}  Permit or deny packets that match this rule.
        permit  Allow or permit packets that match this rule.
```

```
        deny      Deny packets that match this rule.
        set prefix6 {string}  IPv6 prefix to define regular filter criteria, such as "any" or subnets.
        set ge {integer}      Minimum prefix length to be matched (0 - 128). range[0-128]
        set le {integer}      Maximum prefix length to be matched (0 - 128). range[0-128]
        set flags {integer}    Flags. range[0-4294967295]
    next
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

ge {integer}

Match prefix lengths that are greater than or equal to this number (0 - 32, default = 0).

The setting for `ge` should be less than the setting for `le` and greater than the netmask set for `prefix`.

le {length_integer}

Match prefix lengths that are less than or equal to this number (0 - 32, default = 0).

The setting for `le` should be greater than the setting for `ge`.

prefix {IPv4 address/netmask | any}

Enter the prefix (IPv4 address and netmask) for this prefix list rule or enter `any` to match any prefix. The length of the netmask should be less than the setting for `ge`.

If `prefix` is set to `any`, `ge` and `le` should not be set.

prefix6 {IPv6 address/netmask | any}

Enter the prefix (IPv6 address and netmask) for this prefix list rule or enter `any` to match any prefix. The length of the netmask should be less than the setting for `ge`.

If `prefix6` is set to `any`, `ge` and `le` should not be set.

router rip

Use this command to configure the Routing Information Protocol (RIP) on the FortiGate unit. RIP is a distance-vector routing protocol intended for small, relatively homogeneous networks. RIP uses hop count as its routing metric. Each network is usually counted as one hop. The network diameter is limited to 15 hops with 16 hops.

The FortiOS implementation of RIP supports RIP version 1 (see RFC 1058) and RIP version 2 (see RFC 2453). RIP version 2 enables RIP messages to carry more information, and to support simple authentication and subnet masks.



`update_timer` cannot be larger than `timeout_timer` and `garbage_timer`. Attempts to do so will generate an error.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config redistribute edit <name> set metric <integer> next ...</pre>	Updated the <code>metric</code> option's maximum-range value to 16.

```
config router rip
set default-information-originate {enable | disable}  Enable/disable generation of default route.
set default-metric {integer}  Default metric. range[1-16]
set max-out-metric {integer}  Maximum metric allowed to output(0 means 'not set'). range[0-15]
set rcv-buffer-size {integer}  Receiving buffer size. range[8129-2147483647]
config distance
edit {id}
# distance
set id {integer}  Distance ID. range[0-4294967295]
```



```

        set prefix {ipv4 classnet any}    Distance prefix.
        set distance {integer}    Distance (1 - 255). range[1-255]
        set access-list {string}    Access list for route destination. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list.-
name
    next
    config distribute-list
        edit {id}
        # Distribute list.
            set id {integer}    Distribute list ID. range[0-4294967295]
            set status {enable | disable}    status
            set direction {in | out}    Distribute list direction.
                in    Filter incoming packets.
                out    Filter outgoing packets.
            set listname {string}    Distribute access/prefix list name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list.-
name,router.prefix-list.name
            set interface {string}    Distribute list interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        next
        config neighbor
            edit {id}
            # neighbor
                set id {integer}    Neighbor entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
                set ip {ipv4 address}    IP address.
            next
        config network
            edit {id}
            # network
                set id {integer}    Network entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
                set prefix {ipv4 classnet}    Network prefix.
            next
        config offset-list
            edit {id}
            # Offset list.
                set id {integer}    Offset-list ID. range[0-4294967295]
                set status {enable | disable}    status
                set direction {in | out}    Offset list direction.
                    in    Filter incoming packets.
                    out    Filter outgoing packets.
                set access-list {string}    Access list name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list.name
                set offset {integer}    offset range[1-16]
                set interface {string}    Interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name

```

```

    next
config passive-interface
    edit {name}
    # Passive interface configuration.
    set name {string}    Passive interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    next
config redistribute
    edit {name}
    # Redistribute configuration.
    set name {string}    Redistribute name. size[35]
    set status {enable | disable}    status
    set metric {integer}    Redistribute metric setting. range[1-16]
    set routemap {string}    Route map name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
    next
set update-timer {integer}    Update timer in seconds. range[5-2147483647]
set timeout-timer {integer}    Timeout timer in seconds. range[5-2147483647]
set garbage-timer {integer}    Garbage timer in seconds. range[5-2147483647]
set version {1 | 2}    RIP version.
    1    Version 1.
    2    Version 2.
config interface
    edit {name}
    # RIP interface configuration.
    set name {string}    Interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set auth-keychain {string}    Authentication key-chain name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.key-chain.name
    set auth-mode {none | text | md5}    Authentication mode.
        none    None.
        text    Text.
        md5    MD5.
    set auth-string {password_string}    Authentication string/password. size[16]
    set receive-version {1 | 2}    Receive version.
        1    Version 1.
        2    Version 2.
    set send-version {1 | 2}    Send version.
        1    Version 1.
        2    Version 2.
    set send-version2-broadcast {disable | enable}    Enable/disable broadcast version 1 compatible packets.
    set split-horizon-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable split horizon.
    set split-horizon {poisoned | regular}    Enable/disable split horizon.
        poisoned    Poisoned.

```

```
        regular Regular.  
        set flags {integer} flags range[0-255]  
    next  
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

default-information-originate

Enter enable to advertise a default static route into RIP.

default-metric

For non-default routes in the static routing table and directly connected networks the default metric is the metric that the FortiGate unit advertises to adjacent routers. This metric is added to the metrics of learned routes. The default metric can be a number from 1 to 16.

garbage-timer

The time in seconds that must elapse after the timeout interval for a route expires, before RIP deletes the route. If RIP receives an update for the route after the timeout timer expires but before the garbage timer expires then the entry is switched back to reachable.

RIP timer defaults are effective in most configurations. All routers and access servers in the network should have the same RIP timer settings.

The update timer interval can not be larger than the garbage timer interval.

passive-interface

Block RIP broadcasts on the specified interface. You can use “config neighbor” and the passive interface command to allow RIP to send unicast updates to the specified neighbor while blocking broadcast updates on the specified interface.

timeout-timer

The time interval in seconds after which a route is declared unreachable. The route is removed from the routing table. RIP holds the route until the garbage timer expires and then deletes the route. If RIP receives an update for the route before the timeout timer expires, then the timeout-timer is restarted. If RIP receives an update for the route after the timeout timer expires but before the garbage timer expires then the entry is switched back to reachable. The value of the timeout timer should be at least three times the value of the update timer.

RIP timer defaults are effective in most configurations. All routers and access servers in the network should have the same RIP timer settings.

The update timer interval can not be larger than the timeout timer interval.

update-timer

The time interval in seconds between RIP updates.

RIP timer defaults are effective in most configurations. All routers and access servers in the network should have the same RIP timer settings.

The update timer interval can not be larger than timeout or garbage timer intervals.

version

Enable sending and receiving

- RIP version 1 packets
- RIP version 2 packets
- Both versions for all RIP-enabled interfaces.

You can override this setting on a per interface basis using the `receive-version` and `send-version` fields described under “config interface”.



Example

This example shows how to enable the advertising of a default static route into RIP, enable the sending and receiving of RIP version 1 packets, and raise the preference of local routes in the static routing table (the default metric) from the default of 1 to 5 - those routes will be less preferred.

```
config router rip
  set default-information-originate enable
  set version 1
  set default-metric 5
end
```

config distance

Use this subcommand to specify an administrative distance. When different routing protocols provide multiple routes to the same destination, the administrative distance sets the priority of those routes. The lowest administrative distance indicates the preferred route.

If you specify a prefix, RIP uses the specified distance when the source IP address of a packet matches the prefix.

The `distance` field is required. All other fields are optional.

access-list

Enter the name of an access list. The distances associated with the routes in the access list will be modified. To create an access list, see [router {access-list | access-list6}](#) on page 466.

distance

Enter a number from 1 to 255, to set the administrative distance.

This field is required.

prefix

Optionally enter a prefix to apply the administrative distance to.



Example:

This example shows how to change the administrative distance to 10 for all IP addresses that match the `internal_example` access-list.

```
config router rip
  config distance
    edit 1
      set distance 10
      set access-list internal_example
    end
  end
```

config distribute-list

Use this subcommand to filter incoming or outgoing updates using an access list or a prefix list. If you do not specify an interface, the filter will be applied to all interfaces. You must configure the access list or prefix list that you want the distribution list to use before you configure the distribution list. For more information on configuring access lists and prefix lists, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#) and [router {prefix-list | prefix-list6} on page 558](#).

The `direction` and `listname` fields are required. All other fields are optional.

direction

Set the direction for the filter.

- `in` - to filter incoming packets that originate from other routers.
- `out` - to filter outgoing packets the FortiGate unit is sending to other routers.

interface

Enter the name of the interface to apply this distribution list to. If you do not specify an interface, this distribution list will be used for all interfaces.

listname

Enter the name of the access list or prefix list to use for this distribution list.

The prefix or access list used must be configured before configuring the distribute-list.

status

Enable or disable this distribution list.



Example

This example shows how to configure and enable a distribution list to use an access list named `allowed_routers` for incoming updates on the `external` interface.

```
config router rip
  config distribute-list
    edit 0
      set direction in
      set interface external
      set listname allowed_routers
      set status enable
    end
  end
```

config interface

Use this subcommand to configure RIP version 2 authentication, RIP version send and receive for the specified interface, and to configure and enable split horizon.

Authentication is only available for RIP version 2 packets sent and received by an interface. You must set `auth-mode` to `none` when `receive-version` or `send-version` are set to 1 or 1 2 (both are set to 1 by default).

A split horizon occurs when a router advertises a route it learns over the same interface it learned it on. In this case the router that gave the learned route to the last router now has two entries to get to another location. However, if the primary route fails that router tries the second route to find itself as part of the route and an infinite loop is created. A poisoned split horizon will still advertise the route on the interface it received it on, but it will mark the route as unreachable. Any unreachable routes are automatically removed from the routing table. This is also called split horizon with poison reverse.

auth-keychain

Enter the name of the key chain to use for authentication for RIP version 2 packets sent and received by this interface. Use key chains when you want to configure multiple keys. For information on how to configure key chains, see [router key-chain on page 511](#).

auth-mode

Use the `auth-mode` field to define the authentication used for RIP version 2 packets sent and received by this interface. Choose one of:

- `none` — no authentication is used.
- `text` — the authentication key is sent as plain text.

- `md5` — the authentication key is used to generate an MD5 hash.

Both text mode and MD5 mode only guarantee the authenticity of the update packet, not the confidentiality of the routing information in the packet.

In text mode the key is sent in clear text over the network. Text mode is usually used only to prevent network problems that can occur if an unwanted or misconfigured router is mistakenly added to the network.

Use the `auth-string` field to specify the key.

auth-string

Enter a single key to use for authentication for RIP version 2 packets sent and received by this interface. Use `auth-string` when you only want to configure one key. The key can be up to 35 characters long.

receive-version

RIP routing messages are UDP packets that use port 520. Choose one of:

- `1` - configure RIP to listen for RIP version 1 messages on an interface.
- `2` - configure RIP to listen for RIP version 2 messages on an interface.
- `1 2` - configure RIP to listen for both RIP version 1 and RIP version 2 messages on an interface.

send-version

RIP routing messages are UDP packets that use port 520.

Choose one of:

- `1` - configure RIP to send for RIP version 1 messages on an interface.
- `2` - configure RIP to send for RIP version 2 messages on an interface.
- `1 2` - configure RIP to send for both RIP version 1 and RIP version 2 messages on an interface.

send-version2-broadcast

Enable or disable sending broadcast updates from an interface configured for RIP version 2.

RIP version 2 normally multicasts updates. RIP version 1 can only receive broadcast updates.

split-horizon

Configure RIP to use either regular or poisoned split horizon on this interface. Choose one of:

- `regular` - prevent RIP from sending updates for a route back out on the interface from which it received that route.
- `poisoned` - send updates with routes learned on an interface back out the same interface but mark those routes as unreachable.

split-horizon-status

Enable or disable split horizon for this interface. Split horizon is enabled by default.

Disable split horizon only if there is no possibility of creating a counting to infinity loop when network topology changes.



Example

This example shows how to configure the external interface to send and receive RIP version 2, to use MD5 authentication, and to use a key chain called test1.

```
config router rip config interface edit external set receive-version 2 set send-  
version 2 set auth-mode md5 set auth-keychain test1 end end
```

config neighbor

Use this subcommand to enable RIP to send unicast routing updates to the router at the specified address. You can use the `neighbor` subcommand and the `passive-interface` setting to allow RIP to send unicast updates to the specified neighbor while blocking broadcast updates on the specified interface. You can configure multiple neighbors.

The `ip` field is required. All other fields are optional.

ip

Enter the IPv4 address of the neighboring router to which to send unicast updates.



Example

This example shows how to specify that the router at 192.168.21.20 is a neighbor.

```
config router rip
  config neighbor
    edit 0
      set ip 192.168.21.20
    end
  end
```

config network

Use this subcommand to identify the networks for which to send and receive RIP updates. If a network is not specified, interfaces in that network will not be advertised in RIP updates. The `prefix` field is optional.

prefix

Enter the IPv4 address and netmask for the RIP network.



Example

Use the following command to enable RIP for the interfaces attached to networks specified by the IP address 10.0.0.0 and the netmask 255.255.255.0.

```
config router rip
  config network
    edit 0
      set prefix 10.0.0.0 255.255.255.0
    end
  end
```

config offset-list

Use this subcommand to add the specified offset to the metric (hop count) of a route from the offset list. The `access-list`, `direction`, and `offset` fields are required. All other fields are optional.

access-list

Enter the name of the access list to use for this offset list. The access list is used to determine which routes to add the metric to. For more information, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#).

direction

Enter `in` to apply the specified offset to the metrics of routes originating on other routers - incoming routes.

Enter `out` to apply the specified offset to the metrics of routes leaving from the FortiGate unit - outgoing routes.

interface

Enter the name of the interface to match for this offset list.

offset

Enter the offset number to add to the metric. The metric is the hop count. The acceptable value range is an integer from 1 to 16, with 16 being unreachable.

For example if a route has already has a metric of 5, an offset of 10 will increase the metric to 15 for that route.

status

Enable or disable this offset list.



Example

This example shows how to configure and enable offset list ID number 5. This offset list entry adds a metric of 3 to incoming routes that match the access list named `acc_list1` on the external interface.

```
config router rip
  config offset-list
    edit 5 set access-list acc_list1
      set direction in
      set interface external
      set offset 3
      set status enable
    end
  end
```

config redistribute

Use this subcommand to advertise routes learned from OSPF, BGP, static routes, or a direct connection to the destination network.

The RIP redistribution table contains four static entries. You cannot add entries to the table. The entries are defined as follows:

- `bgp` - Redistribute routes learned from BGP.
- `connected` - Redistribute routes learned from a direct connection to the destination network.
- `isis` - Redistribute routes learned from ISIS.
- `ospf` - Redistribute routes learned from OSPF.
- `static` - Redistribute the static routes defined in the FortiGate unit routing table.

When you enter the subcommand, end the command with one of the four static entry names (that is, `config redistribute {bgp | connected | isis | ospf | static}`). All fields are optional.

metric

Enter the metric value to be used for the redistributed routes. The acceptable value range is an integer from 0 to 16.

route-map

Enter the name of the route map to use for the redistributed routes. For information on how to configure route maps, see [router route-map on page 580](#).

router ripng

Use this command to configure the “next generation” Routing Information Protocol (RIPng) on the FortiGate unit. RIPng is a distance-vector routing protocol intended for small, relatively homogeneous, IPv6 networks. RIPng uses hop count as its routing metric. Each network is usually counted as one hop. The network diameter is limited to 15 hops. RIPng is defined in RFC 2080.

```
config router ripng
  set default-information-originate {enable | disable}  Enable/disable generation of default route.
  set default-metric {integer}  Default metric. range[1-16]
  set max-out-metric {integer}  Maximum metric allowed to output(0 means 'not set'). range[0-15]
  config distance
    edit {id}
```

```

    # distance
    set id {integer}    Distance ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set distance {integer}    Distance (1 - 255). range[1-255]
    set prefix6 {ipv6 prefix}    Distance prefix6.
    set access-list6 {string}    Access list for route destination. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-
list6.name
    next
    config distribute-list
    edit {id}
    # Distribute list.
    set id {integer}    Distribute list ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set status {enable | disable}    status
    set direction {in | out}    Distribute list direction.
        in    Filter incoming packets.
        out    Filter outgoing packets.
    set listname {string}    Distribute access/prefix list name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list6.-
name,router.prefix-list6.name
    set interface {string}    Distribute list interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    next
    config neighbor
    edit {id}
    # neighbor
    set id {integer}    Neighbor entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set ip6 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 link-local address.
    set interface {string}    Interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    next
    config network
    edit {id}
    # Network.
    set id {integer}    Network entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set prefix {ipv6 prefix}    Network IPv6 link-local prefix.
    next
    config aggregate-address
    edit {id}
    # Aggregate address.
    set id {integer}    Aggregate address entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set prefix6 {ipv6 prefix}    Aggregate address prefix.
    next
    config offset-list
    edit {id}

```

```
# Offset list.
  set id {integer}    Offset-list ID. range[0-4294967295]
  set status {enable | disable}    status
  set direction {in | out}    Offset list direction.
    in    Filter incoming packets.
    out    Filter outgoing packets.
  set access-list6 {string}    IPv6 access list name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list6.name
  set offset {integer}    offset range[1-16]
  set interface {string}    Interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
next
config passive-interface
  edit {name}
  # Passive interface configuration.
    set name {string}    Passive interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
  next
config redistribute
  edit {name}
  # Redistribute configuration.
    set name {string}    Redistribute name. size[35]
    set status {enable | disable}    status
    set metric {integer}    Redistribute metric setting. range[1-16]
    set routemap {string}    Route map name. size[35] - datasource(s): router.route-map.name
  next
set update-timer {integer}    Update timer. range[5-2147483647]
set timeout-timer {integer}    Timeout timer. range[5-2147483647]
set garbage-timer {integer}    Garbage timer. range[5-2147483647]
config interface
  edit {name}
  # RIPvng interface configuration.
    set name {string}    Interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set split-horizon-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable split horizon.
    set split-horizon {poisoned | regular}    Enable/disable split horizon.
      poisoned    Poisoned.
      regular    Regular.
    set flags {integer}    Flags. range[0-255]
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

default-information-originate

Enter `enable` to advertise a default static route into RIPng.

default-metric

For non-default routes in the static routing table and directly connected networks the default metric is the metric that the FortiGate unit advertises to adjacent routers. This metric is added to the metrics of learned routes. The default metric can be a number from 1 to 16.

garbage-timer

The time in seconds that must elapse after the timeout interval for a route expires, before RIPng deletes the route. If RIPng receives an update for the route after the timeout timer expires but before the garbage timer expires then the entry is switched back to reachable.

RIP timer defaults are effective in most configurations. All routers and access servers in the network should have the same RIP timer settings.

The update timer interval can not be larger than the garbage timer interval.

Range 5 to 2,147,483,647 seconds.

passive-interface

Block RIPng broadcasts on the specified interface. You can use “config neighbor” and the passive interface command to allow RIPng to send unicast updates to the specified neighbor while blocking broadcast updates on the specified interface.

timeout-timer

The time interval in seconds after which a route is declared unreachable. The route is removed from the routing table. RIP holds the route until the garbage timer expires and then deletes the route. If RIP receives an update for the route before the timeout timer expires, then the timeout-timer is restarted. If RIP receives an update for the route after the timeout timer expires but before the garbage timer expires then the entry is switched back to reachable. The value of the timeout timer should be at least three times the value of the update timer.

RIP timer defaults are effective in most configurations. All routers and access servers in the network should have the same RIP timer settings.

The update timer interval can not be larger than the timeout timer interval.

Range 5 to 2,147,483,647 seconds.

update-timer

The time interval in seconds between RIP updates.

RIP timer defaults are effective in most configurations. All routers and access servers in the network should have the same RIP timer settings.

The update timer interval can not be larger than timeout or garbage timer intervals.

Range 5 to 2,147,483,647 seconds.

config aggregate-address

Use this subcommand to configure aggregate address prefixes.

prefix6

Enter the prefix for the aggregate address.

config distance

Use this subcommand to specify an administrative distance. When different routing protocols provide multiple routes to the same destination, the administrative distance sets the priority of those routes. The lowest administrative distance indicates the preferred route. The distance field is required. All other fields are optional.

If you specify a prefix, RIP uses the specified distance when the source IP address of a packet matches the prefix.

access-list6

Enter the name of an access list. The distances associated with the routes in the access list will be modified. To create an access list, see [router {access-list | access-list6}](#) on page 466.

distance

Enter a number from 1 to 255, to set the administrative distance.

This field is required.

prefix6

Optionally enter a prefix to apply the administrative distance to.

config distribute-list

Use this subcommand to filter incoming or outgoing updates using an access list or a prefix list. If you do not specify an interface, the filter will be applied to all interfaces. You must configure the access list or prefix list that you want the distribution list to use before you configure the distribution list. For more information on configuring access lists and prefix lists, see [router {access-list | access-list6} on page 466](#) and [router {prefix-list | prefix-list6} on page 558](#).

The `direction` and `listname` fields are required. All other fields are optional.

direction

Set the direction for the filter.

- `in` to filter incoming packets.
- `out` to filter outgoing packets.

interface

Enter the name of the interface to apply this distribution list to. If you do not specify an interface, this distribution list will be used for all interfaces.

listname

Enter the name of the access list or prefix list to use for this distribution list.

config interface

Use this subcommand to configure and enable split horizon. All fields are optional.

A split horizon occurs when a router advertises a route it learns over the same interface it learned it on. In this case the router that gave the learned route to the last router now has two entries to get to another location. However, if the primary route fails that router tries the second route to find itself as part of the route and an infinite loop is created. A poisoned split horizon will still advertise the route on the interface it received it on, but it will mark the route as unreachable. Any unreachable routes are automatically removed from the routing table. This is also called split horizon with poison reverse.

edit

Type the name of the FortiGate unit interface that is linked to the RIP network. The interface might be a virtual IPsec or GRE interface.

split-horizon

Configure RIP to use either regular or poisoned split horizon on this interface. Choose one of:

- `regular` - prevent RIP from sending updates for a route back out on the interface from which it received that route.
- `poisoned` - send updates with routes learned on an interface back out the same interface but mark those routes as unreachable.

split-horizon-status

Enable or disable split horizon for this interface. Split horizon is enabled by default.

Disable split horizon only if there is no possibility of creating a counting to infinity loop when network topology changes.

config neighbor

Use this subcommand to enable RIPv6 to send unicast routing updates to the router at the specified address. You can use the `neighbor` subcommand and "passive-interface" setting to allow RIPv6 to send unicast updates to the specified neighbor while blocking broadcast updates on the specified interface. You can configure multiple neighbors.

All fields are required.

edit

Enter an entry number for the RIPv6 neighbor. The number must be an integer.

interface

The interface that connects to the neighbor.

ip6

Enter the IP address of the neighboring router to which to send unicast updates.

config offset-list

Use this subcommand to add the specified offset to the metric (hop count) of a route from the offset list. The `access-list6`, `direction`, and `offset` fields are required. All other fields are optional.

access-list6

Enter the name of the access list to use for this offset list. The access list is used to determine which routes to add the metric to.

direction

Enter `in` to apply the offset to the metrics of incoming routes. Enter `out` to apply the offset to the metrics of outgoing routes.

interface

Enter the name of the interface to match for this offset list.

offset

Enter the offset number to add to the metric. The metric is the hop count. The acceptable range value is from 1 to 16, with 16 being unreachable.

status

Enable or disable this offset list.

config redistribute

Use this subcommand to redistribute routes learned from OSPF, BGP, static routes, or a direct connection to the destination network.

The RIPng redistribution table contains four static entries. You cannot add entries to the table.

The entries are defined as follows:

- `bgp` - Redistribute routes learned from BGP.
- `connected` - Redistribute routes learned from a direct connection to the destination network.
- `isis` - Redistribute routes learned from ISIS.

- `ospf` - Redistribute routes learned from OSPF.
- `static` - Redistribute the static routes defined in the FortiGate unit routing table.

When you enter the subcommand, end the command with one of the four static entry names (that is, `config redistribute {bgp | connected | isis | ospf | static}`).

All fields are optional.

metric

Enter the metric value to be used for the redistributed routes. The acceptable value range is an integer from 0 to 16.

route-map

Enter the name of the route map to use for the redistributed routes.

router route-map

Use this command to add, edit, or delete route maps. To use the command to limit the number of received or advertised BGP and RIP routes and routing updates using route maps, see “Using route maps with BGP” and “config redistribute” under [router rip on page 560](#).

Route maps provide a way for the FortiGate unit to evaluate optimum routes for forwarding packets or suppressing the routing of packets to particular destinations. Compared to access lists, route maps support enhanced packet-matching criteria. In addition, route maps can be configured to permit or deny the addition of routes to the FortiGate unit routing table and make changes to routing information dynamically as defined through route-map rules.

The FortiGate unit compares the rules in a route map to the attributes of a route. The rules are examined in ascending order until one or more of the rules in the route map are found to match one or more of the route attributes:

- When a single matching `match-*` rule is found, changes to the routing information are made as defined through the rule's `set-ip-nexthop`, `set-metric`, `set-metric-type`, and/or `set-tag` settings.
- If no matching rule is found, no changes are made to the routing information.
- When more than one `match-*` rule is defined, all of the defined `match-*` rules must evaluate to TRUE or the routing information is not changed.
- If no `match-*` rules are defined, the FortiGate unit makes changes to the routing information only when all of the default `match-*` rules happen to match the attributes of the route.

The default rule in the route map (which the FortiGate unit applies last) denies all routes. For a route map to take effect, it must be called by a FortiGate unit routing process.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config rule edit <id> set set-route-tag <integer></pre>	Route tag for routing table.
<pre>config router route-map edit {name} # Configure route maps. set name {string} Name. size[35] set comments {string} Optional comments. size[127] config rule edit {id} # Rule. set id {integer} Rule ID. range[0-4294967295] set action {permit deny} Action. permit Permit. deny Deny. set match-as-path {string} Match BGP AS path list. size[35] - datasource(s): router.aspath-list.name set match-community {string} Match BGP community list. size[35] - datasource(s): router.community- list.name set match-community-exact {enable disable} Enable/disable exact matching of communities. set match-origin {none egp igp incomplete} Match BGP origin code. none None. egp Remote EGP. igp Local IGP. incomplete Unknown heritage. set match-interface {string} Match interface configuration. size[15] - datasource(s): sys- tem.interface.name set match-ip-address {string} Match IP address permitted by access-list or prefix-list. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list.name,router.prefix-list.name set match-ip6-address {string} Match IPv6 address permitted by access-list6 or prefix-list6. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list6.name,router.prefix-list6.name set match-ip-nexthop {string} Match next hop IP address passed by access-list or prefix-list. size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list.name,router.prefix-list.name set match-ip6-nexthop {string} Match next hop IPv6 address passed by access-list6 or prefix-list6.</pre>	

```

size[35] - datasource(s): router.access-list6.name,router.prefix-list6.name
    set match-metric {integer}    Match metric for redistribute routes. range[0-4294967295]
    set match-route-type {1 | 2 | none}    Match route type.
        1        External type 1.
        2        External type 2.
        none     No type specified.
    set match-tag {integer}    Match tag. range[0-4294967295]
    set set-aggregator-as {integer}    BGP aggregator AS. range[0-4294967295]
    set set-aggregator-ip {ipv4 address any}    BGP aggregator IP.
    set set-aspath-action {prepend | replace}    Specify preferred action of set-aspath.
        prepend Prepend.
        replace Replace.
    config set-aspath
        edit {as}
        # Prepend BGP AS path attribute.
        set as {string}    AS number (0 - 42949672). NOTE: Use quotes for repeating numbers, e.g.: "1 1
2"
size[64]
    next
    set set-atomic-aggregate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable BGP atomic aggregate attribute.
    set set-community-delete {string}    Delete communities matching community list. size[35] - datasource
(s): router.community-list.name
    config set-community
        edit {community}
        # BGP community attribute.
        set community {string}    Attribute: AA|AA:NN|internet|local-AS|no-advertise|no-export. size[64]
    next
    set set-community-additive {enable | disable}    Enable/disable adding set-community to existing com-
munity.
    set set-dampening-reachability-half-life {integer}    Reachability half-life time for the penalty (1 - 45
min, 0 = unset). range[0-45]
    set set-dampening-reuse {integer}    Value to start reusing a route (1 - 20000, 0 = unset). range[0-
20000]
    set set-dampening-suppress {integer}    Value to start suppressing a route (1 - 20000, 0 = unset). range
[0-20000]
    set set-dampening-max-suppress {integer}    Maximum duration to suppress a route (1 - 255 min, 0 =
unset). range[0-255]
    set set-dampening-unreachability-half-life {integer}    Unreachability Half-life time for the penalty (1
- 45 min, 0 = unset) range[0-45]
    config set-extcommunity-rt

```

```

        edit {community}
        # Route Target extended community.
        set community {string}  AA:NN. size[64]
        next
    config set-extcommunity-soo
        edit {community}
        # Site-of-Origin extended community.
        set community {string}  AA:NN size[64]
        next
    set set-ip-nexthop {ipv4 address}  IP address of next hop.
    set set-ip6-nexthop {ipv6 address}  IPv6 global address of next hop.
    set set-ip6-nexthop-local {ipv6 address}  IPv6 local address of next hop.
    set set-local-preference {integer}  BGP local preference path attribute. range[0-4294967295]
    set set-metric {integer}  Metric value. range[0-4294967295]
    set set-metric-type {1 | 2 | none}  Metric type.
        1      External type 1.
        2      External type 2.
        none   No type specified.
    set set-originator-id {ipv4 address any}  BGP originator ID attribute.
    set set-origin {none | egp | igp | incomplete}  BGP origin code.
        none      None.
        egp        Remote EGP.
        igp        Local IGP.
        incomplete Unknown heritage.
    set set-tag {integer}  Tag value. range[0-4294967295]
    set set-weight {integer}  BGP weight for routing table. range[0-4294967295]
    set set-flags {integer}  BGP flags value (0 - 65535) range[0-65535]
    set match-flags {integer}  BGP flag value to match (0 - 65535) range[0-65535]
    set set-route-tag {integer}  Route tag for routing table. range[0-4294967295]
    next
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

edit

Enter a name for an individual route map. The other settings for this command will be within the context of these route maps and therefore under `config rule variables`.

config rule variables

edit

This edit will be for the editing and creation of rules within the route maps.

action

Enter `permit` to permit routes that match this rule.

Enter `deny` to deny routes that match this rule.

match-interface

Enter the name of the local FortiGate unit interface that will be used to match route interfaces.

match-ip-address

Match a route if the destination address is included in the specified access list or prefix list.

match-ip6-address

Match a route if the destination IPv6 address is included in the specified access6 list or prefix6 list.

match-ip-nexthop

Match a route that has a next-hop router address included in the specified access list or prefix list.

match-ip6-nexthop

Match a route that has a next-hop router address included in the specified access6 list or prefix6 list.

match-metric

Match a route with the specified metric. The metric can be a number from 1 to 16.

match-route-type

Match a route that has the external type set to 1 or 2.

match-tag

This field is available when `set-tag` is set.

Match a route that has the specified tag.

set-ip-nexthop

Set the next-hop router address for a matched route.

set-ip6-nexthop

Set the next-hop router IPv6 address for a matched route.

set-ip6-nexthop-local

Set the next-hop router local IPv6 address for a matched route.

set-metric

Set a metric value of 1 to 16 for a matched route.

set-metric-type

Set the type for a matched route.

set-tag

Set a tag value for a matched route.

Example

This example shows how to add a route map list named rtmp2 with two rules. The first rule denies routes that match the IP addresses in an access list named acc_list2. The second rule permits routes that match a metric of 2 and changes the metric to 4.

```
config router route-map
  edit rtmp2
    config rule
      edit 1
        set match-ip-address acc_list2
        set action deny
      next
      edit 2
        set match-metric 2
        set action permit
        set set-metric 4
      end
    end
  end
```



Using route maps with BGP

When a connection is established between BGP peers, the two peers exchange all of their BGP route entries. Afterward, they exchange updates that only include changes to the existing routing information. Several BGP entries may be present in a route-map table. You can limit the number of received or advertised BGP route and routing updates using route maps. Use the `config router route-map` command to create, edit, or delete a route map.



When you specify a route map for the `dampening-route-map` value through the `config router bgp` command (see [router bgp on page 470](#)), the FortiGate unit ignores global dampening settings. You cannot set global dampening settings for the FortiGate unit and then override those values through a route map.

config rule variables

match-as-path

Enter the AS-path list name that will be used to match BGP route prefixes. You must create the AS-path list before it can be selected here.

match-community

Enter the community list name that will be used to match BGP routes according to their COMMUNITY attributes. You must create the community list before it can be selected here.

match-community-exact

This field is only available when `match-community` is set.

Enable or disable an exact match of the BGP route community specified by the `match-community` field.

match-origin

Enter a value to compare to the ORIGIN attribute of a routing update:

- `egp` - set the value to the NLRI learned from the Exterior Gateway Protocol (EGP). The FortiGate unit has the second-highest preference for routes of this type.
- `igp` - set the value to the NLRI learned from a protocol internal to the originating AS. The FortiGate unit has the highest preference for routes learned through Internal Gateway Protocol (IGP).
- `incomplete` - match routes that were learned some other way (for example, through redistribution).
- `none` - disable the matching of BGP routes based on the origin of the route.

set-aggregator-as

Set the originating AS of an aggregated route. The value specifies at which AS the aggregate route originated. The range is from 1 to 65,535. The `set-aggregator-ip` value must also be set to further identify the originating AS.

set-aggregator-ip

This field is available when `set-aggregator-as` is set.

Set the IP address of the BGP router that originated the aggregate route. The value should be identical to the FortiGate unit `router-id` value (see [router bgp on page 470](#)).

set-aspath

Modify the FortiGate unit AS_PATH attribute and add to it the AS numbers of the AS path belonging to a BGP route. The resulting path describes the autonomous systems along the route to the destination specified by the NLRI. The range is from 1 to 65,535.

The `set-aspath` value is added to the beginning of the AS_SEQUENCE segment of the AS_PATH attribute of incoming routes, or to the end of the AS_SEQUENCE segment of the AS_PATH attribute of outgoing routes.

Enclose all AS numbers in quotes if there are multiple occurrences of the same `id_integer`. Otherwise the AS path may be incomplete.

set-atomic-aggregate

Enable or disable a warning to upstream routers through the ATOMIC_AGGREGATE attribute that address aggregation has occurred on an aggregate route. This value does not have to be specified when an `as-set` value is specified in the aggregate-address table (see “[config aggregate-address, config aggregate-address6](#)” on page 339).

set-community-delete

Remove the COMMUNITY attributes from the BGP routes identified in the specified community list. You must create the community list first before it can be selected here (see [router community-list on page 500](#)).

set-community

Set the COMMUNITY attribute of a BGP route.

- Use decimal notation to set a specific COMMUNITY attribute for the route. The value has the syntax `AA:NN`, where `AA` represents an AS, and `NN` is the community identifier. Delimit complex expressions with double-quotation marks (for example, `"123:234 345:456"`).
- To make the route part of the Internet community, select `internet`.
- To make the route part of the LOCAL_AS community, select `local-AS`.
- To make the route part of the NO_ADVERTISE community, select `no-advertise`.
- To make the route part of the NO_EXPORT community, select `no-export`.

set-community-additive

This field is available when `set-community` is set. Enable or disable the appending of the `set-community` value to a BGP route.

set-dampeningreachability-half-life

Set the dampening reachability half-life of a BGP route (in minutes). The range is from 1 to 45.

set-dampening-reuse

Set the value at which a dampened BGP route will be reused. The range is from 1 to 20 000. If you set `set-dampening-reuse`, you must also set `set-dampening-suppress` and `set-dampening-maxsuppress`.

set-dampening-suppress

Set the limit at which a BGP route may be suppressed. The range is from 1 to 20 000. See also `dampening-suppress` under [router bgp on page 470](#).

set-dampening-maxsuppress

Set maximum time (in minutes) that a BGP route can be suppressed. The range is from 1 to 255. See also `dampening-max-suppress-time` in `dampeningmax-suppress-time <minutes_integer>` under [router bgp on page 470](#).

set-dampening-unreachability-half-life

Set the unreachability half-life of a BGP route (in minutes). The range is from 1 to 45. See also `dampening-unreachability-half-life` under [router bgp on page 470](#).

set-extcommunity-rt

Set the target extended community (in decimal notation) of a BGP route. The COMMUNITY attribute value has the syntax `AA:NN`, where `AA` represents an AS, and `NN` is the community identifier.

set-extcommunity-soo

Set the site-of-origin extended community (in decimal notation) of a BGP route. The COMMUNITY attribute value has the syntax `AA:NN`, where `AA` represents an AS, and `NN` is the community identifier.

set-local-preference

Set the LOCAL_PREF value of an IBGP route. The value is advertised to IBGP peers. The range is from 0 to 4,294,967,295. A higher number signifies a preferred route among multiple routes to the same destination.

set-originator-id

Set the ORIGINATOR_ID attribute, which is equivalent to the `router-id` of the originator of the route in the local AS. Route reflectors use this value to prevent routing loops.

set-origin

Set the ORIGIN attribute of a local BGP route. Choose one of:

- `egp` - set the value to the NLRI learned from the Exterior Gateway Protocol (EGP).
- `igp` - set the value to the NLRI learned from a protocol internal to the originating AS.
- `incomplete` - if not `egp` or `igp`.
- `none` - disable the ORIGIN attribute.

set-weight

Set the weight of a BGP route. A route's weight has the most influence when two identical BGP routes are compared. A higher number signifies a greater preference. The range is from 0 to 2,147,483,647.

router setting

Use this command to define a prefix list as a filter to show routes.

```
config router setting
  set show-filter {string}    Prefix-list as filter for showing routes. size[35] - datasource(s): router.prefix-list.-
  name
  set hostname {string}      Hostname for this virtual domain router. size[14]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

hostname

Enter the hostname for this virtual domain router. (1-14 characters)

show-filter

Select the prefix-list to use as a filter for showing routes.

router {static | static6}

Use this command to add, edit, or delete static routes. Use `static` for IPv4 and `static6` for IPv6.

You add static routes to manually control traffic exiting the FortiGate unit. You configure routes by specifying destination IP addresses and network masks and adding gateways for these destination addresses. Gateways are the next-hop routers to which traffic that matches the destination addresses in the route are forwarded.

You can adjust the administrative distance of a route to indicate preference when more than one route to the same destination is available. The lower the administrative distance, the greater the preferability of the route. If the routing table contains several entries that point to the same destination (the entries may have different gateways or interface associations), the FortiGate unit compares the administrative distances of those entries, selects the entries having the lowest distances, and installs them as routes in the FortiGate unit forwarding table. Any ties are resolved by comparing the routes' priority, with lowest priority being preferred. As a result, the FortiGate unit forwarding table only contains routes having the lowest distances to every possible destination. If both administrative distance and priority are tied for two or more routes, an equal cost multi-path (ECMP) situation occurs. ECMP is available to static and OSPF routing. By default in ECMP, a source IP address hash will be used to determine the selected route. This hash value is based on the pre-NATed source IP address. This method results in all traffic originating from the same source IP address always using the same path. This is the Source based ECMP option, with Weighted, and Spill-over being the other two optional methods. The option is determined by the CLI command `set v4-ecmp-mode` in `config system setting`. Source Based is the default method. Weighted ECMP uses the weight field to direct more traffic to routes with larger weights. In spill-over or usage-based ECMP, the FortiGate unit distributes sessions among ECMP routes based on how busy the FortiGate interfaces added to the routes are. For more information on ECMP, see [system settings on page 930](#).

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set vrf <id></code>	Configure OSPF support for multiple virtual routing and forwarding (VRFs). Set the value between 0-31. FortiOS supports 32 VRFs (numbered 0 to 31) per VDOM. This entry is only available when <code>blackhole</code> is set to <code>enable</code> .
<code>set bfd {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable (by default) Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) for IPv4 and/or IPv6 static routes to configure routing failover based on remote path failure detection. BFD removes a static route from the routing table if the FortiGate can't reach the route's destination and returns the route to the routing table if the route's destination is restored. This entry is not available when <code>blackhole</code> is set to <code>disable</code> .
<code>set src <source></code>	Set an IPv4 source prefix, allowing FortiGate to differentiate between multiple default routes. This is necessary only for static routes in transparent mode.
<code>set virtual-wan-link {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable egress traffic through the virtual-wan-link.

```
config router static
  edit {seq-num}
    # Configure IPv4 static routing tables.
    set seq-num {integer}    Sequence number. range[0-4294967295]
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable this static route.
    set dst {ipv4 classnet}  Destination IP and mask for this route.
    set src {ipv4 classnet}  Source prefix for this route.
    set gateway {ipv4 address}  Gateway IP for this route.
    set distance {integer}  Administrative distance (1 - 255). range[1-255]
    set weight {integer}  Administrative weight (0 - 255). range[0-255]
    set priority {integer}  Administrative priority (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295]
    set device {string}  Gateway out interface or tunnel. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set comment {string}  Optional comments. size[255]
    set blackhole {enable | disable}  Enable/disable black hole.
```



```

        set dynamic-gateway {enable | disable}    Enable use of dynamic gateway retrieved from a DHCP or PPP server.
        set virtual-wan-link {enable | disable}    Enable/disable egress through the virtual-wan-link.
        set dstaddr {string}    Name of firewall address or address group. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name
        set internet-service {integer}    Application ID in the Internet service database. range[0-4294967295] -
datasource(s): firewall.internet-service.id
        set internet-service-custom {string}    Application name in the Internet service custom database. size[64] - data-
source(s): firewall.internet-service-custom.name
        set link-monitor-exempt {enable | disable}    Enable/disable withdrawing this route when link monitor or health
check is down.
        set vrf {integer}    Virtual Routing Forwarding ID. range[0-31]
        set bfd {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD).
    next
end

config router static6
    edit {seq-num}
    # Configure IPv6 static routing tables.
    set seq-num {integer}    Sequence number. range[0-4294967295]
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this static route.
    set dst {ipv6 network}    Destination IPv6 prefix.
    set gateway {ipv6 address}    IPv6 address of the gateway.
    set device {string}    Gateway out interface or tunnel. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set devindex {integer}    Device index (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295]
    set distance {integer}    Administrative distance (1 - 255). range[1-255]
    set priority {integer}    Administrative priority (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295]
    set comment {string}    Optional comments. size[255]
    set blackhole {enable | disable}    Enable/disable black hole.
    set virtual-wan-link {enable | disable}    Enable/disable egress through the virtual-wan-link.
    set bfd {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD).
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

blackhole

Enable or disable dropping all packets that match this route. This route is advertised to neighbors through dynamic routing protocols as any other static route.

device

Note: This field is available when `blackhole` is disabled.

Enter the name of the interface through which to route traffic.

distance

Enter the administrative distance for the route. The distance value may influence route preference in the FortiGate unit routing table. The range is an integer from 1-255. See also `distance` under [system interface on page 793](#).

dst

Enter the destination IPv4 address and network mask for this route.

You can enter `0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0` to create a new static default route.

dynamic-gateway

When enabled, dynamic-gateway hides the gateway variable for a dynamic interface, such as a DHCP or PPPoE interface. When the interface connects or disconnects, the corresponding routing entries are updated to reflect the change.

edit

Enter a sequence number for the static route. The sequence number may influence routing priority in the FortiGate unit forwarding table.

gateway

Note: This field is available when `blackhole` is disabled.

Enter the IP address of the next-hop router to which traffic is forwarded.

priority

The administrative priority value is used to resolve ties in route selection. In the case where both routes have the same priority, such as equal cost multi-path (ECMP), the IP source hash (based on the pre-NATed IP address) for the routes will be used to determine which route is selected. The priority range is an integer from 0 to 4294967295. Lower priority routes are preferred routes.

This field is only accessible through the CLI.

weight

Note: This option is available when the `v4-ecmp-mode` field of the `config system settings` command is set to weight-based, see [system settings on page 930](#).

Enter weights for ECMP routes. More traffic is directed to routes with higher weights.

spamfilter

Use email filter commands to create a banned word list, configure filters based on email addresses, ip addresses, and MIME headers, and to configure the FortiGuard-Antispam service.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [spamfilter bwl](#)
- [spamfilter bword](#)
- [spamfilter dnsbl](#)
- [spamfilter fortishield](#)
- [spamfilter iptrust](#)
- [spamfilter mheader](#)
- [spamfilter options](#)
- [spamfilter profile](#)

spamfilter bwl

Use this command to filter email based on the sender's email address or address pattern. The FortiGate email filters are applied in the following order:

For SMTP

1. IP address BWL check - Last hop IP
2. DNSBL & ORDBL check, IP address FortiGuard check, HELO DNS lookup
3. E-mail address BWL check
4. MIME headers check
5. IP address BWL check (for IPs extracted from "Received" headers)
6. Return e-mail DNS check, FortiGuard Antispam check (for IPs extracted from "Received" headers, and URLs in email content)
7. Banned word check

For POP3 and IMAP

1. E-mail address BWL check
2. MIME headers check, IP BWL check
3. Return e-mail DNS check, FortiGuard Antispam check, DNSBL & ORDBL check
4. Banned word check

For SMTP, POP3, and IMAP using the email address

The FortiGate unit compares the email address or domain of the sender to the list in sequence. If a match is found, the corresponding action is taken. If no match is found, the email is passed on to the next email filter.

The FortiGate unit can filter email from specific senders or all email from a domain (such as example.net). Each email address can be marked as clear or spam.

Use Perl regular expressions or wildcards to add email address patterns to the list.

Use this command to filter email based on the IP or subnet address.

For SMTP, POP3, and IMAP using the IP address

The FortiGate unit compares the IP address of the sender to the list in sequence. If a match is found, the corresponding action is taken. If no match is found, the email is passed on to the next email filter.

Enter an IP address and mask in one of two formats:

- x.x.x.x/x.x.x.x, for example 192.168.10.23/255.255.255.0
- x.x.x.x/x, for example 192.168.10.23/24

Configure the FortiGate unit to filter email from specific IP addresses. Mark each IP address as clear, spam, or reject. Filter single IP addresses, or a range of addresses at the network level by configuring an address and mask.

```
config spamfilter bwl
  edit {id}
    # Configure anti-spam black/white list.
    set id {integer} ID. range[0-4294967295]
```

```
set name {string}    Name of table. size[35]
set comment {string} Optional comments. size[255]
config entries
  edit {id}
    # Anti-spam black/white list entries.
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable status.
    set id {integer}    Entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set type {ip | email}  Entry type.
      ip      By IP address.
      email   By email address.
    set action {reject | spam | clear}  Reject, mark as spam or good email.
      reject  Reject the connection.
      spam    Mark as spam email.
      clear   Mark as good email.
    set addr-type {ipv4 | ipv6}  IP address type.
      ipv4    IPv4 Address type.
      ipv6    IPv6 Address type.
    set ip4-subnet {ipv4 classnet}  IPv4 network address/subnet mask bits.
    set ip6-subnet {ipv6 network}  IPv6 network address/subnet mask bits.
    set pattern-type {wildcard | regexp}  Wildcard pattern or regular expression.
      wildcard  Wildcard pattern.
      regexp    Perl regular expression.
    set email-pattern {string}  Email address pattern. size[127]
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

action

The options for this setting will depend on what the setting `type` is set to.

Type	Available options
email	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• clear• spam
ip	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• clear• reject• spam

- `clear` - exempt the email from the rest of the spam filters
- `reject` - to drop any current or incoming sessions.
- `spam` - apply the spam action configured in the profile

addr-type

Select whether IPv4 or IPv6 addresses will be used.

Available if `type` is `ip`.

email-pattern

Enter the email address pattern using wildcards or Perl regular expressions.

Available if `type` is `email`.

ip4-subnet

The trusted IPv4 IP address and subnet mask in the format `x.x.x.x x.x.x.x` or `x.x.x.x/x`.

Available if `type` is `ip`.

ip6-subnet

The trusted IPv6 IP address.

This is available when `type` is `ip` and `addr-type` is `ipv6`.

pattern-type

Enter the pattern-type for the email address. Choose from wildcards or Perl regular expressions.

Available if `type` is `email`.

spamfilter bword

Use this command to add or edit and configure options for the email filter banned word list.

The FortiGate email filters are applied in the following order:

For SMTP

1. IP address BWL check - Last hop IP
2. DNSBL & ORDBL check, IP address FortiGuard check, HELO DNS lookup
3. E-mail address BWL check
4. MIME headers check
5. IP address BWL check (for IPs extracted from "Received" headers)
6. Return e-mail DNS check, FortiGuard Antispam check (for IPs extracted from "Received" headers, and URLs in email content)
7. Banned word check

For POP3 and IMAP

1. E-mail address BWL check
2. MIME headers check, IP BWL check
3. Return e-mail DNS check, FortiGuard Antispam check, DNSBL & ORDBL check
4. Banned word check

For SMTP, POP3, and IMAP

Control spam by blocking email messages containing specific words or patterns. If enabled, the FortiGate unit searches for words or patterns in email messages. If matches are found, values assigned to the words are totaled. If a user-defined threshold value is exceeded, the message is marked as spam. If no match is found, the email message is passed along to the next filter.

Use Perl regular expressions or wildcards to add banned word patterns to the list. Add one or more banned words to sort email containing those words in the email subject, body, or both. Words can be marked as spam or clear. Banned words can be one word or a phrase up to 127 characters long.

If a single word is entered, the FortiGate unit blocks all email that contain that word. If a phrase is entered, the FortiGate unit blocks all email containing the exact phrase. To block any word in a phrase, use Perl regular expressions.



Perl regular expression patterns are case sensitive for email filter banned words. To make a word or phrase case insensitive, use the regular expression `/i`. For example, `/bad language/i` blocks all instances of `bad language` regardless of case. Wildcard patterns are not case sensitive.

```
config spamfilter bword
edit {id}
# Configure AntiSpam banned word list.
set id {integer} ID. range[0-4294967295]
set name {string} Name of table. size[35]
set comment {string} Optional comments. size[255]
config entries
edit {id}
# Spam filter banned word.
set status {enable | disable} Enable/disable status.
set id {integer} Banned word entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
set pattern {string} Pattern for the banned word. size[127]
set pattern-type {wildcard | regex} Wildcard pattern or regular expression.
```

```
        wildcard Wildcard pattern.
        regexp    Perl regular expression.
set action {spam | clear}    Mark spam or good.
        spam    Mark as spam email.
        clear   Mark as good email.
set where {subject | body | all}    Component of the email to be scanned.
        subject Banned word in email subject.
        body    Banned word in email body.
        all     Banned word in both subject and body.
set language {option}    Language for the banned word.
        western  Western.
        simch    Simplified Chinese.
        trach    Traditional Chinese.
        japanese Japanese.
        korean   Korean.
        french   French.
        thai     Thai.
        spanish  Spanish.
        set score {integer}    Score value. range[1-99999]
next
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

action

- Enter `clear` to allow the email.
- Enter `spam` to apply the spam action.

language

Enter the language character set used for the banned word or phrase.

pattern

Enter the banned word or phrase pattern using regular expressions or wildcards.

pattern-type

Enter the pattern type for the banned word (pattern). Choose from regular expressions or wildcard.

score

A numerical weighting applied to the banned word. The score values of all the matching words appearing in an email message are added, and if the total is greater than the `spamwordthreshold` value, the message is processed according to the spam action setting. The score for a banned word is counted once even if the word appears multiple times in an email message.

where

Enter where in the email to search for the banned word or phrase.

spamfilter dnsbl

Use this command to configure email filtering using DNS-based Blackhole List (DNSBL) or Open Relay Database List (ORDBL) servers. DSNBL and ORDBL settings are configured with this command but DSNBL and ORDBL filtering is enabled within each profile.

The FortiGate email filters are generally applied in the following order:

For SMTP

1. IP address BWL check - Last hop IP
2. DNSBL & ORDBL check, IP address FortiGuard check, HELO DNS lookup
3. E-mail address BWL check
4. MIME headers check
5. IP address BWL check (for IPs extracted from "Received" headers)
6. Return e-mail DNS check, FortiGuard Antispam check (for IPs extracted from "Received" headers, and URLs in email content)
7. Banned word check

For POP3 and IMAP

1. E-mail address BWL check
2. MIME headers check, IP BWL check
3. Return e-mail DNS check, FortiGuard Antispam check, DNSBL & ORDBL check
4. Banned word check

For SMTP, POP3, and IMAP

The FortiGate unit compares the IP address or domain name of the sender to any database lists configured in sequence. If a match is found, the corresponding action is taken. If no match is found, the email is passed on to the next email filter.

Some spammers use unsecured third party SMTP servers to send unsolicited bulk email. Using DNSBLs and ORDBLs is an effective way to tag or reject spam as it enters the network. These lists act as domain name servers that match the domain of incoming email to a list of IP addresses known to send spam or allow spam to pass through.

There are several free and subscription servers available that provide reliable access to continually updated DNSBLs and ORDBLs. Please check with the service being used to confirm the correct domain name for connecting to the server.



Because the FortiGate unit uses the server domain name to connect to the DNSBL or ORDBL server, it must be able to look up this name on the DNS server. For information on configuring DNS, see [system dns on page 717](#).

```
config spamfilter dnsbl
  edit {id}
    # Configure AntiSpam DNSBL/ORBL.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set name {string}   Name of table. size[35]
    set comment {string} Optional comments. size[255]
    config entries
      edit {id}
        # Spam filter DNSBL and ORBL server.
        set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable status.
        set id {integer}    DNSBL/ORBL entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set server {string}  DNSBL or ORBL server name. size[127]
```

```
        set action {reject | spam}    Reject connection or mark as spam email.
        reject    Reject the connection.
        spam      Mark as spam email.
    next
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

action

- `reject` - to stop any further processing of the current session and to drop an incoming connection at once.
- `spam` - to identify email as spam.

server

Enter the domain name of a DNSBL server or an ORDBL server.

spamfilter fortishield

Use this command to configure the settings for the FortiGuard-Antispam Service.

The FortiGate email filters are applied in the following order:

For SMTP

1. IP address BWL check - Last hop IP
2. DNSBL & ORDBL check, IP address FortiGuard check, HELO DNS lookup
3. E-mail address BWL check
4. MIME headers check
5. IP address BWL check (for IPs extracted from “Received” headers)

6. Return e-mail DNS check, FortiGuard Antispam check (for IPs extracted from “Received” headers, and URLs in email content)
7. Banned word check

For POP3 and IMAP

1. E-mail address BWL check
2. MIME headers check, IP BWL check
3. Return e-mail DNS check, FortiGuard Antispam check, DNSBL & ORDBL check
4. Banned word check

For SMTP, POP3, and IMAP

FortiGuard-Antispam Service is an antispam system from Fortinet that includes an IP address blocklist, a URL blocklist, and email filtering tools. The IP address blocklist contains IP addresses of email servers known to be used to generate Spam. The URL blocklist contains found in Spam email.

FortiGuard-Antispam Service compiles the IP address and URL list from email captured by spam probes located around the world. Spam probes are email addresses purposely configured to attract spam and identify known spam sources to create the antispam IP address and URL list. FortiGuard-Antispam Service combines IP address and URL checks with other email filter techniques in a two-pass process.

On the first pass, if `spamfsip` is selected in the profile, FortiGuard-Antispam Service extracts the SMTP mail server source address and sends the IP address to a FortiGuard-Antispam Service server to see if this IP address matches the list of known spammers. If `spamfsurl` is selected in the profile, FortiGuard-Antispam Service checks the body of email messages to extract any URL links. These URL links will be sent to a FortiGuard-Antispam Service server to see if any of them is listed. Typically spam messages contain URL links to advertisements (also called spamvertizing).

If an IP address or URL match is found, FortiGuard-Antispam Service terminates the session. If FortiGuard-Antispam Service does not find a match, the mail server sends the email to the recipient.

As each email is received, FortiGuard-Antispam Service performs the second antispam pass by checking the header, subject, and body of the email for common spam content. If FortiGuard-Antispam Service finds spam content, the email is tagged or dropped.

```
config spamfilter fortishield
    set spam-submit-srv {string}    Hostname of the spam submission server. size[63]
    set spam-submit-force {enable | disable}    Enable/disable force insertion of a new mime entity for the submission
text.
    set spam-submit-txt2html {enable | disable}    Enable/disable conversion of text email to HTML email.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

spam-submit-srv

The host name of the FortiGuard-Antispam Service server. The FortiGate unit comes preconfigured with a host name. Use this command only to change the host name.

spamfilter iptrust

Use this command to add an entry to a list of trusted IP addresses.

If the FortiGate unit sits behind a company's Mail Transfer Units, it may be unnecessary to check email IP addresses because they are internal and trusted. The only IP addresses that need to be checked are those from outside of the company. In some cases, external IP addresses may be added to the list if it is known that they are not sources of spam.

```
config spamfilter iptrust
  edit {id}
    # Configure AntiSpam IP trust.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set name {string}   Name of table. size[35]
    set comment {string} Optional comments. size[255]
    config entries
      edit {id}
        # Spam filter trusted IP addresses.
        set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable status.
        set id {integer}    Trusted IP entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set addr-type {ipv4 | ipv6}    Type of address.
          ipv4  IPv4 Address type.
          ipv6  IPv6 Address type.
        set ip4-subnet {ipv4 classnet}  IPv4 network address or network address/subnet mask bits.
        set ip6-subnet {ipv6 network}   IPv6 network address/subnet mask bits.
      next
    next
  end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

addr-type

Select whether IPv4 or IPv6 addresses will be used.

edit {id}

A unique number to identify the IP trust list.

edit {id} (within context of config entries)

A unique number to identify the address.

spamfilter mheader

Use this command to configure email filtering based on the MIME header. MIME header settings are configured with this command but MIME header filtering is enabled within each profile.

The FortiGate email filters are applied in the following order:

For SMTP

1. IP address BWL check - Last hop IP
2. DNSBL & ORDBL check, IP address FortiGuard check, HELO DNS lookup
3. E-mail address BWL check
4. MIME headers check
5. IP address BWL check (for IPs extracted from "Received" headers)

6. Return e-mail DNS check, FortiGuard Antispam check (for IPs extracted from “Received” headers, and URLs in email content)
7. Banned word check

For POP3 and IMAP

1. E-mail address BWL check
2. MIME headers check, IP BWL check
3. Return e-mail DNS check, FortiGuard Antispam check, DNSBL & ORDBL check
4. Banned word check

For SMTP, POP3, and IMAP

The FortiGate unit compares the MIME header key-value pair of incoming email to the list pair in sequence. If a match is found, the corresponding action is taken. If no match is found, the email is passed on to the next email filter.

MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions) headers are added to email to describe content type and content encoding, such as the type of text in the email body or the program that generated the email. Some examples of MIME headers include:

- X-mailer: outgluck
- X-Distribution: bulk
- Content_Type: text/html
- Content_Type: image/jpg

The first part of the MIME header is called the header key, or just header. The second part is called the value. Spammers often insert comments into header values or leave them blank. These malformed headers can fool some spam and virus filters.

Use the MIME headers list to mark email from certain bulk mail programs or with certain types of content that are common in spam messages. Mark the email as spam or clear for each header configured.

Use Perl regular expressions or wildcards to add MIME header patterns to the list. MIME header entries are case sensitive.

```
config spamfilter mheader
  edit {id}
    # Configure AntiSpam MIME header.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set name {string}   Name of table. size[35]
    set comment {string} Optional comments. size[255]
  config entries
```

```
edit {id}
# Spam filter mime header content.
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable status.
  set id {integer}  Mime header entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
  set fieldname {string}  Pattern for header field name. size[63]
  set fieldbody {string}  Pattern for the header field body. size[127]
  set pattern-type {wildcard | regexp}  Wildcard pattern or regular expression.
    wildcard  Wildcard pattern.
    regexp    Perl regular expression.
  set action {spam | clear}  Mark spam or good.
    spam      Mark as spam email.
    clear     Mark as good email.
next
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

fieldbody

Enter the MIME header (key, header field body) using wildcards or Perl regular expressions.

fieldname

Enter the MIME header value (header field name) using wildcards or Perl regular expressions. Do not include a trailing colon.

spamfilter options

Use this command to set the spamfilter DNS query timeout.

```
config spamfilter options
    set dns-timeout {integer}    DNS query time out (1 - 30 sec). range[1-30]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

spamfilter profile

Use this command to configure UTM email filtering profiles for firewall policies. Email filtering profiles configure how Email filtering and FortiGuard Antispam is applied to sessions accepted by a firewall policy that includes the Email filtering profile.

```
config spamfilter profile
    edit {name}
        # Configure AntiSpam profiles.
        set name {string}    Profile name. size[35]
        set comment {string}  Comment. size[255]
        set flow-based {enable | disable}  Enable/disable flow-based spam filtering.
        set replacemsg-group {string}  Replacement message group. size[35] - datasource(s): system.replacemsg-group.-
name
    set spam-log {disable | enable}  Enable/disable spam logging for email filtering.
    set spam-log-fortiguard-response {disable | enable}  Enable/disable logging FortiGuard spam response.
    set spam-filtering {enable | disable}  Enable/disable spam filtering.
    set external {enable | disable}  Enable/disable external Email inspection.
    set options {option}  Options.
        bannedword    Content block.
        spambwl        Black/white list.
        spamfsip       Email IP address FortiGuard AntiSpam black list check.
        spamfssubmit   Add FortiGuard AntiSpam spam submission text.
        spamfchksum    Email checksum FortiGuard AntiSpam check.
        spamfsurl      Email content URL FortiGuard AntiSpam check.
        spamhelodns    Email helo/ehlo domain DNS check.
```

```

        spamraddrdns Email return address DNS check.
        spamrbl      Email DNSBL & ORBL check.
        spamhdrcheck Email mime header check.
        spamfsphish  Email content phishing URL FortiGuard AntiSpam check.
config imap
    set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging.
    set action {pass | tag}     Action for spam email.
        pass Allow spam email to pass through.
        tag  Tag spam email with configured text in subject or header.
    set tag-type {subject | header | spaminfo} Tag subject or header for spam email.
        subject Prepend text to spam email subject.
        header  Append a user defined mime header to spam email.
        spaminfo Append spam info to spam email header.
    set tag-msg {string} Subject text or header added to spam email. size[63]
config pop3
    set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging.
    set action {pass | tag}     Action for spam email.
        pass Allow spam email to pass through.
        tag  Tag spam email with configured text in subject or header.
    set tag-type {subject | header | spaminfo} Tag subject or header for spam email.
        subject Prepend text to spam email subject.
        header  Append a user defined mime header to spam email.
        spaminfo Append spam info to spam email header.
    set tag-msg {string} Subject text or header added to spam email. size[63]
config smtp
    set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging.
    set action {pass | tag | discard} Action for spam email.
        pass Allow spam email to pass through.
        tag  Tag spam email with configured text in subject or header.
        discard Discard (block) spam email.
    set tag-type {subject | header | spaminfo} Tag subject or header for spam email.
        subject Prepend text to spam email subject.
        header  Append a user defined mime header to spam email.
        spaminfo Append spam info to spam email header.
    set tag-msg {string} Subject text or header added to spam email. size[63]
    set hdrop {disable | enable} Enable/disable SMTP email header IP checks for spamfsip, spamrbl and spambwl
filters.
    set local-override {disable | enable} Enable/disable local filter to override SMTP remote check result.
config mapi
    set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging.

```

```

        set action {pass | discard}    Action for spam email.
            pass        Allow spam email to pass through.
            discard     Discard (block) spam email.
    config msn-hotmail
        set log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
    config yahoo-mail
        set log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
    config gmail
        set log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
        set spam-bword-threshold {integer}    Spam banned word threshold. range[0-2147483647]
        set spam-bword-table {integer}    Anti-spam banned word table ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): spam-
filter.bword.id
        set spam-bwl-table {integer}    Anti-spam black/white list table ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s):
spamfilter.bwl.id
        set spam-mheader-table {integer}    Anti-spam MIME header table ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): spam-
filter.mheader.id
        set spam-rbl-table {integer}    Anti-spam DNSBL table ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s):
spamfilter.dnsbl.id
        set spam-iptrust-table {integer}    Anti-spam IP trust table ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): spam-
filter.iptrust.id
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

options

Select actions, if any, the FortiGate unit will perform with email traffic.

- `bannedword` — block email containing content in the banned word list.
- `spambwl` — filter email using a block/allowlist
- `spamfsip` — filter email using the FortiGuard Antispam filtering IP address blocklist.
- `spamfssubmit` — add a link to the message body allowing users to report messages incorrectly marked as spam. If an email message is not spam, click the link in the message to report the false positive.
- `spamfsurl` — filter email using the FortiGuard Antispam filtering URL blocklist.
- `spamhdrcheck` — filter email using the MIME header list.

- `spamaddrdns` — filter email using a return email DNS check.
- `spamrbl` — filter email using configured DNS-based Blackhole List (DNSBL) and Open Relay Database List (ORDBL) servers.

Separate multiple options with a space. To remove an option from the list or add an option to the list, retype the list with the option removed or added.

spam-bword-threshold

If the combined scores of the banned word patterns appearing in an email message exceed the threshold value, the message will be processed according to the Spam Action setting.

config {imap | imaps | mapi | pop3 | pop3s | smtp | smtps}

Configure spam filtering options for the IMAP, IMAPS, MAPI, POP3, POP3S, SMTP, and SMTPS email protocols.

action

Select the action that this profile uses for filtered email. Tagging appends custom text to the subject or header of email identified as spam. When `scan` or streaming mode (also called `splice`) is selected, the FortiGate unit can only discard spam email. Discard immediately drops the connection. Without streaming mode or scanning enabled, chose to discard, pass, or tag spam.

- `discard` — do not pass email identified as spam.
- `pass` — disable spam filtering.
- `tag` — tag spam email with text configured using the `tagmsg` option and the location set using the `tag-type` option.

local-override

For `smtp` and `smtps`. Select to override SMTP or SMTPS remote check, which includes IP RBL check, IP FortiGuard antispam check, and HELO DNS check, with the locally defined antispam block/allowlist.

tag-type

Select to affix the tag to either the MIME header or the subject line, and whether or not to append spam information to the spam header, when an email is detected as spam. Also configure `tag-msg`.

If you select to add the tag to the subject line, the FortiGate unit will convert the entire subject line, including tag, to UTF-8 by default. This improves display for some email clients that cannot properly display subject lines that use more than one encoding.

tag-msg

Enter a word or phrase (tag) to affix to email identified as spam.

When typing a tag, use the same language as the FortiGate unit's current administrator language setting. Tagging text using other encodings may not be accepted.

To correctly enter the tag, your SSH or telnet client must also support your language's encoding. Alternatively, you can use the web-based manager's CLI widget to enter the tag.

Tags must not exceed 64 bytes. The number of characters constituting 64 bytes of data varies by text encoding, which may vary by the FortiGate administrator language setting.

Tags containing space characters, such as multiple words or phrases, must be surrounded by quote characters (') to be accepted by the CLI.

ssh-filter

Use this command to configure shell commands and either block or log various actions.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [ssh-filter profile](#)

ssh-filter profile

Use this command to configure shell commands and either block or log various actions, including X server forwarding, SSH shell, SSH execution, port forwarding, tunnel forwarding, SFTP, and any unknown channels

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config ssh-filter profile</code>	New <code>config</code> command. Configure shell commands and either block or log various actions.

```
config ssh-filter profile
  edit {name}
  # SSH filter profile.
  set name {string}    SSH filter profile name. size[35]
  set block {option}   SSH blocking options.
    x11                X server forwarding.
    shell              SSH shell.
    exec               SSH execution.
    port-forward       Port forwarding.
    tun-forward        Tunnel forwarding.
    sftp               SFTP.
```



```
        unknown      Unknown channel.
set log {option}     SSH logging options.
        x11          X server forwarding.
        shell        SSH shell.
        exec          SSH execution.
        port-forward  Port forwarding.
        tun-forward   Tunnel forwarding.
        sftp          SFTP.
        unknown      Unknown channel.
set default-command-log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging unmatched shell commands.
config shell-commands
    edit {id}
        # SSH command filter.
        set id {integer}  Id. range[0-4294967295]
        set type {simple | regex}  Matching type.
            simple  Match single command.
            regex   Match command line using regular expression.
        set pattern {string}  SSH shell command pattern. size[128]
        set action {block | allow}  Action to take for URL filter matches.
            block  Block the SSH shell command.
            allow  Allow the SSH shell command.
        set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging.
        set alert {enable | disable}  Enable/disable alert.
        set severity {low | medium | high | critical}  Log severity.
            low      Severity low.
            medium    Severity medium.
            high      Severity high.
            critical  Severity critical.
    next
next
end
```

switch-controller

Use switch-controller commands to configure a host of options related to managing an external FortiSwitch unit.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- `switch-controller 802-1X-settings`
- `switch-controller custom-command`
- `switch-controller global`
- `switch-controller igmp-snooping`
- `switch-controller lldp-profile`
- `switch-controller lldp-settings`
- `switch-controller mac-sync-settings`
- `switch-controller managed-switch`
- `switch-controller qos dot1p-map`
- `switch-controller qos ip-dscp-map`
- `switch-controller qos qos-policy`
- `switch-controller qos queue-policy`
- `switch-controller quarantine`
- `switch-controller security-policy 802-1X`
- `switch-controller security-policy captive-portal`
- `switch-controller sflow`
- `switch-controller storm-control`
- `switch-controller stp-settings`
- `switch-controller switch-group`
- `switch-controller switch-interface-tag`
- `switch-controller switch-log`
- `switch-controller switch-profile`
- `switch-controller system`
- `switch-controller virtual-port-pool`
- `switch-controller vlan`

Note that the following commands have been removed since the release of FortiOS 6.0:

- switch-controller quarantine

switch-controller 802-1X-settings

Use this command to control 802.1x user authentication settings for all switch ports. Settings include how re-authentication is handled and the maximum number of authentication attempts.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set reauth-period <minutes></code>	Time interval units corrected to minutes (not seconds).

```
config switch-controller 802-1X-settings
    set link-down-auth {set-unauth | no-action}    Interface-reauthentication state to set if a link is down.
        set-unauth    Interface set to unauth when down. Reauthentication is needed.
        no-action    Interface reauthentication is not needed.
    set reauth-period {integer}    Period of time to allow for reauthentication (1 - 1440 sec, default = 60, 0 = disable
reauthentication). range[1-1440]
    set max-reauth-attempt {integer}    Maximum number of authentication attempts (0 - 15, default = 3). range[0-15]
end
```

switch-controller custom-command

Use this command to save collections of commands that you can run on demand on a managed FortiSwitch.

```
config switch-controller custom-command
    edit {command-name}
    # Configure the FortiGate switch controller to send custom commands to managed FortiSwitch devices.
    set command-name {string}    Command name called by the FortiGate switch controller in the execute command. size
[35]
```

```

        set description {string}    Description. size[35]
        set command {string}    String of commands to send to FortiSwitch devices (For example (%0a = return key): config
switch trunk %0a edit myTrunk %0a set members port1 port2 %0a end %0a). size[255]
    next
end

```

switch-controller global

Configure global settings for managed FortiSwitches. The settings include the mac address age interval, whether multiple FortiGate interfaces can be used as FortiLink interfaces, and enabling or disabling auto-discovery for specific managed FortiSwitches.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<pre> set log-mac-limit-violations {enable disable} set mac-violation-timer <minutes> </pre>	<p>Enable or disable FortiLink MAC learning limit violations and timer in minutes. Set the range between 0-1500 (or up to 25 hours).</p> <p>Note that <code>mac-violation-timer</code> is only available when <code>log-mac-violations</code> is set to enable.</p>

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre> set https-image-push {enable disable} </pre>	<p>Enable or disable image push to FortiSwitch using HTTPS.</p>
<pre> set default-virtual-switch-vlan <string> </pre>	<p>Configure virtual-switch default VLAN settings.</p>

```

config switch-controller global
    set mac-aging-interval {integer}    Time after which an inactive MAC is aged out (10 - 1000000 sec, default = 300, 0
= disable). range[10-1000000]

```

```

    set allow-multiple-interfaces {enable | disable}    Enable/disable multiple FortiLink interfaces for redundant con-
nections between a managed FortiSwitch and FortiGate.
    set https-image-push {enable | disable}    Enable/disable image push to FortiSwitch using HTTPS.
    config disable-discovery
        edit {name}
            # Prevent this FortiSwitch from discovering.
            set name {string}    Managed device ID. size[64]
        next
    set mac-retention-period {integer}    Time in hours after which an inactive MAC is removed from client DB. range[1-
168]
    set default-virtual-switch-vlan {string}    Default VLAN for ports when added to the virtual-switch. size[15] - data-
source(s): system.interface.name
    set log-mac-limit-violations {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logs for Learning Limit Violations.
    set mac-violation-timer {integer}    Set timeout for Learning Limit Violations (0 = disabled). range[0-4294967295]
end

```

switch-controller igmp-snooping

Configure FortiSwitch IGMP snooping global settings. You can set the time for which to retain idle multicast snooping entries and enable or disable unknown multicast flooding.

```

config switch-controller igmp-snooping
    set aging-time {integer}    Maximum number of seconds to retain a multicast snooping entry for which no packets have
been seen (15 - 3600 sec, default = 300). range[15-3600]
    set flood-unknown-multicast {enable | disable}    Enable/disable unknown multicast flooding.
end

```

switch-controller lldp-profile

FortiOS supports configuring link layer discovery protocol-media endpoint discovery (LLDP MED) for managed FortiSwitches. You can use the following command to add media endpoint discovery (MED) features to an LLDP profile. Configure FortiSwitch LLDP profiles.

```

config switch-controller lldp-profile
    edit {name}
        # Configure FortiSwitch LLDP profiles.
        set name {string}    Profile name. size[63]
        set med-tlvs {inventory-management | network-policy}    Transmitted LLDP-MED TLVs (type-length-value descrip-
tions): inventory management TLV and/or network policy TLV.
    next
end

```

```

        inventory-management  Inventory management TLV.
        network-policy        Network policy TLVS.
set 802.1-tlvs {port-vlan-id}  Transmitted IEEE 802.1 TLVs.
        port-vlan-id  Port native VLAN TLV.
set 802.3-tlvs {max-frame-size}  Transmitted IEEE 802.3 TLVs.
        max-frame-size  Maximum frame size TLV.
set auto-isl {disable | enable}  Enable/disable auto inter-switch LAG.
set auto-isl-hello-timer {integer}  Auto inter-switch LAG hello timer duration (1 - 30 sec, default = 3). range
[1-30]
set auto-isl-receive-timeout {integer}  Auto inter-switch LAG timeout if no response is received (3 - 90 sec,
default = 9). range[3-90]
set auto-isl-port-group {integer}  Auto inter-switch LAG port group ID (0 - 9). range[0-9]
config med-network-policy
    edit {name}
        # Configuration method to edit Media Endpoint Discovery (MED) network policy type-length-value (TLV) cat-
egories.
        set name {string}  Policy type name. size[63]
        set status {disable | enable}  Enable or disable this TLV.
        set vlan {integer}  ID of VLAN to advertise, if configured on port (0 - 4094, 0 = priority tag). range
[0-4094]
        set priority {integer}  Advertised Layer 2 priority (0 - 7; from lowest to highest priority). range[0-
7]
        set dscp {integer}  Advertised Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) value, a packet header value
indicating the level of service requested for traffic, such as high priority or best effort delivery. range[0-63]
        next
    config custom-tlvs
        edit {name}
            # Configuration method to edit custom TLV entries.
            set name {string}  TLV name (not sent). size[63]
            set oui {string}  Organizationally unique identifier (OUI), a 3-byte hexadecimal number, for this TLV.
            set subtype {integer}  Organizationally defined subtype (0 - 255). range[0-255]
            set information-string {string}  Organizationally defined information string (0 - 507 hexadecimal
bytes).
            next
        next
    end
end

```

switch-controller lldp-settings

Use this command to enable or disable and configure LLDP global settings.

```
config switch-controller lldp-settings
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable LLDP global settings.
    set tx-hold {integer}    Number of tx-intervals before local LLDP data expires (1 - 16, default = 4). Packet TTL is
tx-hold * tx-interval. range[1-16]
    set tx-interval {integer}    Frequency of LLDP PDU transmission from FortiSwitch (5 - 4095 sec, default = 30). Packet
TTL is tx-hold * tx-interval. range[5-4095]
    set fast-start-interval {integer}    Frequency of LLDP PDU transmission from FortiSwitch for the first 4 packets when
the link is up (2 - 5 sec, default = 2, 0 = disable fast start). range[0-255]
    set management-interface {internal | mgmt}    Primary management interface to be advertised in LLDP and CDP PDUs.
        internal    Use internal interface.
        mgmt        Use management interface.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

tx-hold

Number of tx-intervals before the local LLDP data expires. Therefore, the packet TTL (in seconds) is tx-hold times tx-interval. The range for txhold is 1 to 16, and the default value is 4.

tx-interval

How often the FortiSwitch transmits the LLDP PDU. The range is 5 to 4095 seconds, and the default is 30 seconds.

fast-start-interval

How often the FortiSwitch transmits the first 4 LLDP packets when a link comes up. The range is 2 to 5 seconds, and the default is 2 seconds. Set this variable to zero to disable fast start.

management-interface

Primary management interface to be advertised in LLDP and CDP PDUs.

switch-controller mac-sync-settings

Use this command to configure the global MAC sync interval. The MAC sync interval is the time interval between MAC synchronizations. The range is 30 to 600 seconds, and the default value is 60.

```
config switch-controller mac-sync-settings
    set mac-sync-interval {integer}    Time interval between MAC synchronizations (30 - 1800 sec, default = 60, 0 = dis-
able MAC synchronization). range[30-1800]
end
```

switch-controller managed-switch

Use this command to add managed FortiSwitch to a FortiGate and to configure how the switch is managed.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.5.

Command	Description
set poe-detection-type <type>	Set the POE detection type for the managed FortiSwitch.

The following table shows all added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config mirror edit <name> set status {active inactive} set switching-packet {enable disable}</pre>	New configuration method to edit FortiSwitch packet port mirroring.

Command	Description
<pre> set dst <port-name> set src-ingress <port-name> set src-egress <port-name> next ... </pre>	
<pre> config ports edit <name> set discard-mode {none all-untagged all-tagged} next ... </pre>	Determine frame discard mode for ports.
<pre> config ports edit <name> set sflow-sampler {enable disable} set sflow-sample-rate <every-n-packets> set sflow-counter-interval <seconds> set sample-direction {tx rx both} next ... </pre>	Configure sFlow data-analysis settings for managed FortiSwitches, including sFlow sample rate, counter intervals, and the sample direction.
<pre> config ports edit <name> set export-to-pool <pool-name> set export-tags <tag-name> set export-to <vdom-or-pool-name> next ... </pre>	Use these entries to define how VDOMs export ports directly either to a VDOM or to a shared pool (as configured under config switch-controller virtual-port-pool).
<pre> config ports edit <name> set learning-limit <pool-name> next ... </pre>	Updated existing <code>learning-limit</code> option to have a default value of 0, meaning no limit.
<pre> config ports edit <name> set arp-inspection-trust {untrusted trusted} next ... </pre>	Trusted or untrusted dynamic ARP inspection.

```

config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit {switch-id}
        # Configure FortiSwitch devices that are managed by this FortiGate.
        set switch-id {string}    Managed-switch id. size[16]
        set name {string}    Managed-switch name. size[35]
        set description {string}    Description. size[63]
        set switch-profile {string}    FortiSwitch profile. size[35] - datasource(s): switch-controller.switch-profile.name
        set fsw-wan1-peer {string}    Fortiswitch WAN1 peer port. size[35]
        set fsw-wan1-admin {discovered | disable | enable}    FortiSwitch WAN1 admin status; enable to authorize the FortiSwitch as a managed switch.
        set fsw-wan2-peer {string}    FortiSwitch WAN2 peer port. size[35]
        set fsw-wan2-admin {discovered | disable | enable}    FortiSwitch WAN2 admin status; enable to authorize the FortiSwitch as a managed switch.
        set poe-pre-standard-detection {enable | disable}    Enable/disable PoE pre-standard detection.
        set poe-detection-type {integer}    PoE detection type for FortiSwitch. range[0-255]
        set directly-connected {integer}    Directly connected FortiSwitch. range[0-1]
        set version {integer}    FortiSwitch version. range[0-255]
        set max-allowed-trunk-members {integer}    FortiSwitch maximum allowed trunk members. range[0-255]
        set pre-provisioned {integer}    Pre-provisioned managed switch. range[0-255]
        set dynamic-capability {integer}    List of features this FortiSwitch supports (not configurable) that is sent to the FortiGate device for subsequent configuration initiated by the FortiGate device. range[0-4294967295]
        set switch-device-tag {string}    User definable label/tag. size[32]
        set dynamically-discovered {integer}    Dynamically discovered FortiSwitch. range[0-1]
        set type {virtual | physical}    Indication of switch type, physical or virtual.
            virtual    Switch is of type virtual.
            physical    Switch is of type physical.
        set owner-vdom {string}    VDOM which owner of port belongs to. size[31]
        set staged-image-version {string}    Staged image version for FortiSwitch. size[127]
        set delayed-restart-trigger {integer}    Delayed restart triggered for this FortiSwitch. range[0-255]
    config ports
        edit {port-name}
            # Managed-switch port list.
            set port-name {string}    Switch port name. size[15]
            set port-owner {string}    Switch port name. size[15]
            set switch-id {string}    Switch id. size[16]
            set speed {option}    Switch port speed; default and available settings depend on hardware.
                10half    10M half-duplex.
                10full    10M full-duplex.
                100half    100M half-duplex.

```

```
100full      100M full-duplex.
1000auto     Auto-negotiation (1G full-duplex only).
1000fiber    1G full-duplex (fiber SFPs only)
1000full     1G full-duplex
10000       10G full-duplex
40000       40G full-duplex
auto        Auto-negotiation.
auto-module  Auto Module.
100FX-half   100Mbps half-duplex.100Base-FX.
100FX-full   100Mbps full-duplex.100Base-FX.
100000full   100Gbps full-duplex.
2500full     2.5Gbps full-duplex.
25000full    25Gbps full-duplex.
50000full    50Gbps full-duplex.
10000cr      10Gbps copper interface.
10000sr      10Gbps SFI interface.
100000sr4    100Gbps SFI interface.
100000cr4    100Gbps copper interface.
25000cr4     25Gbps copper interface.
25000sr4     25Gbps SFI interface.
5000full     5Gbps full-duplex.
set speed-mask {integer}  Switch port speed mask. range[0-4294967295]
set status {up | down}  Switch port admin status: up or down.
    up    Set admin status up.
    down  Set admin status down.
set poe-status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable PoE status.
set poe-pre-standard-detection {enable | disable}  Enable/disable PoE pre-standard detection.
set port-number {integer}  Port number. range[1-64]
set port-prefix-type {integer}  Port prefix type. range[0-1]
set fortilink-port {integer}  FortiLink uplink port. range[0-1]
set poe-capable {integer}  PoE capable. range[0-1]
set stacking-port {integer}  Stacking port. range[0-1]
set fiber-port {integer}  Fiber-port. range[0-1]
set flags {integer}  Port properties flags. range[0-4294967295]
set virtual-port {integer}  Virtualized switch port. range[0-1]
set isl-local-trunk-name {string}  ISL local trunk name. size[15]
set isl-peer-port-name {string}  ISL peer port name. size[15]
set isl-peer-device-name {string}  ISL peer device name. size[16]
set fgt-peer-port-name {string}  FGT peer port name. size[15]
set fgt-peer-device-name {string}  FGT peer device name. size[16]
```

```

set vlan {string}    Assign switch ports to a VLAN. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
set allowed-vlans-all {enable | disable}    Enable/disable all defined vlans on this port.
config allowed-vlans
    edit {vlan-name}
        # Configure switch port tagged vlans
        set vlan-name {string}    VLAN name. size[79] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    next
config untagged-vlans
    edit {vlan-name}
        # Configure switch port untagged vlans
        set vlan-name {string}    VLAN name. size[79] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    next
set type {physical | trunk}    Interface type: physical or trunk port.
    physical    Physical port.
    trunk        Trunk port.
set dhcp-snooping {untrusted | trusted}    Trusted or untrusted DHCP-snooping interface.
    untrusted    Untrusted DHCP snooping interface.
    trusted        Trusted DHCP snooping interface.
set dhcp-snoop-option82-trust {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allowance of DHCP with option-82 on
untrusted interface.
set arp-inspection-trust {untrusted | trusted}    Trusted or untrusted dynamic ARP inspection.
    untrusted    Untrusted dynamic ARP inspection.
    trusted        Trusted dynamic ARP inspection.
set igmp-snooping {enable | disable}    Set IGMP snooping mode for the physical port interface.
set igmps-flood-reports {enable | disable}    Enable/disable flooding of IGMP reports to this interface
when igmp-snooping enabled.
set igmps-flood-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable flooding of IGMP snooping traffic to this
interface.
set stp-state {enabled | disabled}    Enable/disable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) on this interface.
    enabled    Enable STP on this interface.
    disabled    Disable STP on this interface.
set stp-root-guard {enabled | disabled}    Enable/disable STP root guard on this interface.
    enabled    Enable STP root-guard on this interface.
    disabled    Disable STP root-guard on this interface.
set stp-bpdu-guard {enabled | disabled}    Enable/disable STP BPDU guard on this interface.
    enabled    Enable STP BPDU guard on this interface.
    disabled    Disable STP BPDU guard on this interface.
set stp-bpdu-guard-timeout {integer}    BPDU Guard disabling protection (0 - 120 min). range[0-120]
set edge-port {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this interface as an edge port, bridging connections
between workstations and/or computers.

```

```

    set discard-mode {none | all-untagged | all-tagged}    Configure discard mode for port.
        none          Discard disabled.
        all-untagged  Discard all frames that are untagged.
        all-tagged    Discard all frames that are tagged.
    set sflow-sampler {enabled | disabled}    Enable/disable sFlow protocol on this interface.
        enabled      Enable sFlow protocol on this interface.
        disabled     Disable sFlow protocol on this interface.
    set sflow-sample-rate {integer}    sFlow sampler sample rate (0 - 99999 p/sec). range[0-99999]
    set sflow-counter-interval {integer}    sFlow sampler counter polling interval (1 - 255 sec). range[1-
255]

    set sample-direction {tx | rx | both}    sFlow sample direction.
        tx          Monitor transmitted traffic.
        rx          Monitor received traffic.
        both        Monitor transmitted and received traffic.
    set loop-guard {enabled | disabled}    Enable/disable loop-guard on this interface, an STP optimization
used to prevent network loops.
        enabled      Enable loop-guard on this interface.
        disabled     Disable loop-guard on this interface.
    set loop-guard-timeout {integer}    Loop-guard timeout (0 - 120 min, default = 45). range[0-120]
    set qos-policy {string}    Switch controller QoS policy from available options. size[63] - datasource(s):
switch-controller.qos.qos-policy.name
    set port-security-policy {string}    Switch controller authentication policy to apply to this managed
switch from available options. size[31] - datasource(s): switch-controller.security-policy.802-1X.name,switch-con-
troller.security-policy.captive-portal.name
    set export-to-pool {string}    Switch controller export port to pool-list. size[35] - datasource(s):
switch-controller.virtual-port-pool.name
    config export-tags
        edit {tag-name}
        # Switch controller export tag name.
        set tag-name {string}    Switch tag name. size[63] - datasource(s): switch-controller.switch-
interface-tag.name
    next
    set export-to-pool-flag {integer}    Switch controller export port to pool-list. range[0-1]
    set learning-limit {integer}    Limit the number of dynamic MAC addresses on this Port (1 - 128, 0 = no
limit, default). range[0-128]
    set lldp-status {disable | rx-only | tx-only | tx-rx}    LLDP transmit and receive status.
        disable     Disable LLDP TX and RX.
        rx-only     Enable LLDP as RX only.
        tx-only     Enable LLDP as TX only.
        tx-rx       Enable LLDP TX and RX.

```

```

        set lldp-profile {string}    LLDP port TLV profile. size[63] - datasource(s): switch-controller.lldp-pro-
file.name
        set export-to {string}    Export managed-switch port to a tenant VDOM. size[31] - datasource(s):
system.vdom.name
        set port-selection-criteria {option}    Algorithm for aggregate port selection.
            src-mac        Source MAC address.
            dst-mac        Destination MAC address.
            src-dst-mac    Source and destination MAC address.
            src-ip         Source IP address.
            dst-ip         Destination IP address.
            src-dst-ip     Source and destination IP address.
        set description {string}    Description for port. size[63]
        set lacp-speed {slow | fast}    end Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) messages every 30 seconds
(slow) or every second (fast).
            slow    Send LACP message every 30 seconds.
            fast    Send LACP message every second.
        set mode {static | lacp-passive | lacp-active}    LACP mode: ignore and do not send control messages, or
negotiate 802.3ad aggregation passively or actively.
            static        Static aggregation, do not send and ignore any control messages.
            lacp-passive    Passively use LACP to negotiate 802.3ad aggregation.
            lacp-active    Actively use LACP to negotiate 802.3ad aggregation.
        set bundle {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Link Aggregation Group (LAG) bundling for non-FortiLink
interfaces.
        set member-withdrawal-behavior {forward | block}    Port behavior after it withdraws because of loss of
control packets.
            forward    Forward traffic.
            block      Block traffic.
        set mclag {enable | disable}    Enable/disable multi-chassis link aggregation (MCLAG).
        set min-bundle {integer}    Minimum size of LAG bundle (1 - 24, default = 1) range[1-24]
        set max-bundle {integer}    Maximum size of LAG bundle (1 - 24, default = 24) range[1-24]
        config members
            edit {member-name}
            # Aggregated LAG bundle interfaces.
            set member-name {string}    Interface name from available options. size[64]
            next
        next
    config stp-settings
        set local-override {enable | disable}    Enable to configure local STP settings that override global STP set-
tings.
        set name {string}    Name of local STP settings configuration. size[31]

```

```

        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable STP.
        set revision {integer}    STP revision number (0 - 65535). range[0-65535]
        set hello-time {integer}    Period of time between successive STP frame Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs)
sent on a port (1 - 10 sec, default = 2). range[1-10]
        set forward-time {integer}    Period of time a port is in listening and learning state (4 - 30 sec, default =
15). range[4-30]
        set max-age {integer}    Maximum time before a bridge port saves its configuration BPDU information (6 - 40
sec, default = 20). range[6-40]
        set max-hops {integer}    Maximum number of hops between the root bridge and the furthest bridge (1- 40,
default = 20). range[1-40]
        set pending-timer {integer}    Pending time (1 - 15 sec, default = 4). range[1-15]
    config switch-stp-settings
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable STP.
    config switch-log
        set local-override {enable | disable}    Enable to configure local logging settings that override global log-
ging settings.
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable adding FortiSwitch logs to the FortiGate event log.
        set severity {option}    Severity of FortiSwitch logs that are added to the FortiGate event log.
            emergency    Emergency level.
            alert        Alert level.
            critical      Critical level.
            error         Error level.
            warning       Warning level.
            notification  Notification level.
            information   Information level.
            debug         Debug level.
    config storm-control
        set local-override {enable | disable}    Enable to override global FortiSwitch storm control settings for
this FortiSwitch.
        set rate {integer}    Rate in packets per second at which storm traffic is controlled (1 - 10000000, default
= 500). Storm control drops excess traffic data rates beyond this threshold. range[1-10000000]
        set unknown-unicast {enable | disable}    Enable/disable storm control to drop unknown unicast traffic.
        set unknown-multicast {enable | disable}    Enable/disable storm control to drop unknown multicast traffic.
        set broadcast {enable | disable}    Enable/disable storm control to drop broadcast traffic.
    config mirror
        edit {name}
        # Configuration method to edit FortiSwitch packet mirror.
        set name {string}    Mirror name. size[63]
        set status {active | inactive}    Active/inactive mirror configuration.
            active    Activate mirror configuration.

```

```

        inactive Deactivate mirror configuration.
set switching-packet {enable | disable} Enable/disable switching functionality when mirroring.
set dst {string} Destination port. size[63]
config src-ingress
    edit {name}
        # Source ingress interfaces.
        set name {string} Interface name. size[64]
    next
config src-egress
    edit {name}
        # Source egress interfaces.
        set name {string} Interface name. size[64]
    next
next
config custom-command
    edit {command-entry}
        # Configuration method to edit FortiSwitch commands to be pushed to this FortiSwitch device upon rebooting
the FortiGate switch controller or the FortiSwitch.
        set command-entry {string} List of FortiSwitch commands. size[35]
        set command-name {string} Names of commands to be pushed to this FortiSwitch device, as configured
under config switch-controller custom-command. size[35] - datasource(s): switch-controller.custom-command.command-name
    next
config igmp-snooping
    set local-override {enable | disable} Enable/disable overriding the global IGMP snooping configuration.
    set aging-time {integer} Maximum time to retain a multicast snooping entry for which no packets have been
seen (15 - 3600 sec, default = 300). range[15-3600]
    set flood-unknown-multicast {enable | disable} Enable/disable unknown multicast flooding.
config 802-1X-settings
    set local-override {enable | disable} Enable to override global 802.1X settings on individual
FortiSwitches.
    set link-down-auth {set-unauth | no-action} Authentication state to set if a link is down.
        set-unauth Interface set to unauth when down. Reauthentication is needed.
        no-action Interface reauthentication is not needed.
    set reauth-period {integer} Reauthentication time interval (1 - 1440 min, default = 60, 0 = disable).
range[1-1440]
    set max-reauth-attempt {integer} Maximum number of authentication attempts (0 - 15, default = 3). range[0-
15]
next
end

```


Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

Support FSW BPDU Guard

With standard STP, a device that sends BPDU(s) to any switch port becomes a member of that switch's STP network topology. In order to enforce a network edge, the access ports on the switch can be configured with BPDU guard. With BPDU guard enabled, the port does not forward BPDUs upstream (toward its root bridge). Instead, when a BPDU guard enabled port receives any BPDU, it immediately puts the port into a blocking state and alerts the user.

This prevents the access port from accepting the downstream device, removing it from the receiving switch's STP calculations. In order to unblock the port after bpdu guard has triggered, the user must execute a reset command. After the port is reset, it will resume normal operation and return to a blocking state only if another BPDU is received.

BPDU guard is typically used in conjunction with Root Guard to enforce a specific network topology.

Syntax

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <switch SN>
    config ports
      edit <port>
        set stp-bpdu-guard <enable | *disable>
        set stp-bpdu-guard-timeout <time> (0-120 in minutes)
      next
    end
  next
end

config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <switch SN>
    config ports
      edit <port>
        set stp-root-guard <enable | *disable>
      next
    end
  next
end
```

config mirror

Use this configuration method to configure FortiSwitch to send a copy of any ingress/egress packets on a port to egress on another port on the switch. This process, also known as port mirroring, is typically for external analysis and capture, and does not affect the original traffic.

At the moment, the ingress and egress ports must be on the same switch.

Note: The `src-ingress` and `src-egress` entries are only available when `dst` has been set.

config ports

Use this configuration method to configure managed-switch port lists.

arp-inspection-trust {untrusted | trusted}

Trusted or untrusted dynamic ARP inspection.

Dynamic ARP Inspection (DAI) enables FortiSwitch to intercept and examine all ARP request and response packets in a subnet and discard those packets with invalid IP to MAC address bindings. DAI can prevent common man-in-the-middle (MiM) attacks such as ARP cache poisoning and disallow mis-configuration of client IP addresses.

discard-mode {none | all-untagged | all-tagged}

Allow switch interfaces to enforce what types of tagged or untagged 802.1Q frames are considered acceptable.

IEE 802.1Q ports can run in hybrid mode, simultaneously accepting tagged or untagged frames based on VLAN membership. This option permits greater control over what types of frames (tagged or untagged) may access a given port. By default, all frames have access to each FortiSwitch port.

sflow-sampler {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) sFlow protocol on this interface. Once enabled, use the other sFlow related entries to configure the sample rate, counter interval, and sample direction for sFlow data-analysis.

sflow-sample-rate <every-n-packets>

Define a sampling rate, where an average of one out of n packets or operations is randomly sampled. This type of sampling does not provide a 100% accurate result, but it does provide a result with quantifiable accuracy.

The sample rate defines the average number of packets to wait between samples. Set the value between 10 - 99999. The default is 512, which provides high enough accuracy in most cases.

The lower the sample-rate the higher the number of packets sampled. Sampling more packets increases the accuracy of the sampling data but also increases the CPU and network bandwidth required to support sFlow.

sflow-counter-interval <seconds>

The amount of time in seconds that the sFlow agent waits between sending collected data to the sFlow collector. Set the range between 1 - 255. The default is 30.

sFlow counter sampling can be more efficient than SNMP polling when monitoring a large number of interfaces. A higher polling-interval means less data is sent across the network but also means that the sFlow collector's picture of the network may be out of date.

sample-direction {tx | rx | both}

Determine whether the sFlow agent should sample traffic received by the interface (rx) or sent from the interface (tx) or both.

set poe-detection-type <type>

Set the power over ethernet (POE) detection method to be used by the managed FortiSwitch.

switch-controller qos dot1p-map

Use this command to configure a Dot1p map. A Dot1p map defines a mapping between IEEE 802.1p class of service (CoS) values (from incoming packets on a trusted interface) and the egress queue values. Values that are not explicitly included in the map will follow the default mapping, which maps each priority (0-7) to queue 0. If an incoming packet contains no CoS value, the switch assigns a CoS value of zero.



Do not enable trust for both Dot1p and DSCP at the same time on the same interface. If you do want to trust both Dot1p and IP-DSCP, the FortiSwitch uses the latter value (DSCP) to determine the queue. The switch will use the Dot1p value and mapping only if the packet contains no DSCP value.

```
config switch-controller qos dot1p-map
edit {name}
# Configure FortiSwitch QoS 802.1p.
set name {string} Dot1p map name. size[63]
```

```
set description {string}    Description of the 802.1p name. size[63]
set priority-0 {option}     COS queue mapped to dot1p priority number.
    queue-0 COS queue 0 (lowest priority).
    queue-1 COS queue 1.
    queue-2 COS queue 2.
    queue-3 COS queue 3.
    queue-4 COS queue 4.
    queue-5 COS queue 5.
    queue-6 COS queue 6.
    queue-7 COS queue 7 (highest priority).
set priority-1 {option}     COS queue mapped to dot1p priority number.
    queue-0 COS queue 0 (lowest priority).
    queue-1 COS queue 1.
    queue-2 COS queue 2.
    queue-3 COS queue 3.
    queue-4 COS queue 4.
    queue-5 COS queue 5.
    queue-6 COS queue 6.
    queue-7 COS queue 7 (highest priority).
set priority-2 {option}     COS queue mapped to dot1p priority number.
    queue-0 COS queue 0 (lowest priority).
    queue-1 COS queue 1.
    queue-2 COS queue 2.
    queue-3 COS queue 3.
    queue-4 COS queue 4.
    queue-5 COS queue 5.
    queue-6 COS queue 6.
    queue-7 COS queue 7 (highest priority).
set priority-3 {option}     COS queue mapped to dot1p priority number.
    queue-0 COS queue 0 (lowest priority).
    queue-1 COS queue 1.
    queue-2 COS queue 2.
    queue-3 COS queue 3.
    queue-4 COS queue 4.
    queue-5 COS queue 5.
    queue-6 COS queue 6.
    queue-7 COS queue 7 (highest priority).
set priority-4 {option}     COS queue mapped to dot1p priority number.
    queue-0 COS queue 0 (lowest priority).
    queue-1 COS queue 1.
```

```
        queue-2 COS queue 2.
        queue-3 COS queue 3.
        queue-4 COS queue 4.
        queue-5 COS queue 5.
        queue-6 COS queue 6.
        queue-7 COS queue 7 (highest priority).
    set priority-5 {option} COS queue mapped to dot1p priority number.
        queue-0 COS queue 0 (lowest priority).
        queue-1 COS queue 1.
        queue-2 COS queue 2.
        queue-3 COS queue 3.
        queue-4 COS queue 4.
        queue-5 COS queue 5.
        queue-6 COS queue 6.
        queue-7 COS queue 7 (highest priority).
    set priority-6 {option} COS queue mapped to dot1p priority number.
        queue-0 COS queue 0 (lowest priority).
        queue-1 COS queue 1.
        queue-2 COS queue 2.
        queue-3 COS queue 3.
        queue-4 COS queue 4.
        queue-5 COS queue 5.
        queue-6 COS queue 6.
        queue-7 COS queue 7 (highest priority).
    set priority-7 {option} COS queue mapped to dot1p priority number.
        queue-0 COS queue 0 (lowest priority).
        queue-1 COS queue 1.
        queue-2 COS queue 2.
        queue-3 COS queue 3.
        queue-4 COS queue 4.
        queue-5 COS queue 5.
        queue-6 COS queue 6.
        queue-7 COS queue 7 (highest priority).
    next
end
```

switch-controller qos ip-dscp-map

Use this command to configure a DSCP map. A DSCP map defines a mapping between IP precedence or DSCP values and the egress queue values. For IP precedence, you have the following choices:

- network-control—Network control
- internetwork-control—Internetwork control
- critic-ecp—Critic and emergency call processing (ECP)
- flashoverride—Flash override
- flash—Flash
- immediate—Immediate
- priority—Priority
- routine—Routine

```
config switch-controller qos ip-dscp-map
    edit {name}
        # Configure FortiSwitch QoS IP precedence/DSCP.
        set name {string}    Dscp map name. size[63]
        set description {string}    Description of the ip-dscp map name. size[63]
        config map
            edit {name}
                # Maps between IP-DSCP value to COS queue.
                set name {string}    Dscp mapping entry name. size[63]
                set cos-queue {integer}    COS queue number. range[0-7]
                set diffserv {option}    Differentiated service.
                    CS0    DSCP CS0.
                    CS1    DSCP CS1.
                    AF11    DSCP AF11.
                    AF12    DSCP AF12.
                    AF13    DSCP AF13.
                    CS2    DSCP CS2.
                    AF21    DSCP AF21.
                    AF22    DSCP AF22.
                    AF23    DSCP AF23.
                    CS3    DSCP CS3.
                    AF31    DSCP AF31.
                    AF32    DSCP AF32.
                    AF33    DSCP AF33.
                    CS4    DSCP CS4.
```

```

        AF41 DSCP AF41.
        AF42 DSCP AF42.
        AF43 DSCP AF43.
        CS5  DSCP CS5.
        EF   DSCP EF.
        CS6  DSCP CS6.
        CS7  DSCP CS7.
    set ip-precedence {option} IP Precedence.
        network-control      Network control.
        internetwork-control  Internetwork control.
        critic-ecp            Critic ECP.
        flashoverride         Flash override.
        flash                 Flash.
        immediate             Immediate.
        priority              Priority.
        routine               Routine.
    set value {string}      Raw values of DSCP (0 - 63).
next
next
end

```

switch-controller qos qos-policy

Use this command to configure the overall QoS policy that will be applied to the switch ports. The overall QoS policy includes selecting a previously configured trust dot1p map, DSCP map, queue policy and so on.

```

config switch-controller qos qos-policy
    edit {name}
        # Configure FortiSwitch QoS policy.
        set name {string}    QoS policy name. size[63]
        set default-cos {integer}  Default cos queue for untagged packets. range[0-7]
        set trust-dot1p-map {string}  QoS trust 802.1p map. size[63] - datasource(s): switch-controller.qos.dot1p-map.-
name
        set trust-ip-dscp-map {string}  QoS trust ip dscp map. size[63] - datasource(s): switch-controller.qos.ip-dscp-
map.name
        set queue-policy {string}  QoS egress queue policy. size[63] - datasource(s): switch-controller.qos.queue-
policy.name
    next
end

```

switch-controller qos queue-policy

Use this command to configure the egress QoS policy. In a QoS policy, you set the scheduling mode for the policy and configure one or more CoS queues. Each egress port supports eight queues, and three scheduling modes are available:

- With strict scheduling, the queues are served in descending order (of queue number), so higher number queues receive higher priority.
- In simple round-robin mode, the scheduler visits each backlogged queue, servicing a single packet from each queue before moving on to the next one.
- In weighted round-robin mode, each of the eight egress queues is assigned a weight value ranging from 0 to 63.

```
config switch-controller qos queue-policy
    edit {name}
    # Configure FortiSwitch QoS egress queue policy.
    set name {string}    QoS policy name size[63]
    set schedule {strict | round-robin | weighted}    COS queue scheduling.
        strict          Strict scheduling (queue7: highest priority, queue0: lowest priority).
        round-robin     Round robin scheduling.
        weighted        Weighted round robin scheduling.
    config cos-queue
        edit {name}
        # COS queue configuration.
        set name {string}    Cos queue ID. size[63]
        set description {string}    Description of the COS queue. size[63]
        set min-rate {integer}    Minimum rate (0 - 4294967295 kbps, 0 to disable). range[0-4294967295]
        set max-rate {integer}    Maximum rate (0 - 4294967295 kbps, 0 to disable). range[0-4294967295]
        set drop-policy {taildrop | weighted-random-early-detection}    COS queue drop policy.
            taildrop          Taildrop policy.
            weighted-random-early-detection    Weighted random early detection drop policy.
        set weight {integer}    Weight of weighted round robin scheduling. range[0-4294967295]
    next
next
end
```

switch-controller security-policy 802-1X

Use this command to create 802.1X security policies.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>set open-auth {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable (by default) FortiLink open authentication for this policy.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set user-group <name></code>	This entry is now mandatory for an 802.1x security policy to work correctly.

```
config switch-controller security-policy 802-1X
  edit {name}
    # Configure 802.1x MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB) policies.
    set name {string} Policy name. size[31]
    set security-mode {802.1X | 802.1X-mac-based} Port or MAC based 802.1X security mode.
        802.1X 802.1X port based authentication.
        802.1X-mac-based 802.1X MAC based authentication.
    config user-group
      edit {name}
        # Name of user-group to assign to this MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB) policy.
        set name {string} Group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
      next
    set mac-auth-bypass {disable | enable} Enable/disable MAB for this policy.
    set open-auth {disable | enable} Enable/disable open authentication for this policy.
    set eap-passthru {disable | enable} Enable/disable EAP pass-through mode, allowing protocols (such as LLDP) to
pass through ports for more flexible authentication.
    set guest-vlan {disable | enable} Enable the guest VLAN feature to allow limited access to non-802.1X-com-
pliant clients.
    set guest-vlanid {integer} Guest VLAN ID. range[0-65535]
    set guest-vlan-id {string} Guest VLAN name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set guest-auth-delay {integer} Guest authentication delay (1 - 900 sec, default = 30). range[1-900]
    set auth-fail-vlan {disable | enable} Enable to allow limited access to clients that cannot authenticate.
    set auth-fail-vlanid {integer} VLAN ID on which authentication failed. range[0-65535]
```

```
        set auth-fail-vlan-id {string}    VLAN ID on which authentication failed. size[15] - datasource(s): sys-  
tem.interface.name  
        set radius-timeout-overwrite {disable | enable}    Enable to override the global RADIUS session timeout.  
        set policy-type {802.1X}    Policy type.  
            802.1X    802.1X security policy.  
    next  
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

set security-mode

You can restrict access with 802.1X port-based authentication or with 802.1X MAC-based authentication.

set user-group

You can set a specific group name, Guest-group, or SSO_Guest_Users to have access.

set mac-auth-bypass

You can enable or disable MAB on this interface.

set eap-passthrough

You can enable or disable EAP pass-through mode on this interface.

set guest-vlan

You can enable or disable guest VLANs on this interface to allow restricted access for some users.

set guest-vlan-id "guest- VLAN-name"

You can specify the name of the guest VLAN.

set guest-auth-delay

You can set the authentication delay for guest VLANs on this interface. The range is 60-900 seconds.

set auth-fail-vlan

You can enable or disable authentication fail VLAN on this interface to allow restricted access for users who fail to access the guest VLAN.

set auth-fail-vlan-id "auth-fail-VLAN-name"

You can specify the name of the authentication fail VLAN.

set radius-timeoutoverwrite

You can enable or disable whether the session timeout for the RADIUS server will overwrite the local timeout.

set policy-type 802.1X

You can set the policy type to the 802.1X security policy.

switch-controller security-policy captive-portal

Configure captive portal policies.

```
config switch-controller security-policy captive-portal
  edit {name}
    # Names of VLANs that use captive portal authentication.
    set name {string}    Policy name. size[31]
    set vlan {string}    Names of VLANs that use captive portal authentication. size[15] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name
    set policy-type {captive-portal}    Policy type.
    captive-portal    Captive portal security policy.
  next
end
```

switch-controller sflow

Use this command to configure the sFlow collector. sFlow, a network monitoring protocol, is typically used to provide an overall traffic flow picture of your network in order to identify areas on the network that might impact performance and throughput.

With sFlow, you can export truncated packets and interface counters. You usually operate sFlow agents on switches, routers, and firewalls in your network, collect traffic data from all of them, and use a collector to show traffic flows and patterns. FortiSwitch implements sFlow version 5 and supports trunks and VLANs.

sFlow uses packet sampling to monitor network traffic. The sFlow agent captures packet information at defined intervals and sends them to an sFlow collector for analysis, providing real-time data analysis. To minimize the impact on network throughput, the information sent is only a sampling of the data.

The sFlow collector is a central server running software that analyzes and reports on network traffic. The sampled packets and counter information, referred to as flow samples and counter samples, respectively, are sent as sFlow datagrams to a collector. Upon receiving the datagrams, the sFlow collector provides real-time analysis and graphing to indicate the source of potential traffic issues. sFlow collector software is available from a number of third-party software vendors. You must configure a FortiGate policy to transmit the samples from the FortiSwitch unit to the sFlow collector.

sFlow can monitor network traffic in two ways:

- **Flow samples:** Based on a defined sampling rate, an average of one out of n packets/operations is randomly sampled. This type of sampling does not provide a 100% accurate result, but it does provide a result with quantifiable accuracy.
- **Counter samples:** A polling interval in seconds defines how often the network device sends interface counters. sFlow counter sampling can be more efficient than SNMP polling when monitoring a large number of interfaces.

To configure these sampling rates and polling intervals, see the sFlow entries under `config switch-controller managed-switch`.

These sFlow samples are sent directly from the FortiSwitch to a collector via a FortiGate policy. This policy needs to be manually configured.



Because sFlow is CPU intensive, Fortinet does not recommend high rates of sampling for long periods.

Please note that these options are not to be confused with the `config system sflow` command, which is used for FortiGate (i.e. not FortiSwitch) sFlow agents to send sFlow datagrams to an sFlow collector.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config switch-controller sflow</code>	New <code>config</code> command. Configure FortiSwitch sFlow settings, including the the IP address of the collector to send traffic to, and on what port.

```
config switch-controller sflow
    set collector-ip {ipv4 address}    Collector IP.
    set collector-port {integer}    SFlow collector port (0 - 65535). range[0-65535]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

collector-ip <ip>

Enter the IP address of the sFlow collector that sFlow agents should send sFlow datagrams to.

collector-port <port>

Enter the UDP port number to use for sending sFlow datagrams. Change this setting only if required by your sFlow collector or your network configuration. Set the range between 0 - 65535. The default is 6343.

switch-controller storm-control

Use this command to configure storm control. Storm control uses the data rate (packets/sec, default 500) of the link to measure traffic activity, preventing traffic on a LAN from being disrupted by a broadcast, multicast, or unicast storm on a port.

When the data rate exceeds the configured threshold, storm control drops excess traffic. You can configure the types of traffic to drop: broadcast, unknown unicast, or multicast.

The storm control settings are global to all of the non-FortiLink ports on the managed switches.

```
config switch-controller storm-control
    set rate {integer}    Rate in packets per second at which storm traffic is controlled (1 - 10000000, default = 500).
```

```

Storm control drops excess traffic data rates beyond this threshold. range[1-10000000]
  set unknown-unicast {enable | disable}  Enable/disable storm control to drop unknown unicast traffic.
  set unknown-multicast {enable | disable}  Enable/disable storm control to drop unknown multicast traffic.
  set broadcast {enable | disable}  Enable/disable storm control to drop broadcast traffic.
end

```

switch-controller stp-settings

Use this command to configure global STP configuration for all managed FortiSwitches.

You can override the global STP settings for a FortiSwitch using the following commands:

```

config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <switch-id>
    config stp-settings
      set local-override enable
    end
end

config switch-controller stp-settings
  set name {string}  Name of global STP settings configuration. size[31]
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable STP.
  set revision {integer}  STP revision number (0 - 65535). range[0-65535]
  set hello-time {integer}  Period of time between successive STP frame Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) sent on a
port (1 - 10 sec, default = 2). range[1-10]
  set forward-time {integer}  Period of time a port is in listening and learning state (4 - 30 sec, default = 15).
range[4-30]
  set max-age {integer}  Maximum time before a bridge port saves its configuration BPDU information (6 - 40 sec,
default = 20). range[6-40]
  set max-hops {integer}  Maximum number of hops between the root bridge and the furthest bridge (1- 40, default =
20). range[1-40]
  set pending-timer {integer}  Pending time (1 - 15 sec, default = 4). range[1-15]
end

```

switch-controller switch-group

In larger networks, the number of switches can be large. Different models and device purposes might exist. Furthermore, the topology might have "built-in" redundancy. Use this command to create a FortiSwitch group allowing you to perform an operation on the entire group instead of one switch at a time.

Grouping FortiSwitches allows you to restart all of the switches in the group instead of individually. For example, you can use the following command to restart all of the FortiSwitches in a group named my-sw-group:

```
execute switch-controller restart-swtp my-switch-group

config switch-controller switch-group
    edit {name}
        # Configure FortiSwitch switch groups.
        set name {string}    Switch group name. size[35]
        set description {string}    Optional switch group description. size[63]
        config members
            edit {name}
                # FortiSwitch members belonging to this switch group.
                set name {string}    Managed device ID. size[64] - datasource(s): switch-controller.managed-
switch.switch-id
            next
        next
    end
```

switch-controller switch-interface-tag

Use this command to configure switch object tags.

For ease of identification, all ports have several pre-defined VPP export tags associated with the port. The VDOM owner may also create additional tags.

The following is a list of pre-defined tags, showing port capabilities, form factors, and speed options:

- POE
- RJ45
- SFP
- QSFP
- 10M/100M/1G
- 1G
- 1G/10G
- 40G
- 100G

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config switch-controller switch-interface-tag</code>	New config command. Configure switch object tags.

```
config switch-controller switch-interface-tag
  edit {name}
    # Configure switch object tags.
    set name {string}    Tag name. size[63]
  next
end
```

switch-controller switch-log

You can use the following command to enable and disable the managed FortiSwitches to export their syslogs to the FortiGate. The setting is global, and the default setting is enabled. To allow a level of filtering, FortiGate sets the user field to `fortiswitch-syslog` for each entry.

You can override the global log settings for a FortiSwitch, using the following command:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <switch-id>
    config switch-log
      set local-override enable
    end
```

At this point, you can configure the log settings that apply to this specific switch

```
config switch-controller switch-log
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable adding FortiSwitch logs to FortiGate event log.
  set severity {option}          Severity of FortiSwitch logs that are added to the FortiGate event log.
    emergency                    Emergency level.
    alert                        Alert level.
    critical                     Critical level.
    error                        Error level.
    warning                      Warning level.
```



```
        notification    Notification level.
        information     Information level.
        debug           Debug level.
end
```

switch-controller switch-profile

By default, each FortiSwitch has an admin account without a password. You can use the following command to replace the admin passwords for all FortiSwitches managed by a FortiGate.

```
config switch-controller switch-profile
  edit {name}
    # Configure FortiSwitch switch profile.
    set name {string}    FortiSwitch Profile name. size[35]
    set login-passwd-override {enable | disable}  Enable/disable overriding the admin administrator password for a
managed FortiSwitch with the FortiGate admin administrator account password.
    set login-passwd {password_string}  Login password of managed FortiSwitch. size[64]
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

Removing a password override

If you had already applied a profile with the override enabled and the password set and then decide to remove the admin password, you need to apply a profile with the override enabled and no password set; otherwise, your previously set password will remain in the FortiSwitch. For example:

```
config switch-controller switch-profile
  edit default
    set login-passwd-override enable
    unset login-passwd
  end
```

switch-controller system

Use the command to configure system-wide switch controller settings.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config switch-controller system</code>	New <code>config</code> command. Sets the number of parallel processes that switch-controller can do to configure FortiSwitches.

```
config switch-controller system
    set parallel-process-override {disable | enable}  Enable/disable parallel process override.
    set parallel-process {integer}  Maximum number of parallel processes (1 - 300, default = 1). range[1-300]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

parallel-process-override {enable | disable}

Warning: When set to `enable`, use of the processing override may create instability in the control and management of FortiSwitch devices; use with extreme caution.

Enable or disable (by default) the maximum parallel process override, whereby multiple FortSwitches can be configured at the same time.

Configuring FortiSwitch can be complex, and so the time needed to configure has expanded. Managing more switches at the same time can put a strain on the async config engine. Multiple FortiSwitches in the network all requiring large updates can result in long configuration times.

Once enabled, use the `parallel-process` entry to determine the maximum number of parallel process that can occur.

parallel-process <maximum-processes>

Note: This entry is only available when `parallel-process-override` is set to `enable`.

Maximum number of FortiSwitches that can be configured at once. Set the range between 1 - 300. The default is 1.

switch-controller virtual-port-pool

Configure virtual port pools (VPP), a temporary location where ports can be exported from an owning VDOM making the port available to be shared with other VDOMs. When ports are exported to the pool, their link is forced down so that, if a VDOM needs an additional port, they can allocate/pull any port from any pool. If the port is the first port from a given FortiSwitch, a virtual switch is created to contain the port.

Use this command to create read-accessible pools for all VDOMs to query. Once created, use the `config switch-controller managed-switch` command to define how VDOMs export ports directly either to a VDOM or to a shared pool (see the `export-to` and `export-tags` entries).

Please note that shared ports do *not* support the following features:

- LLDP
- 802.1x
- STP
- BPDU guard
- Root guard
- DHCP snooping
- IGMP snooping
- QoS
- Port security
- MCLAG

For ease of identification, all ports have several pre-defined VPP export tags associated with the port. The VDOM owner may also create additional tags. For more information, see `config switch-controller switch-interface-tags`.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config switch-controller virtual-port-pool</code>	New <code>config</code> command. Configure virtual port pools (VPP).

```
config switch-controller virtual-port-pool
    edit {name}
    # Configure virtual pool.
        set name {string}    Virtual switch pool name. size[35]
        set description {string}    Virtual switch pool description. size[63]
    next
end
```

switch-controller vlan

Configure VLANs for managed FortiSwitches.

```
config switch-controller vlan
    edit {name}
    # Configure VLANs for switch controller.
        set name {string}    Switch VLAN name. size[15]
        set vdom {string}    Virtual domain, size[32]
        set vlanid {integer}  VLAN ID. range[1-4094]
        set comments {string} Comment. size[63]
        set color {integer}   Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
        set security {open | captive-portal | 8021x}    Security.
            open                Open.
            captive-portal      Captive portal.
            8021x                802.1x
        set auth {radius | usergroup}    Authentication.
            radius                RADIUS.
            usergroup            User group.
        set radius-server {string}    Authentication radius server. size[35] - datasource(s): user.radius.name
        set usergroup {string}    Authentication usergroup. size[35] - datasource(s): user.group.name
        set portal-message-override-group {string}    Specify captive portal replacement message override group. size[35]
        config portal-message-overrides
            set auth-disclaimer-page {string}    Override auth-disclaimer-page message with message from portal-message-overrides group. size[35]
```

```
        set auth-reject-page {string}    Override auth-reject-page message with message from portal-message-overrides
group. size[35]
        set auth-login-page {string}    Override auth-login-page message with message from portal-message-overrides
group. size[35]
        set auth-login-failed-page {string}    Override auth-login-failed-page message with message from portal-mes-
sage-overrides group. size[35]
        config selected-usergroups
        edit {name}
        # Selected user group.
        set name {string}    User group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
        next
    next
end
```

system

Use system commands to configure options related to the overall operation of your FortiGate.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- `system 3g-modem custom`
- `system accprofile`
- `system admin`
- `system affinity-interrupt`
- `system affinity-packet-redistribution`
- `system alarm`
- `system alias`
- `system api-user`
- `system arp-table`
- `system auto-install`
- `system automation-action`
- `system automation-destination`
- `system automation-stitch`
- `system automation-trigger`
- `system auto-scale`
- `system auto-script`
- `system autoupdate push-update`
- `system autoupdate schedule`
- `system autoupdate tunneling`
- `system bypass`
- `system central-management`
- `system cluster-sync`
- `system console`
- `system csf`
- `system custom-language`

- [system ddns](#)
- [system dedicated-mgmt](#)
- [system dhcp server | dhc6 server](#)
- [system dnp3-proxy](#)
- [system dns](#)
- [system dns-database](#)
- [system dns-server](#)
- [system dscp-based-priority](#)
- [system email-server](#)
- [system external-resource](#)
- [system fips-cc](#)
- [system fm](#)
- [system fortiguard](#)
- [system fortimanager](#)
- [system fortisandbox](#)
- [system fsso-polling](#)
- [system ftm-push](#)
- [system geoip-override](#)
- [system global](#)
- [system gre-tunnel](#)
- [system ha](#)
- [system ha-monitor](#)
- [system interface](#)
- [system ipip-tunnel](#)
- [system ips-urlfilter-dns | ips-urlfilter-dns6](#)
- [system ipv6-neighbor-cache](#)
- [system ipv6-tunnel](#)
- [system link-monitor](#)
- [system lte-modem](#)
- [system mac-address-table](#)
- [system management-tunnel](#)
- [system mobile-tunnel](#)
- [system modem](#)

- [system nat64](#)
- [system netflow](#)
- [system network-visibility](#)
- [system np6](#)
- [system npu](#)
- [system ntp](#)
- [system object-tagging](#)
- [system password-policy](#)
- [system password-policy-guest-admin](#)
- [system physical-switch](#)
- [system pppoe-interface](#)
- [system probe-response](#)
- [system proxy-arp](#)
- [system replacemsg admin](#)
- [system replacemsg alertmail](#)
- [system replacemsg auth](#)
- [system replacemsg device-detection-portal](#)
- [system replacemsg ec](#)
- [system replacemsg fortiguard-wf](#)
- [system replacemsg ftp](#)
- [system replacemsg http](#)
- [system replacemsg mail](#)
- [system replacemsg nac-quar](#)
- [system replacemsg nntp](#)
- [system replacemsg spam](#)
- [system replacemsg sslvpn](#)
- [system replacemsg traffic-quota](#)
- [system replacemsg utm](#)
- [system replacemsg webproxy](#)
- [system replacemsg-group](#)
- [system replacemsg-image](#)
- [system resource-limits](#)
- [system sdn-connector](#)

- [system session-helper](#)
- [system session-ttl](#)
- [system settings](#)
- [system sflow](#)
- [system sit-tunnel](#)
- [system sms-server](#)
- [system snmp community](#)
- [system snmp sysinfo](#)
- [system snmp user](#)
- [system storage](#)
- [system stp](#)
- [system switch-interface](#)
- [system tos-based-priority](#)
- [system vdom](#)
- [system vdom-dns](#)
- [system vdom-exception](#)
- [system vdom-link](#)
- [system vdom-netflow](#)
- [system vdom-property](#)
- [system vdom-radius-server](#)
- [system vdom-sflow](#)
- [system virtual-switch](#)
- [system virtual-wan-link](#)
- [system virtual-wire-pair](#)
- [system vxlan](#)
- [system wccp](#)
- [system wireless ap-status](#)
- [system wireless settings](#)
- [system zone](#)

system 3g-modem custom

Use this command to manually configure the FortiGate unit for an installed 3G wireless PCMCIA modem. For more information on custom configuring modems, see [Modems](#).

If you are custom configuring an LTE modem, instead use the [system lte-modem](#) command.

```
config system 3g-modem custom
  edit {id}
    # 3G MODEM custom.
    set id {integer} ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set vendor {string} MODEM vendor name. size[35]
    set model {string} MODEM model name. size[35]
    set vendor-id {string} USB vendor ID in hexadecimal format (0000-ffff).
    set product-id {string} USB product ID in hexadecimal format (0000-ffff).
    set class-id {string} USB interface class in hexadecimal format (00-ff).
    set init-string {string} Init string in hexadecimal format (even length). size[127]
  next
end
```

system accprofile

Use this command to add access profiles that control administrator access to FortiGate features. Each FortiGate administrator account must include an access profile. You can create access profiles that deny access, allow read only, or allow both read and write access to FortiGate features. You cannot delete or modify the `super_admin` access profile, but you can use it with more than one administrator account.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set secfabgrp {none read read-write} set ftviewgrp {none read read-write}</pre>	New read or read-write privileges for Security Fabric and FortiView.

Command	Description
<pre> set netgrp {custom ...} config netgrp-permission set cfg {none read read-write} set packet-capture {none read read-write} set route-cfg {none read read-write} set sysgrp {custom ...} config sysgrp-permission set admin {none read read-write} set upd {none read read-write} set cfg {none read read-write} set mnt {none read read-write} config utmgrp-permission set endpoint-control {none read read-write} </pre>	<p>Assign read or read-write privileges for network and system permissions and for FortiClient Profiles.</p> <p>Note that the <code>custom</code> option, as shown for the pre-existing <code>netgrp</code> and <code>sysgrp</code> options, is new to FortiOS 6.0, and permits their corresponding configuration methods to become available.</p> <p>Similarly, <code>config utmgrp-permission</code> is only available when <code>utmgrp</code> is set to <code>custom</code>; this instance of <code>custom</code> is not new.</p>
<pre> set mntgrp {none read read-write} set admingrp {none read read-write} set updategrp {none read read-write} set routegrp {none read read-write} set endpoint-control-grp {none read read-write} </pre>	<p>These options have been removed, as part of streamlining/rearranging more granular profiles under different profile groups.</p>
<pre> config system accprofile edit {name} # Configure access profiles for system administrators. set name {string} Profile name. size[35] set scope {vdom global} Scope of admin access: global or specific VDOM(s). vdom VDOM access. global Global access. set comments {string} Comment. size[255] set secfabgrp {none read read-write} Security Fabric. none No access. read Read access. read-write Read/write access. set ftviewgrp {none read read-write} FortiView. none No access. read Read access. read-write Read/write access. </pre>	

```
set authgrp {none | read | read-write} Administrator access to Users and Devices.
    none      No access.
    read      Read access.
    read-write Read/write access.
set sysgrp {none | read | read-write | custom} System Configuration.
    none      No access.
    read      Read access.
    read-write Read/write access.
    custom    Customized access.
set netgrp {none | read | read-write | custom} Network Configuration.
    none      No access.
    read      Read access.
    read-write Read/write access.
    custom    Customized access.
set loggrp {none | read | read-write | custom} Administrator access to Logging and Reporting including viewing
log messages.
    none      No access.
    read      Read access.
    read-write Read/write access.
    custom    Customized access.
set fwgrp {none | read | read-write | custom} Administrator access to the Firewall configuration.
    none      No access.
    read      Read access.
    read-write Read/write access.
    custom    Customized access.
set vpngrp {none | read | read-write} Administrator access to IPsec, SSL, PPTP, and L2TP VPN.
    none      No access.
    read      Read access.
    read-write Read/write access.
set utmgrp {none | read | read-write | custom} Administrator access to Security Profiles.
    none      No access.
    read      Read access.
    read-write Read/write access.
    custom    Customized access.
set wanoptgrp {none | read | read-write} Administrator access to WAN Opt & Cache.
    none      No access.
    read      Read access.
    read-write Read/write access.
set wifi {none | read | read-write} Administrator access to the WiFi controller and Switch controller.
    none      No access.
```

```
    read          Read access.
    read-write    Read/write access.
config netgrp-permission
    set cfg {none | read | read-write}    Network Configuration.
        none          No access.
        read          Read access.
        read-write    Read/write access.
    set packet-capture {none | read | read-write}    Packet Capture Configuration.
        none          No access.
        read          Read access.
        read-write    Read/write access.
    set route-cfg {none | read | read-write}    Router Configuration.
        none          No access.
        read          Read access.
        read-write    Read/write access.
config sysgrp-permission
    set admin {none | read | read-write}    Administrator Users.
        none          No access.
        read          Read access.
        read-write    Read/write access.
    set upd {none | read | read-write}    FortiGuard Updates.
        none          No access.
        read          Read access.
        read-write    Read/write access.
    set cfg {none | read | read-write}    System Configuration.
        none          No access.
        read          Read access.
        read-write    Read/write access.
    set mnt {none | read | read-write}    Maintenance.
        none          No access.
        read          Read access.
        read-write    Read/write access.
config fwgrp-permission
    set policy {none | read | read-write}    Policy Configuration.
        none          No access.
        read          Read access.
        read-write    Read/write access.
    set address {none | read | read-write}    Address Configuration.
        none          No access.
        read          Read access.
```

```
        read-write Read/write access.
set service {none | read | read-write} Service Configuration.
    none No access.
    read Read access.
    read-write Read/write access.
set schedule {none | read | read-write} Schedule Configuration.
    none No access.
    read Read access.
    read-write Read/write access.
config loggrp-permission
    set config {none | read | read-write} Log & Report configuration.
        none No access.
        read Read access.
        read-write Read/write access.
    set data-access {none | read | read-write} Log & Report Data Access.
        none No access.
        read Read access.
        read-write Read/write access.
    set report-access {none | read | read-write} Log & Report Report Access.
        none No access.
        read Read access.
        read-write Read/write access.
    set threat-weight {none | read | read-write} Log & Report Threat Weight.
        none No access.
        read Read access.
        read-write Read/write access.
config utmgrp-permission
    set antivirus {none | read | read-write} Antivirus profiles and settings.
        none No access.
        read Read access.
        read-write Read/write access.
    set ips {none | read | read-write} IPS profiles and settings.
        none No access.
        read Read access.
        read-write Read/write access.
    set webfilter {none | read | read-write} Web Filter profiles and settings.
        none No access.
        read Read access.
        read-write Read/write access.
    set spamfilter {none | read | read-write} AntiSpam filter and settings.
```

```

        none          No access.
        read           Read access.
        read-write     Read/write access.
set data-loss-prevention {none | read | read-write}  DLP profiles and settings.
        none          No access.
        read           Read access.
        read-write     Read/write access.
set application-control {none | read | read-write}  Application Control profiles and settings.
        none          No access.
        read           Read access.
        read-write     Read/write access.
set icap {none | read | read-write}  ICAP profiles and settings.
        none          No access.
        read           Read access.
        read-write     Read/write access.
set voip {none | read | read-write}  VoIP profiles and settings.
        none          No access.
        read           Read access.
        read-write     Read/write access.
set waf {none | read | read-write}  Web Application Firewall profiles and settings.
        none          No access.
        read           Read access.
        read-write     Read/write access.
set dnsfilter {none | read | read-write}  DNS Filter profiles and settings.
        none          No access.
        read           Read access.
        read-write     Read/write access.
set endpoint-control {none | read | read-write}  FortiClient Profiles.
        none          No access.
        read           Read access.
        read-write     Read/write access.
set admintimeout-override {enable | disable}  Enable/disable overriding the global administrator idle timeout.
set admintimeout {integer}  Administrator timeout for this access profile (0 - 480 min, default = 10, 0 means
never timeout). range[1-480]
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

Access Level

The options that are used to configured configure what level of administrative access the members of the profile group have can be set to the following levels:

none	No access is granted
read	Users can read the configuration but make no changes
read-write	Users can view and alter configurations This setting makes available an additional "permission" setting for the category of access with its own more granular settings. Associated with:
custom	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• fwgrp• loggrp• utmgrp

admingrp

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to administrator accounts and access profiles.

authgrp

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to user authentication, including local users, RADIUS servers, LDAP servers, and user groups.

endpointcontrol-grp

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to endpoint control (Endpoint NAC) configuration.

fwgrp

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to firewall configuration settings.

config fwgrp-permission

This configuration option is only available if `fwgrp` is set to `custom`, giving the administrator access to firewall configuration. By using the custome setting, it allows for a more granular configuration of administrative access. All of these settings can be configured to { `none` | `read` | `read-write` }.

Setting	Level of administrative access to:
address	firewall addresses
policy	firewall policies
schedule	firewall schedules
service	firewall service definitions

loggrp

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to log and report configurations, including:

- log settings
- viewing logs
- alert email settings
- `execute batch` commands

config loggrp-permission

This configuration option is only available if `loggrp` is set to `custom`, giving the administrator access to firewall configuration. By using the `custom` setting, it allows for a more granular configuration of administrative access. All of these settings can be configured to `{ none | read | read-write }`.

Setting	Level of administrative access to:
config	logging configuration
data-access	log data
threat-weight	threat-weight data

mntgrp {none | read | read-write}

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to maintenance of the FortiGate. The scope of this option is limited to the following areas:

- Management of configuration files
- Uploading of firmware
- Connectivity to central management such as a FortiManager
- Connectivity to an attached extender device
- Connectivity to attached USB devices

netgrp

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to networking, including:

- interfaces
- dhcp servers
- zones
- `get system status`
- `get system arp table`
- `config system arp-table`
- `execute dhcp lease-list`
- `execute dhcp lease-clear`

routegrp

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to router configuration.

sysgrp

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to system configuration.

Exceptions:

- `system accprofile`
- `system admin`
- `system autoupdate`

updategrp

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to FortiGuard antivirus and IPS updates (manual and automatic).

utmgrp

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to UTM configuration.

config utmgrp-permission

This configuration option is only available if `utmgrp` is set to `custom`, giving the administrator access to firewall configuration. By using the `custom` setting, it allows for a more granular configuration of administrative access. All of these settings can be configured to `{ none | read | read-write }`.

Setting	Level of administrative access to:
<code>antivirus</code>	antivirus configuration data
<code>application-control</code>	application control data
<code>data-loss-prevention</code>	data loss prevention (DLP) data
<code>dnsfilter</code>	DNS filter profiles and settings
<code>icap</code>	Internet Content Adaptation Protocol configuration
<code>ips</code>	intrusion prevention (IP) data
<code>netscan</code>	network scans
<code>spamfilter</code>	spamfilter data
<code>voip</code>	VOIP data
<code>waf</code>	Web Application Firewall profiles and settings
<code>webfilter</code>	web filter data

vpngrp

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to VPN configuration

wanoptgrp

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to WAN optimization configuration

wifi

Configure this group to apply permission settings that apply to WiFi configuration

system admin

Use this command to add, edit, and delete administrator accounts. Administrators can control what data modules appear in the FortiGate unit system dashboard by using the `config system admin` command. Administrators must have read and write privileges to make dashboard web-based manager modifications.

Use the default admin account or an account with system configuration read and write privileges to add new administrator accounts and control their permission levels. Each administrator account except the default admin must include an access profile. You cannot delete the default super admin account or change the access profile (super_admin). In addition, there is also an access profile that allows read-only super admin privileges, `super_admin_readonly`. The `super_admin_readonly` profile cannot be deleted or changed, similar to the `super_admin` profile. This read-only super-admin may be used in a situation where it is necessary to troubleshoot a customer configuration without making changes.

You can authenticate administrators using a password stored on the FortiGate unit or you can perform authentication with RADIUS, LDAP, or TACACS+ servers. When you use RADIUS authentication, you can authenticate specific administrators or you can allow any account on the RADIUS server to access the FortiGate unit as an administrator.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config gui-dashboard config widget edit <id> set title <name> next ...</pre>	Dashboard widget titles can be modified so that widgets with potentially different filters applied can be easily differentiated. The widget will be given a default title unless a new title is provided.
<pre>config system admin edit {name} # Configure admin users. set name {string} User name. size[35] set wildcard {enable disable} Enable/disable wildcard RADIUS authentication. set remote-auth {enable disable} Enable/disable authentication using a remote RADIUS, LDAP, or TACACS+ server. set remote-group {string} User group name used for remote auth. size[35] set password {password_string} Admin user password. size[128] set peer-auth {enable disable} Set to enable peer certificate authentication (for HTTPS admin access). set peer-group {string} Name of peer group defined under config user group which has PKI members. Used for peer certificate authentication (for HTTPS admin access). size[35] set trusthost1 {ipv4 classnet} Any IPv4 address or subnet address and netmask from which the administrator can connect to the FortiGate unit. Default allows access from any IPv4 address. set trusthost2 {ipv4 classnet} Any IPv4 address or subnet address and netmask from which the administrator can connect to the FortiGate unit. Default allows access from any IPv4 address.</pre>	

```
set trusthost3 {ipv4 classnet} Any IPv4 address or subnet address and netmask from which the administrator can
connect to the FortiGate unit. Default allows access from any IPv4 address.
set trusthost4 {ipv4 classnet} Any IPv4 address or subnet address and netmask from which the administrator can
connect to the FortiGate unit. Default allows access from any IPv4 address.
set trusthost5 {ipv4 classnet} Any IPv4 address or subnet address and netmask from which the administrator can
connect to the FortiGate unit. Default allows access from any IPv4 address.
set trusthost6 {ipv4 classnet} Any IPv4 address or subnet address and netmask from which the administrator can
connect to the FortiGate unit. Default allows access from any IPv4 address.
set trusthost7 {ipv4 classnet} Any IPv4 address or subnet address and netmask from which the administrator can
connect to the FortiGate unit. Default allows access from any IPv4 address.
set trusthost8 {ipv4 classnet} Any IPv4 address or subnet address and netmask from which the administrator can
connect to the FortiGate unit. Default allows access from any IPv4 address.
set trusthost9 {ipv4 classnet} Any IPv4 address or subnet address and netmask from which the administrator can
connect to the FortiGate unit. Default allows access from any IPv4 address.
set trusthost10 {ipv4 classnet} Any IPv4 address or subnet address and netmask from which the administrator
can connect to the FortiGate unit. Default allows access from any IPv4 address.
set ip6-trusthost1 {ipv6 prefix} Any IPv6 address from which the administrator can connect to the FortiGate
unit. Default allows access from any IPv6 address.
set ip6-trusthost2 {ipv6 prefix} Any IPv6 address from which the administrator can connect to the FortiGate
unit. Default allows access from any IPv6 address.
set ip6-trusthost3 {ipv6 prefix} Any IPv6 address from which the administrator can connect to the FortiGate
unit. Default allows access from any IPv6 address.
set ip6-trusthost4 {ipv6 prefix} Any IPv6 address from which the administrator can connect to the FortiGate
unit. Default allows access from any IPv6 address.
set ip6-trusthost5 {ipv6 prefix} Any IPv6 address from which the administrator can connect to the FortiGate
unit. Default allows access from any IPv6 address.
set ip6-trusthost6 {ipv6 prefix} Any IPv6 address from which the administrator can connect to the FortiGate
unit. Default allows access from any IPv6 address.
set ip6-trusthost7 {ipv6 prefix} Any IPv6 address from which the administrator can connect to the FortiGate
unit. Default allows access from any IPv6 address.
set ip6-trusthost8 {ipv6 prefix} Any IPv6 address from which the administrator can connect to the FortiGate
unit. Default allows access from any IPv6 address.
set ip6-trusthost9 {ipv6 prefix} Any IPv6 address from which the administrator can connect to the FortiGate
unit. Default allows access from any IPv6 address.
set ip6-trusthost10 {ipv6 prefix} Any IPv6 address from which the administrator can connect to the FortiGate
unit. Default allows access from any IPv6 address.
set accprofile {string} Access profile for this administrator. Access profiles control administrator access to
FortiGate features. size[35] - datasource(s): system.accprofile.name
set allow-remove-admin-session {enable | disable} Enable/disable allow admin session to be removed by priv-
ileged admin users.
```

```
set comments {string}    Comment. size[255]
set hidden {integer}     Admin user hidden attribute. range[0-255]
config vdom
  edit {name}
    # Virtual domain(s) that the administrator can access.
    set name {string}     Virtual domain name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
  next
  set ssh-public-key1 {string}  Public key of an SSH client. The client is authenticated without being asked for
credentials. Create the public-private key pair in the SSH client application.
  set ssh-public-key2 {string}  Public key of an SSH client. The client is authenticated without being asked for
credentials. Create the public-private key pair in the SSH client application.
  set ssh-public-key3 {string}  Public key of an SSH client. The client is authenticated without being asked for
credentials. Create the public-private key pair in the SSH client application.
  set ssh-certificate {string}  Select the certificate to be used by the FortiGate for authentication with an SSH
client. size[35] - datasource(s): certificate.local.name
  set schedule {string}      Firewall schedule used to restrict when the administrator can log in. No schedule means
no restrictions. size[35]
  set accprofile-override {enable | disable}  Enable to use the name of an access profile provided by the remote
authentication server to control the FortiGate features that this administrator can access.
  set radius-vdom-override {enable | disable}  Enable to use the names of VDOMs provided by the remote authen-
tication server to control the VDOMs that this administrator can access.
  set password-expire {string}  Password expire time.
  set force-password-change {enable | disable}  Enable/disable force password change on next login.
config gui-dashboard
  edit {id}
    # GUI dashboards.
    set id {integer}      Dashboard ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set name {string}     Dashboard name. size[35]
    set scope {global | vdom}  Dashboard scope.
      global Global.
      vdom VDOM.
    set layout-type {responsive | fixed}  Layout type.
      responsive Responsive.
      fixed Fixed grid.
    set columns {integer}  Number of columns. range[5-20]
  config widget
    edit {id}
      # Dashboard widgets.
      set id {integer}      Widget ID. range[0-4294967295]
      set type {option}     Widget type.
```

```

sysinfo          System Information.
licinfo          License Information.
forticloud       FortiCloud Licenses.
cpu-usage        CPU Usage.
memory-usage     Memory Usage.
disk-usage       Disk Usage.
log-rate         Session Rate.
sessions         Sessions.
session-rate     Session Rate.
tr-history       Traffic History.
analytics        FortiGuard Analytics.
usb-modem        USB Modem.
admins           Administrators.
security-fabric  Security Fabric.
security-fabric-ranking Security Fabric Ranking.
sensor-info      Sensor Information.
ha-status        HA Status.
vulnerability-summary Vulnerability Summary.
host-scan-summary Host Scan Summary.
fortiview        FortiView.
botnet-activity  Botnet Activity.
fortimail        FortiMail.
set x-pos {integer} X position. range[0-1000]
set y-pos {integer} Y position. range[0-1000]
set width {integer} Width. range[1-50]
set height {integer} Height. range[1-50]
set interface {string} Interface to monitor. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
set region {default | custom} Security Audit Rating region.
    default All regions.
    custom FortiGate region.
set industry {default | custom} Security Audit Rating industry.
    default All industries.
    custom FortiCare industry.
set fabric-device {string} Fabric device to monitor. size[127]
set title {string} Widget title. size[127]
set fortiview-type {string} FortiView type. size[35]
set fortiview-sort-by {string} FortiView sort by. size[35]
set fortiview-timeframe {string} FortiView timeframe. size[35]
set fortiview-visualization {string} FortiView visualization. size[35]
config fortiview-filters

```

```

        edit {id}
        # FortiView filters.
        set id {integer}    FortiView Filter ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set key {string}    Filter key. size[127]
        set value {string}  Filter value. size[127]
    next
next
    next
set two-factor {disable | fortitoken | email | sms}  Enable/disable two-factor authentication.
    disable    Disable two-factor authentication.
    fortitoken Use FortiToken or FortiToken mobile two-factor authentication.
    email      Send a two-factor authentication code to the configured email-to email address.
    sms        Send a two-factor authentication code to the configured sms-server and sms-phone.
set fortitoken {string}  This administrator's FortiToken serial number. size[16]
set email-to {string}    This administrator's email address. size[63]
set sms-server {fortiguard | custom}  Send SMS messages using the FortiGuard SMS server or a custom server.
    fortiguard Send SMS by FortiGuard.
    custom     Send SMS by custom server.
set sms-custom-server {string}  Custom SMS server to send SMS messages to. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.sms-server.name
set sms-phone {string}  Phone number on which the administrator receives SMS messages. size[15]
set guest-auth {disable | enable}  Enable/disable guest authentication.
config guest-usergroups
    edit {name}
    # Select guest user groups.
    set name {string}  Select guest user groups. size[64]
next
set guest-lang {string}  Guest management portal language. size[35] - datasource(s): system.custom-lan-
guage.name
set history0 {password_string}  history0 size[128]
set history1 {password_string}  history1 size[128]
config login-time
    edit {usr-name}
    # Record user login time.
    set usr-name {string}  User name. size[35]
    set last-login {datetime}  Last successful login time.
    set last-failed-login {datetime}  Last failed login time.
next
config gui-global-menu-favorites
    edit {id}

```



```
        # Favorite GUI menu IDs for the global VDOM.
        set id {string}    Select menu ID. size[64]
    next
    config gui-vdom-menu-favorites
    edit {id}
    # Favorite GUI menu IDs for VDOMs.
    set id {string}    Select menu ID. size[64]
    next
next
end
```

remote-auth {enable | disable}

Enable or disable authentication of this administrator using a remote RADIUS, LDAP, or TACACS+ server. Disabled by default.

wildcard {enable | disable}

Enable or disable wildcard RADIUS authentication. Disabled by default. This option only appears when `remote-auth` is enabled.

remote-group <name>

Group name used for remote authentication. This option only appears when `remote-auth` is enabled.

password <string>

Set the password for the administrator account.

peer-auth {enable | disable}

Enable or disable peer authentication. Disabled by default.

peer-group <name>

Group name for peer authentication. This option only appears when `peer-auth` is enabled.

{trusthost1 ... trusthost10} <ip_address>

Set up to ten IPv4 addresses as trusted IPs for authentication.

{ip6-trusthost1 ... ip6-trusthost10} <ip_address>

Set up to ten IPv6 addresses as trusted IPs for authentication.

accprofile <profile-name>

Set the access profile (also known as admin profile) for the account. Access profiles control administrator access to FortiGate features. Two default profiles are available: `prof_admin` and `super_admin`.

accprofile-override {enable | disable}

Enable or disable allowing the remote server to override the administrator's access profile. Disabled by default. This option only appears when `remote-auth` is enabled.

radius-vdom-override {enable | disable}

Enable or disable allowing the remote server to override VDOM access. Only available with wildcard RADIUS authentication. Disabled by default. This option only appears when `remote-auth` is enabled.

allow-remove-admin-session {enable | disable}

Enable or disable allowing session initiated by this administrator to be removed by a privileged administrator. Enabled by default. This field is available for accounts with the `super_admin` profile.

comments <string>

Add comments.

vdom <vdom-name>

Select the virtual domain(s) that the administrator can access.

{ssh-public-key1 | ssh-public-key2 | ssh-public-key3} <key-type> <key-value>

Set up to three SSH public keys.

ssh-certificate <certificate-name>

Set a certificate for PKI authentication of the administrator.

schedule <schedule-name>

Set a schedule for the account.

password-expire

Enter the date and time that this administrator's password expires. Enter zero values for no expiry (this is set by default). Date format is YYYY-MM-DD. Time format is HH:MM:SS. This is available only if `config system password-policy` is enabled.

force-password-change {enable | disable}

Enable or disable requiring this administrator to change password at next login. Disabled by default. Disabling this option does not prevent required password changes due to password policy violation or expiry. This is available only if `config system password-policy` is enabled.

two-factor {enable | disable}

Enable or disable two-factor authentication. Disabled by default.

email-to <email-address>

Set an email address to use for two-factor authentication.

sms-server <server>

Set provider to use to send SMS messages for two-factor authentication. This list of available providers is configured using `config system sms-server`.

sms-phone <phone-number>

Set a phone number to use for two-factor authentication.

guest-auth {enable | disable}

Enable to restrict the admin account to guest account provisioning. Disabled by default.

guest-usergroups <group-name>

Set the user group(s) to be used for guest user accounts created by this administrator account. This option only appears when the account is restricted to guest account provisioning.

guest-lang <language>

Select a language to use for the guest management portal.

system affinity-interrupt

Note: This command is only available for FortiGate VM platforms.

Use this command to configure an interrupt affinity and CPU mask in order to improve throughput for FortiGate VM platforms.

```
config system affinity-interrupt
  edit {id}
    # Configure interrupt affinity.
    set id {integer}    ID of the interrupt affinity setting. range[0-4294967295]
    set interrupt {string}  Interrupt name. size[127]
    set affinity-cpumask {string}  Affinity setting for VM throughput (64-bit hexadecimal value in the format of
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx). size[127]
  next
end
```

system affinity-packet-redistribution

Note: This command is only available for FortiGate VM platforms.

Use this command to configure the redistribution of packets to in order to increase throughput for FortiGate VM platforms.

```
config system affinity-packet-redistribution
    edit {id}
        # Configure packet redistribution.
        set id {integer}    ID of the packet redistribution setting. range[0-4294967295]
        set interface {string}    Physical interface name on which to perform packet redistribution. size[127] - data-
source(s): system.interface.name
        set rxqid {integer}    ID of the receive queue (when the interface has multiple queues) on which to perform
packet redistribution. range[0-255]
        set affinity-cpumask {string}    Affinity setting for VM throughput (64-bit hexadecimal value in the format of
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx). size[127]
    next
end
```

system alarm

Use this command to configure the system alarm. The alarm can be triggered by events or by exceeding configured thresholds.

```
config system alarm
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable alarm.
    set audible {enable | disable}    Enable/disable audible alarm.
    config groups
        edit {id}
            # Alarm groups.
            set id {integer}    Group ID. range[0-4294967295]
            set period {integer}    Time period in seconds (0 = from start up). range[0-4294967295]
            set admin-auth-failure-threshold {integer}    Admin authentication failure threshold. range[0-1024]
            set admin-auth-lockout-threshold {integer}    Admin authentication lockout threshold. range[0-1024]
            set user-auth-failure-threshold {integer}    User authentication failure threshold. range[0-1024]
            set user-auth-lockout-threshold {integer}    User authentication lockout threshold. range[0-1024]
            set replay-attempt-threshold {integer}    Replay attempt threshold. range[0-1024]
            set self-test-failure-threshold {integer}    Self-test failure threshold. range[0-1]
            set log-full-warning-threshold {integer}    Log full warning threshold. range[0-1024]
            set encryption-failure-threshold {integer}    Encryption failure threshold. range[0-1024]
            set decryption-failure-threshold {integer}    Decryption failure threshold. range[0-1024]
            config fw-policy-violations
                edit {id}
                    # Firewall policy violations.
```

```
        set id {integer}    Firewall policy violations ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set threshold {integer}  Firewall policy violation threshold. range[0-1024]
        set src-ip {ipv4 address}  Source IP (0=all).
        set dst-ip {ipv4 address}  Destination IP (0=all).
        set src-port {integer}    Source port (0=all). range[0-65535]
        set dst-port {integer}    Destination port (0=all). range[0-65535]
    next
    set fw-policy-id {integer}    Firewall policy ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set fw-policy-id-threshold {integer}  Firewall policy ID threshold. range[0-1024]
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

system alias

Use this command to save collections of execute commands that you can run on demand.

```
config system alias
    edit {name}
        # Configure alias command.
        set name {string}    Alias command name. size[35]
        set command {string}  Command list to execute. size[255]
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

command

Use quotes

The command must be enclosed in quotes or the spaces in the command will cause a error.

Example:

```
config system alias
edit test
    set command 'get system status'
end
```

To use the alias:

Example:

```
alias test
```

Multiple commands

Multiple commands can be put into the same alias command. Use the open quote at the beginning of the first command. Separate the commands using the Enter key. Close the quote only at the end of the last command.

Example:

```
config system alias
edit test
    set command 'get system status
get alert settings
show alert settings'
end
```

system api-user

Introduction.

```

config system api-user
  edit {name}
  # Configure API users.
    set name {string}    User name. size[35]
    set comments {string} Comment. size[255]
    set api-key {password_string} Admin user password. size[128]
    set accprofile {string} Admin user access profile. size[35] - datasource(s): system.accprofile.name
  config vdom
    edit {name}
    # Virtual domains.
      set name {string}    Virtual domain name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
    next
    set schedule {string}    Schedule name. size[35]
    set cors-allow-origin {string} Value for Access-Control-Allow-Origin on API responses. Avoid using '*' if possible. size[269]
    set peer-auth {enable | disable} Enable/disable peer authentication.
    set peer-group {string} Peer group name. size[35]
  config trusthost
    edit {id}
    # Trusthost.
      set id {integer}    Table ID. range[0-4294967295]
      set type {ipv4-trusthost | ipv6-trusthost} Trusthost type.
        ipv4-trusthost IPv4 trusthost.
        ipv6-trusthost IPv6 trusthost.
      set ipv4-trusthost {ipv4 classnet} IPv4 trusted host address.
      set ipv6-trusthost {ipv6 prefix} IPv6 trusted host address.
    next
  next
end

```

system arp-table

Use this command to manually add ARP table entries to the FortiGate unit. ARP table entries consist of a interface name, an IP address, and a MAC address.

Limits for the number of ARP table entries are software limits set by the FortiGate configuration as documented in the FortiGate Maximum Values Matrix document.

```

config system arp-table
  edit {id}

```



```
# Configure ARP table.
  set id {integer}    Unique integer ID of the entry. range[0-4294967295]
  set interface {string}  Interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
  set ip {ipv4 address}   IP address.
  set mac {mac address}   MAC address.
next
end
```

system auto-install

Use this command to configure automatic installation of firmware and system configuration from a USB disk when the FortiGate unit restarts. This command is available only on units that have a USB disk connection.

If you set both configuration and firmware image update, both occur on the same reboot. The FortiGate unit will not reload a firmware or configuration file that is already loaded.

Third-party USB disks are supported; however, the USB disk must be formatted as a FAT16 drive. No other partition type is supported.

To format your USB Disk when its connected to your FortiGate unit, at the CLI prompt type `exe usb-disk format`.

To format your USB disk when it is connected to a Windows system, at the command prompt type “`format <drive_letter>: /FS:FAT /V:<drive_label>`” where `<drive_letter>` is the letter of the connected USB drive you want to format, and `<drive_label>` is the name you want to give the USB disk volume for identification.

```
config system auto-install
  set auto-install-config {enable | disable}  Enable/disable auto install the config in USB disk.
  set auto-install-image {enable | disable}    Enable/disable auto install the image in USB disk.
  set default-config-file {string}            Default config file name in USB disk. size[127]
  set default-image-file {string}             Default image file name in USB disk. size[127]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

system auto-script

Use the command to create CLI command scripts that can be saved and run.

```

config system auto-script
    edit {name}
        # Configure auto script.
        set name {string}    Auto script name. size[35]
        set interval {integer} Repeat interval in seconds. range[0-31557600]
        set repeat {integer}  Number of times to repeat this script (0 = infinite). range[0-65535]
        set start {manual | auto} Script starting mode.
            manual Starting manually.
            auto Starting automatically.
        set script {string} List of FortiOS CLI commands to repeat. size[255]
        set output-size {integer} Number of megabytes to limit script output to (10 - 1024, default = 10). range[10-
1024]
    next
end

```

system automation-action

Use this command to define the action type taken for user-defined automation stitches in the Security Fabric.

When certain triggers or events takes place in the Security Fabric, predefined actions can be carried out through the use of stitches. The actions can be executed in the Security Fabric root FortiGate, or relayed to the downstream FortiGates.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<pre> set delay <seconds> set required {enable disable} </pre>	<p>Enable or disable (by default) the chaining of actions until the previous action has finished. Once enabled, set the delay in seconds between these actions. Set the delay range between 0-3600 (or no delay to one hour).</p> <p>Note that <code>delay</code> and <code>required</code> are only available when <code>action-type</code> is set to either <code>aws-lambda</code> or <code>webhook</code>.</p>

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
config system automation-action	New config command. Define the action type taken for user-defined automation stitches.

```

config system automation-action
  edit {name}
  # Action for automation stitches.
  set name {string}    Name. size[64]
  set action-type {option}  Action type.
    email              Send notification email.
    ios-notification    Send push notification to FortiExplorer iOS.
    alert              Generate FortiOS dashboard alert.
    disable-ssid       Disable interface.
    quarantine          Quarantine host.
    quarantine-forticlient Quarantine FortiClient by EMS.
    ban-ip              Ban IP address.
    aws-lambda          Send log data to integrated AWS service.
    webhook             Send an HTTP request.
  config email-to
    edit {name}
    # Email addresses.
    set name {string}  Email address. size[255]
    next
  set email-subject {string}  Email subject. size[511]
  set minimum-interval {integer}  Limit execution to no more than once in this interval (in seconds). range[0-
2592000]
  set delay {integer}  Delay before execution (in seconds). range[0-3600]
  set required {enable | disable}  Required in action chain.
  set aws-api-id {string}  AWS API Gateway ID. size[35]
  set aws-region {string}  AWS region. size[35]
  set aws-domain {string}  AWS domain. size[63]
  set aws-api-stage {string}  AWS API Gateway deployment stage name. size[63]
  set aws-api-path {string}  AWS API Gateway path. size[63]
  set aws-api-key {string}  AWS API Gateway API key. size[127]
  set protocol {http | https}  Request protocol.
    http  HTTP.
    https HTTPS.
  set method {post | put | get}  Request method (GET, POST or PUT).
    post  POST.

```

```

        put    PUT.
        get    GET.
set uri {string}    Request API URI. size[255]
set http-body {string}    Request body (if necessary). Should be serialized json string. size[1023]
set port {integer}    Protocol port. range[1-65535]
config headers
    edit {header}
    # Request headers.
        set header {string}    Request header. size[255]
    next
next
end

```

system automation-destination

Use this command to set up HA clusters as destinations. Monitor events from any source in the Security Fabric and set up action responses to any destination.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config system automation-destination</code>	New <code>config</code> command. Set up action responses to any destination configured.

```

config system automation-destination
    edit {name}
    # Automation destinations.
        set name {string}    Name. size[35]
        set type {fortigate | ha-cluster}    Destination type.
            fortigate    FortiGate set as destination.
            ha-cluster    HA cluster set as destination.
    config destination
        edit {name}
        # Destinations.

```

```
        set name {string}    Destination. size[31]
    next
    set ha-group-id {integer}  Cluster group ID set for this destination (default = 0). range[0-255]
next
end
```

system automation-stitch

Use this command to create automated workflows that define the action type taken for user-defined automation in the Security Fabric.

When certain triggers or events takes place in the Security Fabric, predefined actions can be carried out through the use of automation. The actions can be executed in the Security Fabric root FortiGate, or relayed to the downstream FortiGates.

This feature, coupled with triggers and actions, can be used to carry out various operations such as:

- Quarantine a device's MAC address when an indicator of compromise (IOC) is detected
- Send an email alert when HA failover occurs
- Send an iOS push notification to FortiExplorer when the configuration of a FortiGate in the Security Fabric changes

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config system automation-stitch</code>	New <code>config</code> command. Create automated workflows that define the action type taken for user-defined automation stitches.

```
config system automation-stitch
edit {name}
# Automation stitches.
set name {string}    Name. size[35]
set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable this stitch.
set trigger {string}  Trigger name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.automation-trigger.name
config action
edit {name}
```

```

        # Action names.
        set name {string}    Action name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.automation-action.name
    next
config destination
    edit {name}
    # Serial number/HA group-name of destination devices.
    set name {string}    Destination name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.automation-destination.name
    next
next
end

```

system automation-trigger

Use this command to define the trigger type, event type, and indicator of compromise (IOC) threat level for user-defined automation stitches in the Security Fabric.

When certain triggers or events takes place in the Security Fabric, predefined actions can be carried out through the use of stitches. The actions can be executed in the Security Fabric root FortiGate, or relayed to the downstream FortiGates.

Triggers can be based on certain events taking place in the Security Fabric or scheduled to take place on specific days and at specific times. The events themselves that cause a trigger to occur vary from an IOC detection, device reboot, low memory, high CPU usage, and others.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config system automation-trigger</code>	<p>New <code>config</code> command.</p> <p>Define the trigger type, event type, and indicator of compromise (IOC) threat level for user-defined automation stitches.</p>

```

config system automation-trigger
    edit {name}
    # Trigger for automation stitches.
    set name {string}    Name. size[35]
    set trigger-type {event-based | scheduled}    Trigger type.

```

```

        event-based Event based trigger.
        scheduled Scheduled trigger.
set event-type {option} Event type.
    ioc Indicator of compromise detected.
    event-log Use log ID as trigger.
    reboot Device reboot.
    low-memory Conserve mode due to low memory.
    high-cpu High CPU usage.
    license-near-expiry License near expiration date.
    ha-failover HA failover.
    config-change Configuration change.
    security-rating-summary Security rating summary.
    virus-ips-db-updated Virus and IPS database updated.
set license-type {option} License type.
    forticare-support FortiCare support license.
    fortiguard-webfilter FortiGuard web filter license.
    fortiguard-antispam FortiGuard antispam license.
    fortiguard-antivirus FortiGuard AntiVirus license.
    fortiguard-ips FortiGuard IPS license.
    fortiguard-management FortiGuard management service license.
    forticloud FortiCloud license.
set ioc-level {medium | high} IOC threat level.
    medium IOC level medium and high.
    high IOC level high only.
set logid {integer} Log ID to trigger event. range[1-99999]
set trigger-frequency {hourly | daily | weekly | monthly} Scheduled trigger frequency (default = daily).
    hourly Run hourly.
    daily Run daily.
    weekly Run weekly.
    monthly Run monthly.
set trigger-weekday {option} Day of week for trigger.
    sunday Sunday.
    monday Monday.
    tuesday Tuesday.
    wednesday Wednesday.
    thursday Thursday.
    friday Friday.
    saturday Saturday.
set trigger-day {integer} Day within a month to trigger. range[1-31]
set trigger-hour {integer} Hour of the day on which to trigger (0 - 23, default = 1). range[0-23]

```

```
        set trigger-minute {integer}    Minute of the hour on which to trigger (0 - 59, 60 to randomize). range[0-60]
    next
end
```

system auto-scale

Use this command to enable and configure support for AWS auto-scaling.

```
config system auto-scale
    set status {enable | disable}    Auto-Scaling status.
    set role {master | slave}    Auto-scaling role.
        master    Master in auto-scaling.
        slave    Slave in auto-scaling.
    set sync-interface {string}    Interface used for synchronization. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set master-ip {ipv4 address any}    Master IP address.
    set callback-url {string}    Callback URL. size[127]
    set hb-interval {integer}    Time between sending heartbeat packets (5 - 120 seconds). Increase to reduce false positives. range[5-120]
    set psksecret {password_string}    Pre-shared secret for auto-scaling authentication (ASCII string or hexadecimal encoded with a leading 0x).
end
```

system autoupdate push-update

Introduction.

```
config system autoupdate push-update
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable push updates.
    set override {enable | disable}    Enable/disable push update override server.
    set address {ipv4 address any}    Push update override server.
    set port {integer}    Push update override port. (Do not overlap with other service ports) range[0-65535]
end
```

system autoupdate schedule

Introduction.


```
config system autoupdate schedule
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable scheduled updates.
    set frequency {every | daily | weekly}    Update frequency.
        every    Time interval.
        daily    Every day.
        weekly   Every week.
    set time {string}    Update time.
    set day {option}    Update day.
        Sunday    Update every Sunday.
        Monday    Update every Monday.
        Tuesday   Update every Tuesday.
        Wednesday Update every Wednesday.
        Thursday  Update every Thursday.
        Friday    Update every Friday.
        Saturday  Update every Saturday.
end
```

system autoupdate tunneling

Introduction.

```
config system autoupdate tunneling
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable web proxy tunnelling.
    set address {string}    Web proxy IP address or FQDN. size[63]
    set port {integer}    Web proxy port. range[0-65535]
    set username {string}    Web proxy username. size[49]
    set password {password_string}    Web proxy password. size[128]
end
```

system bypass

Note: This command is only available for FortiGate models with bypass interfaces while the unit is in Transparent mode.

Use this command to configure bypass options in order to bridge bypass interfaces.

```
config system bypass
    set bypass-watchdog {enable | disable}    watchdog to bypass interfaces in case of software/hardware failure
    set bypass-timeout {option}    timeout setting for bypass watchdog
```

```

        2    2 second
        4    4 second
        6    6 second
        8    8 second
       10   10 second
       12   12 second
       14   14 second
    set poweroff-bypass {enable | disable}    set interface bypass state in power off
end

```

system central-management

Use this command to configure central management for your FortiGate unit. Central management uses a remote location to backup, restore, and monitor the FortiGate unit's configuration. This can be either a FortiManager or the FortiCloud network.

History

The following table shows all added entries in FortiOS 6.0.7.

Command	Description
set local-cert {string}	Certificate to be used by FGFM protocol.

Syntax

```

config system central-management
    set mode {normal | backup}    Central management mode.
        normal    Manage and configure this FortiGate from FortiManager.
        backup    Manage and configure this FortiGate locally and back up its configuration to FortiManager.
    set type {fortimanager | fortiguard | none}    Central management type.
        fortimanager    FortiManager.
        fortiguard    Central management of this FortiGate using FortiCloud.
        none            No central management.
    set schedule-config-restore {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allowing the central management server to restore
the configuration of this FortiGate.
    set schedule-script-restore {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allowing the central management server to restore

```

```

the scripts stored on this FortiGate.
    set allow-push-configuration {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allowing the central management server to push con-
figuration changes to this FortiGate.
    set allow-push-firmware {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allowing the central management server to push firmware
updates to this FortiGate.
    set allow-remote-firmware-upgrade {enable | disable}    Enable/disable remotely upgrading the firmware on this
FortiGate from the central management server.
    set allow-monitor {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allowing the central management server to remotely monitor
this FortiGate
    set serial-number {string}    Serial number.
    set fmg {string}    IP address or FQDN of the FortiManager.
    set fmg-source-ip {ipv4 address}    IPv4 source address that this FortiGate uses when communicating with FortiMan-
ager.
    set fmg-source-ip6 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 source address that this FortiGate uses when communicating with
FortiManager.
    set local-cert {string}    Certificate to be used by FGFM protocol. size[35]
    set vdom {string}    Virtual domain (VDOM) name to use when communicating with FortiManager. size[31] - datasource
(s): system.vdom.name
    config server-list
        edit {id}
            # Additional servers that the FortiGate can use for updates (for AV, IPS, updates) and ratings (for web filter
and antispy ratings) servers.
            set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
            set server-type {update | rating}    FortiGuard service type.
                update    AV, IPS, and AV-query update server.
                rating    Web filter and anti-spam rating server.
            set addr-type {ipv4 | ipv6 | fqdn}    Indicate whether the FortiGate communicates with the override server
using an IPv4 address, an IPv6 address or a FQDN.
                ipv4    IPv4 address.
                ipv6    IPv6 address.
                fqdn    FQDN.
            set server-address {ipv4 address}    IPv4 address of override server.
            set server-address6 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 address of override server.
            set fqdn {string}    FQDN address of override server. size[255]
        next
        set include-default-servers {enable | disable}    Enable/disable inclusion of public FortiGuard servers in the over-
ride server list.
        set enc-algorithm {default | high | low}    Encryption strength for communications between the FortiGate and central
management.
            default    High strength algorithms and these medium-strength 128-bit key length algorithms: RC4-SHA, RC4-MD5,

```

```
RC4-MD.  
        high      128-bit and larger key length algorithms: DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA, AES256-SHA, EDH-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA,  
DES-CBC3-SHA, DES-CBC3-MD5, DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA, AES128-SHA.  
        low       64-bit or 56-bit key length algorithms without export restrictions: EDH-RSA-DES-CBC-SHA, DES-CBC-  
SHA, DES-CBC-MD5.  
end
```

mode {normal | backup}

Identify central management mode. Default is normal.

- **normal**: manage and configure the connected FortiGate devices from the FortiManager GUI.
- **backup**: backup the FortiGate configurations to the FortiManager, but configure each FortiGate locally.

type {fortiguard | fortimanager | none}

Specify the type of central management. Setting **type** to **fortiguard** in the CLI is the same as setting it to FortiCloud in the GUI. FortiCloud used to be known as the FortiGuard Analysis and Management Service network. Default is **fortimanager**.

schedule-config-restore {enable | disable}

Enable/disable scheduling the restoration of your FortiGate's configuration. Default is **enable**.

schedule-script-restore {enable | disable}

Enable/disable scheduling the restoration of your FortiGate's configuration through scripts. Default is **enable**.

allow-push-configuration {enable | disable}

Enable/disable configuration image push updates for your FortiGate. Default is **enable**.

allow-pushd-firmware {enable | disable}

Enable/disable push firmware. Default is **enable**.

allow-remote-firmware-upgrade {enable | disable}

Enable/disable remote upgrading of your FortiGate to a new firmware. Default is enable.

allow-monitor {enable | disable}

Enable/disable remote monitoring of your FortiGate unit. Default is enable.

local-cert <string>

Certificate to be used by FGFM protocol.

fmg <fmg_ipv4>

Specify the IP address or FQDN of the remote FortiManager server. Appears only when `type` is set to `fortimanager`.

fmg-source-ip <address_ipv4>

Specify the source IPv4 address to use when connecting to FortiManager. Appears only when `type` is set to `fortimanager`.

fmg-source-ip6

Specify the source IPv6 address to use when connecting to FortiManager. Appears only when `type` is set to `fortimanager`.

vdom <name_str>

Optional. Specify name of virtual domain (VDOM) to use when communicating with FortiManager. Default is root.

enc-algorithm {default | high | low}

Specify encryption strength for communications between the FortiGate unit and FortiManager. Default is high.

- `default`: high- and medium-strength algorithms
- `high`: 128-bit and larger key length algorithms
- `low`: 64-bit or 56-bit key length algorithms without export restrictions

config server-list

server-type {rating | update}

Specify the FortiGuard service type.

- `rating`: web filter or anti-spam rating server
- `update`: AV, IPS, or AV-query server

addr-type {ipv4 | ipv6}

Identify override server's address type.

server-address <ipv4>

Specify the override server's IPv4 address.

server-address6 <ipv6>

Specify the override server's IPv6 address.

system cluster-sync

Use this command to configure FortiGate Session Life Support Protocol (FGSP) session synchronization.

In a network that already includes load balancing (either with load balancers or routers) for traffic redundancy, two or more FortiGates can be integrated into the load balancing configuration using the FGSP. The external load balancers or routers can distribute sessions among the FortiGates and the FGSP performs session synchronization of IPv4 and IPv6 TCP, UDP, ICMP, expectation, and NAT sessions and IPsec tunnels to keep the session tables of the FortiGates synchronized. If one of the FortiGates fails, session failover occurs and active sessions fail over to the FortiGates that are still operating. This failover occurs without any loss of data. As well, the external routers or load balancers will detect the failover and redistribute all sessions to the peers that are still operating.

FGSP with FortiOS Carrier also supports GTP session synchronization.

```
config system cluster-sync
  edit {sync-id}
    # Configure FortiGate Session Life Support Protocol (FGSP) session synchronization.
```

```
set sync-id {integer}    Sync ID. range[0-4294967295]
set peervd {string}      VDOM that contains the session synchronization link interface on the peer unit. Usually
both peers would have the same peervd. size[31] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
set peerip {ipv4 address} IP address of the interface on the peer unit that is used for the session syn-
chronization link.
config syncvd
  edit {name}
  # Sessions from these VDOMs are synchronized using this session synchronization configuration.
  set name {string}      VDOM name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
  next
config down-intfs-before-sess-sync
  edit {name}
  # List of interfaces to be turned down before session synchronization is complete.
  set name {string}      Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
  next
set hb-interval {integer} Heartbeat interval (1 - 10 sec). range[1-10]
set hb-lost-threshold {integer} Lost heartbeat threshold (1 - 10). range[1-10]
set slave-add-ike-routes {enable | disable} Enable/disable IKE route announcement on the backup unit.
config session-sync-filter
  set srcintf {string}    Only sessions from this interface are synchronized. You can only enter one interface
name. To synchronize sessions for multiple source interfaces, add multiple filters. size[15] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name
  set dstintf {string}    Only sessions to this interface are synchronized. You can only enter one interface
name. To synchronize sessions to multiple destination interfaces, add multiple filters. size[15] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name
  set srcaddr {ipv4 classnet any} Only sessions from this IPv4 address are synchronized. You can only enter
one address. To synchronize sessions from multiple source addresses, add multiple filters.
  set dstaddr {ipv4 classnet any} Only sessions to this IPv4 address are synchronized. You can only enter
one address. To synchronize sessions for multiple destination addresses, add multiple filters.
  set srcaddr6 {ipv6 network}    Only sessions from this IPv6 address are synchronized. You can only enter one
address. To synchronize sessions from multiple source addresses, add multiple filters.
  set dstaddr6 {ipv6 network}    Only sessions to this IPv6 address are synchronized. You can only enter one
address. To synchronize sessions for multiple destination addresses, add multiple filters.
config custom-service
  edit {id}
  # Only sessions using these custom services are synchronized. Use source and destination port ranges to
define these custome services.
  set id {integer}        Custom service ID. range[0-4294967295]
  set src-port-range {string} Custom service source port range.
  set dst-port-range {string} Custom service destination port range.
```

```
        next
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

<sync_id>

Enter the unique ID number for the session synchronization configuration to edit. The session synchronization configuration ID can be any number between 1 and 200. The session synchronization configuration IDs of the peers do not have to match.

peervd <vd_name>

Enter the name of the virtual domain that contains the session synchronization link interface on the peer unit. Usually both peers would have the same peervd. Multiple session synchronization configurations can use the same peervd. The default VDOM name is root.

syncvd <vd_name>

Enter the names of one or more VDOMs that should be synchronized by this cluster-sync instance. If multiple VDOMs are not enabled, `syncvd` should be set to `root`, which is the default setting.

config custom-service

Add a service filter for session sync.

config filter

Add a filter to a standalone session synchronization configuration. You can add a filter if you want to only synchronize some TCP sessions. Using a filter you can configure synchronization to only synchronize sessions according to source and destination address, source and destination interface, and predefined firewall TCP service. You can only add one filter to a standalone session synchronization configuration.

dstaddr <dst_ip_ipv4> <dst_mask_ipv4>

dstaddr6 <dst_ip_ipv6>

Enter the destination IP address (or range) and netmask of the sessions to synchronize. For IPv4 addresses, use

dstaddr. For IPv6 addresses, use dstaddr6. The default IP address and netmask (0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0 or ::/0) synchronizes sessions for all destination address. If you want to specify multiple IP addresses or address ranges you can add multiple standalone session synchronization configurations.

dstintf <interface_name>

Enter the name of a FortiGate interface (this can be any interface including a VLAN interface, aggregate interface, redundant interface, virtual SSL VPN interface, or inter- VDOM link interface). Only sessions destined for this interface are synchronized. You can only enter one interface name. If you want to synchronize sessions for multiple interfaces you can add multiple standalone session synchronization configurations. The default dstintf setting synchronizes sessions for all interfaces.

dst-port-range <xxx-yyy>

Enter the destination port range for the service filter.

service <string>

Enter the name of a FortiGate firewall predefined service. Only sessions that use this predefined service are synchronized. You can only enter one predefined service name. If you want to synchronize sessions for multiple services you can add multiple standalone session synchronization configurations.

srcaddr <src_ip_ipv4> <src_mask_ipv4>

srcaddr6 <src_ip_ipv6>

Enter the source IP address and netmask of the sessions to synchronize. For IPv4 addresses, use srcaddr. For IPv6 addresses, use srcaddr6. The default IP address and netmask (0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0 or ::/0) synchronizes sessions for all source address. If you want to specify multiple IP addresses or address ranges you can add multiple standalone session synchronization configurations.

srcintf <interface_name>

Enter the name of a FortiGate interface (this can be any interface including a VLAN interface, aggregate interface, redundant interface, virtual SSL VPN interface, or inter- VDOM link interface). Only sessions from this interface are synchronized. You can only enter one interface name. If you want to synchronize sessions for multiple interfaces you can add multiple standalone session synchronization configurations. The default srcintf setting synchronizes sessions for all interfaces.

src-port-range <xxx-yyy>

Enter the source port range for the service filter.

system console

Use this command to set the console command mode, the number of lines displayed by the console, and the baud rate. You can also use this command to disable the FortiGate's console port.

If this FortiGate unit is connected to a FortiManager unit running scripts, `output` must be set to `standard` for scripts to execute properly.

```
config system console
    set mode {batch | line}    Console mode.
        batch    Batch mode.
        line     Line mode.
    set baudrate {option}    Console baud rate.
        9600     9600
        19200    19200
        38400    38400
        57600    57600
        115200   115200
    set output {standard | more}    Console output mode.
        standard    Standard output.
        more        More page output.
    set login {enable | disable}    Enable/disable serial console and FortiExplorer.
    set fortieplorer {enable | disable}    Enable/disable access for FortiExplorer.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

baudrate <speed>

Set the console port baud rate. Select one of 9600 (the default), 19200, 38400, 57600, or 115200.

login {enable | disable}

Enable or disable allowing administrators to log into the FortiGate using the console port. Enabled by default.

mode {batch | line}

Set the console mode to line or batch. Used for autotesting only. The default setting is line.

output {standard | more}

Set console output to `standard` (no pause) or `more` (pause after each screen is full, resume on keypress). This setting applies to show or get commands only. The default is `more`.

fortiexplorer {enable | disable}

Enable or disable FortiExplorer access to this FortiGate.

system csf

This command is used to configure the Fortinet Security Fabric (previously known as Cooperative Security Fabric).

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set logging-mode {default local}</code>	This option has been removed and replaced with <code>configuration-sync</code> (see table entry blow).

Command	Description
<code>set configuration-sync {default local}</code>	New configuration sync mode to replace <code>logging-mode</code> . Set to <code>default</code> to synchronize configuration for FortiAnalyzer, FortiSandbox, and Central Management to root node. Set to <code>local</code> to not synchronize configuration with the root node.
<code>set fixed-key <password></code>	Auto-generated fixed key used when this device is the root. This will be automatically generated if not set.
<code>config trusted-list</code> <code>edit <id></code> <code>set action {accept deny}</code> <code>set ha-members <string></code> <code>set downstream-authorization {enable disable}</code> <code>next</code> <code>...</code>	Configure pre-authorized and blocked security fabric nodes. Note that this configuration method is only available when <code>status</code> is set to <code>enable</code> .
<code>config fabric-device</code> <code>edit <name></code> <code>set device-ip <ipv4-addr></code> <code>set device-type {fortimail}</code> <code>set login <name></code> <code>set password <password></code> <code>next</code> <code>...</code>	Configure fabric device settings.
<code>config system csf</code> <code>set status {enable disable}</code> Enable/disable Security Fabric. <code>set upstream-ip {ipv4 address}</code> IP address of the FortiGate upstream from this FortiGate in the Security Fabric. <code>set upstream-port {integer}</code> The port number to use to communicate with the FortiGate upstream from this FortiGate in the Security Fabric (default = 8013). range[1-65535] <code>set group-name {string}</code> Security Fabric group name. All FortiGates in a Security Fabric must have the same group name. size[35] <code>set group-password {password_string}</code> Security Fabric group password. All FortiGates in a Security Fabric must have the same group password. size[128] <code>set configuration-sync {default local}</code> Configuration sync mode. <code>default</code> Synchronize configuration for FortiAnalyzer, FortiSandbox and Central Management to root node.	

```

        local    Do not synchronize configuration with root node.
    set management-ip {ipv4 address}    Management IP address of this FortiGate. Used to log into this FortiGate from
    another FortiGate in the Security Fabric.
    set management-port {integer}    Overriding port for management connection (Overrides admin port). range[0-65535]
    set fixed-key {password_string}    Auto-generated fixed key used when this device is the root. (Will automatically be
    generated if not set.) size[128]
    config trusted-list
        edit {serial}
            # Pre-authorized and blocked security fabric nodes.
            set serial {string}    Serial. size[19]
            set action {accept | deny}    Security fabric authorization action.
                accept    Accept authorization request.
                deny    Deny authorization request.
            set ha-members {string}    HA members. size[19]
            set downstream-authorization {enable | disable}    Trust authorizations by this node's administrator.
        next
    config fabric-device
        edit {name}
            # Fabric device configuration.
            set name {string}    Device name. size[35]
            set device-ip {ipv4 address}    Device IP.
            set device-type {fortimail}    Device type.
                fortimail    FortiMail device.
            set login {string}    Device login name. size[64]
            set password {password_string}    Device login password. size[128]
        next
    end

```

status {enable | disable}

Enable or disable the security fabric. The default is `disable`.

upstream-ip <ip-address>

The IP address of the upstream FortiGate.

upstream-port <port-number>

The port used by the upstream FortiGate for communication within the security fabric. The default is `8013`.

group-name <name>

The name of the security fabric.

group-password <password>

The password for the security fabric.

management-ip <ip-address>

The management IP address of this FortiGate.

system custom-language

Use this command to add custom language file names to the FortiGate. These provide languages for guest administrators and SSL VPN portals.

```
config system custom-language
  edit {name}
    # Configure custom languages.
    set name {string}    Name. size[35]
    set filename {string} Custom language file path. size[63]
    set comments {string} Comment. size[255]
  next
end
```

system ddns

Use this command to configure FortiGuard DDNS settings on your FortiGate.

You can specify a DDNS server to be used by the FortiGate, and provide the account information so the FortiGate can continuously updated its IP information to the DDNS service, or provide the generic server information for a DDNS server that you maintain.

```
config system ddns
  edit {ddnsid}
    # Configure DDNS.
    set ddnsid {integer}    DDNS ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set ddns-server {option} Select a DDNS service provider.
```

```

        dyndns.org      members.dyndns.org and dnsalias.com
        dyns.net        www.dyns.net
        tzo.com         rh.tzo.com
        vavic.com       Peanut Hull
        dipdns.net      dipdnsserver.dipdns.com
        now.net.cn      ip.todayisp.com
        dhs.org         members.dhs.org
        easydns.com     members.easydns.com
        genericDDNS     Generic DDNS based on RFC2136.
        FortiGuardDDNS FortiGuard DDNS service.
        noip.com        dynupdate.no-ip.com
set ddns-server-ip {ipv4 address}   Generic DDNS server IP.
set ddns-zone {string}   Zone of your domain name (for example, DDNS.com). size[64]
set ddns-ttl {integer}   Time-to-live for DDNS packets. range[60-86400]
set ddns-auth {disable | tsig}   Enable/disable TSIG authentication for your DDNS server.
    disable   Disable DDNS authentication.
    tsig      Enable TSIG authentication based on RFC2845.
set ddns-keyname {string}   DDNS update key name. size[64]
set ddns-key {string}      DDNS update key (base 64 encoding).
set ddns-domain {string}   Your fully qualified domain name (for example, yourname.DDNS.com). size[64]
set ddns-username {string} DDNS user name. size[64]
set ddns-sn {string}       DDNS Serial Number. size[64]
set ddns-password {password_string} DDNS password. size[128]
set use-public-ip {disable | enable} Enable/disable use of public IP address.
set update-interval {integer} DDNS update interval (60 - 2592000 sec, default = 300). range[60-2592000]
set clear-text {disable | enable} Enable/disable use of clear text connections.
set ssl-certificate {string} Name of local certificate for SSL connections. size[35] - datasource(s): cer-
tificate.local.name
set bound-ip {ipv4 address} Bound IP address.
config monitor-interface
    edit {interface-name}
        # Monitored interface.
        set interface-name {string} Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    next
end

```

system dedicated-mgmt

Use this command to enable/disable and configure the Dedicated Management Port on the FortiGate. An interface can be selected as the Dedicated Management Port, to limit a single secure channel to the device's configuration.

Using this command is not recommended and it is not available on all FortiGate models. Instead you can enter the following to configure an interface to be dedicated to management:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface-name>
        set dedicated-to management
    end

config system dedicated-mgmt
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable dedicated management.
    set interface {string}    Dedicated management interface. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set default-gateway {ipv4 address}    Default gateway for dedicated management interface.
    set dhcp-server {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DHCP server on management interface.
    set dhcp-netmask {ipv4 netmask}    DHCP netmask.
    set dhcp-start-ip {ipv4 address}    DHCP start IP for dedicated management.
    set dhcp-end-ip {ipv4 address}    DHCP end IP for dedicated management.
end
```

system {dhcp server | dhcp6 server}

Configure DHCP servers used to assign IP settings, including IP addresses, to devices connected to a FortiGate interface.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
set tftp-server <string> [<string>]	Multiple IP addresses or hostnames can now be entered, with each entry separated by a space.

Command	Description
<pre> config prefix-range edit <id> set start-prefix <prefix> set end-prefix <prefix> set prefix-length <length> next ... </pre>	<p>Configure a range for DHCPv6 server prefix delegation. Add a prefix range (starting and ending prefixes) and a prefix length, which determines the length of the prefix that the FortiGate sends downstream.</p>
<pre> config system dhcp server edit {id} # Configure DHCP servers. set id {integer} ID. range[0-4294967295] set status {disable enable} Enable/disable this DHCP configuration. set lease-time {integer} Lease time in seconds, 0 means unlimited. range[300-8640000] set mac-acl-default-action {assign block} MAC access control default action (allow or block assigning IP settings). assign Allow the DHCP server to assign IP settings to clients on the MAC access control list. block Block the DHCP server from assigning IP settings to clients on the MAC access control list. set forticlient-on-net-status {disable enable} Enable/disable FortiClient-On-Net service for this DHCP server. set dns-service {local default specify} Options for assigning DNS servers to DHCP clients. local IP address of the interface the DHCP server is added to becomes the client's DNS server IP address. default Clients are assigned the FortiGate's configured DNS servers. specify Specify up to 3 DNS servers in the DHCP server configuration. set dns-server1 {ipv4 address} DNS server 1. set dns-server2 {ipv4 address} DNS server 2. set dns-server3 {ipv4 address} DNS server 3. set wifi-ac1 {ipv4 address} WiFi Access Controller 1 IP address (DHCP option 138, RFC 5417). set wifi-ac2 {ipv4 address} WiFi Access Controller 2 IP address (DHCP option 138, RFC 5417). set wifi-ac3 {ipv4 address} WiFi Access Controller 3 IP address (DHCP option 138, RFC 5417). set ntp-service {local default specify} Options for assigning Network Time Protocol (NTP) servers to DHCP clients. local IP address of the interface the DHCP server is added to becomes the client's NTP server IP address. default Clients are assigned the FortiGate's configured NTP servers. specify Specify up to 3 NTP servers in the DHCP server configuration. set ntp-server1 {ipv4 address} NTP server 1. </pre>	

```
set ntp-server2 {ipv4 address}    NTP server 2.
set ntp-server3 {ipv4 address}    NTP server 3.
set domain {string}    Domain name suffix for the IP addresses that the DHCP server assigns to clients. size[35]
set wins-server1 {ipv4 address}    WINS server 1.
set wins-server2 {ipv4 address}    WINS server 2.
set default-gateway {ipv4 address}    Default gateway IP address assigned by the DHCP server.
set next-server {ipv4 address}    IP address of a server (for example, a TFTP sever) that DHCP clients can download a boot file from.
set netmask {ipv4 netmask}    Netmask assigned by the DHCP server.
set interface {string}    DHCP server can assign IP configurations to clients connected to this interface. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
config ip-range
    edit {id}
        # DHCP IP range configuration.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set start-ip {ipv4 address}    Start of IP range.
        set end-ip {ipv4 address}    End of IP range.
    next
set timezone-option {disable | default | specify}    Options for the DHCP server to set the client's time zone.
    disable    Do not set the client's time zone.
    default    Clients are assigned the FortiGate's configured time zone.
    specify    Specify the time zone to be assigned to DHCP clients.
set timezone {option}    Select the time zone to be assigned to DHCP clients.
    01    (GMT-11:00) Midway Island, Samoa
    02    (GMT-10:00) Hawaii
    03    (GMT-9:00) Alaska
    04    (GMT-8:00) Pacific Time (US & Canada)
    05    (GMT-7:00) Arizona
    81    (GMT-7:00) Baja California Sur, Chihuahua
    06    (GMT-7:00) Mountain Time (US & Canada)
    07    (GMT-6:00) Central America
    08    (GMT-6:00) Central Time (US & Canada)
    09    (GMT-6:00) Mexico City
    10    (GMT-6:00) Saskatchewan
    11    (GMT-5:00) Bogota, Lima, Quito
    12    (GMT-5:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)
    13    (GMT-5:00) Indiana (East)
    74    (GMT-4:00) Caracas
    14    (GMT-4:00) Atlantic Time (Canada)
    77    (GMT-4:00) Georgetown
```

```
15 (GMT-4:00) La Paz
87 (GMT-4:00) Paraguay
16 (GMT-3:00) Santiago
17 (GMT-3:30) Newfoundland
18 (GMT-3:00) Brasilia
19 (GMT-3:00) Buenos Aires
20 (GMT-3:00) Nuuk (Greenland)
75 (GMT-3:00) Uruguay
21 (GMT-2:00) Mid-Atlantic
22 (GMT-1:00) Azores
23 (GMT-1:00) Cape Verde Is.
24 (GMT) Monrovia
80 (GMT) Greenwich Mean Time
79 (GMT) Casablanca
25 (GMT) Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London
26 (GMT+1:00) Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
27 (GMT+1:00) Belgrade, Bratislava, Budapest, Ljubljana, Prague
28 (GMT+1:00) Brussels, Copenhagen, Madrid, Paris
78 (GMT+1:00) Namibia
29 (GMT+1:00) Sarajevo, Skopje, Warsaw, Zagreb
30 (GMT+1:00) West Central Africa
31 (GMT+2:00) Athens, Sofia, Vilnius
32 (GMT+2:00) Bucharest
33 (GMT+2:00) Cairo
34 (GMT+2:00) Harare, Pretoria
35 (GMT+2:00) Helsinki, Riga, Tallinn
36 (GMT+2:00) Jerusalem
37 (GMT+3:00) Baghdad
38 (GMT+3:00) Kuwait, Riyadh
83 (GMT+3:00) Moscow
84 (GMT+3:00) Minsk
40 (GMT+3:00) Nairobi
85 (GMT+3:00) Istanbul
41 (GMT+3:30) Tehran
42 (GMT+4:00) Abu Dhabi, Muscat
43 (GMT+4:00) Baku
39 (GMT+3:00) St. Petersburg, Volgograd
44 (GMT+4:30) Kabul
46 (GMT+5:00) Islamabad, Karachi, Tashkent
47 (GMT+5:30) Kolkata, Chennai, Mumbai, New Delhi
```

```
51 (GMT+5:30) Sri Jayawardenepara
48 (GMT+5:45) Kathmandu
45 (GMT+5:00) Ekaterinburg
49 (GMT+6:00) Almaty, Novosibirsk
50 (GMT+6:00) Astana, Dhaka
52 (GMT+6:30) Rangoon
53 (GMT+7:00) Bangkok, Hanoi, Jakarta
54 (GMT+7:00) Krasnoyarsk
55 (GMT+8:00) Beijing, ChongQing, HongKong, Urumgi, Irkutsk
56 (GMT+8:00) Ulaan Bataar
57 (GMT+8:00) Kuala Lumpur, Singapore
58 (GMT+8:00) Perth
59 (GMT+8:00) Taipei
60 (GMT+9:00) Osaka, Sapporo, Tokyo, Seoul
62 (GMT+9:30) Adelaide
63 (GMT+9:30) Darwin
61 (GMT+9:00) Yakutsk
64 (GMT+10:00) Brisbane
65 (GMT+10:00) Canberra, Melbourne, Sydney
66 (GMT+10:00) Guam, Port Moresby
67 (GMT+10:00) Hobart
68 (GMT+10:00) Vladivostok
69 (GMT+10:00) Magadan
70 (GMT+11:00) Solomon Is., New Caledonia
71 (GMT+12:00) Auckland, Wellington
72 (GMT+12:00) Fiji, Kamchatka, Marshall Is.
00 (GMT+12:00) Eniwetok, Kwajalein
82 (GMT+12:45) Chatham Islands
73 (GMT+13:00) Nuku'alofa
86 (GMT+13:00) Samoa
76 (GMT+14:00) Kiritimati
config tftp-server
  edit {tftp-server}
    # One or more hostnames or IP addresses of the TFTP servers in quotes separated by spaces.
    set tftp-server {string} TFTP server. size[63]
  next
set filename {string} Name of the boot file on the TFTP server. size[127]
config options
  edit {id}
    # DHCP options.
```

```

        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set code {integer}  DHCP option code. range[0-255]
        set type {hex | string | ip | fqdn}  DHCP option type.
            hex      DHCP option in hex.
            string   DHCP option in string.
            ip       DHCP option in IP.
            fqdn     DHCP option in domain search option format.
        set value {string}  DHCP option value. size[312]
        set ip {string}     DHCP option IPs.
    next
    set server-type {regular | ipsec}  DHCP server can be a normal DHCP server or an IPsec DHCP server.
        regular  Regular DHCP service.
        ipsec    DHCP over IPsec service.
    set ip-mode {range | usrgrp}  Method used to assign client IP.
        range    Use range defined by start-ip/end-ip to assign client IP.
        usrgrp   Use user-group defined method to assign client IP.
    set conflicted-ip-timeout {integer}  Time in seconds to wait after a conflicted IP address is removed from the
DHCP range before it can be reused. range[60-8640000]
    set ipsec-lease-hold {integer}  DHCP over IPsec leases expire this many seconds after tunnel down (0 to disable
forced-expiry). range[0-8640000]
    set auto-configuration {disable | enable}  Enable/disable auto configuration.
    set ddns-update {disable | enable}  Enable/disable DDNS update for DHCP.
    set ddns-update-override {disable | enable}  Enable/disable DDNS update override for DHCP.
    set ddns-server-ip {ipv4 address}  DDNS server IP.
    set ddns-zone {string}  Zone of your domain name (ex. DDNS.com). size[64]
    set ddns-auth {disable | tsig}  DDNS authentication mode.
        disable  Disable DDNS authentication.
        tsig     TSIG based on RFC2845.
    set ddns-keyname {string}  DDNS update key name. size[64]
    set ddns-key {string}  DDNS update key (base 64 encoding).
    set ddns-ttl {integer}  TTL. range[60-86400]
    set vci-match {disable | enable}  Enable/disable vendor class identifier (VCI) matching. When enabled only DHCP
requests with a matching VCI are served.
    config vci-string
        edit {vci-string}
        # One or more VCI strings in quotes separated by spaces.
        set vci-string {string}  VCI strings. size[255]
    next
    config exclude-range
        edit {id}

```

```
# Exclude one or more ranges of IP addresses from being assigned to clients.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set start-ip {ipv4 address}    Start of IP range.
    set end-ip {ipv4 address}    End of IP range.
next
config reserved-address
edit {id}
# Options for the DHCP server to assign IP settings to specific MAC addresses.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set ip {ipv4 address}    IP address to be reserved for the MAC address.
    set mac {mac address}    MAC address of the client that will get the reserved IP address.
    set action {assign | block | reserved}    Options for the DHCP server to configure the client with the
reserved MAC address.
        assign    Configure the client with this MAC address like any other client.
        block    Block the DHCP server from assigning IP settings to the client with this MAC address.
        reserved    Assign the reserved IP address to the client with this MAC address.
    set description {string}    Description. size[255]
next
next
end

config system dhcp6 server
edit {id}
# Configure DHCPv6 servers.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set status {disable | enable}    Enable/disable this DHCPv6 configuration.
    set rapid-commit {disable | enable}    Enable/disable allow/disallow rapid commit.
    set lease-time {integer}    Lease time in seconds, 0 means unlimited. range[300-8640000]
    set dns-service {delegated | default | specify}    Options for assigning DNS servers to DHCPv6 clients.
        delegated    Delegated DNS settings.
        default    Clients are assigned the FortiGate's configured DNS servers.
        specify    Specify up to 3 DNS servers in the DHCPv6 server configuration.
    set dns-search-list {delegated | specify}    DNS search list options.
        delegated    Delegated the DNS search list.
        specify    Specify the DNS search list.
    set dns-server1 {ipv6 address}    DNS server 1.
    set dns-server2 {ipv6 address}    DNS server 2.
    set dns-server3 {ipv6 address}    DNS server 3.
    set domain {string}    Domain name suffix for the IP addresses that the DHCP server assigns to clients. size[35]
    set subnet {ipv6 prefix}    Subnet or subnet-id if the IP mode is delegated.
    set interface {string}    DHCP server can assign IP configurations to clients connected to this interface. size
```

```

[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set option1 {string}    Option 1.
    set option2 {string}    Option 2.
    set option3 {string}    Option 3.
    set upstream-interface {string}    Interface name from where delegated information is provided. size[15] - data-
source(s): system.interface.name
    set ip-mode {range | delegated}    Method used to assign client IP.
        range        Use range defined by start IP/end IP to assign client IP.
        delegated    Use delegated prefix method to assign client IP.
    config prefix-range
        edit {id}
        # DHCP prefix configuration.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set start-prefix {ipv6 address}    Start of prefix range.
        set end-prefix {ipv6 address}    End of prefix range.
        set prefix-length {integer}    Prefix length. range[1-128]
    next
    config ip-range
        edit {id}
        # DHCP IP range configuration.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set start-ip {ipv6 address}    Start of IP range.
        set end-ip {ipv6 address}    End of IP range.
    next
next
end

```

status {disable | enable}

Enable or disable this DHCP server, default is enable.

lease-time <integer>

Lease time in seconds, value between 300 and 8640000 (5 minutes to almost 100 days), 0 for unlimited lease time, default is 604800.

mac-acl-default-action {assign | block}

MAC access control default action. Set whether or not the DHCP server assigns network settings to a DHCP client with a MAC address that is on the MAC address control list.

- `assign` allow the DHCP server to assign IP settings to a client on the MAC address control list.
- `block` block the DHCP from assigning IP settings to a client on the MAC address control list.

forticlient-on-net-status {disable | enable}

Enable or disable the FortiClient-On-Net service for this DHCP server, default is enable.

dns-service {local | default | specify}

How the DHCP clients are assigned DNS servers.

- `local` IP address of the interface the DHCP server is added to becomes the client's DNS server IP address.
- `default` IP addresses of the DNS servers added to the FortiGate configuration become the client's DNS server IP addresses.
- `specify` specify up to 3 DNS servers in the DHCP server configuration.

dns-server1 <ip>

Set the IP address of DNS server(s) which will be used by DHCP clients, up to three DNS servers (dns-server1, dns-server2, and dns-server3).

wifi-ac1 <ip>

Set the IP address of up to three WiFi Access Controller(s) (wifi-ac1, wifi-ac2, and wifi-ac3). For DHCP option 138 to use DHCP to send WiFi access controller IP addresses to Wireless Termination Points (WTPs) ([RFC 5417](#)).

ntp-service {local | default | specify}

How the DHCP clients are assigned Network Time Protocol (NTP) servers.

- `local` IP address of the interface the DHCP server is added to becomes the client's NTP server IP address.
- `default` IP addresses of the NTP servers added to the FortiGate configuration become the client's NTP server IP addresses.
- `specify` specify up to 3 NTP servers in the DHCP server configuration.

ntp-server1 <ip>

Set the IP address of NTP server(s), up to three NTP servers (ntp-server1, ntp-server2, and ntp-server3).

domain <string>

Domain name suffix for the IP addresses that the DHCP server assigns to clients.

wins-server1 <ip>

Set the IP address of WINS server(s), up to two WINS servers (wins-server1, and wins-server2).

default-gateway <ip>

The default gateway IP address that will be used by DHCP clients as their default gateway.

next-server <ip>

The IP address of the next bootstrap server. Add an IP address if you are using a secondary DHCP server to assign IP configuration options.

netmask <netmask>

The netmask assigned by the DHCP server

interface <interface-name>

The DHCP server can assign IP configurations to DHCP clients connected to this interface.

config ip-range

DHCP IP range configuration.

start-ip <ip>

The first IP of the range.

end-ip <ip>

The last IP of the range.

timezone-option {disable | default | specify}

How the DHCP server sets the client's time zone.

- `disable` do not set the client's time zone.
- `default` DHCP clients are assigned the FortiGate's configured time zone.
- `specify` specify the time zone to be assigned to DHCP clients.

timezone <timezone-number>

Select the time zone that the DHCP server assigns to DHCP clients. Available if `timezone-option` is set to `specify`.

tftp-server <string> [<string>]

Hostnames or IP addresses of one or more TFTP servers.

filename <string>

The file name on the tftp server.

config options

The DHCP options configuration.

code <integer>

The option's code for DHCP, see [RFC 2132](#) for more details.

type {hex | string | ip}

DHCP option in hexadecimal, string, or IP, default is hex.

value <string>

The value is specified as a single octet. Values are available per option, see [RFC 2132](#) for more details.

server-type {regular | ipsec}

Regular DHCP service or DHCP over IPsec services.

conflicted-ip-timeout <integer>

The time in seconds to wait after a conflicted IP address is removed from the DHCP range before it can be reused. Value between 60 to 8640000 seconds (1 minute to 100 days), default is 1800.

auto-configuration {disable | enable}

Disable or enable auto configuration, default is enable.

ddns-update {disable | enable}

Disable or enable Dynamic DNS update for DHCP, default is disable.

vci-match {disable | enable}

Disable or enable vendor class identifier (VCI) matching. When enabled only DHCP requests with a matching VCI string are served, default is disabled.

vci-string <strings>

One or more VCI strings in quotes and separated by spaces.

config exclude-range

DHCP exclude range configuration.

start-ip <ip>

The first IP of the excluded range.

end-ip <ip>

The last IP of the excluded range.

config reserved-address

How the DHCP server assigns IP settings to specific MAC addresses.

ip <ip>

The IP address to be reserved for the client with the MAC address. Only valid if `action` is set to `reserved`.

mac <mac-address>

MAC address of the client to be configured by the DHCP server according to the action.

action {assign | block | reserved}

How the DHCP server configures the client with the reserved MAC address.

- `assign` the DHCP server treats the client with this MAC address like any other client.
- `block` block the DHCP server from assigning IP settings to the client with this MAC address.
- `reserved` assign the reserved IP address to the client with this MAC address.

description <string>

Optionally describe the client with this MAC address.

system dnp3-proxy

Note: This command is only available for FortiGate Rugged platforms.

Use this command to configure support for Distributed Network Protocol for FortiGate Rugged platforms.

```
config system dnp3-proxy
  set port {integer}    DNP3 TCPServer Port. range[1-65535]
  set term-baudrate {integer}  Term Baudrate. range[0-4294967295]
  set term-databits {integer}  Term Data Bits. range[0-65535]
  set term-stopbits {integer}  Term Stop Bits. range[0-65535]
  set term-parity {none | odd | even}  Term Parity
  none  No parity check.
```

```

        odd    Odd parity check.
        even   Even parity check.
    set term-flowcontrol {none | xon_xoff | hardware}    Term Flow Control
        none        No flow control.
        xon_xoff    Enable software flow control on both input and output.
        hardware    Enable hardware flow control.
end

```

system dns

Configure DNS settings used to resolve domain names to IP addresses, so devices connected to a FortiGate interface can use it.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.5.

Command	Description
config domain	Allows you to add multiple DNS domains.

```

config system dns
    set primary {ipv4 address}    Primary DNS server IP address.
    set secondary {ipv4 address}  Secondary DNS server IP address.
    config domain
        edit {domain}
            # Search suffix list for hostname lookup.
            set domain {string}    DNS search domain list separated by space (maximum 8 domains) size[127]
        next
    set ip6-primary {ipv6 address} Primary DNS server IPv6 address.
    set ip6-secondary {ipv6 address} Secondary DNS server IPv6 address.
    set timeout {integer}    DNS query timeout interval in seconds (1 - 10). range[1-10]
    set retry {integer}    Number of times to retry (0 - 5). range[0-5]
    set dns-cache-limit {integer}    Maximum number of records in the DNS cache. range[0-4294967295]
    set dns-cache-ttl {integer}    Duration in seconds that the DNS cache retains information. range[60-86400]
    set cache-notfound-responses {disable | enable}    Enable/disable response from the DNS server when a record is not
in cache.

```

```
    set source-ip {ipv4 address}    IP address used by the DNS server as its source IP.  
end
```

primary <ip>

The primary DNS server IP address, default is 208.91.112.53, a FortiGuard server.

secondary <ip>

The secondary DNS server IP address, default is 208.91.112.52, a FortiGuard server.

config domain

Add one or more DNS domains.

domain <string>

The domain name suffix for the IP addresses of the DNS server.

ip6-primary <ipv6>

The primary DNS server IPv6 address.

ip6-secondary <ipv6>

The secondary DNS server IPv6 address.

dns-cache-limit <integer>

The number of records in the DNS cache, value between 0 and 4294967295, default is 5000.

dns-cache-ttl <integer>

The duration, in seconds, that the DNS cache retains information, value between 60 and 86400, default is 1800.

cache-notfound-responses {disable | enable}

Disable or enable response from the DNS server when a record is not in cache, default is `disable`.

source-ip <ip>

The IP address used by the DNS server as the source IP.

system dns-database

Introduction.

```
config system dns-database
    edit {name}
        # Configure DNS databases.
        set name {string}    Zone name. size[35]
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this DNS zone.
        set domain {string}    Domain name. size[255]
        set allow-transfer {string}    DNS zone transfer IP address list.
        set type {master | slave}    Zone type (master to manage entries directly, slave to import entries from other
zones).
            master Master DNS zone, to manage entries directly.
            slave Slave DNS zone, to import entries from other DNS zones.
        set view {shadow | public}    Zone view (public to serve public clients, shadow to serve internal clients).
            shadow Shadow DNS zone to serve internal clients.
            public Public DNS zone to serve public clients.
        set ip-master {ipv4 address any}    IP address of master DNS server. Entries in this master DNS server and impor-
ted into the DNS zone.
        set primary-name {string}    Domain name of the default DNS server for this zone. size[255]
        set contact {string}    Email address of the administrator for this zone.
            You can specify only the username (e.g. admin) or full email address (e.g. admin@test.com)
            When using a simple username, the domain of the email will be this zone. size[255]
        set ttl {integer}    Default time-to-live value for the entries of this DNS zone (0 - 2147483647 sec, default =
86400). range[0-2147483647]
        set authoritative {enable | disable}    Enable/disable authoritative zone.
        set forwarder {string}    DNS zone forwarder IP address list.
        set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IP for forwarding to DNS server.
    config dns-entry
```

```

edit {id}
# DNS entry.
  set id {integer}    DNS entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable resource record status.
  set type {option}   Resource record type.
    A      Host type.
    NS     Name server type.
    CNAME  Canonical name type.
    MX     Mail exchange type.
    AAAA   IPv6 host type.
    PTR    Pointer type.
    PTR_V6 IPv6 pointer type.
  set ttl {integer}   Time-to-live for this entry (0 to 2147483647 sec, default = 0). range[0-2147483647]
  set preference {integer}  DNS entry preference, 0 is the highest preference (0 - 65535, default = 10)
range[0-65535]
  set ip {ipv4 address any}  IPv4 address of the host.
  set ipv6 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 address of the host.
  set hostname {string}     Name of the host. size[255]
  set canonical-name {string} Canonical name of the host. size[255]
next
next
end

```

system dns-server

Introduction.

```

config system dns-server
  edit {name}
  # Configure DNS servers.
    set name {string}  DNS server name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set mode {recursive | non-recursive | forward-only}  DNS server mode.
      recursive      Shadow DNS database and forward.
      non-recursive  Public DNS database only.
      forward-only   Forward only.
    set dnsfilter-profile {string}  DNS filter profile. size[35] - datasource(s): dnsfilter.profile.name
  next
end

```


system dscp-based-priority

Introduction.

```
config system dscp-based-priority
  edit {id}
    # Configure DSCP based priority table.
    set id {integer}    Item ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set ds {integer}    DSCP(DiffServ) DS value (0 - 63). range[0-63]
    set priority {low | medium | high}    DSCP based priority level.
        low    Low priority.
        medium Medium priority.
        high   High priority.
  next
end
```

system email-server

Use this command to specify and configure an email server to be used for FortiGate messaging, such as Alert Emails for specified logging events.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<pre>set ssl-min-proto-version {default SSLv3 TLSv1 TLSv1-1 TLSv1-2}</pre>	<p>Set the minimum SSL version that can be used for SSL/TLS-protected sessions to the configured email server.</p> <p>The default value is <code>default</code> which means to follow the global minimum set by the <code>ssl-min-proto-version</code> option of the <code>config system global</code> command.</p>

```
config system email-server
  set type {custom}    Use FortiGuard Message service or custom email server.
    custom Use custom email server.
  set reply-to {string} Reply-To email address. size[63]
```

```

set server {string}    SMTP server IP address or hostname. size[63]
set port {integer}    SMTP server port. range[1-65535]
set source-ip {ipv4 address}    SMTP server IPv4 source IP.
set source-ip6 {ipv6 address}    SMTP server IPv6 source IP.
set authenticate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable authentication.
set validate-server {enable | disable}    Enable/disable validation of server certificate.
set username {string}    SMTP server user name for authentication. size[63]
set password {password_string}    SMTP server user password for authentication. size[128]
set security {none | starttls | smtps}    Connection security used by the email server.
    none        None.
    starttls    STARTTLS.
    smtps       SSL/TLS.
set ssl-min-proto-version {option}    Minimum supported protocol version for SSL/TLS connections (default is to fol-
low system global setting).
    default    Follow system global setting.
    SSLv3      SSLv3.
    TLSv1      TLSv1.
    TLSv1-1    TLSv1.1.
    TLSv1-2    TLSv1.2.
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

ssl-min-proto-version {default | SSLv3 | TLSv1 | TLSv1-1 | TLSv1-2}

Set the minimum SSL version that can be used for SSL/TLS-protected sessions to the configured email server.

The default value is `default` which means to follow the global minimum set by the `ssl-min-proto-version` option of the `config system global` command.

system external-resource

Use this command to configure external blocklist resources that Web Filtering profiles can use for blocking URLs. These blocklists are text files that are in a plain text format, where each line contains a single URL to be blocked. DNS filtering, SSL exemption, and policies can also make use of this feature.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<code>set last-update <datetime></code>	Removed <code>last-update</code> option.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config system external-resource</code>	New <code>config</code> command. Configure external dynamic block lists for blocking URLs. Determine how often, in minutes, files can be refreshed from the external resource.
<pre>config system external-resource edit {name} # Configure external resource. set name {string} External resource name. size[35] set status {enable disable} Enable/disable user resource. set type {category address domain} User resource type. category FortiGuard category. address Firewall IP address. domain Domain Name. set category {integer} User resource category. range[192-221] set comments {string} Comment. size[255] set resource {string} URI of external resource. size[511] set refresh-rate {integer} Time interval to refresh external resource (1 - 43200 min, default = 5 min). range [1-43200] next end</pre>	

system fips-cc

Introduction.

```
config system fips-cc
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FIPS-CC mode.
  set entropy-token {enable | disable | dynamic}  Enable/disable/dynamic entropy token.
  set self-test-period {integer}  Self test period. range[1-1440]
```

```
    set key-generation-self-test {enable | disable}    Enable/disable self tests after key generation.
end
```

system fm

Introduction.

```
config system fm
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FM.
    set id {string}    ID. size[35]
    set ip {ipv4 address}    IP address.
    set vdom {string}    VDOM. size[31] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
    set auto-backup {enable | disable}    Enable/disable automatic backup.
    set scheduled-config-restore {enable | disable}    Enable/disable scheduled configuration restore.
    set ipsec {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPsec.
end
```

system fortiguard

Use this command to configure communications with the FortiGuard Distribution Network (FDN) for FortiGuard subscription services, such as FortiGuard Intrusion Prevention Service (IPS), Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, and Application Control. You can also use this command to configure a FortiGate unit to communicate with a FortiManager system, which can act as a private FortiGuard Distribution Server (FDS) for Anti-Virus, IPS, Web Filtering, and Anti-Spam services.

By default, FortiGate units connect to the FDN using a set of default connection settings. You can override these settings to use IP addresses and port numbers other than the defaults. For example, if you have a FortiManager unit, you might download a local copy of FortiGuard service updates to the FortiManager unit, then redistribute those updates by configuring each FortiGate unit's server override feature to connect to the FortiManager unit's private FDS IP address.

If the FortiGate unit is unable to connect to the FDN, verify connectivity on required ports. For a list of required ports, see [Fortinet Communication Ports and Protocols on page 1](#).

Remote administration by a FortiManager system is mutually exclusive with remote administration by the FortiGuard Analysis and Management Service. For more information about configuring remote administration by a FortiManager system, see the `system central-management` command instead.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.5.

Command	Description
<code>set auto-join-forticloud {enable disable}</code>	New option to automatically connect to and log in to FortiCloud. Disabled by default.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>set outbreak-prevention-cache-ttl <seconds></code>	Changed the default cache entry lifespan for Virus Outbreak Prevention value from 1800 seconds (or 30 minutes) to 300 seconds (or 5 minutes).

```
config system fortiguard
    set protocol {udp | http | https}    Protocol used to communicate with the FortiGuard servers.
        udp    UDP for server communication (for use by FortiGuard or FortiManager).
        http   HTTP for server communication (for use only by FortiManager).
        https  HTTPS for server communication (for use by FortiGuard or FortiManager).
    set port {8888 | 53 | 80}    Port used to communicate with the FortiGuard servers.
        8888   port 8888 for server communication.
        53     port 53 for server communication.
        80     port 80 for server communication.
    set service-account-id {string}    Service account ID. size[50]
    set load-balance-servers {integer}    Number of servers to alternate between as first FortiGuard option. range[1-266]
    set update-server-location {usa | any}    Signature update server location.
        usa    FGD servers in United States.
        any    FGD servers in any location.
    set antispam-force-off {enable | disable}    Enable/disable turning off the FortiGuard antispam service.
    set antispam-cache {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiGuard antispam request caching. Uses a small amount of
memory but improves performance.
    set antispam-cache-ttl {integer}    Time-to-live for antispam cache entries in seconds (300 - 86400). Lower times
reduce the cache size. Higher times may improve performance since the cache will have more entries. range[300-86400]
    set antispam-cache-mpercent {integer}    Maximum percent of FortiGate memory the antispam cache is allowed to use (1
- 15%). range[1-15]
    set antispam-license {integer}    Interval of time between license checks for the FortiGuard antispam contract. range
[0-4294967295]
```

```
set antispam-expiration {integer}    Expiration date of the FortiGuard antispam contract. range[0-4294967295]
set antispam-timeout {integer}      Antispam query time out (1 - 30 sec, default = 7). range[1-30]
set outbreak-prevention-force-off {enable | disable}    Turn off FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention service.
set outbreak-prevention-cache {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention cache.
set outbreak-prevention-cache-ttl {integer}    Time-to-live for FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention cache entries
(300 - 86400 sec, default = 300). range[300-86400]
set outbreak-prevention-cache-mpercent {integer}    Maximum percent of memory FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention
cache can use (1 - 15%, default = 2). range[1-15]
set outbreak-prevention-license {integer}    Interval of time between license checks for FortiGuard Virus Outbreak
Prevention contract. range[0-4294967295]
set outbreak-prevention-expiration {integer}    Expiration date of FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention contract.
range[0-4294967295]
set outbreak-prevention-timeout {integer}    FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Prevention time out (1 - 30 sec, default = 7).
range[1-30]
set webfilter-force-off {enable | disable}    Enable/disable turning off the FortiGuard web filtering service.
set webfilter-cache {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiGuard web filter caching.
set webfilter-cache-ttl {integer}    Time-to-live for web filter cache entries in seconds (300 - 86400). range[300-
86400]
set webfilter-license {integer}    Interval of time between license checks for the FortiGuard web filter contract.
range[0-4294967295]
set webfilter-expiration {integer}    Expiration date of the FortiGuard web filter contract. range[0-4294967295]
set webfilter-timeout {integer}    Web filter query time out (1 - 30 sec, default = 7). range[1-30]
set sdns-server-ip {string}    IP address of the FortiDNS server.
set sdns-server-port {integer}    Port used to communicate with FortiDNS servers. range[1-65535]
set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IPv4 address used to communicate with FortiGuard.
set source-ip6 {ipv6 address}    Source IPv6 address used to communicate with FortiGuard.
set ddns-server-ip {ipv4 address}    IP address of the FortiDDNS server.
set ddns-server-port {integer}    Port used to communicate with FortiDDNS servers. range[1-65535]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

antispam-cache {enable | disable}

Enable (default) or disable the caching of FortiGuard Anti-spam query results, including IP address and URL block list.

Enabling the cache can improve performance because the FortiGate unit does not need to access the FDN or FortiManager unit each time the same IP address or URL appears as the source of an email. When the cache is full, the least recently used cache entry is replaced.

antispam-cache-mpercent <percent>

Enter the maximum percentage of memory (RAM) to use for anti-spam caching.

Possible values: 1 to 15 percent. The default value is 2.

antispam-cache-ttl <seconds>

Enter a time to live (TTL), in seconds, for anti-spam cache entries. When the TTL expires, the cache entry is removed, and the FortiGate unit will query the FDN or FortiManager unit the next time that item occurs in scanned traffic.

Possible values: 300 to 86400 seconds. The default value is 1800.

antispam-expiration

View the expiration date of the FortiGuard Anti-spam service contract.

You can view this variable using the `get` command. You cannot set this variable.

antispam-force-off {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) the FortiGuard Anti-spam service on this FortiGate unit.

antispam-license

View the interval of time between license checks for the FortiGuard Anti-spam service contract.

You can view this variable using the `get` command. You cannot set this variable.

antispam-timeout <seconds>

Enter the time limit, in seconds, for the FortiGuard Anti-spam query timeout.

Possible values: 1 to 30 seconds. The default value is 7.

auto-join-forticloud {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) automatic joining for the FortiCloud service.

ddns-server-ip <IPv4_address>

Enter the IP address of the FortiDDNS service.

ddns-server-port <port_number>

Enter the port to use for the FortiDDNS service.

Possible values: 1 to 65535. The default value is 443.

load-balance-servers <number_of_servers>

Enter the number of FortiGuard servers to connect to.

By default, the FortiGate unit uses the first server in its FortiGuard server list to connect to the FortiGuard network and `load-balance-servers` is set to 1. You can increase this number up to 20 if you want the FortiGate unit to use a different FortiGuard server each time it contacts the FortiGuard network. If you set `load-balance-servers` to 2, the FortiGate unit alternates between checking the first two servers in the FortiGuard server list.

Possible values: 1 to 20. The default value is 1.

set auto-join-forticloud {enable | disable}

Automatically connect to and log in to FortiCloud. Disabled by default.

protocol {udp | http | https}

Select the protocol that is used to communicate with the FortiGuard servers. The default value is https.

port {53 | 8888 | 80}

Enter the port to use for rating queries to the FortiGuard Web Filtering or FortiGuard Anti-spam service.

The default value is 8888.

sdns-server-ip <IP_address>

Enter the IP address of the FortiDNS server. This is used for DNS-based web filtering.

sdns-server-port <port_number>

Enter the destination port of the SDNS server. This is used for DNS-based web filtering.

Possible values: 1 to 65535. The default value is 53.

This value should not be changed if using FortiGuard SDNS servers.

service-account-id <ID>

Enter your service account ID.

The limit is 50 characters.

source-ip <IPv4_address>

Enter the source IP address to use to communicate with the FortiGuard servers.

This setting is not available if `fortimanager-fds-override` is enabled in `system central-management`.

source-ip6 <IPv6_address>

Enter the source IPv6 address to use to communicate with the FortiGuard servers.

This setting is not available if `fortimanager-fds-override` is enabled in `system central-management`.

webfilter-cache {enable | disable}

Enable (default) or disable the caching of FortiGuard Web Filtering query results, including category ratings for URLs.

Enabling the cache can improve performance because the FortiGate unit does not need to access the FDN or FortiManager unit each time the same IP address or URL is requested. When the cache is full, the least recently used cache entry is replaced.

webfilter-cache-ttl <seconds>

Enter a time to live (TTL), in seconds, for web filtering cache entries. When the TTL expires, the cache entry is removed, and the FortiGate unit will query the FDN or FortiManager unit the next time that item occurs in scanned traffic.

Possible values: 300 to 86400 seconds. The default value is 3600.

webfilter-expiration

View the expiration date of the FortiGuard Web Filtering service contract.

You can view this variable using the `get` command. You cannot set this variable.

webfilter-force-off {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) the FortiGuard Web Filtering service on this FortiGate unit.

webfilter-license

View the interval of time between license checks for the FortiGuard Web Filtering service contract.

Initially this value is unknown and is set after the FortiGate contacts the FDN to validate the FortiGuard Web Filtering license.

You can view this variable using the `get` command. You cannot set this variable.

webfilter-timeout <seconds>

Enter the FortiGuard Web Filtering query timeout.

Possible values: 1 to 30 seconds. The default value is 15.

system fortimanager

Use this command to specify the details of a FortiManager that your FortiGate will be managed by. You can specify which FortiGate VDOM it will manage, and enable/disable various central management functions.

```
config system fortimanager
  set ip {ipv4 address any}    IP address.
```

```

set vdom {string}    Virtual domain name. size[31] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
set ipsec {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiManager IPsec tunnel.
set central-management {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiManager central management.
set central-mgmt-auto-backup {enable | disable}    Enable/disable central management auto backup.
set central-mgmt-schedule-config-restore {enable | disable}    Enable/disable central management schedule config
restore.
set central-mgmt-schedule-script-restore {enable | disable}    Enable/disable central management schedule script
restore.
end

```

system fortisandbox

Use this command to configure the FortiGate unit to use FortiSandbox.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<pre>set ssl-min-proto-version {default SSLv3 TLSv1 TLSv1-1 TLSv1-2}</pre>	<p>Set the minimum SSL version that can be used for SSL/TLS-protected FortiSandbox sessions.</p> <p>The default value is default which means to follow the global minimum set by the ssl-min-proto-version option of the config system global command.</p>

```

config system fortisandbox
  set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiSandbox.
  set server {string}    IPv4 or IPv6 address of the remote FortiSandbox. size[63]
  set source-ip {string}    Source IP address for communications to FortiSandbox. size[63]
  set enc-algorithm {default | high | low}    Configure the level of SSL protection for secure communication with
FortiSandbox.
    default    SSL communication with high and medium encryption algorithms.
    high      SSL communication with high encryption algorithms.
    low       SSL communication with low encryption algorithms.
  set ssl-min-proto-version {option}    Minimum supported protocol version for SSL/TLS connections (default is to fol-
low system global setting).

```

```
        default Follow system global setting.
        SSLv3     SSLv3.
        TLSv1     TLSv1.
        TLSv1-1   TLSv1.1.
        TLSv1-2   TLSv1.2.
    set email {string} Notifier email address. size[63]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

ssl-min-proto-version {default | SSLv3 | TLSv1 | TLSv1-1 | TLSv1-2}

Set the minimum SSL version that can be used for SSL/TLS-protected FortiSandbox sessions.

The default value is `default` which means to follow the global minimum set by the `ssl-min-proto-version` option of the `config system global` command.

system fsso-polling

Introduction.

```
config system fsso-polling
    set status {enable | disable} Enable/disable FSSO Polling Mode.
    set listening-port {integer} Listening port to accept clients (1 - 65535). range[1-65535]
    set authentication {enable | disable} Enable/disable FSSO Agent Authentication.
    set auth-password {password_string} Password to connect to FSSO Agent. size[128]
end
```

system ftm-push

Introduction.

```
config system ftm-push
    set server-port {integer} Port to communicate with FortiToken Mobile push services server (1 - 65535, default =
```

```
4433). range[1-65535]
    set server-ip {ipv4 address}    IPv4 address of FortiToken Mobile push services server (format: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx).
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the use of FortiToken Mobile push services.
end
```

system geoip-override

Use this command to override geolocation mappings that are not correct in the FortiGate init's database.

```
config system geoip-override
    edit {name}
        # Configure geographical location mapping for IP address(es) to override mappings from FortiGuard.
        set name {string}    Location name. size[63]
        set description {string}    Description. size[127]
        set country-id {string}    Two character Country ID code. size[2]
        config ip-range
            edit {id}
                # Table of IP ranges assigned to country.
                set id {integer}    ID number for individual entry in the IP-Range table. range[0-65535]
                set start-ip {ipv4 address}    Starting IP address, inclusive, of the address range (format:
xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx).
                set end-ip {ipv4 address}    Final IP address, inclusive, of the address range (format: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx).
            next
        next
    end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

country-id <country_code>

Enter the two-character country ID code.

description <description>

Enter a description for this geolocation override.

The maximum length is 127 characters.

name <name>

Enter a name for this geolocation override.

The limit is 63 characters.

config ip-range

Configure the table of IP ranges assigned to the country.

end-ip <IPv4_address>

Enter the last IP address of the range.

id <id>

Enter an integer ID for this range entry.

Possible values: 0 to 65535.

start-ip <IPv4_address>

Enter the first IP address of the range.

system global

Use this command to configure global settings that affect FortiGate systems and configurations.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.3.

Command	Description
<code>set dnsproxy-worker-count <CPUs></code>	Set the number of CPUs that the DNS proxy process runs on. This command applies only to FortiGate devices with multiple CPUs.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<code>set proxy-auth-timeout <minutes></code>	Unit of measurement has changed from seconds to minutes (with a new default of 10) in order to avoid repeat user authentication and ldap queries.
<code>set ssl-min-proto-version {SSLv3 TLSv1 TLSv1-1 TLSv1-2}</code>	Set the global minimum SSL version that can be used by all SSL implementations on this FortiGate. You can override this minimum version for individual configurations. The default value is TLSv1-2.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
N/A	Security Profiles can now be configured globally across multiple VDOMs. See the <code>vdom-admin {enable disable}</code> entry below for more information.
<code>set fortiguard-audit-result-submission {enable disable}</code>	Option has been removed and replaced with <code>security-rating-result-submission</code> (see table entry below).
<code>set security-rating-result-submission {enable disable}</code> <code>set security-rating-run-on-schedule {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable Security Rating results to be sent to FortiGuard, and enable (by default) or disable scheduled runs of Security Rating. When schedule is enabled, Security Rating is run every four hours, or every one hour if a config change occurs.

Command	Description
<code>set multi-factor-authentication {optional mandatory}</code>	Support for a global option to enforce all login methods to require an additional authentication factor, in order to comply with PCI 3.2.
<code>set wad-worker-count</code>	Corrected the help text description.
<code>set wad-source-affinity {enable disable}</code>	Modifies the wad-worker balancing algorithm to also use the source port in addition to source IP when distributing the client to a specific WAD daemon. With this in place, even the connections from one IP address will be balanced over all the WAD processes.
<code>set proxy-worker-count</code> <code>set scanunit-count</code> <code>set sslvpn-max-worker-count</code> <code>set wad-worker-count</code> <code>set wad-csvc-dv-count</code>	Attributes updated to allow 0 as the minimum value.
<code>set virtual-server-count <integer></code>	Removed for FortiOS 6.0.
<code>set virtual-server-hardware-acceleration {disable enable}</code>	Removed for FortiOS 6.0.
<code>set proxy-re-authentication-mode {session traffic absolute}</code>	Determine whether users must re-authenticate after a session is closed, traffic has been idle, or from the point at which the user was first created.
<code>set proxy-auth-lifetime {enable disable}</code> <code>set proxy-auth-lifetime-timeout <minutes></code>	<p>Enable or disable (by default) authenticated users lifetime control. This is a cap on the total time a proxy user can be authenticated for after which re-authentication will take place. Once enabled, set the lifetime timeout in minutes. Set the range between 5-65535. The default is set to 480 (or 8 hours).</p> <p>The timeout option is only available when <code>proxy-auth-lifetime</code> is set to <code>enable</code>. Once enabled, set the timeout in minutes for authenticated users.</p>

Command	Description
<code>set admin-restrict-local {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable (by default) local administrator restriction options. Whenever any remote servers (TACACS, LDAP, or RADIUS) are up and running, any local admin authentication will be blocked. Local admins will be allowed access only if there are no remote servers detected.
<code>set disk-usage {log wanopt}</code>	This option has been removed, but a similar option can be set under system storage .

```

config system global
    set language {option}    GUI display language.
        english    English.
        french     French.
        spanish    Spanish.
        portuguese Portuguese.
        japanese   Japanese.
        trach      Traditional Chinese.
        simch      Simplified Chinese.
        korean     Korean.

    set gui-ipv6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv6 settings on the GUI.
    set gui-certificates {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the System > Certificate GUI page, allowing you to add and
configure certificates from the GUI.
    set gui-custom-language {enable | disable}    Enable/disable custom languages in GUI.
    set gui-wireless-opensercurity {enable | disable}    Enable/disable wireless open security option on the GUI.
    set gui-display-hostname {enable | disable}    Enable/disable displaying the FortiGate's hostname on the GUI login
page.
    set gui-lines-per-page {integer}    Number of lines to display per page for web administration. range[20-1000]
    set admin-https-ssl-versions {tls1-0 | tls1-1 | tls1-2}    Allowed TLS versions for web administration.
        tls1-0    TLS 1.0.
        tls1-1    TLS 1.1.
        tls1-2    TLS 1.2.

    set admintimeout {integer}    Number of minutes before an idle administrator session times out (5 - 480 minutes (8
hours), default = 5). A shorter idle timeout is more secure. range[1-480]
    set admin-console-timeout {integer}    Console login timeout that overrides the admintimeout value. (15 - 300
seconds) (15 seconds to 5 minutes). 0 the default, disables this timeout. range[15-300]
    set ssd-trim-freq {option}    How often to run SSD Trim (default = weekly). SSD Trim prevents SSD drive data loss by
finding and isolating errors.

```

```
never      Never Run SSD Trim.
hourly     Run SSD Trim Hourly.
daily      Run SSD Trim Daily.
weekly     Run SSD Trim Weekly.
monthly    Run SSD Trim Monthly.
set ssd-trim-hour {integer}    Hour of the day on which to run SSD Trim (0 - 23, default = 1). range[0-23]
set ssd-trim-min {integer}     Minute of the hour on which to run SSD Trim (0 - 59, 60 for random). range[0-60]
set ssd-trim-weekday {option}  Day of week to run SSD Trim.
    sunday      Sunday
    monday      Monday
    tuesday      Tuesday
    wednesday    Wednesday
    thursday     Thursday
    friday       Friday
    saturday     Saturday
set ssd-trim-date {integer}    Date within a month to run ssd trim. range[1-31]
set admin-concurrent {enable | disable}  Enable/disable concurrent administrator logins. (Use policy-auth-con-
current for firewall authenticated users.)
set admin-lockout-threshold {integer}    Number of failed login attempts before an administrator account is locked
out for the admin-lockout-duration. range[1-10]
set admin-lockout-duration {integer}    Amount of time in seconds that an administrator account is locked out after
reaching the admin-lockout-threshold for repeated failed login attempts. range[1-2147483647]
set refresh {integer}    Statistics refresh interval in GUI. range[0-4294967295]
set interval {integer}    Dead gateway detection interval. range[0-4294967295]
set failtime {integer}    Fail-time for server lost. range[0-4294967295]
set daily-restart {enable | disable}    Enable/disable daily restart of FortiGate unit. Use the restart-time option
to set the time of day for the restart.
set restart-time {string}    Daily restart time (hh:mm).
set radius-port {integer}    RADIUS service port number. range[1-65535]
set admin-login-max {integer}    Maximum number of administrators who can be logged in at the same time (1 - 100,
default = 100) range[1-100]
set remoteauthtimeout {integer}    Number of seconds that the FortiGate waits for responses from remote RADIUS, LDAP,
or TACACS+ authentication servers. (0-300 sec, default = 5, 0 means no timeout). range[1-300]
set ldapconntimeout {integer}    Global timeout for connections with remote LDAP servers in milliseconds (1 - 300000,
default 500). range[1-300000]
set batch-cmdb {enable | disable}    Enable/disable batch mode, allowing you to enter a series of CLI commands that
will execute as a group once they are loaded.
set max-dlpstat-memory {integer}    Maximum DLP stat memory (0 - 4294967295).
set multi-factor-authentication {optional | mandatory}    Enforce all login methods to require an additional authen-
tication factor (default = optional).
```

```
optional    Do not enforce all login methods to require an additional authentication factor (controlled by
user settings).
mandatory   Enforce all login methods to require an additional authentication factor.
set ssl-min-protocol-version {SSLv3 | TLSv1 | TLSv1-1 | TLSv1-2}  Minimum supported protocol version for SSL/TLS con-
nections (default = TLSv1.2).
    SSLv3      SSLv3.
    TLSv1      TLSv1.
    TLSv1-1    TLSv1.1.
    TLSv1-2    TLSv1.2.
set dst {enable | disable}    Enable/disable daylight saving time.
set timezone {option}    Number corresponding to your time zone from 00 to 86. Enter set timezone ? to view the list
of time zones and the numbers that represent them.
    01 (GMT-11:00) Midway Island, Samoa
    02 (GMT-10:00) Hawaii
    03 (GMT-9:00) Alaska
    04 (GMT-8:00) Pacific Time (US & Canada)
    05 (GMT-7:00) Arizona
    81 (GMT-7:00) Baja California Sur, Chihuahua
    06 (GMT-7:00) Mountain Time (US & Canada)
    07 (GMT-6:00) Central America
    08 (GMT-6:00) Central Time (US & Canada)
    09 (GMT-6:00) Mexico City
    10 (GMT-6:00) Saskatchewan
    11 (GMT-5:00) Bogota, Lima, Quito
    12 (GMT-5:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)
    13 (GMT-5:00) Indiana (East)
    74 (GMT-4:00) Caracas
    14 (GMT-4:00) Atlantic Time (Canada)
    77 (GMT-4:00) Georgetown
    15 (GMT-4:00) La Paz
    87 (GMT-4:00) Paraguay
    16 (GMT-3:00) Santiago
    17 (GMT-3:30) Newfoundland
    18 (GMT-3:00) Brasilia
    19 (GMT-3:00) Buenos Aires
    20 (GMT-3:00) Nuuk (Greenland)
    75 (GMT-3:00) Uruguay
    21 (GMT-2:00) Mid-Atlantic
    22 (GMT-1:00) Azores
    23 (GMT-1:00) Cape Verde Is.
```

```
24 (GMT) Monrovia
80 (GMT) Greenwich Mean Time
79 (GMT) Casablanca
25 (GMT) Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London
26 (GMT+1:00) Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
27 (GMT+1:00) Belgrade, Bratislava, Budapest, Ljubljana, Prague
28 (GMT+1:00) Brussels, Copenhagen, Madrid, Paris
78 (GMT+1:00) Namibia
29 (GMT+1:00) Sarajevo, Skopje, Warsaw, Zagreb
30 (GMT+1:00) West Central Africa
31 (GMT+2:00) Athens, Sofia, Vilnius
32 (GMT+2:00) Bucharest
33 (GMT+2:00) Cairo
34 (GMT+2:00) Harare, Pretoria
35 (GMT+2:00) Helsinki, Riga, Tallinn
36 (GMT+2:00) Jerusalem
37 (GMT+3:00) Baghdad
38 (GMT+3:00) Kuwait, Riyadh
83 (GMT+3:00) Moscow
84 (GMT+3:00) Minsk
40 (GMT+3:00) Nairobi
85 (GMT+3:00) Istanbul
41 (GMT+3:30) Tehran
42 (GMT+4:00) Abu Dhabi, Muscat
43 (GMT+4:00) Baku
39 (GMT+3:00) St. Petersburg, Volgograd
44 (GMT+4:30) Kabul
46 (GMT+5:00) Islamabad, Karachi, Tashkent
47 (GMT+5:30) Kolkata, Chennai, Mumbai, New Delhi
51 (GMT+5:30) Sri Jayawardenepara
48 (GMT+5:45) Kathmandu
45 (GMT+5:00) Ekaterinburg
49 (GMT+6:00) Almaty, Novosibirsk
50 (GMT+6:00) Astana, Dhaka
52 (GMT+6:30) Rangoon
53 (GMT+7:00) Bangkok, Hanoi, Jakarta
54 (GMT+7:00) Krasnoyarsk
55 (GMT+8:00) Beijing, ChongQing, HongKong, Urumqi, Irkutsk
56 (GMT+8:00) Ulaan Bataar
57 (GMT+8:00) Kuala Lumpur, Singapore
```

```
58 (GMT+8:00) Perth
59 (GMT+8:00) Taipei
60 (GMT+9:00) Osaka, Sapporo, Tokyo, Seoul
62 (GMT+9:30) Adelaide
63 (GMT+9:30) Darwin
61 (GMT+9:00) Yakutsk
64 (GMT+10:00) Brisbane
65 (GMT+10:00) Canberra, Melbourne, Sydney
66 (GMT+10:00) Guam, Port Moresby
67 (GMT+10:00) Hobart
68 (GMT+10:00) Vladivostok
69 (GMT+10:00) Magadan
70 (GMT+11:00) Solomon Is., New Caledonia
71 (GMT+12:00) Auckland, Wellington
72 (GMT+12:00) Fiji, Kamchatka, Marshall Is.
00 (GMT+12:00) Eniwetok, Kwajalein
82 (GMT+12:45) Chatham Islands
73 (GMT+13:00) Nuku'alofa
86 (GMT+13:00) Samoa
76 (GMT+14:00) Kiritimati

set traffic-priority {tos | dscp} Choose Type of Service (ToS) or Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) for
traffic prioritization in traffic shaping.
    tos IP TOS.
    dscp DSCP (DiffServ) DS.

set traffic-priority-level {low | medium | high} Default system-wide level of priority for traffic prioritization.
    low Low priority.
    medium Medium priority.
    high High priority.

set anti-replay {disable | loose | strict} Level of checking for packet replay and TCP sequence checking.
    disable Disable anti-replay check.
    loose Loose anti-replay check.
    strict Strict anti-replay check.

set send-pmtu-icmp {enable | disable} Enable/disable sending of path maximum transmission unit (PMTU) - ICMP des-
tination unreachable packet and to support PMTUD protocol on your network to reduce fragmentation of packets.

set honor-df {enable | disable} Enable/disable honoring of Don't-Fragment (DF) flag.

set revision-image-auto-backup {enable | disable} Enable/disable back-up of the latest configuration revision
after the firmware is upgraded.

set revision-backup-on-logout {enable | disable} Enable/disable back-up of the latest configuration revision when
an administrator logs out of the CLI or GUI.

set management-vdom {string} Management virtual domain name. size[31] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
```

```
set hostname {string} FortiGate unit's hostname. Most models will truncate names longer than 24 characters. Some models support hostnames up to 35 characters. size[35]
set alias {string} Alias for your FortiGate unit. size[35]
set strong-crypto {enable | disable} Enable to use strong encryption and only allow strong ciphers (AES) and digest (SHA1) for HTTPS/SSH/TLS/SSL functions.
set ssh-cbc-cipher {enable | disable} Enable/disable CBC cipher for SSH access.
set ssh-hmac-md5 {enable | disable} Enable/disable HMAC-MD5 for SSH access.
set ssh-kex-sha1 {enable | disable} Enable/disable SHA1 key exchange for SSH access.
set ssl-static-key-ciphers {enable | disable} Enable/disable static key ciphers in SSL/TLS connections (e.g. AES128-SHA, AES256-SHA, AES128-SHA256, AES256-SHA256).
set snat-route-change {enable | disable} Enable/disable the ability to change the static NAT route.
set cli-audit-log {enable | disable} Enable/disable CLI audit log.
set dh-params {option} Number of bits to use in the Diffie-Hellman exchange for HTTPS/SSH protocols.
    1024 1024 bits.
    1536 1536 bits.
    2048 2048 bits.
    3072 3072 bits.
    4096 4096 bits.
    6144 6144 bits.
    8192 8192 bits.
set fds-statistics {enable | disable} Enable/disable sending IPS, Application Control, and AntiVirus data to FortiGuard. This data is used to improve FortiGuard services and is not shared with external parties and is protected by Fortinet's privacy policy.
set fds-statistics-period {integer} FortiGuard statistics collection period in minutes. (1 - 1440 min (1 min to 24 hours), default = 60). range[1-1440]
set multicast-forward {enable | disable} Enable/disable multicast forwarding.
set mc-ttl-notchange {enable | disable} Enable/disable no modification of multicast TTL.
set asymroute {enable | disable} Enable/disable asymmetric route.
set tcp-option {enable | disable} Enable SACK, timestamp and MSS TCP options.
set lldp-transmission {enable | disable} Enable/disable Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) transmission.
set proxy-auth-timeout {integer} Authentication timeout in minutes for authenticated users (1 - 300 min, default = 10). range[1-300]
set proxy-re-authentication-mode {session | traffic | absolute} Control if users must re-authenticate after a session is closed, traffic has been idle, or from the point at which the user was first created.
    session Proxy re-authentication timeout begins at the closure of the session.
    traffic Proxy re-authentication timeout begins after traffic has not been received.
    absolute Proxy re-authentication timeout begins when the user was first created.
set proxy-auth-lifetime {enable | disable} Enable/disable authenticated users lifetime control. This is a cap on the total time a proxy user can be authenticated for after which re-authentication will take place.
set proxy-auth-lifetime-timeout {integer} Lifetime timeout in minutes for authenticated users (5 - 65535 min,
```

```
default=480 (8 hours)). range[5-65535]
    set sys-perf-log-interval {integer}    Time in minutes between updates of performance statistics logging. (1 - 15
min, default = 5, 0 = disabled). range[0-15]
    set check-protocol-header {loose | strict}    Level of checking performed on protocol headers. Strict checking is
more thorough but may affect performance. Loose checking is ok in most cases.
        loose    Check protocol header loosely.
        strict   Check protocol header strictly.
    set vip-arp-range {unlimited | restricted}    Controls the number of ARPs that the FortiGate sends for a Virtual IP
(VIP) address range.
        unlimited    Send ARPs for all addresses in VIP range.
        restricted   Send ARPs for the first 8192 addresses in VIP range.
    set reset-sessionless-tcp {enable | disable}    Action to perform if the FortiGate receives a TCP packet but cannot
find a corresponding session in its session table. NAT/Route mode only.
    set allow-traffic-redirect {enable | disable}    Disable to allow traffic to be routed back on a different interface.
    set strict-dirty-session-check {enable | disable}    Enable to check the session against the original policy when
revalidating. This can prevent dropping of redirected sessions when web-filtering and authentication are enabled
together. If this option is enabled, the FortiGate unit deletes a session if a routing or policy change causes the ses-
sion to no longer match the policy that originally allowed the session.
    set tcp-halfclose-timer {integer}    Number of seconds the FortiGate unit should wait to close a session after one
peer has sent a FIN packet but the other has not responded (1 - 86400 sec (1 day), default = 120). range[1-86400]
    set tcp-halfopen-timer {integer}    Number of seconds the FortiGate unit should wait to close a session after one
peer has sent an open session packet but the other has not responded (1 - 86400 sec (1 day), default = 10). range[1-
86400]
    set tcp-timewait-timer {integer}    Length of the TCP TIME-WAIT state in seconds. range[0-300]
    set udp-idle-timer {integer}    UDP connection session timeout. This command can be useful in managing CPU and memory
resources (1 - 86400 seconds (1 day), default = 60). range[1-86400]
    set block-session-timer {integer}    Duration in seconds for blocked sessions (1 - 300 sec (5 minutes), default =
30). range[1-300]
    set ip-src-port-range {string}    IP source port range used for traffic originating from the FortiGate unit.
    set pre-login-banner {enable | disable}    Enable/disable displaying the administrator access disclaimer message on
the login page before an administrator logs in.
    set post-login-banner {disable | enable}    Enable/disable displaying the administrator access disclaimer message
after an administrator successfully logs in.
    set tftp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable TFTP.
    set av-failopen {pass | off | one-shot}    Set the action to take if the FortiGate is running low on memory or the
proxy connection limit has been reached.
        pass      Bypass the antivirus system when memory is low. Antivirus scanning resumes when the low memory con-
dition is resolved.
        off       Stop accepting new AV sessions when entering conserve mode, but continue to process current active
sessions.
```

```
one-shot Bypass the antivirus system when memory is low.
set av-failopen-session {enable | disable} When enabled and a proxy for a protocol runs out of room in its session
table, that protocol goes into failopen mode and enacts the action specified by av-failopen.
set memory-use-threshold-extreme {integer} Threshold at which memory usage is considered extreme (new sessions are
dropped) (% of total RAM, default = 95). range[70-97]
set memory-use-threshold-red {integer} Threshold at which memory usage forces the FortiGate to enter conserve mode
(% of total RAM, default = 88). range[70-97]
set memory-use-threshold-green {integer} Threshold at which memory usage forces the FortiGate to exit conserve
mode (% of total RAM, default = 82). range[70-97]
set cpu-use-threshold {integer} Threshold at which CPU usage is reported. (% of total CPU, default = 90). range
[50-99]
set check-reset-range {strict | disable} Configure ICMP error message verification. You can either apply strict
RST range checking or disable it.
    strict Check RST range strictly.
    disable Disable RST range check.
set vdom-admin {enable | disable} Enable/disable support for multiple virtual domains (VDOMs).
set long-vdom-name {enable | disable} Enable/disable long VDOM name support.
set admin-port {integer} Administrative access port for HTTP. (1 - 65535, default = 80). range[1-65535]
set admin-sport {integer} Administrative access port for HTTPS. (1 - 65535, default = 443). range[1-65535]
set admin-https-redirect {enable | disable} Enable/disable redirection of HTTP administration access to HTTPS.
set admin-hsts-max-age {integer} HTTPS Strict-Transport-Security header max-age in seconds. A value of 0 will
reset any HSTS records in the browser. When admin-https-redirect is disabled the header max-age will be 0. range[0-
2147483647]
set admin-ssh-password {enable | disable} Enable/disable password authentication for SSH admin access.
set admin-restrict-local {enable | disable} Enable/disable local admin authentication restriction when remote
authenticator is up and running. (default = disable)
set admin-ssh-port {integer} Administrative access port for SSH. (1 - 65535, default = 22). range[1-65535]
set admin-ssh-grace-time {integer} Maximum time in seconds permitted between making an SSH connection to the
FortiGate unit and authenticating (10 - 3600 sec (1 hour), default 120). range[10-3600]
set admin-ssh-v1 {enable | disable} Enable/disable SSH v1 compatibility.
set admin-telnet-port {integer} Administrative access port for TELNET. (1 - 65535, default = 23). range[1-65535]
set admin-maintainer {enable | disable} Enable/disable maintainer administrator login. When enabled, the main-
tainer account can be used to log in from the console after a hard reboot. The password is "bcpb" followed by the
FortiGate unit serial number. You have limited time to complete this login.
set admin-server-cert {string} Server certificate that the FortiGate uses for HTTPS administrative connections.
size[35] - datasource(s): certificate.local.name
set user-server-cert {string} Certificate to use for https user authentication. size[35] - datasource(s): cer-
tificate.local.name
set admin-https-pki-required {enable | disable} Enable/disable admin login method. Enable to force administrators
to provide a valid certificate to log in if PKI is enabled. Disable to allow administrators to log in with a certificate
```


or password.

```
set wifi-certificate {string}    Certificate to use for WiFi authentication. size[35] - datasource(s): certificate.local.name
set wifi-ca-certificate {string}  CA certificate that verifies the WiFi certificate. size[35] - datasource(s): certificate.ca.name
set auth-http-port {integer}      User authentication HTTP port. (1 - 65535, default = 80). range[1-65535]
set auth-https-port {integer}     User authentication HTTPS port. (1 - 65535, default = 443). range[1-65535]
set auth-keepalive {enable | disable}  Enable to prevent user authentication sessions from timing out when idle.
set policy-auth-concurrent {integer}  Number of concurrent firewall use logins from the same user (1 - 100, default = 0 means no limit). range[0-100]
set auth-session-limit {block-new | logout-inactive}  Action to take when the number of allowed user authenticated sessions is reached.
    block-new                    Block new user authentication attempts.
    logout-inactive              Logout the most inactive user authenticated sessions.
set auth-cert {string}           Server certificate that the FortiGate uses for HTTPS firewall authentication connections. size[35] - datasource(s): certificate.local.name
set clt-cert-req {enable | disable}  Enable/disable requiring administrators to have a client certificate to log into the GUI using HTTPS.
set fortiservice-port {integer}    FortiService port (1 - 65535, default = 8013). Used by FortiClient endpoint compliance. Older versions of FortiClient used a different port. range[1-65535]
set endpoint-control-portal-port {integer}  Endpoint control portal port (1 - 65535). range[1-65535]
set endpoint-control-fds-access {enable | disable}  Enable/disable access to the FortiGuard network for non-compliant endpoints.
set tp-mc-skip-policy {enable | disable}  Enable/disable skip policy check and allow multicast through.
set cfg-save {automatic | manual | revert}  Configuration file save mode for CLI changes.
    automatic                    Automatically save config.
    manual                       Manually save config.
    revert                       Manually save config and revert the config when timeout.
set cfg-revert-timeout {integer}  Time-out for reverting to the last saved configuration. range[10-4294967295]
set reboot-upon-config-restore {enable | disable}  Enable/disable reboot of system upon restoring configuration.
set admin-scp {enable | disable}  Enable/disable using SCP to download the system configuration. You can use SCP as an alternative method for backing up the configuration.
set security-rating-result-submission {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the submission of Security Rating results to FortiGuard.
set security-rating-run-on-schedule {enable | disable}  Enable/disable scheduled runs of Security Rating.
set wireless-controller {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the wireless controller feature to use the FortiGate unit to manage FortiAPs.
set wireless-controller-port {integer}  Port used for the control channel in wireless controller mode (wireless-mode is ac). The data channel port is the control channel port number plus one (1024 - 49150, default = 5246). range [1024-49150]
```

```
set fortiextender-data-port {integer} FortiExtender data port (1024 - 49150, default = 25246). range[1024-49150]
set fortiextender {enable | disable} Enable/disable FortiExtender.
set fortiextender-vlan-mode {enable | disable} Enable/disable FortiExtender VLAN mode.
set switch-controller {disable | enable} Enable/disable switch controller feature. Switch controller allows you to
manage FortiSwitch from the FortiGate itself.
set switch-controller-reserved-network {ipv4 classnet} Enable reserved network subnet for controlled switches.
This is available when the switch controller is enabled.
set dnsproxy-worker-count {integer} DNS proxy worker count. range[1-x]
set proxy-worker-count {integer} Proxy worker count.
set scanunit-count {integer} Number of scanunits. The range and the default depend on the number of CPUs. Only
available on FortiGate units with multiple CPUs.
set proxy-kxp-hardware-acceleration {disable | enable} Enable/disable using the content processor to accelerate
KXP traffic.
set proxy-cipher-hardware-acceleration {disable | enable} Enable/disable using content processor (CP8 or CP9) hard-
ware acceleration to encrypt and decrypt IPsec and SSL traffic.
set fgd-alert-subscription {option} Type of alert to retrieve from FortiGuard.
    advisory Retrieve FortiGuard advisories, report and news alerts.
    latest-threat Retrieve latest FortiGuard threats alerts.
    latest-virus Retrieve latest FortiGuard virus alerts.
    latest-attack Retrieve latest FortiGuard attack alerts.
    new-antivirus-db Retrieve FortiGuard AV database release alerts.
    new-attack-db Retrieve FortiGuard IPS database release alerts.
set ipsec-hmac-offload {enable | disable} Enable/disable offloading (hardware acceleration) of HMAC processing for
IPsec VPN.
set ipv6-accept-dad {integer} Enable/disable acceptance of IPv6 Duplicate Address Detection (DAD). range[0-2]
set ipv6-allow-anycast-probe {enable | disable} Enable/disable IPv6 address probe through Anycast.
set csr-ca-attribute {enable | disable} Enable/disable the CA attribute in certificates. Some CA servers reject
CSRs that have the CA attribute.
set wimax-4g-usb {enable | disable} Enable/disable comparability with WiMAX 4G USB devices.
set cert-chain-max {integer} Maximum number of certificates that can be traversed in a certificate chain. range[1-
2147483647]
set sslvpn-max-worker-count {integer} Maximum number of SSL VPN processes. Upper limit for this value is the num-
ber of CPUs and depends on the model.
set sslvpn-kxp-hardware-acceleration {enable | disable} Enable/disable SSL VPN KXP hardware acceleration.
set sslvpn-cipher-hardware-acceleration {enable | disable} Enable/disable SSL VPN hardware acceleration.
set sslvpn-plugin-version-check {enable | disable} Enable/disable checking browser's plugin version by SSL VPN.
set two-factor-ftk-expiry {integer} FortiToken authentication session timeout (60 - 600 sec (10 minutes), default
= 60). range[60-600]
set two-factor-email-expiry {integer} Email-based two-factor authentication session timeout (30 - 300 seconds (5
minutes), default = 60). range[30-300]
```

```

    set two-factor-sms-expiry {integer}    SMS-based two-factor authentication session timeout (30 - 300 sec, default =
60). range[30-300]
    set two-factor-fac-expiry {integer}    FortiAuthenticator token authentication session timeout (10 - 3600 seconds (1
hour), default = 60). range[10-3600]
    set two-factor-ftm-expiry {integer}    FortiToken Mobile session timeout (1 - 168 hours (7 days), default = 72).
range[1-168]
    set per-user-bwl {enable | disable}    Enable/disable per-user black/white list filter.
    set virtual-server-count {integer}    Maximum number of virtual server processes to create. The maximum is the number
of CPU cores. This is not available on single-core CPUs.
    set virtual-server-hardware-acceleration {disable | enable}    Enable/disable virtual server hardware acceleration.
    set wad-worker-count {integer}    Number of explicit proxy WAN optimization daemon (WAD) processes. By default WAN
optimization, explicit proxy, and web caching is handled by all of the CPU cores in a FortiGate unit.
    set wad-csvc-cs-count {integer}    Number of concurrent WAD-cache-service object-cache processes. range[1-1]
    set wad-csvc-db-count {integer}    Number of concurrent WAD-cache-service byte-cache processes.
    set wad-source-affinity {disable | enable}    Enable/disable dispatching traffic to WAD workers based on source affin-
ity.
    set login-timestamp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable login time recording.
    set miglogd-children {integer}    Number of logging (miglogd) processes to be allowed to run. Higher number can
reduce performance; lower number can slow log processing time. No logs will be dropped or lost if the number is changed.
range[0-15]
    set special-file-23-support {disable | enable}    Enable/disable IPS detection of HIBUN format files when using Data
Leak Protection.
    set log-uuid {disable | policy-only | extended}    Whether UUIDs are added to traffic logs. You can disable UUIDs,
add firewall policy UUIDs to traffic logs, or add all UUIDs to traffic logs.
        disable    Disable UUID in traffic log
        policy-only    Enable only policy UUID in traffic log.
        extended    Enable all UUIDs in traffic log.
    set log-ssl-connection {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging of SSL connection events.
    set arp-max-entry {integer}    Maximum number of dynamically learned MAC addresses that can be added to the ARP table
(131072 - 2147483647, default = 131072). range[131072-2147483647]
    set av-affinity {string}    Affinity setting for AV scanning (hexadecimal value up to 256 bits in the format of
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx). size[79]
    set wad-affinity {string}    Affinity setting for wad (hexadecimal value up to 256 bits in the format of
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx). size[79]
    set ips-affinity {string}    Affinity setting for IPS (hexadecimal value up to 256 bits in the format of
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx; allowed CPUs must be less than total number of IPS engine daemons). size[79]
    set miglog-affinity {string}    Affinity setting for logging (64-bit hexadecimal value in the format of
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx). size[19]
    set ndp-max-entry {integer}    Maximum number of NDP table entries (set to 65,536 or higher; if set to 0, kernel
holds 65,536 entries). range[65536-2147483647]

```

```

set br-fdb-max-entry {integer}    Maximum number of bridge forwarding database (FDB) entries. range[8192-2147483647]
set max-route-cache-size {integer}  Maximum number of IP route cache entries (0 - 2147483647). range[0-2147483647]
set ipsec-asic-offload {enable | disable}  Enable/disable ASIC offloading (hardware acceleration) for IPsec VPN
traffic. Hardware acceleration can offload IPsec VPN sessions and accelerate encryption and decryption.
set ipsec-soft-dec-async {enable | disable}  Enable/disable software decryption asynchronization (using multiple
CPUs to do decryption) for IPsec VPN traffic.
set device-idle-timeout {integer}  Time in seconds that a device must be idle to automatically log the device user
out. (30 - 31536000 sec (30 sec to 1 year), default = 300). range[30-31536000]
set device-identification-active-scan-delay {integer}  Number of seconds to passively scan a device before per-
forming an active scan. (20 - 3600 sec, (20 sec to 1 hour), default = 90). range[20-3600]
set compliance-check {enable | disable}  Enable/disable global PCI DSS compliance check.
set compliance-check-time {time}  Time of day to run scheduled PCI DSS compliance checks.
set gui-device-latitude {string}  Add the latitude of the location of this FortiGate to position it on the Threat
Map. size[19]
set gui-device-longitude {string}  Add the longitude of the location of this FortiGate to position it on the Threat
Map. size[19]
set private-data-encryption {disable | enable}  Enable/disable private data encryption using an AES 128-bit key.
set auto-auth-extension-device {enable | disable}  Enable/disable automatic authorization of dedicated Fortinet
extension devices.
set gui-theme {option}  Color scheme for the administration GUI.
    green      Green theme.
    red        Red theme.
    blue       Light blue theme.
    melongene  Melongene theme (eggplant color).
    mariner    Mariner theme (dark blue color).
set gui-date-format {option}  Default date format used throughout GUI.
    yyyy/MM/dd  Year/Month/Day.
    dd/MM/yyyy  Day/Month/Year.
    MM/dd/yyyy  Month/Day/Year.
    yyyy-MM-dd  Year-Month-Day.
    dd-MM-yyyy  Day-Month-Year.
    MM-dd-yyyy  Month-Day-Year.
set igmp-state-limit {integer}  Maximum number of IGMP memberships (96 - 64000, default = 3200). range[96-128000]
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

admin-concurrent {enable | disable}

Enable/disable to allow concurrent administrator logins. Default is `enable`. Use `policy-auth-concurrent` for firewall authenticated users.

admin-console-timeout <secs_int>

Specify a console login timeout that overrides the `admintimeout` value. Range: 15 - 300 seconds (15 seconds to 5 minutes). Zero value disables the timeout. Default is 0.

admin-https-pki-required {enable | disable}

Specify admin login method for HTTPS login. Default is `disable`.

- `enable`: allows admin user to log in by providing a valid certificate if PKI is enabled for HTTPS administrative access.
- `disable`: allows admin users to log in by providing a valid certificate or password.

admin-https-redirect {enable | disable}

Enable/disable redirection of HTTP administration access to HTTPS. Not available on low-crypto FortiGates. Default is `disable`.

admin-https-ssl-versions {tlsv1-0 | tlsv1-1 | tlsv1-2}

Specify allowed SSL/TLS versions for web administration. Default is `tlsv1-1` `tlsv1-2`.

admin-lockout-duration <time_int>

Set the administration account's lockout duration in seconds for the firewall. Repeated failed login attempts will enable the lockout. Use `admin-lockout-threshold` to set the number of failed attempts that will trigger the lockout. Default is 60.

admin-lockout-threshold <failed_int>

Set the number of failed attempts before the account is locked out for the `admin-lockout-duration`. Default is . Default is 3.

admin-login-max <int>

Set the maximum number administrators who can be logged in at same time. Range: 1 - 100. Default is 80.

admin-maintainer {enable | disable}

Enable/disable hidden maintainer user login. Default is `enable`. When enabled, the maintainer account can be used to log in from the console after a hard reboot. The password is "bcpb" followed by the FortiGate unit serial number. You have limited time to complete this login.

admin-port <port_number>

Specify the administrative access port for HTTP. Range: 1 - 65535. Default is 80.

admin-scp {enable | disable}

Enable/disable the ability to backup and restore the FortiGate configuration and install firmware upgrades using Secure Copy Protocol (SCP).

To use SCP, on the FortiGate you must enable SCP and enable SSH administrative access on an interface. Then from a management PC running SCP client software, you can enter SCP commands to backup and restore configuration files and upgrade FortiOS firmware. The SCP commands must include



The SCP commands must use a FortiGate administrator account with the `super_admin` access profile. When entering SCP commands from a management PC, use `sys_conf` as the configuration file name.

For more information, see [How to download/upload a FortiGate configuration file using secure file copy \(SCP\)](#).

Examples

On a PC running Linux, use the following command to backup the FortiGate configuration file to `~/config`. This command uses the FortiGate admin administrator account and connects to a FortiGate interface with IP address 172.20.120.171.

```
scp admin@172.20.120.171:fgt-config ~/config
```

Enter the admin password when prompted.

On a PC running Windows, use the following command to backup the FortiGate configuration file to `c:\config`. This command uses the FortiGate admin administrator account and connects to a FortiGate interface with IP address 172.20.120.171.

```
pscp admin@172.20.120.171:fgt-config c:\config
```

Enter the admin password when prompted.

On a PC running linux, use the following command to restore the FortiGate configuration using a file named `backup-nov2018`. This command uses the FortiGate admin administrator account and connects to a FortiGate interface with IP address 172.20.120.171.

```
scp backup-nov2018 admin@172.20.120.171:fgt-restore-config
```

Enter the admin password when prompted.

On a PC running Windows, use the following command to restore the FortiGate configuration using a file named `backup-nov2018.txt`. This command uses the FortiGate admin administrator account and connects to a FortiGate interface with IP address 172.20.120.171.

```
pscp backup-nov2018.txt admin@172.20.120.171:fgt-restore-config
```

Enter the admin password when prompted.

On a PC running linux, use the following command to upgrade the FortiGate firmware using a firmware image file named `fgt-image-v6.0.3.out`. This command uses the FortiGate admin administrator account and connects to a FortiGate interface with IP address 172.20.120.171.

```
scp fgt-image-v6.0.3.out admin@172.20.120.171:fgt-image
```

Enter the admin password when prompted.

On a PC running Windows, use the following command to upgrade the FortiGate firmware using a firmware image file named `fgt-image-v6.0.3.out`. This command uses the FortiGate admin administrator account and connects to a FortiGate interface with IP address 172.20.120.171.

```
pscp fgt-image-v6.0.3.out admin@172.20.120.171:fgt-image
```

Enter the admin password when prompted.

admin-server-cert {self-sign | <certificate>}

Identify the admin HTTPS server certificate to use. Default is `self-sign`.

admin-sport <port_number>

Specify the administrative access port for HTTPS. Range: 1 - 65535. Default is 443.

admin-ssh-grace-time <time_int>

Specify the maximum time in seconds permitted between making an SSH connection to the FortiGate unit and authenticating. Range: 10 - 3600 seconds (10 seconds to one hour). Default is 120.

admin-ssh-password {enable | disable}

Enable/disable password authentication for SSH admin access. Default is `enable`.

admin-ssh-port <port_number>

Specify the administrative access port for SSH. Range: 1 - 65535. Default is 22.

admin-ssh-v1 {enable | disable}

Enable/disable Secure Shell (SSH) version 1 compatibility. Default is `disable`.

admin-telnet-port <port_number>

Specify the administrative access port for TELNET. Range: 1 - 65535. Default is 23.

admintimeout <admin_timeout_minutes>

Specify the number of minutes before an idle administrator times out. The maximum `admintimeout` interval is 480 minutes (8 hours). Default is 5. To improve security keep the idle timeout at the default value.

alias <alias_str>

Identify an alias for your FortiGate unit.

allow-traffic-redirect {enable | disable}

Enable/ disable allow traffic redirect. Default is `enable`. Under some conditions, it is undesirable to have traffic routed back on the same interface. In that case, set `allow-traffic-redirect` to `disable`.

anti-replay {disable | loose | strict}

Specify the level of checking for packet replay and TCP sequence checking (or TCP Sequence number checking). Default is `strict`. FortiGate units use TCP sequence checking to make sure that a packet is part of a TCP session. By default, if a packet is received with sequence numbers that fall out of the expected range, the FortiGate unit drops the packet. This is normally a desired behavior, since it means that the packet is invalid. But in some cases you may want to configure different levels of anti-replay checking if some of your network equipment uses non-RFC methods when sending packets.

- `disable`: no anti-replay protection.
- `loose`: perform packet sequence checking and ICMP anti-replay checking with the following criteria:
 - the SYN, FIN, and RST bit can not appear in the same packet.
 - the FortiGate unit does not allow more than 1 ICMP error packet to go through the FortiGate unit before it receives a normal TCP or UDP packet.
 - If the FortiGate unit receives an RST packet, and `check-reset-range` is set to `strict` the FortiGate unit checks to determine if its sequence number in the RST is within the un-ACKed data and drops the packet if the sequence number is incorrect.
- `strict`: performs all of the loose checking but for each new session also checks to determine if the TCP sequence number in a SYN packet has been calculated correctly and started from the correct value for each new session. Strict anti-replay checking can also help prevent SYN flooding.

If any packet fails a check it is dropped. If `loginvalid-packet` is set to `enable`, a log message is written for each packet that fails a check.

arp-max-entry <int>

Specify the maximum number of dynamically learned MAC addresses that can be added to the ARP table. Range: 131072 - 2147483647. If set to 0, kernel holds 131072 entries. Default is 0.

auth-cert <cert-name>

Identify the HTTPS server certificate for policy authentication. Default is `self-sign`. Self-sign is the built-in certificate but others will be listed as you add them.

auth-http-port <http_port>

Set the HTTP authentication port. Range: 1 - 65535. Default is 1000.

auth-https-port <https_port>

Set the HTTPS authentication port. Range: 1 - 65535. Default is 1003.

auth-keepalive {enable | disable}

Enable to extend the session's authentication time to prevent an idle timeout. Default is `disable`.

auto-auth-extension-device {enable | disable}

Enable/disable automatic authorization of dedicated Fortinet extension device globally. Default is `enable`.

av-failopen {off | one-shot | pass}

Set the action to take if the unit is running low on memory or the proxy connection limit has been reached. Default is `pass`.

- `off`: stop accepting new AV sessions when entering conserve mode, but continue to process current active sessions.
- `one-shot`: bypass the antivirus system when memory is low. You must enter `off` or `pass` to restart antivirus scanning.
- `pass`: bypass the antivirus system when memory is low. Antivirus scanning resumes when the low memory condition is resolved.

av-failopen-session {enable | disable}

When enabled and a protocol's proxy runs out of room in its session table, that protocol goes into failopen mode and enacts the action specified by `av-failopen`. Default is `disable`.

batch-cmdb {enable | disable}

Enable/disable batch mode to execute in CMDB server. Batch mode is used to enter a series of commands that will execute as a group once they are loaded. Default is `enable`.

block-session-timer <int>

Set the time duration in seconds for blocked or denied sessions to remain in the session table. Range: 1 - 300 seconds (1 second to 5 minutes). Default is 30.

For this option to be effective, enable the `sess-denied-traffic` system setting (see [sess-denied-traffic {enable | disable}](#) on page 941 for details). Keeping denied sessions in the session table longer can reduce CPU usage. However, each session in the session table uses system memory. So you may want to adjust this timer for optimum performance.

br-fdb-max-entry <int>

Specify the maximum number of bridge forwarding database (FDB) entries. Used when operating in Transparent mode, the FDB (or MAC) table is used by a Layer 2 device (switch/bridge) to store MAC addresses that have been learned and the ports that each MAC address was learned on. If the FDB has a large number of entries, performance may be impacted. Range: 8192 - 2147483647. If set to 0, kernel holds 8192 entries. Default is 0.

cert-chain-max <int>

Set the maximum number of certificates that can be traversed in a certificate chain. The list of certificates, from the root certificate to the end-user certificate, represents the certificate chain. Default is 8.

cfg-save {automatic | manual | revert}

Specify the configuration file save mode for changes made using the CLI. Default is `automatic`.

- `automatic`: automatically save the configuration after every change.
- `manual`: manually save the configuration using the `execute cfg save` command.
- `revert`: manually save the current configuration and then revert to that saved configuration after `cfg-revert-timeout` expires.

Switching to automatic mode disconnects your session. This command is used as part of the runtime-only configuration mode.

check-protocol-header {loose | strict}

Select the level of checking performed on protocol headers. Default is `loose`.

- `loose`: the FortiGate unit performs basic header checking to verify that a packet is part of a session and should be processed. Basic header checking includes verifying that the layer-4 protocol header length, the IP header length, the IP version, the IP checksum, IP options are correct, etc.
- `strict`: the FortiGate unit does the same checking as above plus it verifies that ESP packets have the correct sequence number, SPI, and data length.
Note: this setting disables hardware acceleration.

If the packet fails header checking it is dropped by the FortiGate unit and logged if `log-invalid-packet` is enabled.

check-reset-range {disable | strict}

Configure ICMP error message verification. Default is `disable`.

- `disable`: the FortiGate unit does not validate ICMP error messages.
- `strict` — If the FortiGate unit receives an ICMP error packet that contains an embedded IP(A,B) | TCP(C,D) header and if FortiOS can locate the A:C->B:D session, it checks to make sure that the sequence number in the TCP header is within the range recorded in the session. If the sequence number is not in range, then the ICMP packet is dropped. If `log-invalid-packet` is enabled, the FortiGate unit logs that the ICMP packet was dropped. Strict checking also affects how the `anti-replay` option checks packets

cli-audit-log {enable | disable}

Enable/disable CLI audit log. Default is `disable`.

clt-cert-req {enable | disable}

Enable/disable requirement for a client certificate before administrator logs in via GUI using HTTPS. Default is `disable`.

compliance-check {enable | disable}

Enable/disable global PCI DSS compliance check. Default is `enable`.

compliance-check-time <HH:MM:SS>

Specify the PCI DSS compliance check time. Default is `00:00:00`.

csr-ca-attribute {enable | disable}

Enable/disable the use of CA attribute in your certificate. Some CA servers reject CSRs that have the CA attribute. Default is `enable`.

daily restart {enable | disable}

Enable/disable daily restart of FortiGate unit. Default is `disable`. The time of the restart is controlled by `restart-time`.

device-identification-active-scan-delay <int>

Indicate how many seconds to passively scan a device before performing an active scan. Range: 20 - 3600 seconds (20 seconds to 1 hour). Default is `90`.

device-idle-timeout <int>

Specify time in seconds that a device must be idle in order to automatically log user out. Range: 30 - 31536000 seconds (30 seconds to 1 year). Default is `300`.

dh-params {1024 | 1536 | 2048 | 3072 | 4096 | 6144 | 8192}

Minimum size, in bits, of the prime number used in Diffie-Hellman key exchange for HTTPS/SSH protocols. Default is `2048`.

disk-usage {log | wanopt}

Specify whether to use hard disk or WAN Optimization for logging. Default is `log`.

dnsproxy-worker-count

Set the number of CPUs that the DNS proxy process runs on. This enables you to improve DNS proxy performance on FortiGate units with multiple CPUs. The range of CPU values is 1 to the number of logical CPUs available on the FortiGate device. The default value is 2.

This command applies to FortiGate units with multiple CPUs.

dst {enable | disable}

Enable/disable daylight saving time. Default is `enable`.

endpoint-control-fds-access {enable | disable}

Enable/disable access to FortiGuard network for non-compliant endpoints. Default is `enable`.

endpoint-control-portal-port

Specify the endpoint control portal port. Range: 1 - 65535. Default is 8009.

proxy-auth-timeout <minutes>

Specify authentication timeout in minutes for idle sessions in explicit web proxy. Default is 10.

fds-statistics {enable | disable}

Enable/disable sending IPS, Application Control, and AntiVirus data to FortiGuard. Default is `enable`.

fds-statistics-period <int>

Indicate the FortiGuard statistics update period in minutes. Range: 1 - 1440 minutes (1 minute to 24 hours). Default is 60.

fgd-alert-subscription {advisory | latest-threat | latest-virus | latest-attack | new-antivirus-db | new-attack-db}

Specify the type of alert to retrieve from FortiGuard.

- `advisory`: retrieves FortiGuard advisories, report, and news alerts.
- `latest-threat`: retrieves latest FortiGuard threat alerts.

- `latest-virus`: retrieves latest FortiGuard virus alerts.
- `latest-attack`: retrieves latest FortiGuard attack alerts.
- `new-antivirus-db`: retrieves latest FortiGuard antivirus database release alerts.
- `new attack-db`: retrieves latest FortiGuard IPS database release alerts.

fortiextender {enable | disable}

Enable/disable FortiExtender controller. Default is `disable`.

fortiextender-data-port <port_int>

Specify Fortiextender controller data port. Range: 1024 - 49150. Default is 25246.

fortiservice-port <port_int>

Specify the FortiService port number. Default is 8013.

gui-certificates {enable | disable}

Enable/disable certificate configuration in GUI. Default is `enable`.

gui-custom-language {enable | disable}

Enable/disable custom languages in GUI. Default is `disable`.

gui-device-latitude <string>

Identify the latitude coordinate of your FortiGate.

gui-device-longitude <string>

Identify the longitude coordinate of your FortiGate.

gui-display-hostname {enable | disable}

Enable/disable display of hostname on GUI login page. Default is `disable`.

gui-ipv6 {enable | disable}

Enable/disable IPv6 settings in GUI. Default is `disable`.

gui-lines-per-page <gui_lines>

Specify number of lines to display per page for web administration. Default is `50`.

gui-theme {green | red | blue | melongene | mariner}

Select color scheme to use for the administration GUI. Default is `green`.

gui-wireless-opensecurity {enable | disable}

Enable/disable wireless open security option in GUI. Default is `disable`.

honor-df {enable | disable}

Enable/disable honoring of Don't-Fragment (DF) flag. The DF flag instructs routers that would normally fragment a packet that is too large for a link's MTU (and potentially deliver it out of order due to that fragmentation) to instead drop the packet and return an ICMP Fragmentation Needed packet, allowing the sending host to account for the lower MTU on the path to the destination host. Default is `enable`.

hostname <unithostname>

Specify FortiGate unit hostname. Default is FortiGate serial number.

A hostname can only include letters, numbers, hyphens, and underlines. No spaces allowed.

While the hostname can be longer than 24 characters, if it is longer than 24 characters it will be truncated by a "~". The trailing 3-characters preceded by the "~" truncation character and the first N-3 characters are shown. This shortened hostname will be displayed in the CLI, and other locations the hostname is used. Some models support hostnames up to 35 characters

ip-src-port-range <start_port>-<end_port>

Specify the IP source port range used for traffic originating from the FortiGate unit. Range: 1 - 65535. Default is 1024 - 25000. You can use this setting to avoid problems with networks that block some ports, such as FDN ports.

ips-affinity <string>

Affinity setting for IPS (64-bit hexadecimal value in the format of xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx; allowed CPUs must be less than total number of IPS engine daemons).

ipsec-asic-offload {enable | disable}

Enable/disable application-specific integrated circuit (ASIC) offload for IPsec VPN. You can use this command to disable using ASIC offloading to accelerate IPsec Diffie-Hellman key exchange for IPsec ESP traffic. By default hardware offloading is used. For debugging purposes or other reasons you may want this function to be processed by software. Default is `enable`.

ipsec-hmac-offload {disable | enable}

Enable/disable offload keyed-hashing for message authentication (HMAC) to hardware for IPsec VPN. Default is `enable`.

ipv6-accept-dad {0 | 1 | 2}

Enable/disable acceptance of IPv6 DAD (Duplicate Address Detection). 0: Disable DAD; 1: Enable DAD (default); 2: Enable DAD, and disable IPv6 operation if MAC-based duplicate link-local address has been found.

language <string>

Identify the GUI display language. `set language ?` lists available languages. `trach` = Traditional Chinese. `simch` = Simplified Chinese. Default is `english`.

ldapconntimeout <integer>

LDAP connection time-out in milliseconds. Range: 0 - 4294967295.

lldp-transmission {enable | disable}

Enable/disable Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) transmission. Default is `disable`.

log-uuid {disable | policy-only | extended}

Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) log option. Default is `policy-only`.

login-timestamp {enable | disable}

Enable/disable login time recording. Default is `disable`.

management-vdom <domain>

Management virtual domain name. Default is `root`.

max-route-cache-size <int>

Specify the maximum number of IP route cache entries. Range: 0 - 2 147483647. Default is 0.

miglog-affinity

Affinity setting for logging (64-bit hexadecimal value in the format of xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx).

miglogd-children <int>

Specify the number of miglogd processes to run. A higher number can affect performance, and a lower number can affect log processing time, although no logs will be dropped or lost if the number is decreased. If you are suffering from performance issues, you can alter the number of logging daemon child processes. Range: 0 - 15. Default is 0.

ndp-max-entry <int>

Specify the maximum number of Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) table entries. Set to 65,536 or higher; if set to 0, kernel holds 65,536 entries. Default is 0.
Specify the maximum number of Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) table entries. Set to 65,536 or higher; if set to 0, kernel holds 65,536 entries. Default is 0.

optimize {antivirus}

DO NOT USE THIS COMMAND. It was originally added to early NP4 platforms but is no longer supported.

phase1-rekey {enable | disable}

Enable/disable rekeying between Internet Key Exchange (IKE) peers before the phase 1 keylife expires. Default is `enable`.

policy-auth-concurrent <limit_int>

Limit the number of concurrent logins from the same user. Range: 1 - 100. Default is 0 and means no limit.

post-login-banner {enable | disable}

Enable/disable to display the admin access disclaimer message after successful login. Default is `disable`.

pre-login-banner {enable | disable}

Enable/disable to display the admin access disclaimer prior to login. Default is `disable`.

private-data-encryption {enable | disable}

Enable/disable private data encryption using an AES 128-bit key. Default is `disable`.

proxy-cipher-hardware-acceleration {enable | disable}

Enable/disable use of content processor to encrypt or decrypt traffic. Default is `enable`.

proxy-kxp-hardware-acceleration {enable | disable}

Enable/disable use of content processor to encrypt or decrypt traffic. Default is `enable`.

proxy-worker-count <count_int>

Specify the number of proxy worker processes. Range: 0 - 8. Default is 4.

radius-port <radius_port>

Specify the port for RADIUS traffic. Default is 1812. If your RADIUS server is using port 1645, you can use the CLI to change the RADIUS port on your FortiGate unit.

reboot-upon-config-restore {enable | disable}

Enable/disable reboot of system when restoring configuration. Default is `enable`.

refresh <refresh_seconds>

Specify the Automatic Refresh Interval, in seconds, for GUI statistics. Range: 0-4294967295. Default is 0, or no automatic refresh.

registration-notification {enable | disable}

Enable/disable displaying the registration notification if the FortiGate is not registered. Default is `enable`.

remoteauthtimeout <timeout_sec>

Specify the number of seconds that the FortiGate unit waits for responses from remote RADIUS, LDAP, or TACACS+ authentication servers. Range: 0-300 seconds, 0 means no timeout. Default is 5. To improve security keep the remote authentication timeout at the default value of 5 seconds. However, if a RADIUS request needs to traverse multiple hops or several RADIUS requests are made, the default timeout of 5 seconds may not be long enough to receive a response.

reset-sessionless-tcp {enable | disable}

The `reset-sessionless-tcp` command determines what action the FortiGate unit performs if it receives a TCP packet but cannot find a corresponding session in its session table. This happens most often because the session has timed out. In most cases you should leave `reset-sessionless-tcp` set to `disable` (the default). When this command is set to `disable`, the FortiGate unit silently drops the packet. The packet originator does not know that the session has expired and might re-transmit the packet several times before attempting to start a new session. Enabling this option may help resolve issues with a problematic server, but it can make the FortiGate unit more vulnerable to denial of service attacks. If you enable `reset-sessionless-tcp`, the FortiGate unit sends a RESET packet to the packet originator. The packet originator ends the current session, but it can try to establish a new session. Available in NAT mode only. Default is `disable`.

revision-backup-on-logout {enable | disable}

Enable/disable back-up of the latest configuration revision when the administrator logs out of the CLI or GUI. Default is `disable`.

revision-image-auto-backup {enable | disable}

Enable/disable back-up of the latest configuration revision when firmware is upgraded. Default is `disable`.

scanunit-count <count_int>

Tune the number of scanunits. The range and the default depend on the number of CPUs. Only available on FortiGate units with multiple CPUs. Recommended for advanced users.

send-pmtu-icmp {enable | disable}

Enable to send a path maximum transmission unit (PMTU) - ICMP destination unreachable packet and to support PMTUD protocol on your network to reduce fragmentation of packets. Disabling this command will result in PMTUD packets being blocked. Default is `enable`.

snat-route-change {enable | disable}

Enable/disable static NAT route change. Default is `disable`.

special-file-23-support {enable | disable}

Enable/disable IPS detection of HIBUN format files when using Data Leak Protection. Default is `disable`.

ssl-min-protocol-version {SSLv3 | TLSv1 | TLSv1-1 | TLSv1-2}

Set the global minimum SSL version that can be used by all SSL implementations on this FortiGate. You can override this minimum version for individual configurations. The default value is `TLSv1-2`.

sslvpn-cipher-hardware-acceleration {enable | disable}

Enable/disable SSL VPN hardware acceleration.

sslvpn-kxp-hardware-acceleration {enable | disable}

Enable/disable SSL VPN KXP hardware acceleration.

sslvpn-max-worker-count <count_int>

Specify the maximum number of SSL VPN processes. The upper limit for setting this value is the number of CPUs and depends on the model.

sslvpn-plugin-version-check {enable | disable}

Enable/disable checking browser's plugin version. Default is `enable`.

strict-dirty-session-check {enable | disable}

Enable to check the session against the original policy when revalidating. This can prevent dropping of redirected sessions when web-filtering and authentication are enabled together. If this option is enabled, the FortiGate unit deletes a session if a routing or policy change causes the session to no longer match the policy that originally allowed the session. Default is `enable`.

strong-crypto {enable | disable}

Enable to use strong encryption and only allow strong ciphers (AES) and digest (SHA1) for HTTPS/SSH admin access. When strong encryption is enabled, HTTPS is supported by the following web browsers: Netscape 7.2, Netscape 8.0, Firefox, and Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 (beta). In addition, some low-crypto options are not available. Note that Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.0 and 6.0 are not supported in strong encryption. Default is `enable`.

switch-controller {enable | disable}

Enable/disable switch controller feature. Switch controller allows you to manage FortiSwitch from the FortiGate itself. Default is `disable`.

switch-controller-reserved-network <ipv4mask>

Enable reserved network subnet for controlled switches. This is available when the switch controller is enabled. Default: 169.254.0.0 255.255.0.0

syncinterval <ntpsync_minutes>

Specify how often, in minutes, the FortiGate unit should synchronize its time with the Network Time Protocol (NTP) server. Range: 1 - 1440 minutes (1 day). Setting to 0 disables time synchronization. Default is 0.

sys-perf-log-interval <int>

Set the time in minutes between updates of performance statistics logging. Range: 1 - 15 minutes. 0 disables performance logging. Default is 5.

tcp-halfclose-timer <seconds>

Enter how many seconds the FortiGate unit should wait to close a session after one peer has sent a FIN packet but the other has not responded. Range: 1 - 86400 seconds (1 day). Default is 120.

tcp-halfopen-timer <seconds>

Enter how many seconds the FortiGate unit should wait to close a session after one peer has sent an open session packet but the other has not responded. Range: 1 - 86400 seconds (1 day). Default is 10.

tcp-option {enable | disable}

Enable SACK, timestamp and MSS TCP options. For normal operation, `tcp-option` should be enabled. Disable for performance testing or, in rare cases, where it impairs performance. Default is `enable`.

tcp-timewait-timer <seconds_int>

Set the length of the TCP TIME-WAIT state in seconds. As described in [RFC 793](#), the “TIME-WAIT state represents waiting for enough time to pass to be sure the remote TCP received the acknowledgment of its connection termination request”. Reducing the time of the TIME-WAIT state means the FortiGate unit can close terminated sessions faster which means more new sessions can be opened before the session limit is reached. Range: 0 - 300 seconds. Default is 1.

timezone <timezone_number>

The number corresponding to your time zone from 00 to 86. Enter `set timezone ?` to view the list of time zones and the numbers that represent them. Default is 00, which is equivalent to GMT +12.

tp-mc-skip-policy {enable | disable}

Enable to allow skipping of the policy check, and to enable multicast traffic through. Default is `disable`. Multicasting (also called IP multicasting) is a technique for one-to-many and many-to-many real-time communication over an IP infrastructure in a network. Multicast uses network infrastructure efficiently by requiring the source to send a packet only once, even if it needs to be delivered to a large number of receivers. can be used to send data to many receivers simultaneously while conserving bandwidth and reducing network traffic. Multicasting can be used for one-way delivery of media streams to multiple receivers and for one-way data transmission for news feeds, financial information, and so on.

traffic-priority {tos | dscp}

Select Type of Service (ToS) or Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) for traffic prioritization in traffic shaping. Default is tos. For more information, see the Handbook's discussion of [best practices for ToS and DSCP traffic mapping](#).

traffic-priority-level {low | medium | high}

Select the default system-wide level of priority for traffic prioritization. This determines the priority of traffic for scheduling, typically set on a per service type level. For more information, see `system tos-based-priority` or `system dscp-based-priority` or the [Traffic Shaping](#) chapter in the Handbook. Default is medium.

two-factor-email-expiry <seconds_int>

Set the timeout period for email-based two-factor authentication. Two-factor email authentication sends a randomly generated six-digit numeric code to a specified email address. The recipient must enter that code when prompted and that code is only valid for the time period set by this command. Range: 30 - 300 seconds (5 minutes). Default is 60.

two-factor-fac-expiry <seconds_int>

Set the timeout period for FortiAuthenticator token authentication. A FortiAuthenticator provides RADIUS, LDAP and 802.1X wireless authentication, certificate management, and Fortinet Single Sign-on (FSSO). FortiAuthenticator is compatible with FortiToken to provide two-factor authentication with multiple FortiGates and third party devices. Range: 10 - 3600 seconds (1 hour). Default is 60.

two-factor-ftk-expiry <seconds_int>

Set the timeout period for FortiToken authentication. Range: 60 - 600 seconds (10 minutes). Default is 60. FortiToken is a disconnected one-time password (OTP) generator. It is a small physical device with a button that when pressed displays a six digit authentication code. This code is entered with a user's username and password as two-factor authentication. The code displayed changes at the end of the timeout period set by this command.

two-factor-ftm-expiry <hours_int>

Set the timeout period for FortiToken Mobile provision. Range: 1 - 168 hours (7 days). Default is 72. FortiToken Mobile performs much the same function as the FortiToken except the physical device is replaced by a mobile phone application and the timeout period is set in hours, not seconds.

two-factor-sms-expiry <seconds_int>

Set the timeout period for SMS-based two-factor authentication. Range 30 - 300 seconds. Default is 60. SMS two-factor authentication sends the token code in an SMS text message to the mobile device indicated when this user attempts to logon. This token code is valid only for the time period set by this command. SMS two-factor authentication has the benefit of not requiring email service before logging on. A potential issue is if the mobile service provider does not send the SMS text message before the life of the token expires.

udp-idle-timer <seconds>

Enter the number of seconds before an idle UDP connection times out. This command can be useful in managing unit CPU and memory resources. Range: 1 - 86400 seconds (1 day). Default is 180.

user-server-cert <cert_name>

Select the certificate to use for https user authentication. Default setting is `Fortinet_Factory`, if available, otherwise `self-sign`.

vdom-admin {enable | disable}

Enable/disable configuration of multiple virtual domains. Default is disable.

Once VDOMs are enabled, Security Profiles can be configured globally across multiple VDOMs. In many VDOM environments, some or all profiles may be commonly-shared, for example an MSSP with "parental controls" configured will most likely have the same Web Filtering and Application Control profiles per VDOM.

Configure Global profiles under the following `config global` commands:

- `antivirus profile`
- `application list`
- `dlp sensor`
- `ips sensor`
- `webfilter profile`

Note: The name for any global profile must start with "g-" for identification. Global profiles are available as read-only for VDOM-level administrators, and can only be edited or deleted from within the global settings.

Each security feature has at least one default global profile, available for all VDOMs.

vip-arp-range {restricted | unlimited}

`vip-arp-range` controls the number of Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) packets the FortiGate unit sends for a Virtual IP (VIP) address range. Default is `restricted`.

- `restricted`: the FortiGate unit sends ARP packets for only the first 8192 addresses in a VIP range.
- `unlimited`: the FortiGate unit sends ARP packets for every address in the VIP range.

wad-worker-count <int>

Set the number of explicit proxy WAN optimization daemon (WAD) processes. By default WAN optimization, explicit proxy and web caching is handled by all of the CPU cores in a FortiGate unit. You can use the `wad-worker-count` command to change the number of CPU cores that are used. Range: 0 to the number of CPU cores.

wifi-ca-certificate <ca_cert-name>

Select the CA certificate that verifies the WiFi certificate.

wifi-certificate <cert-name>

Select the certificate to use for WiFi authentication.

wimax-4g-usb {enable | disable}

Enable/disable access to a Worldwide Interoperability for Microwave Access (WiMAX) 4G USB device. FortiGate units support the use of wireless, 3G and 4G modems connected using the USB port or, if available, the express card slot. Modem access provides either primary or secondary (redundant) access to the Internet. For FortiGate units that do not include an internal modem (those units with an "M" designation), the modem interface will not appear in the web-based manager until enabled in the CLI. Default is `disable`.

wireless-controller {enable | disable}

Enable/disable the wireless (WiFi) daemon. Default is `enable`.

wireless-controller-port <port_int>

Select the port used for the control channel in wireless controller mode (`wireless-mode` is `ac`). The data channel port is the control channel port number plus one. Range: 1024 - 49150. Default is 5246.

system gre-tunnel

Use this command to configure a GRE Tunnel for your FortiGate, to allow remote transmission of data through Cisco devices that also have a GRE Tunnel configured.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set ip-version {4 6} set remote-gw6 <addr6> set local-gw6 <addr6></pre>	Support for GRE tunnel termination using IPv6 addresses on both ends of the tunnel (in addition to the pre-existing IPv4 support).

```
config system gre-tunnel
  edit {name}
    # Configure GRE tunnel.
    set name {string} Tunnel name. size[15]
    set interface {string} Interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set ip-version {4 | 6} IP version to use for VPN interface.
      4 Use IPv4 addressing for gateways.
      6 Use IPv6 addressing for gateways.
    set remote-gw6 {ipv6 address} IPv6 address of the remote gateway.
    set local-gw6 {ipv6 address} IPv6 address of the local gateway.
    set remote-gw {ipv4 address} IP address of the remote gateway.
    set local-gw {ipv4 address any} IP address of the local gateway.
    set dscp-copying {disable | enable} Enable/disable DSCP copying.
    set keepalive-interval {integer} Keepalive message interval (0 - 32767, 0 = disabled). range[0-32767]
    set keepalive-failtimes {integer} Number of consecutive unreturned keepalive messages before a GRE connection
    is considered down (1 - 255). range[1-255]
```

```
next
end
```

system ha

Enable and configure FortiGate FGCP high availability (HA) and virtual clustering. Some of these options are also used for FGSP and content clustering.



In FGCP mode, most settings are automatically synchronized among cluster units. The following settings are not synchronized:

- `override`
- `priority` (including the `secondary-vcluster` priority)
- `ha-mgmt-interface-gateway`
- `ha-mgmt-interface-gateway6`
- `cpu-threshold`, `memory-threshold`, `http-proxy-threshold`, `ftp-proxy-threshold`, `imap-proxy-threshold`, `nntp-proxy-threshold`, `pop3-proxy-threshold`, `smtp-proxy-threshold`
- The `ha-priority` setting of the `config system link-monitor` command
- The `config system interface` settings of the FortiGate interface that becomes an HA reserved management interface
- The `config system global hostname` setting.
- The GUI Dashboard configuration. After a failover you may have to re-configure dashboard widgets.
- OSPF `summary-addresses` settings.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set unicast-hb-netmask {disable enable}</code>	Set unicast heartbeat netmask.
<code>set inter-cluster-session-sync {disable enable}</code>	Enable or disable FGSP session synchronization between FGCP clusters. This entry is only available when <code>mode</code> is set to either <code>a-a</code> or <code>a-p</code> .

CLI Syntax

```

config system ha
    set group-id {integer}    Cluster group ID (0 - 255). Must be the same for all members. range[0-255]
    set group-name {string}    Cluster group name. Must be the same for all members. size[32]
    set mode {standalone | a-a | a-p}    HA mode. Must be the same for all members. FGSP requires standalone.
        standalone    Standalone mode.
        a-a            Active-active mode.
        a-p            Active-passive mode.
    set sync-packet-balance {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HA packet distribution to multiple CPUs.
    set password {password_string}    Cluster password. Must be the same for all members. size[128]
    set key {password_string}    key size[16]
    set hbdev {string}    Heartbeat interfaces. Must be the same for all members.
    set session-sync-dev {string}    Offload session sync to one or more interfaces to distribute traffic and prevent
delays if needed.
    set route-ttl {integer}    TTL for primary unit routes (5 - 3600 sec). Increase to maintain active routes during fail-
over. range[5-3600]
    set route-wait {integer}    Time to wait before sending new routes to the cluster (0 - 3600 sec). range[0-3600]
    set route-hold {integer}    Time to wait between routing table updates to the cluster (0 - 3600 sec). range[0-3600]
    set multicast-ttl {integer}    HA multicast TTL on master (5 - 3600 sec). range[5-3600]
    set load-balance-all {enable | disable}    Enable to load balance TCP sessions. Disable to load balance proxy ses-
sions only.
    set sync-config {enable | disable}    Enable/disable configuration synchronization.
    set encryption {enable | disable}    Enable/disable heartbeat message encryption.
    set authentication {enable | disable}    Enable/disable heartbeat message authentication.
    set hb-interval {integer}    Time between sending heartbeat packets (1 - 20 (100*ms)). Increase to reduce false pos-
itives. range[1-20]
    set hb-lost-threshold {integer}    Number of lost heartbeats to signal a failure (1 - 60). Increase to reduce false
positives. range[1-60]
    set hello-holddown {integer}    Time to wait before changing from hello to work state (5 - 300 sec). range[5-300]
    set gratuitous-arps {enable | disable}    Enable/disable gratuitous ARPs. Disable if link-failed-signal enabled.
    set arps {integer}    Number of gratuitous ARPs (1 - 60). Lower to reduce traffic. Higher to reduce failover time.
range[1-60]
    set arps-interval {integer}    Time between gratuitous ARPs (1 - 20 sec). Lower to reduce failover time. Higher to
reduce traffic. range[1-20]
    set session-pickup {enable | disable}    Enable/disable session pickup. Enabling it can reduce session down time when
fail over happens.
    set session-pickup-connectionless {enable | disable}    Enable/disable UDP and ICMP session sync for FGSP.
    set session-pickup-expectation {enable | disable}    Enable/disable session helper expectation session sync for FGSP.
    set session-pickup-nat {enable | disable}    Enable/disable NAT session sync for FGSP.

```

```

    set session-pickup-delay {enable | disable}    Enable to sync sessions longer than 30 sec. Only longer lived sessions
need to be synced.
    set link-failed-signal {enable | disable}    Enable to shut down all interfaces for 1 sec after a failover. Use if
gratuitous ARPs do not update network.
    set uninterruptible-upgrade {enable | disable}    Enable to upgrade a cluster without blocking network traffic.
    set standalone-mgmt-vdom {enable | disable}    Enable/disable standalone management VDOM.
    set ha-mgmt-status {enable | disable}    Enable to reserve interfaces to manage individual cluster units.
config ha-mgmt-interfaces
    edit {id}
        # Reserve interfaces to manage individual cluster units.
        set id {integer}    Table ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set interface {string}    Interface to reserve for HA management. size[15] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name
        set dst {ipv4 classnet}    Default route destination for reserved HA management interface.
        set gateway {ipv4 address}    Default route gateway for reserved HA management interface.
        set gateway6 {ipv6 address}    Default IPv6 gateway for reserved HA management interface.
    next
    set ha-eth-type {string}    HA heartbeat packet Ethertype (4-digit hex). size[4]
    set hc-eth-type {string}    Transparent mode HA heartbeat packet Ethertype (4-digit hex). size[4]
    set l2ep-eth-type {string}    Telnet session HA heartbeat packet Ethertype (4-digit hex). size[4]
    set ha-uptime-diff-margin {integer}    Normally you would only reduce this value for failover testing. range[1-65535]
    set standalone-config-sync {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FGSP configuration synchronization.
    set vcluster2 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable virtual cluster 2 for virtual clustering.
    set vcluster-id {integer}    Cluster ID. range[0-255]
    set override {enable | disable}    Enable and increase the priority of the unit that should always be primary (mas-
ter).
    set priority {integer}    Increase the priority to select the primary unit (0 - 255). range[0-255]
    set override-wait-time {integer}    Delay negotiating if override is enabled (0 - 3600 sec). Reduces how often the
cluster negotiates. range[0-3600]
    set schedule {option}    Type of A-A load balancing. Use none if you have external load balancers.
        none                None.
        hub                 Hub.
        leastconnection      Least connection.
        round-robin          Round robin.
        weight-round-robin   Weight round robin.
        random               Random.
        ip                   IP.
        ipport               IP port.
    set weight {string}    Weight-round-robin weight for each cluster unit. Syntax <priority> <weight>.
    set cpu-threshold {string}    Dynamic weighted load balancing CPU usage weight and high and low thresholds.

```

```
set memory-threshold {string}    Dynamic weighted load balancing memory usage weight and high and low thresholds.
set http-proxy-threshold {string} Dynamic weighted load balancing weight and high and low number of HTTP proxy ses-
sions.
set ftp-proxy-threshold {string}  Dynamic weighted load balancing weight and high and low number of FTP proxy
sessions.
set imap-proxy-threshold {string} Dynamic weighted load balancing weight and high and low number of IMAP proxy ses-
sions.
set nntp-proxy-threshold {string}  Dynamic weighted load balancing weight and high and low number of NNTP proxy
sessions.
set pop3-proxy-threshold {string}  Dynamic weighted load balancing weight and high and low number of POP3 proxy ses-
sions.
set smtp-proxy-threshold {string}  Dynamic weighted load balancing weight and high and low number of SMTP proxy
sessions.
set monitor {string}    Interfaces to check for port monitoring (or link failure).
set pingserver-monitor-interface {string}  Interfaces to check for remote IP monitoring.
set pingserver-failover-threshold {integer} Remote IP monitoring failover threshold (0 - 50). range[0-50]
set pingserver-slave-force-reset {enable | disable}  Enable to force the cluster to negotiate after a remote IP mon-
itoring failover.
set pingserver-flip-timeout {integer}  Time to wait in minutes before renegotiating after a remote IP monitoring
failover. range[6-2147483647]
set vdom {string}    VDOMs in virtual cluster 1.
config secondary-vcluster
    set vcluster-id {integer}    Cluster ID. range[0-255]
    set override {enable | disable}  Enable and increase the priority of the unit that should always be primary
(master).
    set priority {integer}    Increase the priority to select the primary unit (0 - 255). range[0-255]
    set override-wait-time {integer}  Delay negotiating if override is enabled (0 - 3600 sec). Reduces how often
the cluster negotiates. range[0-3600]
    set monitor {string}    Interfaces to check for port monitoring (or link failure).
    set pingserver-monitor-interface {string}  Interfaces to check for remote IP monitoring.
    set pingserver-failover-threshold {integer} Remote IP monitoring failover threshold (0 - 50). range[0-50]
    set pingserver-slave-force-reset {enable | disable}  Enable to force the cluster to negotiate after a remote IP
monitoring failover.
    set vdom {string}    VDOMs in virtual cluster 2.
    set ha-direct {enable | disable}  Enable/disable using ha-mgmt interface for syslog, SNMP, remote authentication
(RADIUS), FortiAnalyzer, and FortiSandbox.
    set memory-compatible-mode {enable | disable}  Enable/disable memory compatible mode.
    set inter-cluster-session-sync {enable | disable}  Enable/disable synchronization of sessions among HA clusters.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

group-id <id>

The HA group ID, same for all members, from 0 to 255. The group ID identifies individual clusters on the network because the group ID affects the cluster virtual MAC address. All cluster members must have the same group ID. If you have more than two clusters on the same network they must have different Group IDs.

group-name <name>

The HA group name, same for all members. Max 32 characters. The HA group name identifies the cluster. All cluster members must have the same group name. Can be blank if `mode` is `standalone`.

mode {standalone | a-a | a-p}

The HA mode.

- `standalone` to disable HA. The mode required for FGSP.
- `a-a` to create an Active-Active cluster.
- `a-p` to create an Active-Passive cluster.

All members of an HA cluster must be set to the same HA mode.

password <password>

The HA cluster password, must be the same for all cluster units. The maximum password length is 128 characters.

hbdev <interface-name> <priority> [<interface-name> <priority>]...

Select the FortiGate interfaces to be heartbeat interfaces and set the heartbeat priority for each interface. The heartbeat interface with the highest priority processes all heartbeat traffic. If two or more heartbeat interfaces have the same priority, the heartbeat interface that with the lowest hash map order value processes all heartbeat traffic.

By default two interfaces are configured to be heartbeat interfaces and the priority for both these interfaces is set to 50. The heartbeat interface priority range is 0 to 512.

You can select up to 8 heartbeat interfaces. This limit only applies to FortiGate units with more than 8 physical interfaces.

You can use the append command to add more entries. The default depends on the FortiGate model.

multicast-ttl <timeout>

Time to wait before re-synchronizing the multicast routes to the kernel after an HA failover. The default is 600 seconds, the range is 5 to 3600 seconds.

After an HA failover, the new primary FortiGate waits for the `multicast-ttl` to expire before synchronizing multicast routes to the kernel. If you notice that multicast sessions are not connecting after an HA failover, this may be because the 600 seconds has not elapsed so the multicast routes in the kernel are out of date (for example, the Kernel could have multicast routes that are no longer valid). To reduce this delay, you can set the `multicast-ttl` time to a low value, for example 10 seconds, resulting in quicker updates of the kernel multicast routing table.

session-sync-dev <interface>

Select one or more FortiGate interfaces to use for synchronizing sessions as required for session pickup. Normally session synchronization occurs over the HA heartbeat link. Using this HA option means only the selected interfaces are used for session synchronization and not the HA heartbeat link. If you select more than one interface, session synchronization traffic is load balanced among the selected interfaces.

Moving session synchronization from the HA heartbeat interface reduces the bandwidth required for HA heartbeat traffic and may improve the efficiency and performance of the deployment, especially if the deployment is synchronizing a large number of sessions. Load balancing session synchronization among multiple interfaces can further improve performance and efficiency if the deployment is synchronizing a large number of sessions.

Session synchronization packets use Ethertype 0x8892. The interfaces to use for session synchronization must be connected together either directly using the appropriate cable (possible if there are only two units in the deployment) or using switches. If one of the interfaces becomes disconnected the deployment uses the remaining interfaces for session synchronization. If all of the session synchronization interfaces become disconnected, session synchronization reverts back to using the HA heartbeat link. All session synchronization traffic is between the primary unit and each subordinate unit.

Since large amounts of session synchronization traffic can increase network congestion, it is recommended that you keep this traffic off of your network by using dedicated connections for it.

sync-packet-balance {disable | enable}

Enable this option for FortiOS Carrier FGCP clusters or FGSP peers to distribute the processing of HA synchronization packets to multiple CPUs. By default, this option is disabled and all HA synchronization packets are processed by one CPU.

Enabling this option may improve the performance of an entity that is processing large numbers of packets causing session synchronization using excessive amounts of CPU cycles. For example, GTP traffic can result in very high packet rates and you can improve the performance of a FortiOS Carrier FGCP cluster or FGSP deployment that is processing GTP traffic by enabling this option.

route-ttl <ttl>

Control how long routes remain in a cluster unit's routing table. The time to live range is 5 to 3600 seconds (3600 seconds is one hour). The default time to live is 10 seconds.

The time to live controls how long routes remain active in a cluster unit routing table after the cluster unit becomes a primary unit. To maintain communication sessions after a cluster unit becomes a primary unit, routes remain active in the routing table for the route time to live while the new primary unit acquires new routes.

By default, `route-ttl` is set to 10 which may mean that only a few routes will remain in the routing table after a failover. Normally keeping `route-ttl` to 10 or reducing the value to 5 is acceptable because acquiring new routes usually occurs very quickly, especially if graceful restart is enabled, so only a minor delay is caused by acquiring new routes.

If the primary unit needs to acquire a very large number of routes, or if for other reasons there is a delay in acquiring all routes, the primary unit may not be able to maintain all communication sessions.

You can increase the route time to live if you find that communication sessions are lost after a failover so that the primary unit can use synchronized routes that are already in the routing table, instead of waiting to acquire new routes.

route-wait <wait>

The amount of time in seconds that the primary unit waits after receiving routing updates before sending the updates to the subordinate units. For quick routing table updates to occur, set `route-wait` to a relatively short time so that the primary unit does not hold routing table changes for too long before updating the subordinate units.

The `route-wait` range is 0 to 3600 seconds. The default `route-wait` is 0 seconds. Normally, because the is 0 seconds.

Normally, because the `route-wait` time is 0 seconds the primary unit sends routing table updates to the subordinate units every time its routing table changes.

Once a routing table update is sent, the primary unit waits the `route-hold` time before sending the next update.

Usually routing table updates are periodic and sporadic. Subordinate units should receive these changes as soon as possible so `route-wait` is set to 0 seconds. `route-hold` can be set to a relatively long time because normally the next route update would not occur for a while.

In some cases, routing table updates can occur in bursts. A large burst of routing table updates can occur if a router or a link on a network fails or changes. When a burst of routing table updates occurs, there is a potential that the primary unit could flood the subordinate units with routing table updates. Flooding routing table updates can affect cluster performance if a great deal of routing information is synchronized between cluster units. Setting `route-wait` to a longer time reduces the frequency of additional updates and prevents flooding of routing table updates from occurring.

route-hold <hold>

The amount of time in seconds that the primary unit waits between sending routing table updates to subordinate units. The route hold range is 0 to 3600 seconds. The default route hold time is 10 seconds.

To avoid flooding routing table updates to subordinate units, set `route-hold` to a relatively long time to prevent subsequent updates from occurring too quickly. Flooding routing table updates can affect cluster performance if a great deal of routing information is synchronized between cluster units. Increasing the time between updates means that this data exchange will not have to happen so often.

The `route-hold` time should be coordinated with the `route-wait` time.

sync-config {disable | enable}

Enable or disable automatic synchronization configuration changes to all cluster units.

encryption {disable | enable}

Enable or disable HA heartbeat message encryption using AES-128 for encryption and SHA1 for authentication. Disabled by default.

authentication {disable | enable}

Enable or disable HA heartbeat message authentication using SHA1. Disabled by default.

hb-interval <interval>

The time between sending heartbeat packets. The heartbeat interval range is 1 to 20 (100*milliseconds). The default is 2.

A heartbeat interval of 2 means the time between heartbeat packets is 200 ms. Changing the heartbeat interval to 5 changes the time between heartbeat packets to 500 ms ($5 * 100\text{ms} = 500\text{ms}$).

HA heartbeat packets consume more bandwidth if the heartbeat interval is short. But if the heartbeat interval is very long, the cluster is not as sensitive to topology and other network changes.

The heartbeat interval combines with the lost heartbeat threshold to set how long a cluster unit waits before assuming that another cluster unit has failed and is no longer sending heartbeat packets. By default, if a cluster unit does not receive a heartbeat packet from a cluster unit for $6 * 200 = 1200$ milliseconds or 1.2 seconds the cluster unit assumes that the other cluster unit has failed.

You can increase both the heartbeat interval and the lost heartbeat threshold to reduce false positives. For example, increasing the heartbeat interval to 20 and the lost heartbeat threshold to 30 means a failure will be assumed if no heartbeat packets are received after $30 * 2000$ milliseconds = 60,000 milliseconds, or 60 seconds.

hb-lost-threshold <threshold>

The number of consecutive heartbeat packets that are not received from another cluster unit before assuming that the cluster unit has failed. The default value is 6, meaning that if the 6 heartbeat packets are not received from a cluster unit then that cluster unit is considered to have failed. The range is 1 to 60 packets.

If the primary unit does not receive a heartbeat packet from a subordinate unit before the heartbeat threshold expires, the primary unit assumes that the subordinate unit has failed.

If a subordinate unit does not receive a heartbeat packet from the primary unit before the heartbeat threshold expires, the subordinate unit assumes that the primary unit has failed. The subordinate unit then begins negotiating to become the new primary unit.

The lower the `hb-lost-threshold` the faster a cluster responds when a unit fails. However, sometimes heartbeat packets may not be sent because a cluster unit is very busy. This can lead to a false positive failure detection. To reduce these false positives you can increase the `hb-lost-threshold`.

hello-holddown <timer>

The number of seconds that a cluster unit waits before changing from the hello state to the work state. The default is 20 seconds and the range is 5 to 300 seconds.

The hello state hold-down time is the number of seconds that a cluster unit waits before changing from hello state to work state. After a failure or when starting up, cluster units operate in the hello state to send and receive heartbeat packets so that all the cluster units can find each other and form a cluster. A cluster unit should change from the hello state to work state after it finds all of the other FortiGate units to form a cluster with. If for some reason all cluster units cannot find each other during the hello state then some cluster units may be joining the cluster after it has formed. This can cause disruptions to the cluster and affect how it operates.

One reason for a delay in all of the cluster units joining the cluster could be the cluster units are located at different sites or if for some other reason communication is delayed between the heartbeat interfaces.

If cluster units are joining your cluster after it has started up or if it takes a while for units to join the cluster you can increase the time that the cluster units wait in the hello state.

gratuitous-arps {disable | enable}

Enable or disable sending gratuitous ARP packets from a new primary unit. Enabled by default.

In most cases you would want to send gratuitous ARP packets because its a reliable way for the cluster to notify the network to send traffic to the new primary unit. However, in some cases, sending gratuitous ARP packets may be less optimal. For example, if you have a cluster of FortiGate units in Transparent mode, after a failover the new primary unit will send gratuitous ARP packets to all of the addresses in its Forwarding Database (FDB). If the FDB has a large number of addresses it may take extra time to send all the packets and the sudden burst of traffic could disrupt the network.

If you choose to disable sending gratuitous ARP packets you must first enable the `link-failed-signal` setting. The cluster must have some way of informing attached network devices that a failover has occurred.

arps <number>

The number of times that the primary unit sends gratuitous ARP packets. Gratuitous ARP packets are sent when a cluster unit becomes a primary unit (this can occur when the cluster is starting up or after a failover). The default is 5 packets, the range is 1 to 60.

Usually you would not change the default setting of 5. In some cases, however, you might want to reduce the number of gratuitous ARP packets. For example, if your cluster has a large number of VLAN interfaces and virtual domains and because gratuitous ARP packets are broadcast, sending a higher number gratuitous ARP packets may generate a lot of network traffic. As long as the cluster still fails over successfully, you could reduce the number of gratuitous ARP packets that are sent to reduce the amount of traffic produced after a failover.

If failover is taking longer that expected, you may be able to reduce the failover time by increasing the number gratuitous ARP packets sent.

arps-interval <interval>

The number of seconds to wait between sending gratuitous ARP packets. When a cluster unit becomes a primary unit (this occurs when the cluster is starting up or after a failover) the primary unit sends gratuitous ARP packets immediately to inform connected network equipment of the IP address and MAC address of the primary unit. The default is 8 seconds, the range is 1 to 20 seconds.

Normally you would not need to change the time interval. However, you could decrease the time to be able send more packets in less time if your cluster takes a long time to failover.

There may also be a number of reasons to set the interval higher. For example, if your cluster has a large number of VLAN interfaces and virtual domains and because gratuitous ARP packets are broadcast, sending gratuitous ARP packets may generate a lot of network traffic. As long as the cluster still fails over successfully you could increase the interval to reduce the amount of traffic produced after a failover.

session-pickup {disable | enable}

Enable or disable session pickup. Disabled by default.

Enable session-pickup so that if the primary unit fails, all sessions are picked up by the new primary unit. If you enable session pickup the subordinate units maintain session tables that match the primary unit session table. If the primary unit fails, the new primary unit can maintain most active communication sessions.

If you do not enable session pickup the subordinate units do not maintain session tables. If the primary unit fails all sessions are interrupted and must be restarted when the new primary unit is operating.

Many protocols can successfully restart sessions with little, if any, loss of data. For example, after a failover, users browsing the web can just refresh their browsers to resume browsing. Since most HTTP sessions are very short, in most cases they will not even notice an interruption unless they are downloading large files. Users downloading a large file may have to restart their download after a failover.

Other protocols may experience data loss and some protocols may require sessions to be manually restarted. For example, a user downloading files with FTP may have to either restart downloads or restart their FTP client.

session-pickup-connectionless {disable | enable}

This option applies to both FGCP and FGSP.

Enable or disable session synchronization for connectionless (UDP and ICMP) sessions.

When `mode` is set to `a-a` or `a-p` this option applies to FGCP.

When `mode` is `standalone`, this option applies to FGSP only.

This option is only available if `session-pickup` is enabled and is disabled by default.

session-pickup-expectation {disable | enable}

This option applies only to FGSP.

Enable or disable session synchronization for expectation sessions in an FGSP deployment. This option is only available if `session-pickup` is enabled and `mode` is `standalone` and is disabled by default.

FortiOS session helpers keep track of the communication of Layer-7 protocols such as FTP and SIP that have control sessions and expectation sessions. Usually the control sessions establish the link between server and client and negotiate the ports and protocols that will be used for data communications. The session helpers then create expectation sessions through the FortiGate for the ports and protocols negotiated by the control session.

The expectation sessions are usually the sessions that actually communicate data. For FTP, the expectation sessions transmit files being uploaded or downloaded. For SIP, the expectation sessions transmit voice and video data. Expectation sessions usually have a timeout value of 30 seconds. If the communication from the server is not initiated within 30 seconds the expectation session times out and traffic will be denied.

session-pickup-nat {disable | enable}

This option applies only to FGSP.

Enable or disable session synchronization for NAT sessions in an FGSP deployment. This option is only available if `session-pickup` is enabled and `mode` is `standalone` and is disabled by default.

session-pickup-delay {disable | enable}

This option applies to both FGCP and FGSP.

Enable or disable synchronizing sessions only if they remain active for more than 30 seconds. This option improves performance when `session-pickup` is enabled by reducing the number of sessions that are synchronized.

session-sync-daemon-number <number>

The number of processes used by the HA session sync daemon. Increase the number of processes to handle session packets sent from the kernel efficiently when the session rate is high. Intended for ELBC clusters, this feature only works for clusters with two members. The default is 1, the range 1 to 15.

link-failed-signal {disable | enable}

Enable or disable shutting down all interfaces (except for heartbeat device interfaces) of a cluster unit with a failed monitored interface for one second after a failover occurs. Enable this option if the switch the cluster is connected to does not update its MAC forwarding tables after a failover caused by a link failure. Disabled by default.

If you choose to disable sending gratuitous ARP packets (by setting `gratuitous-arps` to `disable`) you must first enable `link-failed-signal`. The cluster must have some way of informing attached network devices that a failover has occurred.

uninterruptible-upgrade {disable | enable}

Enable or disable upgrading the cluster without interrupting cluster traffic processing. Enabled by default.

If `uninterruptible-upgrade` is enabled, traffic processing is not interrupted during a normal firmware upgrade. This process can take some time and may reduce the capacity of the cluster for a short time. If is enabled, traffic processing is not interrupted during a normal firmware upgrade. This process can take some time and may reduce the capacity of the cluster for a short time.

If `uninterruptible-upgrade` is disabled, traffic processing is interrupted during a normal firmware upgrade (similar to upgrading the firmware operating on a standalone FortiGate unit).

ha-mgmt-status {enable | disable}

Enable or disable the HA reserved management interface feature. Disabled by default.

ha-mgmt-interface <interface_name>

The FortiGate interface to be the reserved HA management interface. You can configure the IP address and other settings for this interface using the config system interface command. When you enable the reserved management interface feature the configuration of the reserved management interface is not synchronized by the FGCP.

ha-mgmt-interface-gateway <gateway_IP>

The default route for the reserved HA management interface (IPv4). This setting is not synchronized by the FGCP.

ha-mgmt-interface-gateway6 <gateway_IP>

The default route for the reserved HA management interface (IPv6). This setting is not synchronized by the FGCP.

ha-eth-type <type>

The Ethertype used by HA heartbeat packets for NAT mode clusters. <type> is a 4-digit number. Default is 8890.

hc-eth-type <type>

The Ethertype used by HA heartbeat packets for Transparent mode clusters. <type> is a 4-digit number. Default is 8891.

l2ep-eth-type <type>

The Ethertype used by HA telnet sessions between cluster units over the HA link. <type> is a 4-digit number. Default is 8893.

ha-uptime-diff-margin <margin>

The cluster age difference margin (grace period). This margin is the age difference ignored by the cluster when selecting a primary unit based on age. Normally the default value of 300 seconds (5 minutes) should not be changed. However, for demo purposes you can use this option to lower the difference margin. The range is 1 to 65535 seconds.

You may want to reduce the margin if during failover testing you don't want to wait the default age difference margin of 5 minutes. You may also want to reduce the margin to allow uninterruptible upgrades to work.

You may want to increase the age margin if cluster unit startup time differences are larger than 5 minutes.

During a cluster firmware upgrade with `uninterruptible-upgrade` enabled (the default configuration) the cluster should not select a new primary unit after the firmware of all cluster units has been updated. But since the age difference of the cluster units is most likely less than 300 seconds, age is not used to affect primary unit selection and the cluster may select a new primary unit.

During failover testing where cluster units are failed over repeatedly the age difference between the cluster units will most likely be less than 5 minutes. During normal operation, if a failover occurs, when the failed unit rejoins the cluster its age will be very different from the age of the still operating cluster units so the cluster will not select a new primary unit. However, if a unit fails and is restored in a very short time the age difference may be less than 5 minutes. As a result the cluster may select a new primary unit during some failover testing scenarios.

vcluster2 {disable | enable}

Enable or disable virtual cluster 2 (also called secondary-vcluster).

When multiple VDOMs are enabled, virtual cluster 2 is enabled by default. When virtual cluster 2 is enabled you can use `config secondary-vcluster` to configure virtual cluster 2.

Disable virtual cluster 2 to move all virtual domains from virtual cluster 2 back to virtual cluster 1.

Enabling virtual cluster 2 enables `override` for virtual cluster 1 and virtual cluster 2.

vcluster-id

Indicates the virtual cluster you are configuring. You can't change this setting. You can use the `config secondary-vcluster` command to edit vcluster 2.

standalone-config-sync {disable | enable}

Synchronize the configuration of the FortiGate unit to another FortiGate unit. This is available if `session-pickup` is enabled and `mode` is `standalone`. Disabled by default.

override {disable | enable}

Enable or disable forcing the cluster to renegotiate and select a new primary unit every time a cluster unit leaves or joins a cluster, changes status within a cluster, or every time the HA configuration of a cluster unit changes.

Disabled by default. Automatically enabled when you enable virtual cluster 2. This setting is not synchronized to other cluster units.

In most cases you should keep `override` disabled to reduce how often the cluster negotiates. Frequent negotiations may cause frequent traffic interruptions. However, if you want to make sure that the same cluster unit always operates as the primary unit and if you are less concerned about frequent cluster negotiation you can set its device priority higher than other cluster units and enable `override`.

priority <priority>

The device priority of the cluster unit. Each cluster unit can have a different device priority. During HA negotiation, the cluster unit with the highest device priority becomes the primary unit. The device priority range is 0 to 255. The default is 128. This setting is not synchronized to other cluster units. The device priority of the cluster unit. Each cluster unit can have a different device priority. During HA negotiation, the cluster unit with the highest device priority becomes the primary unit. The device priority range is 0 to 255. The default is 128. This setting is not synchronized to other cluster units.

override-wait-time <seconds>

Delay renegotiating when `override` is enabled and HA is enabled or the cluster mode is changed or after a cluster unit reboots. You can add a time to prevent negotiation during transitions and configuration changes. Range 0 to 3600 seconds.

schedule {hub | ip | ipport | leastconnection | none | random | round-robin | weight-round-robin}

The cluster's active-active load balancing schedule.

- `hub` load balancing if the cluster interfaces are connected to hubs. Traffic is distributed to cluster units based on the Source IP and Destination IP of the packet.
- `ip` load balancing according to IP address.
- `ipport` load balancing according to IP address and port.
- `leastconnection` least connection load balancing.
- `none` no load balancing. Use when the cluster interfaces are connected to load balancing switches.
- `random` random load balancing.
- `round-robin` round robin load balancing. If the cluster units are connected using switches, use round-robin to distribute traffic to the next available cluster unit.
- `weight-round-robin` weighted round robin load balancing. Similar to `round robin`, but you can assign weighted values to each of the units in the cluster.

slave-switch-standby {disable | enable}

Enable to force a subordinate FortiSwitch-5203B or FortiController-5902D into standby mode even though its weight is non-zero. This is a content clustering option and is disabled by default.

minimum-worker-threshold <threshold>

Available on FortiSwitch-5203Bs or FortiController-5902Ds only in inter-chassis content-cluster mode. In inter-chassis mode the system considers the number of operating workers in a chassis when electing the primary chassis. A chassis that has less than the `minimum-worker-threshold` of workers operating is ranked lower than a chassis that meets or exceeds the `minimum-worker-threshold`. The default value of 1 effectively disables the threshold. The range is 1 to 11.

monitor <interface-name> [<interface-name>...]

Enable or disable port monitoring for link failure. Port monitoring (also called interface monitoring) monitors FortiGate interfaces to verify that the monitored interfaces are functioning properly and connected to their networks.

Enter the names of the interfaces to monitor. Use a space to separate each interface name. Use append to add an interface to the list. If there are no monitored interfaces then port monitoring is disabled.

You can monitor physical interfaces, redundant interfaces, and 802.3ad aggregated interfaces but not VLAN interfaces, IPsec VPN interfaces, or switch interfaces.

You can monitor up to 64 interfaces. In a multiple VDOM configuration you can monitor up to 64 interfaces per virtual cluster.

pingserver-monitor-interface <interface-name> [<interface-name>...]

Enable HA remote IP monitoring by specifying the FortiGate unit interfaces that will be used to monitor remote IP addresses. You can configure remote IP monitoring for all types of interfaces including physical interfaces, VLAN interfaces, redundant interfaces and aggregate interfaces.

Use a space to separate each interface name. Use append to add an interface to the list.

pingserver-failover-threshold <threshold>

The HA remote IP monitoring failover threshold. The failover threshold range is 0 to 50. Setting the failover threshold to 0 (the default) means that if any ping server added to the HA remote IP monitoring configuration fails an HA failover will occur.

Set the priority for each remote IP monitoring ping server using the `ha-priority` option of the `config system link-monitor` command. Increase the priority to require more remote links to fail before a failover occurs.

pingserver-slave-force-reset {disable | enable}

In a remote IP monitoring configuration, if you also want the same cluster unit to always be the primary unit you can set its device priority higher and enable override. With this configuration, when a remote IP monitoring failover occurs, after the flip timeout expires another failover will occur (because override is

enabled) and the unit with override enabled becomes the primary unit again. So the cluster automatically returns to normal operation.

The primary unit starts remote IP monitoring again. If the remote link is restored the cluster continues to operate normally. If, however, the remote link is still down, remote link failover causes the cluster to failover again. This will repeat each time the flip timeout expires until the failed remote link is restored.

You can use the `pingserver-slave-force-reset` option to control this behavior. By default this option is enabled and the behavior described above occurs. The overall behavior is that when the remote link is restored the cluster automatically returns to normal operation after the flip timeout.

If you disable `pingserver-slave-force-reset` after the initial remote IP monitoring failover nothing will happen after the flip timeout (as long as the new primary unit doesn't experience some kind of failover). The result is that repeated failovers no longer happen. But it also means that the original primary unit will remain the subordinate unit and will not resume operating as the primary unit.

pingserver-flip-timeout <timeout>

The HA remote IP monitoring flip timeout in minutes. If HA remote IP monitoring fails on all cluster units because none of the cluster units can connect to the monitored IP addresses, the flip timeout stops a failover from occurring until the timer runs out. The range is 6 to 2147483647 minutes. The default is 60 minutes.

The flip timeout reduces the frequency of failovers if, after a failover, HA remote IP monitoring on the new primary unit also causes a failover. This can happen if the new primary unit cannot connect to one or more of the monitored remote IP addresses. The result could be that until you fix the network problem that blocks connections to the remote IP addresses, the cluster will experience repeated failovers. You can control how often the failovers occur by setting the flip timeout.

The flip timeout stops HA remote IP monitoring from causing a failover until the primary unit has been operating for the duration of the flip timeout. If you set the flip timeout to a relatively high number of minutes you can find and repair the network problem that prevented the cluster from connecting to the remote IP address without the cluster experiencing very many failovers. Even if it takes a while to detect the problem, repeated failovers at relatively long time intervals do not usually disrupt network traffic.

The flip timeout also causes the cluster to renegotiate when it expires unless you have disabled `pingserver-slave-force-reset`.

vdom <vdom-name> [<vdom-name>...]

Add virtual domains to a virtual cluster. By default all VDOMs are added to virtual cluster 1. Adding a virtual domain to a virtual cluster removes it from the other virtual cluster. You add VDOMs to virtual cluster 1 using the following syntax:

```
config system ha
    set vdom root vdom1
end
```

You add VDOMs to virtual cluster 2 using the following syntax:

```
config system ha
```

```
set secondary-vcluster enable
  config vcluster2
    set vdom root vdom1
  end
end
```

ha-direct {disable | enable}

Enable to use the reserved HA management interface for following management features:

- Remote logging (including syslog, FortiAnalyzer, and FortiCloud).
- SNMP queries and traps.
- Remote authentication and certificate verification.
- Communication with FortiSandbox.

This means that individual cluster units send log messages and communicate with FortiSandbox and so on using their HA reserved management interface instead of one of the cluster interfaces. This allows you to manage each cluster unit separately and to separate the management traffic from each cluster unit. This can also be useful if each cluster unit is in a different location.

Disabled by default. Only appears if `ha-mgmt-status` is enabled.

Reserved management interfaces and their IP addresses should not be used for managing a cluster using FortiManager. To correctly manage a FortiGate HA cluster with FortiManager use the IP address of one of the cluster unit interfaces.

load-balance-all {disable | enable}

By default, active-active HA load balancing distributes proxy-based security profile processing to all cluster units. Proxy-based security profile processing is CPU and memory-intensive, so FGCP load balancing may result in higher throughput because resource-intensive processing is distributed among all cluster units.

Proxy-based security profile processing that is load balanced includes proxy-based virus scanning, proxy-based web filtering, proxy-based email filtering, and proxy-based data leak prevention (DLP) of HTTP, FTP, IMAP, IMAPS, POP3, POP3S, SMTP, SMTPS, IM, and NNTP, sessions accepted by security policies. Other features enabled in security policies such as Endpoint security, traffic shaping and authentication have no effect on active-active load balancing.

You can enable `load-balance-all` to have the primary unit load balance all TCP sessions. Load balancing TCP sessions increases overhead and may actually reduce performance so it is disabled by default.

load-balance-udp {disable | enable}

Enable or disable load balancing UDP proxy-based security profile sessions. Load balancing UDP sessions increases overhead so it is also disabled by default.

This content clustering option is available for the FortiSwitch-5203B and FortiController-5902D.

weight {0 | 1 | 2 | 3} <weight>

The weighted round robin load balancing weight to assign to each unit in an active-active cluster. The weight is set according to the priority of the unit in the cluster. An FGCP cluster can include up to four FortiGates (numbered 0 to 3) so you can set up to 4 weights. The default weights mean that the four possible units in the cluster all have the same weight of 40. The weight range is 0 to 255. Increase the weight to increase the number of connections processed by the FortiGate with that priority.

Weights are assigned to individual FortiGates according to their priority in the cluster. The priorities are assigned when the cluster negotiates and can change every time the cluster re-negotiates.

You enter the weight for each FortiGate separately. For example, if you have a cluster of three FortiGate units you can set the weights for the units as follows:

```
set weight 0 5
set weight 1 10
set weight 2 15
```

cpu-threshold <weight> <low> <high>

Dynamic weighted load balancing by CPU usage. When enabled fewer sessions will be load balanced to the cluster unit when its CPU usage reaches the high watermark.

This option is available when `mode` is `a-a` and `schedule` is `weight-round-robin`. Default low and high watermarks of 0 disable the feature. The default weight is 5.

This setting is not synchronized by the FGCP so you can set separate weights for each cluster unit.

memory-threshold <weight> <low> <high>

Dynamic weighted load balancing by memory usage. When enabled fewer sessions will be load balanced to the cluster unit when its memory usage reaches the high watermark.

This option is available when `mode` is `a-a` and `schedule` is `weight-round-robin`. Default low and high watermarks of 0 disable the feature. The default weight is 5.

This setting is not synchronized by the FGCP so you can set separate weights for each cluster unit.

http-proxy-threshold <weight> <low> <high>

Dynamic weighted load balancing by the number of HTTP proxy sessions processed by a cluster unit. When enabled fewer sessions will be load balanced to the cluster unit when the high watermark is reached.

This option is available when `mode` is `a-a` and `schedule` is `weight-round-robin`. Default low and high watermarks of 0 disable the feature. The default weight is 5.

This setting is not synchronized by the FGCP so you can set separate weights for each cluster unit.

imap-proxy-threshold <weight> <low> <high>

Dynamic weighted load balancing by the number of IMAP proxy sessions processed by a cluster unit. When enabled fewer sessions will be load balanced to the cluster unit when the high watermark is reached.

This option is available when `mode` is `a-a` and `schedule` is `weight-round-robin`. Default low and high watermarks of 0 disable the feature. The default weight is 5.

This setting is not synchronized by the FGCP so you can set separate weights for each cluster unit.

nntp-proxy-threshold <weight> <low> <high>

Dynamic weighted load balancing by the number of NNTP proxy sessions processed by a cluster unit. When enabled fewer sessions will be load balanced to the cluster unit when the high watermark is reached.

This option is available when `mode` is `a-a` and `schedule` is `weight-round-robin`. Default low and high watermarks of 0 disable the feature. The default weight is 5.

This setting is not synchronized by the FGCP so you can set separate weights for each cluster unit.

pop3-proxy-threshold <weight> <low> <high>

Dynamic weighted load balancing by the number of POP3 proxy sessions processed by a cluster unit. When enabled fewer sessions will be load balanced to the cluster unit when the high watermark is reached.

This option is available when `mode` is `a-a` and `schedule` is `weight-round-robin`. Default low and high watermarks of 0 disable the feature. The default weight is 5.

This setting is not synchronized by the FGCP so you can set separate weights for each cluster unit.

smtp-proxy-threshold <weight> <low> <high>

Dynamic weighted load balancing by the number of SMTP proxy sessions processed by a cluster unit. When enabled fewer sessions will be load balanced to the cluster unit when the high watermark is reached.

This option is available when `mode` is `a-a` and `schedule` is `weight-round-robin`. Default low and high watermarks of 0 disable the feature. The default weight is 5.

This setting is not synchronized by the FGCP so you can set separate weights for each cluster unit.

inter-cluster-session-sync {disable | enable}

Enable or disable session synchronization between FGCP clusters. When enabled this cluster can participate in an FGSP configuration using inter-cluster session synchronization. Once inter-cluster session synchronization is enabled, all FGSP configuration options are available from the FGCP cluster CLI and you can set up the FGSP configuration in the same way as a standalone FortiGate.

Inter-cluster session synchronization is compatible with all FGCP operating modes including active-active, active-passive, virtual clustering, full mesh HA, and so on. Inter-cluster session synchronization synchronizes all supported FGSP session types including TCP sessions, IPsec tunnels, IKE routes, connectionless (UDP and ICMP) sessions, NAT sessions, asymmetric sessions, and expectation sessions. Inter-cluster session synchronization does not support configuration synchronization.

Disabled by default.

set unicast-hb {disable | enable}

For a FortiGate VM, enable or disable (the default) unicast HA heartbeat. In virtual machine (VM) environments that do not support broadcast communication, you can set up unicast HA heartbeat when configuring HA. Setting up unicast HA heartbeat consists of enabling the feature and using `unicast-hb-peerip` to add a peer IP address.

Unicast HA is only supported between two FortiGate VMs. The heartbeat interfaces must be connected to the same network and you must add IP addresses to these interfaces.

set unicast-hb-peerip <ip>

Add a unicast HA heart peer IP address. The peer IP address is the IP address of the HA heartbeat interface of the other FortiGate VM in the HA cluster.

config secondary-vcluster

Configure virtual cluster 2 using the following syntax. You must first enable vcluster2.

```
config secondary-vcluster
  set vcluster-id 2
  set override {disable | enable}
  set priority <priority>
  set override-wait-time <time>
  {set | append} monitor <interface-name> [<interface-name>...]
  {set | append} pingserver-monitor-interface <interface-name> [<interface-name>...]
  set pingserver-failover-threshold <threshold>
  set pingserver-slave-force-reset {disable | enable}
  {set | append} vdom <vdom-name> [<vdom-name>...]
end
```

system ha-monitor

If the FortiGates in a cluster have VLAN interfaces, you can use this command to monitor all VLAN interfaces and write a log message if one of the VLAN interfaces is found to be down. Once configured, this feature works by verifying that the primary unit can connect to the subordinate unit over each VLAN. This verifies that the switch that the VLAN interfaces are connected to is configured correctly for each VLAN. If the primary unit cannot connect to the subordinate unit over one of the configured VLANs the primary unit writes a link monitor log message indicating that the named VLAN went down (log message id 20099).

```
config system ha-monitor
  set monitor-vlan {enable | disable}  Enable/disable monitor VLAN interfaces.
  set vlan-hb-interval {integer}  Configure heartbeat interval (seconds). range[1-30]
  set vlan-hb-lost-threshold {integer}  VLAN lost heartbeat threshold (1 - 60). range[1-60]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

monitor-vlan {enable | disable}

Enable monitor VLANs. Disabled by default

vlan-hb-interval <integer>

The time between sending VLAN heartbeat packets over the VLAN. The VLAN heartbeat range is 1 to 30 seconds. The default is 5 seconds.

vlan-hb-lost-threshold <integer>

The number of consecutive VLAN heartbeat packets that are not successfully received across the VLAN before assuming that the VLAN is down. The default value is 3, meaning that if 3 heartbeat packets sent over the VLAN are not received then the VLAN is considered to be down. The range is 1 to 60 packets. A VLAN heartbeat interval of 5 means the time between heartbeat packets is five seconds. A VLAN heartbeat threshold of 3 means it takes $5 \times 3 = 15$ seconds to detect that a VLAN is down.

system interface

Configure interface settings.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.5.

Command	Description
<code>config vrrp</code> <code>set ignore-default-route {disable enable}</code>	New option to configure VRRP to enable or disable ignoring the default route when looking for the <code>vrdest</code> IP address.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>set icmp-accept-redirect {enable disable}</code> <code>set icmp-send-redirect {enable disable}</code>	The entry <code>icmp-redirect</code> has been removed and replaced with the ability to enable or disable accepting and sending ICMP redirects.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set disconnect-threshold <milliseconds></code>	Time in milliseconds to wait before sending a notification that this interface is down or disconnected. Set the range between 0 - 10000 (or no delay to ten seconds).
<code>set vrf <id></code>	Configure Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) support for multiple virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instances. Set the range between 0 - 31. FortiOS supports 32 VRFs (numbered 0 to 31) per VDOM.
<code>set switch-controller-arp-inspection {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable ARP inspection for FortiSwitch devices.
<pre> config ipv6 set vrrp-virtual-mac6 {disable enable} set vrip6_link_local config vrrp6 edit <virtual-router-id> set vrgrp <group> set vrip6 <ipv6-address> set start-time {integer} set priority <priority> set adv-interval <time> set preempt {disable enable} set accept-mode {disable enable} set vrdst6 <ipv6-ipaddress> [<ipv6-ipaddress>] set status {disable enable} next ... </pre>	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) IPv6 support added. Optionally, multiple addresses can be specified for <code>vrdst6</code> , with each entry separated by a space.
<code>set type {emac-vlan ...}</code>	Support for enhanced media access control (MAC) virtual local area networks (VLANs).
<code>set egress-shaping-profile <name></code>	Apply traffic shaping profiles to outgoing interfaces, to enforce bandwidth limits for individual interfaces, by percentage.

Command	Description
	To configure interface-based traffic shaping, you must classify traffic in a traffic shaping policy, assign bandwidth percentages in a traffic shaping profile, and apply the traffic shaping profile as the egress traffic shaper on an interface.

```

config system interface
    edit {name}
    # Configure interfaces.
    set name {string}    Name. size[15]
    set vdom {string}    Interface is in this virtual domain (VDM). size[31] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
    set vrf {integer}    Virtual Routing Forwarding ID. range[0-31]
    set cli-conn-status {integer}    CLI connection status. range[0-4294967295]
    set fortilink {enable | disable}    Enable FortiLink to dedicate this interface to manage other Fortinet devices.
    set mode {static | dhcp | pppoe}    Addressing mode (static, DHCP, PPPoE).
        static    Static setting.
        dhcp      External DHCP client mode.
        pppoe     External PPPoE mode.
    set distance {integer}    Distance for routes learned through PPPoE or DHCP, lower distance indicates preferred
route. range[1-255]
    set priority {integer}    Priority of learned routes. range[0-4294967295]
    set dhcp-relay-service {disable | enable}    Enable/disable allowing this interface to act as a DHCP relay.
    set dhcp-relay-ip {string}    DHCP relay IP address.
    set dhcp-relay-type {regular | ipsec}    DHCP relay type (regular or IPsec).
        regular    Regular DHCP relay.
        ipsec      DHCP relay for IPsec.
    set dhcp-relay-agent-option {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DHCP relay agent option.
    set management-ip {ipv4 classnet host}    High Availability in-band management IP address of this interface.
    set ip {ipv4 classnet host}    Interface IPv4 address and subnet mask, syntax: X.X.X.X/24.
    set allowaccess {option}    Permitted types of management access to this interface.
        ping      PING access.
        https     HTTPS access.
        ssh       SSH access.
        snmp      SNMP access.
        http      HTTP access.
        telnet    TELNET access.
        fgfm      FortiManager access.
        radius-acct    RADIUS accounting access.

```

```

        probe-response  Probe access.
        capwap          CAPWAP access.
        ftm             FTM access.
set gwdetect {enable | disable}  Enable/disable detect gateway alive for first.
set ping-serv-status {integer}   PING server status. range[0-255]
set detectserver {string}       Gateway's ping server for this IP.
set detectprotocol {ping | tcp-echo | udp-echo}  Protocols used to detect the server.
        ping          PING.
        tcp-echo      TCP echo.
        udp-echo      UDP echo.
set ha-priority {integer}  HA election priority for the PING server. range[1-50]
set fail-detect {enable | disable}  Enable/disable fail detection features for this interface.
set fail-detect-option {detectserver | link-down}  Options for detecting that this interface has failed.
        detectserver  Use a ping server to determine if the interface has failed.
        link-down     Use port detection to determine if the interface has failed.
set fail-alert-method {link-failed-signal | link-down}  Select link-failed-signal or link-down method to alert
about a failed link.
        link-failed-signal  Link-failed-signal.
        link-down          Link-down.
set fail-action-on-extender {soft-restart | hard-restart | reboot}  Action on extender when interface fail .
        soft-restart  Soft-restart-on-extender.
        hard-restart  Hard-restart-on-extender.
        reboot        Reboot-on-extender.
config fail-alert-interfaces
    edit {name}
        # Names of the FortiGate interfaces from which the link failure alert is sent for this interface.
        set name {string}  Names of the physical interfaces belonging to the aggregate or redundant interface.
size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        next
        set dhcp-client-identifier {string}  DHCP client identifier. size[48]
        set dhcp-renew-time {integer}  DHCP renew time in seconds (300-604800), 0 means use the renew time provided by
the server. range[300-604800]
        set ipunnumbered {ipv4 address}  Unnumbered IP used for PPPoE interfaces for which no unique local address is
provided.
        set username {string}  Username of the PPPoE account, provided by your ISP. size[64]
        set pppoe-unnumbered-negotiate {enable | disable}  Enable/disable PPPoE unnumbered negotiation.
        set password {password_string}  PPPoE account's password. size[128]
        set idle-timeout {integer}  PPPoE auto disconnect after idle timeout seconds, 0 means no timeout. range[0-
32767]
        set detected-peer-mtu {integer}  MTU of detected peer (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295]

```

```
set disc-retry-timeout {integer}    Time in seconds to wait before retrying to start a PPPoE discovery, 0 means
no timeout. range[0-4294967295]
set padt-retry-timeout {integer}    PPPoE Active Discovery Terminate (PADT) used to terminate sessions after an
idle time. range[0-4294967295]
set service-name {string}          PPPoE service name. size[63]
set ac-name {string}               PPPoE server name. size[63]
set lcp-echo-interval {integer}     Time in seconds between PPPoE Link Control Protocol (LCP) echo requests. range
[0-32767]
set lcp-max-echo-fails {integer}    Maximum missed LCP echo messages before disconnect. range[0-32767]
set defaultgw {enable | disable}   Enable to get the gateway IP from the DHCP or PPPoE server.
set dns-server-override {enable | disable} Enable/disable use DNS acquired by DHCP or PPPoE.
set auth-type {option}             PPP authentication type to use.
    auto                           Automatically choose authentication.
    pap                            PAP authentication.
    chap                           CHAP authentication.
    mschapv1                       MS-CHAPv1 authentication.
    mschapv2                       MS-CHAPv2 authentication.
set pptp-client {enable | disable}  Enable/disable PPTP client.
set pptp-user {string}              PPTP user name. size[64]
set pptp-password {password_string} PPTP password. size[128]
set pptp-server-ip {ipv4 address}   PPTP server IP address.
set pptp-auth-type {option}         PPTP authentication type.
    auto                           Automatically choose authentication.
    pap                            PAP authentication.
    chap                           CHAP authentication.
    mschapv1                       MS-CHAPv1 authentication.
    mschapv2                       MS-CHAPv2 authentication.
set pptp-timeout {integer}          Idle timer in minutes (0 for disabled). range[0-65535]
set arpforward {enable | disable}   Enable/disable ARP forwarding.
set ndiscforward {enable | disable} Enable/disable NDISC forwarding.
set broadcast-forward {enable | disable} Enable/disable broadcast forwarding.
set bfd {global | enable | disable} Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) settings.
set bfd-desired-min-tx {integer}    BFD desired minimal transmit interval. range[1-100000]
set bfd-detect-mult {integer}       BFD detection multiplier. range[1-50]
set bfd-required-min-rx {integer}    BFD required minimal receive interval. range[1-100000]
set l2forward {enable | disable}    Enable/disable l2 forwarding.
set icmp-send-redirect {enable | disable} Enable/disable ICMP send redirect.
set icmp-accept-redirect {enable | disable} Enable/disable ICMP accept redirect.
set vlanforward {enable | disable}  Enable/disable traffic forwarding between VLANs on this interface.
set stpforward {enable | disable}   Enable/disable STP forwarding.
```

```

set stpforward-mode {rpl-all-ext-id | rpl-bridge-ext-id | rpl-nothing}  Configure STP forwarding mode.
    rpl-all-ext-id      Replace all extension IDs (root, bridge).
    rpl-bridge-ext-id   Replace the bridge extension ID only.
    rpl-nothing         Replace nothing.
set ips-sniffer-mode {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the use of this interface as a one-armed sniffer.
set ident-accept {enable | disable}  Enable/disable authentication for this interface.
set ipmac {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IP/MAC binding.
set subst {enable | disable}  Enable to always send packets from this interface to a destination MAC address.
set macaddr {mac address}  Change the interface's MAC address.
set substitute-dst-mac {mac address}  Destination MAC address that all packets are sent to from this interface.
set speed {option}  Interface speed. The default setting and the options available depend on the interface hardware.

    auto      Automatically adjust speed.
    10full    10M full-duplex.
    10half    10M half-duplex.
    100full   100M full-duplex.
    100half   100M half-duplex.
    1000full  1000M full-duplex.
    1000half  1000M half-duplex.
    1000auto  1000M auto adjust.
    10000full 10G full-duplex.
    10000auto 10G auto.
    40000full 40G full-duplex.
    25000full 25G full-duplex.
    100Gfull  100G full-duplex.

set status {up | down}  Bring the interface up or shut the interface down.
    up      Bring the interface up.
    down    Shut the interface down.
set netbios-forward {disable | enable}  Enable/disable NETBIOS forwarding.
set wins-ip {ipv4 address}  WINS server IP.
set type {option}  Interface type.
    physical      Physical interface.
    vlan          VLAN interface.
    aggregate     Aggregate interface.
    redundant     Redundant interface.
    tunnel        Tunnel interface.
    vdom-link     VDOM link interface.
    loopback      Loopback interface.
    switch        Software switch interface.
    hard-switch   Hardware switch interface.

```

```
    vap-switch    VAP interface.
    wl-mesh       WLAN mesh interface.
    fext-wan      FortiExtender interface.
    vxlan         VXLAN interface.
    hdlc          T1/E1 interface.
    switch-vlan   Switch VLAN interface.
    emac-vlan     EMAC VLAN interface.
set dedicated-to {none | management}  Configure interface for single purpose.
    none          Interface not dedicated for any purpose.
    management    Dedicate this interface for management purposes only.
set trust-ip-1 {ipv4 classnet any}    Trusted host for dedicated management traffic (0.0.0.0/24 for all hosts).
set trust-ip-2 {ipv4 classnet any}    Trusted host for dedicated management traffic (0.0.0.0/24 for all hosts).
set trust-ip-3 {ipv4 classnet any}    Trusted host for dedicated management traffic (0.0.0.0/24 for all hosts).
set trust-ip6-1 {ipv6 prefix}        Trusted IPv6 host for dedicated management traffic (::/0 for all hosts).
set trust-ip6-2 {ipv6 prefix}        Trusted IPv6 host for dedicated management traffic (::/0 for all hosts).
set trust-ip6-3 {ipv6 prefix}        Trusted IPv6 host for dedicated management traffic (::/0 for all hosts).
set mtu-override {enable | disable}  Enable to set a custom MTU for this interface.
set mtu {integer}                    MTU value for this interface. range[0-4294967295]
set wccp {enable | disable}          Enable/disable WCCP on this interface. Used for encapsulated WCCP communication
between WCCP clients and servers.
set netflow-sampler {disable | tx | rx | both}  Enable/disable NetFlow on this interface and set the data that
NetFlow collects (rx, tx, or both).
    disable      Disable NetFlow protocol on this interface.
    tx           Monitor transmitted traffic on this interface.
    rx           Monitor received traffic on this interface.
    both         Monitor transmitted/received traffic on this interface.
set sflow-sampler {enable | disable}  Enable/disable sFlow on this interface.
set drop-overlapped-fragment {enable | disable}  Enable/disable drop overlapped fragment packets.
set drop-fragment {enable | disable}  Enable/disable drop fragment packets.
set scan-botnet-connections {disable | block | monitor}  Enable monitoring or blocking connections to Botnet
servers through this interface.
    disable      Do not scan connections to botnet servers.
    block        Block connections to botnet servers.
    monitor      Log connections to botnet servers.
set src-check {enable | disable}      Enable/disable source IP check.
set sample-rate {integer}              sFlow sample rate (10 - 99999). range[10-99999]
set polling-interval {integer}         sFlow polling interval (1 - 255 sec). range[1-255]
set sample-direction {tx | rx | both}  Data that NetFlow collects (rx, tx, or both).
    tx           Monitor transmitted traffic on this interface.
    rx           Monitor received traffic on this interface.
```

```

        both Monitor transmitted/received traffic on this interface.
set explicit-web-proxy {enable | disable} Enable/disable the explicit web proxy on this interface.
set explicit-ftp-proxy {enable | disable} Enable/disable the explicit FTP proxy on this interface.
set proxy-captive-portal {enable | disable} Enable/disable proxy captive portal on this interface.
set tcp-mss {integer} TCP maximum segment size. 0 means do not change segment size. range[0-4294967295]
set mediatype {option} Select SFP media interface type
    sr Use Short Range transceiver
    lr Use Long Range transceiver
    cr Use Copper transceiver
    sr4 Use Short Range transceiver(4 lane)
    lr4 Use Long Range transceiver(4 lane)
    cr4 Use Copper transceiver(4 lane)
set inbandwidth {integer} Bandwidth limit for incoming traffic (0 - 16776000 kbps), 0 means unlimited. range
[0-16776000]
set outbandwidth {integer} Bandwidth limit for outgoing traffic (0 - 16776000 kbps). range[0-16776000]
set egress-shaping-profile {string} Outgoing traffic shaping profile. size[35]
set disconnect-threshold {integer} Time in milliseconds to wait before sending a notification that this inter-
face is down or disconnected. range[0-10000]
set spillover-threshold {integer} Egress Spillover threshold (0 - 16776000 kbps), 0 means unlimited. range[0-
16776000]
set ingress-spillover-threshold {integer} Ingress Spillover threshold (0 - 16776000 kbps). range[0-16776000]
set weight {integer} Default weight for static routes (if route has no weight configured). range[0-255]
set interface {string} Interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
set external {enable | disable} Enable/disable identifying the interface as an external interface (which usu-
ally means it's connected to the Internet).
set vlanid {integer} VLAN ID (1 - 4094). range[1-4094]
set forward-domain {integer} Transparent mode forward domain. range[0-2147483647]
set remote-ip {ipv4 classnet host} Remote IP address of tunnel.
config member
    edit {interface-name}
        # Physical interfaces that belong to the aggregate or redundant interface.
        set interface-name {string} Physical interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    next
set lacp-mode {static | passive | active} LACP mode.
    static Use static aggregation, do not send and ignore any LACP messages.
    passive Passively use LACP to negotiate 802.3ad aggregation.
    active Actively use LACP to negotiate 802.3ad aggregation.
set lacp-ha-slave {enable | disable} LACP HA slave.
set lacp-speed {slow | fast} How often the interface sends LACP messages.
    slow Send LACP message every 30 seconds.

```



```
        fast    Send LACP message every second.
set min-links {integer}    Minimum number of aggregated ports that must be up. range[1-32]
set min-links-down {operational | administrative}    Action to take when less than the configured minimum number
of links are active.
        operational    Set the aggregate operationally down.
        administrative    Set the aggregate administratively down.
set algorithm {L2 | L3 | L4}    Frame distribution algorithm.
        L2    Use layer 2 address for distribution.
        L3    Use layer 3 address for distribution.
        L4    Use layer 4 information for distribution.
set link-up-delay {integer}    Number of milliseconds to wait before considering a link is up. range[50-3600000]
set priority-override {enable | disable}    Enable/disable fail back to higher priority port once recovered.
set aggregate {string}    Aggregate interface. size[15]
set redundant-interface {string}    Redundant interface. size[15]
config managed-device
    edit {name}
        # Available when FortiLink is enabled, used for managed devices through FortiLink interface.
        set name {string}    Managed dev identifier. size[64]
    next
set devindex {integer}    Device Index. range[0-4294967295]
set vindex {integer}    Switch control interface VLAN ID. range[0-65535]
set switch {string}    Contained in switch. size[15]
set description {string}    Description. size[255]
set alias {string}    Alias will be displayed with the interface name to make it easier to distinguish. size[25]
set security-mode {none | captive-portal | 802.1X}    Turn on captive portal authentication for this interface.
        none    No security option.
        captive-portal    Captive portal authentication.
        802.1X    802.1X port-based authentication.
set captive-portal {integer}    Enable/disable captive portal. range[0-4294967295]
set security-mac-auth-bypass {enable | disable}    Enable/disable MAC authentication bypass.
set security-external-web {string}    URL of external authentication web server. size[127]
set security-external-logout {string}    URL of external authentication logout server. size[127]
set replacemsg-override-group {string}    Replacement message override group. size[35]
set security-redirect-url {string}    URL redirection after disclaimer/authentication. size[127]
set security-exempt-list {string}    Name of security-exempt-list. size[35]
config security-groups
    edit {name}
        # User groups that can authenticate with the captive portal.
        set name {string}    Names of user groups that can authenticate with the captive portal. size[64]
    next
```

```

    set device-identification {enable | disable}    Enable/disable passively gathering of device identity information
about the devices on the network connected to this interface.
    set device-user-identification {enable | disable}    Enable/disable passive gathering of user identity inform-
ation about users on this interface.
    set device-identification-active-scan {enable | disable}    Enable/disable active gathering of device identity
information about the devices on the network connected to this interface.
    set device-access-list {string}    Device access list. size[35]
    set device-netscan {disable | enable}    Enable/disable inclusion of devices detected on this interface in net-
work vulnerability scans.
    set lldp-transmission {enable | disable | vdom}    Enable/disable Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) trans-
mission.
    set fortiheartbeat {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiHeartBeat (FortiTelemetry on GUI).
    set broadcast-forticlient-discovery {enable | disable}    Enable/disable broadcasting FortiClient discovery mes-
sages.
    set endpoint-compliance {enable | disable}    Enable/disable endpoint compliance enforcement.
    set estimated-upstream-bandwidth {integer}    Estimated maximum upstream bandwidth (kbps). Used to estimate link
utilization. range[0-4294967295]
    set estimated-downstream-bandwidth {integer}    Estimated maximum downstream bandwidth (kbps). Used to estimate
link utilization. range[0-4294967295]
    set vrrp-virtual-mac {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of virtual MAC for VRRP.
config vrrp
    edit {vrid}
    # VRRP configuration.
    set vrid {integer}    Virtual router identifier (1 - 255). range[1-255]
    set version {2 | 3}    VRRP version.
        2    VRRP version 2.
        3    VRRP version 3.
    set vrgrp {integer}    VRRP group ID (1 - 65535). range[1-65535]
    set vrip {ipv4 address any}    IP address of the virtual router.
    set priority {integer}    Priority of the virtual router (1 - 255). range[1-255]
    set adv-interval {integer}    Advertisement interval (1 - 255 seconds). range[1-255]
    set start-time {integer}    Startup time (1 - 255 seconds). range[1-255]
    set preempt {enable | disable}    Enable/disable preempt mode.
    set accept-mode {enable | disable}    Enable/disable accept mode.
    set vrdst {ipv4 address any}    Monitor the route to this destination.
    set vrdst-priority {integer}    Priority of the virtual router when the virtual router destination
becomes unreachable (0 - 254). range[0-254]
    set ignore-default-route {enable | disable}    Enable/disable ignoring of default route when checking des-
tination.
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this VRRP configuration.

```

```
config proxy-arp
    edit {id}
        # VRRP Proxy ARP configuration.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set ip {string}     Set IP addresses of proxy ARP.
    next
next
set role {lan | wan | dmz | undefined}    Interface role.
    lan        Connected to local network of endpoints.
    wan        Connected to Internet.
    dmz        Connected to server zone.
    undefined  Interface has no specific role.
set snmp-index {integer}    Permanent SNMP Index of the interface. range[0-4294967295]
set secondary-IP {enable | disable}    Enable/disable adding a secondary IP to this interface.
config secondaryip
    edit {id}
        # Second IP address of interface.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set ip {ipv4 classnet host}    Secondary IP address of the interface.
        set allowaccess {option}    Management access settings for the secondary IP address.
            ping        PING access.
            https       HTTPS access.
            ssh         SSH access.
            snmp        SNMP access.
            http        HTTP access.
            telnet      TELNET access.
            fgfm        FortiManager access.
            radius-acct  RADIUS accounting access.
            probe-response  Probe access.
            capwap      CAPWAP access.
            ftm         FTM access.
        set gwdetect {enable | disable}    Enable/disable detect gateway alive for first.
        set ping-serv-status {integer}    PING server status. range[0-255]
        set detectserver {string}    Gateway's ping server for this IP.
        set detectprotocol {ping | tcp-echo | udp-echo}    Protocols used to detect the server.
            ping        PING.
            tcp-echo    TCP echo.
            udp-echo    UDP echo.
        set ha-priority {integer}    HA election priority for the PING server. range[1-50]
    next
```

```

    set preserve-session-route {enable | disable}    Enable/disable preservation of session route when dirty.
    set auto-auth-extension-device {enable | disable}  Enable/disable automatic authorization of dedicated Fortinet
extension device on this interface.
    set ap-discover {enable | disable}    Enable/disable automatic registration of unknown FortiAP devices.
    set fortilink-stacking {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiLink switch-stacking on this interface.
    set fortilink-split-interface {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiLink split interface to connect member
link to different FortiSwitch in stack for uplink redundancy (maximum 2 interfaces in the "members" command).
    set internal {integer}    Implicitly created. range[0-255]
    set fortilink-backup-link {integer}    fortilink split interface backup link. range[0-255]
    set switch-controller-access-vlan {enable | disable}    Block FortiSwitch port-to-port traffic.
    set switch-controller-igmp-snooping {enable | disable}    Switch controller IGMP snooping.
    set switch-controller-dhcp-snooping {enable | disable}    Switch controller DHCP snooping.
    set switch-controller-dhcp-snooping-verify-mac {enable | disable}    Switch controller DHCP snooping verify MAC.
    set switch-controller-dhcp-snooping-option82 {enable | disable}    Switch controller DHCP snooping option82.
    set switch-controller-arp-inspection {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiSwitch ARP inspection.
    set switch-controller-learning-limit {integer}    Limit the number of dynamic MAC addresses on this VLAN (1 -
128, 0 = no limit, default). range[0-128]
    set color {integer}    Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
    config tagging
        edit {name}
        # Config object tagging.
        set name {string}    Tagging entry name. size[63]
        set category {string}    Tag category. size[63] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.category
        config tags
            edit {name}
            # Tags.
            set name {string}    Tag name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.tags.name
        next
    next
    set forward-error-correction {enable | disable}    Enable/disable forward error correction (FEC).
    config ipv6
        set ip6-mode {static | dhcp | pppoe | delegated}    Addressing mode (static, DHCP, delegated).
            static    Static setting.
            dhcp    DHCPv6 client mode.
            pppoe    IPv6 over PPPoE mode.
            delegated    IPv6 address with delegated prefix.
        set nd-mode {basic | SEND-compatible}    Neighbor discovery mode.
            basic    Do not support SEND.
            SEND-compatible    Support SEND.
        set nd-cert {string}    Neighbor discovery certificate. size[35] - datasource(s): certificate.local.name

```

```

        set nd-security-level {integer}    Neighbor discovery security level (0 - 7; 0 = least secure, default = 0).
range[0-7]
        set nd-timestamp-delta {integer}    Neighbor discovery timestamp delta value (1 - 3600 sec; default = 300).
range[1-3600]
        set nd-timestamp-fuzz {integer}    Neighbor discovery timestamp fuzz factor (1 - 60 sec; default = 1). range
[1-60]
        set nd-cga-modifier {string}    Neighbor discovery CGA modifier.
        set ip6-dns-server-override {enable | disable}    Enable/disable using the DNS server acquired by DHCP.
        set ip6-address {ipv6 prefix}    Primary IPv6 address prefix, syntax:
xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx/xxx
        config ip6-extra-addr
            edit {prefix}
            # Extra IPv6 address prefixes of interface.
            set prefix {ipv6 prefix}    IPv6 address prefix.
        next
        set ip6-allowaccess {option}    Allow management access to the interface.
            ping    PING access.
            https    HTTPS access.
            ssh    SSH access.
            snmp    SNMP access.
            http    HTTP access.
            telnet    TELNET access.
            fgfm    FortiManager access.
            capwap    CAPWAP access.
        set ip6-send-adv {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sending advertisements about the interface.
        set ip6-manage-flag {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the managed flag.
        set ip6-other-flag {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the other IPv6 flag.
        set ip6-max-interval {integer}    IPv6 maximum interval (4 to 1800 sec). range[4-1800]
        set ip6-min-interval {integer}    IPv6 minimum interval (3 to 1350 sec). range[3-1350]
        set ip6-link-mtu {integer}    IPv6 link MTU. range[1280-16000]
        set ip6-reachable-time {integer}    IPv6 reachable time (milliseconds; 0 means unspecified). range[0-3600000]
        set ip6-retrans-time {integer}    IPv6 retransmit time (milliseconds; 0 means unspecified). range[0-
4294967295]
        set ip6-default-life {integer}    Default life (sec). range[0-9000]
        set ip6-hop-limit {integer}    Hop limit (0 means unspecified). range[0-255]
        set autoconf {enable | disable}    Enable/disable address auto config.
        set ip6-upstream-interface {string}    Interface name providing delegated information. size[15] - datasource
(s): system.interface.name
        set ip6-subnet {ipv6 prefix}    Subnet to routing prefix, syntax:
xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx/xxx

```

```

config ip6-prefix-list
  edit {prefix}
  # Advertised prefix list.
  set prefix {ipv6 network}    IPv6 prefix.
  set autonomous-flag {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the autonomous flag.
  set onlink-flag {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the onlink flag.
  set valid-life-time {integer}    Valid life time (sec). range[0-4294967295]
  set preferred-life-time {integer}    Preferred life time (sec). range[0-4294967295]
  set rdns {string}    Recursive DNS server option.
  config dnssl
    edit {domain}
    # DNS search list option.
    set domain {string}    Domain name. size[79]
  next
next
config ip6-delegated-prefix-list
  edit {prefix-id}
  # Advertised IPv6 delegated prefix list.
  set prefix-id {integer}    Prefix ID. range[0-4294967295]
  set upstream-interface {string}    Name of the interface that provides delegated information. size
[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
  set autonomous-flag {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the autonomous flag.
  set onlink-flag {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the onlink flag.
  set subnet {ipv6 network}    Add subnet ID to routing prefix.
  set rdns-service {delegated | default | specify}    Recursive DNS service option.
    delegated    Delegated RDNS settings.
    default    System RDNS settings.
    specify    Specify recursive DNS servers.
  set rdns {string}    Recursive DNS server option.
next
set dhcp6-relay-service {disable | enable}    Enable/disable DHCPv6 relay.
set dhcp6-relay-type {regular}    DHCPv6 relay type.
  regular    Regular DHCP relay.
set dhcp6-relay-ip {string}    DHCPv6 relay IP address.
set dhcp6-client-options {rapid | iapd | iana}    DHCPv6 client options.
  rapid    Send rapid commit option.
  iapd    Send including IA-PD option.
  iana    Send including IA-NA option.
set dhcp6-prefix-delegation {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DHCPv6 prefix delegation.
set dhcp6-information-request {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DHCPv6 information request.

```

```
server.
    set dhcp6-prefix-hint {ipv6 network}    DHCPv6 prefix that will be used as a hint to the upstream DHCPv6
time. range[0-4294967295]
    set dhcp6-prefix-hint-plt {integer}    DHCPv6 prefix hint preferred life time (sec), 0 means unlimited lease
time. range[0-4294967295]
    set dhcp6-prefix-hint-vlt {integer}    DHCPv6 prefix hint valid life time (sec). range[0-4294967295]
    set vrrp-virtual-mac6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable virtual MAC for VRRP.
    set vrip6_link_local {ipv6 address}    Link-local IPv6 address of virtual router.
config vrrp6
    edit {vrid}
    # IPv6 VRRP configuration.
    set vrid {integer}    Virtual router identifier (1 - 255). range[1-255]
    set vrgrp {integer}    VRRP group ID (1 - 65535). range[1-65535]
    set vrip6 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 address of the virtual router.
    set priority {integer}    Priority of the virtual router (1 - 255). range[1-255]
    set adv-interval {integer}    Advertisement interval (1 - 255 seconds). range[1-255]
    set start-time {integer}    Startup time (1 - 255 seconds). range[1-255]
    set preempt {enable | disable}    Enable/disable preempt mode.
    set accept-mode {enable | disable}    Enable/disable accept mode.
    set vrdst6 {ipv6 address}    Monitor the route to this destination.
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable VRRP.
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

vdom <string>

Vdom name to which this interface belong, default is root.

mode {static | dhcp | pppoe}

The interface IP addressing: static, from external dhcp or external pppoe.

distance <integer>

The administrative distance for routes learned through PPPoE or DHCP, lower distance indicates preferred route for the same destination, value between 1 to 255.

priority <integer>

The priority of routes using this interface, lower priority indicates preferred route for the same destination, value between 0 to 4294967295, available when mode set to DHCP or PPPoE.

dhcp-relay-agent-option {enable | disable}

Enable or disable DHCP relay option 82. See [RFC 3046](#): DHCP Relay Agent Information Option.

dhcp-relay-ip <ip>

The IP of DHCP relay server.

dhcp-relay-service {disable | enable}

Disable or enable DHCP relay service on this interface, default is disable.

dhcp-relay-type {regular | ipsec}

Set a regular or an IPsec relay type on this interface.

dhcp-client-identifier <string>

Used to override the default DHCP client ID created by the FortiGate.

ip <ip & netmask>

The interface's IP and subnet mask, syntax: X.X.X.X/24.

allowaccess {ping | https | ssh | snmp | http | telnet | ...}

Permitted access type on this interface:

- fgfm: FortiManager access.
- radius-acct: RADIUS accounting access.
- probe-response: Probe access.
- capwap: CAPWAP access.

fail-detect {enable | disable}

Enable or disable interface failed options.

fail-detect-option {detectserver | link-down}

Select whether the FortiGate detects interface failure by ping server (detectserver) or port detection (link-down), detectserver is only available in NAT mode.

fail-alert-method {link-failed-signal | link-down}

Select link-failed-signal or link-down method to alert about a failed link.

fail-alert-interfaces {port1 | port2 | ...}

The names of the FortiGate interfaces from which the link failure alert is sent for this interface.

ipunnumbered <ip>

The Unnumbered IP used for PPPoE interfaces for which no unique local address is provided. If you have been assigned a block of IP addresses by your ISP you can add any of these IP.

username <string>

The username of the PPPoE account, provided by your ISP.

password <passwd>

The PPPoE account's password.

idle-timeout <integer>

Idle time in seconds after which the PPPoE session is disconnected, 0 for no timeout.

disc-retry-timeout <integer>

The time in seconds to wait before retrying to start a PPPoE discovery, 0 to disable this feature.

padt-retry-timeout <integer>

PPPoE Active Discovery Terminate (PADT) timeout in seconds used to shut down the PPPoE session if it is idle for this number of seconds. PADT must be supported by your ISP.

service-name <string>

Set a name for this PPPoE service.

ac-name <string>

Set the PPPoE server name.

lcp-echo-interval <integer>

The time in seconds between PPPoE Link Control Protocol (LCP) echo requests, default is 5.

lcp-max-echo-fails <integer>

Maximum number of missed LCP echoes before the PPPoE link is disconnected, default is 3.

defaultgw {enable | disable}

Enable to get the gateway IP from the DHCP or PPPoE server, default is enable.

dns-server-override {enable | disable}

Disable to prevent this interface from using a DNS server acquired via DHCP or PPPoE, default is enable.

pptp-client {enable | disable}

Enable or disable the use of point-to-point tunneling protocol (PPTP) client, available in static mode only, default is disable.

pptp-user <string>

PPTP end user name.

pptp-password <passwd>

PPTP end user password.

pptp-server-ip <ip>

PPTP server's IP address.

pptp-auth-type {auto | pap | chap | mschapv1 | mschapv2}

The server authentication type, default is auto.

pptp-timeout <integer>

Idle timeout in minutes to shut down the PPTP session, values between 0 to 65534 (65534 minutes is 45 days), 0 for disabled, default is 0.

arpforward {enable | disable}

Enable or disable ARP packets forwarding on this interface, default is enable.

broadcast-forward {enable | disable}

Enable or disable automatic forwarding of broadcast packets, default is disable.

priority-override {enable | disable}

Enable or disable fail back to higher priority port once recovered. Once enabled, `priority-override` on redundant interfaces gives greater priority to interfaces that are higher in the member list.

bfd {global | enable | disable}

Use the global setting, enable, or disable Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (bfd) on this interface, global bfd settings is in config system settings, default is global.

l2forward {enable | disable}

Enable or disable layer-2 forwarding for this interface, default is disable.

icmp-accept-redirect {enable | disable}

Enable or disable accepting ICMP redirect messages on this interface. This can be useful if you need to disable accepting ICMP redirects while still permitting the sending of ICMP redirects.

icmp-send-redirect {enable | disable}

Enable or disable sending ICMP redirect messages from this interface. FortiGate send ICMP redirect messages to notify the original sender of packets if there is a better route available, default is enable.

vlanforward {enable | disable}

Enable or disable traffic forwarding between VLANs on this interface, default is disable. This option is only effective in transparent mode.

stpforward {enable | disable}

Enable or disable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) packets forward. STP creates a spanning tree within a network of connected layer-2 bridges while disabling all other links, leaving a single active path between any two network nodes to prevent any loops which would flood the network.

stpforward-mode {rpl-all-ext-id | rpl-bridge-ext-id | ...}

Set the STP forward mode:

- rpl-all-ext-id: Replace all root and bridge extension IDs, the default mode.
- rpl-bridge-ext-id : Replace the bridge extension ID only.
- rpl-nothing: Do not replace anything.

ips-sniffer-mode {enable | disable}

Enable or disable the use of this interface as a one-armed sniffer as part of configuring a FortiGate unit to operate as an IDS appliance by sniffing packets for attacks without processing packets. when enabled you cannot use the interface for other traffic, default is disable.

ident-accept {enable | disable}

Enable or disable passing packets identification on TCP port 113 to the firewall policy used to determine a user's identity on a particular TCP connection, default is disable. Enable or disable passing packets identification on TCP port 113 to the firewall policy used to determine a user's identity on a particular TCP connection, default is disable.

switch-controller-access-vlan {enable | disable}

Note: This setting's definition has been modified from a previous release.

VLAN access status:

- enable: Block FortiSwitch port-to-port traffic on the VLAN, only permitting traffic to and from the FortiGate.
- disable: Allow normal VLAN traffic.

switch-controller-arp-inspection {enable | disable}

Enable or disable ARP inspection for FortiSwitch devices.

Dynamic ARP Inspection (DAI) enables FortiSwitch to intercept and examine all ARP request and response packets in a subnet and discard those packets with invalid IP to MAC address bindings. DAI can prevent common man-in-the-middle (MiM) attacks such as ARP cache poisoning and disallow mis-configuration of client IP addresses.

ipmac {enable | disable}

Enable or disable IP/MAC binding for the specified interface, default is disable. More information available in `config firewall ipmacbinding setting` command.

subst {enable | disable}

Enable to always send packets from this interface to the same destination MAC address. Use `substitute-dst-mac` to set the destination MAC address. Disabled by default.

macaddr <mac>

Override the factory MAC address of this interface by specifying a new MAC address.

substitute-dst-mac <mac>

The destination MAC address that all packets are sent to from this interface if `subst` is enabled.

speed {auto | 10full | 10half | etc }

The interface speed. The default setting and the speeds available depend on the interface hardware. Most often speed is set to `auto` and the interface negotiates with connected equipment to select the best speed. You can set specific speeds if the connected equipment doesn't support negotiation. Some FortiGate interface hardware does not support `auto`. In which case set the interface speed to match the connected network equipment speed.

Enter a space and a "?" after the speed field to display a list of speeds available for your model and interface.

status {up | down}

Start or stop the interface, when stopped, it does not accept or send packets.

If you stop a physical interface, associated virtual interfaces such as VLAN interfaces will also stop.

netbios-forward {disable | enable}

Enable to forward Network Basic Input Output System (NetBIOS) broadcasts to a Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) server. Enable to forward Network Basic Input Output System (NetBIOS) broadcasts to a Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) server.

wins-ip <ip>

The IP address of a WINS server to which NetBIOS broadcasts is forwarded.

type <interface-type>

Enter set type ? to see a list of the interface types that can be created.

mtu-override {enable | disable}

Select `enable` to use custom MTU size instead of default 1500.

mtu <integer>

Set a new MTU value.

wccp {enable | disable}

Enable or disable Web Cache Communication Protocol (WCCP) on this interface, default is disable.

netflow-sampler {disable | tx | rx | both}

Disable or choose how to use netflow on this interface:

- tx: Monitor transmitted traffic.
- rx: Monitor received traffic.
- both: Monitor both direction traffic.

sflow-sampler {enable | disable}

Enable or disable sflow protocol on this interface, default is disable. More information on sflow in `config system sflow` command.

drop-overlapped-fragment {enable | disable}

Enable or disable dropping overlapped packet fragments, default is disable.

drop-fragment {enable | disable}

Enable to drop fragmented packets, default is disable.

scan-botnet-connections {disable | block | monitor}

Disable or choose how to handle connections to botnet servers:

- **block**: Terminate connections
- **monitor**: Log connections.

sample-rate <integer>

The average number of packets that the sFlow Agent lets pass before taking a sample. The range is 10 to 99999. The default is 2000.

For example, if you set this to 1000, the sFlow Agent samples 1 out of every 1000 packets.

If you set a lower rate, the sFlow Agent samples a higher number of packets, which increases the accuracy of the sampling data. However, this also increases the amount of CPU resources and network bandwidth that sFlow uses.

In most cases, the default sample rate of 2000 provides enough accuracy.

polling-interval <integer>

The amount of time, in seconds, that the sFlow Agent waits between sending sFlow Datagrams to the sFlow Collector. The range is 1 to 255 seconds. The default is 20 seconds.

If you set a higher polling interval, the sFlow Agent sends less data across your network, but the sFlow Collector's view of your network won't be as up-to-date as it would if you set a lower polling interval.

sample-direction {tx | rx | both}

The direction of the traffic that the sFlow Agent samples:

- **tx**: Samples the traffic that the interface sends
- **rx**: Samples the traffic that the interface receives
- **both**: Samples the traffic that the interface sends and receives

explicit-web-proxy {enable | disable}

Enable or disable explicit Web proxy on this interface, default is disable.

explicit-ftp-proxy {enable | disable}

Enable or disable explicit FTP proxy on this interface, default is disable.

tcp-mss <integer>

The Maximum Size Segment (mss) for TCP connections, it is used when there is an MTU mismatch or DF (Don't Fragment) bit is set.

inbandwidth <integer>

The limit of ingress traffic, in Kbit/sec, on this interface, default is 0 which indicate unlimited.

outbandwidth <integer>

The limit of egress traffic, in Kbit/sec, on this interface, default is 0 which indicate unlimited.

spillover-threshold <integer>

Egress Spillover threshold in kbps used for load balancing traffic between interfaces, range from 0 to 16776000, default is 0.

ingress-spillover-threshold <integer>

Ingress Spillover threshold in kbps, range from 0 to 16776000, default is 0.

weight <integer>

Set the default weight for static routes on this interface. This applies when the route has no weight configured.

external {enable | disable}

Enable or disable identifying if this interface is connected to external side.

config managed-device

Available when `fortilink` is enabled, used for managed devices through fortilink interface.

edit <name>

The identifier of the managed device.

description <string>

Optionally describe this interface.

alias <string>

Optionally set an alias which will be displayed with the interface name to make it easier to distinguish.

l2tp-client {enable | disable}

Enable or disable this interface as a Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) client.

You may need to enable l2forward on this interface, default is disable.

security-mode {none | captive-portal}

Available when `fortilink` is disabled, `captive-portal` allow access to only authenticated members through this interface.

security-mac-auth-bypass {enable | disable}

Enable or disable MAC address authentication bypass.

security-external-web <string>

The URL of an external authentication web server, available when `security-mode` is set to `captive-portal`.

security-external-logout <string>

The URL of an external authentication logout server, available when `security-mode` is set to `captive-portal`.

replacemsg-override-group <group-name>

Specify replacement message override group name, this is for captive portal messages when `security-mode` is set to `captive-portal`.

security-redirect-url <string>

Specify URL redirection after captive portal authentication or disclaimer.

security-groups <user-group>

Optionally, enter the groups that are allowed access to this interface.

security-exempt-list <name>

Optionally specify the members will bypass the captive portal authentication.

device-identification {enable | disable}

Enable or disable passive gathering of identity information about source hosts on this interface.

device-user-identification {enable | disable}

Enable or disable passive gathering of user identity information about source hosts on this interface.

device-identification-active-scan {enable | disable}

Enable or disable active gathering of identity information about source hosts on this interface.

device-access-list <name>

Specify the device access list to use which is configured in `config user device-access-list`.

lldp-transmission {enable | disable | vdom}

Enable, disable, or apply to vdom-level the Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) transmission for this interface, default is vdom.

fortiheartbeat {enable | disable}

Enable or disable FortiHeartBeat (FortiTelemetry on GUI) which used to listen for connections from devices with FortiClient installed, default is disable.

broadcast-forticlient-discovery {enable | disable}

Enable or disable broadcast FortiClient discovery messages, default is disable.

endpoint-compliance {enable | disable}

Enable or disable endpoint compliance enforcement, default is disabled.

estimated-upstream-bandwidth <integer>

Estimated maximum upstream bandwidth in kbps, used to estimate link utilization.

estimated-downstream-bandwidth <integer>

Estimated maximum downstream bandwidth in kbps, used to estimate link utilization.

vrrp-virtual-mac {enable | disable}

Enable or disable the VRRP virtual MAC address feature for the IPv4 VRRP routers added to this interface, default is disable. See [RFC3768](#) For more information about VRRP.

config vrrp

Configure IPv4 VRRP for this interface.

vrgrp <integer>

VRRP group id.

vrrip <ip>

IPv4 address of the virtual router.

priority <integer>

The IPv4 VRRP virtual router's priority, value between 1 to 255, default is 100.

adv-interval <integer>

VRRP advertisement interval in seconds, value between 1 to 255

start-time <integer>

VRRP startup time in seconds, value between 1 to 255, default is 3.

preempt {enable | disable}

Enable or disable VRRP preempt mode, default is enable.

ignore-default-route {disable | enable}

Enable to configure VRRP to ignore the default route when looking for the `vrdst` IP address. Disabled by default.

vrdst <ip> [<ip>]

Monitor the route to one or more destination IP addresses. Register a failure of all of the configured destination addresses cannot be reached.

status {enable | disable}

Enable or disable this VRRP virtual router. Enabled by default.

role {lan | wan | dmz | undefined}

Optionally choose the interface role: lan:Connected to local network of endpoints. wan:Connected to Internet. dmz: Connected to server zone. undefined: Interface has no specific role.

snmp-index <integer>

Optionally set a permanent SNMP Index of this interface.

secondary-IP {enable | disable}

Enable or disable the use of a secondary address on this interface.

config secondaryip

ip <ip & netmask>

The interface's secondary IP and subnet mask, syntax: X.X.X.X/24.

allowaccess {ping | https | ssh | snmp | http | telnet | ...}

Permitted access type on this secondary IP:

- fgfm: FortiManager access.
- radius-acct: RADIUS accounting access.
- probe-response: Probe access.
- capwap: CAPWAP access.

auto-auth-extension-device {enable | disable}

Enable or disable automatic authorization of dedicated Fortinet extension devices on this interface, default is disabled.

ap-discover {enable | disable}

Enable or disable automatic registration of unknown FortiAP devices, default is disable.

fortilink {enable | disable}

Enable or disable FortiLink on this interface to manage other Fortinet devices such as FortiSwitch.

fortilink-stacking {enable | disable}

Enable or disable FortiLink switch-stacking on this interface.

config ipv6

ip6-mode {static | dhcp | delegated}

The addressing mode:

- static: Static setting, default mode.
- dhcp: DHCPv6 client.
- delegated: IPv6 address with delegated prefix.

ip6-dns-server-override {enable | disable}

Enable or disable using DNS acquired by DHCP.

ip6-address <ipv6>

Primary IPv6 address prefix of this interface.

config ip6-extra-addr

edit <prefix>

IPv6 address prefix.

ip6-allowaccess {ping | https | ssh | snmp | http | ...}

Allow management access to the interface:

- fgfm: FortiManager access.
- capwap: CAPWAP access.

ip6-send-adv {enable | disable}

Enable or disable the flag indicating whether or not to send periodic router advertisements and to respond to router solicitations. When enabled, this interface's address will be added to all-routers group (FF02::02) and be included in an Multi Listener Discovery (MLD) report. If no interfaces on the FortiGate unit have ip6-send-adv enabled, the FortiGate unit will only listen to the all-hosts group (FF02::01) which is explicitly excluded from MLD reports according to [RFC 2710](#) section 5.

When disabled (by default), and autoconf is enabled, the FortiGate unit acts as a stateless address auto-configuration client (SLAAC).

ip6-manage-flag {enable | disable}

Enable or disable the managed address configuration flag in router advertisements, default is enable.

ip6-other-flag {enable | disable}

Enable or disable the other stateful configuration flag in router advertisements, default is enable.

ip6-max-interval <integer>

The maximum time interval, in seconds, between sending unsolicited multicast router advertisements from the interface, value between 4 to 1800, default is 600.

ip6-min-interval <integer>

The minimum time interval, in seconds, between sending unsolicited multicast router advertisements from the interface, value between 3 to 1350, default is 198.

ip6-link-mtu <integer>

The link MTU to be added to the router advertisements options field, 0 means that no MTU options are sent.

ip6-reachable-time <integer>

The time, in milliseconds, to be added to the reachable time field in the router advertisements, value between 0 to 3600000, default is 0 which mean no reachable time is specified.

ip6-retrans-time <integer>

The number, in milliseconds, to be added to the Retrans Timer field in the router advertisements, default is 0 which mean that the Retrans Timer is not specified.

ip6-default-life <integer>

The time, in seconds, to be added to the Router Lifetime field of router advertisements sent from the interface, default is 1800.

vrrp-virtual-mac6 {enable | disable}

Enable or disable the VRRP virtual MAC address feature for the IPv6 VRRP routers added to this interface, default is disable. See [RFC3768](#) For more information about VRRP.

config ip6-prefix-list

edit <prefix>

Enter the IPv6 prefix you want to configure.

autonomous-flag {enable | disable}

Set the state of the autonomous flag for this IPv6 prefix, default is disable.

onlink-flag {enable | disable}

Set the state of the on-link flag in this IPv6 prefix, default is disable.

valid-life-time <integer>

The valid lifetime in seconds for this IPv6 prefix, default is 2592000 (30 days).

preferred-life-time <integer>

The preferred lifetime in seconds, default is 604800 (7 days).

config ip6-delegated-prefix-list

edit <prefix-id>

An ID (integer) for this ip6 delegated prefix.

upstream-interface <interface>

The interface name from where delegated information is provided.

autonomous-flag {enable | disable}

Set the state of the autonomous flag for this IPv6 delegated prefix, default is disable.

onlink-flag {enable | disable}

Set the state of the on-link flag in this IPv6 delegated prefix, default is disable.

subnet <ipv6_net>

Subnet to routing prefix, syntax: xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx/xxx

ip6-hop-limit <integer>

The number to be added to the Cur Hop Limit field in the router advertisements sent out this interface, default is 0 which mean no hop limit is specified.

nd-mode {basic | SEND-compatible}

Neighbor discovery mode, default is basic.

dhcp6-relay-service {disable | enable}

Enable or disable DHCP relay service for IPv6.

dhcp6-relay-type {regular}

Regular DHCP relay.

dhcp6-relay-ip <ipv6>

The IPv6 of one or more DHCP relays.

dhcp6-prefix-delegation {disable | enable}

Enable or disable DHCPv6 prefix delegation, default is disable.

dhcp6-prefix-hint <ipv6_net>

DHCPv6 prefix that will be used as a hint to the upstream DHCPv6 server.

dhcp6-prefix-hint-plt <integer>

DHCPv6 prefix hint preferred life time in seconds, default is 604800 (7 days).

dhcp6-prefix-hint-vlt <integer>

DHCPv6 prefix hint valid life time in seconds, default is 2592000 (30 days).

config vrrp6

Configure IPv6 VRRP.

vrgrp <integer>

IPv6 VRRP group id.

vrrip <ipv6-ip>

IPv6 address of the virtual router.

priority <integer>

The IPv6 VRRP virtual router's priority, value between 1 to 255, default is 100.

adv-interval <integer>

IPv6 VRRP advertisement interval in seconds, value between 1 to 255

start-time <integer>

VRRP startup time in seconds, value between 1 to 255, default is 3.

preempt {enable | disable}

Enable or disable VRRP preempt mode, default is enable.

vrdst <ipv6-ip> [<ipv6-ip>]

Monitor the route to one or more destination IPv6 addresses. Register a failure of all of the configured destination addresses cannot be reached.

status {enable | disable}

Enable or disable this IPv6 VRRP virtual router. Enabled by default.

config l2tp-client-settings**user <string>**

L2TP user name.

Password <passwd>

L2TP password.

peer-host <string>

The host name.

peer-mask <netmask>

The netmask.

peer-port <integer>

The port used to connect to L2TP peers, default is 1701.

auth-type {auto | pap | chap | mschapv1 | mschapv2}

Type of authentication used with this client:

- auto— automatically choose type of authentication (default).
- pap — use Password Authentication Protocol.

- chap — use Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol.
- mschapv1 — use Microsoft version of CHAP version 1.
- mschapv2 — use Microsoft version of CHAP version 2.

mtu <integer>

The Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU), value between 40 and 65535, default is 1460.

distance <integer>

The administration distance of learned routes, value between 1 to 255, default is 2.

priority <integer>

The routes priority learned through L2TP.

defaultgw {enable | disable}

Enable or disable the use the default gateway, default is disable.

wifi-ap-band {any | 5g-preferred | 5g-only}

For an FortiWiFi WiFi interface operating in client mode, you can configure the WiFi band that the interface can connect to. You can configure the interface to connect to any band, just to the 5G band, or to prefer connecting to the 5G band.

Aggregate and redundant interface options

Options for aggregate and redundant interfaces (some FortiGate models). These options are available only when type is `aggregate` or `redundant`.

algorithm {L2 | L3 | L4}

Enter the algorithm used to control how frames are distributed across links in an aggregated interface (also called a Link Aggregation Group (LAG)). The algorithm must match that used by connected switches. Enter one of:

L2 — use source and destination MAC addresses.

L3 — use source and destination IP addresses, fall back to L2 algorithm if IP information is not available.

L4 — (default) use TCP, UDP or ESP header information.

lacp-ha-slave {enable | disable}

This option affects how the aggregate interface participates in Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) negotiation when HA is enabled for the VDOM. It takes effect only if Active-Passive HA is enabled and `lacp-mode` is not static. Enter `enable` to participate in LACP negotiation as a secondary or `disable` to not participate. Enabled by default.

lacp-mode {active | passive | static}

Enter one of active, passive, or static.

active — (default) send LACP PDU packets to negotiate link aggregation connections.

passive — respond to LACP PDU packets and negotiate link aggregation connections.

static — link aggregation is configured statically.

lacp-speed {fast | slow}

slow — (default) sends LACP PDU packets every 30 seconds to negotiate link aggregation connections.

fast — sends LACP PDU packets every second, as recommended in the IEEE 802.3ad standard.

Available only when `type` is aggregate.

member <if_name1> <if_name2> ...

Specify a list of physical interfaces that are part of an aggregate or redundant group. To modify a list, enter the complete revised list.

If VDOMs are enabled, then vdom must be set the same for each interface before you enter the member list.

An interface is available to be part of an aggregate or redundant group only if:

- it is a physical interface, not a VLAN interface
- it is not already part of an aggregated or redundant interface
- it is in the same VDOM as the aggregated interface
- it has no defined IP address and is not configured for DHCP or PPPoE

- it has no DHCP server or relay configured on it
- it does not have any VLAN subinterfaces
- it is not referenced in any firewall policy, VIP or multicast policy
- it is not an HA heartbeat device or monitored by HA
- In a redundant group, failover to the next member interface happens when the active interface fails or is disconnected.

The order you specify the interfaces in the member list is the order they will become active in the redundant group. For example if you enter `set member port5 port1`, then `port5` will be active at the start, and when it fails or is disconnected `port1` will become active.

This is only available when type is aggregate or redundant.

min-links <int>

When type is aggregate, set the minimum number of members that must be working. Default is 1.

min-links-down {operational | administrative}

When type is aggregate and the interface is down because of min-links limit, choose whether interface is down operationally or only administratively. Default is operational.

system ipip-tunnel

Use this command to set up an RFC 1853 IP-to-IP tunnel.

```
config system ipip-tunnel
  edit {name}
  # Configure IP in IP Tunneling.
  set name {string}    IPIP Tunnel name. size[15]
  set interface {string} Interface name that is associated with the incoming traffic from available options.
size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
  set remote-gw {ipv4 address} IPv4 address for the remote gateway.
  set local-gw {ipv4 address any} IPv4 address for the local gateway.
  set auto-asic-offload {enable | disable} Enable/disable tunnel ASIC offloading.
  next
end
```

system {ips-urlfilter-dns | ips-urlfilter-dns6}

Use this command to specify IPv4 and IPv6 DNS servers for IPS URL filtering queries. Individual addresses can be enabled/disabled as needed.



Similar entries can be found under both `ips-urlfilter-dns` and `ips-urlfilter-dns6` (except the IPv4 version also includes an IPv6 capability option), so only one CLI syntax is shown.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config system ips-urlfilter-dns6</pre>	IPv6 DNS queries can be configured as well as IPv4.
<pre>config system ips-urlfilter-dns edit <address> set ipv6-capability {enable disable} next end</pre>	Enable or disable (by default) this server for IPv6 queries.
<pre>config system ips-urlfilter-dns edit {address} # Configure IPS URL filter DNS servers. set address {ipv4 address} DNS server IP address. set status {enable disable} Enable/disable using this DNS server for IPS URL filter DNS queries. set ipv6-capability {enable disable} Enable/disable this server for IPv6 queries. next end</pre>	

system ipv6-neighbor-cache

Use this command to save neighbor cache entries for the VDOM.


```
config system ipv6-neighbor-cache
  edit {id}
  # Configure IPv6 neighbor cache table.
  set id {integer}    Unique integer ID of the entry. range[0-4294967295]
  set interface {string}  Select the associated interface name from available options. size[15] - datasource(s):
system.interface.name
  set ipv6 {ipv6 address}  IPv6 address (format: xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx).
  set mac {mac address}    MAC address (format: xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx).
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

system ipv6-tunnel

Use this command to tunnel IPv4 traffic over an IPv6 network. The IPv6 interface is configured under config system interface. All subnets between the source and destination addresses must support IPv6.



This command is not available in Transparent mode

```
config system ipv6-tunnel
  edit {name}
  # Configure IPv6/IPv4 in IPv6 tunnel.
  set name {string}    IPv6 tunnel name. size[15]
  set source {ipv6 address}  Local IPv6 address of the tunnel.
  set destination {ipv6 address}  Remote IPv6 address of the tunnel.
  set interface {string}  Interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
  set auto-asic-offload {enable | disable}  Enable/disable tunnel ASIC offloading.
  next
end
```

system link-monitor

Use this command to add link health monitors that are used to determine the health of an interface. Link health monitors can also be used for FGCP HA remote link monitoring.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set addr-mode {ipv4 ipv6} set protocol {ping6 ...} set gateway-ip6 set source-ip6</pre>	<p>New option to choose IPv6 as the address mode, and new support for ping6, to determine if the FortiGate can communicate with the server.</p> <p>Note that ping6, gateway-ip6, and source-ip6 are only available when addr-mode is set to ipv6.</p>
<pre>set timeout <seconds></pre>	<p>Removed the timeout for waiting before receiving a response from the server.</p>

```
config system link-monitor
  edit {name}
    # Configure Link Health Monitor.
    set name {string}    Link monitor name. size[35]
    set addr-mode {ipv4 | ipv6}    Address mode (IPv4 or IPv6).
        ipv4    IPv4 mode.
        ipv6    IPv6 mode.
    set srcintf {string}    Interface that receives the traffic to be monitored. size[15] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name
    config server
      edit {address}
        # IP address of the server(s) to be monitored.
        set address {string}    Server address. size[64]
      next
```

```

set protocol {option}    Protocols used to monitor the server.
    ping                PING link monitor.
    tcp-echo            TCP echo link monitor.
    udp-echo            UDP echo link monitor.
    http                HTTP-GET link monitor.
    twamp                TWAMP link monitor.
    ping6                PING6 link monitor.
set port {integer}       Port number of the traffic to be used to monitor the server. range[1-65535]
set gateway-ip {ipv4 address any}    Gateway IP address used to probe the server.
set gateway-ip6 {ipv6 address}       Gateway IPv6 address used to probe the server.
set source-ip {ipv4 address any}     Source IP address used in packet to the server.
set source-ip6 {ipv6 address}        Source IPv6 address used in packet to the server.
set http-get {string}               If you are monitoring an HTML server you can send an HTTP-GET request with a custom
string. Use this option to define the string. size[1024]
set http-agent {string}             String in the http-agent field in the HTTP header. size[1024]
set http-match {string}             String that you expect to see in the HTTP-GET requests of the traffic to be monitored.
size[1024]
set interval {integer}              Detection interval (1 - 3600 sec, default = 5). range[1-3600]
set failtime {integer}              Number of retry attempts before the server is considered down (1 - 10, default = 5)
range[1-3600]
set recoverytime {integer}          Number of successful responses received before server is considered recovered (1 -
10, default = 5). range[1-3600]
set security-mode {none | authentication}    Twamp controller security mode.
    none                    Unauthenticated mode.
    authentication          Authenticated mode.
set password {password_string}      Twamp controller password in authentication mode size[128]
set packet-size {integer}           Packet size of a twamp test session, range[64-1024]
set ha-priority {integer}           HA election priority (1 - 50). range[1-50]
set update-cascade-interface {enable | disable}    Enable/disable update cascade interface.
set update-static-route {enable | disable}         Enable/disable updating the static route.
set status {enable | disable}        Enable/disable this link monitor.
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

srcintf <interface>

The name of the interface to add the link health monitor to.

server <address> [<address>...]

One or more IP addresses of the servers to be monitored. If the link health monitor cannot connect to all of the servers remote IP monitoring considers the link to be down. You can add multiple IP addresses to a single link monitor to monitor more than one IP address from a single interface. If you add multiple IP addresses, the health checking will be with all of the addresses at the same time. The link monitor only fails when no responses are received from all of the addresses.

protocol {ping | tcp-echo | udp-echo | http | twamp}

One or more protocols to be used to test the link. The default is `ping`.

gateway-ip <address>

The IP address of the remote gateway that the link monitor must communicate with to contact the server. Only required if there is no other route on for this communication.

source-ip <address>

Optionally add a source address for the monitoring packets. Normally the source address is the address of the source interface. You can add a different source address if required.

interval <interval>

The time between sending link health check packets. Default is 1 seconds. Range is 1 to 3600 seconds.

failtime <failover-threshold>

The number of times that a health check can fail before a failure is detected (the failover threshold). Default is 5. Range is 1 to 10.

recoverytime <recovery-threshold>

The number of times that a health check must succeed after a failure is detected to verify that the server is back up. Default is 5. Range is 1 to 10.

ha-priority <priority>

The priority of this link health monitor when the link health monitor is part of an FGCP remote link monitor configuration. Default is 1. Range is 1 to 50.

update-cascade-interface {disable | enable}

Enable to bring down the source interface if the link health monitor fails. Disable to keep the interface up if the link health monitor fails. Default is enable.

update-static-route {disable | enable}

Enable to remove static routes from the routing table that use this interface if the link monitor fails. Default is enable.

status {disable | enable}

Enable or disable this link health monitor. Default is enable.

system lte-modem

Use this command to configure an LTE/WIMAX modem. This command is available only in NAT mode. For more information on custom configuring modems, see [Modems](#).

If you are custom configuring a 3G modem, instead use the [system 3g-modem custom](#) command.

```
config system lte-modem
  set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable USB LTE/WIMAX device.
  set extra-init {string}          Extra initialization string for USB LTE/WIMAX devices. size[127]
  set authtype {none | pap | chap} Authentication type for PDP-IP packet data calls.
    none Username and password not required.
    pap  Use PAP authentication.
    chap Use CHAP authentication.
  set username {string}            Authentication username for PDP-IP packet data calls. size[63]
  set passwd {password_string}     Authentication password for PDP-IP packet data calls. size[128]
  set apn {string}                 Login APN string for PDP-IP packet data calls. size[127]
  set modem-port {integer}         Modem port index (0 - 20). range[0-20]
  set mode {standalone | redundant} Modem operation mode.
    standalone Standalone modem operation mode.
    redundant  Redundant modem operation mode where the modem is used as a backup interface.
  set holddown-timer {integer}     Hold down timer (10 - 60 sec). range[10-60]
```

```
    set interface {string}    The interface that the modem is acting as a redundant interface for. size[63] - datasource
(s): system.interface.name
end
```

system mac-address-table

Use this command to create a static MAC table. The table can hold up to 200 entries.

This command is available in Transparent mode only

```
.
config system mac-address-table
    edit {mac}
    # Configure MAC address tables.
    set mac {mac address}    MAC address.
    set interface {string}    Interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set reply-substitute {mac address}    New MAC for reply traffic.
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

mac {mac address}

Specify the MAC address as six pairs of hexadecimal digits separated by colons, e.g., 11:22:33:00:ff:aa

reply-substitute {mac address}

Optionally, define a substitute MAC address to use in reply. Then define a MAC address table entry for the reply-substitute MAC address, specifying the interface to which it applies.

system management-tunnel

Use this command to configure the remote management tunnel that is required by some FortiGuard Analysis and Management Service remote administration features, such as the real-time monitor, and which remote management actions the FortiGate unit will allow from the FortiGuard Analysis and Management Service.

To complete remote management setup with FortiGuard Analysis and Management Service, also configure their required settings, such as providing the service account ID. For details about enabling remote administration and remote management connections initiated by the FortiGate unit rather than the FortiGuard Analysis and Management Service, see the `system fortiguard` command.

```
config system management-tunnel
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FGFM tunnel.
    set allow-config-restore {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allow config restore.
    set allow-push-configuration {enable | disable}    Enable/disable push configuration.
    set allow-push-firmware {enable | disable}    Enable/disable push firmware.
    set allow-collect-statistics {enable | disable}    Enable/disable collection of run time statistics.
    set authorized-manager-only {enable | disable}    Enable/disable restriction of authorized manager only.
    set serial-number {string}    Serial number.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

allow-collect-statistics {enable | disable}

Enable (default) or disable real-time monitor SNMP polls through the tunnel.

This option appears only if `status` is set to `enable`.

allow-config-restore {enable | disable}

Enable (default) or disable the ability to perform a remote restoration of a previous configuration.

This option appears only if `status` is set to `enable`.

allow-push-configuration {enable | disable}

Enable (default) or disable remote configuration.

This option appears only if `status` is set to `enable`.

allow-push-firmware {enable | disable}

Enable (default) or disable remote firmware upgrades.

This option appears only if `status` is set to `enable`.

authorized-manager-only {enable | disable}

Enable (default) or disable whether remote management is restricted to the FortiManager units with the serial numbers that you specified in `serial-number`.

This option appears only if `status` is set to `enable`.

serial-number <serial_numbers>

Enter up to five serial numbers of FortiManager units that are authorized to remotely manage this FortiGate unit. Separate multiple serial numbers with spaces.

This option appears only if `status` and `authorized-manager-only` are set to `enable`.

status {enable | disable}

Enable (default) or disable the SSL-secured management tunnel between the FortiGate unit and FortiGuard Analysis and Management Service.

system mobile-tunnel

Introduction.

```
config system mobile-tunnel
  edit {name}
    # Configure Mobile tunnels, an implementation of Network Mobility (NEMO) extensions for Mobile IPv4 RFC5177.
    set name {string} Tunnel name. size[15]
```



```

    set status {disable | enable}    Enable/disable this mobile tunnel.
    set roaming-interface {string}    Select the associated interface name from available options. size[15] - data-
source(s): system.interface.name
    set home-agent {ipv4 address}    IPv4 address of the NEMO HA (Format: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx).
    set home-address {ipv4 address}  Home IP address (Format: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx).
    set renew-interval {integer}     Time before lifetime expiration to send NMMO HA re-registration (5 - 60, default =
60). range[5-60]
    set lifetime {integer}           NMMO HA registration request lifetime (180 - 65535 sec, default = 65535). range[180-
65535]
    set reg-interval {integer}       NMMO HA registration interval (5 - 300, default = 5). range[5-300]
    set reg-retry {integer}          Maximum number of NMMO HA registration retries (1 to 30, default = 3). range[1-30]
    set n-mhae-spi {integer}         NEMO authentication SPI (default: 256). range[0-4294967295]
    set n-mhae-key-type {ascii | base64} NEMO authentication key type (ascii or base64).
        ascii    The authentication key is an ASCII string.
        base64   The authentication key is Base64 encoded.
    set n-mhae-key {string}          NEMO authentication key.
    set hash-algorithm {hmac-md5}    Hash Algorithm (Keyed MD5).
        hmac-md5 Keyed MD5.
    set tunnel-mode {gre}            NEMO tunnel mode (GRE tunnel).
        gre      GRE tunnel.
    config network
        edit {id}
            # NEMO network configuration.
            set id {integer}          Network entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
            set interface {string}    Select the associated interface name from available options. size[15] - data-
source(s): system.interface.name
            set prefix {ipv4 classnet} Class IP and Netmask with correction (Format:xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx or xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/x).
        next
    next
end

```

system modem

Introduction.

```

config system modem
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Modem support (equivalent to bringing an interface up or down).
    set pin-init {string}            AT command to set the PIN (AT+PIN=<pin>). size[127]

```

```

set network-init {string}    AT command to set the Network name/type (AT+COPS=<mode>,[<format>,<oper>[,<Act>]]). size
[127]
set lockdown-lac {string}    Allow connection only to the specified Location Area Code (LAC). size[127]
set mode {standalone | redundant}    Set MODEM operation mode to redundant or standalone.
    standalone    Standalone.
    redundant    Redundant for an interface.
set auto-dial {enable | disable}    Enable/disable auto-dial after a reboot or disconnection.
set dial-on-demand {enable | disable}    Enable/disable to dial the modem when packets are routed to the modem inter-
face.
set idle-timer {integer}    MODEM connection idle time (1 - 9999 min, default = 5). range[1-9999]
set redial {option}    Redial limit (1 - 10 attempts, none = redial forever).
    none    Forever.
    1    One attempt.
    2    Two attempts.
    3    Three attempts.
    4    Four attempts.
    5    Five attempts.
    6    Six attempts.
    7    Seven attempts.
    8    Eight attempts.
    9    Nine attempts.
    10    Ten attempts.
set reset {integer}    Number of dial attempts before resetting modem (0 = never reset). range[0-10]
set holddown-timer {integer}    Hold down timer in seconds (1 - 60 sec). range[1-60]
set connect-timeout {integer}    Connection completion timeout (30 - 255 sec, default = 90). range[30-255]
set interface {string}    Name of redundant interface. size[63] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
set wireless-port {integer}    Enter wireless port number, 0 for default, 1 for first port, ... (0 - 4294967295,
default = 0) range[0-4294967295]
set dont-send-CR1 {enable | disable}    Do not send CR when connected (ISP1).
set phonel {string}    Phone number to connect to the dialup account (must not contain spaces, and should include
standard special characters). size[63]
set dial-cmd1 {string}    Dial command (this is often an ATD or ATDT command). size[63]
set username1 {string}    User name to access the specified dialup account. size[63]
set passwd1 {password_string}    Password to access the specified dialup account. size[128]
set extra-init1 {string}    Extra initialization string to ISP 1. size[127]
set peer-modem1 {generic | actiontec | ascend_TNT}    Specify peer MODEM type for phonel.
    generic    All other modem type.
    actiontec    ActionTec modem.
    ascend_TNT    Ascend TNT modem.
set ppp-echo-request1 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable PPP echo-request to ISP 1.

```

```
set authtype1 {pap | chap | mschap | mschapv2}    Allowed authentication types for ISP 1.
    pap      PAP
    chap     CHAP
    mschap   MSCHAP
    mschapv2 MSCHAPv2
set dont-send-CR2 {enable | disable}    Do not send CR when connected (ISP2).
set phone2 {string}    Phone number to connect to the dialup account (must not contain spaces, and should include
standard special characters). size[63]
set dial-cmd2 {string}    Dial command (this is often an ATD or ATDT command). size[63]
set username2 {string}    User name to access the specified dialup account. size[63]
set passwd2 {password_string}    Password to access the specified dialup account. size[128]
set extra-init2 {string}    Extra initialization string to ISP 2. size[127]
set peer-modem2 {generic | actiontec | ascend_TNT}    Specify peer MODEM type for phone2.
    generic    All other modem type.
    actiontec  ActionTec modem.
    ascend_TNT Ascend TNT modem.
set ppp-echo-request2 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable PPP echo-request to ISP 2.
set authtype2 {pap | chap | mschap | mschapv2}    Allowed authentication types for ISP 2.
    pap      PAP
    chap     CHAP
    mschap   MSCHAP
    mschapv2 MSCHAPv2
set dont-send-CR3 {enable | disable}    Do not send CR when connected (ISP3).
set phone3 {string}    Phone number to connect to the dialup account (must not contain spaces, and should include
standard special characters). size[63]
set dial-cmd3 {string}    Dial command (this is often an ATD or ATDT command). size[63]
set username3 {string}    User name to access the specified dialup account. size[63]
set passwd3 {password_string}    Password to access the specified dialup account. size[128]
set extra-init3 {string}    Extra initialization string to ISP 3. size[127]
set peer-modem3 {generic | actiontec | ascend_TNT}    Specify peer MODEM type for phone3.
    generic    All other modem type.
    actiontec  ActionTec modem.
    ascend_TNT Ascend TNT modem.
set ppp-echo-request3 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable PPP echo-request to ISP 3.
set altmode {enable | disable}    Enable/disable altmode for installations using PPP in China.
set authtype3 {pap | chap | mschap | mschapv2}    Allowed authentication types for ISP 3.
    pap      PAP
    chap     CHAP
    mschap   MSCHAP
    mschapv2 MSCHAPv2
```

```

set traffic-check {enable | disable}  Enable/disable traffic-check.
set action {dial | stop | none}  Dial up/stop MODEM.
    dial  Dial up number.
    stop  Stop dialup.
    none  No action.
set distance {integer}  Distance of learned routes (1 - 255, default = 1). range[1-255]
set priority {integer}  Priority of learned routes (0 - 4294967295, default = 0). range[0-4294967295]
end

```

system nat64

Use this command to configure NAT64 options, including secondary IPv6 prefixes to support dynamic NAT46/64 IP pool.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre> set secondary-prefix-status {enable disable} config secondary-prefix ... </pre>	<p>Configure secondary IPv6 prefixes to be used in policies to give the configuration of addresses more options.</p> <p>Note that the default prefix must have a length of 96, but the secondary prefixes can be different lengths.</p> <p>To use the IP pool in NAT46 policies, enable the use of IP pools in firewall {policy46 policy64}.</p>

```

config system nat64
set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable NAT64 (default = disable).
set nat64-prefix {ipv6 prefix}  NAT64 prefix must be ::/96 (default = 64:ff9b::/96).
set secondary-prefix-status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable secondary NAT64 prefix.
config secondary-prefix
edit {name}
# Secondary NAT64 prefix.
set name {string}  NAT64 prefix name. size[35]
set nat64-prefix {ipv6 prefix}  NAT64 prefix.
next

```

```
set always-synthesize-aaaa-record {enable | disable} Enable/disable AAAA record synthesis (default = enable).
set generate-ipv6-fragment-header {enable | disable} Enable/disable IPv6 fragment header generation.
set nat46-force-ipv4-packet-forwarding {enable | disable} Enable/disable mandatory IPv4 packet forwarding in
nat46.
end
```

system nd-proxy

Use this command to configure IPv6 Neighbour Discovery (ND) protocol proxying, allowing ICMP messages to be sent upstream and downstream through the FortiGate. This allows a single FortiGate/FortiWiFi device to be used for both IPv4 and IPv6 service.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>config system nd-proxy</code>	New <code>config</code> command. Configure IPv6 ND protocol proxying, allowing ICMP messages to be sent upstream and downstream through the FortiGate.

Syntax

```
config system nd-proxy
  set status {enable | disable} Enable/disable neighbor discovery proxy.
  config member
    edit {interface-name}
      # Interfaces using the neighbor discovery proxy.
      set interface-name {string} Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    next
  end
```

system netflow

Use this command to configure NetFlow network traffic monitoring on the FortiGate.



You must configure `collector-ip`, `collector-port`, and `source-ip` commands in order to use NetFlow.

```
config system netflow
    set collector-ip {ipv4 address}    Collector IP.
    set collector-port {integer}       NetFlow collector port number. range[0-65535]
    set source-ip {ipv4 address}       Source IP address for communication with the NetFlow agent.
    set active-flow-timeout {integer}   Timeout to report active flows (1 - 60 min, default = 30). range[1-60]
    set inactive-flow-timeout {integer} Timeout for periodic report of finished flows (10 - 600 sec, default = 15).
range[10-600]
    set template-tx-timeout {integer}   Timeout for periodic template flowset transmission (1 - 1440 min, default = 30).
range[1-1440]
    set template-tx-counter {integer}   Counter of flowset records before resending a template flowset record. range[10-
6000]
end
```

system network-visibility

Use this command to configure network-visibility features, which determine what data (location, hostname, etc) is logged about traffic destinations contacted by the FortiGate.

```
config system network-visibility
    set destination-visibility {disable | enable}    Enable/disable logging of destination visibility.
    set source-location {disable | enable}           Enable/disable logging of source geographical location visibility.
    set destination-hostname-visibility {disable | enable}    Enable/disable logging of destination hostname visibility.
    set hostname-ttl {integer}    TTL of hostname table entries (60 - 86400). range[60-86400]
    set hostname-limit {integer}   Limit of the number of hostname table entries (0 - 50000). range[0-50000]
    set destination-location {disable | enable}    Enable/disable logging of destination geographical location vis-
ibility.
end
```

system np6

Configure a wide range of settings for your FortiGate's NP6 processors including enabling/disabling fastpath and low latency, enabling session accounting and adjusting session timeouts. As well you can set anomaly checking for IPv4 and IPv6 traffic. You can also configure different settings for each NP6

processor. The settings that you configure for an NP6 processor with the config system np6 command apply to traffic processed by all interfaces connected to that NP6 processor. This includes the physical interfaces connected to the NP6 processor as well as all subinterfaces, VLAN interfaces, IPsec interfaces, LAGs and so on associated with the physical interfaces connected to the NP6 processor.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>set fastpath {enable disable}</code>	Removed and added to config system npu . Enable or disable NP4 or NP6 offloading (also called fast path).

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set ipsec-outbound-hash {disable enable}</code> <code>set ipsec-ob-hash-function {switch-group-hash global-hash global-hash-weighted round-robin-switch-group round-robin-global}</code>	New options to optimize IPsec VPN performance on FortiGate-3960E and 3980E platforms.

```
config system np6
  edit {name}
    # Configure NP6 attributes.
    set name {string}    Device Name. size[31]
    set fastpath {disable | enable}    Enable/disable NP4 or NP6 offloading (also called fast path).
    set low-latency-mode {disable | enable}    Enable/disable low latency mode.
    set per-session-accounting {disable | traffic-log-only | enable}    Enable/disable per-session accounting.
    set garbage-session-collector {disable | enable}    Enable/disable garbage session collector.
    set session-collector-interval {integer}    Set garbage session collection cleanup interval (1 - 100 sec, default
64). range[1-100]
    set session-timeout-interval {integer}    Set the fixed timeout for refreshing NP6 sessions (0 - 1000 sec,
default 40 sec). range[0-1000]
    set session-timeout-random-range {integer}    Set the random timeout range for refreshing NP6 sessions (0 - 1000
sec, default 8 sec). range[0-1000]
    set session-timeout-fixed {disable | enable}    {disable | enable} Toggle between using fixed or random timeouts
for refreshing NP6 sessions.
```

```

set ipsec-outbound-hash {disable | enable}    Enable/disable hash function for IPsec outbound traffic.
set ipsec-ob-hash-function {option}          Set hash function for IPsec outbound.
    switch-group-hash                        Hash outbound SA traffic within NPs connected to same switch.
    global-hash                             Hash outbound SA traffic among all NPs.
    global-hash-weighted                    Hash outbound SA traffic among all NPs with more weights on NPs connected to
switch 0. It's applicable to the case that ingress traffic is from switch 1.
    round-robin-switch-group                Round-robin outbound SA traffic within NPs connected to same switch.
    round-robin-global                      Round-robin outbound SA traffic among all NPs.

config hpe
    set tcpsyn-max {integer}                Maximum TCP SYN packet rate (10K - 4G pps, default = 5M pps). range[10000-
40000000000]
    set tcp-max {integer}                   Maximum TCP packet rate (10K - 4G pps, default = 5M pps). range[10000-40000000000]
    set udp-max {integer}                   Maximum UDP packet rate (10K - 4G pps, default = 5M pps). range[10000-40000000000]
    set icmp-max {integer}                  Maximum ICMP packet rate (10K - 4G pps, default = 1M pps). range[10000-40000000000]
    set sctp-max {integer}                  Maximum SCTP packet rate (10K - 4G pps, default = 1M pps). range[10000-40000000000]
    set esp-max {integer}                   Maximum ESP packet rate (10K - 4G pps, default = 1M pps). range[10000-40000000000]
    set ip-frag-max {integer}               Maximum fragmented IP packet rate (10K - 4G pps, default = 1M pps). range[10000-
40000000000]
    set ip-others-max {integer}             Maximum IP packet rate for other packets (packet types that cannot be set with
other options) (10G - 4G pps, default = 1M pps). range[10000-40000000000]
    set arp-max {integer}                   Maximum ARP packet rate (10K - 4G pps, default = 1M pps). range[10000-40000000000]
    set l2-others-max {integer}             Maximum L2 packet rate for L2 packets that are not ARP packets (10K - 4G pps,
default = 1M pps). range[10000-40000000000]
    set pri-type-max {integer}              Maximum overflow rate of priority type traffic(10K - 4G pps, default = 1M pps).
Includes L2: HA, 802.3ad LACP, heartbeats. L3: OSPF. L4_TCP: BGP. L4_UDP: IKE, SLBC, BFD. range[10000-40000000000]
    set enable-shaper {disable | enable}    Enable/Disable NPU host protection engine (HPE) shaper.

config fp-anomaly
    set tcp-syn-fin {allow | drop | trap-to-host} TCP SYN flood SYN/FIN flag set anomalies.
        allow                                Allow TCP packets with syn_fin flag set to pass.
        drop                                Drop TCP packets with syn_fin flag set.
        trap-to-host                        Forward TCP packets with syn_fin flag set to FortiOS.
    set tcp-fin-noack {allow | drop | trap-to-host} TCP SYN flood with FIN flag set without ACK setting anom-
alies.
        allow                                Allow TCP packets with FIN flag set without ack setting to pass.
        drop                                Drop TCP packets with FIN flag set without ack setting.
        trap-to-host                        Forward TCP packets with FIN flag set without ack setting to FortiOS.
    set tcp-fin-only {allow | drop | trap-to-host} TCP SYN flood with only FIN flag set anomalies.
        allow                                Allow TCP packets with FIN flag set only to pass.
        drop                                Drop TCP packets with FIN flag set only.
        trap-to-host                        Forward TCP packets with FIN flag set only to FortiOS.

```



```
set tcp-no-flag {allow | drop | trap-to-host}  TCP SYN flood with no flag set anomalies.
    allow      Allow TCP packets without flag set to pass.
    drop       Drop TCP packets without flag set.
    trap-to-host Forward TCP packets without flag set to FortiOS.
set tcp-syn-data {allow | drop | trap-to-host}  TCP SYN flood packets with data anomalies.
    allow      Allow TCP syn packets with data to pass.
    drop       Drop TCP syn packets with data.
    trap-to-host Forward TCP syn packets with data to FortiOS.
set tcp-winnuke {allow | drop | trap-to-host}  TCP WinNuke anomalies.
    allow      Allow TCP packets winnuke attack to pass.
    drop       Drop TCP packets winnuke attack.
    trap-to-host Forward TCP packets winnuke attack to FortiOS.
set tcp-land {allow | drop | trap-to-host}  TCP land anomalies.
    allow      Allow TCP land attack to pass.
    drop       Drop TCP land attack.
    trap-to-host Forward TCP land attack to FortiOS.
set udp-land {allow | drop | trap-to-host}  UDP land anomalies.
    allow      Allow UDP land attack to pass.
    drop       Drop UDP land attack.
    trap-to-host Forward UDP land attack to FortiOS.
set icmp-land {allow | drop | trap-to-host}  ICMP land anomalies.
    allow      Allow ICMP land attack to pass.
    drop       Drop ICMP land attack.
    trap-to-host Forward ICMP land attack to FortiOS.
set icmp-frag {allow | drop | trap-to-host}  Layer 3 fragmented packets that could be part of layer 4 ICMP
anomalies.
    allow      Allow L3 fragment packet with L4 protocol as ICMP attack to pass.
    drop       Drop L3 fragment packet with L4 protocol as ICMP attack.
    trap-to-host Forward L3 fragment packet with L4 protocol as ICMP attack to FortiOS.
set ipv4-land {allow | drop | trap-to-host}  Land anomalies.
    allow      Allow IPv4 land attack to pass.
    drop       Drop IPv4 land attack.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv4 land attack to FortiOS.
set ipv4-proto-err {allow | drop | trap-to-host}  Invalid layer 4 protocol anomalies.
    allow      Allow IPv4 invalid L4 protocol to pass.
    drop       Drop IPv4 invalid L4 protocol.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv4 invalid L4 protocol to FortiOS.
set ipv4-unknopt {allow | drop | trap-to-host}  Unknown option anomalies.
    allow      Allow IPv4 with unknown options to pass.
    drop       Drop IPv4 with unknown options.
```

```
        trap-to-host Forward IPv4 with unknown options to FortiOS.
set ipv4-optrr {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Record route option anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv4 with record route option to pass.
    drop Drop IPv4 with record route option.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv4 with record route option to FortiOS.
set ipv4-optssrr {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Strict source record route option anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv4 with strict source record route option to pass.
    drop Drop IPv4 with strict source record route option.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv4 with strict source record route option to FortiOS.
set ipv4-optlsrr {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Loose source record route option anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv4 with loose source record route option to pass.
    drop Drop IPv4 with loose source record route option.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv4 with loose source record route option to FortiOS.
set ipv4-optstream {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Stream option anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv4 with stream option to pass.
    drop Drop IPv4 with stream option.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv4 with stream option to FortiOS.
set ipv4-optsecurity {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Security option anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv4 with security option to pass.
    drop Drop IPv4 with security option.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv4 with security option to FortiOS.
set ipv4-opttimestamp {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Timestamp option anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv4 with timestamp option to pass.
    drop Drop IPv4 with timestamp option.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv4 with timestamp option to FortiOS.
set ipv4-csum-err {drop | trap-to-host} Invalid IPv4 IP checksum anomalies.
    drop Drop IPv4 invalid IP checksum.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv4 invalid IP checksum to main CPU for processing.
set tcp-csum-err {drop | trap-to-host} Invalid IPv4 TCP checksum anomalies.
    drop Drop IPv4 invalid TCP checksum.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv4 invalid TCP checksum to main CPU for processing.
set udp-csum-err {drop | trap-to-host} Invalid IPv4 UDP checksum anomalies.
    drop Drop IPv4 invalid UDP checksum.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv4 invalid UDP checksum to main CPU for processing.
set icmp-csum-err {drop | trap-to-host} Invalid IPv4 ICMP checksum anomalies.
    drop Drop IPv4 invalid ICMP checksum.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv4 invalid ICMP checksum to main CPU for processing.
set ipv6-land {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Land anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv6 land attack to pass.
    drop Drop IPv6 land attack.
```

```
        trap-to-host Forward IPv6 land attack to FortiOS.
set ipv6-proto-err {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Layer 4 invalid protocol anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv6 L4 invalid protocol to pass.
    drop Drop IPv6 L4 invalid protocol.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv6 L4 invalid protocol to FortiOS.
set ipv6-unknopt {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Unknown option anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv6 with unknown options to pass.
    drop Drop IPv6 with unknown options.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv6 with unknown options to FortiOS.
set ipv6-saddr-err {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Source address as multicast anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv6 with source address as multicast to pass.
    drop Drop IPv6 with source address as multicast.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv6 with source address as multicast to FortiOS.
set ipv6-daddr-err {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Destination address as unspecified or loopback address
anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv6 with destination address as unspecified or loopback address to pass.
    drop Drop IPv6 with destination address as unspecified or loopback address.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv6 with destination address as unspecified or loopback address to FortiOS.
set ipv6-optralert {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Router alert option anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv6 with router alert option to pass.
    drop Drop IPv6 with router alert option.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv6 with router alert option to FortiOS.
set ipv6-optjumbo {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Jumbo options anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv6 with jumbo option to pass.
    drop Drop IPv6 with jumbo option.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv6 with jumbo option to FortiOS.
set ipv6-opttunnel {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Tunnel encapsulation limit option anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv6 with tunnel encapsulation limit to pass.
    drop Drop IPv6 with tunnel encapsulation limit.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv6 with tunnel encapsulation limit to FortiOS.
set ipv6-opthomeaddr {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Home address option anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv6 with home address option to pass.
    drop Drop IPv6 with home address option.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv6 with home address option to FortiOS.
set ipv6-optnsap {allow | drop | trap-to-host} Network service access point address option anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv6 with network service access point address option to pass.
    drop Drop IPv6 with network service access point address option.
    trap-to-host Forward IPv6 with network service access point address option to FortiOS.
set ipv6-optendpid {allow | drop | trap-to-host} End point identification anomalies.
    allow Allow IPv6 with end point identification option to pass.
```

```

        drop          Drop IPv6 with end point identification option.
        trap-to-host   Forward IPv6 with end point identification option to FortiOS.
set ipv6-optinvld {allow | drop | trap-to-host}   Invalid option anomalies.Invalid option anomalies.
        allow         Allow IPv6 with invalid option to pass.
        drop          Drop IPv6 with invalid option.
        trap-to-host   Forward IPv6 with invalid option to FortiOS.
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

name {np6_0 | np6_1 |...}

Change the settings for one of the FortiGate unit's NP6 processors.

per-session-accounting {all-enable | disable | enable-by-log}

Per-session accounting is a logging feature that allows the FortiGate to report the correct bytes/pkt numbers per session for sessions offloaded to an NP6 processor. This information appears in traffic log messages as well as in FortiView. When offloaded sessions appear on the FortiView All Sessions console they include an icon identifying them as NP sessions. You can hover over the NP icon to see some information about the offloaded sessions. By default, per-session accounting is set to `enable-by-log`, which results in per-session accounting being turned on when you enable traffic logging in a policy. You can disable per-session accounting or select `all-enable` to enable per-session accounting for all sessions whether or traffic logging is enabled or not. Per-session accounting can affect NP6 offloading performance. So you should only enable per-session accounting if you need the accounting information. Enabling per-session accounting only supports traffic log messages and does not provide traffic flow data for sFlow or NetFlow.

garbage-session-collector {disable | enable}

Enable deleting expired or garbage sessions. Disabled by default.

session-collector-interval <interval>

Set the expired or garbage session collector time interval in seconds. The range is 1 to 100 seconds. The default is 64 seconds.

session-timeout-interval <interval>

Set the timeout for inactive sessions. The range is 0 to 1000 seconds. The default is 40 seconds.

session-timeout-random-range <range>

Set the random timeout for inactive sessions. The range is 0 to 1000 seconds. The default is 8 seconds.

session-timeout-fixed {disable | enable}

Enable to force checking for and removing inactive NP6 sessions at the `session-timeout-interval` interval. Set to `disable` (the default) to check for and remove inactive NP6 sessions at random time intervals. Disabled by default.

config fp-anomaly-v4

Configure how the NP6 processor does IPv4 traffic anomaly protection. You can configure the NP6 processor to allow or drop the packets associated with an attack or forward the packets that are associated with the attack to FortiOS (called `trap-to-host`). Selecting `trap-to-host` turns off NP6 anomaly protection for that anomaly. If you require anomaly protection you can enable it with a DoS policy but the anomaly protection is done by the CPU instead of the NP6.

tcp-syn-fin {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect TCP SYN flood SYN/FIN flag set anomalies. Default is `allow`.

tcp-fin-noack {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect TCP SYN flood with FIN flag set without ACK setting anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

tcp-fin-only {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect TCP SYN flood with only FIN flag set anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

tcp-no-flag {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect TCP SYN flood with no flag set anomalies. Default is `allow`.

tcp-syn-data {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect TCP SYN flood packets with data anomalies. Default is `allow`.

tcp-winnuke {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect TCP WinNuke anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

tcp-land {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect TCP land anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

udp-land {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect UDP land anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

icmp-land {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect ICMP land anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

icmp-frag {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect Layer 3 fragmented packets that could be part of layer 4 ICMP anomalies. Default is `allow`.

ipv4-land {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv4 land anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv4-proto-err {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv4 invalid layer 4 protocol anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`. For information about the error codes that are produced by setting this option to `drop`, see [NP6 anomaly error codes](#).

ipv4-unknopt {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv4 unknown option anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv4-optrr {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv4 record route option anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv4-optssrr {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv4 strict source record route option anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv4-optlsrr {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv4 loose source record route option anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv4-optstream {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv4 stream option anomalies.. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv4-optsecurity {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv4 security option anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv4-opttimestamp {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv4 timestamp option anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

config fp-anomaly-v6

Configure how the NP6 processor does IPv6 traffic anomaly protection. You can configure the NP6 processor to allow or drop the packets associated with an attack or forward the packets that are associated with the attack to FortiOS (called “trap-to- host”). Selecting “trap-to-host” turns off NP6 anomaly protection for that anomaly. If you require anomaly protection you can enable it with a DoS policy.

ipv6-land {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv6 land anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv6-proto-err {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect layer 4 invalid protocol anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv6-unknopt {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv6 unknown option anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv6-saddr-err {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect source address as multicast anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv6-daddr-err {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv6 destination address as unspecified or loopback address anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv6-optralert {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv6 router alert option anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv6-optjumbo {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv6 jumbo options anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv6-opttunnel {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv6 tunnel encapsulation limit option anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv6-opthomeaddr {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv6 home address option anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv6-optnsap {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv6 network service access point address option anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv6-optendpid {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv6 end point identification anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

ipv6-optinvld {allow | drop | trap-to-host}

Detect IPv6 invalid option anomalies. Default is `trap-to-host`.

Optimizing FortiGate-3960E and 3980E IPsec VPN performance

You can use the following command to configure outbound hashing to improve IPsec performance for the FortiGate-3960E and 3980E. If you change these settings, to make sure they take affect, you should reboot your device.

```
config system np6
  edit np6_0
    set ipsec-outbound-hash {disable | enable}
    set ipsec-ob-hash-function {switch-group-hash | global- hash | global-hash-weighted | round-robin-switch-group |
                              round-robin-global}
  end
```

Where:

`ipsec-outbound-hash` is disabled by default. If you enable it you can set `ipsec-ob-hash-function` as follows:

`switch-group-hash` (the default) distribute outbound IPsec Security Association (SA) traffic to NP6 processors connected to the same switch as the interfaces that received the incoming traffic. This option, keeps all traffic on one switch and the NP6 processors connected to that switch, to improve performance.

`global-hash` distribute outbound IPsec SA traffic among all NP6 processors.

`global-hash-weighted` distribute outbound IPsec SA traffic from switch 1 among all NP6 processors with more sessions going to the NP6s connected to switch 0. This options is only recommended for the FortiGate-3980E because it is designed to weigh switch 0 higher to send more sessions to switch 0 which on the FortiGate-3980E has more NP6 processors connected to it. On the FortiGate-3960E both switches have the same number of NP6s so for best performance one switch shouldn't have a higher weight.

`round-robin-switch-group` round-robin distribution of outbound IPsec SA traffic among the NP6 processors connected to the same switch.

`round-robin-global` round-robin distribution of outbound IPsec SA traffic among all NP6 processors.

Improving LAG performance on some FortiGate models

Some FortiGate models support the following command that might improve link aggregation (LAG) performance by reducing the number of dropped packets that can occur with some LAG configurations.

```
config system np6
  edit np6_0
    set lag-npu {disable | enable}
  end
```

If you notice NP6- accelerated LAG interface performance is lower than expected or if you notice excessive dropped packets for sessions over LAG interfaces, you could see if your FortiGate has this option and if available try enabling it and see if performance improves.

You should enable `lag-npu` for every NP6 processor that is connected to a LAG interface.

system npu

Configure Network Processor (NP) options for FortiGates with NP6 and NP4 network processors.

Note that command availability, especially for `config system npu`, depends on the model used. For the purposes of documentation, the syntax provided below is from a FortiGate 1500D.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<code>set per-session-accounting {disable enable-by-log all-enable}</code>	Configure per-session accounting for FortiGates with NP6lite processors.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>set fastpath {enable disable}</code>	Moved from <code>config system np6</code> . Enable or disable NP4 or NP6 offloading (also called fast path).
<code>set iph-rsvd-re-cksum {enable disable}</code>	Removed from <code>config system npu</code> and added here. Enable or disable IP checksum re-calculation for packets with iph.reserved bit set.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set rdp-offload {disable enable}</code>	New option to enable or disable NP6 RDP offloading.

```
config system npu
    set dedicated-management-cpu {enable | disable}    Enable to dedicate one CPU for GUI and CLI connections when NPs
are busy.
    set fastpath {disable | enable}    Enable/disable NP6 offloading (also called fast path).
    set capwap-offload {enable | disable}    Enable/disable offloading managed FortiAP and FortiLink CAPWAP sessions.
    set ipsec-enc-subengine-mask {string}    IPsec encryption subengine mask (0x1 - 0xff, default 0xff).
    set ipsec-dec-subengine-mask {string}    IPsec decryption subengine mask (0x1 - 0xff, default 0xff).
    config port-npu-map
        edit {interface}
            # Configure port to NPU group mapping.
            set interface {string}    Set npu interface port to NPU group map. size[15]
            set npu-group-index {integer}    Mapping NPU group index. range[0-4294967295]
        next
    set sw-np-bandwidth {option}    Bandwidth between NP and switch
        0G    Default value. No bandwidth control.
        2G    2Gbps.
        4G    4Gbps.
        5G    5Gbps.
        6G    6Gbps.
    set strip-esp-padding {enable | disable}    Enable/disable stripping ESP padding.
    set strip-clear-text-padding {enable | disable}    Enable/disable stripping clear text padding.
```

```
set sse-backpressure {enable | disable}  Enable/disable sse backpressure.
set rdp-offload {enable | disable}  Enable/disable rdp offload.
set ipsec-over-vlink {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IPSEC over vlink.
set mcast-session-accounting {tpe-based | session-based | disable}  Enable/disable traffic accounting for each mul-
ticast session through TAE counter.
    tpe-based      Enable TPE-based multicast session accounting.
    session-based  Enable session-based multicast session accounting.
    disable        Disable multicast session accounting.
config priority-protocol
    set bgp {enable | disable}  Enable/disable NPU BGP priority protocol.
    set slbc {enable | disable} Enable/disable NPU SLBC priority protocol.
    set bfd {enable | disable}  Enable/disable NPU BFD priority protocol.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

fastpath {disable | enable}

Enable fastpath acceleration to offload sessions to the NP6 processor. You can disable fastpath if you don't want the NP6 processor to offload sessions. Default enable.

iph-rsvd-re-cksum {disable | enable}

NP6 and the NP6lite processors clear the iph.flags.reserved bit. This results in the packet checksum becoming incorrect because the packet is changed but the checksum is not recalculated. Since the checksum is incorrect these packets may be dropped by the network stack. You can enable this option to cause the system to re-calculate the checksum. Enabling this option may cause a minor performance reduction. This option is disabled by default.

rdp-offload {disable | enable}

FortiOS supports NP6 offloading of Reliable Data Protocol (RDP) traffic. RDP is a network transport protocol that optimizes remote loading, debugging, and bulk transfer of images and data. RDP traffic uses Assigned Internet Protocol number 27 and is defined in [RFC 908](#) and updated in [RFC 1151](#). If your network is processing a lot of RDP traffic, offloading it can improve overall network performance.

RDP offloading is enabled by default.

dedicated-management-cpu {disable | enable}

The GUI and CLI of FortiGate units with NP6 and NP4 processors may become unresponsive when the system is under heavy processing load because NP6 or NP4 interrupts overload the CPUs preventing CPU cycles from being used for management tasks. You can improve GUI and CLI performance in this situation by enabling this option to dedicate CPU core 0 to management tasks. All management tasks are then processed by CPU 0 and NP6 or NP4 interrupts are handled by the remaining CPU cores. Disabled by default.

config port-cpu-map

Select one or more CPU cores to map to an NP6 interface. Set to `all` to map the NP6 interface to all CPU cores.

capwap-offload {disable | enable}

Enable offloading managed FortiAP and FortiLink CAPWAP sessions to NP6 processors. Enabled by default.

{ipsec-dec-subengine-mask | ipsec-enc-subengine-mask} <engine-mask>

Use these commands to change the number of IPsec engines used for decryption and encryption. These settings are applied to all of the NP6 processors in the FortiGate unit. `<engine-mask>` is a hexadecimal number in the range 0x01 to 0xff where each bit represents one IPsec engine. The default `<engine-mask>` is 0xff which means all IPsec engines are used. Add a lower `<engine-mask>` to use fewer engines for decryption or encryption. NP6 processors use multiple IPsec engines to accelerate IPsec decryption and encryption. In some cases out of order ESP packets can cause problems if multiple IPsec engines are running. To resolve this problem you can configure all of the NP6 processors to use fewer IPsec engines. to use fewer engines for decryption or encryption. NP6 processors use multiple IPsec engines to accelerate IPsec decryption and encryption. In some cases out of order ESP packets can cause problems if multiple IPsec engines are running. To resolve this problem you can configure all of the NP6 processors to use fewer IPsec engines.

np6-cps-optimization-mode {disable | enable}

Enable to operate NP6s in a mode optimized for more connections per second (CPS). Disabled by default.

per-session-accounting {all-enable | disable | enable-by-log}

Per-session accounting is a logging feature that allows the FortiGate to report the correct bytes/pkt numbers per session for sessions offloaded to an NP6lite processor. This information appears in traffic log messages as well as in FortiView. When offloaded sessions appear on the FortiView All Sessions console they include an icon identifying them as NP sessions. You can hover over the NP icon to see some information about the offloaded sessions. By default, per-session accounting is set to `enable-by-log`, which results in per-session accounting being turned on when you enable traffic logging in a policy. You can disable per-session accounting or select `all-enable` to enable per-session accounting for all sessions whether or traffic logging is enabled or not. Per-

session accounting can affect NP6lite offloading performance. So you should only enable per-session accounting if you need the accounting information. Enabling per-session accounting only supports traffic log messages and does not provide traffic flow data for sFlow or NetFlow.

strip-esp-padding {disable | enable}

strip-clear-text-padding {disable | enable}

In some situations, when clear text or ESP packets in IPsec sessions may have large amounts of layer 2 padding, the NP6 IPsec engine may not be able to process them and the session may be blocked.

If you notice dropped IPsec sessions, you could try using the following CLI options to cause the NP6 processor to strip clear text padding and ESP padding before send the packets to the IPsec engine. With padding stripped, the session can be processed normally by the IPsec engine.

Use the following command to strip ESP padding:

```
config system npu
    set strip-esp-padding enable
    set strip-clear-text-padding enable
end
```

Stripping clear text and ESP padding are both disabled by default.

host-shortcut-mode {bi-directional | host-shortcut}

Due to NP6 internal packet buffer limitations, some offloaded packets received at a 10Gbps interface and destined for a 1Gbps interface can be dropped, reducing performance for TCP and IP tunnel traffic. If you experience this performance reduction, you can use the following command to disable offloading sessions passing from 10Gbps interfaces to 1Gbps interfaces:

```
config system npu
    set host-shortcut-mode host-shortcut
end
```

Select `host-shortcut` to stop offloading TCP and IP tunnel packets passing from 10Gbps interfaces to 1Gbps interfaces. TCP and IP tunnel packets passing from 1Gbps interfaces to 10Gbps interfaces are still offloaded as normal.

If `host-shortcut` is set to the default `bi-directional` setting, packets in both directions are offloaded.

This option is only available if your FortiGate has 10G and 1G interfaces accelerated by NP6 processors.

sw-np-bandwidth {0G | 2G | 4G | 5G | 6G}

In some cases, the managed FortiSwitch buffer size is larger than the buffer size of the NP6 processor that receives traffic from the managed switch. If this happens, burst traffic from the managed switch may exceed the capacity of the NP6 processor and sessions may be dropped.

You can use the following command to configure bandwidth control between a managed FortiSwitch and an NP6 processor. Enabling bandwidth control can smooth burst traffic and keep the NP6 from getting overwhelmed and dropping sessions.

Use the following command to enable bandwidth control:

```
config system npu
    set sw-np-bandwidth {0G | 2G | 4G | 5G | 6G}
end
```

The default setting is 0G which means no bandwidth control. The other options limit the bandwidth to 2Gbps, 4Gbps and so on.

Supporting single large traffic streams

FortiGate devices with multiple NP6 processors support high throughput by distributing sessions to multiple NP6 processors. However, default ISF hash-based load balancing has some limitations for single traffic streams or flows that use more than 10Gbps of bandwidth. Normally, the ISF sends all of the packets in a single traffic stream over the same 10Gbps interface to an NP6 processor. If a single traffic stream is larger than 10Gbps, packets are also sent to 10Gbps interfaces that may be connected to the same NP6 or to other NP6s. Because the ISF uses hash-based load balancing, this can lead to packets being processed out of order and other potential drawbacks.

FortiGate-39x0E models (currently the 3960E and 3980E) can be configured to support single traffic flows that are larger than 10Gbps. To enable this feature, you can assign interfaces to round robin groups using the following configuration. If you assign an interface to a Round Robin group, the ISF uses round-robin load balancing to distribute incoming traffic from one stream to multiple NP6 processors. Round-robin load balancing prevents the potential problems associated with hash-based load balancing of packets from a single stream.

```
config system npu
    config port-npu-map
        edit <interface>
            set npu-group-index <npu-group>
        end
    end
end
```

<interface> is the name of an interface that receives or sends large traffic streams.

`<npu-group>` is the number of an NPU group. To enable round-robin load balancing select a round-robin NPU group. Use ? to see the list of NPU groups. The output shows which groups support round robin load balancing. For example, the following output shows that NPU group 30 supports round robin load balancing to NP6 0 to 7.

```
set npu-group-index ?
index: npu group
0 : NP#0-7
2 : NP#0
3 : NP#1
4 : NP#2
5 : NP#3
6 : NP#4
7 : NP#5
8 : NP#6
9 : NP#7
10 : NP#0-1
11 : NP#2-3
12 : NP#4-5
13 : NP#6-7
14 : NP#0-3
15 : NP#4-7
30 : NP#0-7 - Round Robin
```

For example, use the following command to assign port1, port2, port17 and port18 to NPU group 30.

```
config system npu
  config port-npu-map
    edit port1
      set npu-group-index 30
    next
    edit port2
      set npu-group-index 30
    next
    edit port7
      set npu-group-index 30
    next
    edit port18
      set npu-group-index 30
    next
  end
end
```


Improving LAG performance on some FortiGate models

Some FortiGate models support the following command that might improve link aggregation (LAG) performance by reducing the number of dropped packets that can occur with some LAG configurations.

```
config system npu
    set lag-sw-out-trunk {disable | enable}
end
```

If you notice NP6- accelerated LAG interface performance is lower than expected or if you notice excessive dropped packets for sessions over LAG interfaces, you could see if your FortiGate has this option and if available try enabling it and see if performance improves.

system ntp

Use this command to configure Network Time Protocol (NTP) servers. The Network Time Protocol enables you to keep the FortiGate time in sync with other network systems. By enabling NTP on the FortiGate, FortiOS will check with the NTP server you select at the configured intervals. This will also ensure that logs and other time-sensitive settings on the FortiGate are correct.

The FortiGate maintains its internal clock using a built-in battery. At start up, the time reported by the FortiGate will indicate the hardware clock time, which may not be accurate. When using NTP, the system time might change after the FortiGate has successfully obtained the time from a configured NTP server.

```
config system ntp
    set ntpsync {enable | disable}    Enable/disable setting the FortiGate system time by synchronizing with an NTP
    Server.
    set type {fortiguard | custom}    Use the FortiGuard NTP server or any other available NTP Server.
        fortiguard    Use the FortiGuard NTP server.
        custom        Use any other available NTP server.
    set syncinterval {integer}    NTP synchronization interval (1 - 1440 min). range[1-1440]
    config ntpserver
        edit {id}
            # Configure the FortiGate to connect to any available third-party NTP server.
            set id {integer}    NTP server ID. range[0-4294967295]
            set server {string}    IP address or hostname of the NTP Server. size[63]
            set ntpv3 {enable | disable}    Enable to use NTPv3 instead of NTPv4.
            set authentication {enable | disable}    Enable/disable MD5 authentication.
            set key {password_string}    Key for MD5 authentication. size[59]
            set key-id {integer}    Key ID for authentication. range[0-4294967295]
        next
    set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IP address for communication to the NTP server.
```

```

    set source-ip6 {ipv6 address}    Source IPv6 address for communication to the NTP server.
    set server-mode {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiGate NTP Server Mode. Your FortiGate becomes an NTP server
for other devices on your network. The FortiGate relays NTP requests to its configured NTP server.
    config interface
        edit {interface-name}
            # FortiGate interface(s) with NTP server mode enabled. Devices on your network can contact these interfaces for
NTP services.
            set interface-name {string}    Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        next
    end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

system object-tagging

Use this command to configure object tags.

```

config system object-tagging
    edit {category}
        # Configure object tagging.
        set category {string}    Tag Category. size[63]
        set address {disable | mandatory | optional}    Address.
            disable    Disable.
            mandatory  Mandatory.
            optional   Optional.
        set device {disable | mandatory | optional}    Device.
            disable    Disable.
            mandatory  Mandatory.
            optional   Optional.
        set interface {disable | mandatory | optional}    Interface.
            disable    Disable.
            mandatory  Mandatory.
            optional   Optional.
        set multiple {enable | disable}    Allow multiple tag selection.
        set color {integer}    Color of icon on the GUI. range[0-32]
    config tags

```

```

        edit {name}
        # Tags.
        set name {string}    Tag name. size[64]
        next
    next
end

```

system password-policy

Configure a password policy to be used for administrator accounts and/or IPsec VPN pre-shared keys.

```

config system password-policy
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable setting a password policy for locally defined administrator passwords
    and IPsec VPN pre-shared keys.
    set apply-to {admin-password | ipsec-preshared-key}    Apply password policy to administrator passwords or IPsec pre-
    shared keys or both. Separate entries with a space.
        admin-password    Apply to administrator passwords.
        ipsec-preshared-key    Apply to IPsec pre-shared keys.
    set minimum-length {integer}    Minimum password length (8 - 128, default = 8). range[8-128]
    set min-lower-case-letter {integer}    Minimum number of lowercase characters in password (0 - 128, default = 0).
    range[0-128]
    set min-upper-case-letter {integer}    Minimum number of uppercase characters in password (0 - 128, default = 0).
    range[0-128]
    set min-non-alphanumeric {integer}    Minimum number of non-alphanumeric characters in password (0 - 128, default =
    0). range[0-128]
    set min-number {integer}    Minimum number of numeric characters in password (0 - 128, default = 0). range[0-128]
    set change-4-characters {enable | disable}    Enable/disable changing at least 4 characters for a new password (This
    attribute overrides reuse-password if both are enabled).
    set expire-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable password expiration.
    set expire-day {integer}    Number of days after which passwords expire (1 - 999 days, default = 90). range[1-999]
    set reuse-password {enable | disable}    Enable/disable reusing of password (if both reuse-password and change-4-char-
    acters are enabled, change-4-characters overrides).
end

```

status {enable | disable}

Enable or disable enforcing a password policy. Disabled by default.

apply to {admin-password | ipsec-preshared-key}

Select which passwords must follow the policy. The options are the passwords for administrative accounts, IPsec VPN pre-shared keys, or both. The default is `admin-password`.

minimum-length <int>

Set the minimum number of characters required for a password. The default is 8.

min-lower-case-letter <int>

Set the minimum number of lower case letters that must be used in a password. The default is 0.

min-upper-case-letter <int>

Set the minimum number of upper case letters that must be used in a password. The default is 0.

min-non-alphanumeric <int>

Set the minimum number of non-alphanumeric characters that must be used in a password. The default is 0.

min-number <int>

Set the minimum number of numbers that must be used in a password. The default is 0.

change-4-characters {enable | disable}

Enable or disable to require a new password to differ from the old password by at least four characters. Disabled by default.

expire-status {enable | disable}

Enable or disable password expiration. Disabled by default.

expire-day <int>

Set the number of days after which a password expires. The default is 90. This option only appears when `expire-status` is enabled.

reuse-password {enable | disable}

Enable or disable allowing users to re-use a password. Enabled by default.

system password-policy-guest-admin

Introduction.

```
config system password-policy-guest-admin
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable setting a password policy for locally defined administrator passwords
    and IPsec VPN pre-shared keys.
    set apply-to {guest-admin-password}    Guest administrator to which this password policy applies.
        guest-admin-password    Apply to guest administrator password.
    set minimum-length {integer}    Minimum password length (8 - 128, default = 8). range[8-128]
    set min-lower-case-letter {integer}    Minimum number of lowercase characters in password (0 - 128, default = 0).
range[0-128]
    set min-upper-case-letter {integer}    Minimum number of uppercase characters in password (0 - 128, default = 0).
range[0-128]
    set min-non-alphanumeric {integer}    Minimum number of non-alphanumeric characters in password (0 - 128, default =
0). range[0-128]
    set min-number {integer}    Minimum number of numeric characters in password (0 - 128, default = 0). range[0-128]
    set change-4-characters {enable | disable}    Enable/disable changing at least 4 characters for a new password (This
attribute overrides reuse-password if both are enabled).
    set expire-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable password expiration.
    set expire-day {integer}    Number of days after which passwords expire (1 - 999 days, default = 90). range[1-999]
    set reuse-password {enable | disable}    Enable/disable reusing of password (if both reuse-password and change-4-char-
acters are enabled, change-4-characters overrides).
end
```

system physical-switch

Use this command to configure the Layer 2 functions on FortiGate hardware-based switches.

```
config system physical-switch
    edit {name}
        # Configure physical switches.
        set name {string}    Name. size[15]
        set age-enable {enable | disable}    Enable/disable layer 2 age timer.
```

```
set age-val {integer}    Layer 2 table age timer Value. range[0-4294967295]
config port
  edit {name}
  # Configure member ports.
  set name {string}      Physical port name. size[15]
  set speed {option}     Speed.
    auto      Automatically adjust speed.
    10full    10M full-duplex.
    10half    10M half-duplex.
    100full   100M full-duplex.
    100half   100M half-duplex.
    1000full  1000M full-duplex.
    1000half  1000M half-duplex.
    1000auto  1000M auto adjust.
  set status {up | down} Interface status.
    up      Interface up.
    down    Interface down.
  next
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

age-val {seconds}

Specify the Layer 2 ageing timer value in seconds. Range: 0 - 4294967295, the upper limit is approximately 138 years. Default: 3158067, or approximately one month.

system pppoe-interface

Use this command to configure the PPPoE interface. See the What's New for FortiOS 5.6 discussion of [New PPPoE features](#) for more information.

```
config system pppoe-interface
  edit {name}
```

```

# Configure the PPPoE interfaces.
  set name {string}    Name of the PPPoE interface. size[15]
  set dial-on-demand {enable | disable}  Enable/disable dial on demand to dial the PPPoE interface when packets
are routed to the PPPoE interface.
  set ipv6 {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IPv6 Control Protocol (IPv6CP).
  set device {string}    Name for the physical interface. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
  set username {string}    User name. size[64]
  set password {password_string}  Enter the password. size[128]
  set auth-type {option}    PPP authentication type to use.
      auto      Automatically choose the authentication method.
      pap      PAP authentication.
      chap      CHAP authentication.
      mschapv1  MS-CHAPv1 authentication.
      mschapv2  MS-CHAPv2 authentication.
  set ipunnumbered {ipv4 address}  PPPoE unnumbered IP.
  set pppoe-unnumbered-negotiate {enable | disable}  Enable/disable PPPoE unnumbered negotiation.
  set idle-timeout {integer}  PPPoE auto disconnect after idle timeout (0-4294967295 sec). range[0-4294967295]
  set disc-retry-timeout {integer}  PPPoE discovery init timeout value in (0-4294967295 sec). range[0-4294967295]
  set padt-retry-timeout {integer}  PPPoE terminate timeout value in (0-4294967295 sec). range[0-4294967295]
  set service-name {string}  PPPoE service name. size[63]
  set ac-name {string}  PPPoE AC name. size[63]
  set lcp-echo-interval {integer}  PPPoE LCP echo interval in (0-4294967295 sec, default = 5). range[0-
4294967295]
  set lcp-max-echo-fails {integer}  Maximum missed LCP echo messages before disconnect (0-4294967295, default =
3). range[0-4294967295]
  next
end

```

system probe-response

Server probes can be used on interfaces. In order for this to occur, the probe response mode must first be configured, then the probe response must be allowed administrative access on the interface.

Use this command to configure probe responses.

```

config system probe-response
  set port {integer}    Port number to response. range[1-65535]
  set http-probe-value {string}  Value to respond to the monitoring server. size[1024]
  set ttl-mode {reinit | decrease | retain}  Mode for TWAMP packet TTL modification.

```

```
        reinit      Reinitialize TTL.
        decrease    Decrease TTL.
        retain      Retain TTL.
set mode {none | http-probe | twamp}    SLA response mode.
        none        Disable probe.
        http-probe  HTTP probe.
        twamp       Two way active measurement protocol.
set security-mode {none | authentication} Twamp responder security mode.
        none        Unauthenticated mode.
        authentication Authentication mode.
set password {password_string}    Twamp responder password in authentication mode size[128]
set timeout {integer}    An inactivity timer for a twamp test session. range[10-3600]
end
```

system proxy-arp

Use this command to add IP addresses to MAC address translation entries to the proxy ARP table.

```
config system proxy-arp
edit {id}
# Configure proxy-ARP.
set id {integer}    Unique integer ID of the entry. range[0-4294967295]
set interface {string}    Interface acting proxy-ARP. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
set ip {ipv4 address}    IP address or start IP to be proxied.
set end-ip {ipv4 address}    End IP of IP range to be proxied.
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

ip

The can either be the only IP address applied or it can be the start of an IP address range.

end-ip

If `end-ip` is set, then the `ip` becomes the `start-ip`, and the `end-ip` should be larger than `ip` and the range of IP addresses should be less than 256.

system replacemsg admin

Use this command to change the administration disclaimer page.

If you enter the following CLI command the FortiGate unit displays the Administration Login disclaimer whenever an administrator logs into the FortiGate unit web-based manager or CLI.

```
config system global
    set pre-login-banner enable
    set post-login-banner enable
end
```

The administrator login disclaimer contains the text of the Login Disclaimer replacement message as well as Accept and Decline buttons. The administrator must select accept to login.

These are HTML messages with HTTP headers.

```
config system replacemsg admin
    edit {msg-type}
        # Replacement messages.
        set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
        set buffer {string}    Message string. size[32768]
        set header {none | http | 8bit}    Header flag.
            none    No header type.
            http    HTTP
            8bit    8 bit.
        set format {none | text | html | wml}    Format flag.
            none    No format type.
            text    Text format.
            html    HTML format.
            wml    WML format
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

Replacement message tags

Replacement messages can include replacement message tags. When users receive the replacement message, the replacement message tag is replaced with content relevant to the message. Generally there is not a large call for these tags in disclaimer pages.

%%AUTH_REDIR_URL%%

Link to open a new window. (optional).

%%AUTH_LOGOUT%%

Immediately close the connection policy.

%%KEEPALIVEURL%%

URL the keep alive page connects to that keeps the connection policy alive. Connects every %%TIMEOUT%% seconds.

%%TIMEOUT%%

Configured number of seconds between %%KEEPALIVEURL%% connections.

system replacemsg alertmail

The FortiGate unit adds the alert mail replacement messages listed to alert email messages sent to administrators.

Alert mail replacement messages are text messages.

These are HTML messages with HTTP headers.

```
config system replacemsg alertmail
  edit {msg-type}
    # Replacement messages.
    set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
    set buffer {string}      Message string. size[32768]
    set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
        none  No header type.
        http  HTTP
        8bit  8 bit.
    set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
        none  No format type.
        text  Text format.
        html  HTML format.
        wml   WML format
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

alertmail message types

alertmail-block

Virus detected must be enabled for alert email. Antivirus File Filter must be enabled in an antivirus profile, and it must block a file that matches an entry in a selected file filter list.

alertmail-crit-event

Whenever a critical level event log message is generated, this replacement message is sent unless you configure alert email to enable Send alert email for logs based on severity and set the Minimum log level to Alert or Emergency.

alertmail-disk-full

Disk usage must be enabled, and disk usage reaches the percent full amount configured for alert email.

alertmail-nids-event

Intrusion detected must be enabled for alert email. When an IPS Sensor or a DoS Sensor detects an attack, this replacement message will be sent.

alertmail-virus

Virus detected must be enabled for alert email. Virus Scan must be enabled in an antivirus profile and detect a virus.

Replacement message tags

Replacement messages can include replacement message tags. When users receive the replacement message, the replacement message tag is replaced with content relevant to the message.

%%FILE%%

The name of a file that has been removed from a content stream. This could be a file that contained a virus or was blocked by antivirus file blocking. %%FILE%% can be used in virus and file block messages.

%%VIRUS%%

The name of a virus that was found in a file by the antivirus system. %%VIRUS%% can be used in virus messages.

%%URL%%

The URL of a web page. This can be a web page that is blocked by web filter content or URL blocking. %%URL%% can also be used in http virus and file block messages to be the URL of the web page from which a user attempted to download a file that is blocked.

%%CRITICAL_EVENT%%

Added to alert email critical event email messages. %%CRITICAL_EVENT%% is replaced with the critical event message that triggered the alert email.

%%PROTOCOL%%

The protocol (HTTP, FTP, POP3, IMAP, SMTP) in which a virus was detected. %%PROTOCOL%% is added to alert email virus messages.

%%SOURCE_IP%%

IP address of the email server that sent the email containing the virus.

%%DEST_IP%%

IP address of the user's computer that attempted to download the message from which the file was removed.

%%EMAIL_FROM%%

The email address of the sender of the message from which the file was removed.

%%EMAIL_TO%%

The email address of the intended receiver of the message from which the file was removed.

%%NIDS_EVENT%%

The IPS attack message. %%NIDS_EVENT%% is added to alert email intrusion messages.

system replacemsg auth

FortiOS uses the text of the authentication replacement messages for various user authentication HTML pages that are displayed when a user is required to authenticate because a firewall policy includes at least one firewall policy that requires firewall users to authenticate.

These pages are used for authentication using HTTP and HTTPS. Authentication replacement messages are HTML messages. You cannot customize the firewall authentication messages for FTP and Telnet.

The authentication login page and the authentication disclaimer include replacement tags and controls not found on other replacement messages.

Users see the authentication login page when they use a VPN or a firewall policy that requires authentication. You can customize this page in the same way as you modify other replacement messages,

Administrators see the authentication disclaimer page when logging into the FortiGate web-based manager or CLI. The disclaimer page makes a statement about usage policy to which the user must agree before the FortiGate unit permits access. You should change only the disclaimer text itself, not the HTML form code.

There are some unique requirements for these replacement messages:

- The login page must be an HTML page containing a form with ACTION="/" and METHOD="POST"
- The form must contain the following hidden controls:
 - <INPUT TYPE="hidden" NAME="%%MAGICID%%" VALUE="%%MAGICVAL%%">
 - <INPUT TYPE="hidden" NAME="%%STATEID%%" VALUE="%%STATEVAL%%">
 - <INPUT TYPE="hidden" NAME="%%REDIRID%%" VALUE="%%PROTURI%%">
- The form must contain the following visible controls:
 - <INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="%%USERNAMEID%%" size=25>
 - <INPUT TYPE="password" NAME="%%PASSWORDID%%" size=25>

These are HTML messages with HTTP headers.

```
config system replacemsg auth
edit {msg-type}
# Replacement messages.
set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
set buffer {string}    Message string. size[32768]
set header {none | http | 8bit}    Header flag.
    none    No header type.
    http    HTTP
    8bit    8 bit.
set format {none | text | html | wml}    Format flag.
    none    No format type.
    text    Text format.
    html    HTML format.
    wml    WML format
```

```
    next  
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

auth message types

auth-challenge-page

This HTML page is displayed if firewall users are required to answer a question to complete authentication. The page displays the question and includes a field in which to type the answer. This feature is supported by RADIUS and uses the generic RADIUS challenge-access auth response. Usually, challenge-access responses contain a Reply-Message attribute that contains a message for the user (for example, "Please enter new PIN"). This message is displayed on the login challenge page. The user enters a response that is sent back to the RADIUS server to be verified.

The Login challenge page is most often used with RSA RADIUS server for RSA SecurID authentication. The login challenge appears when the server needs the user to enter a new PIN. You can customize the replacement message to ask the user for a SecurID PIN.

This page uses the %%QUESTION%% tag.

auth-disclaimer[1|2|3]

Prompts user to accept the displayed disclaimer when leaving protected network.

The web-based manager refers to this as User Authentication Disclaimer, and it is enabled with a firewall policy that also includes at least one identity-based policy. When a firewall user attempts to browse a network through the FortiGate unit using HTTP or HTTPS this disclaimer page is displayed.

The extra pages seamlessly expand the size of the page.

auth-keepalive-page

The HTML page displayed with firewall authentication keepalive is enabled using the following CLI command:

```
config system global
    set auth-keepalive enable
end
```

Authentication keepalive keeps authenticated firewall sessions from ending when the authentication timeout ends. In the web-based manager, go to User > Options to set the Authentication Timeout.

This page includes %%TIMEOUT%%.

auth-login-failed-page

The HTML page displayed if firewall users enter an incorrect user name and password combination.

This page includes %%FAILED_MESSAGE%%, %%USERNAMEID%%, and %%PASSWORDID%% tags.

auth-login-page

The authentication HTML page displayed when firewall users who are required to authenticate connect through the FortiGate unit using HTTP or HTTPS.

Prompts the user for their username and password to login.

This page includes %%USERNAMEID%% and %%PASSWORDID%% tags.

auth-reject-page

The Disclaimer page replacement message does not re-direct the user to a redirect URL or the firewall policy does not include a redirect URL. When a firewall user selects the button on the disclaimer page to decline access through the FortiGate unit, the Declined disclaimer page is displayed.

auth-token-login-page

The authentication HTML page displayed when firewall users who are required to use two-factor authentication connect through the FortiGate unit using HTTP or HTTPS.

Prompts the user for their username, password and two-factor authentication credentials.

This page includes %%USERNAMEID%%, %%PASSWORDID%%, and %%TOKENCODE%% tags.

auth-token-login-failed-page

The HTML page displayed if firewall users performing two-factor authentication enter an incorrect credentials.

This page includes %%USERNAMEID%%, %%PASSWORDID%%, and %%TOKENCODE%% and %%EXTRAINFO%% tags.

Replacement message tags

Replacement messages can include replacement message tags. When users receive the replacement message, the replacement message tag is replaced with content relevant to the message.

%%AUTH_REDIR_URL%%

Link to open a new window. (optional).

%%AUTH_LOGOUT%%

Immediately close the connection policy.

%%EXTRAINFO%%

Provide extra help on two-factor authentication.

%%FAILED_MESSAGE%%

Message displayed on failed login page after user login fails.

%%KEEPALIVEURL%%

URL the keep alive page connects to that keeps the connectionpolicy alive. Connects every %%TIMEOUT%% seconds.

%%QUESTION%%

The default login and rejected login pages use this text immediately preceding the username and password fields. The default challenge page uses this as the challenge question. These are treated as two different variables by the server. If you want to use different text, replace %%QUESTION%% with the text that you prefer.

%%TIMEOUT%%

Configured number of seconds between %%KEEPALIVEURL%% connections.

%%TOKENCODE%%

The FortiToken authentication code. Used for two-factor authentication.

%%USERNAMEID%%

Username of the user logging in. This tag is used on the login and failed login pages.

%%PASSWORDID%%

Password of the user logging in. This tag is used on the challenge, login and failed login pages.

Requirements for login page

The authentication login page is linked to FortiGate functionality and you must construct it according to the following guidelines to ensure that it will work.

- The login page must be an HTML page containing a form with ACTION="/" and METHOD="POST"
- The form must contain the following hidden controls:
 - `<INPUT TYPE="hidden" NAME="%%MAGICID%%" VALUE="%%MAGICVAL%%">`
 - `<INPUT TYPE="hidden" NAME="%%STATEID%%" VALUE="%%STATEVAL%%">`
 - `<INPUT TYPE="hidden" NAME="%%REDIRID%%" VALUE="%%PROTURI%%">`
- The form must contain the following visible controls:
 - `<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="%%USERNAMEID%%" size=25>`
 - `<INPUT TYPE="password" NAME="%%PASSWORDID%%" size=25>`

system replacemsg device-detection-portal

The device-detection-portal messages report device detection events to the user. Currently only the device detection failure message is supported.

```
config system replacemsg device-detection-portal
  edit {msg-type}
    # Replacement messages.
    set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
    set buffer {string}     Message string. size[32768]
    set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
```

```
        none  No header type.
        http  HTTP
        8bit   8 bit.
    set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
        none  No format type.
        text  Text format.
        html  HTML format.
        wml   WML format
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

system replacemsg ec

The endpoint control (ec) replacement messages format the portal pages that the FortiGate unit sends to non-compliant users who attempt to use a firewall policy in which Endpoint control is enabled.

There are two Endpoint NAC portals:

- Endpoint NAC Download Portal — The FortiGate unit sends this page if the Endpoint NAC profile has recommendation-disclaimer disabled. In the web-based manager, this is the Quarantine Hosts to User Portal (Enforce compliance) option. The user can download the FortiClient Endpoint Security application installer. If you modify this replacement message, be sure to retain the %%LINK%% tag which provides the download URL for the FortiClient installer.
- Endpoint NAC Recommendation Portal — The FortiGate unit sends this page if the Endpoint NAC profile has recommendation-disclaimer enabled. In the web-based manager, this is the Notify Hosts to Install FortiClient (Warn only) option. The user can either download the FortiClient Endpoint Security application installer or select the Continue to link to access their desired destination. If you modify this replacement message, be sure to retain both the %%LINK%% tag which provides the download URL for the FortiClient installer and the %%DST_ADDR%% link that contains the URL that the user requested.

Message format is HTML by default.

```
config system replacemsg ec
  edit {msg-type}
    # Replacement messages.
    set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
    set buffer {string}      Message string. size[32768]
    set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
        none  No header type.
        http  HTTP
        8bit  8 bit.
    set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
        none  No format type.
        text  Text format.
        html  HTML format.
        wml   WML format
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

Replacement message tags

Replacement messages can include replacement message tags. When users receive the replacement message, the replacement message tag is replaced with content relevant to the message.

%%LINK%%

The download URL for the FortiClient installer.

%%DST_ADDR%%

The destination URL that the user entered. This is used in the endpt-recommendation-portal message only.

system replacemsg fortiguard-wf

Use this command to change the default messages that replace a web pages that FortiGuard web filtering has blocked.

The FortiGate unit sends the FortiGuard Web Filtering replacement messages to web browsers using the HTTP protocol when FortiGuard web filtering blocks a URL, provides details about blocked HTTP 4xx and 5xx errors, and for FortiGuard overrides. FortiGuard Web Filtering replacement messages are HTTP pages.

If the FortiGate unit supports SSL content scanning and inspection these replacement messages can also replace web pages downloaded using the HTTPS protocol.

By default, these are HTML messages.

```
config system replacemsg fortiguard-wf
  edit {msg-type}
    # Replacement messages.
    set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
    set buffer {string}    Message string. size[32768]
    set header {none | http | 8bit}    Header flag.
        none    No header type.
        http    HTTP
        8bit    8 bit.
    set format {none | text | html | wml}    Format flag.
        none    No format type.
        text    Text format.
        html    HTML format.
        wml    WML format
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

fortiguard-wf message types

ftgd-block

Enable FortiGuard Web Filtering is enabled in a web filter profile for HTTP or HTTPS, and blocks a web page. The blocked page is replaced with the ftgd-block web page.

ftgd-ovrd

Override selected filtering for a FortiGuard Web Filtering category and FortiGuard Web Filtering blocks a web page in this category. Displays this web page. Using this web page users can authenticate to get access to the page.

The %%OVRD_FORM%% tag provides the form used to initiate an override if FortiGuard Web Filtering blocks access to a web page. Do not remove this tag from the replacement message.

http-err

Provide details for blocked HTTP 4xx and 5xx errors is enabled in a web filter profile for HTTP or HTTPS, and blocks a web page. The blocked page is replaced with the http-err web page.

system replacemsg ftp

FortiOS sends the FTP replacement messages to FTP clients when an event occurs such as antivirus blocking a file that contains a virus in an FTP session.

By default, these are text-format messages with no header.

```
config system replacemsg ftp
  edit {msg-type}
    # Replacement messages.
    set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
    set buffer {string}     Message string. size[32768]
    set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
        none  No header type.
        http  HTTP
        8bit  8 bit.
    set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
        none  No format type.
        text  Text format.
```

```
        html    HTML format.
        wml     WML format
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

ftp message types

explicit-banner

Greeting banner for explicit FTP proxy.

ftp-dl-archive-block

FTP file transfer for DLP archiving was blocked. In DLP archiving, the DLP engine examines email, FTP, IM, NNTP, and web traffic. When enabled, the FortiGate unit records all occurrences of these traffic types when they are detected by the sensor.

ftp-dl-blocked

Antivirus File Filter enabled for FTP in an antivirus profile blocks a file being downloaded using FTP that matches an entry in the selected file filter list and sends this message to the FTP client.

ftp-dl-dlp-ban

In a DLP sensor, a rule with action set to Ban blocks an FTP session and displays this message. This message is displayed whenever the banned user attempts to access until the user is removed from the banned user list.

Replacement message tags

Replacement messages can include replacement message tags. When users receive the replacement message, the replacement message tag is replaced with content relevant to the message.

%%FILE%%

The name of a file that has been removed from a content stream. This could be a file that contained a virus or was blocked by antivirus file blocking. %%FILE%% can be used in virus and file block messages.

%%VIRUS%%

The name of a virus that was found in a file by the antivirus system. %%VIRUS%% can be used in virus messages.

%%QUARFILENAME%%

The name of a file that has been removed from a content stream and added to the quarantine. This could be a file that contained a virus or was blocked by antivirus file blocking. %%QUARFILENAME%% can be used in virus and file block messages.

%%URL%%

The URL of a web page. This can be a web page that is blocked by web filter content or URL blocking. %%URL%% can also be used in http virus and file block messages to be the URL of the web page from which a user attempted to download a file that is blocked.

%%PROTOCOL%%

The protocol (HTTP, FTP, POP3, IMAP, SMTP) in which a virus was detected. %%PROTOCOL%% is added to alert email virus messages.

%%SOURCE_IP%%

The IP address from which a virus was received. For email this is the IP address of the email server that sent the email containing the virus. For HTTP this is the IP address of the web page that sent the virus.

%%DEST_IP%%

The IP address of the computer that would have received the blocked file. For email this is the IP address of the user's computer that attempted to download the message from which the file was removed.

system replacemsg http

Use this command to change default replacement messages added to web pages when the antivirus engine blocks a file in an HTTP session because of a matching file pattern or because a virus is detected; or when web filter blocks a web page.

The FortiGate unit sends the HTTP replacement messages listed to web browsers using the HTTP protocol when an event occurs such as antivirus blocking a file that contains a virus in an HTTP session. HTTP replacement messages are HTML pages.

If the FortiGate unit supports SSL content scanning and inspection these replacement messages can also replace web pages downloaded using the HTTPS protocol.

```
config system replacemsg http
  edit {msg-type}
    # Replacement messages.
    set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
    set buffer {string}     Message string. size[32768]
    set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
        none  No header type.
        http  HTTP
        8bit  8 bit.
    set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
        none  No format type.
        text  Text format.
        html  HTML format.
        wml   WML format
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

http message types

bannedword

Web content blocking is enabled in a web filter profile, and blocks a web page being downloaded with an HTTP GET that contains content matching an entry in the selected Web Content Block list. The blocked page is replaced with the bannedword web page.

http-archive-block

A transfer contained a blocked DLP archive. In DLP archiving, the DLP engine examines email, FTP, IM, NNTP, and web traffic. When enabled, the FortiGate unit records all occurrences of these traffic types when they are detected by the sensor.

http-block

Antivirus File Filter is enabled for HTTP or HTTPS in a web filter profile, and blocks a file being downloaded using an HTTP GET that matches an entry in the selected file filter list. The file is replaced with the httpblock web page that is displayed by the client browser.

http-client-archive-block

The user is not allowed to upload the file.

http-client-bannedword

Web content blocking enabled in a web filter profile blocks a web page being uploaded with an HTTP PUT that contains content that matches an entry in the selected Web Content Block list. The client browser displays the http-client-bannedword web page.

http-client-block

Antivirus File Filter is enabled for HTTP or HTTPS in an antivirus profile blocks a file being uploaded by an HTTP POST that matches an entry in the selected file filter list and replaces it with the http-client-block web page that is displayed by the client browser.

http-client-filesize

Oversized File/Email is set to Block for HTTP or HTTPS and an oversized file that is being uploaded with an HTTP PUT is blocked and replaced with the http-client-filesize web page.

http-contenttype-block

When a specific type of content is not allowed, it is replaced with the http-contenttype-block web page.

http-dlp-ban

In a DLP sensor, a rule with action set to Ban replaces a blocked web page or file with the http-dlp-ban web page. This web page also replaces any additional web pages or files that the banned user attempts to access until the user is removed from the banned user list.

http-filesize

Antivirus Oversized File/Email is set to Block for HTTP or HTTPS and blocks an oversized file being downloaded using an HTTP GET. The file is replaced with the http-filesize web page that is displayed by the client browser.

http-post-block

HTTP POST Action is set to Block and the FortiGate unit blocks an HTTP POST and displays the http-post-block web page.

https-invalid-certblock

When an invalid security certificate is detected, the https-invalidcert-block page is displayed.

infcache-block

Client comforting is enabled and the FortiGate unit blocks a URL added to the client comforting URL cache. It replaces the blocked URL with the infcache-block web page.

url-block

Web URL filtering is enabled and blocks a web page with a URL that matches an entry in the selected URL Filter list. The blocked page is replaced with the url-block web page.

Replacement message tags

Replacement messages can include replacement message tags. When users receive the replacement message, the replacement message tag is replaced with content relevant to the message.

%%FILE%%

The name of a file that has been removed from a content stream. This could be a file that contained a virus or was blocked by antivirus file blocking. %%FILE%% can be used in virus and file block messages.

%%VIRUS%%

The name of a virus that was found in a file by the antivirus system. %%VIRUS%% can be used in virus messages.

%%QUARFILENAME%%

The name of a file that has been removed from a content stream and added to the quarantine. This could be a file that contained a virus or was blocked by antivirus file blocking. %%QUARFILENAME%% can be used in virus and file block messages.

%%URL%%

The URL of a web page. This can be a web page that is blocked by web filter content or URL blocking. %%URL%% can also be used in http virus and file block messages to be the URL of the web page from which a user attempted to download a file that is blocked.

%%PROTOCOL%%

The protocol (HTTP, FTP, POP3, IMAP, SMTP) in which a virus was detected. %%PROTOCOL%% is added to alert email virus messages.

%%SOURCE_IP%%

The IP address of the web page from which a virus was received.

%%DEST_IP%%

The IP address of the computer that would have received the blocked file. For email this is the IP address of the user's computer that attempted to download the message from which the file was removed.

system replacemsg mail

Use this command to change default replacement messages added to email messages when the antivirus engine blocks a file either because of a matching file pattern or because a virus is detected; or when spam filter blocks an email. By default, these are text messages with an 8-bit header.

```
config system replacemsg mail
  edit {msg-type}
  # Replacement messages.
  set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
  set buffer {string}     Message string. size[32768]
  set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
    none  No header type.
    http  HTTP
    8bit  8 bit.
  set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
    none  No format type.
    text  Text format.
    html  HTML format.
    wml   WML format
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

mail message types

email-block

The antivirus File Filter is enabled for an email protocol deletes a file that matches an entry in the selected file filter list. The file is blocked and the email is replaced with the email-block message.

email-dlp-ban

In a DLP sensor, a rule with action set to Ban replaces a blocked email message with this message. This message also replaces any additional email messages that the banned user sends until they are removed from the banned user list.

email-dl-ban-sender

In a DLP sensor, a rule with action set to Ban Sender replaces a blocked email message with this message. The email-dlp-ban message also replaces any additional email messages that the banned user sends until the user is removed from the banned user list.

email-dlp-subject

The email-dlp-subject message is added to the subject field of all email messages replaced by the DLP sensor Block, Ban, Ban Sender, Quarantine IP address, and Quarantine interface actions.

email-filesize

When the antivirus Oversized File/Email is set to Block for an email protocol removes an oversized file from an email message, the file is replaced with the email-filesize message.

partial

Antivirus Pass Fragmented Emails is not enabled so a fragmented email is blocked. The partial message replaces the first fragment of the fragmented email.

smtp-block

Splice mode is enabled and the antivirus file filter deleted a file from an SMTP email message. The FortiGate unit aborts the SMTP session and returns a 554 SMTP error message to the sender that includes the smtp-block replacement message.

smtp-filesize

Splice mode is enabled and antivirus Oversized File/Email is set to Block. When the FortiGate unit blocks an oversize SMTP email message, the FortiGate unit aborts the SMTP session and returns a 554 SMTP error message to the sender that includes the smtpfilesize replacement message.

Replacement message tags

Replacement messages can include replacement message tags. When users receive the replacement message, the replacement message tag is replaced with content relevant to the message.

%%FILE%%

The name of a file that has been removed from a content stream. This could be a file that contained a virus or was blocked by antivirus file blocking. %%FILE%% can be used in virus and file block messages.

%%VIRUS%%

The name of a virus that was found in a file by the antivirus system. %%VIRUS%% can be used in virus messages.

%%QUARFILENAME%%

The name of a file that has been removed from a content stream and added to the quarantine. This could be a file that contained a virus or was blocked by antivirus file blocking. %%QUARFILENAME%% can be used in virus and file block messages.

%%PROTOCOL%%

The protocol (HTTP, FTP, POP3, IMAP, SMTP) in which a virus was detected. %%PROTOCOL%% is added to alert email virus messages.

%%SOURCE_IP%%

IP address of the email server that sent the email containing the virus.

%%DEST_IP%%

IP address of the user's computer that attempted to download the message from which the file was removed.

%%EMAIL_FROM%%

The email address of the sender of the message from which the file was removed.

%%EMAIL_TO%%

The email address of the intended receiver of the message from which the file was removed.

system replacemsg nac-quar

Use this command to change the Endpoint Control pages for data leak (DLP), denial of service (DoS), IPS, and virus detected.

These are HTML messages with HTTP headers.

```
config system replacemsg nac-quar
  edit {msg-type}
    # Replacement messages.
    set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
    set buffer {string}      Message string. size[32768]
    set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
        none  No header type.
        http  HTTP
        8bit  8 bit.
    set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
        none  No format type.
        text  Text format.
        html  HTML format.
        wml   WML format
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

nac-quar message types

nac-quar-dlp

Action set to Quarantine IP address or Quarantine Interface in a DLP sensor and the DLP sensor adds a source IP address or a FortiGate interface to the banned user list. The FortiGate unit displays this replacement message as a web page when the blocked user attempts to connect through the FortiGate unit using HTTP on port 80 or when any user attempts to connect through a FortiGate interface added to the banned user list using HTTP on port 80.

nac-quar-dos

For a DoS Sensor the CLI quarantine option set to attacker or interface and the DoS Sensor added to a DoS firewall policy adds a source IP, a destination IP, or FortiGate interface to the banned user list.

The FortiGate unit displays this replacement message as a web page when the blocked user attempts to connect through the FortiGate unit using HTTP on port 80 or when any user attempts to connect through a FortiGate interface added to the banned user list using HTTP on port 80. This replacement message is not displayed if quarantine is set to both.

nac-quar-ips

Quarantine Attackers enabled in an IPS sensor filter or override and the IPS sensor adds a source IP address, a destination IP address, or a FortiGate interface to the banned user list. The FortiGate unit displays this replacement message as a web page when the blocked user attempts to connect through the FortiGate unit using HTTP on port 80 or when any user attempts to connect through a FortiGate interface added to the banned user list using HTTP on port 80. This replacement message is not displayed if method is set to Attacker and Victim IP Address.

nac-quarvirus

Antivirus Quarantine Virus Sender adds a source IP address or FortiGate interface to the banned user list. The FortiGate unit displays this replacement message as a web page when the blocked user attempts to connect through the FortiGate unit using HTTP on port 80 or when any user attempts to connect through a FortiGate interface added to the banned user list using HTTP on port 80.

system replacemsg nntp

Use this command to change the net news transfer protocol (NNTP) download pages.

These are HTML messages with HTTP headers.

```
config system replacemsg nntp
  edit {msg-type}
  # Replacement messages.
  set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
  set buffer {string}      Message string. size[32768]
  set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
    none  No header type.
    http  HTTP
    8bit  8 bit.
  set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
    none  No format type.
    text  Text format.
    html  HTML format.
    wml   WML format
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

nntp message types

nntp-dl-blocked

Antivirus File Filter is enabled for NNTP blocks a file attached to an NNTP message that matches an entry in the selected file filter list. The FortiGate unit sends the nntp-dl-blocked message to the FTP client.

nntp-dl-filesize

Antivirus Oversized File/Email is set to Block for NNTP. The FortiGate unit removes an oversized file from an NNTP message and replaces the file with the nntp-dl-filesize message.

nntp-dlp-ban

In a DLP sensor, a rule with action set to Ban replaces a blocked NNTP message with this message. The nntp-dlp-ban message also replaces any additional NNTP messages that the banned user sends until they are removed from the banned user list.

nntp-dlp-subject

The nntp-dlp-subject message is added to the subject field of all NNTP messages replaced by the DLP sensor Block, Ban, Quarantine IP address, and Quarantine interface actions.

Replacement message tags

Replacement messages can include replacement message tags. When users receive the replacement message, the replacement message tag is replaced with content relevant to the message.

%%FILE%%

The name of a file that has been removed from a content stream. This could be a file that contained a virus or was blocked by antivirus file blocking. The file may have been quarantined if a virus was detected. %%FILE%% can be used in virus and file block messages.

%%QUARFILENAME%%

The name of a file that has been removed from a content stream and added to the quarantine. This could be a file that contained a virus or was blocked by antivirus file blocking. %%QUARFILENAME%% can be used in virus and file block messages.

%%VIRUS%%

The name of a virus that was found in a file by the antivirus system. %%VIRUS%% can be used in virus messages.

system replacemsg spam

FortiOS adds Spam replacement messages to SMTP and SMTPS server responses if the email message is identified as spam and the spam action is discard.

By default, these are text messages with an 8-bit header.

```
config system replacemsg spam
  edit {msg-type}
  # Replacement messages.
  set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
  set buffer {string}      Message string. size[32768]
  set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
    none  No header type.
    http  HTTP
    8bit  8 bit.
  set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
    none  No format type.
    text  Text format.
    html  HTML format.
    wml   WML format
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

spam message types

ipblocklist

Spam Filtering IP address BWL check enabled for an email protocol identifies an email message as spam and adds this replacement message.

reversedns

Spam Filtering Return e-mail DNS check enabled for an email protocol identifies an email message as spam and adds this replacement message.

smtp-spam-ase

The FortiGuard Antispam Engine (ASE) reports this message as spam.

smtp-spam-bannedword

Spam Filtering Banned word check enabled for an email protocol identifies an email message as spam and adds this replacement message.

smtp-spam-dnsbl

From the CLI, spamrbl enabled for an email protocol identifies an email message as spam and adds this replacement message.

smtp-spam-emailblack

The spam filter email address blocklist marked an email as spam. The smtp-spam-emailblack replaces the email.

smtp-spam-feip

FortiGuard Antispam IP address checking identifies an email message as spam and adds this replacement message to the server response.

smtp-spam-helo

Spam Filtering HELO DNS lookup enabled for SMTP identifies an email message as spam and adds this replacement message. HELO DNS lookup is not available for SMTPS.

smtp-spam-mimeheader

From the CLI, spamhdrcheck enabled for an email protocol identifies an email message as spam and adds this replacement message.

submit

Any Spam Filtering option enabled for an email protocol identifies an email message as spam and adds this replacement message. Spam Filtering adds this message to all email tagged as spam. The message describes a button that the recipient of the message can select to submit the email signatures to the FortiGuard Antispam service if the email was incorrectly tagged as spam (a false positive).

Replacement message tags

Replacement messages can include replacement message tags. When users receive the replacement message, the replacement message tag is replaced with content relevant to the message.

%%QUARFILENAME%%

The name of a file that has been removed from a content stream and added to the quarantine. This could be a file that contained a virus or was blocked by antivirus file blocking. %%QUARFILENAME%% can be used in virus and file block messages.

%%SOURCE_IP%%

The IP address from which a virus was received. For email this is the IP address of the email server that sent the email containing the virus. For HTTP this is the IP address of the web page that sent the virus.

%%DEST_IP%%

The IP address of the computer that would have received the blocked file. For email this is the IP address of the user's computer that attempted to download the message from which the file was removed.

%%EMAIL_FROM%%

The email address of the sender of the message from which the file was removed.

%%EMAIL_TO%%

The email address of the intended receiver of the message from which the file was removed.

system replacemsg sslvpn

The SSL VPN login replacement messages are HTML replacement messages.

The sslvpn-logon message formats the FortiGate SSL VPN portal login page.

The sslvpn-limit message formats the web page that appears if a user attempts to log into SSL VPN more than once.

You can customize these replacement messages according to your organization's needs. The pages are linked to FortiGate functionality and you must construct them according to the following guidelines to ensure that it will work.

These are HTML messages with HTTP headers.

```
config system replacemsg sslvpn
  edit {msg-type}
    # Replacement messages.
    set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
    set buffer {string}      Message string. size[32768]
    set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
        none  No header type.
        http  HTTP
        8bit  8 bit.
    set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
        none  No format type.
        text  Text format.
        html  HTML format.
        wml   WML format
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

system replacemsg traffic-quota

When user traffic through the FortiGate unit is blocked by traffic shaper quota controls, users see the Traffic shaper block message or the Per IP traffic shaper block message when they attempt to connect through the FortiGate unit using HTTP.

This is an HTML message with an HTTP header.

```
config system replacemsg traffic-quota
  edit {msg-type}
  # Replacement messages.
  set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
  set buffer {string}      Message string. size[32768]
  set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
    none  No header type.
    http  HTTP
    8bit  8 bit.
  set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
    none  No format type.
    text  Text format.
    html  HTML format.
    wml   WML format
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

Requirements for traffic quota pages

The traffic quota HTTP pages should contain the %%QUOTA_INFO%% tag to display information about the traffic shaping quota setting that is blocking the user.

system replacemsg utm

When data leaks or viruses are detected, these messages are substituted for the blocked item.

```
config system replacemsg utm
  edit {msg-type}
  # Replacement messages.
```



```
set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
set buffer {string}      Message string. size[32768]
set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
    none  No header type.
    http  HTTP
    8bit  8 bit.
set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
    none  No format type.
    text  Text format.
    html  HTML format.
    wml   WML format
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

utm message types

dlp-text

An email message is blocked because it appears to contain a data leak.

dlp-html

An HTTP transfer is blocked because it appears to contain a data leak.

virus-html

A virus was detected in a file being downloaded using an HTTP GET.

virus-text

A virus was detected in a file attachment. The file was removed.

Replacement message tags

Replacement messages can include replacement message tags. When users receive the replacement message, the replacement message tag is replaced with content relevant to the message.

%%FILE%%

The name of a file that has been removed from a content stream. This could be a file that contained a virus or was blocked by antivirus file blocking. %%FILE%% can be used in virus and file block messages.

%%VIRUS%%

The name of a virus that was found in a file by the antivirus system. %%VIRUS%% can be used in virus messages.

%%QUARFILENAME%%

The name of a file that has been removed from a content stream and added to the quarantine. This could be a file that contained a virus or was blocked by antivirus file blocking. %%QUARFILENAME%% can be used in virus and file block messages.

%%PROTOCOL%%

The protocol (HTTP, FTP, POP3, IMAP, SMTP) in which a virus was detected. %%PROTOCOL%% is added to alert email virus messages.

system replacemsg webproxy

The web proxy returns messages for user authentication failures and HTTP errors.

```
config system replacemsg webproxy
    edit {msg-type}
    # Replacement messages.
    set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
    set buffer {string}     Message string. size[32768]
```

```
        set header {none | http | 8bit}    Header flag.
            none    No header type.
            http    HTTP
            8bit    8 bit.
        set format {none | text | html | wml}    Format flag.
            none    No format type.
            text    Text format.
            html    HTML format.
            wml     WML format
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

Replacement message tags

Replacement messages can include replacement message tags. When users receive the replacement message, the replacement message tag is replaced with content relevant to the message.

The http-err replacement message requires the following tags:

%%HTTP_ERR_CODE%%

The returned HTTP error code, “404” for example.

%%HTTP_ERR_DESC%%

The returned HTTP error message, “Not Found” for example.

%%PROTOCOL%%

The protocol that applies to the traffic, “http://” for example.

%%URL%%

The URL (not including protocol) that caused the error.

system replacemsg-group

Replacement messages can be created and applied to specific profile groups. This allows the customization of messages for specific users or user groups.

If a user is not part of a custom replacement message group, their replacement messages come from the 'default' group. The 'default' group always exists, and cannot be deleted. All additional replacement message groups inherit from the default group. Any messages in custom groups that have not been modified, inherit any changes to those messages in the default group.

The only replacement messages that can not be customized in groups are administration related messages, which in the following categories:

- Alert Mail
- Administration
- Authentication
- IM and P2P
- SSL VPN

Except for mm1, mm3, mm4, mm7 which use the message field, all replacement message types use the buffer field to refer to the body of the message.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config icap edit icap-req-resp set buffer <string> set header {none http 8bit} set format {none text html} next ...</pre>	<p>Custom replacement message for ICAP REQMOD response can be configured.</p> <p>When FortiGate receives a denied/block message from the ICAP server (REQMOD), FortiGate generates and sends this replacement message.</p>

```
config system replacemsg-group
  edit {name}
  # Configure replacement message groups.
  set name {string}    Group name. size[35]
  set comment {string}  Comment. size[255]
  set group-type {default | utm | auth | ec}  Group type.
    default  Per-vdom replacement messages.
    utm      For use with UTM settings in firewall policies.
    auth     For use with authentication pages in firewall policies.
    ec       For use with endpoint-control profiles.
  config mail
    edit {msg-type}
    # Replacement message table entries.
    set msg-type {string}  Message type. size[28]
    set buffer {string}    Message string. size[32768]
    set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
      none  No header type.
      http  HTTP
      8bit  8 bit.
    set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
      none  No format type.
      text  Text format.
      html  HTML format.
      wml   WML format
    next
  config http
    edit {msg-type}
    # Replacement message table entries.
    set msg-type {string}  Message type. size[28]
    set buffer {string}    Message string. size[32768]
    set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
      none  No header type.
      http  HTTP
      8bit  8 bit.
    set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
      none  No format type.
      text  Text format.
      html  HTML format.
      wml   WML format
    next
  next
next
```

```
config webproxy
edit {msg-type}
# Replacement message table entries.
set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
set buffer {string}      Message string. size[32768]
set header {none | http | 8bit}    Header flag.
    none    No header type.
    http    HTTP
    8bit    8 bit.
set format {none | text | html | wml}    Format flag.
    none    No format type.
    text    Text format.
    html    HTML format.
    wml     WML format
next
config ftp
edit {msg-type}
# Replacement message table entries.
set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
set buffer {string}      Message string. size[32768]
set header {none | http | 8bit}    Header flag.
    none    No header type.
    http    HTTP
    8bit    8 bit.
set format {none | text | html | wml}    Format flag.
    none    No format type.
    text    Text format.
    html    HTML format.
    wml     WML format
next
config nntp
edit {msg-type}
# Replacement message table entries.
set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
set buffer {string}      Message string. size[32768]
set header {none | http | 8bit}    Header flag.
    none    No header type.
    http    HTTP
    8bit    8 bit.
set format {none | text | html | wml}    Format flag.
```

```
        none No format type.
        text Text format.
        html HTML format.
        wml WML format
    next
config fortiguard-wf
edit {msg-type}
# Replacement message table entries.
set msg-type {string} Message type. size[28]
set buffer {string} Message string. size[32768]
set header {none | http | 8bit} Header flag.
    none No header type.
    http HTTP
    8bit 8 bit.
set format {none | text | html | wml} Format flag.
    none No format type.
    text Text format.
    html HTML format.
    wml WML format
next
config spam
edit {msg-type}
# Replacement message table entries.
set msg-type {string} Message type. size[28]
set buffer {string} Message string. size[32768]
set header {none | http | 8bit} Header flag.
    none No header type.
    http HTTP
    8bit 8 bit.
set format {none | text | html | wml} Format flag.
    none No format type.
    text Text format.
    html HTML format.
    wml WML format
next
config alertmail
edit {msg-type}
# Replacement message table entries.
set msg-type {string} Message type. size[28]
set buffer {string} Message string. size[32768]
```

```
        set header {none | http | 8bit}    Header flag.
            none    No header type.
            http    HTTP
            8bit    8 bit.
        set format {none | text | html | wml}    Format flag.
            none    No format type.
            text    Text format.
            html    HTML format.
            wml     WML format
    next
config admin
    edit {msg-type}
    # Replacement message table entries.
        set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
        set buffer {string}    Message string. size[32768]
        set header {none | http | 8bit}    Header flag.
            none    No header type.
            http    HTTP
            8bit    8 bit.
        set format {none | text | html | wml}    Format flag.
            none    No format type.
            text    Text format.
            html    HTML format.
            wml     WML format
    next
config auth
    edit {msg-type}
    # Replacement message table entries.
        set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
        set buffer {string}    Message string. size[32768]
        set header {none | http | 8bit}    Header flag.
            none    No header type.
            http    HTTP
            8bit    8 bit.
        set format {none | text | html | wml}    Format flag.
            none    No format type.
            text    Text format.
            html    HTML format.
            wml     WML format
    next
```



```
config sslvpn
  edit {msg-type}
  # Replacement message table entries.
  set msg-type {string}  Message type. size[28]
  set buffer {string}  Message string. size[32768]
  set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
    none  No header type.
    http  HTTP
    8bit  8 bit.
  set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
    none  No format type.
    text  Text format.
    html  HTML format.
    wml   WML format
  next
config ec
  edit {msg-type}
  # Replacement message table entries.
  set msg-type {string}  Message type. size[28]
  set buffer {string}  Message string. size[32768]
  set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
    none  No header type.
    http  HTTP
    8bit  8 bit.
  set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
    none  No format type.
    text  Text format.
    html  HTML format.
    wml   WML format
  next
config device-detection-portal
  edit {msg-type}
  # Replacement message table entries.
  set msg-type {string}  Message type. size[28]
  set buffer {string}  Message string. size[32768]
  set header {none | http | 8bit}  Header flag.
    none  No header type.
    http  HTTP
    8bit  8 bit.
  set format {none | text | html | wml}  Format flag.
```

```
        none No format type.
        text Text format.
        html HTML format.
        wml WML format
    next
config nac-quar
edit {msg-type}
# Replacement message table entries.
set msg-type {string} Message type. size[28]
set buffer {string} Message string. size[32768]
set header {none | http | 8bit} Header flag.
    none No header type.
    http HTTP
    8bit 8 bit.
set format {none | text | html | wml} Format flag.
    none No format type.
    text Text format.
    html HTML format.
    wml WML format
next
config traffic-quota
edit {msg-type}
# Replacement message table entries.
set msg-type {string} Message type. size[28]
set buffer {string} Message string. size[32768]
set header {none | http | 8bit} Header flag.
    none No header type.
    http HTTP
    8bit 8 bit.
set format {none | text | html | wml} Format flag.
    none No format type.
    text Text format.
    html HTML format.
    wml WML format
next
config utm
edit {msg-type}
# Replacement message table entries.
set msg-type {string} Message type. size[28]
set buffer {string} Message string. size[32768]
```

```
        set header {none | http | 8bit}    Header flag.
            none    No header type.
            http    HTTP
            8bit    8 bit.
        set format {none | text | html | wml}    Format flag.
            none    No format type.
            text    Text format.
            html    HTML format.
            wml     WML format
    next
config custom-message
edit {msg-type}
# Replacement message table entries.
    set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
    set buffer {string}    Message string. size[32768]
    set header {none | http | 8bit}    Header flag.
        none    No header type.
        http    HTTP
        8bit    8 bit.
    set format {none | text | html | wml}    Format flag.
        none    No format type.
        text    Text format.
        html    HTML format.
        wml     WML format
    next
config icap
edit {msg-type}
# Replacement message table entries.
    set msg-type {string}    Message type. size[28]
    set buffer {string}    Message string. size[32768]
    set header {none | http | 8bit}    Header flag.
        none    No header type.
        http    HTTP
        8bit    8 bit.
    set format {none | text | html | wml}    Format flag.
        none    No format type.
        text    Text format.
        html    HTML format.
        wml     WML format
    next
```

```
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

edit <groupname_string>

Create or edit a replacement message group. Use a groupname of default to configure per-vdom replacement messages. Only valid when VDOMs are enabled.

group-type {auth | ec | utm}

Enter the type of replacement message group this is.

auth — (the default) for use with authentication pages in firewall policies

ec — for use with endpoint-control profiles

utm — for use with UTM settings in firewall policies

default — used to configure per-vdom replacement messages, only available when group name is set to default

config {auth | ec | fortiguard-wf | ftp | http | icap | mail | mm1 | mm3 | mm4 | mm7 | nntp | spam}

Select a replacement message type to add or edit. These types or protocols, match with the existing replacemsg commands, and determine which msgtypes are available.

edit <msgkey_integer>

Create or edit a message entry in the table. Enter the key of the entry. Using '?' will show you the existing message type as well as the msgkey entries in the table.

msg-type <type>

Select the message type for this message entry. Valid message types vary according to which replacement message table you are editing.

buffer <message>

Type a new replacement message to replace the current replacement message. Maximum length 32,768 characters.

system replacemsg-image

Use this command to add, edit, or delete images to be used in HTTP replacement messages and for the SMIL parts of FortiOS Carrier replacement messages. Both image-base64 and image-type must be present for a valid entry.

```
config system replacemsg-image
  edit {name}
    # Configure replacement message images.
    set name {string}    Image name. size[23]
    set image-type {gif | jpg | tiff | png}    Image type.
        gif    GIF image.
        jpg    JPEG image.
        tiff    TIFF image.
        png    PNG image.
    set image-base64 {string}    Image data. size[32768]
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

image-base64 <image_data>

Enter the image in base64 encoding. You can also use the GUI to add images by browsing to their location.

system resource-limits

Use this command to configure resource limits that will apply to all VDOMs. When you set a global resource limit, you cannot exceed that resource limit in any VDOM. For example, enter the following command to limit all VDOMs to 100 VPN IPSec Phase 1 tunnels:

```
config global
```

```
config system resource-limits
    set ipsec-phase1 100
end
end
```

With this global limit set, you can add only a maximum of 100 VPN IPsec Phase 1 Tunnels to any VDOM.

You can also edit the resource limits for individual VDOMs to further limit the number of resources that you can add to individual VDOMs. See the `system vdom-property` command.

A resource limit of 0 means no limit, which means the resource is not being limited by the resource limit configuration. Instead, the resource is limited by other factors. The FortiGate unit limits dynamic resources by the capacity of the FortiGate unit and can vary depending on how busy the system is. Limits for static resources are set by limitations in the FortiGate configuration, as documented in the [FortiGate Maximum Values Table](#).

The default maximum value for each resource depends on the FortiGate model. Dynamic resources (Sessions, Dial-up Tunnels, and SSL VPN) do not have default maximums so the default maximum for dynamic resources is always 0 (meaning unlimited). Static resources may have a limit set or many may be set to 0, which means they are limited by the resource limit configuration.

If you set the maximum resource usage for a VDOM, you cannot reduce the default maximum global limit for all VDOMs below this maximum.

This command is available only when VDOMs are enabled.

```
config system resource-limits
    set session {integer}    Maximum number of sessions. range[0-4294967295]
    set ipsec-phase1 {integer} Maximum number of VPN IPsec phase1 tunnels. range[0-4294967295]
    set ipsec-phase2 {integer} Maximum number of VPN IPsec phase2 tunnels. range[0-4294967295]
    set ipsec-phase1-interface {integer} Maximum number of VPN IPsec phase1 interface tunnels. range[0-4294967295]
    set ipsec-phase2-interface {integer} Maximum number of VPN IPsec phase2 interface tunnels. range[0-4294967295]
    set dialup-tunnel {integer} Maximum number of dial-up tunnels. range[0-4294967295]
    set firewall-policy {integer} Maximum number of firewall policies (IPv4, IPv6, policy46, policy64, DoS-policy4, DoS-policy6, multicast). range[0-4294967295]
    set firewall-address {integer} Maximum number of firewall addresses (IPv4, IPv6, multicast). range[0-4294967295]
    set firewall-addrgrp {integer} Maximum number of firewall address groups (IPv4, IPv6). range[0-4294967295]
    set custom-service {integer} Maximum number of firewall custom services. range[0-4294967295]
    set service-group {integer} Maximum number of firewall service groups. range[0-4294967295]
    set onetime-schedule {integer} Maximum number of firewall one-time schedules. range[0-4294967295]
    set recurring-schedule {integer} Maximum number of firewall recurring schedules. range[0-4294967295]
    set user {integer} Maximum number of local users. range[0-4294967295]
    set user-group {integer} Maximum number of user groups. range[0-4294967295]
    set sslvpn {integer} Maximum number of SSL-VPN. range[0-4294967295]
    set proxy {integer} Maximum number of concurrent proxy users. range[0-4294967295]
```

```
    set log-disk-quota {integer}    Log disk quota in MB. range[0-4294967295]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

custom-service <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of firewall custom services.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

dialup-tunnel <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of dial-up tunnels.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

firewall-address <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of firewall addresses.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

firewall-addrgrp <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of firewall address groups.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

firewall-policy <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of firewall policies.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

ipsec-phase1 <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of IPSec phase1 tunnels.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

ipsec-phase2 <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of IPSec phase2 tunnels.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

log-disk-quota <maximum_MB>

Enter the maximum amount of log disk space available, in MB, for global log messages.

The range of values depends on the amount of hard disk space available.

onetime-schedule <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of onetime schedules.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

proxy <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of users that can use the explicit proxy at one time.

How the number of concurrent explicit proxy users is determined depends on their authentication method:

- For session-based authenticated users, each authenticated user is counted as a single user. Since multiple users can have the same user name, the proxy attempts to identify users according to their authentication membership (based on whether they were authenticated using RADIUS, LDAP, FSSO, local database, etc.). If a user of one session has the same name and membership as a user of another session, the explicit proxy assumes this is one user.
- For IP-based authentication, no authentication, or if no explicit proxy security policy has been added, the source IP address is used to determine a user. All sessions from a single source address are assumed to be from the same user.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

recurring-schedule <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of recurring schedules.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

service-group <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of firewall service groups.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

session <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of sessions.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

sslvpn <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of SSL VPNs.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

user <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of users.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

user-group <maximum_number>

Enter the maximum number of user groups.

Possible values: 0 to 4294967295.

system sdn-connector

Use this command to configure connections to an SDN Connector, including Google Cloud Platform (GCP), Cisco ACI, Amazon Web Services (AWS), and VMware NSX.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<code>set azure-region {germany usgov}</code>	Support added for Azure Germany and US Government server regions.
<code>set use-metadata-iam {enable disable}</code> <code>set gcp-project <name></code> <code>set service-account <name></code> <code>set private-key <key></code>	Enable or disable (by default) using IAM role to call the API. In addition, specify the GCP project name, account email, and service account private key.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>set type {oci ...}</code> <code>set oci-region {phoenix ashburn frankfurt london}</code> <code>set oci-cert <certificate></code>	New Oracle Cloud Infrastructure (OCI) type, region-server, and certificate options. This feature calls OCI API to get the information of VMs running in OCI cloud.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set server <address></code>	The entry <code>server-ip</code> has been removed and replaced with <code>server</code> , to now allow either an FQDN or IP address to be set.

Command	Description
<pre>set type {gcp ...} config external-ip config route</pre>	<p>New Google Cloud Platform (GCP) type, in order to provide Active-Passive HA.</p> <p>Once <code>type</code> is set to <code>gcp</code>, use the <code>external-ip</code> and <code>route</code> configuration methods to set the GCP external IP and route, respectively.</p>
<pre>set type {nsx ...} set nsx-cert-fingerprint <fingerprint></pre>	<p>When the FortiGate SVM connect to NSX manager to add "Service Manager", save NSX manager's certificate thumbprint. When the FortiGate connects to NSX manager in future (or NSX manager connects to the FortiGate), the FortiGate compares the thumbprint with the saved one to verify the certificate.</p> <p>Note: This command is only available for VM platforms. Furthermore, <code>nsx-cert-fingerprint</code> is a hidden entry. If you are in the <code>nsx</code> context and type the command <code>set ?</code> to get a listing of the available options, it will be listed, however it can still be set.</p>
<pre>set type {azure ...} set tenant-id <directory-id> set subscription-id <sub-id> set client-id <app-id> set client-secret <app-key> set resource-group <group-name> set azure-region {global china} config nic config route-table</pre>	<p>Support for Active/Passive HA in an Azure environment. Once <code>type</code> is set to <code>azure</code>, use the other Azure-specific settings to configure Azure connectivity.</p> <p>Use the <code>nic</code> and <code>route-table</code> configuration methods to configure the Azure network interface and route table, respectively. These configuration methods are only available when <code>type</code> is set to <code>azure</code>.</p>
<pre>config system sdn-connector edit {name} # Configure connection to SDN Connector. set name {string} SDN connector name. size[35] set status {disable enable} Enable/disable connection to the remote SDN connector. set type {option} Type of SDN connector. aci Application Centric Infrastructure (ACI). aws Amazon Web Services (AWS).</pre>	

```
        azure      Microsoft Azure.
        gcp        Google Cloud Platform (GCP).
        nsx        VMware NSX
        nuage      Nuage VSP.
        oci        Oracle Cloud Infrastructure.
        openstack  OpenStack.
set server {string}    Server address of the remote SDN connector. size[127]
set server-port {integer}  Port number of the remote SDN connector. range[1-65535]
set username {string}    Username of the remote SDN connector as login credentials. size[64]
set password {string}    Password of the remote SDN connector as login credentials.
set access-key {string}  AWS access key ID. size[31]
set secret-key {password_string}  AWS secret access key. size[59]
set region {string}      AWS region name. size[15]
set vpc-id {string}      AWS VPC ID. size[31]
set tenant-id {string}   Tenant ID (directory ID). size[127]
set subscription-id {string}  Azure subscription ID. size[63]
set login-endpoint {string}  Azure Stack login endpoint. size[127]
set resource-url {string}  Azure Stack resource URL. size[127]
set client-id {string}    Azure client ID (application ID). size[63]
set client-secret {password_string}  Azure client secret (application key). size[59]
set resource-group {string}  Azure resource group. size[63]
set azure-region {option}  Azure server region.
    global  Global Azure Server.
    china   China Azure Server.
    germany Germany Azure Server.
    usgov   US Government Azure Server.
    local   Azure Stack Local Server.
config nic
    edit {name}
    # Configure Azure network interface.
    set name {string}  Network interface name. size[63]
    config ip
        edit {name}
        # Configure IP configuration.
        set name {string}  IP configuration name. size[63]
        set public-ip {string}  Public IP name. size[63]
    next
next
config route-table
    edit {name}
```

```

    # Configure Azure route table.
    set name {string}    Route table name. size[63]
    config route
        edit {name}
        # Configure Azure route.
        set name {string}    Route name. size[63]
        set next-hop {string}    Next hop address. size[127]
    next
next
set user-id {string}    User ID. size[127]
set compartment-id {string}    Compartment ID. size[127]
set oci-region {phoenix | ashburn | frankfurt | london}    OCI server region.
    phoenix    US Phoenix Server.
    ashburn    US Ashburn Server.
    frankfurt    EU Frankfurt Server.
    london    UK London Server.
set oci-cert {string}    OCI certificate. size[63] - datasource(s): certificate.local.name
set oci-fingerprint {string}    OCI pubkey fingerprint. size[63]
config external-ip
    edit {name}
    # Configure GCP external IP.
    set name {string}    External IP name. size[63]
next
config route
    edit {name}
    # Configure GCP route.
    set name {string}    Route name. size[63]
next
set use-metadata-iam {disable | enable}    Enable/disable using IAM role from metadata to call API.
set gcp-project {string}    GCP project name. size[127]
set service-account {string}    GCP service account email. size[127]
set key-passwd {password_string}    Private key password. size[128]
set private-key {string}    Private key of GCP service account.
set update-interval {integer}    Dynamic object update interval (0 - 3600 sec, 0 means disabled, default = 60).
range[0-3600]
next
end

```

system session-helper

FortiOS uses session helpers to process sessions that have special requirements. Session helpers function like proxies by getting information from the session and performing support functions required by the session. For example:

- The SIP session helper looks inside SIP messages and performs NAT (if required) on the IP addresses in the SIP message and opens pinholes to allow media traffic associated with the SIP session to pass through the FortiGate unit.
- The FTP session helper can keep track of multiple connections initiated from a single FTP session. The session helper can also permits an FTP server to actively open a connection back to a client program.
- The TNS session helper sniffs the return packet from an initial 1521 SQLNET exchange and then uses the port and session information uncovered in that return TNS redirect packet to add a temporary firewall policy that accepts the new port and IP address supplied as part of the TNS redirect.

The session helper configuration binds a session helper to a TCP or UDP port and protocol. When a session is accepted by a firewall policy on that port and protocol the FortiOS passes the session to the session helper configured with this command. The session is processed by the session helper.

If your FortiGate accepts sessions that require a session helper on different ports than those defined by the session-helper configuration, then you can add more entries to the session helper configuration. Its OK to have multiple session helper configurations for a given protocol because only the matching configuration is used.

Use the `show system session-helper` command to view the current session helper configuration.

FortiOS includes the following session helpers (in the following table protocol 6 is TCP and protocol 17 is UDP):

Session Helper	Description	Protocol	Port
pptp	Point to point tunneling protocol (PPTP).	6	1723
h323	H.323 protocol for for multimedia including VoIP.	6	1720
ras	Remote access service (RAS) protocol.	17	1719
tns	Oracle transparent network substrate protocol (TNS or SQLNET).	6	1521
tftp	Trivial file transfer protocol (TFTP).	17	69
rtsp	Real Time Streaming Protocol (RTSP).	6	554, 7070, 8554
ftp	File transfer protocol (FTP).	6	21

Session Helper	Description	Protocol	Port
mms	Multimedia message service (MMS) protocol.	6	1863
pmap	Port mapper (PMAP) protocol.	6, 17	111
sip	Session initiation protocol (SIP) for multimedia including VoIP.	17	5060
dns-tcp	Domain name service (DNS) using the UDP protocol.	6	53
dns-udp	Domain name service (DNS) using the UDP protocol.	17	53
rsh	Remote shell protocol (RSH).	6	514, 512
dcerpc	Distributed computing environment / remote procedure calls protocol (DCE/RPC).	6, 17	135
mgcp	Media gateway control protocol (MGCP).	17	2427

```

config system session-helper
    edit {id}
        # Configure session helper.
        set id {integer}    Session helper ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set name {option}   Helper name.
            ftp             FTP.
            tftp            TFTP.
            ras             RAS.
            h323            H323.
            tns             TNS.
            mms             MMS.
            sip             SIP.
            pptp            PPTP.
            rtsp            RTSP.
            dns-udp         DNS UDP.
            dns-tcp         DNS TCP.
            pmap            PMAP.
            rsh             RSH.
            dcerpc          DCERPC.
            mgcp            MGCP.
            gtp-c           GTP-C.
            gtp-u           GTP-U.

```

```
        gtp-b      GTP-B.
    set protocol {integer}  Protocol number. range[0-255]
    set port {integer}      Protocol port. range[1-65535]
next
end
```

system session-ttl

Use this command to configure port-range-based session timeouts by setting the session time to live (TTL) for multiple TCP, UDP, or SCTP port number ranges. The session TTL is the length of time a TCP, UDP, or SCTP session can be idle before being dropped by the FortiGate unit. You can add multiple port number ranges. For each range, you can configure the protocol (TCP, UDP, or SCTP) and start and end numbers of the port number range.

```
config system session-ttl
    set default {string}  Default timeout.
    config port
        edit {id}
            # Session TTL port.
            set id {integer}  Table entry ID. range[0-65535]
            set protocol {integer}  Protocol (0 - 255). range[0-255]
            set start-port {integer}  Start port number. range[0-65535]
            set end-port {integer}  End port number. range[0-65535]
            set timeout {string}  Session timeout (TTL).
        next
    end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

default <seconds>

Enter the default session timeout, in seconds. This affects TCP and SCTP sessions that do not have a timeout specified in a defined `config port` entry.

Possible values: 300 to 604800 seconds. The default value is 3600.

end-port <port_number>

Enter the end port number of the port number range. You must configure both the `start-port` and `end-port`. To specify a range, the `start-port` value must be lower than the `end-port` value. To specify a single port, the `start-port` value must be identical to the `end-port` value.

Possible values: 0 to 65535.

id <entry_id>

Enter an entry ID. This is an identifier only and does not assign the port number.

Possible values: 0 to 65535.

protocol <protocol_number>

Enter the protocol number to match the protocol of the sessions that you want to configure a session TTL range for.

The Internet Protocol Number is found in the IP packet header. [RFC 5237](#) describes protocol numbers and you can find a list of the assigned protocol numbers [here](#). To enter a port number range you must set `protocol` to 6 for TCP sessions, 17 for UDP sessions, and 132 for SCTP sessions.

Possible values: 0 to 255.

start-port <port_number>

Enter the start port number of the port number range. You must configure both the `start-port` and `end-port`. To specify a range, the `start-port` value must be lower than the `end-port` value. To specify a single port, the `start-port` value must be identical to the `end-port` value.

Possible values: 0 to 65535.

timeout {<seconds> | never}

Enter the number of seconds the session can be idle for on this port. If you do not want the session to ever expire, you can enter `never`, instead of specifying the number of seconds.

While it is possible to set the timeout to `never`, this is not a secure configuration and should be avoided.

Possible values: 1 to 604800 seconds. The default is 300.

system settings

Use this command to change settings that are for each VDOM, such as the operating mode and default gateway.

When you change the `opmode` of the VDOM, there are fields that are visible, depending on which `opmode` you are changing to. The fields are visible only after you set the `opmode` and before you commit the changes with either `end` or `next`. If you do not set these fields, the `opmode` change will fail.

Field associated with each opmode

Change from NAT to Transparent mode	Change from Transparent to NAT mode
<code>set gateway <gw_ipv4></code>	<code>set device <interface_name></code>
<code>set manageip <manage_ipv4></code>	<code>set gateway <gw_ipv4></code> <code>set ip <address_ipv4></code>

The `system settings` command differs from `system global`, where `system global` fields apply to the entire FortiGate unit and `system settings` fields apply to the current VDOM only, or the entire FortiGate unit if VDOMs are not enabled.

Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) is a protocol used by BGP and OSPF. It is used to quickly locate hardware failures in the network. Routers running BFD communicate with each other and if a timer runs out on a connection, the router is declared down. BFD then communicates this information to the routing protocol and the routing information is updated. BFD support was added in FortiOS version 3.0 MR4, and can be configured only through the CLI.

Note: When asymmetric routing is enabled using the `asymroute` field, the FortiGate unit can no longer perform stateful inspection.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.3.

Command	Description
<code>set allow-linkdown-path {disable enable}</code>	Enable or disable whether BGP uses an alternative (link-down) route when attempting to reach a neighbor from an IPsec tunnel while the link is down.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set link-down-access {enable disable}</code>	Allow or block link down access traffic per VDOM. When enabled (by default), access is still permitted for replies to PING, SSH, and Telnet. When disabled, no access is allowed.
<code>set sip-helper {disable enable}</code>	Set to <code>disable</code> by default.
<code>set implicit-allow-dns {disable enable}</code>	Enable or disable the creation of an implicit policy to allow DNS traffic. Some Application Control profiles depend on allowing DNS traffic. If DNS traffic is not allowed, the Application Control profile may not work properly. Enabling the <code>implicit-allow-dns</code> option adds an implicit policy to allow the DNS traffic. This option can be enabled per VDOM.

```

config system settings
    set comments {string}    VDOM comments. size[255]
    set opmode {nat | transparent}    Firewall operation mode (NAT or Transparent).
        nat                Change to NAT mode.
        transparent        Change to transparent mode.
    set inspection-mode {proxy | flow}    Inspection mode (proxy-based or flow-based).
        proxy    Proxy-based inspection.
        flow     Flow-based inspection.
    set ngfw-mode {profile-based | policy-based}    Next Generation Firewall (NGFW) mode.
        profile-based    Application and web-filtering are configured using profiles applied to policy entries.
        policy-based     Application and web-filtering are configured as policy match conditions.
    set implicit-allow-dns {enable | disable}    Enable/disable implicitly allowing DNS traffic.
    set ssl-ssh-profile {string}    Profile for SSL/SSH inspection. size[35] - datasource(s): firewall.ssl-ssh-profile.name
    set http-external-dest {fortiweb | forticache}    Offload HTTP traffic to FortiWeb or FortiCache.
        fortiweb    Offload HTTP traffic to FortiWeb for Web Application Firewall inspection.
        forticache  Offload HTTP traffic to FortiCache for external web caching and WAN optimization.
    set firewall-session-dirty {check-all | check-new | check-policy-option}    Select how to manage sessions affected by firewall policy configuration changes.
        check-all    All sessions affected by a firewall policy change are flushed from the session table.
When new packets are received they are re-evaluated by stateful inspection and re-added to the session table.
        check-new    Established sessions for changed firewall policies continue without being affected by
the policy configuration change. New sessions are evaluated according to the new firewall policy configuration.
        check-policy-option    Sessions are managed individually depending on the firewall policy. Some sessions may

```

```

restart. Some may continue.
  set manageip {string}    Transparent mode IPv4 management IP address and netmask.
  set gateway {ipv4 address}  Transparent mode IPv4 default gateway IP address.
  set ip {ipv4 classnet host}  IP address and netmask.
  set manageip6 {ipv6 prefix}  Transparent mode IPv6 management IP address and netmask.
  set gateway6 {ipv6 address}  Transparent mode IPv4 default gateway IP address.
  set ip6 {ipv6 prefix}    IPv6 address prefix for NAT mode.
  set device {string}      Interface to use for management access for NAT mode. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name
  set bfd {enable | disable}  Enable/disable Bi-directional Forwarding Detection (BFD) on all interfaces.
  set bfd-desired-min-tx {integer}  BFD desired minimal transmit interval (1 - 100000 ms, default = 50). range[1-
100000]
  set bfd-required-min-rx {integer}  BFD required minimal receive interval (1 - 100000 ms, default = 50). range[1-
100000]
  set bfd-detect-mult {integer}  BFD detection multiplier (1 - 50, default = 3). range[1-50]
  set bfd-dont-enforce-src-port {enable | disable}  Enable to not enforce verifying the source port of BFD Packets.
  set utf8-spam-tagging {enable | disable}  Enable/disable converting antispam tags to UTF-8 for better non-ASCII
character support.
  set wccp-cache-engine {enable | disable}  Enable/disable WCCP cache engine.
  set vpn-stats-log {ipsec | pptp | l2tp | ssl}  Enable/disable periodic VPN log statistics for one or more types of
VPN. Separate names with a space.
      ipsec  IPsec.
      pptp   PPTP.
      l2tp   L2TP.
      ssl    SSL.
  set vpn-stats-period {integer}  Period to send VPN log statistics (60 - 86400 sec). range[60-86400]
  set v4-ecmp-mode {source-ip-based | weight-based | usage-based | source-dest-ip-based}  IPv4 Equal-cost multi-path
(ECMP) routing and load balancing mode.
      source-ip-based  Select next hop based on source IP.
      weight-based     Select next hop based on weight.
      usage-based      Select next hop based on usage.
      source-dest-ip-based  Select next hop based on both source and destination IPs.
  set mac-ttl {integer}  Duration of MAC addresses in Transparent mode (300 - 8640000 sec, default = 300). range[300-
8640000]
  set fw-session-hairpin {enable | disable}  Enable/disable checking for a matching policy each time hairpin traffic
goes through the FortiGate.
  set prp-trailer-action {enable | disable}  Enable/disable action to take on PRP trailer.
  set snat-hairpin-traffic {enable | disable}  Enable/disable source NAT (SNAT) for hairpin traffic.
  set dhcp-proxy {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the DHCP Proxy.
  set dhcp-server-ip {string}  DHCP Server IPv4 address.

```

```
set dhcp6-server-ip {string}    DHCPv6 server IPv6 address.
set central-nat {enable | disable}    Enable/disable central NAT.
config gui-default-policy-columns
    edit {name}
        # Default columns to display for policy lists on GUI.
        set name {string}    Select column name. size[64]
    next
set lldp-transmission {enable | disable | global}    Enable/disable Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) for this
VDOM or apply global settings to this VDOM.
set link-down-access {enable | disable}    Enable/disable link down access traffic.
set asymroute {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv4 asymmetric routing.
set asymroute-icmp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable ICMP asymmetric routing.
set tcp-session-without-syn {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allowing TCP session without SYN flags.
set ses-denied-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable including denied session in the session table.
set strict-src-check {enable | disable}    Enable/disable strict source verification.
set allow-linkdown-path {enable | disable}    Enable/disable link down path.
set asymroute6 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable asymmetric IPv6 routing.
set asymroute6-icmp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable asymmetric ICMPv6 routing.
set sip-helper {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the SIP session helper to process SIP sessions unless SIP ses-
sions are accepted by the SIP application layer gateway (ALG).
set sip-nat-trace {enable | disable}    Enable/disable recording the original SIP source IP address when NAT is used.
set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this VDOM.
set sip-tcp-port {integer}    TCP port the SIP proxy monitors for SIP traffic (0 - 65535, default = 5060). range[1-
65535]
set sip-udp-port {integer}    UDP port the SIP proxy monitors for SIP traffic (0 - 65535, default = 5060). range[1-
65535]
set sip-ssl-port {integer}    TCP port the SIP proxy monitors for SIP SSL/TLS traffic (0 - 65535, default = 5061).
range[0-65535]
set sccp-port {integer}    TCP port the SCCP proxy monitors for SCCP traffic (0 - 65535, default = 2000). range[0-
65535]
set multicast-forward {enable | disable}    Enable/disable multicast forwarding.
set multicast-ttl-notchange {enable | disable}    Enable/disable preventing the FortiGate from changing the TTL for
forwarded multicast packets.
set multicast-skip-policy {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allowing multicast traffic through the FortiGate
without a policy check.
set allow-subnet-overlap {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allowing interface subnets to use overlapping IP
addresses.
set deny-tcp-with-icmp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable denying TCP by sending an ICMP communication prohibited
packet.
set ecmp-max-paths {integer}    Maximum number of Equal Cost Multi-Path (ECMP) next-hops. Set to 1 to disable ECMP
```

```
routing (1 - 255, default = 255). range[1-255]
    set discovered-device-timeout {integer} Timeout for discovered devices (1 - 365 days, default = 28). range[1-365]
    set email-portal-check-dns {disable | enable} Enable/disable using DNS to validate email addresses collected by a
captive portal.
    set default-voip-alg-mode {proxy-based | kernel-helper-based} Configure how the FortiGate handles VoIP traffic
when a policy that accepts the traffic doesn't include a VoIP profile.
        proxy-based Use a default proxy-based VoIP ALG.
        kernel-helper-based Use the SIP session helper.
set gui-icap {enable | disable} Enable/disable ICAP on the GUI.
set gui-nat46-64 {enable | disable} Enable/disable NAT46 and NAT64 settings on the GUI.
set gui-implicit-policy {enable | disable} Enable/disable implicit firewall policies on the GUI.
set gui-dns-database {enable | disable} Enable/disable DNS database settings on the GUI.
set gui-load-balance {enable | disable} Enable/disable server load balancing on the GUI.
set gui-multicast-policy {enable | disable} Enable/disable multicast firewall policies on the GUI.
set gui-dos-policy {enable | disable} Enable/disable DoS policies on the GUI.
set gui-object-colors {enable | disable} Enable/disable object colors on the GUI.
set gui-replacement-message-groups {enable | disable} Enable/disable replacement message groups on the GUI.
set gui-voip-profile {enable | disable} Enable/disable VoIP profiles on the GUI.
set gui-ap-profile {enable | disable} Enable/disable FortiAP profiles on the GUI.
set gui-dynamic-profile-display {enable | disable} Enable/disable RADIUS Single Sign On (RSSO) on the GUI.
set gui-local-in-policy {enable | disable} Enable/disable Local-In policies on the GUI.
set gui-local-reports {enable | disable} Enable/disable local reports on the GUI.
set gui-wanopt-cache {enable | disable} Enable/disable WAN Optimization and Web Caching on the GUI.
set gui-explicit-proxy {enable | disable} Enable/disable the explicit proxy on the GUI.
set gui-dynamic-routing {enable | disable} Enable/disable dynamic routing on the GUI.
set gui-dlp {enable | disable} Enable/disable DLP on the GUI.
set gui-sslvpn-personal-bookmarks {enable | disable} Enable/disable SSL-VPN personal bookmark management on the
GUI.
set gui-sslvpn-realms {enable | disable} Enable/disable SSL-VPN realms on the GUI.
set gui-policy-based-ipsec {enable | disable} Enable/disable policy-based IPsec VPN on the GUI.
set gui-threat-weight {enable | disable} Enable/disable threat weight on the GUI.
set gui-multiple-utm-profiles {enable | disable} Enable/disable multiple UTM profiles on the GUI.
set gui-spamfilter {enable | disable} Enable/disable Antispam on the GUI.
set gui-application-control {enable | disable} Enable/disable application control on the GUI.
set gui-ips {enable | disable} Enable/disable IPS on the GUI.
set gui-endpoint-control {enable | disable} Enable/disable endpoint control on the GUI.
set gui-endpoint-control-advanced {enable | disable} Enable/disable advanced endpoint control options on the GUI.
set gui-dhcp-advanced {enable | disable} Enable/disable advanced DHCP options on the GUI.
set gui-vpn {enable | disable} Enable/disable VPN tunnels on the GUI.
set gui-wireless-controller {enable | disable} Enable/disable the wireless controller on the GUI.
```

```
set gui-switch-controller {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the switch controller on the GUI.
set gui-fortiap-split-tunneling {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiAP split tunneling on the GUI.
set gui-webfilter-advanced {enable | disable}  Enable/disable advanced web filtering on the GUI.
set gui-traffic-shaping {enable | disable}  Enable/disable traffic shaping on the GUI.
set gui-wan-load-balancing {enable | disable}  Enable/disable SD-WAN on the GUI.
set gui-antivirus {enable | disable}  Enable/disable AntiVirus on the GUI.
set gui-webfilter {enable | disable}  Enable/disable Web filtering on the GUI.
set gui-dnsfilter {enable | disable}  Enable/disable DNS Filtering on the GUI.
set gui-waf-profile {enable | disable}  Enable/disable Web Application Firewall on the GUI.
set gui-fortiextender-controller {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiExtender on the GUI.
set gui-advanced-policy {enable | disable}  Enable/disable advanced policy configuration on the GUI.
set gui-allow-unnamed-policy {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the requirement for policy naming on the GUI.
set gui-email-collection {enable | disable}  Enable/disable email collection on the GUI.
set gui-domain-ip-reputation {enable | disable}  Enable/disable Domain and IP Reputation on the GUI.
set gui-multiple-interface-policy {enable | disable}  Enable/disable adding multiple interfaces to a policy on the
GUI.
set gui-policy-learning {enable | disable}  Enable/disable firewall policy learning mode on the GUI.
set compliance-check {enable | disable}  Enable/disable PCI DSS compliance checking.
set ike-session-resume {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IKEv2 session resumption (RFC 5723).
set ike-quick-crash-detect {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IKE quick crash detection (RFC 6290).
set ike-dn-format {with-space | no-space}  Configure IKE ASN.1 Distinguished Name format conventions.
    with-space  Format IKE ASN.1 Distinguished Names with spaces between attribute names and values.
    no-space    Format IKE ASN.1 Distinguished Names without spaces between attribute names and values.
set block-land-attack {disable | enable}  Enable/disable blocking of land attacks.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

allow-linkdown-path {enable | disable}

Enable (default) or disable whether BGP uses an alternative (link-down) route when attempting to reach a neighbor from an IPsec tunnel while the link is down.

While enabled, this option allows BGP to use an alternative route when the destination link is down.

allow-subnet-overlap {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) limited support for interface and VLAN subinterface IP address overlap for this VDOM. Use this command to enable limited support for overlapping IP addresses in an existing network configuration.

This command is for advanced users only. Use this only for existing network configurations that cannot be changed to eliminate IP address overlapping.

asymroute {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) IPv4 asymmetric routing on your FortiGate unit, or this VDOM if you have VDOMs enabled.

This command should only be used as a temporary check to troubleshoot a network. It is not intended to be enabled permanently. When it is enabled, many security features on your FortiGate unit are not enabled.

Enabling asymmetric routing disables stateful inspection. Your FortiGate unit can only perform stateless inspection in this state.

asymroute6 {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) IPv6 asymmetric routing on your FortiGate unit, or this VDOM if you have VDOMs enabled.

bfd {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) bidirectional forwarding detection (BFD) on your FortiGate unit, or this VDOM if you have VDOMs enabled. BFD can be used with OSPF and BGP configurations, and overridden on a per interface basis.

bfd-desired-min-tx <milliseconds>

Enter the preferred minimum transmit interval for BFD packets. If possible, this will be the minimum used. This variable is available only when BFD is enabled.

Possible values: 1 to 100000 milliseconds. The default value is 50.

bfd-detect-mult <multiplier>

Enter the BFD detection multiplier.

Possible values: 1 to 50. The default value is 3.

bfd-dont-enforce-src-port {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) whether the BFD source port is enforced. Set this to `enable` to not enforce the BFD source port.

bfd-required-min-rx <milliseconds>

Enter the required minimum receive interval for BFD packets. The FortiGate unit will not transmit BFD packets at a slower rate than this. This variable is available only when BFD is enabled.

Possible values: 1 to 100000 milliseconds. The default value is 50.

default-voip-alg-mode {proxy-based | kernel-helper-based}

Set the default SIP behavior for VoIP.

- **proxy-based** (default): VoIP traffic goes to proxy SIP ALG and the default VoIP profile applies
- **kernel-helper-based**: VoIP traffic is handled by the kernel SIP helper. If the SIP helper does not exist in system, no SIP processing occurs.

If an explicit VoIP profile is defined in the policy, VoIP traffic is redirected to proxy SIP ALG, regardless of the `default-voip-alg-mode` setting.

deny-tcp-with-icmp {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) whether to deny TCP by sending an ICMP Communication Prohibited packet. Set this to `enable` to deny TCP by sending an ICMP Communication Prohibited packet. Firewall policies will enable `send-deny-packet`.

device <interface_name>

Enter the interface to use for management access. This is the interface that `ip` applies to.

This field is visible only after you change `opmode` from `transparent` to `nat`, before you commit the change.

The limit is 25 characters.

dhcp-proxy {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) DHCP proxy. This is required for IPsec VPN with `mode-cfg` to use DHCP to assign VPN client IP addresses.

dhcp-server-ip <IP_address1 IP_address2...>

Enter up to eight IPv4 DHCP server IP addresses. This is available when `dhcp-proxy` is enabled.

dhcp6-server-ip <IP_address1 IP_address2...>

Enter up to eight IPv6 DHCP server IP addresses. This is available when `dhcp-proxy` is enabled.

discovered-device-timeout <days>

Enter the timeout for discovered devices.

Possible values: 1 to 365 days. The default is 28.

ecmp-max-paths <maximum_routes>

Enter the maximum number of routes allowed to be included in an ECMP configuration. Set this to 1 to disable ECMP routing.

ECMP routes have the same distance and the same priority, and can be used in load balancing.

Possible values: 1 to 255. The default value is 10.

email-portal-check-dns {enable | disable}

Enable (default) or disable whether the email collection portal verifies that the domain name part of an email address can be resolved using a DNS lookup.

firewall-session-dirty {check-all | check-new | check-policy-option}

Select how changes to a firewall policy are managed.

- **check-all** (default): Flushes all current sessions and re-evaluates them
- **check-new**: Keeps existing sessions and applies policy changes to new sessions only. This reduces CPU load and the possibility of packet loss.
- **check-policy-option**: Uses the option selected in the `firewall-session-dirty` field of the firewall policy. See the `firewall {policy | policy6}` command.

gateway <IPv4_address>

Enter the default gateway IP address.

This field is visible only after you change `opmode` from `nat` to `transparent` or from `transparent` to `nat`, before you commit the change.

gateway6 <IPv6_address>

Enter the default gateway IPv6 address.

This field is visible only after you change `opmode` from `nat` to `transparent` or from `transparent` to `nat`, before you commit the change.

gui-default-policy-columns

Optionally, override the web-based manager's default displayed column set for firewall policies.

name <column_list>

Specify a list of column names that you want displayed, separated by spaces and in order from left to right. The column options are `#`, `policyid`, `srcintf`, `dstintf`, `srcaddr`, `dstaddr`, `schedule`, `service`, `action`, `logtraffic`, `nat`, `status`, `authentication`, `count`, `profile`, `vpntunnel`, and `comments`.

inspection-mode {proxy | flow}

Set proxy-based (default) or flow-based inspection.

ip <IPv4_address>

Enter the IP address to use after switching to `nat` mode.

This field is visible only after you change `opmode` from `transparent` to `nat`, before you commit the change.

ip6 <IPv6_address>

Enter the IPv6 address to use after switching to `nat` mode.

This field is visible only after you change `opmode` from `transparent` to `nat`, before you commit the change.

lldp-transmission {enable | disable | global}

Enable or disable Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) for this VDOM, or apply a global setting specified by `lldp-transmission` in `system global`.

The default value is `global`.

mac-ttl <seconds>

Set the duration of MAC addresses during transparent mode.

Possible values: 300 to 8640000 seconds (8640000 is 100 days). The default value is 300.

manageip <IPv4_address>

Set the IP address and netmask of the Transparent mode management interface. You must set this when you change `opmode` from `nat` to `transparent`.

manageip6 <IPv6_prefix>

Set the IPv6 management address prefix for Transparent mode.

multicast-forward {enable | disable}

Enable (default) or disable multicast forwarding. If you set this to `enable`, any multicast IP packets where the TTL is 2 or higher are forwarded to all interfaces and VLAN interfaces, except the receiving interface. The TTL in the IP header will be reduced by 1.

When multiple VDOMs are configured, this option is available within each VDOM.

multicast-ttl-notchange {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) whether multicast forwarding reduces the TTL in the IP header. Set this to `enable` to prevent multicast forwarding from reducing the TTL in the IP header. Set this to `disable` to use normal multicast forwarding behavior.

In multiple VDOM mode, this option is only available within VDOMs and is not available at a global level.

opmode {nat | transparent}

Enter the required operating mode.

If you change `opmode` from `nat` to `transparent`, you must set `manageip` and `gateway`.

If you change `opmode` from `transparent` to `nat`, you must set `device`, `ip`, `gateway-device` and `gateway`.

The default value is `nat`.

sccp-port <port_number>

Enter the port number of the TCP port to use to monitor Skinny Client Call protocol (SCCP) traffic. SCCP is a Cisco proprietary protocol for VoIP.

Possible values: 1 to 65535. The default value is 2000.

ses-denied-traffic {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) whether denied sessions are added to the session table. Enable this option to add denied sessions to the session table. For optimum performance, you may need to adjust the global `block-session-timer` (see [block-session-timer <int> on page 754](#)).

Blocking the packets of a denied session can take more CPU processing resources than passing the traffic through. By putting denied sessions in the session table, they can be kept track of in the same way that allowed sessions are so that the FortiGate unit does not have to reassess whether or not to deny each of the packets on an individual basis. If the session is denied, all packets of that session are also denied.

The `ses-denied-traffic` and `block-session-timer` are not effective at blocking denial of service attacks.

sip-helper {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) the SIP session helper. The SIP session helper will process SIP sessions unless the SIP sessions are accepted by the SIP ALG.

sip-nat-trace {enable | disable}

Enable (default) or disable whether the original IP address of the phone is recorded.

sip-ssl-port <port_number>

Enter the port number that the SIP proxy monitors for SIP traffic.

Possible values: 1 to 65535. The default value is 5061.

sip-tcp-port <<port_number1> [<port_number2>]>

Enter one or two port numbers that the SIP ALG monitors for SIP TCP sessions.

Possible values: 1 to 65535. The default value is 5060.

sip-udp-port <port_number>

Enter the port number that the SIP ALG monitors for SIP UDP sessions.

Possible values: 1 to 65535. The default value is 5060.

status {enable | disable}

Disable or enable (default) this VDOM.

Disabled VDOMs keep all their configuration, but the resources of the VDOM are not accessible. To leave VDOM mode, all disabled VDOMs must be deleted and only the root VDOM can be configured.

The command is available only when VDOMs are enabled.

strict-src-check {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) whether packets from a source IP range are refused if there is a specific route in the routing table for the network (RFC 3704). Set to `enable` to refuse packets that meet this criteria.

utf8-spam-tagging {enable | disable}

Enable (default) or disable whether spam tags are converted to UTF-8 for better non-ASCII character support.

v4-ecmp-mode {source-ip-based | usage-based | weight-based | source-dest-ip-based}

Set the ECMP route failover and load balance method, which controls how the FortiGate unit assigns a route to a session when multiple equal-cost routes to the sessions's destination are available.

- **source-ip-based** (default): The FortiGate unit load balances sessions among ECMP routes based on the source IP address of the sessions to be load balanced. No other settings can be configured to support source IP load balancing.
- **weight-based**: The FortiGate unit load balances sessions among ECMP routes based on weights added to ECMP routes. More traffic is directed to routes with higher weights. Use the `weight` field of the `config router static` command to add weights to static routes. See the `router static` command.
- **usage-based**: The FortiGate unit distributes sessions among ECMP routes based on how busy the FortiGate interfaces added to the routes are. After you select `usage-based`, use the `spillover-threshold` field of the `config system interface` command to add spillover thresholds to interfaces added to ECMP routes. The FortiGate unit sends all ECMP-routed sessions to the lowest numbered interface until the bandwidth being

processed by this interface reaches its spillover threshold. The FortiGate unit then spills additional sessions over to the next lowest numbered interface. See the `system interface` command.

- **source-dest-ip-based:** Selects the next hop based on both source and destination IP addresses.

vpn-stats-log {ipsec | l2tp | pptp | ssl}

Enable periodic VPN log statistics for one or more types of VPN.

vpn-stats-period <seconds>

Enter the interval, in seconds, for the `vpn-stats-log` to collect statistics.

Possible values: 60 to 86400 seconds.

wccp-cache-engine {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (default) whether the FortiGate unit operates as a WCCP cache engine. Use the `config system wccp` command to configure WCCP cache engine settings.

system sflow

Use this command to add or change the IP address and UDP port that FortiGate sFlow agents use to send sFlow datagrams to an sFlow collector.

FortiOS implements sFlow version 5. You can configure one or more FortiGate interfaces as sFlow agents that monitor network traffic and send sFlow datagrams containing information about traffic flow to an sFlow collector.

sFlow is a network monitoring protocol. sFlow is typically used to provide an overall traffic flow picture of your network. You usually operate sFlow agents on switches, routers, and firewalls in your network, collect traffic data from all of them, and use a collector to show traffic flows and patterns. For more information about sFlow, see www.sflow.org.

```
config system sflow
    set collector-ip {ipv4 address}    IP address of the sFlow collector that sFlow agents added to interfaces in this
VDOM send sFlow datagrams to (default = 0.0.0.0).
    set collector-port {integer}    UDP port number used for sending sFlow datagrams (configure only if required by your
sFlow collector or your network configuration) (0 - 65535, default = 6343). range[0-65535]
    set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IP address for sFlow agent.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

collector-ip <ipv4_address>

Enter the IP address of the sFlow collector that sFlow agents should send sFlow datagrams to.

collector-port <port_number>

The UDP port number that the sFlow Agent on the FortiGate uses to send sFlow Datagrams to the sFlow Collector. The default value is 6343.

Don't change this setting unless the sFlow Collector or network configuration requires you to change it.

source-ip <ipv4_address>

The source IPv4 address that the FortiGate uses to send sFlow Datagrams to the sFlow Collector

This setting is optional. If you don't configure a source IP address, the FortiGate uses the source IP address of the port through which it sends the sFlow Datagram.

.

system sit-tunnel

Use this command to tunnel IPv6 traffic over an IPv4 network. You configure the IPv6 interface under `config system interface`. The command to do the reverse is `system ipv6-tunnel`. This command is not available in Transparent mode.

```
config system sit-tunnel
  edit {name}
    # Configure IPv6 tunnel over IPv4.
    set name {string}    Tunnel name. size[15]
    set source {ipv4 address}    Source IP address of the tunnel.
    set destination {ipv4 address}    Destination IP address of the tunnel.
    set ip6 {ipv6 prefix}    IPv6 address of the tunnel.
    set interface {string}    Interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    set auto-asic-offload {enable | disable}    Enable/disable tunnel ASIC offloading.
```



```
    next  
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

auto-asic-offload {enable | disable}

Enables or disables offloading tunnel traffic to CPx processors. Disabling `auto-asic-offload` also disables offloading traffic to NPx processors.

destination <IPv4_address>

Enter the destination IPv4 address for this tunnel.

interface <name>

Enter a name for the interface used to send and receive traffic for this tunnel.

ip6 <ipv6_address>

Enter the IPv6 address for this tunnel.

name <tunnel_name>

Enter a name for the IPv6 tunnel.

The limit is 15 characters.

source <ipv4_address>

Enter the source IPv4 address for this tunnel.

system sms-server

Configure a cellphone service provider to send SMS text messages as part of two-factor authentication.

```
config system sms-server
  edit {name}
    # Configure SMS server for sending SMS messages to support user authentication.
    set name {string}    Name of SMS server. size[35]
    set mail-server {string}    Email-to-SMS server domain name. size[63]
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

mail-server <server_name>

Set the domain name of the email-to-SMS server.

system snmp community

Introduction.

```
config system snmp community
  edit {id}
    # SNMP community configuration.
    set id {integer}    Community ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set name {string}    Community name. size[35]
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this SNMP community.
  config hosts
    edit {id}
      # Configure IPv4 SNMP managers (hosts).
      set id {integer}    Host entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
      set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IPv4 address for SNMP traps.
      set ip {string}    IPv4 address of the SNMP manager (host).
      set ha-direct {enable | disable}    Enable/disable direct management of HA cluster members.
```

```

        set host-type {any | query | trap}    Control whether the SNMP manager sends SNMP queries, receives SNMP
traps, or both.
        any      Accept queries from and send traps to this SNMP manager.
        query    Accept queries from this SNMP manager but do not send traps.
        trap     Send traps to this SNMP manager but do not accept SNMP queries from this SNMP manager.

    next
config hosts6
    edit {id}
    # Configure IPv6 SNMP managers.
    set id {integer}    Host6 entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set source-ipv6 {ipv6 address}    Source IPv6 address for SNMP traps.
    set ipv6 {ipv6 prefix}    SNMP manager IPv6 address prefix.
    set ha-direct {enable | disable}    Enable/disable direct management of HA cluster members.
    set host-type {any | query | trap}    Control whether the SNMP manager sends SNMP queries, receives SNMP
traps, or both.
        any      Accept queries from and send traps to this SNMP manager.
        query    Accept queries from this SNMP manager but do not send traps.
        trap     Send traps to this SNMP manager but do not accept SNMP queries from this SNMP manager.

    next
set query-v1-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SNMP v1 queries.
set query-v1-port {integer}    SNMP v1 query port (default = 161). range[1-65535]
set query-v2c-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SNMP v2c queries.
set query-v2c-port {integer}    SNMP v2c query port (default = 161). range[0-65535]
set trap-v1-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SNMP v1 traps.
set trap-v1-lport {integer}    SNMP v1 trap local port (default = 162). range[1-65535]
set trap-v1-rport {integer}    SNMP v1 trap remote port (default = 162). range[1-65535]
set trap-v2c-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SNMP v2c traps.
set trap-v2c-lport {integer}    SNMP v2c trap local port (default = 162). range[1-65535]
set trap-v2c-rport {integer}    SNMP v2c trap remote port (default = 162). range[1-65535]
set events {option}    SNMP trap events.
    cpu-high          Send a trap when CPU usage is high.
    mem-low           Send a trap when available memory is low.
    log-full          Send a trap when log disk space becomes low.
    intf-ip           Send a trap when an interface IP address is changed.
    vpn-tun-up        Send a trap when a VPN tunnel comes up.
    vpn-tun-down      Send a trap when a VPN tunnel goes down.
    ha-switch         Send a trap after an HA failover when the backup unit has taken over.
    ha-hb-failure     Send a trap when HA heartbeats are not received.
    ips-signature      Send a trap when IPS detects an attack.
    ips-anomaly        Send a trap when IPS finds an anomaly.

```

```

        av-virus                Send a trap when AntiVirus finds a virus.
        av-oversize              Send a trap when AntiVirus finds an oversized file.
        av-pattern               Send a trap when AntiVirus finds file matching pattern.
        av-fragmented            Send a trap when AntiVirus finds a fragmented file.
        fm-if-change              Send a trap when FortiManager interface changes. Send a FortiManager
trap.
        fm-conf-change           Send a trap when a configuration change is made by a FortiGate admin-
istrator and the FortiGate is managed by FortiManager.
        bgp-established          Send a trap when a BGP FSM transitions to the established state.
        bgp-backward-transition  Send a trap when a BGP FSM goes from a high numbered state to a lower
numbered state.
        ha-member-up             Send a trap when an HA cluster member goes up.
        ha-member-down           Send a trap when an HA cluster member goes down.
        ent-conf-change          Send a trap when an entity MIB change occurs (RFC4133).
        av-conserve              Send a trap when the FortiGate enters conserve mode.
        av-bypass                Send a trap when the FortiGate enters bypass mode.
        av-oversize-passed       Send a trap when AntiVirus passes an oversized file.
        av-oversize-blocked      Send a trap when AntiVirus blocks an oversized file.
        ips-pkg-update           Send a trap when the IPS signature database or engine is updated.
        ips-fail-open            Send a trap when the IPS network buffer is full.
        temperature-high         Send a trap when a temperature sensor registers a temperature that is too
high.
        voltage-alert            Send a trap when a voltage sensor registers a voltage that is outside of
the normal range.
        power-supply-failure     Send a trap when a power supply fails.
        faz-disconnect           Send a trap when a FortiAnalyzer disconnects from the FortiGate.
        fan-failure              Send a trap when a fan fails.
        wc-ap-up                 Send a trap when a managed FortiAP comes up.
        wc-ap-down               Send a trap when a managed FortiAP goes down.
        fswctl-session-up        Send a trap when a FortiSwitch controller session comes up.
        fswctl-session-down      Send a trap when a FortiSwitch controller session goes down.
        load-balance-real-server-down Send a trap when a server load balance real server goes down.
        device-new               Send a trap when a new device is found.
        per-cpu-high             Send a trap when per-CPU usage is high.

    next
end

```

system snmp sysinfo

Introduction.

```
config system snmp sysinfo
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SNMP.
    set engine-id {string}    Local SNMP engineID string (maximum 24 characters). size[24]
    set description {string}    System description. size[255]
    set contact-info {string}    Contact information. size[255]
    set location {string}    System location. size[255]
    set trap-high-cpu-threshold {integer}    CPU usage when trap is sent. range[1-100]
    set trap-low-memory-threshold {integer}    Memory usage when trap is sent. range[1-100]
    set trap-log-full-threshold {integer}    Log disk usage when trap is sent. range[1-100]
end
```

system snmp user

Introduction.

```
config system snmp user
    edit {name}
    # SNMP user configuration.
        set name {string}    SNMP user name. size[32]
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this SNMP user.
        set trap-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable traps for this SNMP user.
        set trap-lport {integer}    SNMPv3 local trap port (default = 162). range[0-65535]
        set trap-rport {integer}    SNMPv3 trap remote port (default = 162). range[0-65535]
        set queries {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SNMP queries for this user.
        set query-port {integer}    SNMPv3 query port (default = 161). range[0-65535]
        set notify-hosts {ipv4 address}    SNMP managers to send notifications (traps) to.
        set notify-hosts6 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 SNMP managers to send notifications (traps) to.
        set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IP for SNMP trap.
        set source-ipv6 {ipv6 address}    Source IPv6 for SNMP trap.
        set ha-direct {enable | disable}    Enable/disable direct management of HA cluster members.
        set events {option}    SNMP notifications (traps) to send.
            cpu-high                Send a trap when CPU usage is high.
            mem-low                Send a trap when available memory is low.
            log-full                Send a trap when log disk space becomes low.
            intf-ip                Send a trap when an interface IP address is changed.
```

vpn-tun-up	Send a trap when a VPN tunnel comes up.
vpn-tun-down	Send a trap when a VPN tunnel goes down.
ha-switch	Send a trap after an HA failover when the backup unit has taken over.
ha-hb-failure	Send a trap when HA heartbeats are not received.
ips-signature	Send a trap when IPS detects an attack.
ips-anomaly	Send a trap when IPS finds an anomaly.
av-virus	Send a trap when AntiVirus finds a virus.
av-oversize	Send a trap when AntiVirus finds an oversized file.
av-pattern	Send a trap when AntiVirus finds file matching pattern.
av-fragmented	Send a trap when AntiVirus finds a fragmented file.
fm-if-change	Send a trap when FortiManager interface changes. Send a FortiManager
trap.	
fm-conf-change	Send a trap when a configuration change is made by a FortiGate admin- istrator and the FortiGate is managed by FortiManager.
bgp-established	Send a trap when a BGP FSM transitions to the established state.
bgp-backward-transition	Send a trap when a BGP FSM goes from a high numbered state to a lower numbered state.
ha-member-up	Send a trap when an HA cluster member goes up.
ha-member-down	Send a trap when an HA cluster member goes down.
ent-conf-change	Send a trap when an entity MIB change occurs (RFC4133).
av-conserve	Send a trap when the FortiGate enters conserve mode.
av-bypass	Send a trap when the FortiGate enters bypass mode.
av-oversize-passed	Send a trap when AntiVirus passes an oversized file.
av-oversize-blocked	Send a trap when AntiVirus blocks an oversized file.
ips-pkg-update	Send a trap when the IPS signature database or engine is updated.
ips-fail-open	Send a trap when the IPS network buffer is full.
temperature-high	Send a trap when a temperature sensor registers a temperature that is too high.
voltage-alert	Send a trap when a voltage sensor registers a voltage that is outside of the normal range.
power-supply-failure	Send a trap when a power supply fails.
faz-disconnect	Send a trap when a FortiAnalyzer disconnects from the FortiGate.
fan-failure	Send a trap when a fan fails.
wc-ap-up	Send a trap when a managed FortiAP comes up.
wc-ap-down	Send a trap when a managed FortiAP goes down.
fswctl-session-up	Send a trap when a FortiSwitch controller session comes up.
fswctl-session-down	Send a trap when a FortiSwitch controller session goes down.
load-balance-real-server-down	Send a trap when a server load balance real server goes down.
device-new	Send a trap when a new device is found.
per-cpu-high	Send a trap when per-CPU usage is high.

```

    set security-level {no-auth-no-priv | auth-no-priv | auth-priv}  Security level for message authentication and
    encryption.
        no-auth-no-priv  Message with no authentication and no privacy (encryption).
        auth-no-priv     Message with authentication but no privacy (encryption).
        auth-priv        Message with authentication and privacy (encryption).
    set auth-proto {md5 | sha}  Authentication protocol.
        md5  HMAC-MD5-96 authentication protocol.
        sha  HMAC-SHA-96 authentication protocol.
    set auth-pwd {password_string}  Password for authentication protocol. size[128]
    set priv-proto {aes | des | aes256 | aes256cisco}  Privacy (encryption) protocol.
        aes          CFB128-AES-128 symmetric encryption protocol.
        des          CBC-DES symmetric encryption protocol.
        aes256       CFB128-AES-256 symmetric encryption protocol.
        aes256cisco  CFB128-AES-256 symmetric encryption protocol compatible with CISCO.
    set priv-pwd {password_string}  Password for privacy (encryption) protocol. size[128]
next
end

```

system storage

Use this command to add and edit local disk storage settings.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set usage {log wanopt} set wanopt-mode {mix wanopt webcache}</pre>	Disk configurations for WAN Opt have been merged to config system storage.

```

config system storage
    edit {name}
    # Configure logical storage.
    set name {string}  Storage name. size[35]
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable storage.
    set media-status {enable | disable | fail}  The physical status of current media.

```

```

set order {integer}    Set storage order. range[0-255]
set partition {string}  Label of underlying partition. size[16]
set device {string}     Partition device. size[19]
set size {integer}      Partition size. range[0-4294967295]
set usage {log | wanopt} Use hard disk for logging or WAN Optimization (default = log).
    log                Use hard disk for logging.
    wanopt             Use hard disk for WAN Optimization.
set wanopt-mode {mix | wanopt | webcache} WAN Optimization mode (default = mix).
    mix                Use hard disk for WAN Optimization mix mode.
    wanopt             Use hard disk for WAN Optimization wanopt mode.
    webcache           Use hard disk for WAN Optimization webcache mode.

next
end

```

system stp

Use this command to configure Spanning Tree Protocol on an Internal interface switch in switch mode.

```

config system stp
    set region-name {string}    Set region name. size[31]
    set config-revision {integer} STP configuration revision (0 - 4294967295, default = 0). range[0-4294967295]
    set switch-priority {option} STP switch priority; the lower the number the higher the priority (select from 0,
4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056, 49152, 53248, and 57344).
        0          0
        4096       4096
        8192       8192
        12288      12288
        16384      16384
        20480      20480
        24576      24576
        28672      28672
        32768      32768
        36864      36864
        40960      40960
        45056      45056
        49152      49152
        53248      53248
        57344      57344
    set hello-time {integer}    Hello time (1 - 10 sec, default = 2). range[1-10]

```



```

set forward-delay {integer}    Forward delay (4 - 30 sec, default = 15). range[4-30]
set max-age {integer}          Maximum packet age (6 - 40 sec, default = 20). range[6-40]
set max-hops {integer}         Maximum number of hops (1 - 40, default = 20). range[1-40]
end

```

system switch-interface

Use this command to group physical and wifi interfaces into a software switch interface (also called a softswitch, soft-switch or soft switch). A software switch is a virtual switch that is implemented in software instead of hardware. When you add interfaces to a software switch the interfaces all share one IP address and become a single entry on the interface list. As a result, all of the interfaces are on the same subnet and traffic between devices connected to each interface of the software switch cannot be filtered by firewall policies.

Adding a software switch can be used to simplify communication between devices connected to different FortiGate interfaces. For example, using a software switch you can place the FortiGate interface connected to an internal network on the same subnet as your wireless interfaces. Then devices on the internal network can communicate with devices on the wireless network without any additional configuration on the FortiGate unit.

The physical and WiFi interfaces added to a software switch interface cannot be used in any other configurations. The wifi interfaces can be implemented on the FortiWiFi unit or on remote FortiWiFi units of FortiAP units controlled by the wireless controller feature. Interfaces in a software switch cannot be monitored by HA or used as heart beat devices. This command can be used at the Global or VDOM level.

```

config system switch-interface
    edit {name}
        # Configure software switch interfaces by grouping physical and WiFi interfaces.
        set name {string}    Interface name (name cannot be in use by any other interfaces, VLANs, or inter-VDOM links).
size[15]
        set vdom {string}    VDOM that the software switch belongs to. size[31] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
        set span-dest-port {string}    SPAN destination port name. All traffic on the SPAN source ports is echoed to the
SPAN destination port. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        config span-source-port
            edit {interface-name}
                # Physical interface name. Port spanning echoes all traffic on the SPAN source ports to the SPAN destination
port.
                set interface-name {string}    Physical interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
            next
        config member
            edit {interface-name}
                # Names of the interfaces that belong to the virtual switch.
                set interface-name {string}    Physical interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
            next
        next
    next
end

```

```

    set type {switch | hub}    Type of switch based on functionality: switch for normal functionality, or hub to
duplicate packets to all port members.
        switch    Switch for normal switch functionality (available in NAT mode only).
        hub       Hub to duplicate packets to all member ports.
    set intra-switch-policy {implicit | explicit}    Allow any traffic between switch interfaces or require firewall
policies to allow traffic between switch interfaces.
        implicit  Traffic between switch members is implicitly allowed.
        explicit  Traffic between switch members must match firewall policies.
    set span {disable | enable}    Enable/disable port spanning. Port spanning echoes traffic received by the soft-
ware switch to the span destination port.
    set span-direction {rx | tx | both}    The direction in which the SPAN port operates, either: rx, tx, or both.
        rx        Copies only received packets from source SPAN ports to the destination SPAN port.
        tx        Copies only transmitted packets from source SPAN ports to the destination SPAN port.
        both      Copies both received and transmitted packets from source SPAN ports to the destination SPAN port.

    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

member <iflist>

Enter a list of the interfaces that will be part of this software switch. Separate interface names with a space. Use <tab> to advance through the list of available interfaces.

span {enable | disable}

Enable or disable port spanning. This is available only when `type` is `switch`. Port spanning echoes traffic received by the software switch to the span destination port. Port spanning can be used to monitor all traffic passing through the soft switch. You can also configure the span destination port and the span source ports, which are the switch ports for which traffic is echoed. Disabled by default.

span-dest-port <portnum>

Enter the span port destination port name. All traffic on the span source ports is echoed to the span destination port. Use <tab> to advance through the list of available interfaces. Available when `span` is enabled.

span-direction {rx | tx | both}

Select the direction in which the span port operates:

`rx` copy only received packets from source SPAN ports to the destination SPAN port.

`tx` copy only transmitted packets from source SPAN ports to the destination SPAN port.

`both` (the default) copy both transmitted and received packets from source SPAN ports to the destination SPAN port.

`span-direction` is available only when `span` is enabled.

span-source-port <portlist>

Enter a list of the interfaces that are span source ports. Separate interface names with a space. Port spanning echoes all traffic on the span source ports to the span destination port. Use <tab> to advance through the list of available interfaces. Available when `span` is enabled.

type {hub | switch | hardware-switch}

Select the type of switch functionality:

`hub` duplicates packets to all member ports

`switch` (the default) normal switch functionality (available in NAT mode only)

vdom <vdom_name>

Enter the name of the VDOM to which the software switch belongs.

system tos-based-priority

Configure Type of Service (ToS) based priority table to set network traffic priorities.

```
config system tos-based-priority
    edit {id}
        # Configure Type of Service (ToS) based priority table to set network traffic priorities.
        set id {integer}    Item ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set tos {integer}    Value of the ToS byte in the IP datagram header (0-15, 8: minimize delay, 4: maximize
throughput, 2: maximize reliability, 1: minimize monetary cost, and 0: default service). range[0-15]
```

```

        set priority {low | medium | high}    ToS based priority level to low, medium or high (these priorities match
firewall traffic shaping priorities) (default = medium).
        low      Low priority.
        medium   Medium priority.
        high     High priority.
    next
end

```

system vdom

Introduction.

```

config system vdom
    edit {name}
        # Configure virtual domain.
        set name {string}    VDOM name. size[31]
        set short-name {string}    VDOM short name. size[11]
        set vcluster-id {integer}    Virtual cluster ID (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295]
        set temporary {integer}    Temporary. range[0-4294967295]
    next
end

```

system vdom-dns

Configure DNS settings used by a VDOM to resolve domain names to IP addresses, so devices connected to a VDOM interface can use it.



This command is only available for non-management VDOMs.

Some DNS commands can only be set globally, see [system dns on page 717](#).

```

config system vdom-dns
    set vdom-dns {enable | disable}    Enable/disable configuring DNS servers for the current VDOM.
    set primary {ipv4 address}    Primary DNS server IP address for the VDOM.
    set secondary {ipv4 address}    Secondary DNS server IP address for the VDOM.

```

```
set ip6-primary {ipv6 address}    Primary IPv6 DNS server IP address for the VDOM.  
set ip6-secondary {ipv6 address}  Secondary IPv6 DNS server IP address for the VDOM.  
set source-ip {ipv4 address}     Source IP for communications with the DNS server.  
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

vdom-dns {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) configuring DNS servers for the current VDOM.

primary <ip>

The primary DNS server IP address.

secondary <ip>

The secondary DNS server IP address.

ip6-primary <ipv6>

The primary DNS server IPv6 address.

ip6-secondary <ipv6>

The secondary DNS server IPv6 address.

source-ip <ip>

The IP address used by the DNS server as the source IP.

system vdom-exception

In a Session-aware Load Balancing Cluster (SLBC), select configuration objects that are not synchronized between the FortiGates (workers) in the SLBC cluster. Currently this feature is supported for FortiAnalyzer, allowing you to configure a different FortiAnalyzer for each worker in your SLBC cluster.

You can also use this command to configure different VDOMs on each SLBC worker to use different FortiAnalyzers.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config system vdom-exception</code>	New <code>config</code> command.
	Set configuration objects that are not synchronized between SLBC workers or between VDOMs.

```
config system vdom-exception
  edit {id}
  # Global configuration objects that can be configured independently for all VDOMs or for the defined VDOM scope.
  set id {integer}    Index <1-4096>. range[0-4294967295]
  set object {option} Name of the configuration object that can be configured independently for all VDOMs.
    log.fortianalyzer.setting          log.fortianalyzer.setting
    log.fortianalyzer.override-setting  log.fortianalyzer.override-setting
    log.fortianalyzer2.setting         log.fortianalyzer2.setting
    log.fortianalyzer2.override-setting log.fortianalyzer2.override-setting
    log.fortianalyzer3.setting         log.fortianalyzer3.setting
    log.fortianalyzer3.override-setting log.fortianalyzer3.override-setting
    system.central-management          system.central-management
    system.csf                         system.csf
    user.radius                        user.radius
  set oid {integer}    Object ID. range[0-65535]
  set scope {all | inclusive | exclusive} Determine whether the configuration object can be configured sep-
arately for all VDOMs or if some VDOMs share the same configuration.
    all          Object configuration independent for all VDOMs.
    inclusive    Object configuration independent for the listed VDOMs. Other VDOMs use the global con-
figuration.
```

```
exclusive Use the global object configuration for the listed VDOMs. Other VDOMs can be configured inde-
pendently.
config vdom
    edit {name}
        # Names of the VDOMs.
        set name {string} VDOM name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

Different FortiAnalyzer settings for each SLBC worker

Use the following configuration to set different global FortiAnalyzer settings for each SLBC worker. To do this you only have to enter the following command on each worker:

```
config system vdom-exception
    edit 1
        set object log.fortianalyzer.setting
    end
```

Then on each worker use global settings to configure the FortiAnalyzer that the worker sends log messages to. Each worker sends log messages to a different FortiAnalyzer and all VDOMs on each worker send log messages to the globally set FortiAnalyzer.

Different FortiAnalyzer settings for each worker and for the root VDOM of each worker

Use the following configuration to set different global FortiAnalyzer settings for each worker and to also allow the root VDOM of each worker to use a different FortiAnalyzer than the global FortiAnalyzer:

```
config system vdom-exception
    edit 1
        set object log.fortianalyzer.setting
    next
    edit 2
        set object log.fortianalyzer.override-setting
```

```
    set scope inclusive
    set vdom root
end
```

Then on each worker use global settings to configure the FortiAnalyzer that the worker sends log messages to. Also on each worker, edit the root VDOM and configure the FortiAnalyzer that the root VDOM on this worker sends log messages to.

Each worker sends log messages to a different FortiAnalyzer and the root VDOM on each worker sends log messages to a different FortiAnalyzer than the global setting.

system vdom-link

Introduction.

```
config system vdom-link
  edit {name}
    # Configure VDOM links.
    set name {string}    VDOM link name (maximum = 8 characters). size[11]
    set vcluster {vcluster1 | vcluster2}    Virtual cluster.
        vcluster1    Virtual cluster 1.
        vcluster2    Virtual cluster 2.
    set type {ppp | ethernet}    VDOM link type: PPP or Ethernet.
        ppp            PPP VDOM link.
        ethernet        Ethernet VDOM link.
  next
end
```

system vdom-netflow

Configure NetFlow settings for this VDOM.

```
config system vdom-netflow
  set vdom-netflow {enable | disable}    Enable/disable NetFlow per VDOM.
  set collector-ip {ipv4 address}    NetFlow collector IP address.
  set collector-port {integer}    NetFlow collector port number. range[0-65535]
  set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IP address for communication with the NetFlow agent.
end
```


system vdom-property

Introduction.

```

config system vdom-property
    edit {name}
    # Configure VDOM property.
    set name {string}    VDOM name. size[31] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
    set description {string}    Description. size[127]
    set snmp-index {integer}    Permanent SNMP Index of the virtual domain (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295]
    set session {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of sessions.
    set ipsec-phase1 {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of VPN IPsec phase 1 tunnels.
    set ipsec-phase2 {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of VPN IPsec phase 2 tunnels.
    set ipsec-phase1-interface {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of VPN IPsec phase1 interface tunnels.
    set ipsec-phase2-interface {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of VPN IPsec phase2 interface tunnels.
    set dialup-tunnel {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of dial-up tunnels.
    set firewall-policy {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of firewall policies (IPv4, IPv6, policy46, policy64,
DoS-policy4, DoS-policy6, multicast).
    set firewall-address {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of firewall addresses (IPv4, IPv6, multicast).
    set firewall-addrgrp {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of firewall address groups (IPv4, IPv6).
    set custom-service {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of firewall custom services.
    set service-group {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of firewall service groups.
    set onetime-schedule {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of firewall one-time schedules.
    set recurring-schedule {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of firewall recurring schedules.
    set user {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of local users.
    set user-group {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of user groups.
    set sslvpn {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of SSL-VPNs.
    set proxy {string}    Maximum guaranteed number of concurrent proxy users.
    set log-disk-quota {string}    Log disk quota in MB (range depends on how much disk space is available).
    next
end

```

system vdom-radius-server

Configure a RADIUS server to use as a RADIUS Single Sign On (RSSO) server for this VDOM.

```

config system vdom-radius-server
    edit {name}
    # Configure a RADIUS server to use as a RADIUS Single Sign On (RSSO) server for this VDOM.

```

```

        set name {string}    Name of the VDOM that you are adding the RADIUS server to. size[31] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.vdom.name
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the RSSO RADIUS server for this VDOM.
        set radius-server-ldom {string}    Use this option to select another VDOM containing a VDOM RSSO RADIUS server to
use for the current VDOM. size[31] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
    next
end

```

system vdom-sflow

Configure sFlow for this VDOM.

```

config system vdom-sflow
    set vdom-sflow {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the sFlow configuration for the current VDOM.
    set collector-ip {ipv4 address}    IP address of the sFlow collector that sFlow agents added to interfaces in this
VDOM send sFlow datagrams to (default = 0.0.0.0).
    set collector-port {integer}    UDP port number used for sending sFlow datagrams (configure only if required by your
sFlow collector or your network configuration) (0 - 65535, default = 6343). range[0-65535]
    set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IP address for sFlow agent.
end

```

system virtual-switch

Use this command to configure virtual switch interfaces on the FortiGate models that support this feature.

```

config system virtual-switch
    edit {name}
    # Configure virtual hardware switch interfaces.
    set name {string}    Name of the virtual switch. size[15]
    set physical-switch {string}    Physical switch parent. size[15] - datasource(s): system.physical-switch.name
    config port
        edit {name}
        # Configure member ports.
        set name {string}    Physical interface name. size[15]
        set speed {option}    Interface speed.
            auto    Automatically adjust speed.
            10full    10M full-duplex.
            10half    10M half-duplex.
    end
end

```

```
        100full    100M full-duplex.
        100half    100M half-duplex.
        1000full   1000M full-duplex.
        1000half   1000M half-duplex.
        1000auto   1000M auto adjust.
    set status {up | down}    Interface status.
        up    Interface up.
        down  Interface down.
    set alias {string}    Alias. size[25]
next
set span {disable | enable}    Enable/disable SPAN.
set span-source-port {string}    SPAN source ports. size[15]
set span-dest-port {string}    SPAN destination port. size[15]
set span-direction {rx | tx | both}    SPAN direction.
    rx    Span receive direction only.
    tx    Span transmit direction only.
    both  Span both directions.
next
end
```

system virtual-wan-link

Use this command to enable and configure SD-WAN (also called WAN link load balancing). You can use the SD-WAN feature to create an SD-WAN interface consisting of two or more interfaces connected to the Internet, usually to different Internet providers. The SD-WAN interface provides redundant Internet connections. SD-WAN load balances traffic between the interfaces added to the SD-WAN interface. If one of the interfaces in the SD-WAN interface goes down, traffic is re-routed to the other interface(s) in the SD-WAN.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<pre>config system virtual-wan-link config service edit <id> set hold-down-time <seconds></pre>	<p>New hold down timer that allows you to add a waiting period in seconds when switching from backup members to the primary member. The range is 0 - 10000000 seconds. The default value of 0 disables the timer. Set a timer to prevent switching between links too frequently.</p>

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<pre>config members edit <id> set comment [comments]</pre>	<p>New option to add comments under the <code>config members</code> configuration method.</p> <p>Note that <code>config members</code> is only available when <code>status</code> is set to <code>enable</code>.</p>

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set load-balance-mode {source-ip-based weight-based usage- based source-dest-ip-based measured-volume-based}</pre>	<p>Improved help-text descriptions for each <code>load-balance-mode</code> option.</p>
<pre>config health-check edit <name> set addr-mode {ipv4 ipv6}</pre>	<p>New option to choose IPv6 as the address mode.</p>
<pre>config health-check edit <name> set members <seq-number></pre>	<p>Member sequence number list.</p>
<pre>config health-check edit <name> config sla edit <id> set link-cost-factor {latency jitter packet-loss}</pre>	<p>Configure SLA settings under health check to determine the criteria on which to base link selection.</p>

Command	Description
<pre> set latency-threshold <milliseconds> set jitter-threshold <milliseconds> set packetloss-threshold <percentage> next ... </pre>	
<pre> config health-check edit <name> set protocol {ping6 ...} </pre>	<p>New support for ping6, to determine if the FortiGate can communicate with the server.</p> <p>Note that ping6 is only available when addr-mode is set to ipv6.</p>
<pre> config health-check edit <name> set server <ip/fqdn> [<ip/fqdn>] </pre>	Support to configure multiple servers in SD-WAN health-check.
<pre> config health-check edit <name> set timeout <seconds> </pre>	Removed the timeout for how long to wait before not receiving a reply from the server to consider the connection attempt a failure.
<pre> config members edit <name> set gateway6 <ipv6-addr> set source6 <ipv6-addr> </pre>	Configure an IPv6 gateway and source IPv6 address used in the health-check packet to the server.
<pre> config service edit <id> set dst-negate {enable disable} set src-negate {enable disable} </pre>	Enable or disable negation of destination and source address match.
<pre> config service edit <id> set mode {sla ...} </pre>	Assign link based on the selected service level agreement (SLA) settings.
<pre> config service edit <id> set addr-mode {ipv4 ipv6} </pre>	New option to choose IPv6 as the address mode, along with the source interface name, and IPv6 destination and source address group names.

Command	Description
<pre> set input-device <interface> set dst6 <ipv6-addr-name> set src6 <ipv6-addr-name> </pre>	
<pre> config service edit <id> set dscp-forward {enable disable} set dscp-reverse {enable disable} set dscp-forward-tag <forward-tag> set dscp-reverse-tag <reverse-tag> </pre>	<p>Support to configure DSCP tagging of forwarded packets based on identified SD-WAN services.</p> <p>Note that dscp-forward-tag and dscp-reverse-tag are only available when dscp-forward and dscp-reverse are set to enable, respectively.</p>
<pre> config service edit <id> set link-cost-factor {inbandwidth outbandwidth bibandwidth custom-profile-1 ...} </pre>	<p>New link cost factor types. Note that this entry is only available when mode is set to either auto or priority.</p> <p>See entry below for further details.</p>
<pre> config service edit <id> set internet-service-custom-group <name> set internet-service-group <name> set internet-service-ctrl <id> set internet-service-ctrl-group <name> </pre>	<p>New custom and control-based Internet service link group options. Set the names of group names, as configured under the corresponding config firewall internet-service and application group name commands.</p>
<pre> config service edit <id> set route-tag <integer> </pre>	IPv4 route map route-tag.
<pre> config system virtual-wan-link set status {disable enable} set load-balance-mode {option} source-ip-based weight-based usage-based source-dest-ip-based measured-volume-based </pre>	<p>Enable/disable SD-WAN.</p> <p>Algorithm or mode to use for load balancing Internet traffic to SD-WAN members.</p> <p>Source IP load balancing. All traffic from a source IP is sent to the same interface.</p> <p>Weight-based load balancing. Interfaces with higher weights have higher priority and get more traffic.</p> <p>Usage-based load balancing. All traffic is sent to the first interface on the list. When the bandwidth on that interface exceeds the spill-over limit new traffic is sent to the next interface.</p> <p>Source and destination IP load balancing. All traffic from a source IP to a destination IP is sent to the same interface.</p> <p>Volume-based load balancing. Traffic is load balanced based on traffic volume (in</p>

```

bytes). More traffic is sent to interfaces with higher volume ratios.
    set fail-detect {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SD-WAN Internet connection status checking (failure detection).
    config fail-alert-interfaces
        edit {name}
            # Physical interfaces that will be alerted.
            set name {string}    Physical interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        next
    config members
        edit {seq-num}
            # Physical FortiGate interfaces added to the virtual-wan-link.
            set seq-num {integer}    Sequence number(1-255). range[0-255]
            set interface {string}    Interface name. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
            set gateway {ipv4 address}    The default gateway for this interface. Usually the default gateway of the
Internet service provider that this interface is connected to.
            set source {ipv4 address}    Source IP address used in the health-check packet to the server.
            set gateway6 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 gateway.
            set source6 {ipv6 address}    Source IPv6 address used in the health-check packet to the server.
            set weight {integer}    Weight of this interface for weighted load balancing. (0 - 255) More traffic is directed to interfaces with higher weights. range[0-255]
            set priority {integer}    Priority of the interface (0 - 4294967295). Used for SD-WAN rules or priority rules. range[0-4294967295]
            set spillover-threshold {integer}    Egress spillover threshold for this interface (0 - 16776000 kbit/s). When this traffic volume threshold is reached, new sessions spill over to other interfaces in the SD-WAN. range[0-16776000]
            set ingress-spillover-threshold {integer}    Ingress spillover threshold for this interface (0 - 16776000 kbit/s). When this traffic volume threshold is reached, new sessions spill over to other interfaces in the SD-WAN. range[0-16776000]
            set volume-ratio {integer}    Measured volume ratio (this value / sum of all values = percentage of link volume, 0 - 255). range[0-255]
            set status {disable | enable}    Enable/disable this interface in the SD-WAN.
            set comment {string}    Comments. size[255]
        next
    config health-check
        edit {name}
            # SD-WAN status checking or health checking. Identify a server on the Internet and determine how SD-WAN verifies that the FortiGate can communicate with it.
            set name {string}    Status check or health check name. size[35]
            set addr-mode {ipv4 | ipv6}    Address mode (IPv4 or IPv6).
                ipv4    IPv4 mode.
                ipv6    IPv6 mode.

```

```

set server {string}    IP address or FQDN name of the server. size[64]
set protocol {option}  Protocol used to determine if the FortiGate can communicate with the server.
    ping              Use PING to test the link with the server.
    tcp-echo          Use TCP echo to test the link with the server.
    udp-echo          Use UDP echo to test the link with the server.
    http              Use HTTP-GET to test the link with the server.
    twamp             Use TWAMP to test the link with the server.
    ping6            PING6 link monitor.
set port {integer}    Port number used to communicate with the server over the selected protocol. range[1-
65535]
set security-mode {none | authentication}  Twamp controller security mode.
    none              Unauthenticated mode.
    authentication    Authenticated mode.
set password {password_string}  Twamp controller password in authentication mode size[128]
set packet-size {integer}  Packet size of a twamp test session, range[64-1024]
set http-get {string}  URL used to communicate with the server if the protocol is HTTP.
size[1024]
set http-agent {string}  String in the http-agent field in the HTTP header. size[1024]
set http-match {string}  Response string expected from the server if the protocol is HTTP. size[1024]
set interval {integer}  Status check interval, or the time between attempting to connect to the server (1 -
3600 sec, default = 5). range[1-3600]
set failtime {integer}  Number of failures before server is considered lost (1 - 3600, default = 5). range
[1-3600]
set recoverytime {integer}  Number of successful responses received before server is considered recovered
(1 - 3600, default = 5). range[1-3600]
set update-cascade-interface {enable | disable}  Enable/disable update cascade interface.
set update-static-route {enable | disable}  Enable/disable updating the static route.
set threshold-warning-packetloss {integer}  Warning threshold for packet loss (percentage, default = 0).
range[0-100]
set threshold-alert-packetloss {integer}  Alert threshold for packet loss (percentage, default = 0). range
[0-100]
set threshold-warning-latency {integer}  Warning threshold for latency (ms, default = 0). range[0-
4294967295]
set threshold-alert-latency {integer}  Alert threshold for latency (ms, default = 0). range[0-4294967295]
set threshold-warning-jitter {integer}  Warning threshold for jitter (ms, default = 0). range[0-4294967295]
set threshold-alert-jitter {integer}  Alert threshold for jitter (ms, default = 0). range[0-4294967295]
config members
    edit {seq-num}
        # Member sequence number list.
        set seq-num {integer}  Member sequence number. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): system.virtual-

```



```

wan-link.members.seq-num
    next
    config sla
        edit {id}
        # Service level agreement (SLA).
        set id {integer}    SLA ID. range[1-32]
        set link-cost-factor {latency | jitter | packet-loss}    Criteria on which to base link selection.
            latency        Select link based on latency.
            jitter          Select link based on jitter.
            packet-loss     Select link based on packet loss.
        set latency-threshold {integer}    Latency for SLA to make decision in milliseconds. (0 - 10000000,
default = 5). range[0-10000000]
        set jitter-threshold {integer}    Jitter for SLA to make decision in milliseconds. (0 - 10000000,
default = 5). range[0-10000000]
        set packetloss-threshold {integer}    Packet loss for SLA to make decision in percentage. (0 - 100,
default = 0). range[0-100]
        next
    next
    config service
        edit {id}
        # Create SD-WAN rules or priority rules (also called services) to control how sessions are distributed to phys-
ical interfaces in the SD-WAN.
        set id {integer}    Priority rule ID (1 - 4000). range[1-4000]
        set name {string}    Priority rule name. size[35]
        set addr-mode {ipv4 | ipv6}    Address mode (IPv4 or IPv6).
            ipv4    IPv4 mode.
            ipv6    IPv6 mode.
        config input-device
            edit {name}
            # Source interface name.
            set name {string}    Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
            next
        set mode {auto | manual | priority | sla}    Control how the priority rule sets the priority of interfaces in
the SD-WAN.
            auto        Assign interfaces a priority based on quality.
            manual      Assign interfaces a priority manually.
            priority    Assign interfaces a priority based on the priority assigned to the interface.
            sla         Assign link based on selected SLA settings.
        set quality-link {integer}    Quality grade. range[0-255]
        set member {integer}    Member sequence number. range[0-255]

```

```
set tos {string}    Type of service bit pattern.
set tos-mask {string}  Type of service evaluated bits.
set protocol {integer}  Protocol number. range[0-255]
set start-port {integer}  Start destination port number. range[0-65535]
set end-port {integer}  End destination port number. range[0-65535]
set route-tag {integer}  IPv4 route map route-tag. range[0-4294967295]
config dst
    edit {name}
    # Destination address name.
    set name {string}  Address or address group name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
    set dst-negate {enable | disable}  Enable/disable negation of destination address match.
config src
    edit {name}
    # Source address name.
    set name {string}  Address or address group name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
    config dst6
    edit {name}
    # Destination address6 name.
    set name {string}  Address6 or address6 group name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    next
    config src6
    edit {name}
    # Source address6 name.
    set name {string}  Address6 or address6 group name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    next
    set src-negate {enable | disable}  Enable/disable negation of source address match.
config users
    edit {name}
    # User name.
    set name {string}  User name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.local.name
    next
config groups
    edit {name}
    # User groups.
```

```

        set name {string}    Group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
    next
    set internet-service {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of Internet service for application-based load
balancing.
    config internet-service-custom
        edit {name}
        # Custom Internet service name list.
        set name {string}    Custom Internet service name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-ser-
vice-custom.name
    next
    config internet-service-custom-group
        edit {name}
        # Custom Internet Service group list.
        set name {string}    Custom Internet Service group name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-
service-custom-group.name
    next
    config internet-service-id
        edit {id}
        # Internet service ID list.
        set id {integer}    Internet service ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-ser-
vice.id
    next
    config internet-service-group
        edit {name}
        # Internet Service group list.
        set name {string}    Internet Service group name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.internet-ser-
vice-group.name
    next
    config internet-service-ctrl
        edit {id}
        # Control-based Internet Service ID list.
        set id {integer}    Control-based Internet Service ID. range[0-4294967295]
    next
    config internet-service-ctrl-group
        edit {name}
        # Control-based Internet Service group list.
        set name {string}    Control-based Internet Service group name. size[64] - datasource(s): applic-
ation.group.name
    next
    set health-check {string}    Health check. size[35] - datasource(s): system.virtual-wan-link.health-

```

```

check.name
    set link-cost-factor {option}    Link cost factor.
        latency        Select link based on latency.
        jitter          Select link based on jitter.
        packet-loss     Select link based on packet loss.
        inbandwidth     Select link based on available bandwidth of incoming traffic.
        outbandwidth    Select link based on available bandwidth of outgoing traffic.
        bibandwidth     Select link based on available bandwidth of bidirectional traffic.
        custom-profile-1 Select link based on customized profile.
    set packet-loss-weight {integer}  Coefficient of packet-loss in the formula of custom-profile-1. range[0-
100000000]
    set latency-weight {integer}      Coefficient of latency in the formula of custom-profile-1. range[0-100000000]
    set jitter-weight {integer}       Coefficient of jitter in the formula of custom-profile-1. range[0-100000000]
    set bandwidth-weight {integer}    Coefficient of reciprocal of available bidirectional bandwidth in the for-
mula of custom-profile-1. range[0-100000000]
    set link-cost-threshold {integer} Percentage threshold change of link cost values that will result in
policy route regeneration (0 - 10000000, default = 10). range[0-10000000]
    set hold-down-time {integer}      Waiting period in seconds when switching from the back-up member to the
primary member (0 - 10000000, default = 0). range[0-10000000]
    set dscp-forward {enable | disable} Enable/disable forward traffic DSCP tag.
    set dscp-reverse {enable | disable} Enable/disable reverse traffic DSCP tag.
    set dscp-forward-tag {string}      Forward traffic DSCP tag.
    set dscp-reverse-tag {string}      Reverse traffic DSCP tag.
config sla
    edit {health-check}
        # Service level agreement (SLA).
        set health-check {string}      Virtual WAN Link health-check. size[35] - datasource(s): system.virtual-
wan-link.health-check.name
        set id {integer}               SLA ID. range[0-4294967295]
    next
config priority-members
    edit {seq-num}
        # Member sequence number list.
        set seq-num {integer}          Member sequence number. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): system.virtual-
wan-link.members.seq-num
    next
    set status {enable | disable}      Enable/disable SD-WAN service.
    set gateway {enable | disable}     Enable/disable SD-WAN service gateway.
    set default {enable | disable}     Enable/disable use of SD-WAN as default service.
next

```

```
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

{estimated-upstream-bandwidth | estimated-down stream-bandwidth}

These options allows you to set the estimated uplink and downlink bandwidths of a WAN interface. The range of the setting is from 0 to 4294967295 (effectively 2³²). The value is in Kbps.

In the CLI, the fields can be set by using the following syntax:

```
config system interface
  edit <wan interface>
    set estimated-upstream-bandwidth <integer from 0 - 4294967295>
    set estimated-downstream-bandwidth <integer from 0 - 4294967295>
  end
```

The purpose for these settings is to work with monitoring software such as MRTG (Multi Router Traffic Grapher) to compare the estimated and real bandwidth usage. This is not connected to threshold settings.

Status checking or health checking

For load balancing to be effective, there needs to be a constant monitoring of the health and status of the links that make up the virtual WAN link. Customized status checks can be configured to check on health of various aspects the traffic flow going through the link. Using either ICMP packets (PING) or HTTP requests to a designated server. Once the health reaches a specified threshold, the interface can be automatically removed from the virtual WAN link so that the algorithm is not sending traffic to a failed interface and bring down communications for a portion of the FortiGate's clientele.

To configure status or health checking go to Network > WAN Status Check and add status check profiles. You can also configure status and health checking from the CLI. The CLI includes additional options for setting latency, jitter, and pack loss thresholds.

```
config system virtual-wan-link
  set fail-detect [enable | disable]
  set fail-alert-interfaces (available only if fail-detect is enabled)
  config health-check
    edit [Health check name]
      set server <string>
      set protocol [ping | tcp-echo | udp-echo | http | twamp]
```

Some of the protocol options cause additional settings to be made available.

http

```
set port
set http-get
set http-match
```

twamp

```
set port
set security-mode[none | authentication]
```

The security-mode setting authentication generates yet another potential setting, password.

```
set password
set packet-size
```

The next settings are available for all protocols.

```
set interval <integer>
set failtime [1 - 10]
set recoverytime [1 - 10]
set update-cascade-interface [enable | disable]
set update-static-route [enable | disable]
set threshold-warning-latency <integer 0-4294967295>
set threshold-alert-latency <integer 0-4294967295>
set threshold-warning-jitter <integer 0-4294967295>
set threshold-alert-jitter <integer 0-4294967295>
set threshold-warning-packetloss <integer 0-4294967295>
set threshold-alert-packetloss <integer 0-4294967295>
end
```

config service

Use this configuration method to configure the following settings.

link-cost-threshold <integer>

Note: This entry is only available when `mode` is set to either `auto` or `priority`.

Configure the percentage threshold of change of link cost values that will result in a policy route generation. Set the range between 0 - 10000000. The default threshold is 10.

link-cost-factor {latency | jitter | packet-loss | inbandwidth | outbandwidth | bibandwidth | custom-profile-1}

Note: This entry is only available when `mode` is set to either `auto` or `priority`.

New link cost factor types. Select link based on either available bandwidth of incoming, outgoing, or bidirectional traffic.

Alternatively, use `custom-profile-1`, which calculates the best link using the following formula (useful for micro-managing the most applications flowing in an enterprise network).

$$\text{Link Quality} = (\mathbf{a} * \text{packet loss}) + (\mathbf{b} * \text{latency}) + (\mathbf{c} * \text{jitter}) + (\mathbf{d} / \text{bandwidth})$$

Once `link-cost-factor` is set to `custom-profile-1`, use the following other weight-entries below to customize the link quality, based on the formula above, to your specifications:

- `packet-loss-weight` (**a**)
- `latency-weight` (**b**)
- `jitter-weight` (**c**)
- `bandwidth-weight` (**d**)

Set the range for each entry between 0 - 10000000. The default for each value is 0.

hold-down-time <seconds>

Set a hold down timer that allows you to add a waiting period in seconds when switching from backup members to the primary member. The range is 0 - 10000000 seconds. The default value of 0 disables the timer. Set a timer to prevent switching between links too frequently.

system virtual-wire-pair

Use this command to create virtual wire pairs in NAT mode or Transparent mode. When two physical interfaces are setup as a Virtual Wire Pair, they will have no IP addressing and are treated similar to a transparent mode VDOM. All packets accepted by one of the interfaces in a virtual wire pair can only exit the

FortiGate through the other interface in the virtual wire pair and only if allowed by a virtual wire pair firewall policy. Packets arriving on other interfaces cannot be routed to the interfaces in a virtual wire pair. A FortiGate can have multiple virtual wire pairs.

You cannot add VLANs to virtual wire pairs. However, you can enable wildcard VLANs for a virtual wire pair. This means that all VLAN-tagged traffic can pass through the virtual wire pair if allowed by virtual wire pair firewall policies.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set vlan-filter <vlan-ranges></code>	<p>Set VLAN filters if you don't want a virtual wire pair policy to allow all VLAN traffic. VLAN filters allow only the VLANs in the filter and drops traffic with other VLAN tags. VLAN filters don't affect traffic that isn't VLAN-tagged. Enter the filter ranges in the following example format: 1-10, 20, 30-40.</p> <p>You can also add a VLAN filter to a virtual wire pair firewall policy to apply more specific VLAN filtering only to the traffic that the policy accepts (see <code>vlan-filter</code> under config firewall policy for more information).</p> <p>Note that this entry is only available when <code>wildcard-vlan</code> is set to <code>enable</code>.</p>

```
config system virtual-wire-pair
  edit {name}
    # Configure virtual wire pairs.
    set name {string}    Virtual-wire-pair name. Must be a unique interface name. size[11]
    config member
      edit {interface-name}
        # Interfaces belong to the virtual-wire-pair.
        set interface-name {string}    Interface name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
      next
    set wildcard-vlan {enable | disable}    Enable/disable wildcard VLAN.
    set vlan-filter {string}    Set VLAN filters.
  next
end
```


system vxlan

Virtual Extensible LAN (VXLAN) is a network virtualization technology used in large cloud computing deployments. It encapsulates OSI layer 2 Ethernet frames within layer 3 IP packets using standard destination port 4789. VXLAN endpoints that terminate VXLAN tunnels can be virtual or physical switch ports, are known as VXLAN tunnel endpoints (VTEPs). For more information about VXLAN, see [RFC 7348](#).

```
config system vxlan
    # Configure VXLAN devices.
    edit <name>
        set interface {string}    Outgoing interface for VXLAN encapsulated traffic. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
        set vni {integer}         VXLAN network ID. range[1-16777215]
        set ip-version {ipv4-unicast | ipv6-unicast | ipv4-multicast | ipv6-multicast}    IP version to use for the VXLAN interface and so for communication over the VXLAN. IPv4 or IPv6 unicast or multicast.
        set remote-ip <ip1> <ip2> ...    IPv4 address of the VXLAN interface on the device at the remote end of the VXLAN. size[15]
        set remote-ip6 <ip61> <ip62> ...    IPv6 address of the VXLAN interface on the device at the remote end of the VXLAN. size[45]
        set dstport {integer}         VXLAN destination port (1 - 65535, default = 4789). range[1-65535]
        set multicast-ttl {integer}    VXLAN multicast TTL (1-255, default = 0). range[1-255]
    next
end
```

system wccp

Use this command to configure various settings for Web Cache Communication Protocol (WCCP). Before you can do this however, you must first configure the FortiGate as either a WCCP router or client: **FortiGate as WCCP router:** Intercepts HTTP and HTTPS sessions and forwards them to a web caching engine, caches web pages, and returns cached content to the web browser. **FortiGate as WCCP client:** Accepts and forwards WCCP sessions and uses firewall policies to apply NAT, UTM, and more security features. Note that FortiGates may only operate as clients while in NAT mode (*not* in Transparent mode). To assign either role to the FortiGate, use the following command:

```
config system settings
    set wccp-cache-engine {enable | disable}
end
```

Set this command to `disable` (by default) for the FortiGate to operate as a WCCP **router**. Set this command to `enable` for the FortiGate to operate as a WCCP **client**. When enabled, an interface named `w.root` is added to the FortiGate (shown under `config system interfaces`). All WCCP sessions

received by the FortiGate — operating as a WCCP client — are considered to be received at this interface, where you can enter firewall policies for WCCP traffic. **Note:** All WCCP entries created, whether for router or client, must be numbered within the range of 0-255. The default is set to 1. Use 0 for HTTP.

```
config system wccp
  edit {service-id}
    # Configure WCCP.
    set service-id {string}    Service ID. size[3]
    set router-id {ipv4 address} IP address known to all cache engines. If all cache engines connect to the same
FortiGate interface, use the default 0.0.0.0.
    set cache-id {ipv4 address} IP address known to all routers. If the addresses are the same, use the default
0.0.0.0.
    set group-address {multicast ipv4 address} IP multicast address used by the cache routers. For the FortiGate
to ignore multicast WCCP traffic, use the default 0.0.0.0.
    set server-list {string}    IP addresses and netmasks for up to four cache servers.
    set router-list {string}    IP addresses of one or more WCCP routers.
    set ports-defined {source | destination} Match method.
        source    Source port match.
        destination Destination port match.
    set server-type {forward | proxy} Cache server type.
        forward Forward server.
        proxy Proxy server.
    set ports {string}    Service ports.
    set authentication {enable | disable} Enable/disable MD5 authentication.
    set password {password_string} Password for MD5 authentication. size[128]
    set forward-method {GRE | L2 | any} Method used to forward traffic to the cache servers.
        GRE GRE encapsulation.
        L2 L2 rewrite.
        any GRE or L2.
    set cache-engine-method {GRE | L2} Method used to forward traffic to the routers or to return to the cache
engine.
        GRE GRE encapsulation.
        L2 L2 rewrite.
    set service-type {auto | standard | dynamic} WCCP service type used by the cache server for logical inter-
ception and redirection of traffic.
        auto auto
        standard Standard service.
        dynamic Dynamic service.
    set primary-hash {src-ip | dst-ip | src-port | dst-port} Hash method.
        src-ip Source IP hash.
        dst-ip Destination IP hash.
        src-port Source port hash.
```

```

        dst-port Destination port hash.
    set priority {integer} Service priority. range[0-255]
    set protocol {integer} Service protocol. range[0-255]
    set assignment-weight {integer} Assignment of hash weight/ratio for the WCCP cache engine. range[0-255]
    set assignment-bucket-format {wccp-v2 | cisco-implementation} Assignment bucket format for the WCCP cache
engine.
        wccp-v2 WCCP-v2 bucket format.
        cisco-implementation Cisco bucket format.
    set return-method {GRE | L2 | any} Method used to decline a redirected packet and return it to the FortiGate.
        GRE GRE encapsulation.
        L2 L2 rewrite.
        any GRE or L2.
    set assignment-method {HASH | MASK | any} Hash key assignment preference.
        HASH HASH assignment method.
        MASK MASK assignment method.
        any HASH or MASK.
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

WCCP router mode

The entries below are available when the FortiGate has been configured as a WCCP router.

router-id <ip-address>

IP address known to all cache engines, and identifies an interface on the FortiGate to the cache engines. If all cache engines connect to the same FortiGate interface, use the default address of 0.0.0.0. However, if the cache engines can connect to different FortiGate interfaces, you must set `router-id` to a specific IP address, which must then be added to the configuration of the cache engines that connect to that interface.

group-address <multicast-address>

IP multicast address used by the cache routers. The default, 0.0.0.0, means the FortiGate will ignore multicast WCCP traffic. Otherwise, set the address between 244.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255.

server-list <router-1> [router-2] [router-3] [router-4]

IP address and netmask for up to four cache servers.

authentication {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) use of MD5 authentication for the WCCP configuration.

password <password>

Note: This entry is only available when `authentication` is set to `enable`. Password for MD5 authentication (maximum length of eight characters).

forward-method {GRE | L2 | any}

Defines how the FortiGate forwards traffic to cache servers:

- **GRE:** Encapsulates the intercepted packet in an IP GRE header with a source IP address of the WCCP server and a destination IP address of the target WCCP client. This allows the WCCP server to be multiple Layer 3 hops away from the WCCP client.
- **L2:** Rewrites the destination MAC address of the intercepted packet to equal the MAC address of the target WCCP client. L2 forwarding requires that the WCCP server is Layer 2 adjacent to the WCCP client.
- **any:** Cache server determines the method.

return-method {GRE | L2 | any}

Defines how a cache server declines a redirected packet, and returns it to the FortiGate (see `forward-method` above for option descriptions).

assignment-method {HASH | MASK | any}

Defines which assignment method the FortiGate prefers:

- **HASH:** A hash key based on any combination of the source and destination IP and port of the packet.
- **MASK:** A mask value specified with a maximum of 7 bits and, like the hash key, can be configured to cover both the source and destination address space.
- **any:** Cache server determines the method.

WCCP client mode

The entries below are available when the FortiGate has been configured as a WCCP client.

cache-id <ip-address>

IP address of the cache engine if its IP address is not the same as the IP address of a FortiGate interface. If the addresses are the same, use the default address of 0.0.0.0.

group-address <multicast-address>

IP multicast address used by the cache routers. The default, 0.0.0.0, means the FortiGate will ignore multicast WCCP traffic. Otherwise, set the address between 244.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255.

router-list <addresses>

IP addresses of one or more WCCP routers that can communicate with a FortiGate operating as a WCCP cache engine. Separate multiple addresses with spaces.

authentication {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) use of MD5 authentication for the WCCP configuration.

cache-engine-method {GRE | L2}

Defines how traffic is forwarded to routers or returned to the cache engine (see `forward-method` above for option descriptions). The default is set to GRE.

service-type {auto | standard | dynamic}

WCCP service type, or service group, used by the cache server for logical interception and redirection of traffic. The default is set to `auto`.

- **auto:** Transparent redirection of traffic, whereby the target URL is used to request content, and have requests automatically redirected to a web caching engine.
- **standard:** Intercepts TCP port 80 (HTTP) traffic to the client.
- **dynamic:** Use for when the router is instructed which protocol or ports to intercept, and how to distribute the traffic.

assignment-weight <weight>

Assignment weight/ratio for the WCCP cache engine. Set the value between 0-255. The default is set to 0.

assignment-bucket-format {wccp-v2 | cisco-implementation}

Assignment bucket format for the WCCP cache engine. WCCP version 2 (`wccp-v2`) allows for support of up to 256 masks. The default is set to `cisco-implementation`.

system wireless ap-status

Use this command to configure accepted wireless APs and their status.

```
config system wireless ap-status
  edit {id}
    # Configure accepted wireless AP.
    set id {integer}    AP ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set bssid {mac address}  AP's BSSID.
    set ssid {string}    AP's ssid size[32]
    set status {rogue | accepted | suppressed}  AP status.
      rogue      Rogue.
      accepted   Accepted.
      suppressed Suppressed.
  next
end
```

system wireless settings

Use this command to configure wireless settings.

```

config system wireless settings
    set mode {CLIENT | AP | SCAN}    Mode.
        CLIENT    Client.
        AP        Access point.
        SCAN      Scan.
    set band {option}    Band.
        802.11a      802.11a.
        802.11b      802.11b.
        802.11g      802.11g.
        802.11g-only 802.11g only.
        802.11n      802.11n at 2.4G band.
        802.11ng-only 802.11ng only at 2.4G band.
        802.11n-only 802.11n only at 2.4G band.
        802.11n-5G    802.11n at 5G band.
        802.11n-5G-only 802.11n only at 5G band.
        802.11ac      802.11ac at 5G band.
        802.11acn-only 802.11acn only at 5G band.
        802.11ac-only 802.11ac only at 5G band.
    set geography {option}    Geography.
        World      World.
        Americas    Americas.
        EMEA        EMEA.
        Israel      Israel.
        Japan        Japan.
    set channel {integer}    Channel. range[0-4294967295]
    set power-level {integer}    Power level (0 - 17). range[0-17]
    set beacon-interval {integer}    Beacon level (25 - 1000). range[25-1000]
    set short-guard-interval {enable | disable}    Enable/disable short guard interval.
    set channel-bonding {enable | disable}    Supported channel width.
    set bgscan {disable | enable}    Enable/disable background rogue AP scan.
    set bgscan-interval {integer}    Interval between two rounds of scanning (15 - 3600 sec). range[15-3600]
    set bgscan-idle {integer}    Interval between scanning channels (100 - 1000 ms). range[100-1000]
    set rogue-scan {enable | disable}    Enable/disable rogue scan.
    set rogue-scan-mac-adjacency {integer}    MAC adjacency (0-31). range[0-31]
end

```

system zone

Introduction.

```
config system zone
    edit {name}
    # Configure zones to group two or more interfaces. When a zone is created you can configure policies for the zone
    instead of individual interfaces in the zone.
    set name {string}    Zone name. size[35]
    config tagging
        edit {name}
        # Config object tagging.
        set name {string}    Tagging entry name. size[63]
        set category {string}    Tag category. size[63] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.category
        config tags
            edit {name}
            # Tags.
            set name {string}    Tag name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.tags.name
        next
    next
    set intrazone {allow | deny}    Allow or deny traffic routing between different interfaces in the same zone
    (default = deny).
        allow    Allow traffic between interfaces in the zone.
        deny    Deny traffic between interfaces in the zone.
    config interface
        edit {interface-name}
        # Add interfaces to this zone. Interfaces must not be assigned to another zone or have firewall policies
        defined.
        set interface-name {string}    Select two or more interfaces to add to the zone. size[64] - datasource
        (s): system.interface.name
    next
next
end
```


user

Use `config user` to configure:

- external authentication servers including Windows Active Directory or other Directory Service servers
- user accounts and user groups for firewall policy authentication, SSL VPN authentication, administrator authentication and some types of VPN authentication
- device detection
- peers/peer groups for IPSec VPN and PKI user authentication.

Configuring users for authentication

This command covers two types of user configuration:

- users authenticated by password
- users, sites or computers (peers) authenticated by certificate

Configuring users for password authentication

You need to set up authentication in the following order:

1. If external authentication is needed, configure the required servers.
 - See [user radius on page 1024](#).
 - See [user ldap on page 1006](#).
 - See [user tacacs+ on page 1040](#)
 - For Directory Service, [user fssso on page 996](#).
2. Configure local user identities.

For each user, you can choose whether the FortiGate unit or an external authentication server verifies the password.

- See [user local on page 1011](#).
3. Create user groups.

Add local users to each user group as appropriate. You can also add an authentication server to a user group. In this case, all users in the server's database can authenticate to the FortiGate unit.

- See [user group on page 999](#).
- Also see [user adgrp on page 987](#)

Configuring peers for certificate authentication

If your FortiGate unit will host IPSec VPNs that authenticate clients using certificates, you need to prepare for certificate authentication as follows:

1. Import the CA certificates for clients who authenticate with a FortiGate unit VPN using certificates.
 - See [vpn certificate ca on page 1064](#).
2. Enter the certificate information for each VPN client (peer).
 - See [user peer on page 1017](#).
3. Create peer groups, if you have VPNs that authenticate by peer group. Assign the appropriate peers to each peer group.
 - See [user peergrp on page 1020](#).

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [user adgrp](#)
- [user device](#)
- [user device-access-list](#)
- [user device-category](#)
- [user device-group](#)
- [user domain-controller](#)
- [user fortitoken](#)
- [user fsso](#)
- [user fsso-polling](#)
- [user group](#)
- [user krb-keytab](#)
- [user ldap](#)
- [user local](#)
- [user password-policy](#)
- [user peer](#)
- [user peergrp](#)

- [user pop3](#)
- [user quarantine](#)
- [user radius](#)
- [user security-exempt-list](#)
- [user setting](#)
- [user tacacs+](#)

user adgrp

Configure or edit existing Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO) groups. The command below creates a group that defines FSSO agent names and their polling ID.

```
config user adgrp
  edit {name}
    # Configure FSSO groups.
    set name {string}    Name. size[511]
    set server-name {string}  FSSO agent name. size[35] - datasource(s): user.fsso.name
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

polling-id <id>

FSSO polling ID. Set value between 0-4294967295. The default is set to 0.

server-name <name>

FSSO agent name.

user device

Use this command to define and configure host devices.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set category {amazon-device ...}</code>	New Amazon device type category.

```
config user device
  edit {alias}
  # Configure devices.
  set alias {string}    Device alias. size[35]
  set mac {mac address} Device MAC address.
  set user {string}     User name. size[64]
  set master-device {string} Master device (optional). size[35] - datasource(s): user.device.alias
  set comment {string}  Comment. size[255]
  set avatar {string}   Image file for avatar (maximum 4K base64 encoded). size[4095]
  config tagging
    edit {name}
    # Config object tagging.
    set name {string}    Tagging entry name. size[63]
    set category {string} Tag category. size[63] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.category
    config tags
      edit {name}
      # Tags.
      set name {string}   Tag name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.tags.name
    next
  next
  set type {option}     Device type.
    unknown              Device type not yet determined.
    android-phone        Android-based phones.
    android-tablet       Android-based tablets.
    blackberry-phone     BlackBerry phones.
    blackberry-playbook  BlackBerry tablets.
    forticam             FortiCam.
    fortifone            FortiFone.
    fortinet-device      Other Fortinet devices.
    gaming-console       Gaming consoles (Xbox, PS2, PS3, Wii, PSP).
    ip-phone             VoIP phones.
    ipad                 iPad Tablets.
```

```

        iphone          iPhone and iPod Touch devices.
        linux-pc        Linux PC.
        mac             Mac computers.
        media-streaming Other media streaming devices.
        printer         Printing devices.
        router-nat-device Router and/or NAT devices.
        windows-pc      Windows PC.
        windows-phone   Windows-based phones.
        windows-tablet  Windows-based tablets.
        other-network-device All other identified devices.
    set category {option} Device category.
        none           No specific category.
        amazon-device  Amazon devices.
        android-device Android devices.
        blackberry-device BlackBerry devices.
        fortinet-device Fortinet devices.
        ios-device     Devices running Apple iOS.
        windows-device Devices running Microsoft Windows.

    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

append tags <tag-name>

Append applied object tags.

avatar <image-file>

Enter an image file name to be used as the user's avatar (maximum 4K base64 encoded).

comment [string]

Optional comments.

mac <mac-address>

Enter the device's MAC address.

master-device [name]

Optionally enter a primary device name.

tags <image-file>

Enter applied object tags.

type <device-type>

Select the device type from the following:

- android-phone
- android-tablet
- blackberry-phone
- blackberry-playbook
- forticam
- fortifone
- fortinet-device
- gaming-console
- ip-phone
- ipad
- iphone
- linux-pc
- mac
- media-streaming
- printer
- router-nat-device
- windows-pc
- windows-phone

- windows-tablet
- other-network-device

user <name>

Enter the device owner's user name.

user device-access-list

Use this command to configure device lists for use on interfaces with device identification enabled.

```
config user device-access-list
  edit {name}
  # Configure device access control lists.
  set name {string} Device access list name. size[35]
  set default-action {accept | deny} Accept or deny unknown/unspecified devices.
    accept Accept.
    deny Deny.
  config device-list
    edit {id}
    # Device list.
    set id {integer} Entry ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set device {string} Firewall device or device group. size[35] - datasource(s): user-
.device.alias,user.device-group.name,user.device-category.name
    set action {accept | deny} Allow or block device.
      accept Accept.
      deny Deny.
    next
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

action {accept | deny}

Accept (by default) or deny the device.

config device-list

A configuration method to create device name entries and define their action.

default-action {accept | deny}

Select whether to accept (by default) or deny unknown/unspecified devices.

device <device-group>

Enter the firewall device or device group.

user device-category

Use this command to provide comments for the predefined device types. You cannot create or delete device types.

```
config user device-category
  edit {name}
  # Configure device categories.
    set name {string}    Device category name. size[35]
    set desc {string}    Device category description. size[255]
    set comment {string} Comment. size[255]
  next
end
```

user device-group

Use this command to edit or define FortiGate default or custom device groups.


```
config user device-group
  edit {name}
  # Configure device groups.
  set name {string} Device group name. size[35]
  config member
    edit {name}
    # Device group member.
    set name {string} Device name. size[35] - datasource(s): user.device.alias,user.device-category.name
  next
  config tagging
    edit {name}
    # Config object tagging.
    set name {string} Tagging entry name. size[63]
    set category {string} Tag category. size[63] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.category
    config tags
      edit {name}
      # Tags.
      set name {string} Tag name. size[64] - datasource(s): system.object-tagging.tags.name
    next
  next
  set comment {string} Comment. size[255]
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

member

This setting contains a table of the devices or members that belong to the group.

This setting can be prefaced with the following options

- **set** - whichever members are listed when using this command are the only ones that are included in the group
- **Syntax:** `set member <member1> <member2>...`
- **append** - any members included in the command when using `append` will be added to the existing list of members
- **Syntax:** `append member <member3> <member4>...`

- `clear` - removes all members from the group
- **Syntax:** `clear member`

When adding multiple members, each member should be separated by a space.

user domain-controller

Use this command to edit or define domain controller settings.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config user domain-controller</code>	New config command. Configure domain controller settings, as part of feature that introduces support for agentless NTLM authentication directly from the FortiGate to the domain controller via SMB.

```
config user domain-controller
  edit {name}
  # Configure domain controller entries.
  set name {string}    Domain controller entry name. size[35]
  set ip-address {ipv4 address}    Domain controller IP address.
  set port {integer}    Port to be used for communication with the domain controller (default = 445). range[0-
65535]
  set domain-name {string}    Domain DNS name. size[255]
  set ldap-server {string}    LDAP server name. size[35] - datasource(s): user.ldap.name
  next
end
```

user fortitoken

Use this command to register and view FortiTokens.

```
config user fortitoken
  edit {serial-number}
    # Configure FortiToken.
    set serial-number {string}    Serial number. size[16]
    set status {active | lock}    Status
        active    Activate FortiToken.
        lock      Lock FortiToken.
    set seed {string}    Token seed. size[200]
    set comments {string}    Comment. size[255]
    set license {string}    Mobile token license. size[31]
    set activation-code {string}    Mobile token user activation-code. size[32]
    set activation-expire {integer}    Mobile token user activation-code expire time. range[0-4294967295]
    set reg-id {string}    Device Reg ID. size[256]
    set os-ver {string}    Device Mobile Version. size[15]
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

activation-code <code>

Note: This entry is *not* configurable from the CLI. From the GUI, the token must be assigned to a user and the activation code sent from the FortiGate to the user's email.

activation-expire <expire-time>

Note: This entry is *not* configurable from the CLI. From the GUI, the token must be assigned to a user and the activation code sent from the FortiGate to the user's email. The email will tell the user by when they must activate their token.

license <license>

Enter the FortiToken Mobile license. You can retrieve the token's license by entering `get`, or by using its activation-code in the following command:

```
execute fortitoken-mobile import <activation-code>
```

serial-number

This is the serial number of the FortiToken device

status {active | lock}

Activate (by default) or lock the FortiToken.

user fsso

Use this command to configure the FortiGate unit to receive user group information from a Directory Service server equipped with the Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO) Agent. You can specify up to five computers on which an FSSO collector agent is installed. The FortiGate unit uses these collector agents in a redundant configuration, whereby if the first agent fails, the FortiGate unit attempts to connect to the next agent in the list, and so on.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set source-ip6 <address></code>	IPv6 source address for communications to the FSSO agent.

```
config user fsso
edit {name}
# Configure Fortinet Single Sign On (FSSO) agents.
set name {string}    Name. size[35]
set server {string}  Domain name or IP address of the first FSSO collector agent. size[63]
set port {integer}   Port of the first FSSO collector agent. range[1-65535]
set password {password_string} Password of the first FSSO collector agent. size[128]
set server2 {string} Domain name or IP address of the second FSSO collector agent. size[63]
set port2 {integer}  Port of the second FSSO collector agent. range[1-65535]
set password2 {password_string} Password of the second FSSO collector agent. size[128]
set server3 {string} Domain name or IP address of the third FSSO collector agent. size[63]
set port3 {integer}  Port of the third FSSO collector agent. range[1-65535]
set password3 {password_string} Password of the third FSSO collector agent. size[128]
```

```
set server4 {string}    Domain name or IP address of the fourth FSSO collector agent. size[63]
set port4 {integer}     Port of the fourth FSSO collector agent. range[1-65535]
set password4 {password_string} Password of the fourth FSSO collector agent. size[128]
set server5 {string}    Domain name or IP address of the fifth FSSO collector agent. size[63]
set port5 {integer}     Port of the fifth FSSO collector agent. range[1-65535]
set password5 {password_string} Password of the fifth FSSO collector agent. size[128]
set ldap-server {string} LDAP server to get group information. size[35] - datasource(s): user.ldap.name
set source-ip {ipv4 address} Source IP for communications to FSSO agent.
set source-ip6 {ipv6 address} IPv6 source for communications to FSSO agent.
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

ldap-server <server>

Enter the name of the LDAP server to be used to get group information from the Directory Service.

{password | password2 | password3 | password4 | password5} <agent-password>

For each collector agent, enter the password.

{port | port2 | port3 | port4 | port5} <agent-port>

For each collector agent, enter the port number used for communication with FortiGate units. The default, for each port, is set to 8000.

{server | server2 | server3 | server4 | server5} <agent-address>

Enter the domain name or IP address for up to five collector agents (maximum of 63 characters).

source-ip <server>

Enter the source IP for communications to FSSO servers.

user fsso-polling

Use this command to configure polling of servers for FSSO. Edit to define separate ID numbers for the Windows AD server.

```
config user fsso-polling
  edit {id}
    # Configure FSSO active directory servers for polling mode.
    set id {integer}    Active Directory server ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable polling for the status of this Active Directory server.
    set server {string}    Host name or IP address of the Active Directory server. size[63]
    set default-domain {string}    Default domain managed by this Active Directory server. size[35]
    set port {integer}    Port to communicate with this Active Directory server. range[0-65535]
    set user {string}    User name required to log into this Active Directory server. size[35]
    set password {password_string}    Password required to log into this Active Directory server size[128]
    set ldap-server {string}    LDAP server name used in LDAP connection strings. size[35] - datasource(s): user-
    .ldap.name
    set logon-history {integer}    Number of hours of logon history to keep, 0 means keep all history. range[0-48]
    set polling-frequency {integer}    Polling frequency (every 1 to 30 seconds). range[1-30]
    config adgrp
      edit {name}
        # LDAP Group Info.
        set name {string}    Name. size[511]
      next
    next
  end
```

config adgrp

Note: This entry is *not* configurable.

default-domain <domain>

This server's default domain name.

ldap-server <server>

Name of the LDAP server for group and user names.

logon-history <hours>

Amount of time in hours to maintain active logon. Set the value between 1-48 (or one hour to two days). The default is set to 8. Set to 0 to for no time limit.

password <password>

AD server password.

polling-frequency <frequency>

Interval time in seconds that polling occurs. Set the value between 1-30. The default is set to 10.

port {port}

Server port number. Set the value between 0-65535. The default is set to 0.

server <name/ip>

Name or IP address of the AD server.

status {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable FSSO polling.

user <user>

User name for the AD server.

user group

Use this command to add or edit user groups. User groups can include defined peer users.

```
config user group
  edit {name}
    # Configure user groups.
    set name {string} Group name. size[35]
```

```

    set id {integer}    Group ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set group-type {firewall | fsso-service | rso | guest}    Set the group to be for firewall authentication, FSSO,
    RSO, or guest users.
        firewall        Firewall.
        fsso-service    Fortinet Single Sign-On Service.
        rso             RADIUS based Single Sign-On Service.
        guest           Guest.
    set authtimeout {integer}    Authentication timeout in minutes for this user group. 0 to use the global user set-
    ting auth-timeout. range[0-43200]
    set auth-concurrent-override {enable | disable}    Enable/disable overriding the global number of concurrent
    authentication sessions for this user group.
    set auth-concurrent-value {integer}    Maximum number of concurrent authenticated connections per user (0 - 100).
    range[0-100]
    set http-digest-realm {string}    Realm attribute for MD5-digest authentication. size[35]
    set sso-attribute-value {string}    Name of the RADIUS user group that this local user group represents. size
    [511]
    config member
        edit {name}
        # Names of users, peers, LDAP servers, or RADIUS servers to add to the user group.
        set name {string}    Group member name. size[511] - datasource(s): user-
        .peer.name,user.local.name,user.radius.name,user.tacacs+.name,user.ldap.name,user.adgrp.name,user.pop3.name
        next
    config match
        edit {id}
        # Group matches.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set server-name {string}    Name of remote auth server. size[35] - datasource(s): user-
        .radius.name,user.ldap.name,user.tacacs+.name
        set group-name {string}    Name of matching group on remote authentication server. size[511]
        next
    set user-id {email | auto-generate | specify}    Guest user ID type.
        email            Email address.
        auto-generate    Automatically generate.
        specify          Specify.
    set password {auto-generate | specify | disable}    Guest user password type.
        auto-generate    Automatically generate.
        specify          Specify.
        disable          Disable.
    set user-name {disable | enable}    Enable/disable the guest user name entry.
    set sponsor {optional | mandatory | disabled}    Set the action for the sponsor guest user field.

```



```

        optional Optional.
        mandatory Mandatory.
        disabled Disabled.
set company {optional | mandatory | disabled} Set the action for the company guest user field.
        optional Optional.
        mandatory Mandatory.
        disabled Disabled.
set email {disable | enable} Enable/disable the guest user email address field.
set mobile-phone {disable | enable} Enable/disable the guest user mobile phone number field.
set sms-server {fortiguard | custom} Send SMS through FortiGuard or other external server.
        fortiguard Send SMS by FortiGuard.
        custom Send SMS by custom server.
set sms-custom-server {string} SMS server. size[35] - datasource(s): system.sms-server.name
set expire-type {immediately | first-successful-login} Determine when the expiration countdown begins.
        immediately Immediately.
        first-successful-login First successful login.
set expire {integer} Time in seconds before guest user accounts expire. (1 - 31536000 sec) range[1-31536000]
set max-accounts {integer} Maximum number of guest accounts that can be created for this group (0 means unlimited). range[0-1024]
set multiple-guest-add {disable | enable} Enable/disable addition of multiple guests.
config guest
    edit {user-id}
        # Guest User.
        set user-id {string} Guest ID. size[64]
        set name {string} Guest name. size[64]
        set password {password_string} Guest password. size[128]
        set mobile-phone {string} Mobile phone. size[35]
        set sponsor {string} Set the action for the sponsor guest user field. size[35]
        set company {string} Set the action for the company guest user field. size[35]
        set email {string} Email. size[64]
        set expiration {string} Expire time.
        set comment {string} Comment. size[255]
    next
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

auth-concurrent-override {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to either `firewall` or `guest`. Enable or disable (by default) overriding the `policy-auth-concurrent` entry in the `system global` command.

auth-concurrent-value <limit>

Note: This entry is only available when `auth-concurrent-override` is set to `enable`. The number of concurrent logins permitted from the same user. Set the value between 1-100, or 0 (by default) for unlimited.

authtimeout <timeout>

Period of time in minutes before the authentication timeout for a user group is reached. Set the value between 1-43200 (or one minute to thirty days). The default is set to 0, which sets the timeout to use the global authentication value.

company {optional | mandatory | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to `guest`. Determines whether the guest's company name field on the web-based manager Guest Management form should be optional (by default), mandatory, or disabled.

config guest

Note: When `group-type` is set to `guest`, guest options will become available and can be set. This configuration method will also become available, however it is *not* configurable.

config match

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to `firewall`. A configuration method to specify the user group names on the authentication servers that are members of this FortiGate user group. Note that if no matches are specified then all users on the server can authenticate.

email {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to `guest`. Enable (by default) or disable the email address field in the web-based manager Guest Management form.

expire-type {immediately | first-successful-login}

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to `guest`. Determines when the expiry time countdown begins: immediately (by default) or after the user's first successful login.

expire <seconds>

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to `guest`. The time in seconds the user account has until it expires. Set the value between 1-31536000 (or one second to 365 days). The default is set to 14400.

group-name <name>

The name of the matching group on the remote authentication server.

group-type {firewall | fsso-service | rso | guest}

Type of group, which determines the type of user.

- `firewall`: Those users defined in the `user local`, `user ldap`, or `user radius` commands
- `fsso-service`: Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO) users
- `rso`: RADIUS Single Sign-On (RSSO) users
- `guest`: Guest users

http-digest-realm <attribute>

Note: This entry is *not* available when `group-type` is set to `rso`. The realm attribute for MD5-digest authentication.

max-accounts <limit>

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to `guest`. The maximum number of accounts permitted. The maximum value that can be set depends on the platform. The default is set to 0, or unlimited.

member <member>

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to either `firewall` or `fsso-service`. The names of users, peers, LDAP servers, or RADIUS servers to add to the user group, each separated by a space. Note that, to add or remove names from the group, you must re-enter the whole list with the

required additions or deletions. . The names of users, peers, LDAP servers, or RADIUS servers to add to the user group, each separated by a space. Note that, to add or remove names from the group, you must re-enter the whole list with the required additions or deletions.

mobile-phone {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to `guest`. Enable or disable (by default) the mobile phone number field in the web-based manager Guest Management form.

multiple-guest-add {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to `guest`. Enable or disable (by default) the multiple guest add option in the web-based manager User Group form.

password {auto-generate | specify | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to `guest`. The source of the guest password.

- `auto-generate`: Create a random user password (by default).
- `specify`: Enter a user password string.
- `disable`: Disables guest user's need for a password.

server-name <name>

The name of the remote authentication server.

sponsor {optional | mandatory | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to `guest`. Determines whether the sponsor field on the web-based manager Guest Management form should be optional (by default), mandatory, or disabled.

sso-attribute-value <attribute>

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to `rsso`. The name of the RADIUS user group that this local user group represents.

user-id {email | auto-generate | specify}

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to `guest`. The source of the guest user ID.

- **email:** Use the guest's email address (by default).
- **auto-generate:** Create a random user ID.
- **specify:** Enter a user ID string.

user-name {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `group-type` is set to `guest`. Enable or disable (by default) the guest user name entry.

user krb-keytab

Use this command to configure Kerberos keytab entries. Keytab files are used to authenticate to various remote systems using Kerberos without entering a password, and without requiring human interaction or access to password stored in a plain-text file. The script is then able to use the acquired credentials to access files stored on a remote system.

```
config user krb-keytab
  edit {name}
    # Configure Kerberos keytab entries.
    set name {string}    Kerberos keytab entry name. size[35]
    set principal {string} Kerberos service principal, e.g. HTTP/fgt.example.com@EXAMPLE.COM. size[511]
    set ldap-server {string} LDAP server name. size[35] - datasource(s): user.ldap.name
    set keytab {string}    base64 coded keytab file containing a pre-shared key. size[2047]
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

keytab <keytab>

The base64 coded keytab file containing a pre-shared key.

ldap-server <server>

The LDAP server name.

principal <principal>

The Kerberos service principal, e.g. `HTTP/fgt.example.com@EXAMPLE.COM`.

user ldap

Use this command to add or edit the definition of an LDAP server for user authentication. The maximum number of remote LDAP servers that can be configured for authentication is 10. LDAP user authentication is supported for PPTP, L2TP, IPsec VPN, and firewall authentication. With PPTP, L2TP, and IPsec VPN, PAP (Packet Authentication Protocol) is supported, while CHAP (Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol) is not.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.3.

Command	Description
<code>set server-identity-check {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable verification of LDAP server identity against the LDAP server certificate in LDAPS and STARTTLS security modes. The default value is <code>disable</code> , which means that verification is disabled.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<code>set ssl-min-proto-version {default SSLv3 TLSv1 TLSv1-1 TLSv1-2}</code>	Set the minimum SSL version that can be used for SSL/TLS-protected StartTLS or LADPs sessions. The default value is <code>default</code> which means to follow the global minimum set by the <code>ssl-min-proto-version</code> option of the <code>config system global</code> command.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set account-key-filter <upn></code>	Option has been introduced to replace <code>account-key-name</code> to make LDAP query more flexible with different LDAP server versions.
<code>set account-key-name <upn></code>	Option has been removed.

```

config user ldap
  edit {name}
    # Configure LDAP server entries.
    set name {string} LDAP server entry name. size[35]
    set server {string} LDAP server CN domain name or IP. size[63]
    set secondary-server {string} Secondary LDAP server CN domain name or IP. size[63]
    set tertiary-server {string} Tertiary LDAP server CN domain name or IP. size[63]
    set server-identity-check {enable | disable} Enable/disable LDAP server identity check (verify server domain
name/IP address against the server certificate).
    set source-ip {ipv4 address} Source IP for communications to LDAP server.
    set cnid {string} Common name identifier for the LDAP server. The common name identifier for most LDAP servers
is "cn". size[20]
    set dn {string} Distinguished name used to look up entries on the LDAP server. size[511]
    set type {simple | anonymous | regular} Authentication type for LDAP searches.
        simple Simple password authentication without search.
        anonymous Bind using anonymous user search.
        regular Bind using username/password and then search.
    set username {string} Username (full DN) for initial binding. size[511]
    set password {password_string} Password for initial binding. size[128]
    set group-member-check {user-attr | group-object | posix-group-object} Group member checking methods.
        user-attr User attribute checking.
        group-object Group object checking.
        posix-group-object POSIX group object checking.
    set group-search-base {string} Search base used for group searching. size[511]
    set group-object-filter {string} Filter used for group searching. size[2047]
    set group-filter {string} Filter used for group matching. size[2047]
    set secure {disable | starttls | ldaps} Port to be used for authentication.
        disable No SSL.
        starttls Use StartTLS.
        ldaps Use LDAPS.
    set ssl-min-proto-version {option} Minimum supported protocol version for SSL/TLS connections (default is to

```

```
follow system global setting).
    default Follow system global setting.
    SSLv3 SSLv3.
    TLSv1 TLSv1.
    TLSv1-1 TLSv1.1.
    TLSv1-2 TLSv1.2.
    set ca-cert {string} CA certificate name. size[63] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.ca.name
    set port {integer} Port to be used for communication with the LDAP server (default = 389). range[1-65535]
    set password-expiry-warning {enable | disable} Enable/disable password expiry warnings.
    set password-renewal {enable | disable} Enable/disable online password renewal.
    set member-attr {string} Name of attribute from which to get group membership. size[63]
    set account-key-processing {same | strip} Account key processing operation, either keep or strip domain string
of UPN in the token.
    same Same as UPN.
    strip Strip domain string from UPN.
    set account-key-filter {string} Account key filter, using the UPN as the search filter. size[2047]
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

account-key-name <name>

Account key name, using the UPN as the search filter.

account-key-processing {same | strip}

Account key processing operation, an option to keep or strip domain string of User Principal Name (UPN) in the token.

- **same:** Same as UPN. This is set by default.
- **strip:** Strip domain string from UPN.

UPN is a logon method of authentication where you enter the credentials as `username@domainname.com` instead of the Windows authentication method, `domainname\username`.

cnid <id>

Common name identifier for the LDAP server (maximum of 20 characters). The default is set to `cn`, which is the common name identifier for most LDAP servers. However some servers use other common name identifiers such as `uid`.

dn <dn>

Note: You must provide a `dn` value if `type` is set to `simple`. Distinguished name used to look up entries on the LDAP server (maximum of 512 characters). The distinguished name reflects the hierarchy of LDAP database object classes above the common name identifier. The FortiGate unit passes this distinguished name unchanged to the server.

group-filter {string}

Add a filter string to support LDAP authentication for users that are members of a nested group in the LDAP server. Looking for nested groups is disabled by default. To enable, add a search string to this option.

group-member-check {user-attr | group-object | posix-group-object}

Group member checking methods.

- `user-attr`: Check user attributes (by default).
- `group-object`: Check group objects.
- `posix-group-object`: Checks Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) group objects.

member-attr <attribute-name>

Name of attribute from which to get group membership. The default is set to `memberOf`. Examples are shown below:

- `memberOf` for Windows AD and OpenLDAP
- `groupMembership` for eDirectory

password-expiry-warning {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) password expiry warnings.

password-renewal {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) online password renewal.

port <port>

Port number to be used for communication with the LDAP server. Set the value between 1-65535. The default is set to 389.

server <name/ip>

LDAP server CN domain name or IP address. The host name must comply with [RFC1035](#).

secondary-server [name/ip]

Optionally, enter a second LDAP server name or IP.

secure {disable | starttls | ldaps}

Port to be used in authentication.

- `disable`: Port 389 (by default)
- `starttls`: Port 389
- `ldaps`: Port 636

server-identity-check {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) verification of LDAP server identity against the LDAP server certificate in LDAPS and STARTTLS security modes.

Verification can be enabled only if a CA certificate is specified by `set ca-cert`. If a CA certificate is not specified, verification cannot be enabled.

ssl-min-proto-version {default | SSLv3 | TLSv1 | TLSv1-1 | TLSv1-2}

Set the minimum SSL version that can be used for SSL/TLS-protected StartTLS or LADPs sessions.

The default value is `default` which means to follow the global minimum set by the `ssl-min-proto-version` option of the `config system global` command.

source-ip [class-ip]

Optionally, enter a source IP address to be used for LDAP requests.

tertiary-server [name/ip]

Optionally, enter a third LDAP server name or IP.

type {simple | anonymous | regular}

Note: You must provide a `dn` value if `type` is set to `simple`. Authentication type for LDAP searches.

- `simple`: Simple password authentication without search. Use if the user records are all under one distinguished name that you know. Otherwise, using either `anonymous` or `regular` will search the entire LDAP database for the required user name.
- `anonymous`: Bind using anonymous user search.
- `regular`: Bind using username/password and then search. Use if your LDAP server requires authentication to perform searches, providing values for username and password.

user local

Use this command to add or edit local users and their authentication options, such as two-factor authentication.

Note: To add authentication by RADIUS, TACACS+, or LDAP server, you *must* first add servers using the `user radius`, `user tacacs+`, or `user ldap` commands respectively.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.15.

Command	Description
<code>set username-sensitivity {enable disable}</code>	Enable/disable case and accent sensitivity when performing username matching (accents are stripped and case is ignored when disabled)

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>set ppk-identity <string></code>	Specify the Post-quantum Preshared Key (PPK) Identity for successful validation of PPK credentials in dynamic VPNs with peertype dialup.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set ppk-secret <ascii-string-or-hex></code>	<p>Post-quantum Preshared Key (PPK) options.</p> <p>Even if a quantum computer can break the Diffie-Hellman calculation to derive the DH-generated secret key, the inclusion of the PPK in the key generation algorithm means that the attacker is still unable to derive the keys used to authenticate the IKE SA negotiation (and so cannot impersonate either party in the negotiation), nor the keys used in negotiating an IPsec SA (or IKE SA).</p> <p>Note that this option is only available when <code>type</code> is set to <code>password</code>.</p>

```
config user local
  edit {name}
    # Configure local users.
    set name {string}    User name. size[64]
    set id {integer}     User ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable allowing the local user to authenticate with the FortiGate unit.
    set type {password | radius | tacacs+ | ldap}  Authentication method.
        password Password authentication.
        radius    RADIUS server authentication.
        tacacs+   TACACS+ server authentication.
        ldap      LDAP server authentication.
    set passwd {password_string}  User's password. size[128]
    set ldap-server {string}       Name of LDAP server with which the user must authenticate. size[35] - datasource(s):
user.ldap.name
    set radius-server {string}     Name of RADIUS server with which the user must authenticate. size[35] - datasource
(s): user.radius.name
    set tacacs+-server {string}    Name of TACACS+ server with which the user must authenticate. size[35] - data-
source(s): user.tacacs+.name
    set two-factor {disable | fortitoken | email | sms}  Enable/disable two-factor authentication.
        disable    disable
```

```

        fortitoken FortiToken
        email      Email authentication code.
        sms        SMS authentication code.
    set fortitoken {string}    Two-factor recipient's FortiToken serial number. size[16] - datasource(s): user-
    .fortitoken.serial-number
    set email-to {string}    Two-factor recipient's email address. size[63]
    set sms-server {fortiguard | custom}    Send SMS through FortiGuard or other external server.
        fortiguard    Send SMS by FortiGuard.
        custom        Send SMS by custom server.
    set sms-custom-server {string}    Two-factor recipient's SMS server. size[35] - datasource(s): system.sms-serv-
    er.name
    set sms-phone {string}    Two-factor recipient's mobile phone number. size[15]
    set passwd-policy {string}    Password policy to apply to this user, as defined in config user password-policy.
    size[35] - datasource(s): user.password-policy.name
    set passwd-time {string}    Time of the last password update.
    set authtimeout {integer}    Time in minutes before the authentication timeout for a user is reached. range[0-
    1440]
    set workstation {string}    Name of the remote user workstation, if you want to limit the user to authenticate
    only from a particular workstation. size[35]
    set auth-concurrent-override {enable | disable}    Enable/disable overriding the policy-auth-concurrent under con-
    fig system global.
    set auth-concurrent-value {integer}    Maximum number of concurrent logins permitted from the same user. range[0-
    100]
    set ppk-secret {password_string}    IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key (ASCII string or hexadecimal encoded with a
    leading 0x).
    set ppk-identity {string}    IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key Identity. size[35]
    set username-sensitivity {disable | enable}    Enable/disable case and accent sensitivity when performing user-
    name matching (accents are stripped and case is ignored when disabled).
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

auth-concurrent-override {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) overriding the `policy-auth-concurrent` entry in the `system global` command.

auth-concurrent-value <limit>

Note: This entry is only available when `auth-concurrent-override` is set to `enable`. The number of concurrent logins permitted from the same user. Set the value between 1-100, or 0 (by default) for unlimited.

authtimeout <timeout>

Period of time in minutes before the authentication timeout for a user is reached. Set the value between 1-1440 (or one minute to one day). The default is set to 0, which sets the timeout to use the global authentication value.

email-to <address>

Two-factor recipient's email address.

fortitoken <token>

Note: This entry is only available when `two-factor` is set to `fortitoken`. Two-factor recipient's FortiToken serial number. The FortiToken must have already been added to the FortiGate unit to be set here.

ldap-server <server>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `ldap`. Enter the name of the LDAP server with which the user must authenticate. Enter the name of the LDAP server with which the user must authenticate.

passwd <password>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `password`. The user's password used to authenticate themselves. It is recommended to enter an alphanumeric password of at least six characters in length.

passwd-policy [policy]

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `password`. Optionally, select a password policy to apply to this user. Use the `user password-policy` command to create password policies.

passwd-time

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `password`. Displays the time of the last password update in the following format: `<yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss>`.

radius-server <server>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `radius`. Enter the name of the RADIUS server with which the user must authenticate.

sms-custom-server <server>

Note: This entry is only available when `sms-server` is set to `custom`. Name of the custom server to use for SMS-based two-factor authentication. Note that the server must have already been defined using the `system sms-server` command.

sms-phone <number>

User's phone number to be used for SMS-based two-factor authentication.

sms-server {fortiguard | custom}

Send SMS through FortiGuard or other external server.

- `fortiguard`: Send SMS by FortiGuard (by default).
- `custom`: Send SMS by custom server. Once set, use the `sms-custom-server` entry below to set the external server (see entry below).

status {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable allowing the local user to authenticate with the FortiGate unit.

tacacs+-server <server>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `tacacs+`. Enter the name of the TACACS+ server with which the user must authenticate.

two-factor {disable | fortitoken | email | sms}

Apply two-factor authentication through either FortiToken, email, or SMS, or disable it (by default). If set to `fortitoken`, use the `fortitoken` entry to assign a FortiToken to the user (see entry below).

type {password | radius | tacacs+ | ldap}

Method in which the user's password is verified.

- `password`: Once set, enter a password in the `passwd` entry (see entry below). The FortiGate unit will verify the password against this value.
- `radius`: Once set, enter the server name in the `radius-server` entry (see entry below). The specified RADIUS server will verify the password.
- `tacacs+`: Once set, enter the server name in the `tacacs+-server` entry (see entry below). The specified TACACS+ server will verify the password.
- `ldap`: Once set, enter the server name in the `ldap-server` entry (see entry below). The specified LDAP server will verify the password.

workstation <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `ldap`. Name of the remote user workstation. Set this value if you want to permit the user to authenticate *only* from a particular workstation.

user password-policy

Use this command to create password policies that warn users that their password will expire. When a configurable number of days has been reached, the user will have the opportunity to renew their password before the expiration day is reached. Once the policies have been created, you must then apply them to the user with the `passwd-policy` entry under the `user local` command. Password policies can be applied to any user (not just local users), however password policies cannot be applied to a user group.

```
config user password-policy
  edit {name}
    # Configure user password policy.
    set name {string} Password policy name. size[35]
    set expire-days {integer} Time in days before the user's password expires. range[0-999]
    set warn-days {integer} Time in days before a password expiration warning message is displayed to the user
  upon login. range[0-30]
  next
end
```


Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

expire-days <days>

Period of time in days before the user's password expires. Set the value between 0-999. Default is set to 180.

warn-days <days>

Period of time in days before the user is provided a password expiration warning message upon login. Set the value between 0-30. Default is set to 15.

user peer

Use this command to add or edit peer (digital certificate holder) information. Peers that you define can be used in the `vpn ipsec phase1` command if `peertype` is set to `peer`. These peers can also be added to peer groups in the `user peergrp` command. This command refers to certificates imported into the FortiGate unit. You can import CA certificates using the `vpn certificate ca` command and local certificates using the `vpn certificate local` command.

```
config user peer
  edit {name}
    # Configure peer users.
    set name {string}    Peer name. size[35]
    set mandatory-ca-verify {enable | disable}    Determine what happens to the peer if the CA certificate is not
installed. Disable to automatically consider the peer certificate as valid.
    set ca {string}    Name of the CA certificate as returned by the execute vpn certificate ca list command. size
[127] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.ca.name
    set subject {string}    Peer certificate name constraints. size[255]
    set cn {string}    Peer certificate common name. size[255]
    set cn-type {option}    Peer certificate common name type.
        string    Normal string.
        email    Email address.
        FQDN    Fully Qualified Domain Name.
        ipv4    IPv4 address.
        ipv6    IPv6 address.
    set ldap-server {string}    Name of an LDAP server defined under the user ldap command. Performs client access
rights check. size[35] - datasource(s): user.ldap.name
```

```
set ldap-username {string} Username for LDAP server bind. size[35]
set ldap-password {password_string} Password for LDAP server bind. size[128]
set ldap-mode {password | principal-name} Mode for LDAP peer authentication.
    password Username/password.
    principal-name Principal name.
set ocsdp-override-server {string} Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) server for certificate retrieval.
size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.ocsdp-server.name
set two-factor {enable | disable} Enable/disable two-factor authentication, applying certificate and password-
based authentication.
set passwd {password_string} Peer's password used for two-factor authentication. size[128]
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

ca <cert-ca>

Name of the CA certificate, as returned by the `execute vpn certificate ca list` command.

cn <cert-common-name>

Name of the peer certificate common name.

cn-type {string | email | FQDN | ipv4 | ipv6}

Peer certificate common name type.

- `string`: Normal string. This is set by default.
- `email`: User's email address.
- `FQDN`: Fully qualified domain name.
- `ipv4`: User's IPv4 address.
- `ipv6`: User's IPv6 address.

ldap-mode {password | principal-name}

Mode for LDAP authentication.

- `password`: Authenticate through user name and password. This is set by default.
- `principal-name`: Authenticate through LDAP `userPrincipalName` attribute.

ldap-password <password>

Login password for the LDAP server.

ldap-server <server>

Name of an LDAP server defined under the `user ldap` command. Performs client access rights check for the defined peer.

ldap-username <name>

Login name for the LDAP server.

mandatory-ca-verify {enable | disable}

CA certificates installed on the FortiGate unit will check the peer certificate for validity. Enable (by default) or disable to determine what to do if the CA certificate is *not* installed.

- `enable`: Peer will not be authenticated
- `disable`: Peer certificate is automatically considered valid and authenticated

ocsp-override-server <server>

Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) server used to retrieve certificates. This applies if OCSP is enabled in the `vpn certificate setting` command.

passwd <password>

Note: This entry is only available when `two-factor` is set to `enable`. This peer's password for two-factor authentication.

subject [constraints]

Optionally, enter any peer certificate name constraints; the name defined here must match the certificate name for successful authentication.

two-factor {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) two-factor authentication, applying certificate and password based authentication. Once set, specify the password to use in the `passwd` entry (see entry below).

user peergrp

Use this command to add or edit peer groups. Peers that you define can be used in the `vpn ipsec phase1` command if `peertype` is set to `peer`.

```
config user peergrp
  edit {name}
  # Configure peer groups.
  set name {string} Peer group name. size[35]
  config member
    edit {name}
    # Peer group members.
    set name {string} Peer group member name. size[35] - datasource(s): user.peer.name
  next
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

append member <name>

Append peer group members.

member <name>

Member names of the peer group, each separated by a space. To add or remove names from the group, you must re-enter the whole list with the additions or deletions required.

user pop3

Use this command to configure users who authenticate on a Post Office Protocol 3 (POP3) server. Your Internet server uses the POP3 protocol to receive and hold emails.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
set ssl-min-proto-version {default SSLv3 TLSv1 TLSv1-1 TLSv1-2}	Set the minimum SSL version that can be used for SSL/TLS-protected StartTLS or POP3s sessions. The default value is <code>default</code> which means to follow the global minimum set by the <code>ssl-min-proto-version</code> option of the <code>config system global</code> command.

```
config user pop3
edit {name}
# POP3 server entry configuration.
set name {string}    POP3 server entry name. size[35]
set server {string}  {<name_str|ip_str>} server domain name or IP. size[63]
set port {integer}   POP3 service port number. range[0-65535]
set secure {none | starttls | pop3s}    SSL connection.
    none          None.
    starttls      Use StartTLS.
    pop3s         Use POP3 over SSL.
set ssl-min-proto-version {option}    Minimum supported protocol version for SSL/TLS connections (default is to follow system global setting).
    default       Follow system global setting.
    SSLv3         SSLv3.
```

```
        TLSv1      TLSv1.
        TLSv1-1    TLSv1.1.
        TLSv1-2    TLSv1.2.
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

port <port>

POP3 service port number. This is set to 110 by default).

secure {none | starttls | pop3s}

Security measure to apply: `none`, `starttls` (by default), or `pop3s` (POP3 over SSL).

server <name/ip>

Domain name or IP address of the POP3 email server.

ssl-min-protocol-version {default | SSLv3 | TLSv1 | TLSv1-1 | TLSv1-2}

Set the minimum SSL version that can be used for SSL/TLS-protected StartTLS POP3s sessions.

The default value is `default` which means to follow the global minimum set by the `ssl-min-protocol-version` option of the `config system global` command.

user quarantine

Use this command to enable the quarantine feature for managed FortiSwitches and/or FortiAPs. You can also use this command to create permanent quarantines of MAC addresses.

Please note that, previously, a diminished version of this feature was found under `config switch-controller quarantine`, where only MAC addresses were able to be specified.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<pre>config targets edit <name> delete <quarantine-entry-name> config macs edit <name> delete <mac-address></pre>	<p>Previously, each FortiGate quarantined MAC addresses independently. Now MAC entries can be grouped together (based on their description), making it easier to remove multiple associated quarantine MACs at once.</p> <p>Use the <code>delete</code> option under <code>config macs</code> to release a single MAC address from quarantine, or use the <code>delete</code> option under <code>config targets</code> to delete all MAC addresses listed in an entry.</p>

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config user quarantine</pre>	<p>New <code>config</code> command.</p> <p>This is an enhanced version of an old command, <code>config switch-controller quarantine</code>.</p>

```
config user quarantine
  set quarantine {enable | disable}  Enable/disable quarantine.
  config targets
    edit {entry}
      # Quarantine entry to hold multiple MACs.
      set entry {string}  Quarantine entry name. size[63]
      set description {string}  Description for the quarantine entry. size[63]
      config macs
        edit {mac}
          # Quarantine MACs.
          set mac {mac address}  Quarantine MAC.
          set entry-id {integer}  FSW entry id for the quarantine MAC. range[0-4294967295]
          set description {string}  Description for the quarantine MAC. size[63]
          set parent {string}  Parent entry name. size[63]
        next
      next
    next
  end
```

user radius

Use this command to add or edit information used for RADIUS authentication. You may set different ports for each of your RADIUS servers, of which you can configure a maximum of ten.



If your RADIUS server uses a different port, other than the default RADIUS port of 1812, you can change the default RADIUS port here using the `radius-port` setting.

Please note that `radius-port` is set to a default of 0. When this is the case, the global system-wide port is used. To see the global RADIUS port, enter the following command:

```
show full system global | grep rad
```

Note: All RADIUS Single-Sign On (RSSO) and other SSO related entries are only available when `rssso` is set to `enable`.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set acct-all-servers {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable (by default) sending accounting messages to all configured servers.

```
config user radius
edit {name}
# Configure RADIUS server entries.
set name {string}    RADIUS server entry name. size[35]
set server {string}   Primary RADIUS server CN domain name or IP address. size[63]
set secret {password_string}  Pre-shared secret key used to access the primary RADIUS server. size[128]
set secondary-server {string}  {<name_str|ip_str>} secondary RADIUS CN domain name or IP. size[63]
set secondary-secret {password_string}  Secret key to access the secondary server. size[128]
set tertiary-server {string}    {<name_str|ip_str>} tertiary RADIUS CN domain name or IP. size[63]
set tertiary-secret {password_string}  Secret key to access the tertiary server. size[128]
```



```

    set timeout {integer}    Time in seconds between re-sending authentication requests. range[1-300]
    set all-usergroup {disable | enable}    Enable/disable automatically including this RADIUS server in all user
groups.
    set use-management-vdom {enable | disable}    Enable/disable using management VDOM to send requests.
    set nas-ip {ipv4 address}    IP address used to communicate with the RADIUS server and used as NAS-IP-Address and
Called-Station-ID attributes.
    set acct-interim-interval {integer}    Time in seconds between each accounting interim update message. range[600-
86400]
    set radius-coa {enable | disable}    Enable to allow a mechanism to change the attributes of an authentication,
authorization, and accounting session after it is authenticated.
    set radius-port {integer}    RADIUS service port number. range[0-65535]
    set h3c-compatibility {enable | disable}    Enable/disable compatibility with the H3C, a mechanism that performs
security checking for authentication.
    set auth-type {option}    Authentication methods/protocols permitted for this RADIUS server.
        auto        Use PAP, MSCHAP_v2, and CHAP (in that order).
        ms_chap_v2    Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol version 2.
        ms_chap        Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol.
        chap        Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol.
        pap        Password Authentication Protocol.
    set source-ip {string}    Source IP address for communications to the RADIUS server. size[63]
    set username-case-sensitive {enable | disable}    Enable/disable case sensitive user names.
config class
    edit {name}
        # Class attribute name(s).
        set name {string}    Class name. size[64]
    next
    set password-renewal {enable | disable}    Enable/disable password renewal.
    set password-encoding {auto | ISO-8859-1}    Password encoding.
        auto        Use original password encoding.
        ISO-8859-1    Use ISO-8859-1 password encoding.
    set acct-all-servers {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sending of accounting messages to all configured serv-
ers (default = disable).
    set rso {enable | disable}    Enable/disable RADIUS based single sign on feature.
    set rso-radius-server-port {integer}    UDP port to listen on for RADIUS Start and Stop records. range[0-65535]
    set rso-radius-response {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sending RADIUS response packets after receiving
Start and Stop records.
    set rso-validate-request-secret {enable | disable}    Enable/disable validating the RADIUS request shared secret
in the Start or End record.
    set rso-secret {password_string}    RADIUS secret used by the RADIUS accounting server. size[31]
    set rso-endpoint-attribute {option}    RADIUS attributes used to extract the user end point identifier from the

```

RADIUS Start record.

User-Name	Use this attribute.
NAS-IP-Address	Use this attribute.
Framed-IP-Address	Use this attribute.
Framed-IP-Netmask	Use this attribute.
Filter-Id	Use this attribute.
Login-IP-Host	Use this attribute.
Reply-Message	Use this attribute.
Callback-Number	Use this attribute.
Callback-Id	Use this attribute.
Framed-Route	Use this attribute.
Framed-IPX-Network	Use this attribute.
Class	Use this attribute.
Called-Station-Id	Use this attribute.
Calling-Station-Id	Use this attribute.
NAS-Identifier	Use this attribute.
Proxy-State	Use this attribute.
Login-LAT-Service	Use this attribute.
Login-LAT-Node	Use this attribute.
Login-LAT-Group	Use this attribute.
Framed-AppleTalk-Zone	Use this attribute.
Acct-Session-Id	Use this attribute.
Acct-Multi-Session-Id	Use this attribute.

set rsoo-endpoint-block-attribute {option} RADIUS attributes used to block a user.

User-Name	Use this attribute.
NAS-IP-Address	Use this attribute.
Framed-IP-Address	Use this attribute.
Framed-IP-Netmask	Use this attribute.
Filter-Id	Use this attribute.
Login-IP-Host	Use this attribute.
Reply-Message	Use this attribute.
Callback-Number	Use this attribute.
Callback-Id	Use this attribute.
Framed-Route	Use this attribute.
Framed-IPX-Network	Use this attribute.
Class	Use this attribute.
Called-Station-Id	Use this attribute.
Calling-Station-Id	Use this attribute.
NAS-Identifier	Use this attribute.
Proxy-State	Use this attribute.

```

    Login-LAT-Service      Use this attribute.
    Login-LAT-Node         Use this attribute.
    Login-LAT-Group        Use this attribute.
    Framed-AppleTalk-Zone  Use this attribute.
    Acct-Session-Id        Use this attribute.
    Acct-Multi-Session-Id  Use this attribute.
    set sso-attribute {option}  RADIUS attribute that contains the profile group name to be extracted from the
RADIUS Start record.
    User-Name              Use this attribute.
    NAS-IP-Address         Use this attribute.
    Framed-IP-Address      Use this attribute.
    Framed-IP-Netmask      Use this attribute.
    Filter-Id              Use this attribute.
    Login-IP-Host          Use this attribute.
    Reply-Message          Use this attribute.
    Callback-Number        Use this attribute.
    Callback-Id            Use this attribute.
    Framed-Route           Use this attribute.
    Framed-IPX-Network     Use this attribute.
    Class                  Use this attribute.
    Called-Station-Id      Use this attribute.
    Calling-Station-Id     Use this attribute.
    NAS-Identifier          Use this attribute.
    Proxy-State            Use this attribute.
    Login-LAT-Service      Use this attribute.
    Login-LAT-Node         Use this attribute.
    Login-LAT-Group        Use this attribute.
    Framed-AppleTalk-Zone  Use this attribute.
    Acct-Session-Id        Use this attribute.
    Acct-Multi-Session-Id  Use this attribute.
    set sso-attribute-key {string}  Key prefix for SSO group value in the SSO attribute. size[35]
    set sso-attribute-value-override {enable | disable}  Enable/disable override old attribute value with new value
for the same endpoint.
    set rso-context-timeout {integer}  Time in seconds before the logged out user is removed from the "user con-
text list" of logged on users. range[0-4294967295]
    set rso-log-period {integer}  Time interval in seconds that group event log messages will be generated for
dynamic profile events. range[0-4294967295]
    set rso-log-flags {option}  Events to log.
        protocol-error          Enable this log type.
        profile-missing          Enable this log type.

```

```

        accounting-stop-missed Enable this log type.
        accounting-event      Enable this log type.
        endpoint-block         Enable this log type.
        radiusd-other          Enable this log type.
        none                   Disable all logging.
    set rso-flush-ip-session {enable | disable} Enable/disable flushing user IP sessions on RADIUS accounting
Stop messages.
    set rso-ep-one-ip-only {enable | disable} Enable/disable the replacement of old IP addresses with new ones
for the same endpoint on RADIUS accounting Start messages.
    config accounting-server
        edit {id}
        # Additional accounting servers.
        set id {integer} ID (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295]
        set status {enable | disable} Status.
        set server {string} {<name_str|ip_str>} Server CN domain name or IP. size[63]
        set secret {password_string} Secret key. size[128]
        set port {integer} RADIUS accounting port number. range[0-65535]
        set source-ip {string} Source IP address for communications to the RADIUS server. size[63]
    next
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

acct-interim-interval <seconds>

Note: This entry is only available when `rso` is set to `disable`. Period of time in seconds between each accounting interim update message. Set the value between 600-86400 (or ten minutes to one day). The default is set to 0.

all-usergroup {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `rso` is set to `disable`. Enable or disable (by default) automatically including this RADIUS server to all user groups.

auth-type {auto | ms_chap_v2 | ms_chap | chap | pap}

Note: This entry is only available when `rso` is set to `disable`. Authentication method for this RADIUS server.

- `auto`: Automatic authentication setting, uses `pap`, `ms_chap_v2`, and `chap`. This is set by default.
- `ms_chap_v2`: MS-CHAPv2
- `ms_chap`: MS-CHAP
- `chap`: Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol
- `pap`: Password Authentication Protocol

class <name>

Class attribute name(s).

h3c-compatibility {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) compatibility with the H3C's intelligent Management Center (iMC). When enabled, the supplicant requests 802.1X authentication and then sends a second phase security check request to the H3C IMC server.

nas-ip <ip>

Note: This entry is only available when `rsso` is set to `disable`. IP address of FortiGate interface used to communicate with the RADIUS server, and used as `NAS-IP-Address` and `Called-Station-Id` attribute in RADIUS access requests (see the `rsso-endpoint-attribute` entry below for full list of attributes).

password-renewal {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) implementation of password renewal.

radius-coa {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA), a mechanism that can change the attributes of an authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) session after it is authenticated.

radius-port <port>

Note: This entry is only available when `rsso` is set to `disable`. RADIUS service port number. Set the value between 0-65535. The default is set to 0.

rsso {enable | disable}

Enable (or disable by default) RADIUS SSO (RSSO) to set a variety of options and configure an RSSO agent. FortiOS will then accept connections on the port defined in the `rsso-radius-server-port` entry (see entry below).

rsso-context-timeout <seconds>

Period of time in seconds before the logged on user is removed from the "user context list" of logged on users. Set the value between 1-4294967295 (or one second to 136+ years), or 0 for users you want to remain on the list. The default is set to 28800 (or eight hours). This timeout is only necessary if FortiOS doesn't receive RADIUS Stop records. However it's advisable to set a timeout in case the FortiGate unit misses a Stop record.

rsso-endpoint-attribute <attribute>

Note: All attributes listed below are also available under the `rsso-endpoint-block-attribute` and `sso-attribute` entries. To extract the user end point identifier from the RADIUS Start record, this entry must be set to the name of the RADIUS attribute that contains the end point identifier. The RADIUS attribute must match one of the attributes available. Attributes are case sensitive. The default is set to `Calling-Station-Id`. Select from the table shown below:

User-Name	Login-IP-Host	Called-Station-Id	Acct-Output-Octets
User-Password	Login-Service	Calling-Station-Id	Acct-Session-Id
CHAP-Password	Login-TCP-Port	NAS-Identifier	Acct-Authentic
NAS-IP-Address	Reply-Message	Proxy-State	Acct-Session-Time
NAS-Port	Callback-Number	Login-LAT-Service	Acct-Input-Packets
Service-Type	Callback-Id	Login-LAT-Node	Acct-Output-Packets
Framed-Protocol	Framed-Route	Login-LAT-Group	Acct-Terminate-Cause
Framed-IP-Address	Framed-IPX-Network	Framed-AppleTalk-Link	Acct-Multi-Session-Id
Framed-IP-Netmask	State	Framed-AppleTalk-Network	Acct-Link-Count

Framed-Routing	Class	Framed-AppleTalk-Zone	CHAP-Challenge
Filter-Id	Session-Timeout	Acct-Status-Type	NAS-Port-Type
Framed-MTU	Idle-Timeout	Acct-Delay-Time	Port-Limit
Framed-Compression	Termination-Action	Acct-Input-Octets	Login-LAT-Port

rsso-endpoint-block-attribute <attribute>

RADIUS attribute used to block a user. See the `rsso-endpoint-attribute` entry for a full list of the attributes available.

rsso-ep-one-ip-only {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the replacement of old IP addresses with new IP addresses for the same endpoint on RADIUS accounting Start messages.

rsso-flush-ip-session {enable | disable}

Enable (or disable by default) to flush user IP sessions on RADIUS accounting Stop messages.

rsso-log-flags {protocol-error | profile-missing | accounting-stop-missed | accounting-event | endpoint-block | radiusd-other | none}

Defines how event log messages are written. Multiple options can be set, each separated by a space.

- `protocol-error`: Writes an event log message if RADIUS protocol errors occur. For example, if a RADIUS record contains a RADIUS secret that does not match the one added to the dynamic profile.
- `profile-missing`: Writes an event log message whenever FortiOS cannot find a group name in a RADIUS Start message that matches the name of an RSSO user group in FortiOS.
- `accounting-stop-missed`: Writes an event log message whenever a user context entry timeout expires indicating that FortiOS removed an entry from the user context list without receiving a RADIUS Stop message.
- `accounting-event`: Writes an event log message when FortiOS does not find the expected information in a RADIUS Record. For example, if a RADIUS record contains more than the expected number of addresses.
- `endpoint-block`: Writes an event log message whenever a user is blocked.

- `radiusd-other`: Writes an event log message for other events. For example, write a log message if the memory limit for the user context list is reached and the oldest entries in the table have been dropped.
- `none`: Disable logging of RADIUS SSO events.

rsso-log-period <seconds>

Time interval in seconds that FortiOS will generate group event log messages for dynamic profile events. This is to avoid generating groups of event log messages continuously. Each log message contains the number of events of that type occurred. Set the value between 1-4294967295 (or one second to 136+ years), or 0 (by default) to generate all event log messages in real time.

rsso-radius-response {enable | disable}

Enable (or disable by default) FortiOS to send RADIUS responses after receiving RADIUS Start and Stop records.

rsso-radius-server-port <port>

The connection that FortiOS listens for RADIUS Start and Stop records on this port. Set the value between 0-65535. The default is set to 1813. If necessary, change the UDP port number used by the RADIUS accounting server for sending RADIUS records.

rsso-secret <password>

RADIUS secret used by the RADIUS accounting server.

rsso-validate-request-secret {enable | disable}

Enable (or disable by default) FortiOS to verify that the RADIUS secret matches the RADIUS secret in the RADIUS Start or End record. Verifying the RADIUS secret confirms the RADIUS record as valid.

secret <key>

Note: This entry is only available when `rsso` is set to `disable`. RADIUS server shared secret key. The key should be a maximum of 16 characters in length.

server <name/ip>

Note: This entry is only available when `rsso` is set to `disable`. RADIUS server domain name or IP address (host name must comply with [RFC1035](#)).

source-ip <ip>

Note: This entry is only available when `rsso` is set to `disable`. Source IP for communications to the RADIUS server.

sso-attribute <attribute>

Name of the RADIUS attribute that contains the profile group name to be extracted from the RADIUS Start record. The default is set to `Class`. See the `rsso-endpoint-attribute` entry for a full list of the attributes available.

sso-attribute-key <key>

Key prefix for SSO group value in the SSO attribute, with a maximum length of 36 characters.

sso-attribute-value-override {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable overriding old attribute with a new attribute for the same endpoint.

timeout <timeout>

Period of time in seconds between re-sending authentication requests. Set the value between 1-300. The default is set to 5. These requests occur during the `remoteauthtimeout` period set in the `system global` command.

use-management-vdom {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `rsso` is set to `disable`. Enable or disable (by default) using the management VDOM to send requests.

username-case-sensitive {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) implementation of username case-sensitivity.

user security-exempt-list

Use this command to define security exempt rules/lists.

Note: To view eligible options for the config options in the entries listed below, enter `set <entry> ?`.

```
config user security-exempt-list
  edit {name}
  # Configure security exemption list.
  set name {string}    Name of the exempt list. size[35]
  set description {string}  Description. size[127]
  config rule
    edit {id}
    # Configure rules for exempting users from captive portal authentication.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    config srcaddr
      edit {name}
      # Source addresses or address groups.
      set name {string}  Address or group name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
    config devices
      edit {name}
      # Devices or device groups.
      set name {string}  Device or group name. size[35] - datasource(s): user-
.device.alias, user.device-group.name, user.device-category.name
    next
    config dstaddr
      edit {name}
      # Destination addresses or address groups.
      set name {string}  Address or group name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
    config service
      edit {name}
      # Destination services.
      set name {string}  Service name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.service.custom.name, firewall.service.group.name
    next
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

config rule

A configuration method to create exempt rules. Edit to create new and specify the rule parameters with the entries below.

devices <device>

Devices or device groups to be exempted from Captive Portal, each separated by a space. These groups can be created/edited using the `user device-group` command.

description [description]

Optional description for the group.

dstaddr <dst-address>

Destination addresses or address groups to be exempted from Captive Portal, each separated by a space.

service <dst-service>

Destination services to be exempted from Captive Portal, each separated by a space.

srcaddr <src-address>

Source addresses or address groups to be exempted from Captive Portal, each separated by a space.

user setting

Use this command to configure per VDOM user settings such as the firewall user authentication time out and protocol support for firewall policy authentication.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<code>set auth-src-mac {enable disable}</code>	Enable (by default) or disable source MAC user identity check for firewall authentication.

```

config user setting
    set auth-type {http | https | ftp | telnet}    Supported firewall policy authentication protocols/methods.
        http    Allow HTTP authentication.
        https   Allow HTTPS authentication.
        ftp     Allow FTP authentication.
        telnet  Allow TELNET authentication.
    set auth-cert {string}    HTTPS server certificate for policy authentication. size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.cer-
tificate.local.name
    set auth-ca-cert {string}    HTTPS CA certificate for policy authentication. size[35] - datasource(s):
vpn.certificate.local.name
    set auth-secure-http {enable | disable}    Enable/disable redirecting HTTP user authentication to more secure HTTPS.
    set auth-http-basic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of HTTP basic authentication for identity-based firewall
policies.
    set auth-ssl-allow-renegotiation {enable | disable}    Allow/forbid SSL re-negotiation for HTTPS authentication.
    set auth-src-mac {enable | disable}    Enable/disable source MAC for user identity.
    set auth-timeout {integer}    Time in minutes before the firewall user authentication timeout requires the user to
re-authenticate. range[1-1440]
    set auth-timeout-type {idle-timeout | hard-timeout | new-session}    Control if authenticated users have to login
again after a hard timeout, after an idle timeout, or after a session timeout.
        idle-timeout    Idle timeout.
        hard-timeout    Hard timeout.
        new-session     New session timeout.
    set auth-portal-timeout {integer}    Time in minutes before captive portal user have to re-authenticate (1 - 30 min,
default 3 min). range[1-30]
    set radius-ses-timeout-act {hard-timeout | ignore-timeout}    Set the RADIUS session timeout to a hard timeout or to
ignore RADIUS server session timeouts.
        hard-timeout    Use session timeout from RADIUS as hard-timeout.
        ignore-timeout  Ignore session timeout from RADIUS.
    set auth-blackout-time {integer}    Time in seconds an IP address is denied access after failing to authenticate five
times within one minute. range[0-3600]
    set auth-invalid-max {integer}    Maximum number of failed authentication attempts before the user is blocked. range
[1-100]
    set auth-lockout-threshold {integer}    Maximum number of failed login attempts before login lockout is triggered.
range[1-10]
    set auth-lockout-duration {integer}    Lockout period in seconds after too many login failures. range[0-4294967295]

```

```
config auth-ports
  edit {id}
    # Set up non-standard ports for authentication with HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, and TELNET.
    set id {integer} ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set type {http | https | ftp | telnet} Service type.
      http HTTP service.
      https HTTPS service.
      ftp FTP service.
      telnet TELNET service.
    set port {integer} Non-standard port for firewall user authentication. range[1-65535]
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

auth-blackout-time <seconds>

When a firewall authentication attempt fails five times within one minute, the IP address (that is the source of the authentication attempts) is denied access for this period of time in seconds. Set the value between 0-3600 (or no denial to one hour). The default is set to 0. When a firewall authentication attempt fails five times within one minute, the IP address (that is the source of the authentication attempts) is denied access for this period of time in seconds. Set the value between 0-3600 (or no denial to one hour). The default is set to 0.

auth-ca-cert <ca-cert>

If the built-in certificate is not used here, specify the CA certificate to use instead.

auth-cert <cert>

HTTPS server certificate for policy authentication. Select from built-in defaults or custom certificates. The built-in `Fortinet_Factory` certificate is set by default.

auth-http-basic {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) support for HTTP basic authentication for identity-based firewall policies. HTTP basic authentication usually causes a browser to display a pop-up authentication window instead of an authentication web page. An example to use this would be for web browsers on mobile devices, as some may only support HTTP basic authentication. Enable or disable (by default) support for HTTP basic authentication for identity-based firewall policies. HTTP basic authentication usually causes a browser to display a pop-up authentication window instead of an authentication web page. An example to use this would be for web browsers on mobile devices, as some may only support HTTP basic authentication.

auth-invalid-max <failed-attempts>

Maximum number of failed authentication attempts before the client is blocked. Set the value between 1-100. The default is set to 5.

auth-lockout-duration <seconds>

Period of time in seconds that login lockout lasts for. Set the value between 1-4294967295 (or one second to 136+ years), or 0 for no lockout.

auth-lockout-threshold <login-attempts>

Number of login attempts before a login lockout is triggered. Set the value between 1-10. The default is set to 3.

auth-portal-timeout <minutes>

Period of time in minutes before the firewall Captive Portal authentication timeout requires the user to authenticate again. Set the value between 1-30 (or one minute to half an hour). The default is set to 3.

auth-secure-http {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) redirecting HTTP user authentication to more secure HTTPS.

auth-timeout <minutes>

Period of time in minutes before the firewall user authentication timeout requires the user to authenticate again. Set the value between 1-1440 (or one minute to one day). To improve security, it's recommended to keep the authentication timeout at the default value of 5.

auth-timeout-type {idle-timeout | hard-timeout | new-session}

Type of authentication timeout.

- `idle-timeout`: Applies only to idle sessions. This is set by default.
- `hard-timeout`: Uses RADIUS timeout.
- `new-session`: Applies only to new sessions.

auth-type {http | https | ftp | telnet}

Select the protocols that can be used for firewall policy authentication. Default is `http https ftp telnet`, which means firewall policy authentication can be done using HTTP, HTTPS, FTP or Telnet. You can remove protocols to limit the authentication options.

config auth-ports

A configuration method to set authentication ports and their authentication types. Edit to create new and configure the following entries below.

port <port>

Authentication port number. Set the value between 1-65535. The default is set to 1024.

radius-ses-timeout-act {hard-timeout | ignore-timeout}

RADIUS session timeout action.

- `hard-timeout`: Uses RADIUS timeout. This is set by default.
- `ignore-timeout`: Ignores RADIUS timeout.

type {http | https | ftp | telnet}

User authentication protocol support for firewall policy authentication for the port. User controls which protocols (HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, and/or TELNET) should support the authentication challenge. The default is set to `http`.

user tacacs+

Use this command to add or edit information used for Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System (TACACS+) authentication, a remote authentication protocol used to communicate with an authentication server. The default port for a TACACS+ server is 49. A maximum of 10 remote TACACS+ servers can be configured, and alternative authentication methods can be set for each server. These methods include CHAP, PAP, MS-CHAP, and ASCII. The host name for TACACS+ servers must comply with [RFC1035](#).

```
config user tacacs+
  edit {name}
  # Configure TACACS+ server entries.
  set name {string}    TACACS+ server entry name. size[35]
  set server {string}   Primary TACACS+ server CN domain name or IP address. size[63]
  set secondary-server {string} Secondary TACACS+ server CN domain name or IP address. size[63]
  set tertiary-server {string} Tertiary TACACS+ server CN domain name or IP address. size[63]
  set port {integer}    Port number of the TACACS+ server. range[1-65535]
  set key {password_string} Key to access the primary server. size[128]
  set secondary-key {password_string} Key to access the secondary server. size[128]
  set tertiary-key {password_string} Key to access the tertiary server. size[128]
  set authen-type {option} Allowed authentication protocols/methods.
    mschap  MSCHAP.
    chap    CHAP.
    pap     PAP.
    ascii   ASCII.
    auto    Use PAP, MSCHAP, and CHAP (in that order).
  set authorization {enable | disable} Enable/disable TACACS+ authorization.
  set source-ip {string} source IP for communications to TACACS+ server. size[63]
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

authen-type {mschap | chap | pap | ascii | auto}

Authentication method for this TACACS+ server.

- `mschap`: MS-CHAP
- `chap`: Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol
- `pap`: Password Authentication Protocol
- `ascii`: American Standard Code for Information Interchange, a protocol that represents characters as numerical values.
- `auto`: Uses PAP, MS-CHAP, and CHAP (in that order). This is set by default.

authorization {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) TACACS+ authorization.

key <key>

Key used to access the server.

port <port>

TACACS+ port number for this server. Set the value between 1-65535. The default is set to 49.

secondary-key <key>

Key used to access the second server.

secondary-server <name/ip>

Name or IP address of the second sever.

server <name/ip>

Name or IP address of the TACACS+ sever.

source-ip <src-ip>

Enter the source IP address for communications to the TACACS+ server.

tertiary-key <key>

Key used to access the third server.

tertiary-server <name/ip>

Name or IP address of the third sever.

voip

You can use the `config voip profile` command to create VoIP profiles. Add VoIP profiles to firewall policies to apply the settings in the VoIP profile to the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP), Session Initiation Protocol for Instant Messaging and Presence Leveraging Extensions (SIMPLE) and Skinny Call Control Protocol (SCCP) traffic accepted by the policy.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [voip profile](#)

voip profile

Use this command to add VoIP profiles for SIP, SIMPLE, and SCCP. To apply the SIP ALG, you add a VoIP profile to a firewall policy that accepts SIP sessions. All SIP sessions accepted by the firewall policy will be processed by the SIP ALG using the settings in the VoIP profile. You configure SIP and SCCP settings separately. SIP settings also apply to SIMPLE sessions.

CLI Syntax

```
config voip profile
  edit {name}
  # Configure VoIP profiles.
  set name {string}    Profile name. size[35]
  set comment {string} Comment. size[255]
  config sip
    set status {disable | enable}  Enable/disable SIP.
    set rtp {disable | enable}      Enable/disable create pinholes for RTP traffic to traverse firewall.
    set open-register-pinhole {disable | enable}  Enable/disable open pinhole for REGISTER Contact port.
    set open-contact-pinhole {disable | enable}  Enable/disable open pinhole for non-REGISTER Contact port.
    set strict-register {disable | enable}  Enable/disable only allow the registrar to connect.
    set register-rate {integer}    REGISTER request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
    set invite-rate {integer}      INVITE request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
    set max-dialogs {integer}      Maximum number of concurrent calls/dialogs (per policy). range[0-4294967295]
    set max-line-length {integer}  Maximum SIP header line length (78-4096). range[78-4096]
    set block-long-lines {disable | enable}  Enable/disable block requests with headers exceeding max-line-
```

length.

```

set block-unknown {disable | enable}   Block unrecognized SIP requests (enabled by default).
set call-keepalive {integer}           Continue tracking calls with no RTP for this many minutes. range[0-10080]
set block-ack {disable | enable}       Enable/disable block ACK requests.
set block-bye {disable | enable}       Enable/disable block BYE requests.
set block-cancel {disable | enable}    Enable/disable block CANCEL requests.
set block-info {disable | enable}      Enable/disable block INFO requests.
set block-invite {disable | enable}    Enable/disable block INVITE requests.
set block-message {disable | enable}   Enable/disable block MESSAGE requests.
set block-notify {disable | enable}    Enable/disable block NOTIFY requests.
set block-options {disable | enable}   Enable/disable block OPTIONS requests and no OPTIONS as notifying mes-
sage for redundancy either.
set block-prack {disable | enable}     Enable/disable block prack requests.
set block-publish {disable | enable}   Enable/disable block PUBLISH requests.
set block-refer {disable | enable}     Enable/disable block REFER requests.
set block-register {disable | enable}  Enable/disable block REGISTER requests.
set block-subscribe {disable | enable}  Enable/disable block SUBSCRIBE requests.
set block-update {disable | enable}    Enable/disable block UPDATE requests.
set register-contact-trace {disable | enable} Enable/disable trace original IP/port within the contact
header of REGISTER requests.
set open-via-pinhole {disable | enable} Enable/disable open pinhole for Via port.
set open-record-route-pinhole {disable | enable} Enable/disable open pinhole for Record-Route port.
set rfc2543-branch {disable | enable}  Enable/disable support via branch compliant with RFC 2543.
set log-violations {disable | enable}  Enable/disable logging of SIP violations.
set log-call-summary {disable | enable} Enable/disable logging of SIP call summary.
set nat-trace {disable | enable}       Enable/disable preservation of original IP in SDP i line.
set subscribe-rate {integer}          SUBSCRIBE request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
set message-rate {integer}            MESSAGE request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
set notify-rate {integer}             NOTIFY request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
set refer-rate {integer}              REFER request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
set update-rate {integer}             UPDATE request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
set options-rate {integer}            OPTIONS request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
set ack-rate {integer}                ACK request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
set prack-rate {integer}              PRACK request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
set info-rate {integer}               INFO request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
set publish-rate {integer}            PUBLISH request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
set bye-rate {integer}                BYE request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
set cancel-rate {integer}             CANCEL request rate limit (per second, per policy). range[0-4294967295]
set preserve-override {disable | enable} Override i line to preserve original IPS (default: append).
set no-sdp-fixup {disable | enable}   Enable/disable no SDP fix-up.

```

```
set contact-fixup {disable | enable}    Fixup contact anyway even if contact's IP:port doesn't match ses-
sion's IP:port.
set max-idle-dialogs {integer}    Maximum number established but idle dialogs to retain (per policy). range
[0-4294967295]
set block-geo-red-options {disable | enable}    Enable/disable block OPTIONS requests, but OPTIONS requests
still notify for redundancy.
set hosted-nat-traversal {disable | enable}    Hosted NAT Traversal (HNT).
set hnt-restrict-source-ip {disable | enable}    Enable/disable restrict RTP source IP to be the same as SIP
source IP when HNT is enabled.
set max-body-length {integer}    Maximum SIP message body length (0 meaning no limit). range[0-4294967295]
set unknown-header {discard | pass | respond}    Action for unknown SIP header.
    discard    Discard malformed messages.
    pass       Bypass malformed messages.
    respond    Respond with error code.
set malformed-request-line {discard | pass | respond}    Action for malformed request line.
    discard    Discard malformed messages.
    pass       Bypass malformed messages.
    respond    Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-via {discard | pass | respond}    Action for malformed VIA header.
    discard    Discard malformed messages.
    pass       Bypass malformed messages.
    respond    Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-from {discard | pass | respond}    Action for malformed From header.
    discard    Discard malformed messages.
    pass       Bypass malformed messages.
    respond    Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-to {discard | pass | respond}    Action for malformed To header.
    discard    Discard malformed messages.
    pass       Bypass malformed messages.
    respond    Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-call-id {discard | pass | respond}    Action for malformed Call-ID header.
    discard    Discard malformed messages.
    pass       Bypass malformed messages.
    respond    Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-cseq {discard | pass | respond}    Action for malformed CSeq header.
    discard    Discard malformed messages.
    pass       Bypass malformed messages.
    respond    Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-rack {discard | pass | respond}    Action for malformed RACK header.
    discard    Discard malformed messages.
```

```
    pass      Bypass malformed messages.
    respond   Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-rseq {discard | pass | respond}  Action for malformed RSeq header.
    discard   Discard malformed messages.
    pass      Bypass malformed messages.
    respond   Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-contact {discard | pass | respond}  Action for malformed Contact header.
    discard   Discard malformed messages.
    pass      Bypass malformed messages.
    respond   Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-record-route {discard | pass | respond}  Action for malformed Record-Route header.
    discard   Discard malformed messages.
    pass      Bypass malformed messages.
    respond   Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-route {discard | pass | respond}  Action for malformed Route header.
    discard   Discard malformed messages.
    pass      Bypass malformed messages.
    respond   Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-expires {discard | pass | respond}  Action for malformed Expires header.
    discard   Discard malformed messages.
    pass      Bypass malformed messages.
    respond   Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-content-type {discard | pass | respond}  Action for malformed Content-Type header.
    discard   Discard malformed messages.
    pass      Bypass malformed messages.
    respond   Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-content-length {discard | pass | respond}  Action for malformed Content-Length header.
    discard   Discard malformed messages.
    pass      Bypass malformed messages.
    respond   Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-max-forwards {discard | pass | respond}  Action for malformed Max-Forwards header.
    discard   Discard malformed messages.
    pass      Bypass malformed messages.
    respond   Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-allow {discard | pass | respond}  Action for malformed Allow header.
    discard   Discard malformed messages.
    pass      Bypass malformed messages.
    respond   Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-p-asserted-identity {discard | pass | respond}  Action for malformed P-Asserted-Identity header.
```

```

        discard Discard malformed messages.
        pass Bypass malformed messages.
        respond Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-sdp-v {discard | pass | respond} Action for malformed SDP v line.
        discard Discard malformed messages.
        pass Bypass malformed messages.
        respond Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-sdp-o {discard | pass | respond} Action for malformed SDP o line.
        discard Discard malformed messages.
        pass Bypass malformed messages.
        respond Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-sdp-s {discard | pass | respond} Action for malformed SDP s line.
        discard Discard malformed messages.
        pass Bypass malformed messages.
        respond Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-sdp-i {discard | pass | respond} Action for malformed SDP i line.
        discard Discard malformed messages.
        pass Bypass malformed messages.
        respond Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-sdp-c {discard | pass | respond} Action for malformed SDP c line.
        discard Discard malformed messages.
        pass Bypass malformed messages.
        respond Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-sdp-b {discard | pass | respond} Action for malformed SDP b line.
        discard Discard malformed messages.
        pass Bypass malformed messages.
        respond Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-sdp-z {discard | pass | respond} Action for malformed SDP z line.
        discard Discard malformed messages.
        pass Bypass malformed messages.
        respond Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-sdp-k {discard | pass | respond} Action for malformed SDP k line.
        discard Discard malformed messages.
        pass Bypass malformed messages.
        respond Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-sdp-a {discard | pass | respond} Action for malformed SDP a line.
        discard Discard malformed messages.
        pass Bypass malformed messages.
        respond Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-sdp-t {discard | pass | respond} Action for malformed SDP t line.

```

```

        discard Discard malformed messages.
        pass Bypass malformed messages.
        respond Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-sdp-r {discard | pass | respond} Action for malformed SDP r line.
        discard Discard malformed messages.
        pass Bypass malformed messages.
        respond Respond with error code.
set malformed-header-sdp-m {discard | pass | respond} Action for malformed SDP m line.
        discard Discard malformed messages.
        pass Bypass malformed messages.
        respond Respond with error code.
set provisional-invite-expiry-time {integer} Expiry time for provisional INVITE (10 - 3600 sec). range[10-
3600]
set ips-rtp {disable | enable} Enable/disable allow IPS on RTP.
set ssl-mode {off | full} SSL/TLS mode for encryption & decryption of traffic.
        off No SSL.
        full Client to FortiGate and FortiGate to Server SSL.
set ssl-send-empty-frags {enable | disable} Send empty fragments to avoid attack on CBC IV (SSL 3.0 & TLS
1.0 only).
set ssl-client-renegotiation {allow | deny | secure} Allow/block client renegotiation by server.
        allow Allow a SSL client to renegotiate.
        deny Abort any SSL connection that attempts to renegotiate.
        secure Reject any SSL connection that does not offer a RFC 5746 Secure Renegotiation Indication.
set ssl-algorithm {high | medium | low} Relative strength of encryption algorithms accepted in nego-
tiation.
        high High encryption. Allow only AES and ChaCha.
        medium Medium encryption. Allow AES, ChaCha, 3DES, and RC4.
        low Low encryption. Allow AES, ChaCha, 3DES, RC4, and DES.
set ssl-pfs {require | deny | allow} SSL Perfect Forward Secrecy.
        require PFS mandatory.
        deny PFS rejected.
        allow PFS allowed.
set ssl-min-version {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2} Lowest SSL/TLS version to negotiate.
        ssl-3.0 SSL 3.0.
        tls-1.0 TLS 1.0.
        tls-1.1 TLS 1.1.
        tls-1.2 TLS 1.2.
set ssl-max-version {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1 | tls-1.2} Highest SSL/TLS version to negotiate.
        ssl-3.0 SSL 3.0.
        tls-1.0 TLS 1.0.

```



```

        tls-1.1 TLS 1.1.
        tls-1.2 TLS 1.2.
        set ssl-client-certificate {string}    Name of Certificate to offer to server if requested. size[35] - data-
source(s): vpn.certificate.local.name
        set ssl-server-certificate {string}    Name of Certificate return to the client in every SSL connection. size
[35] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.local.name
        set ssl-auth-client {string}    Require a client certificate and authenticate it with the peer/peergrp. size
[35] - datasource(s): user.peer.name,user.peergrp.name
        set ssl-auth-server {string}    Authenticate the server's certificate with the peer/peergrp. size[35] - data-
source(s): user.peer.name,user.peergrp.name
    config sccp
        set status {disable | enable}    Enable/disable SCCP.
        set block-mcast {disable | enable}    Enable/disable block multicast RTP connections.
        set verify-header {disable | enable}    Enable/disable verify SCCP header content.
        set log-call-summary {disable | enable}    Enable/disable log summary of SCCP calls.
        set log-violations {disable | enable}    Enable/disable logging of SCCP violations.
        set max-calls {integer}    Maximum calls per minute per SCCP client (max 65535). range[0-65535]
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

config sip

Configure VoIP profile settings for SIP (and SIMPLE).

rtp {enable | disable}

Enable or disable opening pinholes for RTP traffic to traverse FortiGate unit. Enabled by default.

open-register-pinhole {enable | disable}

Enable or disable opening a pinhole for the port number specified in SIP REGISTER message Contact header line. Enabled by default.

open-contact-pinhole {enable | disable}

Enable or disable opening a pinhole for the port number specified in a Contact header line in any SIP message except a SIP REGISTER message.

strict-register {enable | disable}

Controls how pinholes are opened to allow traffic from a SIP server to pass through the FortiGate unit. If enabled the SIP ALG opens a pinhole that only accepts sessions from a single IP address (the address of the SIP server).

This option should be disabled if the SIP proxy server and SIP registrar are different entities with different IP addresses.

register-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Set a rate limit (per second, per policy) for SIP REGISTER requests. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting. Set to 0 by default.

invite-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Set a rate limit (per second, per policy) for SIP INVITE requests. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting.

max-dialogs <max_int>

Maximum number of concurrent calls (or dialogs) per policy. Set to 0 (the default) to not limit dialogs.

max-line-length <length_int>

Maximum SIP header line length. The range is 78-4096 characters. If a SIP message contains a line that exceeds the maximum line length a log message is recorded. If block-long-lines is enabled the message is blocked and the FortiGate unit returns a SIP 413 Request entity too large SIP response message. Default length is 998.

block-long-lines {enable | disable}

Enable or disable blocking SIP request messages with a header or body line that exceeds the max-linelenlength. Enabled by default.

block-unknown {enable | disable}

Block unrecognized SIP request messages. Enabled by default.

call-keepalive <keepalive_time>

Continue tracking calls with no RTP sessions for this many minutes. Terminate the call if the time limit is exceeded. Range is 1 and 10,080 seconds. Set to 0 (the default) to disable. Call keep alive should be used with caution because enabling this feature results in extra FortiGate CPU overhead and can cause delay/jitter for the VoIP call. Also, the FortiGate unit terminates the call without sending SIP messages to end the call. And if the SIP endpoints send SIP messages to terminate the call they will be blocked by the FortiGate unit if they are sent after the FortiGate unit terminates the call.

reg-diff-port {enable | disable}

Enable or disable opening a pinhole for the port number included in the Via SIP message header line. Disabled by default.

rfc2543-branch {enable | disable}

Enable to support RFC 2543-complaint SIP calls involving branch commands that are missing or that are valid for RFC 2543 but invalid for RFC 3261. RFC 3261 is the most recent SIP RFC. RFC 3261 obsoletes RFC 2543. This option also allows FortiGate units to support SIP calls that include Via headers that are missing the branch parameter. Disabled by default.

log-violations {enable | disable}

Enable or disable writing a logging message when a SIP option in a VoIP profile detects a violation in a SIP message. Disabled by default.

log-call-summary {enable | disable}

Enable or disable summary content archiving of SIP calls. Enabled by default.

nat-trace {enable | disable}

Enable or disable preserving the original source IP address of the SIP message in the i= line of the SDP profile. This option enables NAT with IP address conservation (also called SIP NAT tracing), which changes the contents of SIP messages by adding the source IP address of the originator of the message into the SDP i= line of the SIP message. The SDP i= line is used for free-form text. However, if your SIP server can retrieve information from the SDP i= line, it can be useful for keeping a record of the source IP address of the originator of a SIP message when operating in a NAT environment. You can use this feature for billing purposes by extracting the IP address of the originator of the message. Enabled by default.

subscribe-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Limit the number of SIP SUBSCRIBE messages per second per policy that the FortiGate unit accepts. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting.

message-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Limit the number of SIP MESSAGE messages per second per policy that the FortiGate unit accepts. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting.

notify-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Limit the number of SIP NOTIFY messages per second per policy that the FortiGate unit accepts. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting.

refer-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Limit the number of SIP REFER messages per second per policy that the FortiGate unit accepts. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting.

update-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Limit the number of SIP UPDATE messages per second per policy that the FortiGate unit accepts. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting.

options-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Limit the number of SIP OPTIONS messages per second per policy that the FortiGate unit accepts. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting.

ack-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Limit the number of SIP ACK messages per second per policy that the FortiGate unit accepts. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting.

prack-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Limit the number of SIP PRACK messages per second per policy that the FortiGate unit accepts. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting.

info-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Limit the number of SIP INFO messages per second per policy that the FortiGate unit accepts. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting.

publish-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Limit the number of SIP PUBLISH messages per second per policy that the FortiGate unit accepts. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting.

bye-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Limit the number of SIP BYE messages per second per policy that the FortiGate unit accepts. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting.

cancel-rate <rate_sec_policy_int>

Limit the number of SIP CANCEL messages per second per policy that the FortiGate unit accepts. Set to 0 (the default) to disable rate limiting.

preserve-override {enable | disable}

Enable or disable adding the original o= line of a SIP message to the end of the i= line or replace the i= line in the original message with a new i= line. This command is used for SIP IP address conservation. Disabled by default.

no-sdp-fixup {enable | disable}

Enable or disable not performing NAT on addresses in the SDP lines of the SIP message body. This option is disabled by default and the FortiGate unit performs NAT on addresses in SDP lines. Enable this option if you don't want the FortiGate unit to perform NAT on the addresses in SDP lines. Disabled by default.

contact-fixup {enable | disable}

Enable or disable performing NAT on the IP addresses and port numbers in the headers in SIP CONTACT messages even if they don't match the session's IP address and port numbers. Enabled by default.

max-idle-dialogs <dialogs_perpolicy_int>

Specify the maximum number of established but idle dialogs to retain (per policy). Set to 0 (the default) to disable.

Idle dialogs would usually be dialogs that have been interrupted because of errors or problems or as the result of a SIP attack that opens a large number of SIP dialogs without closing them. This command provides a way to remove these dialogs from the dialog table and recover memory and resources being used by these open and idle dialogs.

block-geo-red-options {enable | disable}

Block OPTIONS requests, but OPTIONS requests still notify for redundancy. Disabled by default.

hosted-nat-traversal {enable | disable}

Enable or disable support for hosted NAT Traversal (HNT). HNT has different requirements for address translation. Disabled by default.

hnt-restrict-source-ip {enable | disable}

Restrict RTP source IP to be the same as SIP source IP when HNT is enabled. Disabled by default.

max-body-length <size_bytes_int>

Specify the maximum size of a SIP message body in bytes that will be processed by the SIP ALG. Larger messages are discarded. Set to 0 (the default) for no limit. This option checks the value in the SIP Content-Length header line to determine body length. The Content-Length can be larger than the actual size of a SIP message if the SIP message content is split over more than one packet. SIP messages are of variable size and the message size can change with the addition of Via and Record-Route headers.

unknown-header {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message with an unknown header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-request-line {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed request line (the first line in a SIP request message). Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-via {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed Via header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-from {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed From header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-to {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed To header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-call-id {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed Call ID header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-cseq {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed CSeq header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-rack {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed Rack header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-rseq {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed RSeq header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-contact {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed Contact header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-recordroute {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed Record- Route header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-route {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed Route header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-expires {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed Expires header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-contenttype {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed Content- Type header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-contentlength {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed Content-Length header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-maxforwards {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message with a malformed Maxforwards header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-allow {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed Allow header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled.

malformed-header-p-asserted-identity {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed PAsserted- Identity header line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-sdp-v {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed v= body line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-sdp-o {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed o= body line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-sdp-s {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed s= body line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-sdp-i {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed i= body line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-sdp-c {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed c= body line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-sdp-b {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed b= body line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-sdp-z {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed z= body line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-sdp-k {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed k= body line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-sdp-a {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed a= body line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `logviolations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-sdp-t {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed t= body line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-sdp-r {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed r= body line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `log-violations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

malformed-header-sdp-m {discard | pass | respond}

Configure deep SIP message inspection to discard, pass without changing, or discard and send a SIP response message for a SIP message a with a malformed m= body line. Even if set to pass the SIP ALG writes a log message if an unknown header is found and `logviolations` is enabled. Set to pass by default.

ips-rtp {enable | disable}

Enable to have RTP traffic inherit the IPS setting from the SIP firewall policy. Disable if IPS slows down RTP traffic, which might occur if there is a high volume of RTP traffic. Also if the traffic is using NP accelerated interfaces, enabling IPS means that the RTP traffic cannot be accelerated by NP interface acceleration. Enabled by default.

provisional-invite-expirytime <time_int>

The expiry time in seconds to wait for provisional INVITE requests. The range is 10-3600 seconds. The default is 210 seconds.

ssl-mode {off | full}

Select SSL mode:

`full` client-to-FortiGate and FortiGate-to-client

`off` (default) no SSL

ssl-algorithm {high | medium | low}

Select SSL algorithm strength:

`high` (default) AES or 3DES

`medium` AES, 3DES, RC4, or DES

`low` AES, 3DES, or RC4

ssl-auth-client <peer_group>

Require a client certificate and authenticate it with the peer or peergrp.

ssl-auth-server <peer_group>

Authenticate the server certificate with the peer or peergrp.

ssl-client-certificate <cert_name>

Select the certificate to use for client authentication.

`ssl-client-renegotiation` {allow | deny | secure}

Select the client renegotiation policy:

`allow` (default) allow SSL client to renegotiate

`deny` reject any attempt to renegotiate

`secure` reject any renegotiation attempt that does not offer a RFC 5746 Secure Renegotiation Indication

ssl-min-version {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1}

Select the minimum SSL/TLS version to accept. Default is ssl-3.0.

ssl-max-version {ssl-3.0 | tls-1.0 | tls-1.1}

Select the maximum SSL/TLS version to accept. Default is tls-1.1.

ssl-pfs {require | allow | deny}

Set policy for Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS). Default is allow.

ssl-send-empty-frags {enable | disable}

Enable sending empty fragments to avoid attack on CBC IV (SSL 3.0 & TLS 1.0 only). Enabled by default.

ssl-server-certificate <cert_name>

Select the certificate to use for server authentication.

config sccp

Configure VoIP profile settings for SCCP.

block-mcast {enable | disable}

Enable or disable blocking multicast RTP connections. Disabled by default.

verify-header {enable | disable}

Enable or disable verifying SCCP header content. Disabled by default.

log-call-summary {disable | enable}

Enable or disable summary content archiving of SCCP calls. Enabled by default.

log-violations {disable | enable}

Enable or disable writing a logging message when a SIP option in a VoIP profile detects a violation in a SIP message. Disabled by default.

max-calls <calls_int>

Enter the maximum number of calls per minute per SCCP client. The range is 1 to 65535. Set to 0 (the default) to disable limiting the number of calls.

vpn

Use `vpn` commands to configure options related to virtual private networking through the FortiGate unit, including:

- IPsec operating parameters
- a local address range for PPTP or L2TP clients
- SSL VPN configuration settings

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- `vpn certificate ca`
- `vpn certificate crt`
- `vpn certificate local`
- `vpn certificate ocsf-server`
- `vpn certificate remote`
- `vpn certificate setting`
- `vpn ipsec concentrator`
- `vpn ipsec forticlient`
- `vpn ipsec manualkey-interface | manualkey`
- `vpn ipsec phase1-interface | phase1`
- `vpn ipsec phase2-interface | phase2`
- `vpn l2tp`
- `vpn ocvpn`
- `vpn pptp`
- `vpn ssl settings`
- `vpn ssl web host-check-software`
- `vpn ssl web portal`
- `vpn ssl web realm`
- `vpn ssl web user-bookmark`
- `vpn ssl web user-group-bookmark`

vpn certificate ca

Use this command to install Certificate Authority (CA) root certificates. When a CA processes your Certificate Signing Request (CSR), it sends you the CA certificate, the signed local certificate and the CRL.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.5.

Command	Description
<code>set source {factory user bundle}</code>	The <code>fortiguard</code> option has been removed

```
config vpn certificate ca
  edit {name}
  # CA certificate.
  set name {string}    Name. size[79]
  set ca {string}      CA certificate as a PEM file.
  set range {global | vdom}  Either global or VDOM IP address range for the CA certificate.
                        global  Global range.
                        vdom    VDOM IP address range.
  set source {factory | user | bundle}  CA certificate source type.
                        factory  Factory installed certificate.
                        user     User generated certificate.
                        bundle   Bundle file certificate.
  set trusted {enable | disable}  Enable/disable as a trusted CA.
  set scep-url {string}  URL of the SCEP server. size[255]
  set auto-update-days {integer}  Number of days to wait before requesting an updated CA certificate (0 -
4294967295, 0 = disabled). range[0-4294967295]
  set auto-update-days-warning {integer}  Number of days before an expiry-warning message is generated (0 -
4294967295, 0 = disabled). range[0-4294967295]
  set source-ip {ipv4 address}  Source IP address for communications to the SCEP server.
  set last-updated {integer}  Time at which CA was last updated. range[0-4294967295]
next
end
```


Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

auto-update-days <days>

Note: This entry is only available when `scep-url` has been set.

Enter how many days before expiry the FortiGate requests an updated CA certificate. Set to 0 (by default) for no auto-update.

For example, if the certificate is expiring in a year and you want to use SCEP to request a new certificate five days before it expires, the value should be 5.

auto-update-days-warning <days>

Note: This entry is only available when `scep-url` has been set.

Enter how many days before expiry the FortiGate sends a warning about updating a CA certificate. Set to 0 (by default) for no warning.

For example, if the certificate is expiring in a year and you want to get a warning five days before it expires, the value should be 5.

ca <cert>

Enter or retrieve the CA certificate as a Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) file.

last-updated <days>

Note: This entry is only available when a `ca` has been set.

Amount of time in days since the CA was last updated.

range {global | vdom}

Either `global` (by default) or `vdom` IP address range for the CA certificate.

scep-url <url>

URL of the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) server.

source {factory | user | bundle}

CA certificate source.

- **factory:** Default certificate that came with the FortiGate
- **user:** User certificate (set by default)
- **bundle:** Certificate from a bundle file

source-ip <ipv4-address>

IPv4 address used to verify that the request is sent from an expected IP.

trusted {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable as a trusted CA.

vpn certificate crl

Use this command to install a Certificate Revocation List (CRL). When a CA processes your Certificate Signing Request (CSR), it sends you the CA certificate, the signed local certificate and the CRL.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.5.

Command	Description
set source {factory user bundle}	The fortiguard option has been removed

```
config vpn certificate crl
  edit {name}
    # Certificate Revocation List as a PEM file.
    set name {string}    Name. size[35]
    set crl {string}     Certificate Revocation List as a PEM file.
    set range {global | vdom}  Either global or VDOM IP address range for the certificate.
```

```

        global Global range.
        vdom VDOM IP address range.
set source {factory | user | bundle} Certificate source type.
    factory Factory installed certificate.
    user User generated certificate.
    bundle Bundle file certificate.
set update-vdom {string} VDOM for CRL update. size[31] - datasource(s): system.vdom.name
set ldap-server {string} LDAP server name for CRL auto-update. size[35]
set ldap-username {string} LDAP server user name. size[63]
set ldap-password {password_string} LDAP server user password. size[128]
set http-url {string} HTTP server URL for CRL auto-update. size[255]
set scep-url {string} SCEP server URL for CRL auto-update. size[255]
set scep-cert {string} Local certificate for SCEP communication for CRL auto-update. size[35] - datasource(s):
vpn.certificate.local.name
    set update-interval {integer} Time in seconds before the FortiGate checks for an updated CRL. Set to 0 to
update only when it expires. range[0-4294967295]
    set source-ip {ipv4 address} Source IP address for communications to a HTTP or SCEP CA server.
    set last-updated {integer} Time at which CRL was last updated. range[0-4294967295]
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

cr1 <pem-file>

The name of the CRL in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format.

http-url <url>

URL of an HTTP server used for automatic CRL certificate updates. The URL *must* begin with either **http://** or **https://**.

last-updated <days>

Note: This entry is only available when a `cr1` has been set.

Amount of time in days since the CRL was last updated.

ldap-password <password>

Note: This entry is only available when `ldap-server` has been set. LDAP login password.

ldap-server <name>

Name of the LDAP server defined in `config user ldap` for CRL auto-update.

ldap-username <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `ldap-server` has been set. LDAP login name.

range {global | vdom}

Either `global` (by default) or `vdom` IP address range for the certificate.

scep-cert <cert>

Local certificate used for SCEP communication for CRL auto-update. If a certificate hasn't already been set, the default certificate used is `Fortinet_CA_SSL`.

scep-url <url>

URL of the SCEP server used for automatic CRL certificate updates. The URL *must* begin with either `http://` or `https://`.

source {factory | user | bundle}

CA certificate source:

- **factory:** Default certificate that came with the FortiGate
- **user:** User certificate (set by default)
- **bundle:** Certificate from a bundle file

source-ip <ipv4-address>

IPv4 address used to verify that the request is sent from an expected IP.

update-interval <interval>

Period of time in seconds before the FortiGate unit checks for an updated CRL. Enter 0 (by default) to update the CRL only when it expires.

update-vdom <vdom>

Name of the VDOM for CRL update. This is set to the `root` VDOM by default.

vpn certificate local

Use this command to install local certificates.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.5.

Command	Description
<code>set source {factory user bundle}</code>	The <code>fortiguard</code> option has been removed

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set enroll-protocol {none scep cmpv2} set cmp-server "address:port:" set cmp-path <patj> set cmp-server-cert <ca-cert> set cmp-regeneration-method <keyupdate renewal></pre>	Support added to enroll Certificate Management Protocol version 2 (CMPv2) and configure CMP server settings.

```
config vpn certificate local
edit {name}
# Local keys and certificates.
set name {string}      Name. size[35]
set password {password_string}  Password as a PEM file. size[128]
```

```

set comments {string}    Comment. size[511]
set private-key {string}  PEM format key, encrypted with a password.
set certificate {string}  PEM format certificate.
set csr {string}    Certificate Signing Request.
set state {string}    Certificate Signing Request State.
set scep-url {string}    SCEP server URL. size[255]
set range {global | vdom}  Either a global or VDOM IP address range for the certificate.
    global    Global range.
    vdom      VDOM IP address range.
set source {factory | user | bundle}  Certificate source type.
    factory    Factory installed certificate.
    user       User generated certificate.
    bundle     Bundle file certificate.
set auto-regenerate-days {integer}    Number of days to wait before expiry of an updated local certificate is
requested (0 = disabled). range[0-4294967295]
set auto-regenerate-days-warning {integer}    Number of days to wait before an expiry warning message is gen-
erated (0 = disabled). range[0-4294967295]
set scep-password {password_string}    SCEP server challenge password for auto-regeneration. size[128]
set ca-identifier {string}    CA identifier of the CA server for signing via SCEP. size[255]
set name-encoding {printable | utf8}    Name encoding method for auto-regeneration.
    printable    Printable encoding (default).
    utf8         UTF-8 encoding.
set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IP address for communications to the SCEP server.
set ike-localid {string}    Local ID the FortiGate uses for authentication as a VPN client. size[63]
set ike-localid-type {asn1dn | fqdn}    IKE local ID type.
    asn1dn    ASN.1 distinguished name.
    fqdn      Fully qualified domain name.
set last-updated {integer}    Time at which certificate was last updated. range[0-4294967295]
set enroll-protocol {none | scep | cmpv2}    Certificate enrollment protocol.
    none      None (default).
    scep      Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol.
    cmpv2     Certificate Management Protocol Version 2.
set cmp-server {string}    'ADDRESS:PORT' for CMP server. size[63]
set cmp-path {string}    Path location inside CMP server. size[255]
set cmp-server-cert {string}    CMP server certificate. size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.ca.name
set cmp-regeneration-method {keyupate | renewal}    CMP auto-regeneration method.
    keyupate    Key Update.
    renewal     Renewal.

next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

auto-regenerate-days <days>

Note: This entry is only available when `enroll-protocol` has been set to either `scep` or `cmpv2`.

Enter how many days before expiry the FortiGate requests an updated local certificate. Set to 0 (by default) for no auto-update.

For example, if the certificate is expiring in a year and you want to use SCEP to request a new certificate five days before it expires, the value should be 5.

auto-regenerate-days-warning <days>

Note: This entry is only available when `enroll-protocol` has been set to either `scep` or `cmpv2`.

Enter how many days before expiry the FortiGate sends a warning about updating a local certificate. Set to 0 (by default) for no warning.

For example, if the certificate is expiring in a year and you want to get a warning five days before it expires, the value should be 5.

ca-identifer <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `enroll-protocol` has been set to `scep`.

CA identifier of the CA server for signing via SCEP.

certificate <certificate>

Note: This is only available for local entries that have certificates assigned to them already.

Certificate in PEM format.

csr <cert>

Certificate Signing Request (CSR) to be signed.

ike-localid <id>

Note: This entry is only available when `ike-localid-type` is set to `fqdn`.

Local ID that the FortiGate will use for authentication purposes as a VPN client.

ike-localid-type <type>

IKE local ID type:

- **asn1dn**: ASN.1 Distinguished Name ID (set by default)
- **fqdn**: Fully Qualified Domain Name ID

last-updated <days>

Note: This entry is only available when a `certificate` has been set.

Amount of time in days since the certificate was last updated.

name-encoding {printable | utf8}

Note: This entry is only available when `enroll-protocol` has been set to `scep`.

Name encoding method for auto-regeneration:

- **printable**: Printable encoding (also known as Quoted-Printable, or QP encoding) uses printable ASCII alphanumeric characters and the equals (=) sign (set by default).
- **utf8**: UTF-8 encoding uses all possible characters.

password <password>

Password in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format.

private-key <key>

Private key in PEM format, encrypted with the password.

range {global | vdom}

Either `global` (by default) or `vdom` IP address range for the certificate.

scep-password <password>

Note: This entry is only available when `scep-url` has been set.

Password for the SCEP server.

scep-url <url>

Note: This entry is only available when `enroll-protocol` is set to `scep`.

URL for the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) server.

source {factory | user | bundle}

Select the certificate's source:

- **factory:** Default certificate that came with the FortiGate
- **user:** User certificate (set by default)
- **bundle:** Certificate from a bundle file

source-ip <ipv4-addr>

Source IP address for communications to the SCEP server.

state <state>

State of the CSR.

vpn certificate ocsf-server

Use this command to specify the revocation for an Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) server certificate. You can also specify the action to take if the server is not available.

```
config vpn certificate ocsf-server
  edit {name}
    # OCSP server configuration.
    set name {string}    OCSP server entry name. size[35]
```

```
    set url {string}    OSCP server URL. size[127]
    set cert {string}    OSCP server certificate. size[127] - datasource(s): vpn.cer-
tificate.remote.name,vpn.certificate.ca.name
    set secondary-url {string}    Secondary OSCP server URL. size[127]
    set secondary-cert {string}    Secondary OSCP server certificate. size[127] - datasource(s): vpn.cer-
tificate.remote.name,vpn.certificate.ca.name
    set unavail-action {revoke | ignore}    Action when server is unavailable (revoke the certificate or ignore the
result of the check).
        revoke    Revoke certificate if server is unavailable.
        ignore    Ignore OSCP check if server is unavailable.
    set source-ip {ipv4 address}    Source IP address for communications to the OSCP server.
next
end
```

url <ocsp-url>

URL of the OSCP server.

cert <name>

The OSCP server public certificate (one of the remote certificates).

secondary-url <url>

Secondary URL of the OSCP server.

secondary-cert <name>

Secondary public certificate of the OSCP server (one of the remote certificates).

unavail-action {revoke | ignore}

Upon client certification, when the server is *unreachable*, either `revoke` (by default) the certificate or `ignore` OSCP check.

source-ip <ipv4-address>

Source IP address for communications to the OSCP server.

vpn certificate remote

Use this command to install remote certificates and configure basic settings. The remote certificates are public certificates without a private key, and used as OCSP server certificates.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.5.

Command	Description
set source {factory user bundle}	The fortiguard option has been removed

```
config vpn certificate remote
  edit {name}
  # Remote certificate as a PEM file.
  set name {string}    Name. size[35]
  set remote {string}  Remote certificate.
  set range {global | vdom}  Either the global or VDOM IP address range for the remote certificate.
    global  Global range.
    vdom    VDOM IP address range.
  set source {factory | user | bundle}  Remote certificate source type.
    factory  Factory installed certificate.
    user     User generated certificate.
    bundle   Bundle file certificate.
  next
end
```

remote <cert>

Name of the remote certificate, in PEM format.

range {global | vdom}

Either `global` (by default) or `vdom` IP address range for the certificate.

source {factory | user | bundle}

Select the certificate's source:

- **factory:** Default certificate that came with the FortiGate
- **user:** User certificate (set by default)
- **bundle:** Certificate from a bundle file

vpn certificate setting

Use this command to enable receiving certificates by OCSP.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.10.

Command	Description
<code>set cmp-key-usage-checking {enable disable}</code>	Enable/disable server certificate key usage checking in CMP mode (default = enable).

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<code>set ssl-min-proto-version {default SSLv3 TLSv1 TLSv1-1 TLSv1-2}</code>	<p>Set the minimum SSL version that can be used for SSL/TLS-protected OCSP sessions.</p> <p>The default value is <code>default</code> which means to follow the global minimum set by the <code>ssl-min-proto-version</code> option of the <code>config system global</code> command.</p>

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set check-ca-chain {enable disable}</code>	Enable (by default) or disable certificate verification failure if any of the CAs in the trust chain are not found in the CA store. When disabled, a sub-CA is sufficient to pass certificate verification.

```

config vpn certificate setting
    set ocsdp-status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable receiving certificates using the OCSP.
    set ssl-ocsp-status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable SSL OCSP.
    set ssl-ocsp-option {certificate | server} Specify whether the OCSP URL is from the certificate or the default OCSP server.
        certificate    Use URL from certificate.
        server         Use URL from default OCSP server.
    set ocsdp-default-server {string}      Default OCSP server. size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.ocsdp-server.name
    set check-ca-cert {enable | disable}    Enable/disable verification of the user certificate and pass authentication if any CA in the chain is trusted (default = enable).
    set check-ca-chain {enable | disable}    Enable/disable verification of the entire certificate chain and pass authentication only if the chain is complete and all of the CAs in the chain are trusted (default = disable).
    set subject-match {substring | value}    When searching for a matching certificate, control how to find matches in the certificate subject name.
        substring      Find a match if any string in the certificate subject name matches the name being searched for.
        value           Find a match if any attribute value string in a certificate subject name is an exact match with the name being searched for.
    set cn-match {substring | value}         When searching for a matching certificate, control how to find matches in the cn attribute of the certificate subject name.
        substring      Find a match if any string in a certificate subject name cn attribute name matches the name being searched for.
        value           Find a match if the cn attribute value string is an exact match with the name being searched for.
    set strict-crl-check {enable | disable}  Enable/disable strict mode CRL checking.
    set strict-ocsp-check {enable | disable} Enable/disable strict mode OCSP checking.
    set ssl-min-protoversion {option}        Minimum supported protocol version for SSL/TLS connections (default is to follow system global setting).
        default        Follow system global setting.
        SSLv3          SSLv3.
        TLSv1          TLSv1.
        TLSv1-1        TLSv1.1.
        TLSv1-2        TLSv1.2.
    set cmp-save-extra-certs {enable | disable} Enable/disable saving extra certificates in CMP mode.

```

```
    set cmp-key-usage-checking {enable | disable}    Enable/disable server certificate key usage checking in CMP mode
(default = enable).
    set certname-rsa1024 {string}    1024 bit RSA key certificate for re-signing server certificates for SSL inspection.
size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.local.name
    set certname-rsa2048 {string}    2048 bit RSA key certificate for re-signing server certificates for SSL inspection.
size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.local.name
    set certname-dsa1024 {string}    1024 bit DSA key certificate for re-signing server certificates for SSL inspection.
size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.local.name
    set certname-dsa2048 {string}    2048 bit DSA key certificate for re-signing server certificates for SSL inspection.
size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.local.name
    set certname-ecdsa256 {string}    256 bit ECDSA key certificate for re-signing server certificates for SSL inspection.
size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.local.name
    set certname-ecdsa384 {string}    384 bit ECDSA key certificate for re-signing server certificates for SSL inspection.
size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.local.name
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

ocsp-status {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) receiving the certificates using the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP), an Internet protocol used for obtaining the revocation status of an X.509 digital certificate.

For more information about OCSP, see [RFC 6960](#).

ssl-ocsp-status {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the FortiGate as the client responsible for performing security checks, that otherwise the web browser would be performing.

Only enable this when you know the server certificate is presented by a trusted CA and when you know the web server uses a sufficiently strong encryption.

ssl-ocsp-option {certificate | server}

Use either the OCSP URL from the certificate or from the default OCSP server (set by default).

ocsp-default-server <server>

The OCSP server to be used by default. This is one of the servers defined in `config vpn certificate ocsp-server`.

check-ca-cert {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) to check the CA certificate and fail the authentication if the certificate is not found.

strict-crl-check {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) strict mode certificate revocation list (CRL) checking. If strict checking is *not* enabled and a certificate is found to be on a CRL list, the certificate can be used, but a warning log message is written. If strict checking is enabled then all authentication actions that use this certificate fail in addition to the warning message being written.

strict-ocsp-check {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) strict mode OCSP checking. If strict checking is *not* enabled and an OCSP server responds with `cert status unknown`, the certificate can be used, but a warning log message is written. If strict checking is enabled then all authentication actions that use this certificate fail in addition to the warning message being written.

ssl-min-proto-version {default | SSLv3 | TLSv1 | TLSv1-1 | TLSv1-2}

Set the minimum SSL version that can be used for SSL/TLS-protected OCSP sessions.

The default value is `default` which means to follow the global minimum set by the `ssl-min-proto-version` option of the `config system global` command.

vpn ipsec concentrator

In a hub-and-spoke network, policy-based VPN connections to a number of remote peers radiate from a single, central FortiGate unit, or "hub". The hub functions as a concentrator on the network, managing all VPN connections between the peers, or "spokes". VPN traffic passes from one tunnel to the other through the hub. Add IPsec policy-based VPN tunnels to a VPN concentrator, allowing VPN traffic to pass from one tunnel to the other through the FortiGate unit.

Note: VPN concentrators are only available in NAT mode.

```

config vpn ipsec concentrator
    edit {name}
        # Concentrator configuration.
        set name {string}    Concentrator name. size[35]
        set src-check {disable | enable}    Enable to check source address of phase 2 selector. Disable to check only the
destination selector.
        config member
            edit {name}
                # Names of up to 3 VPN tunnels to add to the concentrator.
                set name {string}    Member name. size[64] - datasource(s): vpn.ipsec.-
manualkey.name, vpn.ipsec.phase1.name
            next
        next
    end

```

src-check {enable | disable}

Enable to check the source address of the phase 2 selector when locating the best matching phase 2 in a concentrator. Disable (by default) to check only the destination selector.

member <name> [name] [name]

Enter the names of up to three VPN tunnels to add to the concentrator, each separated by a space. Members can be tunnels defined in `vpn ipsec phase1` or `vpn ipsec manualkey`.

vpn ipsec forticlient

Configure automatic VPN connection for FortiClient users. FortiClient users who wish to use automatic VPN configuration must be members of a user group. The command below creates a realm that associates the user group with phase 2 VPN configurations.

```

config vpn ipsec forticlient
    edit {realm}
        # Configure FortiClient policy realm.
        set realm {string}    FortiClient realm name. size[35]
        set usergroupname {string}    User group name for FortiClient users. size[35] - datasource(s): user.group.name
        set phase2name {string}    Phase 2 tunnel name that you defined in the FortiClient dialup configuration. size[35]
- datasource(s): vpn.ipsec.phase2.name, vpn.ipsec.phase2-interface.name
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable this FortiClient configuration.
    end

```



```
    next
end
```

usergroupname <name>

Enter the name of a pre-existing user group created for dialup clients.

phase2name <name>

Enter the name of the pre-existing phase 2 tunnel configuration defined for the dialup-client configuration.

status {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable IPsec VPN policy distribution.

vpn ipsec {manualkey-interface | manualkey}

Use `manualkey-interface` to configure manual keys for a route-based (interface mode) IPsec VPN tunnel. Creating a route-based tunnel automatically creates a virtual IPsec interface on the FortiGate unit. This interface can be modified afterward using the system network interface command, however this command is only available in NAT mode.

You can also use `manualkey` to configure manual keys for IPsec tunnel-mode VPN tunnels that connect a FortiGate unit and a remote client or gateway that is also using manual key. Because the keys are created when you configure the tunnel, no negotiation is required for the VPN tunnel to start. However, the remote client or gateway must use the same encryption and authentication algorithms and keys.

Note: To avoid confusion, the various similar authentication and encryption entries vary in availability, depending on which command is used. Among others, the following authentication/encryption entries are *not* available under the `manualkey` command:

- `auth-alg`
- `enc-alg`
- `auth-key`
- `enc-key`
- `local-spi`
- `remote-spi`

```
config vpn ipsec manualkey-interface
    edit {name}
```

```

# Configure IPsec manual keys.
set name {string}    IPsec tunnel name. size[15]
set interface {string}  Name of the physical, aggregate, or VLAN interface. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
set ip-version {4 | 6}  IP version to use for VPN interface.
    4 Use IPv4 addressing for gateways.
    6 Use IPv6 addressing for gateways.
set addr-type {4 | 6}  IP version to use for IP packets.
    4 Use IPv4 addressing for IP packets.
    6 Use IPv6 addressing for IP packets.
set remote-gw {ipv4 address}  IPv4 address of the remote gateway's external interface.
set remote-gw6 {ipv6 address}  Remote IPv6 address of VPN gateway.
set local-gw {ipv4 address any}  IPv4 address of the local gateway's external interface.
set local-gw6 {ipv6 address}  Local IPv6 address of VPN gateway.
set auth-alg {option}  Authentication algorithm. Must be the same for both ends of the tunnel.
    null    null
    md5     md5
    sha1    sha1
    sha256  sha256
    sha384  sha384
    sha512  sha512
set enc-alg {option}  Encryption algorithm. Must be the same for both ends of the tunnel.
    null    null
    des     des
    3des    3des
    aes128  aes128
    aes192  aes192
    aes256  aes256
    arial28 arial28
    arial92 arial92
    aria256 aria256
    seed    seed
set auth-key {string}  Hexadecimal authentication key in 16-digit (8-byte) segments separated by hyphens.
set enc-key {string}  Hexadecimal encryption key in 16-digit (8-byte) segments separated by hyphens.
set local-spi {string}  Local SPI, a hexadecimal 8-digit (4-byte) tag. Discerns between two traffic streams
with different encryption rules.
set remote-spi {string}  Remote SPI, a hexadecimal 8-digit (4-byte) tag. Discerns between two traffic streams
with different encryption rules.
set npu-offload {enable | disable}  Enable/disable offloading IPsec VPN manual key sessions to NPUs.
next

```

```
end

config vpn ipsec manualkey
    edit {name}
        # Configure IPsec manual keys.
        set name {string}    IPsec tunnel name. size[35]
        set interface {string}    Name of the physical, aggregate, or VLAN interface. size[15] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name
        set remote-gw {ipv4 address}    Peer gateway.
        set local-gw {ipv4 address any}    Local gateway.
        set authentication {option}    Authentication algorithm. Must be the same for both ends of the tunnel.
            null    Null.
            md5    MD5.
            sha1    SHA1.
            sha256    SHA256.
            sha384    SHA384.
            sha512    SHA512.
        set encryption {option}    Encryption algorithm. Must be the same for both ends of the tunnel.
            null    Null.
            des    DES.
            3des    3DES.
            aes128    AES128.
            aes192    AES192.
            aes256    AES256.
            arial28    ARIA128.
            arial92    ARIA192.
            aria256    ARIA256.
            seed    Seed.
        set authkey {string}    Hexadecimal authentication key in 16-digit (8-byte) segments separated by hyphens.
        set enckey {string}    Hexadecimal encryption key in 16-digit (8-byte) segments separated by hyphens.
        set localspi {string}    Local SPI, a hexadecimal 8-digit (4-byte) tag. Discerns between two traffic streams with
different encryption rules.
        set remotespi {string}    Remote SPI, a hexadecimal 8-digit (4-byte) tag. Discerns between two traffic streams
with different encryption rules.
        set npu-offload {enable | disable}    Enable/disable NPU offloading.
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

interface <name>

The name of the physical, aggregate, or VLAN interface to which the IPsec tunnel will be bound.

ip-version {4 | 6}

Enter 4 (by default) for IPv4 or 6 for IPv6 encapsulation for gateways.

addr-type {4 | 6}

Enter 4 (by default) for IPv4 or 6 for IPv6 encapsulation for IP packets.

remote-gw <ip-addr>

The IP address of the remote gateway's external interface.

local-gw [sec-ip-addr]

An optional secondary IP address of the interface selected in the `interface` entry used for the local end of the VPN tunnel.

auth-alg <algorithm>

Enter one of the following authentication algorithms:

- `null`
- `md5`: Message Digest (MD) 5, the hash algorithm developed by RSA Data Security.
- `sha1`: Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA) 1 producing a 160-bit message digest.
- `sha256`: SHA 2 producing a 256-bit message digest.
- `sha384`: SHA 2 producing a 384-bit message digest.
- `sha512`: SHA 2 producing a 512-bit message digest.

Make sure to use the same algorithm at both ends of the tunnel.

Note: The `auth-alg` and `enc-alg` entries cannot both be `null`.

`enc-alg <algorithm>`

Enter one of the following encryption algorithms:

- `null`
- `des`: Digital Encryption Standard (DES), a 64-bit block algorithm that uses a 56-bit key.
- `3des`: Triple-DES, in which plain text is encrypted three times by three keys.
- `aes128`: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.
- `aes192`: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.
- `aes256`: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.
- `aria128`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.
- `aris192`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.
- `aria256`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.
- `seed`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.

The ARIA algorithm may not be available on some FortiGate models. Make sure to use the same algorithm at both ends of the tunnel.

Note: The `auth-alg` and `enc-alg` entries cannot both be `null`.

`auth-key <key>`

Note: This entry is only available when `auth-alg` is set to either `md5`, `sha1`, or `sha256`. The authentication key in 16-digit (8-byte) segments separated by hyphens. For an MD5 key, enter a 32-digit (16-byte) hexadecimal number: eg: 0102030405060708-090a0b0c0d0e0f10

- For a SHA1 key, enter a 40-digit (20-byte) hexadecimal number. The final segment is only 8-digits (4-bytes).
- For a SHA256 key, enter a 64-digit (32-byte) hexadecimal number.

Digits can range between 0-9 and a-f. Make sure to use the same key at both ends of the tunnel.

`enc-key <key>`

Note: This entry is only available when `enc-alg` is set to either `des`, `3des`, `aes128`, `aes192`, or `aes256`. The encryption key in 16-digit (8-byte) segments separated by hyphens.

- For a DES key, enter a 16-digit (8-byte) hexadecimal number.
- For a 3DES key, enter a 48-digit (24-byte) hexadecimal number.

- For an AES128 key, enter a 32-digit (16-byte) hexadecimal number.
- For an AES192 key, enter a 48-digit (24-byte) hexadecimal number.
- For an AES256 key, enter a 64-digit (32-byte) hexadecimal number.

Digits can range between 0-9 and a-f. Make sure to use the same key at both ends of the tunnel.

local-spi <hex-number>

The local Security Parameter Index (SPI), a tag that helps the kernel discern between two traffic streams where different encryption rules and algorithms may be in use. Enter an 8-digit (4-byte) hexadecimal number in the range of 100 to FFFFFFFF. This number must be added to the remote SPI at the opposite end of the tunnel.

remote-spi <hex-number>

The remote SPI. Enter an 8-digit (4-byte) hexadecimal number in the range of 100 to FFFFFFFF. This number must be added to the local SPI at the opposite end of the tunnel.

authentication <algorithm>

Enter one of the following authentication algorithms:

- `null`
- `md5`: Message Digest (MD) 5, the hash algorithm developed by RSA Data Security.
- `sha1`: Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA) 1 producing a 160-bit message digest.
- `sha256`: SHA 2 producing a 256-bit message digest.
- `sha384`: SHA 2 producing a 384-bit message digest.
- `sha512`: SHA 2 producing a 512-bit message digest.

Make sure to use the same algorithm at both ends of the tunnel.

Note: The `authentication` and `encryption` entries cannot both be `null`.

encryption <algorithm>

Enter one of the following encryption algorithms:

- `null`
- `des`: Digital Encryption Standard (DES), a 64-bit block algorithm that uses a 56-bit key.

- `3des`: Triple-DES, in which plain text is encrypted three times by three keys.
- `aes128`: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.
- `aes192`: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.
- `aes256`: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.
- `aria128`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.
- `aris192`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.
- `aria256`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.
- `seed`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.

The ARIA and seed algorithms may not be available on some FortiGate models. Make sure to use the same algorithm at both ends of the tunnel.

Note: The `authentication` and `encryption` entries cannot both be null.

authkey <key>

Note: This entry is only available when `authentication` is set to either `md5`, `sha1`, or `sha256`. The authentication key in 16-digit (8-byte) segments separated by hyphens. For an MD5 key, enter a 32-digit (16-byte) hexadecimal number: eg: 0102030405060708-090a0b0c0d0e0f10

- For a SHA1 key, enter a 40-digit (20-byte) hexadecimal number. The final segment is only 8-digits (4-bytes).
- For a SHA256 key, enter a 64-digit (32-byte) hexadecimal number.

Digits can range between 0-9 and a-f. Make sure to use the same key at both ends of the tunnel.

enckey <key>

Note: This entry is only available when `encryption` is set to either `des`, `3des`, `aes128`, `aes192`, or `aes256`. The encryption key in 16-digit (8-byte) segments separated by hyphens.

- For a DES key, enter a 16-digit (8-byte) hexadecimal number.
- For a 3DES key, enter a 48-digit (24-byte) hexadecimal number.
- For an AES128 key, enter a 32-digit (16-byte) hexadecimal number.
- For an AES192 key, enter a 48-digit (24-byte) hexadecimal number.
- For an AES256 key, enter a 64-digit (32-byte) hexadecimal number.

Digits can range between 0-9 and a-f. Make sure to use the same key at both ends of the tunnel.

localspi <hex-number>

The local Security Parameter Index (SPI), a tag that helps the kernel discern between two traffic streams where different encryption rules and algorithms may be in use. Enter an 8-digit (4-byte) hexadecimal number in the range of 100 to FFFFFFFF. This number must be added to the remote SPI at the opposite end of the tunnel.

remotespi <hex-number>

The remote SPI. Enter an 8-digit (4-byte) hexadecimal number in the range of 100 to FFFFFFFF. This number must be added to the local SPI at the opposite end of the tunnel.

npu-offload {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable offloading of VPN session to a network processing unit (NPU).

vpn ipsec {phase1-interface | phase1}

Use `phase1-interface` to define a phase 1 definition for a route-based (interface mode) IPsec VPN tunnel that generates authentication and encryption keys automatically. Optionally, you can create a route-based phase 1 definition to act as a backup for another IPsec interface; this is achieved with the `set monitor <phase1>` entry below.

You can also use `phase1` to add or edit IPsec tunnel-mode phase 1 configurations, which define how the FortiGate unit and a remote VPN peer (gateway or client) authenticate themselves to each other as part of establishing the IPsec VPN tunnel.

Note: Some entries are *not* available under the `phase1` command, including the following:

- `ip-version`
- `local-gw6`
- `remote-gw6`
- `monitor` (and all other monitor related entries)
- `add-gw-route`
- `auto-discovery-sender` (and all other auto discovery related entries)
- `encapsulation` (and all other encapsulation related entries)
- `childless-ike`

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<code>set cert-id-validation {enable disable}</code>	Enable (by default) or disable cross validation of peer ID and the identity in the peer's certificate as specified in RFC 4945 . Note that this entry is only available when <code>authmethod</code> is set to <code>signature</code> .

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>set proposal {aes128gcm-prfsha1 aes128gcm-prfsha256 aes128gcm-prfsha384 aes128gcm-prfsha512 aes256gcm-prfsha1 aes256gcm-prfsha256 aes256gcm-prfsha384 aes256gcm-prfsha512 chacha20poly1305-prfsha1 chacha20poly1305-prfsha256 chacha20poly1305-prfsha384 chacha20poly1305-prfsha512 ...}</code>	Authenticated encryption with associated data (AEAD) algorithms (aesgcm and chachapoly) are now supported. Note that these algorithms are only available when <code>ike-version</code> is set to 2. In addition, changed the initial proposal list when new phase1s are created, with different proposals set by default depending whether <code>ike-version</code> is set to either 1 or 2.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set net-device {enable disable}</code> <code>set tunnel-search {selectors nexthop}</code>	FortiOS 6.0 now supports changing the <code>net-device</code> and <code>tunnel-search</code> configuration after creating a phase 1 configuration.
<code>set dhgrp {31 ...}</code>	FortiOS uses OpenSSL 1.1, which now supports Curve25519, granting support for DH group 31.
<code>set dpd-retryinterval <seconds></code>	When <code>type</code> is set to <code>dynamic</code> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>dpd</code> is set to <code>on-idle</code> <code>dpd-retrycount</code> is set to 3

Command	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>dpd-retryinterval</code> is set to 60 <p>When <code>type</code> is set to anything other than <code>dynamic</code>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>dpd</code> is set to <code>on-idle</code> • <code>dpd-retrycount</code> is set to 3 • <code>dpd-retryinterval</code> is set to 60 <p>In addition, the maximum-range has been changed to 3600 seconds, and can no longer be set to both seconds and milliseconds.</p>
<pre>set ppk {disable allow require} set ppk-secret <ascii-string-or-hex> set ppk-identity <string></pre>	<p>Post-quantum Preshared Key (PPK) options for IKEv2.</p> <p>Even if a quantum computer can break the Diffie-Hellman calculation to derive the DH-generated secret key, the inclusion of the PPK in the key generation algorithm means that the attacker is still unable to derive the keys used to authenticate the IKE SA negotiation (and so cannot impersonate either party in the negotiation), nor the keys used in negotiating an IPsec SA (or IKE SA).</p> <p>Note that this option is only available when <code>ike-version</code> is set to 2 and <code>type</code> is set to <code>dynamic</code>.</p>
<pre>set ipv4-split-exclude {all none address} set ipv6-split-exclude {all none address}</pre>	<p>Specify, when using IKEv1, that default traffic flows over the IPsec tunnel except for specified subnets. This is the opposite of the supported <code>split-include</code> feature which allows the administrator to specify that default traffic should not flow over the IPsec tunnel except for specified subnets.</p> <p>Note that the <code>split-exclude</code> options are only available when <code>ike-version</code> is set to 1, <code>type</code> is set to <code>dynamic</code>, and <code>mode-cfg</code> is set to <code>enable</code>.</p>

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit {name}
# Configure VPN remote gateway.
set name {string}    IPsec remote gateway name. size[15]
set type {static | dynamic | ddns}    Remote gateway type.
    static    Remote VPN gateway has fixed IP address.
    dynamic    Remote VPN gateway has dynamic IP address.
    ddns    Remote gateway has dynamic IP address and is a dynamic DNS client.
set interface {string}    Local physical, aggregate, or VLAN outgoing interface. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name
```

```

set ip-version {4 | 6}    IP version to use for VPN interface.
    4    Use IPv4 addressing for gateways.
    6    Use IPv6 addressing for gateways.
set ike-version {1 | 2}    IKE protocol version.
    1    Use IKEv1 protocol.
    2    Use IKEv2 protocol.
set local-gw {ipv4 address} IPv4 address of the local gateway's external interface.
set local-gw6 {ipv6 address} IPv6 address of the local gateway's external interface.
set remote-gw {ipv4 address} IPv4 address of the remote gateway's external interface.
set remote-gw6 {ipv6 address} IPv6 address of the remote gateway's external interface.
set remotegw-ddns {string} Domain name of remote gateway (eg. name.DDNS.com). size[63]
set keylife {integer} Time to wait in seconds before phase 1 encryption key expires. range[120-172800]
config certificate
    edit {name}
        # The names of up to 4 signed personal certificates.
        set name {string} Certificate name. size[64] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.local.name
    next
set authmethod {psk | signature} Authentication method.
    psk        PSK authentication method.
    signature   Signature authentication method.
set authmethod-remote {psk | signature} Authentication method (remote side).
    psk        PSK authentication method.
    signature   Signature authentication method.
set mode {aggressive | main} The ID protection mode used to establish a secure channel.
    aggressive Aggressive mode.
    main        Main mode.
set peertype {option} Accept this peer type.
    any         Accept any peer ID.
    one         Accept this peer ID.
    dialup      Accept peer ID in dialup group.
    peer        Accept this peer certificate.
    peergrp     Accept this peer certificate group.
set peerid {string} Accept this peer identity. size[255]
set default-gw {ipv4 address} IPv4 address of default route gateway to use for traffic exiting the interface.
set default-gw-priority {integer} Priority for default gateway route. A higher priority number signifies a
less preferred route. range[0-4294967295]
set usrgrp {string} User group name for dialup peers. size[35] - datasource(s): user.group.name
set peer {string} Accept this peer certificate. size[35] - datasource(s): user.peer.name
set peergrp {string} Accept this peer certificate group. size[35] - datasource(s): user.peergrp.name
set monitor {string} IPsec interface as backup for primary interface. size[35] - datasource(s):

```

```

vpn.ipsec.phase1-interface.name
    set monitor-hold-down-type {immediate | delay | time}    Recovery time method when primary interface re-establishes.
        immediate    Fail back immediately after primary recovers.
        delay        Number of seconds to delay fail back after primary recovers.
        time         Specify a time at which to fail back after primary recovers.
    set monitor-hold-down-delay {integer}    Time to wait in seconds before recovery once primary re-establishes.
range[0-31536000]
    set monitor-hold-down-weekday {option}    Day of the week to recover once primary re-establishes.
        everyday    Every Day.
        sunday      Sunday.
        monday      Monday.
        tuesday     Tuesday.
        wednesday   Wednesday.
        thursday    Thursday.
        friday      Friday.
        saturday    Saturday.
    set monitor-hold-down-time {string}    Time of day at which to fail back to primary after it re-establishes.
    set net-device {enable | disable}    Enable/disable kernel device creation for dialup instances.
    set tunnel-search {selectors | nexthop}    Tunnel search method for when the interface is shared.
        selectors    Search for tunnel in selectors.
        nexthop      Search for tunnel using nexthop.
    set passive-mode {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPsec passive mode for static tunnels.
    set exchange-interface-ip {enable | disable}    Enable/disable exchange of IPsec interface IP address.
    set exchange-ip-addr4 {ipv4 address}    IPv4 address to exchange with peers.
    set exchange-ip-addr6 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 address to exchange with peers
    set mode-cfg {disable | enable}    Enable/disable configuration method.
    set assign-ip {disable | enable}    Enable/disable assignment of IP to IPsec interface via configuration method.
    set assign-ip-from {range | usrggrp | dhcp | name}    Method by which the IP address will be assigned.
        range    Assign IP address from locally defined range.
        usrggrp  Assign IP address via user group.
        dhcp     Assign IP address via DHCP.
        name     Assign IP address from firewall address or group.
    set ipv4-start-ip {ipv4 address}    Start of IPv4 range.
    set ipv4-end-ip {ipv4 address}    End of IPv4 range.
    set ipv4-netmask {ipv4 netmask}    IPv4 Netmask.
    set dns-mode {manual | auto}    DNS server mode.
        manual    Manually configure DNS servers.
        auto      Use default DNS servers.
    set ipv4-dns-server1 {ipv4 address}    IPv4 DNS server 1.

```

```
set ipv4-dns-server2 {ipv4 address}    IPv4 DNS server 2.
set ipv4-dns-server3 {ipv4 address}    IPv4 DNS server 3.
set ipv4-wins-server1 {ipv4 address}    WINS server 1.
set ipv4-wins-server2 {ipv4 address}    WINS server 2.
config ipv4-exclude-range
    edit {id}
    # Configuration Method IPv4 exclude ranges.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set start-ip {ipv4 address}    Start of IPv4 exclusive range.
    set end-ip {ipv4 address}    End of IPv4 exclusive range.
    next
    set ipv4-split-include {string}    IPv4 split-include subnets. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    set split-include-service {string}    Split-include services. size[63] - datasource(s):
firewall.service.group.name,firewall.service.custom.name
    set ipv4-name {string}    IPv4 address name. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    set ipv6-start-ip {ipv6 address}    Start of IPv6 range.
    set ipv6-end-ip {ipv6 address}    End of IPv6 range.
    set ipv6-prefix {integer}    IPv6 prefix. range[1-128]
    set ipv6-dns-server1 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 DNS server 1.
    set ipv6-dns-server2 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 DNS server 2.
    set ipv6-dns-server3 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 DNS server 3.
    config ipv6-exclude-range
    edit {id}
    # Configuration method IPv6 exclude ranges.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set start-ip {ipv6 address}    Start of IPv6 exclusive range.
    set end-ip {ipv6 address}    End of IPv6 exclusive range.
    next
    set ipv6-split-include {string}    IPv6 split-include subnets. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    set ipv6-name {string}    IPv6 address name. size[63] - datasource(s):
firewall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    set unity-support {disable | enable}    Enable/disable support for Cisco UNITY Configuration Method extensions.
    set domain {string}    Instruct unity clients about the default DNS domain. size[63]
    set banner {string}    Message that unity client should display after connecting. size[1024]
    set include-local-lan {disable | enable}    Enable/disable allow local LAN access on unity clients.
    set ipv4-split-exclude {string}    IPv4 subnets that should not be sent over the IPsec tunnel. size[63] - data-
source(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
```

```

    set ipv6-split-exclude {string}    IPv6 subnets that should not be sent over the IPsec tunnel. size[63] - data-
source(s): firewall.address6.name, firewall.addrgrp6.name
    set save-password {disable | enable}    Enable/disable saving XAuth username and password on VPN clients.
    set client-auto-negotiate {disable | enable}    Enable/disable allowing the VPN client to bring up the tunnel
when there is no traffic.
    set client-keep-alive {disable | enable}    Enable/disable allowing the VPN client to keep the tunnel up when
there is no traffic.
    config backup-gateway
        edit {address}
            # Instruct unity clients about the backup gateway address(es).
            set address {string}    Address of backup gateway. size[64]
        next
    set proposal {option}    Phase1 proposal.
        des-md5                des-md5
        des-sha1                des-sha1
        des-sha256              des-sha256
        des-sha384              des-sha384
        des-sha512              des-sha512
        3des-md5                3des-md5
        3des-sha1                3des-sha1
        3des-sha256              3des-sha256
        3des-sha384              3des-sha384
        3des-sha512              3des-sha512
        aes128-md5              aes128-md5
        aes128-sha1              aes128-sha1
        aes128-sha256            aes128-sha256
        aes128-sha384            aes128-sha384
        aes128-sha512            aes128-sha512
        aes128gcm-prfsha1        aes128gcm-prfsha1
        aes128gcm-prfsha256        aes128gcm-prfsha256
        aes128gcm-prfsha384        aes128gcm-prfsha384
        aes128gcm-prfsha512        aes128gcm-prfsha512
        aes192-md5                aes192-md5
        aes192-sha1                aes192-sha1
        aes192-sha256            aes192-sha256
        aes192-sha384            aes192-sha384
        aes192-sha512            aes192-sha512
        aes256-md5                aes256-md5
        aes256-sha1                aes256-sha1
        aes256-sha256            aes256-sha256

```

aes256-sha384	aes256-sha384
aes256-sha512	aes256-sha512
aes256gcm-prfsha1	aes256gcm-prfsha1
aes256gcm-prfsha256	aes256gcm-prfsha256
aes256gcm-prfsha384	aes256gcm-prfsha384
aes256gcm-prfsha512	aes256gcm-prfsha512
chacha20poly1305-prfsha1	chacha20poly1305-prfsha1
chacha20poly1305-prfsha256	chacha20poly1305-prfsha256
chacha20poly1305-prfsha384	chacha20poly1305-prfsha384
chacha20poly1305-prfsha512	chacha20poly1305-prfsha512
aria128-md5	aria128-md5
aria128-sha1	aria128-sha1
aria128-sha256	aria128-sha256
aria128-sha384	aria128-sha384
aria128-sha512	aria128-sha512
aria192-md5	aria192-md5
aria192-sha1	aria192-sha1
aria192-sha256	aria192-sha256
aria192-sha384	aria192-sha384
aria192-sha512	aria192-sha512
aria256-md5	aria256-md5
aria256-sha1	aria256-sha1
aria256-sha256	aria256-sha256
aria256-sha384	aria256-sha384
aria256-sha512	aria256-sha512
seed-md5	seed-md5
seed-sha1	seed-sha1
seed-sha256	seed-sha256
seed-sha384	seed-sha384
seed-sha512	seed-sha512
set add-route {disable enable}	Enable/disable control addition of a route to peer destination selector.
set add-gw-route {enable disable}	Enable/disable automatically add a route to the remote gateway.
set psksecret {password_string}	Pre-shared secret for PSK authentication (ASCII string or hexadecimal encoded with a leading 0x).
set psksecret-remote {password_string}	Pre-shared secret for remote side PSK authentication (ASCII string or hexadecimal encoded with a leading 0x).
set keepalive {integer}	NAT-T keep alive interval. range[10-900]
set distance {integer}	Distance for routes added by IKE (1 - 255). range[1-255]
set priority {integer}	Priority for routes added by IKE (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295]
set localid {string}	Local ID. size[63]

```
set localid-type {option}    Local ID type.
    auto        Select ID type automatically.
    fqdn        Use fully qualified domain name.
    user-fqdn   Use user fully qualified domain name.
    keyid       Use key-id string.
    address     Use local IP address.
    asn1dn      Use ASN.1 distinguished name.
set auto-negotiate {enable | disable}  Enable/disable automatic initiation of IKE SA negotiation.
set negotiate-timeout {integer}        IKE SA negotiation timeout in seconds (1 - 300). range[1-300]
set fragmentation {enable | disable}    Enable/disable fragment IKE message on re-transmission.
set dpd {disable | on-idle | on-demand}  Dead Peer Detection mode.
    disable    Disable Dead Peer Detection.
    on-idle    Trigger Dead Peer Detection when IPsec is idle.
    on-demand  Trigger Dead Peer Detection when IPsec traffic is sent but no reply is received from the
peer.
set dpd-retrycount {integer}    Number of DPD retry attempts. range[0-10]
set dpd-retryinterval {string}  DPD retry interval.
set forticlient-enforcement {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiClient enforcement.
set comments {string}          Comment. size[255]
set npu-offload {enable | disable}  Enable/disable offloading NPU.
set send-cert-chain {enable | disable}  Enable/disable sending certificate chain.
set dhgrp {option}    DH group.
    1    DH Group 1.
    2    DH Group 2.
    5    DH Group 5.
    14   DH Group 14.
    15   DH Group 15.
    16   DH Group 16.
    17   DH Group 17.
    18   DH Group 18.
    19   DH Group 19.
    20   DH Group 20.
    21   DH Group 21.
    27   DH Group 27.
    28   DH Group 28.
    29   DH Group 29.
    30   DH Group 30.
    31   DH Group 31.
set suite-b {disable | suite-b-gcm-128 | suite-b-gcm-256}  Use Suite-B.
    disable          Do not use UI suite.
```



```

    suite-b-gcm-128 Use Suite-B-GCM-128.
    suite-b-gcm-256 Use Suite-B-GCM-256.
set eap {enable | disable} Enable/disable IKEv2 EAP authentication.
set eap-identity {use-id-payload | send-request} IKEv2 EAP peer identity type.
    use-id-payload Use IKEv2 IDi payload to resolve peer identity.
    send-request Use EAP identity request to resolve peer identity.
set acct-verify {enable | disable} Enable/disable verification of RADIUS accounting record.
set ppk {disable | allow | require} Enable/disable IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key (PPK).
    disable Disable use of IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key (PPK).
    allow Allow, but do not require, use of IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key (PPK).
    require Require use of IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key (PPK).
set ppk-secret {password_string} IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key (ASCII string or hexadecimal encoded with a
leading 0x).
set ppk-identity {string} IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key Identity. size[35]
set wizard-type {option} GUI VPN Wizard Type.
    custom Custom VPN configuration.
    dialup-forticlient Dial Up - FortiClient Windows, Mac and Android.
    dialup-ios Dial Up - iPhone / iPad Native IPsec Client.
    dialup-android Dial Up - Android Native IPsec Client.
    dialup-windows Dial Up - Windows Native IPsec Client.
    dialup-cisco Dial Up - Cisco IPsec Client.
    static-fortigate Site to Site - FortiGate.
    dialup-fortigate Dial Up - FortiGate.
    static-cisco Site to Site - Cisco.
    dialup-cisco-fw Dialup Up - Cisco Firewall.
set xauthtype {option} XAuth type.
    disable Disable.
    client Enable as client.
    pap Enable as server PAP.
    chap Enable as server CHAP.
    auto Enable as server auto.
set reauth {disable | enable} Enable/disable re-authentication upon IKE SA lifetime expiration.
set authusr {string} XAuth user name. size[64]
set authpasswd {password_string} XAuth password (max 35 characters). size[128]
set group-authentication {enable | disable} Enable/disable IKEv2 IDi group authentication.
set group-authentication-secret {password_string} Password for IKEv2 IDi group authentication. (ASCII string
or hexadecimal indicated by a leading 0x.)
set authusrgrp {string} Authentication user group. size[35] - datasource(s): user.group.name
set mesh-selector-type {disable | subnet | host} Add selectors containing subsets of the configuration depend-
ing on traffic.

```

```

        disable Disable.
        subnet Enable addition of matching subnet selector.
        host Enable addition of host to host selector.
set idle-timeout {enable | disable} Enable/disable IPsec tunnel idle timeout.
set idle-timeoutinterval {integer} IPsec tunnel idle timeout in minutes (5 - 43200). range[5-43200]
set ha-sync-esp-seqno {enable | disable} Enable/disable sequence number jump ahead for IPsec HA.
set auto-discovery-sender {enable | disable} Enable/disable sending auto-discovery short-cut messages.
set auto-discovery-receiver {enable | disable} Enable/disable accepting auto-discovery short-cut messages.
set auto-discovery-forwarder {enable | disable} Enable/disable forwarding auto-discovery short-cut messages.
set auto-discovery-psk {enable | disable} Enable/disable use of pre-shared secrets for authentication of auto-
discovery tunnels.
set encapsulation {none | gre | vxlan} Enable/disable GRE/VXLAN encapsulation.
    none No additional encapsulation.
    gre GRE encapsulation.
    vxlan VXLAN encapsulation.
set encapsulation-address {ike | ipv4 | ipv6} Source for GRE/VXLAN tunnel address.
    ike Use IKE/IPsec gateway addresses.
    ipv4 Specify separate GRE/VXLAN tunnel address.
    ipv6 Specify separate GRE/VXLAN tunnel address.
set encap-local-gw4 {ipv4 address} Local IPv4 address of GRE/VXLAN tunnel.
set encap-local-gw6 {ipv6 address} Local IPv6 address of GRE/VXLAN tunnel.
set encap-remote-gw4 {ipv4 address} Remote IPv4 address of GRE/VXLAN tunnel.
set encap-remote-gw6 {ipv6 address} Remote IPv6 address of GRE/VXLAN tunnel.
set vni {integer} VNI of VXLAN tunnel. range[1-16777215]
set nattraversal {enable | disable | forced} Enable/disable NAT traversal.
set esn {require | allow | disable} Extended sequence number (ESN) negotiation.
    require Require extended sequence number.
    allow Allow extended sequence number.
    disable Disable extended sequence number.
set fragmentation-mtu {integer} IKE fragmentation MTU (500 - 16000). range[500-16000]
set childless-ike {enable | disable} Enable/disable childless IKEv2 initiation (RFC 6023).
set rekey {enable | disable} Enable/disable phase1 rekey.
set digital-signature-auth {enable | disable} Enable/disable IKEv2 Digital Signature Authentication (RFC
7427).
set signature-hash-alg {sha1 | sha2-256 | sha2-384 | sha2-512} Digital Signature Authentication hash
algorithms.
    sha1 SHA1.
    sha2-256 SHA2-256.
    sha2-384 SHA2-384.
    sha2-512 SHA2-512.

```

```

    set rsa-signature-format {pkcs1 | pss}    Digital Signature Authentication RSA signature format.
        pkcs1    RSASSA PKCS#1 v1.5.
        pss      RSASSA Probabilistic Signature Scheme (PSS).
    set enforce-unique-id {disable | keep-new | keep-old}    Enable/disable peer ID uniqueness check.
        disable    Disable peer ID uniqueness enforcement.
        keep-new    Enforce peer ID uniqueness, keep new connection if collision found.
        keep-old    Enforce peer ID uniqueness, keep old connection if collision found.
    set cert-id-validation {enable | disable}    Enable/disable cross validation of peer ID and the identity in the
peer's certificate as specified in RFC 4945.
    next
end

config vpn ipsec phase1
    edit {name}
        # Configure VPN remote gateway.
        set name {string}    IPsec remote gateway name. size[35]
        set type {static | dynamic | ddns}    Remote gateway type.
            static    Remote VPN gateway has fixed IP address.
            dynamic    Remote VPN gateway has dynamic IP address.
            ddns      Remote VPN gateway has dynamic IP address and is a dynamic DNS client.
        set interface {string}    Local physical, aggregate, or VLAN outgoing interface. size[35] - datasource(s): sys-
tem.interface.name
        set ike-version {1 | 2}    IKE protocol version.
            1    Use IKEv1 protocol.
            2    Use IKEv2 protocol.
        set remote-gw {ipv4 address}    Remote VPN gateway.
        set local-gw {ipv4 address}    Local VPN gateway.
        set remotegw-ddns {string}    Domain name of remote gateway (eg. name.DDNS.com). size[63]
        set keylife {integer}    Time to wait in seconds before phase 1 encryption key expires. range[120-172800]
    config certificate
        edit {name}
            # Names of up to 4 signed personal certificates.
            set name {string}    Certificate name. size[64] - datasource(s): vpn.certificate.local.name
        next
    set authmethod {psk | signature}    Authentication method.
        psk        PSK authentication method.
        signature    Signature authentication method.
    set authmethod-remote {psk | signature}    Authentication method (remote side).
        psk        PSK authentication method.
        signature    Signature authentication method.
    set mode {aggressive | main}    ID protection mode used to establish a secure channel.

```

```

        aggressive Aggressive mode.
        main       Main mode.
set peertype {option}  Accept this peer type.
    any          Accept any peer ID.
    one          Accept this peer ID.
    dialup       Accept peer ID in dialup group.
    peer         Accept this peer certificate.
    peergrp      Accept this peer certificate group.
set peerid {string}    Accept this peer identity. size[255]
set usrgroup {string}  User group name for dialup peers. size[35] - datasource(s): user.group.name
set peer {string}      Accept this peer certificate. size[35] - datasource(s): user.peer.name
set peergrp {string}   Accept this peer certificate group. size[35] - datasource(s): user.peergrp.name
set mode-cfg {disable | enable}  Enable/disable configuration method.
set assign-ip {disable | enable}  Enable/disable assignment of IP to IPsec interface via configuration method.
set assign-ip-from {range | usrgroup | dhcp | name}  Method by which the IP address will be assigned.
    range      Assign IP address from locally defined range.
    usrgroup   Assign IP address via user group.
    dhcp       Assign IP address via DHCP.
    name       Assign IP address from firewall address or group.
set ipv4-start-ip {ipv4 address}  Start of IPv4 range.
set ipv4-end-ip {ipv4 address}    End of IPv4 range.
set ipv4-netmask {ipv4 netmask}   IPv4 Netmask.
set dns-mode {manual | auto}      DNS server mode.
    manual  Manually configure DNS servers.
    auto    Use default DNS servers.
set ipv4-dns-server1 {ipv4 address}  IPv4 DNS server 1.
set ipv4-dns-server2 {ipv4 address}  IPv4 DNS server 2.
set ipv4-dns-server3 {ipv4 address}  IPv4 DNS server 3.
set ipv4-wins-server1 {ipv4 address} WINS server 1.
set ipv4-wins-server2 {ipv4 address} WINS server 2.
config ipv4-exclude-range
    edit {id}
        # Configuration Method IPv4 exclude ranges.
        set id {integer}  ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set start-ip {ipv4 address}  Start of IPv4 exclusive range.
        set end-ip {ipv4 address}    End of IPv4 exclusive range.
    next
set ipv4-split-include {string}  IPv4 split-include subnets. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name
set split-include-service {string}  Split-include services. size[63] - datasource(s):

```

```

firewall.service.group.name,firewall.service.custom.name
    set ipv4-name {string}    IPv4 address name. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    set ipv6-start-ip {ipv6 address}    Start of IPv6 range.
    set ipv6-end-ip {ipv6 address}    End of IPv6 range.
    set ipv6-prefix {integer}    IPv6 prefix. range[1-128]
    set ipv6-dns-server1 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 DNS server 1.
    set ipv6-dns-server2 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 DNS server 2.
    set ipv6-dns-server3 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 DNS server 3.
    config ipv6-exclude-range
        edit {id}
        # Configuration method IPv6 exclude ranges.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set start-ip {ipv6 address}    Start of IPv6 exclusive range.
        set end-ip {ipv6 address}    End of IPv6 exclusive range.
    next
    set ipv6-split-include {string}    IPv6 split-include subnets. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    set ipv6-name {string}    IPv6 address name. size[63] - datasource(s):
firewall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    set unity-support {disable | enable}    Enable/disable support for Cisco UNITY Configuration Method extensions.
    set domain {string}    Instruct unity clients about the default DNS domain. size[63]
    set banner {string}    Message that unity client should display after connecting. size[1024]
    set include-local-lan {disable | enable}    Enable/disable allow local LAN access on unity clients.
    set ipv4-split-exclude {string}    IPv4 subnets that should not be sent over the IPsec tunnel. size[63] - data-
source(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    set ipv6-split-exclude {string}    IPv6 subnets that should not be sent over the IPsec tunnel. size[63] - data-
source(s): firewall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    set save-password {disable | enable}    Enable/disable saving XAuth username and password on VPN clients.
    set client-auto-negotiate {disable | enable}    Enable/disable allowing the VPN client to bring up the tunnel
when there is no traffic.
    set client-keep-alive {disable | enable}    Enable/disable allowing the VPN client to keep the tunnel up when
there is no traffic.
    config backup-gateway
        edit {address}
        # Instruct unity clients about the backup gateway address(es).
        set address {string}    Address of backup gateway. size[64]
    next
    set proposal {option}    Phase1 proposal.
        des-md5                des-md5

```

des-sha1	des-sha1
des-sha256	des-sha256
des-sha384	des-sha384
des-sha512	des-sha512
3des-md5	3des-md5
3des-sha1	3des-sha1
3des-sha256	3des-sha256
3des-sha384	3des-sha384
3des-sha512	3des-sha512
aes128-md5	aes128-md5
aes128-sha1	aes128-sha1
aes128-sha256	aes128-sha256
aes128-sha384	aes128-sha384
aes128-sha512	aes128-sha512
aes128gcm-prfsha1	aes128gcm-prfsha1
aes128gcm-prfsha256	aes128gcm-prfsha256
aes128gcm-prfsha384	aes128gcm-prfsha384
aes128gcm-prfsha512	aes128gcm-prfsha512
aes192-md5	aes192-md5
aes192-sha1	aes192-sha1
aes192-sha256	aes192-sha256
aes192-sha384	aes192-sha384
aes192-sha512	aes192-sha512
aes256-md5	aes256-md5
aes256-sha1	aes256-sha1
aes256-sha256	aes256-sha256
aes256-sha384	aes256-sha384
aes256-sha512	aes256-sha512
aes256gcm-prfsha1	aes256gcm-prfsha1
aes256gcm-prfsha256	aes256gcm-prfsha256
aes256gcm-prfsha384	aes256gcm-prfsha384
aes256gcm-prfsha512	aes256gcm-prfsha512
chacha20poly1305-prfsha1	chacha20poly1305-prfsha1
chacha20poly1305-prfsha256	chacha20poly1305-prfsha256
chacha20poly1305-prfsha384	chacha20poly1305-prfsha384
chacha20poly1305-prfsha512	chacha20poly1305-prfsha512
aria128-md5	aria128-md5
aria128-sha1	aria128-sha1
aria128-sha256	aria128-sha256
aria128-sha384	aria128-sha384

```

        aria128-sha512      aria128-sha512
        aria192-md5         aria192-md5
        aria192-sha1        aria192-sha1
        aria192-sha256      aria192-sha256
        aria192-sha384      aria192-sha384
        aria192-sha512      aria192-sha512
        aria256-md5         aria256-md5
        aria256-sha1        aria256-sha1
        aria256-sha256      aria256-sha256
        aria256-sha384      aria256-sha384
        aria256-sha512      aria256-sha512
        seed-md5            seed-md5
        seed-sha1           seed-sha1
        seed-sha256         seed-sha256
        seed-sha384         seed-sha384
        seed-sha512         seed-sha512
set add-route {disable | enable} Enable/disable control addition of a route to peer destination selector.
set add-gw-route {enable | disable} Enable/disable automatically add a route to the remote gateway.
set psksecret {password_string} Pre-shared secret for PSK authentication (ASCII string or hexadecimal encoded
with a leading 0x).
set psksecret-remote {password_string} Pre-shared secret for remote side PSK authentication (ASCII string or
hexadecimal encoded with a leading 0x).
set keepalive {integer} NAT-T keep alive interval. range[10-900]
set distance {integer} Distance for routes added by IKE (1 - 255). range[1-255]
set priority {integer} Priority for routes added by IKE (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295]
set localid {string} Local ID. size[63]
set localid-type {option} Local ID type.
    auto          Select ID type automatically.
    fqdn          Use fully qualified domain name.
    user-fqdn     Use user fully qualified domain name.
    keyid         Use key-id string.
    address       Use local IP address.
    asnldn        Use ASN.1 distinguished name.
set auto-negotiate {enable | disable} Enable/disable automatic initiation of IKE SA negotiation.
set negotiate-timeout {integer} IKE SA negotiation timeout in seconds (1 - 300). range[1-300]
set fragmentation {enable | disable} Enable/disable fragment IKE message on re-transmission.
set dpd {disable | on-idle | on-demand} Dead Peer Detection mode.
    disable       Disable Dead Peer Detection.
    on-idle       Trigger Dead Peer Detection when IPsec is idle.
    on-demand     Trigger Dead Peer Detection when IPsec traffic is sent but no reply is received from the

```

```
peer.  
    set dpd-retrycount {integer}    Number of DPD retry attempts. range[0-10]  
    set dpd-retryinterval {string}    DPD retry interval.  
    set forticlient-enforcement {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FortiClient enforcement.  
    set comments {string}    Comment. size[255]  
    set npu-offload {enable | disable}    Enable/disable offloading NPU.  
    set send-cert-chain {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sending certificate chain.  
    set dhgrp {option}    DH group.  
        1    DH Group 1.  
        2    DH Group 2.  
        5    DH Group 5.  
        14    DH Group 14.  
        15    DH Group 15.  
        16    DH Group 16.  
        17    DH Group 17.  
        18    DH Group 18.  
        19    DH Group 19.  
        20    DH Group 20.  
        21    DH Group 21.  
        27    DH Group 27.  
        28    DH Group 28.  
        29    DH Group 29.  
        30    DH Group 30.  
        31    DH Group 31.  
    set suite-b {disable | suite-b-gcm-128 | suite-b-gcm-256}    Use Suite-B.  
        disable    Do not use UI suite.  
        suite-b-gcm-128    Use Suite-B-GCM-128.  
        suite-b-gcm-256    Use Suite-B-GCM-256.  
    set eap {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IKEv2 EAP authentication.  
    set eap-identity {use-id-payload | send-request}    IKEv2 EAP peer identity type.  
        use-id-payload    Use IKEv2 IDi payload to resolve peer identity.  
        send-request    Use EAP identity request to resolve peer identity.  
    set acct-verify {enable | disable}    Enable/disable verification of RADIUS accounting record.  
    set ppk {disable | allow | require}    Enable/disable IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key (PPK).  
        disable    Disable use of IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key (PPK).  
        allow    Allow, but do not require, use of IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key (PPK).  
        require    Require use of IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key (PPK).  
    set ppk-secret {password_string}    IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key (ASCII string or hexadecimal encoded with a  
leading 0x).  
    set ppk-identity {string}    IKEv2 Postquantum Preshared Key Identity. size[35]
```



```

set wizard-type {option}    GUI VPN Wizard Type.
    custom                  Custom VPN configuration.
    dialup-forticlient      Dial Up - FortiClient Windows, Mac and Android.
    dialup-ios              Dial Up - iPhone / iPad Native IPsec Client.
    dialup-android          Dial Up - Android Native IPsec Client.
    dialup-windows          Dial Up - Windows Native IPsec Client.
    dialup-cisco            Dial Up - Cisco IPsec Client.
    static-fortigate        Site to Site - FortiGate.
    dialup-fortigate        Dial Up - FortiGate.
    static-cisco            Site to Site - Cisco.
    dialup-cisco-fw         Dialup Up - Cisco Firewall.
set xauthtype {option}      XAuth type.
    disable                Disable.
    client                 Enable as client.
    pap                    Enable as server PAP.
    chap                   Enable as server CHAP.
    auto                   Enable as server auto.
set reauth {disable | enable} Enable/disable re-authentication upon IKE SA lifetime expiration.
set authusr {string}        XAuth user name. size[64]
set authpasswd {password_string} XAuth password (max 35 characters). size[128]
set group-authentication {enable | disable} Enable/disable IKEv2 IDi group authentication.
set group-authentication-secret {password_string} Password for IKEv2 IDi group authentication. (ASCII string
or hexadecimal indicated by a leading 0x.)
set authusrgrp {string}      Authentication user group. size[35] - datasource(s): user.group.name
set mesh-selector-type {disable | subnet | host} Add selectors containing subsets of the configuration depend-
ing on traffic.
    disable                Disable.
    subnet                 Enable addition of matching subnet selector.
    host                   Enable addition of host to host selector.
set idle-timeout {enable | disable} Enable/disable IPsec tunnel idle timeout.
set idle-timeoutinterval {integer} IPsec tunnel idle timeout in minutes (5 - 43200). range[5-43200]
set ha-sync-esp-seqno {enable | disable} Enable/disable sequence number jump ahead for IPsec HA.
set nattraversal {enable | disable | forced} Enable/disable NAT traversal.
set esn {require | allow | disable} Extended sequence number (ESN) negotiation.
    require                Require extended sequence number.
    allow                  Allow extended sequence number.
    disable                Disable extended sequence number.
set fragmentation-mtu {integer} IKE fragmentation MTU (500 - 16000). range[500-16000]
set childless-ike {enable | disable} Enable/disable childless IKEv2 initiation (RFC 6023).
set rekey {enable | disable} Enable/disable phase1 rekey.

```

```

        set digital-signature-auth {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IKEv2 Digital Signature Authentication (RFC
7427).
        set signature-hash-alg {sha1 | sha2-256 | sha2-384 | sha2-512}    Digital Signature Authentication hash
algorithms.
            sha1        SHA1.
            sha2-256    SHA2-256.
            sha2-384    SHA2-384.
            sha2-512    SHA2-512.
        set rsa-signature-format {pkcs1 | pss}    Digital Signature Authentication RSA signature format.
            pkcs1    RSASSA PKCS#1 v1.5.
            pss    RSASSA Probabilistic Signature Scheme (PSS).
        set enforce-unique-id {disable | keep-new | keep-old}    Enable/disable peer ID uniqueness check.
            disable    Disable peer ID uniqueness enforcement.
            keep-new    Enforce peer ID uniqueness, keep new connection if collision found.
            keep-old    Enforce peer ID uniqueness, keep old connection if collision found.
        set cert-id-validation {enable | disable}    Enable/disable cross validation of peer ID and the identity in the
peer's certificate as specified in RFC 4945.
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

type {static | dynamic | ddns}

The connection type of the remote gateway:

- Use `static` if the remote VPN peer has a static IP address. Once set, use the `remote-gw` entry to specify the IP address.
 - Use `dynamic` if the remote VPN peer has a dynamically assigned IP address (DHCP or PPPoE).
 - Use `ddns` if the remote VPN peer has a dynamically assigned IP address and subscribes to a dynamic DNS service. Once set, use the `remotegw-ddns` entry to enter the domain name of the remote VPN peer.
- Note:** `ddns` is *not* available when `ip-version` is set to 6.

interface <out-interface>

Enter the name of the physical, aggregate, or VLAN interface to which the IPsec tunnel will be bound.

ip-version {4 | 6}

Enter 4 (by default) for IPv4 or 6 for IPv6 encapsulation for gateways.

ike-version {1 | 2}

Enter 1 (by default) for IKEv1 or 2 for IKEv2 protocol version.

local-gw [sec-addr-ipv4]

An optional secondary IPv4 IP address of the interface selected in the `interface` entry used for the local end of the VPN tunnel.

local-gw6 [sec-addr-ipv6]

Note: This entry is only available when `ip-version` is set to 6. An optional secondary IPv6 IP address of the interface selected in the `interface` entry used for the local end of the VPN tunnel.

remote-gw <addr-ipv4>

Note: This entry is only available when `ip-version` is set to 4 and `type` is set to `static`. The IPv4 IP address of the remote gateway's external interface. Note that this entry is not available when `type` is set to `dynamic`.

remote-gw6 <addr-ipv6>

Note: This entry is only available when `ip-version` is set to 6. The IPv6 IP address of the remote gateway's external interface.

remotegw-ddns <domain-name>

Note: This entry is only available when `ip-version` is set to 4 and `type` is set to `ddns`. The identifier of the remote peer (e.g. an FQDN). This should be used when the remote peer has a static domain name and a dynamic IP address.

keylife <seconds>

The amount of time in seconds before the phase 1 encryption key expires, at which time a new encryption key is generated without service interruption. Set the value between 120-172800 seconds (or two minutes to two days). The default is set to 86400.

certificate <cert-string>

Note: This entry is only available when `authmethod` is set to `signature`. Enter the names of up to four signed personal certificates for the FortiGate unit. The certificates must have already been installed on the FortiGate before entering them here.

authmethod {psk | signature}

Enter your preferred authentication method:

- Use `psk` (by default) to authenticate using a pre-shared key. Once set, use the `psksecret` entry to specify the pre-shared key.
- Use `signature` to authenticate using a certificate. Once set, use the `certificate` entry to specify the name of the certificate.

mode {aggressive | main}

Note: This entry is only available when `ike-version` is set to 1. An ID protection mode that establishes a secure channel.

- Use `aggressive` mode when a remote peer or dialup client has a dynamic IP address. If this is not set, the remote peer will be authenticated using an identifier (local ID). Identifying information is exchanged in the clear.
- Use `main` mode (by default) when both peers have static IP addresses. Identifying information is hidden.

peertype <any | one | peer | peergrp | dialup>

The following `peertype` options are available:

- `any`: Accepts any remote client or peer. Peer IDs are not used for authentication purposes. This is set by default.
- `one`: Authenticates either a remote peer or client that has a dynamic IP address and connects using a unique identifier over a dedicated tunnel, or more than one dialup client that connects through the same tunnel using the same (shared) identifier. Once set, use the `peerid` entry to set the peer ID. If more than one dialup client will be connecting using the same identifier, set `mode` to `aggressive`.
- `peer`: Authenticates one or more certificate holders based on a particular (or shared) certificate. Once set, use the `peer` entry to enter the certificate name. If the remote peer has a dynamic IP address, set `mode` to `aggressive`.
- `peergrp`: Authenticates certificate holders that use unique certificates. In this case, you must create a group of certificate holders for authentication purposes. Once set, use the `peergrp` entry to set the certificate group name. If the remote peer has a dynamic IP address, set `mode` to `aggressive`.
- `dialup`: Authenticates dialup VPN clients that use unique identifiers and/or preshared-keys to connect to the VPN through the same VPN tunnel. In this case, you must create a dialup user group for authentication purposes. Once set, use the `usrgrp` entry to set the user group name. If the dialup clients use unique identifiers and preshared-keys, set `mode` to `aggressive`. If the dialup clients use preshared-keys *only*, set `mode` to `main`.

Availability of these options vary depending on which remote gateway `type` and `authmethod` is used. Below is a table to show which `peertypes` are available under different circumstances:

type		authmethod		peertype
static	>	psk	>	any
		signature	>	any, one, peer, peergrp
dynamic	>	psk	>	any, one, dialup
		signature	>	any, one, peer, peergrp
ddns	>	psk	>	any
		signature	>	any, one, peer, peergrp

peergrp <peer-group>

Note: This entry is only available when `peertype` is set to `peergrp`. Accepts the specified peer group.

peerid <peer-id>

Note: This entry is only available when `peertype` is set to `one`. Accepts the specified peer identity.

peer <cert-name>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is configured. Accepts the specified peer certificate.

default-gw <addr-ipv4>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `ip-version` is set to 4. The IPv4 address of the default route gateway to use for traffic exiting the interface.

default-gw-priority <priority>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic`. The priority for the default gateway router. Set the value between 0-4294967295. Default is set to 0.

usrgrp <group-name>

Note: This entry is only available when `peertype` is set to `dialup`. The user group. You must have already configured a user group on the FortiGate unit before entering the group's name here.

monitor [phase1]

Note: This entry is not available when `type` is set to `dynamic`. An optional IPsec interface that can act as a backup for another (primary) IPsec interface. Enter the name of the primary interface. Once set, use the `monitor-hold-down-type` entry to configure recovery timing (further configured with the `monitor-hold-down-delay`, `monitor-hold-down-weekday`, and `monitor-hold-down-time` entries).

The backup interface is only used when the primary interface is unavailable. For this, `dpd` must be enabled (set to either `on-idle` or `on-timeout`).

Note that a primary interface can only have one backup interface and cannot itself act as a backup for another interface.

monitor-hold-down-type {immediate | delay | time}

Note: This entry (and all other sub-entries) is only available once `monitor` is configured. Controls the recovery time method when the primary interface re-establishes.

- Use `immediate` (by default) to have the primary interface be re-established immediately.
- Use `delay` to configure the number of seconds to wait before recovery once the primary interface is re-established (see the `monitor-hold-down-delay` entry).
- Use `time` to configure the day of the week and/or the time of day to recover once the primary interface is re-established (see the `monitor-hold-down-weekday` and `monitor-hold-down-time` entries).

monitor-hold-down-delay <seconds>

Note: This entry is only available when `monitor-hold-down-type` is set to `delay`. Configure the number of seconds to wait before recovery once the primary interface is re-established. Set the value between 0-31536000 (or 0 seconds to 1 year). The default is set to 0.

monitor-hold-down-weekday <day>

Note: This entry is only available when `monitor-hold-down-type` is set to `time`. Configure the day of the week to recover once the primary interface is re-established. Set the value to either `everyday`, `sunday` (by default), `monday`, `tuesday`, `wednesday`, `thursday`, `friday`, or `saturday`.

monitor-hold-down-time <time>

Note: This entry is only available when `monitor-hold-down-type` is set to `time`. Configure the time of day to recover once the primary interface is re-established. Set the hour and minute values of the day, with a colon to separate the two (between 00:00 and 23:59). The default is set to 00:00 (or midnight).

net-device {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the creation of a kernel device for every dialup instance, allowing all traffic to use a single interface for all instances that spawn via a given phase1. When enabled and with `tunnel-search` set to `nexthop`, instead of creating an interface per instance, all traffic will run over the single interface and any routes that need creating will be created on that single interface.

tunnel-search {selectors | nexthop}

Under the new single-interface scheme, instead of relying on routing to guide traffic to the specific instance as currently happens, all traffic will flow to the specific device and IPsec will need to take care of locating the correct instance for outbound traffic:

- **selectors:** Selecting a peer using the IPsec selectors (proxy-ids) (set by default).
- **nexthop:** All the peers use the same default selectors (0/0) while using some routing protocols such as BGP, OSPF, RIPng, etc to resolve the routing.

Disabling `net-device` and setting `tunnel-search` to `nexthop` changes how FortiOS creates and manages dynamic tunnels. Enabling the option can improve dialup IPsec VPN performance on newer FortiGate models that are running the most recent kernel. FortiOS 5.6.5 now also supports changing the `net-device` configuration after creating the tunnel. Enabling this option also allows the IPsec tunnel to learn routes from dynamic routing. The recommended configuration is:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
  edit <name>
    set type dynamic
    set net-device disable
    set tunnel-search nexthop
    set interface "wan1"
    set proposal aes128 - sha1
    set add-route disable
    set auto-discovery-sender enable
    set exchange-interface-ip enable
    set psksecret <key>
  end

config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
  edit <name>
    set phase1name <name>
```

```
        set proposal aes128-sha1
    end

config system interface
    edit <name>
        set ip 10.10.10.1/32
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 /24
    end
```

mode-cfg {enable | disable}

Enable IKE Configuration Method so that compatible clients can configure themselves with settings that the FortiGate unit provides. Disable (by default) to prohibit clients from configuring themselves.

assign-ip {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. Enable (by default) or disable the assignment of an IP address to the IPsec interface.

assign-ip-from {range | dhcp}

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The method by which the IP address will be assigned.

- Use `range` (by default) to assign the IP address from a locally defined range.
- Use `dhcp` to assign the IP address via DHCP.

ipv4-start-ip <ipv4-start>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The start of the IPv4 range.

ipv4-end-ip <ipv4-end>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The end of the IPv4 range.

ipv4-netmask <ipv4-netmask>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The IPv4 netmask.

dns-mode {manual | auto}

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The DNS server mode.

- Use `manual` (by default) to manually configure the DNS servers.
- Use `auto` to use default DNS servers.

ipv4-dns-server1 <server1>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. Specify an IPv4 DNS server, of which you may specify up to three (see entries below).

ipv4-dns-server2 <server2>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. Specify a second IPv4 DNS server.

ipv4-dns-server3 <server3>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. Specify a third IPv4 DNS server.

ipv4-wins-server1 <server1>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) is a central mapping of host names to network addresses. Specify a WINS server, of which you may specify up to two (see entry below).

ipv4-wins-server2 <server2>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. Specify a second WINS server.

ipv4-exclude-range

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. A configuration method to exclude IPv4 ranges. Edit to create new and specify the exclude-ranges using the `start-ip` and `end-ip` entries.

ipv4-split-include <subnet>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The IPv4 split-include subnets. The addresses must have already been configured on the FortiGate unit before entering their names here.

split-include-service <service>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The split-include services. The services must have already been configured on the FortiGate unit before entering their names here.

ipv4-name <name>

IPv4 address name used when `assign-ip-from` is set to `name`.

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`.

ipv6-start-ip <ipv6-start>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The start of the IPv6 range.

ipv6-end-ip <ipv6-end>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The end of the IPv6 range.

ipv6-prefix <ipv6-prefix>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The IPv6 address' prefix. Enter a value between 1-128. The default is set to 128.

ipv6-dns-server1 <server1>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. Specify an IPv6 DNS server, of which you may specify up to three (see entries below).

ipv6-dns-server2 <server2>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. Specify a second IPv6 DNS server.

ipv6-dns-server3 <server3>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. Specify a third IPv6 DNS server.

ipv6-exclude-range

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. A configuration method to exclude IPv6 ranges. Edit to create new and specify the exclude-ranges using the `start-ip` and `end-ip` entries.

ipv6-split-include <subnet>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The IPv6 split-include subnets. The addresses must have already been configured on the FortiGate unit before entering their names here.

ipv6-name <name>

IPv6 address name used when `assign-ip-from` is set to `name`.

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`.

unity-support {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. Enable (by default) or disable support for Cisco Unity configuration method extensions.

domain <domain>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The default DNS domain for Unity clients.

banner <message>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The message that Unity clients should display after connecting.

include-local-lan {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. Enable or disable (by default) allowing local LAN access on Unity clients.

client-auto-negotiate {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. Enable or disable (by default) allowing the VPN client to bring up the tunnel when there is no traffic.

client-keep-alive {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. Enable or disable (by default) allowing the VPN client to keep the tunnel up when there is no traffic.

backup-gateway <address>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic` and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The backup gateway address(es) for Unity clients.

proposal <phase1-proposal>

A minimum of one and maximum of ten encryption-message combinations for the phase 1 proposal, for example `aes128-sha256`. Use a space to separate the combinations. Make sure that the remote peer is configured to use at least one of the proposals defined. **Note:** This entry is *not* available if `suite-b` has been configured. Use any of the following key encryption algorithms: has been configured. Use any of the following key encryption algorithms:

- `des`: Digital Encryption Standard (DES), a 64-bit block algorithm that uses a 56-bit key.
- `3des`: Triple-DES, in which plain text is encrypted three times by three keys.
- `aes128`: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.
- `aes192`: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.
- `aes256`: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.
- `aria128`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.
- `aris192`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.
- `aria256`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.
- `seed`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.

The ARIA and seed algorithms may not be available on some FortiGate models. Combine key encryptions with any one of the following message digests, to check the authenticity of messages during an encrypted session:

- `md5`: Message Digest (MD) 5, the hash algorithm developed by RSA Data Security.
- `sha1`: Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA) 1 producing a 160-bit message digest.
- `sha256`: SHA 2 producing a 256-bit message digest.
- `sha384`: SHA 2 producing a 384-bit message digest.
- `sha512`: SHA 2 producing a 512-bit message digest.

add-route {disable | enable}

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic`. Enable (by default) or disable adding a route to the destination of the peer selector.

exchange-interface-ip {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the exchange of IPsec interface IP address.

add-gw-route {enable | disable}

Enable to automatically add a route to the remote gateway specified in the `remote-gw` entry. This is disabled by default.

Note: This command is deprecated. Instead, use the `dynamic-gateway {enable | disable}` entry in the `config router static` command.

psksecret <preshared-key>

Note: This entry is only available when `authmethod` is set to `psk`. Enter the pre-shared key. The pre-shared key must be the same on the remote VPN gateway or client and should only be known by network administrators. The key must consist of at least six characters. For optimum protection against currently known attacks, the key should consist of a minimum of 16 randomly chosen alphanumeric characters.

keepalive <seconds>

Note: This entry is only available when `nattraversal` is set to `enable`. Set the NAT traversal keepalive frequency in seconds, a period of time that specifies how frequently empty UDP packets are sent through the NAT device to make sure that the NAT mapping does not change until phase 1 and 2 security associations (SAs) expire. Set the value between 10-900 seconds (or ten seconds to 15 minutes). The default is set to 5.

distance <distance>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic`, or when `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The distance for routes added by IKE. Set the value between 1-255. Default is set to 15.

priority <priority>

Note: This entry is only available when `type` is set to `dynamic`, or when `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`. The priority for routes added by IKE. Set the value between 0-4294967295. Default is set to 0.

localid <local-id>

Note: If you set a local ID on a FortiGate dialup client, you must enable aggressive mode on the FortiGate dialup server and specify the identifier as a peer ID on the FortiGate dialup server. The local ID, or unique identifier, that the FortiGate uses as a VPN client for authentication purposes.

localid-type {auto | fqdn | user-fqdn | keyid | address}

Determines the type of local ID to be set:

- `auto`: Selects type automatically.
- `fqdn`: Uses a Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN).
- `user-fqdn`: Uses a User FQDN.
- `keyid`: Uses Key Identifier ID.
- `address`: Uses IP address ID.

auto-negotiate {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) to keep attempting IKE SA negotiation even if the link is down. This feature is useful in cases where there are multiple redundant tunnels but you prefer the primary connection if it can be established.

negotiate-timeout <seconds>

The amount of time in seconds that the FortiGate unit will wait for the IKE SA to be negotiated. Set the value between 1-300 seconds (or one second to five minutes). The default is set to 5.

fragmentation {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `ike-version` is set to 1. Enable (by default) intra-IKE fragmentation support on re-transmission of fragmented packets.

dpd {disable | on-idle | on-demand}

Disable or set Dead Peer Detection (DPD) to either `on-idle` or `on-demand` (by default). DPD detects the status of the connection between VPN peers, cleans up dead connections, and helps establish new VPN tunnels. Note that DPD cannot be used unless both VPN peers support and enable the feature.

- `on-idle`: DPD is triggered when IPsec is idle/inactive.
- `on-demand`: DPD is triggered when IPsec traffic is sent but no reply is received from the peer.

dpd-retrycount <retry-integer>

Note: This entry is only available when `dpd` is set to `enable`. The number of times that the local VPN peer sends a DPD probe before it considers the link to be dead and tears down the SA. Set the value between 0-10. The default is set to 3. To avoid false negatives set the retry count to a sufficiently high value for your network.

dpd-retryinterval <seconds>

Note: This entry is only available when `dpd` is set to `enable`. The amount of time in seconds that the local VPN peer waits between sending DPD probes. Set the value between 0-3600 seconds (or 0 seconds to one hour).

forticlient-enforcement {enable | disable}

Enable to only permit FortiClient users to connect. Disable (by default) to lift this restriction.

comments [string]

Optional comments.

npu-offload {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable offloading of VPN session to a network processing unit (NPU).

send-cert-chain {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `authmethod` is set to `signature`. Enable (by default) or disable sending certificate chain.

dhgrp {1 | 2 | 5 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31}

Apply one or more Diffie-Hellman (DH) group numbers, in order of preference, separated by spaces. DH groups determine the strength of the key used in the key exchange process, with higher group numbers being more secure, but requiring additional time to compute the key. Set the value to any one (or more) of the following: 1, 2, 5, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 27, 28, 29, 30, and 31. The default is set to 14 5.

Note that at least one of the group numbers set on the remote peer or client must be identical to one of the selections on the FortiGate unit.

Note: This entry is *not* available if `suite-b` has been configured.

suite-b {disable | suite-b-gcm-128 | suite-b-gcm-256}

Disable (by default) or set Suite B to either `suite-b-gcm-128` or `suite-b-gcm-256`. Suite B is a set of cryptographic algorithms designated by the U.S. National Security Agency to allow commercial products to protect traffic that is classified at secret or top secret levels (see [RFC 6379](#), [Suite B Cryptographic Suites for IPsec](#)).

- Suite-B-GCM-128 applies Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) encryption with 128-bit keys and 16-octet integrity check value (OCV) in Galois/Counter Mode (GCM), a mode of operation for symmetric key cryptographic block ciphers. Key establishment uses DH group 19.
- Suite-B-GCM-256 applies AES encryption with 256-bit keys and 16-octet ICV in GCM. Key establishment uses DH group 20.

eap {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `ike-version` is set to 2. Enable or disable (by default) IKEv2 Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) authentication.

eap-identity {use-id-payload | send-request}

Note: This entry is only available when `eap` is set to `enable`. The IKEv2 EAP peer identity type.

- `use-id-payload` uses IKEv2 identity payload to resolve peer identity. This is set by default.
- `send-request` uses EAP identity request to resolve peer identity.

acct-verify {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `eap` is set to `enable`. Enable or disable (by default) the verification of RADIUS accounting record.

wizard-type <wizard-type>

Set to one of the following GUI VPN Wizard template types:

- `custom`: Custom VPN configuration.
- `dialup-forticlient`: Dialup for FortiClient Windows, Mac, and Android.
- `dialup-ios`: Dialup for iPhone and/or iPad Native IPsec Client.
- `dialup-android`: Dialup for Android Native IPsec Client.
- `dialup-windows`: Dialup for Windows Native IPsec Client.
- `dialup-cisco`: Dialup for Cisco IPsec Client.
- `static-fortigate`: Site to Site for FortiGate.
- `dialup-fortigate`: Dialup for FortiGate.
- `static-cisco`: Site to Site for Cisco.
- `dialup-cisco-fw`: Dialup for Cisco Firewall.

xauthtype [disable | client | pap | chap | auto]

Note: This entry is only available when `ike-version` is set to 1. Optionally configure XAuth (eXtended Authentication). XAuth provides the mechanism for requesting individual authentication information from the user, while a local user database or an external authentication server (such as a RADIUS server) provides a method for storing the authentication information centrally in the local network. This command is disabled by default. Use `pap`, `chap`, or `auto` to configure the FortiGate unit as an XAuth server. Note that these options are only available when `type` is set to `dynamic`.

- `disable`: Disables XAuth.
- `client`: Enable to configure the FortiGate as an XAuth client. Once set, use the `authusr` and `authpasswd` entries to add the XAuth user name and password (see entries below).
- `pap`: Password Authentication Protocol (PAP). Once set, use the `authusrgrp` field to specify the user group containing members that will be authenticated using XAuth.
- `chap`: Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP). Once set, use the `authusrgrp` field to specify the user group containing members that will be authenticated using XAuth.
- `auto`: Enable as server auto. Once set, use the `authusrgrp` field to specify the user group containing members that will be authenticated using XAuth.

reauth {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `ike-version` is set to 2. Enable or disable (by default) re-authentication upon IKE SA lifetime expiration.

authusrgrp <group-name>

Note: This entry is only available when `eap` is set to `enable`. The authentication user group. You must have already configured a user group on the FortiGate unit before entering the group's name here.

authusr <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `xauthtype` has been configured. Enter the XAuth user name.

authpasswd <password>

Note: This entry is only available when `xauthtype` has been configured. Enter the XAuth user's password (maximum of 35 characters).

mesh-selector-type {disable | subnet | host}

Note: This entry is only available when `ike-version` is set to 1. Disable (by default) or set dynamic mesh selectors for IKEv1 VPNs to either `subnet` or `host`. Note that dynamic selectors are *not* saved to the configuration and will be removed when tunnels are flushed.

- Use `subnet` to install selector for the address group that matches traffic packets.
- Use `host` to install selector for the source and destination IP addresses of traffic packets.

idle-timeout {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) IPsec tunnel to timeout when idle. Once enabled, use the `idle-timeoutinterval` entry to set the period of time the VPN will wait before timing out (see entry below).

idle-timeoutinterval <minutes>

Note: This entry is only available when `idle-timeout` is set to `enable`. Enter the IPsec tunnel idle timeout in minutes. Set the value between 10-43200 (or ten minutes to 30 days). The default is set to 15.

ha-sync-esp-seqno {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the Extended Sequence Number (ESP) jump ahead for IPsec HA. Enabling this feature helps to synchronize the IPsec SA replay counters between newly active HA cluster members and the peer (see [RFC 6311, Protocol Support for High Availability of IKEv2/IPsec](#)).

auto-discovery-sender {enable | disable}

Auto Discovery VPN (ADVPN) allows a shortcut to be created between two VPN peers, establishing dynamic on-demand tunnels between each other to avoid routing through the topology's hub device. Enable or disable (by default) sending auto-discovery short-cut messages.

auto-discovery-receiver {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) accepting auto-discovery short-cut messages (see the `auto-discovery-sender` entry above about Auto Discovery).

auto-discovery-forwarder {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) forwarding auto-discovery short-cut messages (see the `auto-discovery-sender` entry above about Auto Discovery).

auto-discovery-psk {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `authmethod` is set to `signature` and `auto-discovery-sender` is set to `enable`. Enable or disable (by default) the use of pre-shared keys for the authentication of auto-discovery tunnels.

encapsulation {none | gre | vxlan}

Note: This entry is *not* available when `type` is set to `dynamic`. Disable (by default; `none`) or set encapsulation to either `gre` or `vxlan`. Both GRE and VXLAN segmentation scale well together as they allow overlapping subnets and IP ranges. VXLAN is encapsulated in UDP frames, resulting in efficiently distributed traffic. Once set, use the `encapsulation-address` entry to configure the source for the GRE or VXLAN tunnel address.

encapsulation-address {ike | ipv4 | ipv6}

Note: This entry is only available when `encapsulation` is set to either `gre` or `vxlan`. Select the source for the GRE or VXLAN tunnel address.

- Use `ike` (by default) to use IKE/IPsec gateway addresses.
- Use `ipv4` to specify separate IPv4 GRE/VXLAN tunnel addresses (see `encap` entries below).

- Use `ipv6` to specify separate IPv6 GRE/VXLAN tunnel addresses (see `encap` entries below).

encap-local-gw4 <addr-ipv4>

Note: This entry is only available when `encapsulation-address` is set to `ipv4`. The local IPv4 address of the GRE/VXLAN tunnel.

encap-remote-gw4 <addr-ipv4>

Note: This entry is only available when `encapsulation-address` is set to `ipv4`. The remote IPv4 address of the GRE/VXLAN tunnel.

encap-local-gw6 <addr-ipv6>

Note: This entry is only available when `encapsulation-address` is set to `ipv6`. The local IPv6 address of the GRE/VXLAN tunnel.

encap-remote-gw6 <addr-ipv6>

Note: This entry is only available when `encapsulation-address` is set to `ipv6`. The remote IPv6 address of the GRE/VXLAN tunnel.

nattraversal {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable NAT traversal. This should be enabled if you expect the IPsec VPN traffic to go through a gateway that performs NAT. If not NAT device is detected, enabling NAT traversal has no effect. Once enabled, use the `keepalive` entry to set the NAT traversal keepalive frequency. Note that both ends of the VPN must have the same NAT traversal settings.

fragmentation-mtu <frag-integer>

Note: This entry is only available when `ike-version` is set to 2. The IKE fragmentation maximum transmission unit (MTU). Set the value between 500-16000. The default is set to 1200.

childless-ike {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `ike-version` is set to 2. Enable or disable the childless IKEv2 initiation (see [RFC 6023, A Childless of the Internet Key Exchange Version 2 \(IKEv2\) Security Association \(SA\)](#)).

group-authentication {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) IKEv2 IDi group authentication.

The IDi information is extracted from the IKEv2 AUTH exchange and is sent to a RADIUS server, along with a fixed password, to perform an additional group authentication step prior to tunnel establishment.

The RADIUS server may return framed-IP-address, framed-ip-netmask, and dns-server attributes, which are then applied to the tunnel.

Note: This entry is only available when `ike-version` is set to 2, `type` is set to `dynamic`, and `mode-cfg` is set to `enable`.

group-authentication-secret <password>

Password for IKEv2 IDi group authentication (ASCII string or hexadecimal indicated by a leading 0x).

Note: This entry is only available when `group-authentication` is set to `enable`.

vpn ipsec {phase2-interface | phase2}

Use `phase2-interface` to add or edit a phase 2 configuration on a route-based (interface mode) IPsec tunnel. This command is only available in NAT mode. You can also use `phase2` to add or edit IPsec tunnel-mode phase 2 configurations to create and maintain IPsec VPN tunnels with a remote VPN gateway or client peer.

Note: The following entries are *not* available under the `phase2` command:

- `auto-discovery-sender`
- `auto-discovery-forwarder`

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
N/A	Changed the initial proposal list when new phase2s are created.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set dhgrp {31 ...}</code>	FortiOS uses OpenSSL 1.1, which now supports Curve25519, granting support for DH group 31.
<code>set proposal {chacha20poly1305 ...}</code>	In order to support RFC 7634 , kernel implementations for crypto algorithms ChaCha20 and Poly1305 are added. These two algorithms are used together as a combined mode AEAD cipher (like aes-gcm) in the new <code>crypto_ftnt</code> cipher in <code>cipher_chacha20poly1305.c</code> .

```

config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit {name}
        # Configure VPN autokey tunnel.
        set name {string}    IPsec tunnel name. size[35]
        set phaselname {string}    Phase 1 determines the options required for phase 2. size[15] - datasource(s):
vpn.ipsec.phasel-interface.name
        set dhcp-ipsec {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DHCP-IPsec.
        set proposal {option}    Phase2 proposal.
            null-md5            null-md5
            null-sha1            null-sha1
            null-sha256          null-sha256
            null-sha384          null-sha384
            null-sha512          null-sha512
            des-null              des-null
            des-md5               des-md5
            des-sha1              des-sha1
            des-sha256            des-sha256
            des-sha384            des-sha384
            des-sha512            des-sha512
            3des-null             3des-null
            3des-md5              3des-md5
            3des-sha1             3des-sha1
            3des-sha256           3des-sha256
            3des-sha384           3des-sha384
            3des-sha512           3des-sha512
            aes128-null           aes128-null
            aes128-md5            aes128-md5
            aes128-sha1           aes128-sha1
            aes128-sha256         aes128-sha256

```

aes128-sha384	aes128-sha384
aes128-sha512	aes128-sha512
aes128gcm	aes128gcm
aes192-null	aes192-null
aes192-md5	aes192-md5
aes192-sha1	aes192-sha1
aes192-sha256	aes192-sha256
aes192-sha384	aes192-sha384
aes192-sha512	aes192-sha512
aes256-null	aes256-null
aes256-md5	aes256-md5
aes256-sha1	aes256-sha1
aes256-sha256	aes256-sha256
aes256-sha384	aes256-sha384
aes256-sha512	aes256-sha512
aes256gcm	aes256gcm
chacha20poly1305	chacha20poly1305
aria128-null	aria128-null
aria128-md5	aria128-md5
aria128-sha1	aria128-sha1
aria128-sha256	aria128-sha256
aria128-sha384	aria128-sha384
aria128-sha512	aria128-sha512
aria192-null	aria192-null
aria192-md5	aria192-md5
aria192-sha1	aria192-sha1
aria192-sha256	aria192-sha256
aria192-sha384	aria192-sha384
aria192-sha512	aria192-sha512
aria256-null	aria256-null
aria256-md5	aria256-md5
aria256-sha1	aria256-sha1
aria256-sha256	aria256-sha256
aria256-sha384	aria256-sha384
aria256-sha512	aria256-sha512
seed-null	seed-null
seed-md5	seed-md5
seed-sha1	seed-sha1
seed-sha256	seed-sha256
seed-sha384	seed-sha384

```
seed-sha512      seed-sha512
set pfs {enable | disable}  Enable/disable PFS feature.
set dhgrp {option}  Phase2 DH group.
    1  DH Group 1.
    2  DH Group 2.
    5  DH Group 5.
   14  DH Group 14.
   15  DH Group 15.
   16  DH Group 16.
   17  DH Group 17.
   18  DH Group 18.
   19  DH Group 19.
   20  DH Group 20.
   21  DH Group 21.
   27  DH Group 27.
   28  DH Group 28.
   29  DH Group 29.
   30  DH Group 30.
   31  DH Group 31.
set replay {enable | disable}  Enable/disable replay detection.
set keepalive {enable | disable}  Enable/disable keep alive.
set auto-negotiate {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IPsec SA auto-negotiation.
set add-route {phase1 | enable | disable}  Enable/disable automatic route addition.
set auto-discovery-sender {phase1 | enable | disable}  Enable/disable sending short-cut messages.
set auto-discovery-forwarder {phase1 | enable | disable}  Enable/disable forwarding short-cut messages.
set keylifeseconds {integer}  Phase2 key life in time in seconds (120 - 172800). range[120-172800]
set keylifekbs {integer}  Phase2 key life in number of bytes of traffic (5120 - 4294967295). range[5120-
4294967295]
set keylife-type {seconds | kbs | both}  Keylife type.
    seconds  Key life in seconds.
    kbs      Key life in kilobytes.
    both     Key life both.
set single-source {enable | disable}  Enable/disable single source IP restriction.
set route-overlap {use-old | use-new | allow}  Action for overlapping routes.
    use-old  Use the old route and do not add the new route.
    use-new  Delete the old route and add the new route.
    allow    Allow overlapping routes.
set encapsulation {tunnel-mode | transport-mode}  ESP encapsulation mode.
    tunnel-mode  Use tunnel mode encapsulation.
    transport-mode  Use transport mode encapsulation.
```



```

set l2tp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable L2TP over IPsec.
set comments {string}         Comment. size[255]
set protocol {integer}        Quick mode protocol selector (1 - 255 or 0 for all). range[0-255]
set src-name {string}         Local proxy ID name. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
set src-name6 {string}        Local proxy ID name. size[63] - datasource(s):
firewall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
set src-addr-type {option}     Local proxy ID type.
    subnet    IPv4 subnet.
    range     IPv4 range.
    ip        IPv4 IP.
    name      IPv4 firewall address or group name.
    subnet6   IPv6 subnet.
    range6    IPv6 range.
    ip6       IPv6 IP.
    name6     IPv6 firewall address or group name.
set src-start-ip {ipv4 address any}    Local proxy ID start.
set src-start-ip6 {ipv6 address}       Local proxy ID IPv6 start.
set src-end-ip {ipv4 address any}      Local proxy ID end.
set src-end-ip6 {ipv6 address}         Local proxy ID IPv6 end.
set src-subnet {ipv4 classnet any}     Local proxy ID subnet.
set src-subnet6 {ipv6 prefix}         Local proxy ID IPv6 subnet.
set src-port {integer}                Quick mode source port (1 - 65535 or 0 for all). range[0-65535]
set dst-name {string}                 Remote proxy ID name. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
set dst-name6 {string}                 Remote proxy ID name. size[63] - datasource(s):
firewall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
set dst-addr-type {option}             Remote proxy ID type.
    subnet    IPv4 subnet.
    range     IPv4 range.
    ip        IPv4 IP.
    name      IPv4 firewall address or group name.
    subnet6   IPv6 subnet.
    range6    IPv6 range.
    ip6       IPv6 IP.
    name6     IPv6 firewall address or group name.
set dst-start-ip {ipv4 address any}    Remote proxy ID IPv4 start.
set dst-start-ip6 {ipv6 address}       Remote proxy ID IPv6 start.
set dst-end-ip {ipv4 address any}      Remote proxy ID IPv4 end.
set dst-end-ip6 {ipv6 address}         Remote proxy ID IPv6 end.

```

```

        set dst-subnet {ipv4 classnet any}    Remote proxy ID IPv4 subnet.
        set dst-subnet6 {ipv6 prefix}    Remote proxy ID IPv6 subnet.
        set dst-port {integer}    Quick mode destination port (1 - 65535 or 0 for all). range[0-65535]
    next
end

config vpn ipsec phase2
    edit {name}
        # Configure VPN autokey tunnel.
        set name {string}    IPsec tunnel name. size[35]
        set phaselname {string}    Phase 1 determines the options required for phase 2. size[35] - datasource(s):
vpn.ipsec.phasel.name
        set dhcp-ipsec {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DHCP-IPsec.
        set use-natip {enable | disable}    Enable to use the FortiGate public IP as the source selector when outbound
NAT is used.
        set selector-match {exact | subset | auto}    Match type to use when comparing selectors.
            exact    Match selectors exactly.
            subset    Match selectors by subset.
            auto    Use subset or exact match depending on selector address type.
        set proposal {option}    Phase2 proposal.
            null-md5            null-md5
            null-sha1            null-sha1
            null-sha256            null-sha256
            null-sha384            null-sha384
            null-sha512            null-sha512
            des-null            des-null
            des-md5            des-md5
            des-sha1            des-sha1
            des-sha256            des-sha256
            des-sha384            des-sha384
            des-sha512            des-sha512
            3des-null            3des-null
            3des-md5            3des-md5
            3des-sha1            3des-sha1
            3des-sha256            3des-sha256
            3des-sha384            3des-sha384
            3des-sha512            3des-sha512
            aes128-null            aes128-null
            aes128-md5            aes128-md5
            aes128-sha1            aes128-sha1
            aes128-sha256            aes128-sha256

```

aes128-sha384	aes128-sha384
aes128-sha512	aes128-sha512
aes128gcm	aes128gcm
aes192-null	aes192-null
aes192-md5	aes192-md5
aes192-sha1	aes192-sha1
aes192-sha256	aes192-sha256
aes192-sha384	aes192-sha384
aes192-sha512	aes192-sha512
aes256-null	aes256-null
aes256-md5	aes256-md5
aes256-sha1	aes256-sha1
aes256-sha256	aes256-sha256
aes256-sha384	aes256-sha384
aes256-sha512	aes256-sha512
aes256gcm	aes256gcm
chacha20poly1305	chacha20poly1305
aria128-null	aria128-null
aria128-md5	aria128-md5
aria128-sha1	aria128-sha1
aria128-sha256	aria128-sha256
aria128-sha384	aria128-sha384
aria128-sha512	aria128-sha512
aria192-null	aria192-null
aria192-md5	aria192-md5
aria192-sha1	aria192-sha1
aria192-sha256	aria192-sha256
aria192-sha384	aria192-sha384
aria192-sha512	aria192-sha512
aria256-null	aria256-null
aria256-md5	aria256-md5
aria256-sha1	aria256-sha1
aria256-sha256	aria256-sha256
aria256-sha384	aria256-sha384
aria256-sha512	aria256-sha512
seed-null	seed-null
seed-md5	seed-md5
seed-sha1	seed-sha1
seed-sha256	seed-sha256
seed-sha384	seed-sha384

```
        seed-sha512      seed-sha512
set pfs {enable | disable}  Enable/disable PFS feature.
set dhgrp {option}    Phase2 DH group.
    1    DH Group 1.
    2    DH Group 2.
    5    DH Group 5.
   14    DH Group 14.
   15    DH Group 15.
   16    DH Group 16.
   17    DH Group 17.
   18    DH Group 18.
   19    DH Group 19.
   20    DH Group 20.
   21    DH Group 21.
   27    DH Group 27.
   28    DH Group 28.
   29    DH Group 29.
   30    DH Group 30.
   31    DH Group 31.
set replay {enable | disable}  Enable/disable replay detection.
set keepalive {enable | disable}  Enable/disable keep alive.
set auto-negotiate {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IPsec SA auto-negotiation.
set add-route {phase1 | enable | disable}  Enable/disable automatic route addition.
set keylifeseconds {integer}  Phase2 key life in time in seconds (120 - 172800). range[120-172800]
set keylifekbs {integer}  Phase2 key life in number of bytes of traffic (5120 - 4294967295). range[5120-4294967295]
set keylife-type {seconds | kbs | both}  Keylife type.
    seconds  Key life in seconds.
    kbs      Key life in kilobytes.
    both     Key life both.
set single-source {enable | disable}  Enable/disable single source IP restriction.
set route-overlap {use-old | use-new | allow}  Action for overlapping routes.
    use-old  Use the old route and do not add the new route.
    use-new  Delete the old route and add the new route.
    allow    Allow overlapping routes.
set encapsulation {tunnel-mode | transport-mode}  ESP encapsulation mode.
    tunnel-mode  Use tunnel mode encapsulation.
    transport-mode  Use transport mode encapsulation.
set l2tp {enable | disable}  Enable/disable L2TP over IPsec.
set comments {string}  Comment. size[255]
```

```

        set protocol {integer}    Quick mode protocol selector (1 - 255 or 0 for all). range[0-255]
        set src-name {string}    Local proxy ID name. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
        set src-name6 {string}    Local proxy ID name. size[63] - datasource(s):
firewall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
        set src-addr-type {subnet | range | ip | name}    Local proxy ID type.
            subnet    IPv4 subnet.
            range    IPv4 range.
            ip        IPv4 IP.
            name    IPv4 firewall address or group name.
        set src-start-ip {ipv4 address any}    Local proxy ID start.
        set src-start-ip6 {ipv6 address}    Local proxy ID IPv6 start.
        set src-end-ip {ipv4 address any}    Local proxy ID end.
        set src-end-ip6 {ipv6 address}    Local proxy ID IPv6 end.
        set src-subnet {ipv4 classnet any}    Local proxy ID subnet.
        set src-subnet6 {ipv6 prefix}    Local proxy ID IPv6 subnet.
        set src-port {integer}    Quick mode source port (1 - 65535 or 0 for all). range[0-65535]
        set dst-name {string}    Remote proxy ID name. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
        set dst-name6 {string}    Remote proxy ID name. size[63] - datasource(s):
firewall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
        set dst-addr-type {subnet | range | ip | name}    Remote proxy ID type.
            subnet    IPv4 subnet.
            range    IPv4 range.
            ip        IPv4 IP.
            name    IPv4 firewall address or group name.
        set dst-start-ip {ipv4 address any}    Remote proxy ID IPv4 start.
        set dst-start-ip6 {ipv6 address}    Remote proxy ID IPv6 start.
        set dst-end-ip {ipv4 address any}    Remote proxy ID IPv4 end.
        set dst-end-ip6 {ipv6 address}    Remote proxy ID IPv6 end.
        set dst-subnet {ipv4 classnet any}    Remote proxy ID IPv4 subnet.
        set dst-subnet6 {ipv6 prefix}    Remote proxy ID IPv6 subnet.
        set dst-port {integer}    Quick mode destination port (1 - 65535 or 0 for all). range[0-65535]
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

phase1name <gateway_name>

The name of the phase 1 gateway configuration, most commonly created using the IPsec Wizard. You must have already added the phase 1 gateway definition to the FortiGate configuration before it can be added here.

dhcp-ipsec {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) DHCP-IPsec.

use-natip {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the FortiGate to use its public interface IP address as the source selector when outbound NAT is used.

selector-match {exact | subset | auto}

The match-type to use when comparing selectors.

- Use `exact` to match selectors exactly.
- Use `subset` to match selectors by subset.
- Use `auto` (by default) to use subset or exact match depending on the selector address type.

proposal <phase2_proposal>

A minimum of one and maximum of ten encryption-message combinations for the phase 2 proposal, for example `aes128-sha256`. Use a space to separate the combinations. Make sure that the remote peer is configured to use at least one of the proposals defined. Use any of the following key encryption algorithms:

- `des`: Digital Encryption Standard (DES), a 64-bit block algorithm that uses a 56-bit key.
- `3des`: Triple-DES, in which plain text is encrypted three times by three keys.
- `aes128`: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.
- `aes192`: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.
- `aes256`: A 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.
- `aria128`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.
- `aris192`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.
- `aria256`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.
- `seed`: A 128-bit Korean block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.

The ARIA and seed algorithms may not be available on some FortiGate models. Combine key encryptions with any one of the following message digests, to check the authenticity of messages during an encrypted session: The ARIA and seed algorithms may not be available on some FortiGate models. Combine key encryptions with any one of the following message digests, to check the authenticity of messages during an encrypted session:

- `md5`: Message Digest (MD) 5, the hash algorithm developed by RSA Data Security.
- `sha1`: Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA) 1 producing a 160-bit message digest.
- `sha256`: SHA 2 producing a 256-bit message digest.
- `sha384`: SHA 2 producing a 384-bit message digest.
- `sha512`: SHA 2 producing a 512-bit message digest.

pfs {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable perfect forward secrecy (PFS). When enabled, encrypted communications and sessions recorded in the past cannot be retrieved and decrypted, should long-term secret keys or passwords be compromised in the future.

dhgrp {1 | 2 | 5 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31}

Apply one or more Diffie-Hellman (DH) group numbers, in order of preference, separated by spaces. DH groups determine the strength of the key used in the key exchange process, with higher group numbers being more secure, but requiring additional time to compute the key. Set the value to any one (or more) of the following: 1, 2, 5, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 27, 28, 29, 30, and 31. The default is set to 14 5.

Note that at least one of the group numbers set on the remote peer or client must be identical to one of the selections on the FortiGate unit.

replay {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable replay attack detection. When enabled, replay detection discards received packets if they contain a sequence number before the current window, in which case they are seen as being too old, or if they contain a sequence number which has already been received by the FortiGate unit.

keepalive {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the NAT traversal keepalive frequency, a period of time that specifies how frequently empty UDP packets are sent through the NAT device to make sure that the NAT mapping does not change until phase 1 and 2 security associations (SAs) expire.

add-route {phase1 | enable | disable}

Enable, disable, or set to `phase1` (by default) to add route according to phase add-route settings.

auto-negotiate {enable | disable}

Enable to keep attempting IKE SA negotiation even if the link is down. This feature is useful in cases where there are multiple redundant tunnels but you prefer the primary connection if it can be established. This is set to `enable` to keep attempting IKE SA negotiation even if the link is down. This feature is useful in cases where there are multiple redundant tunnels but you prefer the primary connection if it can be established. This is set to `disable` by default.

auto-discovery-sender {phase1 | enable | disable}

Auto Discovery VPN (ADVPN) allows a shortcut to be created between two VPN peers, establishing dynamic on-demand tunnels between each other to avoid routing through the topology's hub device. Enable or disable sending auto-discovery short-cut messages, or set to `phase1` (by default) to forward short-cut messages according to the `phase1 auto-discovery-sender` setting.

auto-discovery-forwarder {phase1 | enable | disable}

Enable or disable forwarding auto-discovery short-cut messages (see the `auto-discovery-sender` entry above about Auto Discovery), or set to `phase1` (by default) to forward short-cut messages according to the `phase1 auto-discovery-forwarder` setting.

keylifeseconds <seconds>

The amount of time in seconds before the phase 2 encryption key expires, at which time a new encryption key is generated without service interruption. Set the value between 120-172800 seconds (or two minutes to two days). The default is set to 86400.

keylifekbs <bytes>

The number of bytes before the phase 2 encryption key expires, at which point a new encryption key is generated without service interruption. Set the value between 5120-4294967295 bytes (or 5.12KB to 4.29GB). The default is set to 5120. While it is possible to set the value to lower than the default, it is not recommended.

keylife-type {seconds | kbs | both}

The phase 2 encryption key expiration type, used to determine when/how a new encryption key is generated without service interruption. Use `seconds` to then set the key life in seconds, or `kbs` to set the key life in kilobytes (see `keylife` entries above). Use `both` to be able to set both parameters.

single-source {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is *not* available when `l2tp` is set to `enable`. Enable or disable (by default) single source IP restrictions.

- `enable` only accepts single source IPs.
- `disable` accepts source IP range.

`route-overlap {use-old | use-new | allow}`

Note: This entry is *not* available when `l2tp` is set to `enable`. The action taken for overlapping routes.

- `use-old` uses the old route and does not add the new route.
- `use-new` deletes the old route and adds the new route.
- `allow` permits overlapping routes.

`encapsulation {tunnel-mode | transport-mode}`

The Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) encapsulation mode.

- Use `tunnel-mode` to protect the entire inner IP packet, including the inner IP header.
- Use `transport-mode` to insert ESP after the IP header and before a next layer protocol, e.g. TCP, UDP, ICMP, and so on.

`l2tp {enable | disable}`

Enable or disable (by default) L2TP over IPsec.

`comments [string]`

Optional comments.

`protocol <integer>`

The quick mode protocol selector. Set the value between 1-255, or 0 (by default) for all.

`src-addr-type {subnet | range | ip | name | subnet6 | range6 | ip6 | name6}`

Note: This entry is only available when `encapsulation` is set to `tunnel-mode`. The local proxy ID type. The default is set to `subnet`. Use `name` to set type to firewall address or group name. Entries with `6` appended to them allow you to set IPv6 options; the other entries allow you to set IPv4 options (see entries below).

{src-subnet | src-subnet6} <ip_netmask>

Note: This entry is only available when `encapsulation` is set to `tunnel-mode`. The entry with 6 appended is only available when `src-addr-type` is set to `subnet6`. The local proxy ID subnet, either IPv4 or IPv6.

src-port <integer>

The quick mode source port. Set the value between 1-65535, or 0 (by default) for all.

{src-start-ip | src-start-ip6} <start_ip>

Note: This entry is only available when `src-addr-type` is set to either `range/range6` or `ip/ip6`. The local proxy ID start, either IPv4 or IPv6.

{src-end-ip | src-end-ip6} <end_ip>

Note: This entry is only available when `src-addr-type` is set to `range`. The local proxy ID end, either IPv4 or IPv6.

{src-name | src-name6} <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `src-addr-type` is set to `name`. The local proxy ID name, either IPv4 or IPv6.

dst-addr-type {subnet | range | ip | name | subnet6 | range6 | ip6 | name6}

Note: This entry is only available when `encapsulation` is set to `tunnel-mode`. The remote proxy ID type. The default is set to `subnet`. Use `name` to set type to firewall address or group name. Entries with 6 appended to them allow you to set IPv6 options; the other entries allow you to set IPv4 options (see entries below).

{dst-subnet | dst-subnet6} <ip_netmask>

Note: This entry is only available when `encapsulation` is set to `tunnel-mode`. The entry with 6 appended is only available when `dst-addr-type` is set to `subnet6`. The remote proxy ID subnet, either IPv4 or IPv6.

dst-port <integer>

The quick mode destination port. Set the value between 1-65535, or 0 (by default) for all.

{dst-start-ip | dst-start-ip6} <start_ip>

Note: This entry is only available when `dst-addr-type` is set to either `range` or `ip`. The remote proxy ID start, either IPv4 or IPv6.

{dst-end-ip | dst-end-ip6} <end_ip>

Note: This entry is only available when `dst-addr-type` is set to `range`. The remote proxy ID end, either IPv4 or IPv6.

{dst-name | dst-name6} <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `dst-addr-type` is set to `name`. The remote proxy ID name, either IPv4 or IPv6.

vpn l2tp

Introduction.

```
config vpn l2tp
    set eip {ipv4 address}    End IP.
    set sip {ipv4 address}    Start IP.
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiGate as a L2TP gateway.
    set usrgrp {string}      User group. size[35] - datasource(s): user.group.name
    set enforce-ipsec {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IPsec enforcement.
end
```

vpn ocvpn

One-Click VPN (OCVPN) is a cloud-based solution that greatly simplifies the provisioning and configuration of IPsec VPN. The control plane is managed separately from the data plane, and this happens automatically as devices join/leave the VPN, as subnets are added/removed, when dynamic external IPs change (e.g. DHCP/PPPoE), and when WAN interface bindings change (as in the dual WAN redundancy case).

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<pre>config subnets edit <id> set type {subnet interface} set interface <name></pre>	<p>LAN interfaces can now be specified instead of just subnet IP/netmask.</p> <p>Note that <code>interface</code> is only available when <code>type</code> is set to <code>interface</code>.</p>

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config vpn ocvpn</pre>	<p>New <code>config</code> command.</p> <p>Configure One-Click VPN settings.</p>

```
config vpn ocvpn
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable Overlay Controller cloud assisted VPN.
  set poll-interval {integer}  Overlay Controller VPN polling interval. range[30-120]
  config subnets
    edit {id}
      # Internal subnets to register with Overlay Controller VPN service.
      set id {integer}  ID. range[0-4294967295]
      set type {subnet | interface}  Subnet type.
        subnet  Configure participating subnet IP and mask.
        interface  Configure participating LAN interface.
      set subnet {ipv4 classnet any}  IPv4 address and subnet mask.
      set interface {string}  LAN interface. size[15] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
    next
  set ha-alias {string}  Hidden HA alias. size[35]
end
```

vpn pptp

Introduction.

```
config vpn pptp
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiGate as a PPTP gateway.
  set ip-mode {range | usrgrp}  IP assignment mode for PPTP client.
```

```

        range    PPTP client IP from manual config (range from sip to eip).
        usrgrp   PPTP client IP from user-group defined server.
set eip {ipv4 address}    End IP.
set sip {ipv4 address}    Start IP.
set local-ip {ipv4 address}    Local IP to be used for peer's remote IP.
set usrgrp {string}    User group. size[35] - datasource(s): user.group.name
end

```

vpn ssl settings

Use this command to configure basic SSL VPN settings including idle-timeout values and SSL encryption preferences. If required, you can also enable the use of digital certificates for authenticating remote clients, and specify the IP address of any DNS and/or WINS server that resides on the private network behind the FortiGate unit.

Note: SSL VPNs and their commands are only configurable in NAT mode.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>set route-source-interface {enable disable}</code>	This command has been removed. See <code>preserve-session-route</code> under config system interface for a similar command.
<code>set ssl-big-buffer {enable disable}</code>	This command has been removed.

```

config vpn ssl settings
    set reqclientcert {enable | disable}    Enable to require client certificates for all SSL-VPN users.
    set tlsv1-0 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable TLSv1.0.
    set tlsv1-1 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable TLSv1.1.
    set tlsv1-2 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable TLSv1.2.
    set banned-cipher {option}    Select one or more cipher technologies that cannot be used in SSL-VPN negotiations.
        RSA        Ban the use of cipher suites using RSA key.
        DH         Ban the use of cipher suites using DH.
        DHE        Ban the use of cipher suites using authenticated ephemeral DH key agreement.

```

```

ECDH      Ban the use of cipher suites using ECDH key exchange.
ECDHE     Ban the use of cipher suites using authenticated ephemeral ECDH key agreement.
DSS       Ban the use of cipher suites using DSS authentication.
ECDSA     Ban the use of cipher suites using ECDSA authentication.
AES       Ban the use of cipher suites using either 128 or 256 bit AES.
AESGCM    Ban the use of cipher suites AES in Galois Counter Mode (GCM).
CAMELLIA  Ban the use of cipher suites using either 128 or 256 bit CAMELLIA.
3DES      Ban the use of cipher suites using triple DES
SHA1      Ban the use of cipher suites using SHA1.
SHA256    Ban the use of cipher suites using SHA256.
SHA384    Ban the use of cipher suites using SHA384.
STATIC    Ban the use of cipher suites using static keys.
set ssl-insert-empty-fragment {enable | disable}  Enable/disable insertion of empty fragment.
set https-redirect {enable | disable}  Enable/disable redirect of port 80 to SSL-VPN port.
set x-content-type-options {enable | disable}  Add HTTP X-Content-Type-Options header.
set ssl-client-renegotiation {disable | enable}  Enable to allow client renegotiation by the server if the tunnel
goes down.
set force-two-factor-auth {enable | disable}  Enable to force two-factor authentication for all SSL-VPNs.
set unsafe-legacy-renegotiation {enable | disable}  Enable/disable unsafe legacy re-negotiation.
set servercert {string}  Name of the server certificate to be used for SSL-VPNs. size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.cer-
tificate.local.name
set algorithm {high | medium | default | low}  Force the SSL-VPN security level. High allows only high. Medium
allows medium and high. Low allows any.
    high      High algorithms.
    medium    High and medium algorithms.
    default   default
    low       All algorithms.
set idle-timeout {integer}  SSL VPN disconnects if idle for specified time in seconds. range[0-259200]
set auth-timeout {integer}  SSL-VPN authentication timeout (1 - 259200 sec (3 days), 0 for no timeout). range[0-
259200]
set login-attempt-limit {integer}  SSL VPN maximum login attempt times before block (0 - 10, default = 2, 0 = no
limit). range[0-4294967295]
set login-block-time {integer}  Time for which a user is blocked from logging in after too many failed login
attempts (0 - 86400 sec, default = 60). range[0-4294967295]
set login-timeout {integer}  SSLVPN maximum login timeout (10 - 180 sec, default = 30). range[10-180]
set dtls-hello-timeout {integer}  SSLVPN maximum DTLS hello timeout (10 - 60 sec, default = 10). range[10-60]
config tunnel-ip-pools
    edit {name}
        # Names of the IPv4 IP Pool firewall objects that define the IP addresses reserved for remote clients.
        set name {string}  Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name

```

```

    next
config tunnel-ipv6-pools
    edit {name}
        # Names of the IPv6 IP Pool firewall objects that define the IP addresses reserved for remote clients.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    next
set dns-suffix {string}    DNS suffix used for SSL-VPN clients. size[253]
set dns-server1 {ipv4 address}    DNS server 1.
set dns-server2 {ipv4 address}    DNS server 2.
set wins-server1 {ipv4 address}    WINS server 1.
set wins-server2 {ipv4 address}    WINS server 2.
set ipv6-dns-server1 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 DNS server 1.
set ipv6-dns-server2 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 DNS server 2.
set ipv6-wins-server1 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 WINS server 1.
set ipv6-wins-server2 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 WINS server 2.
set route-source-interface {enable | disable}    Enable to allow SSL-VPN sessions to bypass routing and bind to the
incoming interface.
set url-obscuration {enable | disable}    Enable to obscure the host name of the URL of the web browser display.
set http-compression {enable | disable}    Enable to allow HTTP compression over SSL-VPN tunnels.
set http-only-cookie {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSL-VPN support for HttpOnly cookies.
set deflate-compression-level {integer}    Compression level (0~9). range[0-9]
set deflate-min-data-size {integer}    Minimum amount of data that triggers compression (200 - 65535 bytes). range
[200-65535]
set port {integer}    SSL-VPN access port (1 - 65535). range[1-65535]
set port-precedence {enable | disable}    Enable means that if SSL-VPN connections are allowed on an interface admin
GUI connections are blocked on that interface.
set auto-tunnel-static-route {enable | disable}    Enable to auto-create static routes for the SSL-VPN tunnel IP
addresses.
set header-x-forwarded-for {pass | add | remove}    Forward the same, add, or remove HTTP header.
    pass    Forward the same HTTP header.
    add    Add the HTTP header.
    remove    Remove the HTTP header.
config source-interface
    edit {name}
        # SSL VPN source interface of incoming traffic.
        set name {string}    Interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name,system.zone.name
    next
config source-address
    edit {name}
        # Source address of incoming traffic.

```

```
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
    set source-address-negate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable negated source address match.
    config source-address6
        edit {name}
        # IPv6 source address of incoming traffic.
        set name {string}    IPv6 address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    next
    set source-address6-negate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable negated source IPv6 address match.
    set default-portal {string}    Default SSL VPN portal. size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.ssl.web.portal.name
    config authentication-rule
        edit {id}
        # Authentication rule for SSL VPN.
        set id {integer}    ID (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295]
        config source-interface
            edit {name}
            # SSL VPN source interface of incoming traffic.
            set name {string}    Interface name. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name,system.zone.name
        next
        config source-address
            edit {name}
            # Source address of incoming traffic.
            set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
        next
        set source-address-negate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable negated source address match.
        config source-address6
            edit {name}
            # IPv6 source address of incoming traffic.
            set name {string}    IPv6 address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
        next
        set source-address6-negate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable negated source IPv6 address match.
        config users
            edit {name}
            # User name.
            set name {string}    User name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.local.name
        next
        config groups
```



```

    edit {name}
    # User groups.
        set name {string}    Group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
    next
    set portal {string}    SSL VPN portal. size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.ssl.web.portal.name
    set realm {string}    SSL VPN realm. size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.ssl.web.realm.url-path
    set client-cert {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSL VPN client certificate restrictive.
    set cipher {any | high | medium}    SSL VPN cipher strength.
        any    Any cipher strength.
        high    High cipher strength (>= 168 bits).
        medium    Medium cipher strength (>= 128 bits).
    set auth {option}    SSL VPN authentication method restriction.
        any    Any
        local    Local
        radius    RADIUS
        tacacs+    TACACS+
        ldap    LDAP
    next
    set dtls-tunnel {enable | disable}    Enable DTLS to prevent eavesdropping, tampering, or message forgery.
    set check-referer {enable | disable}    Enable/disable verification of referer field in HTTP request header.
    set http-request-header-timeout {integer}    SSL-VPN session is disconnected if an HTTP request header is not
received within this time (1 - 60 sec, default = 20). range[0-4294967295]
    set http-request-body-timeout {integer}    SSL-VPN session is disconnected if an HTTP request body is not received
within this time (1 - 60 sec, default = 20). range[0-4294967295]
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

config authentication-rule

A configuration method to create authentication rules for SSL VPN. Edit to create new and specify the rules using the entries available.

reqclientcert {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the requirement of a client certificate. When enabled, the SSL VPN daemon will require a client certificate for all SSL VPN users, regardless of policy.

tlsv1-0 {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) Transport Layer Security (TLS) version 1.0 (TLSv1.0).

tlsv1-1 {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable TLSv1.1.

tlsv1-2 {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable TLSv1.2, currently the most recent version.

banned-cipher <cipher>

Banned ciphers for SSL VPN. Set one or more of the following to ban the use of cipher suites using:

- **RSA**: Rivest-Shamir-Adleman key
- **DH**: Diffie Hellman
- **DHE**: Authenticated ephemeral DH key agreement
- **ECDH**: Elliptic Curve DH key exchange
- **ECDHE**: Authenticated ephemeral ECDH key agreement
- **DSS**: Digital Signature Standard authentication
- **ECDSA**: Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm authentication
- **AES**: Advanced Encryption Standard, either 128 or 256 bit
- **AESGCM**: AES in Galois Counter Mode
- **CAMELLIA**: A symmetric block cipher algorithm, either 128 or 256 bit
- **3DES**: Triple Data Encryption Standard
- **SHA1**: 160 bit Secure Hash Algorithm
- **SHA256**: 256 bit SHA
- **SHA384**: 384 bit SHA

ssl-insert-empty-fragment {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the insertion of empty fragments, a counter measure to avoid Browser Exploit Against SSL/TLS (BEAST) attacks.

https-redirect {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the redirection of port 80 to the SSL VPN port.

ssl-client-renegotiation {enable | disable}

Enable (allow) or disable (block, by default) client renegotiation by the server if the tunnel goes down.

force-two-factor-auth {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the imposition of two-factor authentication. When enabled, PKI (peer) users will be required to authenticate with their password and certificate authentication. In addition, only PKI users with two-factor authentication enabled will be able to log on to the SSL VPN.

servercert <cert-name>

The server's certificate used to identify the FortiGate unit during the SSL handshake with a web browser when the web browser connects to the login page. The certificate must have already been configured on the FortiGate before entering it here. The default is set to `Fortinet_Factory`.

algorithm {high | medium | low}

Force the SSL VPN security level. `high` allows only high security algorithms. `medium` allows medium and high. `low` allows any.

idle-timeout <timeout>

The period of time in seconds that the SSL VPN will wait before timing out. Set the value between 1-259200 (or 1 second to 3 days), or 0 for no timeout. The default is set to `300`.

auth-timeout <timeout>

The period of time in seconds that the SSL VPN will wait before re-authentication is enforced. Set the value between 1-259200 (or 1 second 3 days), or 0 for no timeout. The default is set to `28800`.

{tunnel-ip-pools | tunnel-ipv6-pools} <pool-name>

The tunnel IPv4 or IPv6 pools reserved for remote clients. The addresses and address groups must have already been configured on the FortiGate unit before entering them here.

dns-suffix <string>

The DNS suffix, with a maximum length of 253 characters.

{dns-server1 | ipv6-dns-server1} <addr-ip4/6>

The IPv4 or IPv6 IP address of the primary DNS server that SSL VPN clients will be able to access after a connection has been established. Use the `dns-server2` or `ipv6-dns-server-2` entries to specify a secondary DNS server (see entry below).

{dns-server2 | ipv6-dns-server2} <addr-ip4/6>

The IPv4 or IPv6 IP address of the secondary DNS server that SSL VPN clients will be able to access after a connection has been established.

{wins-server1 | ipv6-wins-server1} <addr-ip4/6>

The IPv4 or IPv6 IP address of the primary WINS server that SSL VPN clients will be able to access after a connection has been established. Use the `wins-server2` or `ipv6-wins-server2` entries to specify a secondary WINS server (see entry below).

{wins-server2 | ipv6-wins-server2} <addr-ip4/6>

The IPv4 or IPv6 IP address of the secondary WINS server that SSL VPN clients will be able to access after a connection has been established.

route-source-interface {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) allowing SSL VPN connections to bypass routing and bind to the incoming interface.

url-obscuration {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) encryption of the host name of the URL in the display (web address) of the web browser (for web mode only).

Enabling this feature is required for International Computer Security Association (ICSA) SSL VPN certification. Note that, when enabled, bookmark details are not visible.

http-compression {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the use of compression between the FortiGate unit and the client web browser. When enabled, use the `deflate-compression-level` and `deflate-min-data-size` entries to tune performance (see entries below).

http-only-cookie {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable SSL VPN support for [HttpOnly](#) cookies.

deflate-compression-level <integer>

Note: This entry is only available when `http-compression` is set to `enable`.

The compression level. Set the value between 1-9. Higher compression values reduce the volume of data but requires more processing time. The default is set to 6.

deflate-min-data-size <integer>

Note: This entry is only available when `http-compression` is set to `enable`.

The minimum amount of data in bytes that will trigger compression. Set the value between 200-65535. The default is set to 300.

port <integer>

The SSL VPN access port. Set the value between 1-65535. When VDOMs are enabled, this feature is set per VDOM. The default value is set to 10443.

port-precedence {enable | disable}

Use this command to control how the FortiGate handles a connection attempt if there is a conflict between administrator access to the GUI and to SSL VPN. This can happen if both SSL VPN and HTTPS admin GUI access use the same port on the same FortiGate interface. When this happens, if `port-precedence` is enabled when an HTTPS connection attempt is received on an interface with an SSL VPN portal the FortiGate assumes its an SSL VPN connection attempt and admin GUI access is not allowed. If `port-precedence` is disabled the FortiGate assumes its an admin GUI access attempt and SSL VPN access is not allowed.

Enabled by default.

auto-tunnel-static-route {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the automatic creation of static routes for the networks that can be accessed through the SSL VPN tunnel. This is only possible if tunnel mode is enabled.

header-x-forwarded-for {pass | add | remove}

Action when HTTP x-forwarded-for header to forwarded requests.

- `pass` forwards the same HTTP header.
- `add` (by default) adds the HTTP header.
- `remove` removes the HTTP header.

source-interface <interface>

The interface(s) to listen on for SSL clients. You must have already configured the interfaces on the FortiGate unit before entering them here. Enter `any` to match any interface in the virtual domain.

{source-address | source-address6} [addr-ip4/6]

An optional feature to specify IPv4 or IPv6 addresses from which users can log in. Leave this entry blank to allow login from any address.

{source-address-negate | source-address6-negate} {enable | disable}

Enable or disable {by default} inverting the `source-address` or `source-address6` entries so that it instead specifies IPv4 or IPv6 addresses to not allow.

default-portal <portal-name>

The name of the default SSL VPN portal, either one of the defaults (`full-access`, `tunnel-access`, or `web-access`) or a custom portal created on the FortiGate unit.

dtls-tunnel {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) tunnel, allowing datagram-based applications to communicate in a way that prevents eavesdropping, tampering, or message forgery.

check-referer {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the verification of referer field in HTTP request header.

http-request-header-timeout <timeout>

The amount of time in seconds before the HTTP connection disconnects if HTTP request header is not complete. Set value between 1-60 (or one second to one minute). The default is set to 20.

http-request-body-timeout <timeout>

The amount of time in seconds before the HTTP connection disconnects if HTTP request body is not complete. Set value between 1-60 (or one second to one minute). The default is set to 30.

vpn ssl web host-check-software

Use this command to define the Windows Firewall software and add your own software requirements to the host check list.

Note: Host integrity checking is only possible with client computers running Microsoft Windows platforms.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set os-type macos</code>	New Mac OS type for host checking. Note that, once <code>os-type</code> is set to <code>macos</code> , the <code>type</code> , <code>version</code> , and <code>guid</code> entries are not available.

```
config vpn ssl web host-check-software
edit {name}
# SSL-VPN host check software.
set name {string} Name. size[63]
```

```

set os-type {windows | macos}  OS type.
    windows  Microsoft Windows operating system.
    macos    Apple MacOS operating system.
set type {av | fw}  Type.
    av  AntiVirus.
    fw  Firewall.
set version {string}  Version. size[35]
set guid {string}  Globally unique ID.
config check-item-list
    edit {id}
        # Check item list.
        set id {integer}  ID (0 - 4294967295). range[0-65535]
        set action {require | deny}  Action.
            require  Require.
            deny     Deny.
        set type {file | registry | process}  Type.
            file      File.
            registry  Registry.
            process   Process.
        set target {string}  Target. size[255]
        set version {string}  Version. size[35]
        config md5s
            edit {id}
                # MD5 checksum.
                set id {string}  Hex string of MD5 checksum. size[32]
            next
        next
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

config check-item-list

A configuration method to set various check item list variables. Edit to create new and configure settings using the following entries.

action {require | deny}

The course of action taken when the item is found.

- `require`: If the item is found, the client meets the check item condition. This is the default option.
- `deny`: If the item is found, the client is considered to not meet the check item condition. Use this option if it is necessary to prevent the use of a particular security product.

type {file | registry | process}

The method used to check for the application.

- `file`: Looks for any file that would confirm the presence of the application, not just the application's executable file. This is the default option. Once set, use the `target` entry below and set it to the full path to the file. Where applicable, you can use environment variables enclosed in percent (%) marks, e.g. `%ProgramFiles%\Fortinet\FortiClient\FortiClient.exe`.
- `registry`: Looks for a Windows Registry entry. Once set, use the `target` entry below and set it to the registry item, e.g. `HKLM\SOFTWARE\Fortinet\FortiClient\Misc`.
- `process`: Looks for the application as a running process. Once set, use the `target` entry below and set it to the application's executable file name.

target <target>

Depending on what the type entry above is set to, set `target` as follows:

- If type is `file`, enter the full path to the file.
- If type is `registry`, enter the registry item.
- If type is `process`, enter the application's executable file name.

version <version>

Enter the application version.

md5s <md5s>

If type is set to `file` or `process`, this entry can be used to enter one or more known MD5 signatures for the application's executable file. You can use a third-party utility to calculate MD5 signatures or hashes for any file. In addition, you can enter multiple signatures to match multiple versions of the application.

type {av | fw}

The software type, antivirus (av, set by default) or firewall (fw). If the software does both, create two separate entries and assign each entry with a type.

version <version-number>

Enter the software version.

guid <guid-value>

Enter the globally unique identifier (GUID) for the host check application. The value is a hexadecimal number, usually in the form xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxx. Windows uses GUIDs to identify applications in the Windows Registry.

vpn ssl web portal

Use this command to configure the SSL VPN portal service, allowing you to access network resources through a secure channel using a web browser. Administrators can configure login privileges for users and define which network resources are available to the users, including HTTP/HTTPS, telnet, FTP, SMB/CIFS, VNC, RDP, and SSH.

The portal configuration determines what the user sees when they log in to the FortiGate. Both the administrator and the user have the ability to customize the SSL VPN portal.

There are three pre-defined default web portal configurations available:

- **full-access:** Includes all widgets available to the user – Session Information, Connection Tool, Bookmarks, and Tunnel Mode.
- **tunnel-access:** Includes Session Information and Tunnel Mode widgets.
- **web-access:** Includes Session Information and Bookmarks widgets.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
config bookmarks edit <name>	New RDP application settings.

Command	Description
<pre> set apptype rdp set server-layout en-gb-qwerty es-es-qwerty fr-ch-qwertz ja-jp-qwerty pt-br-qwerty tr-tr-qwerty set preconnection-id set preconnection-bloc set load-balanceing-info </pre>	<p>New server keyboard layouts include <code>en-gb-qwerty</code> (UK English), <code>es-es-qwerty</code> (Spanish), <code>fr-ch-qwertz</code> (Swiss French, <code>qwerty</code>), <code>ja-jp-qwerty</code> (Japanese), <code>pt-br-qwerty</code> (Portuguese/Brazilian), <code>tr-tr-qwerty</code> (Turkish).</p> <p><code>preconnection-id</code> is the numeric ID of the RDP source (0-2147483648).</p> <p><code>preconnection-bloc</code> is an arbitrary string that identifies the RDP source.</p> <p><code>load-balancing-info</code> is the load balancing information or cookie that should be provided to the connection broker.</p>

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<code>set hide-sso-credential {enable disable}</code>	Enable to prevent SSO credentials being sent in a javascript file to client.
<code>set smbv1 {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable (by default) support of SMBv1 for Samba. Note that this command is only available for high-end FortiGate models.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>set hide-sso-credential {enable disable}</code>	Enable to prevent SSO credentials being sent in a javascript file to client.
<code>set smbv1 {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable (by default) support of SMBv1 for Samba.

Command	Description
	Note that this command is only available for high-end FortiGate models.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config split-dns edit <name> set domains "abc.com, cde.com" set dns-server1 <dns-server-ip> set dns-server2 <dns-server-ip> set ipv6-dns-server1 <dns-server-ip> set ipv6-dns-server2 <dns-server-ip> next ...</pre>	<p>New DNS split tunneling option for SSL VPN portals, allowing you to specify which domains are resolved by the DNS server specified by the VPN, while all other domains are resolved by the DNS specified locally.</p>
<pre>config os-check-list {macos-high-sierra-10.13 macos-sierra-10.12 os-x-el- capitan-10.11 os-x-mavericks-10.9 os-x-yosemite-10.10} set action {deny allow check-up-to-date} set tolerance <value> set latest-patch-level <value> next ...</pre>	<p>New Mac OS host check function for SSL VPN.</p> <p>Note that <code>config os-check-list</code> is only available when <code>os-check</code> is set to enable. Also, the <code>tolerance</code> and <code>latest-patch-level</code> entries are only available when <code>action</code> is set to <code>check-up-to-date</code>.</p>
<pre>config vpn ssl web portal edit {name} # Portal. set name {string} Portal name. size[35] set tunnel-mode {enable disable} Enable/disable IPv4 SSL-VPN tunnel mode. set ip-mode {range user-group} Method by which users of this SSL-VPN tunnel obtain IP addresses. range Use the IP addresses available for all SSL-VPN users as defined by the SSL settings command. user-group Use IP the addresses associated with individual users or user groups (usually from external auth servers). set auto-connect {enable disable} Enable/disable automatic connect by client when system is up.</pre>	

```
set keep-alive {enable | disable}    Enable/disable automatic reconnect for FortiClient connections.
set save-password {enable | disable}  Enable/disable FortiClient saving the user's password.
config ip-pools
    edit {name}
        # IPv4 firewall source address objects reserved for SSL-VPN tunnel mode clients.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
set exclusive-routing {enable | disable}  Enable/disable all traffic go through tunnel only.
set service-restriction {enable | disable}  Enable/disable tunnel service restriction.
set split-tunneling {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv4 split tunneling.
config split-tunneling-routing-address
    edit {name}
        # IPv4 SSL-VPN tunnel mode firewall address objects that override firewall policy destination addresses to
control split-tunneling access.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
set dns-server1 {ipv4 address}    IPv4 DNS server 1.
set dns-server2 {ipv4 address}    IPv4 DNS server 2.
set dns-suffix {string}    DNS suffix. size[253]
set wins-server1 {ipv4 address}    IPv4 WINS server 1.
set wins-server2 {ipv4 address}    IPv4 WINS server 1.
set ipv6-tunnel-mode {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IPv6 SSL-VPN tunnel mode.
config ipv6-pools
    edit {name}
        # IPv4 firewall source address objects reserved for SSL-VPN tunnel mode clients.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    next
set ipv6-exclusive-routing {enable | disable}  Enable/disable all IPv6 traffic go through tunnel only.
set ipv6-service-restriction {enable | disable}  Enable/disable IPv6 tunnel service restriction.
set ipv6-split-tunneling {enable | disable}    Enable/disable IPv6 split tunneling.
config ipv6-split-tunneling-routing-address
    edit {name}
        # IPv6 SSL-VPN tunnel mode firewall address objects that override firewall policy destination addresses to
control split-tunneling access.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name,firewall.addrgrp6.name
    next
set ipv6-dns-server1 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 DNS server 1.
set ipv6-dns-server2 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 DNS server 2.
```

```

set ipv6-wins-server1 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 WINS server 1.
set ipv6-wins-server2 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 WINS server 2.
set web-mode {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSL VPN web mode.
set display-bookmark {enable | disable}    Enable to display the web portal bookmark widget.
set user-bookmark {enable | disable}    Enable to allow web portal users to create their own bookmarks.
set allow-user-access {option}    Allow user access to SSL-VPN applications.
    web                HTTP/HTTPS access.
    ftp                FTP access.
    smb                SMB/CIFS access.
    telnet             TELNET access.
    ssh                SSH access.
    vnc                VNC access.
    rdp                RDP access.
    ping              PING access.
    citrix             CITRIX access.
    portforward        Port Forward access.
set user-group-bookmark {enable | disable}    Enable to allow web portal users to create bookmarks for all users
in the same user group.
config bookmark-group
    edit {name}
    # Portal bookmark group.
    set name {string}    Bookmark group name. size[35]
    config bookmarks
        edit {name}
        # Bookmark table.
        set name {string}    Bookmark name. size[35]
        set apptype {option}    Application type.
            citrix            Citrix.
            ftp              FTP.
            portforward        Port Forward.
            rdp              RDP.
            smb              SMB/CIFS.
            ssh              SSH.
            telnet            Telnet.
            vnc              VNC.
            web              HTTP/HTTPS.
        set url {string}    URL parameter. size[128]
        set host {string}    Host name/IP parameter. size[128]
        set folder {string}    Network shared file folder parameter. size[128]
        set additional-params {string}    Additional parameters. size[128]

```

```

set listening-port {integer}    Listening port (0 - 65535). range[0-65535]
set remote-port {integer}      Remote port (0 - 65535). range[0-65535]
set show-status-window {enable | disable}  Enable/disable showing of status window.
set description {string}      Description. size[128]
set server-layout {option}     Server side keyboard layout.
    de-de-qwertz    German (qwertz).
    en-gb-qwerty    English (UK).
    en-us-qwerty    English (US).
    es-es-qwerty    Spanish.
    fr-fr-azerty    French (azerty).
    fr-ch-qwertz    Swiss French (qwertz).
    it-it-qwerty    Italian.
    ja-jp-qwerty    Japanese.
    pt-br-qwerty    Portuguese/Brazilian.
    sv-se-qwerty    Swedish.
    tr-tr-qwerty    Turkish.
    failsafe        Unknown keyboard.
set security {rdp | nla | tls | any}  Security mode for RDP connection.
    rdp    Standard RDP encryption.
    nla    Network Level Authentication.
    tls    TLS encryption.
    any    Allow the server to choose the type of security.
set preconnection-id {integer}  The numeric ID of the RDP source (0-2147483648). range[0-
2147483648]

set preconnection-blob {string}  An arbitrary string which identifies the RDP source. size[511]
set load-balancing-info {string}  The load balancing information or cookie which should be
provided to the connection broker. size[511]
set port {integer}    Remote port. range[0-65535]
set logon-user {string}  Logon user. size[35]
set logon-password {password_string}  Logon password. size[128]
set sso {disable | static | auto}  Single Sign-On.
    disable    Disable SSO.
    static     Static SSO.
    auto       Auto SSO.
config form-data
    edit {name}
    # Form data.
        set name {string}    Name. size[35]
        set value {string}    Value. size[63]
    next

```

```

        set sso-credential {sslvpn-login | alternative}    Single sign-on credentials.
            sslvpn-login  SSL-VPN login.
            alternative   Alternative.
        set sso-username {string}    SSO user name. size[35]
        set sso-password {password_string}    SSO password. size[128]
        set sso-credential-sent-once {enable | disable}    Single sign-on credentials are only sent once
to remote server.
        next
    next
    set display-connection-tools {enable | disable}    Enable to display the web portal connection tools widget.
    set display-history {enable | disable}    Enable to display the web portal user login history widget.
    set display-status {enable | disable}    Enable to display the web portal status widget.
    set heading {string}    Web portal heading message. size[31]
    set redir-url {string}    Client login redirect URL. size[255]
    set theme {option}    Web portal color scheme.
        blue        Light blue theme.
        green        Green theme.
        red          Red theme.
        melongene    Melongene theme (eggplant color).
        mariner      Mariner theme (dark blue color).
    set custom-lang {string}    Change the web portal display language. Overrides config system global set language.
You can use config system custom-language and execute system custom-language to add custom language files. size[35] -
datasource(s): system.custom-language.name
    set smb-ntlmv1-auth {enable | disable}    Enable support of NTLMv1 for Samba authentication.
    set smbv1 {enable | disable}    Enable/disable support of SMBv1 for Samba.
    set host-check {option}    Type of host checking performed on endpoints.
        none        No host checking.
        av          AntiVirus software recognized by the Windows Security Center.
        fw          Firewall software recognized by the Windows Security Center.
        av-fw       AntiVirus and firewall software recognized by the Windows Security Center.
        custom      Custom.
    set host-check-interval {integer}    Periodic host check interval. Value of 0 means disabled and host checking
only happens when the endpoint connects. range[120-259200]
    config host-check-policy
        edit {name}
        # One or more policies to require the endpoint to have specific security software.
        set name {string}    Host check software list name. size[64] - datasource(s): vpn.ssl.web.host-check-soft-
ware.name
    next
    set limit-user-logins {enable | disable}    Enable to limit each user to one SSL-VPN session at a time.

```



```

set mac-addr-check {enable | disable}  Enable/disable MAC address host checking.
set mac-addr-action {allow | deny}  Client MAC address action.
    allow  Allow connection when client MAC address is matched.
    deny   Deny connection when client MAC address is matched.
config mac-addr-check-rule
    edit {name}
        # Client MAC address check rule.
        set name {string}  Client MAC address check rule name. size[35]
        set mac-addr-mask {integer}  Client MAC address mask. range[1-48]
        config mac-addr-list
            edit {addr}
                # Client MAC address list.
                set addr {mac address}  Client MAC address.
            next
        next
    set os-check {enable | disable}  Enable to let the FortiGate decide action based on client OS.
config os-check-list
    edit {name}
        # SSL VPN OS checks.
        set name {string}  Name. size[35]
        set action {deny | allow | check-up-to-date}  OS check options.
            deny          Deny all OS versions.
            allow         Allow any OS version.
            check-up-to-date  Verify OS is up-to-date.
        set tolerance {integer}  OS patch level tolerance. range[0-255]
        set latest-patch-level {string}  Latest OS patch level.
    next
set forticlient-download {enable | disable}  Enable/disable download option for FortiClient.
set forticlient-download-method {direct | ssl-vpn}  FortiClient download method.
    direct  Download via direct link.
    ssl-vpn Download via SSL-VPN.
set customize-forticlient-download-url {enable | disable}  Enable support of customized download URL for
FortiClient.
set windows-forticlient-download-url {string}  Download URL for Windows FortiClient. size[1023]
set macos-forticlient-download-url {string}  Download URL for Mac FortiClient. size[1023]
set skip-check-for-unsupported-os {enable | disable}  Enable to skip host check if client OS does not support
it.
set skip-check-for-unsupported-browser {enable | disable}  Enable to skip host check if browser does not sup-
port it.
set hide-sso-credential {enable | disable}  Enable to prevent SSO credential being sent to client.

```

```
config split-dns
  edit {id}
    # Split DNS for SSL VPN.
    set id {integer} ID. range[0-4294967294]
    set domains {string} Split DNS domains used for SSL-VPN clients separated by comma(,). size[1024]
    set dns-server1 {ipv4 address} DNS server 1.
    set dns-server2 {ipv4 address} DNS server 2.
    set ipv6-dns-server1 {ipv6 address} IPv6 DNS server 1.
    set ipv6-dns-server2 {ipv6 address} IPv6 DNS server 2.
  next
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

reqclientcert {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the requirement of a client certificate. When enabled, the SSL VPN daemon will require a client certificate for all SSL VPN users, regardless of policy.

{tunnel-mode | ipv6-tunnel-mode} {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable IPv4 or IPv6 tunnel mode.

ip-mode {range | usrgrp}

Note: This entry is only available when `tunnel-mode` is set to `enable`.

How users of this SSL VPN tunnel get IP addresses:

- `range` use the IP addresses available for all SSL VPN users as defined by the [config vpn ssl settings](#) command.
- `user-group` use IP addresses associated with individual users or user groups (usually from external authentication servers (such as RADIUS, LDAP, etc.).

auto-connect {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when either `tunnel-mode` or `ipv6-tunnel-mode` is set to `enable`.

Enable or disable (by default) FortiClient automatic connection when the system is up.

forticlient-download {enable | disable}

You can use the following options to enable or disable allowing SSL VPN users to download FortiClient from the SSL VPN web portal. If `forticlient-download` is enabled, you can select the download method (`direct` or over the `ssl_vpn`). You can also optionally specify a custom URL for downloading the Windows and Mac OS versions of FortiClient.

Syntax

```
config vpn ssl web portal
  edit <portal name>
    set forticlient-download {enable | disable}
    set forticlient-download-method {direct | ssl-vpn}
    set customize-forticlient-download-url {enable | disable}
    set windows-forticlient-download-url <url>
    set macos-forticlient-download-url <url>
  end
```

keep-alive {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when either `tunnel-mode` or `ipv6-tunnel-mode` is set to `enable`.

Enable or disable (by default) the automatic reconnection for FortiClient connections by the client.

save-password {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when either `tunnel-mode` or `ipv6-tunnel-mode` is set to `enable`.

Enable or disable (by default) FortiClient saving the user's password.

{ip-pools | ipv6-pools} <pool-names>

Note: These entries are only available when `tunnel-mode` or `ipv6-tunnel-mode` are set to `enable`.

The names of the IPv4 or IPv6 firewall address objects reserved for SSL VPN tunnel mode clients.

{split-tunneling | ipv6-split-tunneling} {enable | disable}

Note: These entries are only available when `tunnel-mode` or `ipv6-tunnel-mode` are set to `enable`.

Enable (by default) or disable IPv4 or IPv6 split tunneling, ensuring that only the traffic for the private network is sent to the SSL VPN gateway.

{split-tunneling-routing-address | ipv6-split-tunneling-routing-address} <address-name>

Note: These entries are only available when `tunnel-mode` or `ipv6-tunnel-mode` are set to `enable`.

IPv4 or IPv6 SSL VPN tunnel mode firewall address objects that override firewall policy destination addresses to control spit-tunneling access.

{dns-server1 | ipv6-dns-server1} <addr-ip4/6>

Note: These entries are only available when `tunnel-mode` or `ipv6-tunnel-mode` are set to `enable`.

The IPv4 or IPv6 IP address of the primary DNS server that SSL VPN clients will be able to access after a connection has been established. Use the `dns-server2` or `ipv6-dns-server-2` entries to specify a secondary DNS server (see entry below).

{dns-server2 | ipv6-dns-server2} <addr-ip4/6>

Note: These entries are only available when `tunnel-mode` or `ipv6-tunnel-mode` are set to `enable`.

The IPv4 or IPv6 IP address of the secondary DNS server that SSL VPN clients will be able to access after a connection has been established.

{wins-server1 | ipv6-wins-server1} <addr-ip4/6>

Note: These entries are only available when `tunnel-mode` or `ipv6-tunnel-mode` are set to `enable`.

The IPv4 or IPv6 IP address of the primary WINS server that SSL VPN clients will be able to access after a connection has been established. Use the `wins-server2` or `ipv6-wins-server2` entries to specify a secondary WINS server (see entry below).

{wins-server2 | ipv6-wins-server2}

Note: These entries are only available when `tunnel-mode` or `ipv6-tunnel-mode` are set to `enable`.

The IPv4 or IPv6 IP address of the secondary WINS server that SSL VPN clients will be able to access after a connection has been established.

web-mode {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) web mode.

display-bookmark {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `web-mode` is set to `enable`.

Enable (by default) or disable the web mode bookmark widget.

user-bookmark {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `web-mode` is set to `enable`.

Enable (by default) or disable allowing web portal users to create their own bookmarks.

user-group-bookmark {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `web-mode` is set to `enable`.

Enable (by default) or disable allowing web portal users to create bookmarks for all users in the same user group.

display-connection-tools {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `web-mode` is set to `enable`.

Enable (by default) or disable the web portal connection tools widget.

display-history {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `web-mode` is set to `enable`.

Enable (by default) or disable the web portal user login history widget.

display-status {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `web-mode` is set to `enable`.

Enable (by default) or disable the web portal status widget.

heading <message>

The portal heading message.

redir-url <url>

Note: This entry is only available when `web-mode` is set to `enable`.

The URL of the web page that enables the FortiGate to display a second HTML page when the web portal home page is displayed. The web server for this URL must reside on the private network behind the FortiGate unit.

theme <color>

Note: This entry is only available when `web-mode` is set to `enable`.

The web portal color scheme: `blue` (by default), `gray`, or `orange`.

custom-lang <language>

Note: This entry is only available when `web-mode` is set to `enable`.

Change the display language for this web portal. Select from the following options. The options are named according to the config system `custom-language` command that you can use to customize the content of these language files. By default the content of these language files is provided by Fortinet in the languages listed below.

- `GB2312`: Simplified Chinese (using the Guojia Biaozhun (GB), or 'national standard' in Chinese, is the registered character set of the People's Republic of China used for Simplified Chinese characters).
- `big5`: Traditional Chinese (using Big5, or Big-5, is a Chinese character encoding method used in Taiwan, Hong Kong, and Macau for Traditional Chinese characters).
- `en`: English (using the English character set (Caribbean)).
- `eur-kr`: Korean (using the Wxtended Unix Code (EUC) is a character encoding system used for Japanese, Korean, and Simplified Chinese. This featured option is specifically for Korean).
- `fr`: French (Using the French character set (Standard)).
- `pg`: Portuguese (Using the Proto-Germanic (PG), also called Common Germanic, character set).
- `sp`: Spanish (using the Spanish character set).
- `x-sjis`: Japanese (using the Shift Japanese Industrial Standards (SJIS), is a character encoding method for Japanese).

host-check {none | av | fw | av-fw | custom}

The type of host checking to perform on endpoints.

- `none`: Do not perform host checking.
- `av`: Check for antivirus software recognized by the Windows Security Center.
- `fw`: Check for firewall software recognized by the Windows Security Center.
- `av-fw`: Check for both antivirus and firewall software recognized by the Windows Security Center.
- `custom`: Check for the software defined in the `host-check-policy` entry.

host-check-interval <seconds>

How often the host check function periodically verifies the host check status of endpoints. Range is 120 to 259200 seconds. Default is 0, which disables periodic host checking. If disabled host checking only happens when the endpoint initially connects to the SSL VPN. Only available if host-check is enabled.

host-check-policy {<policy> [<policy>...]}

Select one or more host-check policy to perform different types of host checking. You can use this option to add a wide range of host checking options to require endpoints to have a wide range of security software. You can see the complete list of host check policies and add more using the [config vpn ssl host-check-software](#) command.

This option is available when `host-check` is set to `custom`.

limit-user-logins {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) permitting each user one SSL VPN session at a time.

mac-addr-check {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) MAC address host checking.

os-check {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the FortiGate unit to determine what action to take depending on what operating system the client has.

skip-check-for-unsupported-os {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `os-check` is set to `enable`.

Enable (by default) or disable skipping the host check if the client operating system doesn't support it.

skip-check-for-unsupported-browser {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when either `os-check` is set to `enable`.

Enable (by default) or disable skipping the host check if the browser doesn't support it.

vpn ssl web realm

Use this command to configure SSL VPN realms. Use this command to customize the SSL VPN login page for your users, and also create multiple SSL VPN logins for different user groups.

Note: When you edit a realm, the name entered is the URL path used to access the SSL VPN login page (do *not* include `http://`).

```
config vpn ssl web realm
  edit {url-path}
    # Realm.
    set url-path {string}    URL path to access SSL-VPN login page. size[35]
    set max-concurrent-user {integer}    Maximum concurrent users (0 - 65535, 0 means unlimited). range[0-65535]
    set login-page {string}    Replacement HTML for SSL-VPN login page. size[32768]
    set virtual-host {string}    Virtual host name for realm. size[255]
  next
end
```

max-concurrent-user <number>

The maximum number of concurrent users. Set the value between 1-65535, or 0 (by default) for unlimited users.

login-page <content>

Replacement HTML for the SSL VPN login page.

virtual-host [host-name]

The virtual host name for the realm (optional), with a maximum length of 255 characters.

vpn ssl web user-bookmark

Configure SSL VPN user bookmarks.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<pre>config bookmarks edit <name> set apptype rdp set server-layout en-gb-qwerty es-es-qwerty fr-ch-qwertz ja-jp-qwerty pt-br-qwerty tr-tr-qwerty set preconnection-id set preconnection-blob set load-balanceing-info</pre>	<p>New RDP application settings.</p> <p>New server keyboard layouts include <code>en-gb-qwerty</code> (UK English), <code>es-es-qwerty</code> (Spanish), <code>fr-ch-qwertz</code> (Swiss French, <code>qwerty</code>), <code>ja-jp-qwerty</code> (Japanese), <code>pt-br-qwerty</code> (Portuguese/Brazilian), <code>tr-tr-qwerty</code> (Turkish).</p> <p><code>preconnection-id</code> is the numeric ID of the RDP source (0-2147483648).</p> <p><code>preconnection-blob</code> is an arbitrary string that identifies the RDP source.</p> <p><code>load-balancing-info</code> is the load balancing information or cookie that should be provided to the connection broker.</p>

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre> config bookmarks edit <name> set sso-credential-sent-once {enable disable} next ... </pre>	<p>Single sign-on credentials are only sent once to remote server. When disabled, basic authorization will be sent only once to the remote server.</p>
<pre> config vpn ssl web user-bookmark edit {name} # Configure SSL VPN user bookmark. set name {string} User and group name. size[101] set custom-lang {string} Personal language. size[35] - datasource(s): system.custom-language.name config bookmarks edit {name} # Bookmark table. set name {string} Bookmark name. size[35] set apptype {option} Application type. citrix Citrix. ftp FTP. portforward Port Forward. rdp RDP. smb SMB/CIFS. ssh SSH. telnet Telnet. vnc VNC. web HTTP/HTTPS. set url {string} URL parameter. size[128] set host {string} Host name/IP parameter. size[128] set folder {string} Network shared file folder parameter. size[128] set additional-params {string} Additional parameters. size[128] set listening-port {integer} Listening port (0 - 65535). range[0-65535] set remote-port {integer} Remote port (0 - 65535). range[0-65535] set show-status-window {enable disable} Enable/disable showing of status window. set description {string} Description. size[128] set server-layout {option} Server side keyboard layout. de-de-qwertz German (qwertz). en-gb-qwerty English (UK). en-us-qwerty English (US). </pre>	

```

        es-es-qwerty  Spanish.
        fr-fr-azerty  French (azerty).
        fr-ch-qwertz  Swiss French (qwertz).
        it-it-qwerty  Italian.
        ja-jp-qwerty  Japanese.
        pt-br-qwerty  Portuguese/Brazilian.
        sv-se-qwerty  Swedish.
        tr-tr-qwerty  Turkish.
        failsafe      Unknown keyboard.
set security {rdp | nla | tls | any}  Security mode for RDP connection.
    rdp  Standard RDP encryption.
    nla  Network Level Authentication.
    tls  TLS encryption.
    any  Allow the server to choose the type of security.
set preconnection-id {integer}  The numeric ID of the RDP source (0-2147483648). range[0-2147483648]
set preconnection-blob {string}  An arbitrary string which identifies the RDP source. size[511]
set load-balancing-info {string}  The load balancing information or cookie which should be provided to
the connection broker. size[511]
set port {integer}  Remote port. range[0-65535]
set logon-user {string}  Logon user. size[35]
set logon-password {password_string}  Logon password. size[128]
set sso {disable | static | auto}  Single Sign-On.
    disable  Disable SSO.
    static  Static SSO.
    auto  Auto SSO.
config form-data
    edit {name}
        # Form data.
        set name {string}  Name. size[35]
        set value {string}  Value. size[63]
    next
set sso-credential {sslvpn-login | alternative}  Single sign-on credentials.
    sslvpn-login  SSL-VPN login.
    alternative  Alternative.
set sso-username {string}  SSO user name. size[35]
set sso-password {password_string}  SSO password. size[128]
set sso-credential-sent-once {enable | disable}  Single sign-on credentials are only sent once to
remote server.
    next
    next

```

```
end
```

vpn ssl web user-group-bookmark

Use this command to add bookmarks that will appear on the SSL VPN web portal for all of the users in a user group.

```
config vpn ssl web user-group-bookmark
  edit {name}
    # Configure SSL VPN user group bookmark.
    set name {string}  Group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
    config bookmarks
      edit {name}
        # Bookmark table.
        set name {string}  Bookmark name. size[35]
        set apptype {option}  Application type.
          citrix      Citrix.
          ftp         FTP.
          portforward Port Forward.
          rdp         RDP.
          smb         SMB/CIFS.
          ssh         SSH.
          telnet      Telnet.
          vnc         VNC.
          web         HTTP/HTTPS.
        set url {string}  URL parameter. size[128]
        set host {string}  Host name/IP parameter. size[128]
        set folder {string}  Network shared file folder parameter. size[128]
        set additional-params {string}  Additional parameters. size[128]
        set listening-port {integer}  Listening port (0 - 65535). range[0-65535]
        set remote-port {integer}  Remote port (0 - 65535). range[0-65535]
        set show-status-window {enable | disable}  Enable/disable showing of status window.
        set description {string}  Description. size[128]
        set server-layout {option}  Server side keyboard layout.
          de-de-qwertz  German (qwertz).
          en-gb-qwerty  English (UK).
          en-us-qwerty  English (US).
          es-es-qwerty  Spanish.
          fr-fr-azerty  French (azerty).
          fr-ch-qwertz  Swiss French (qwertz).
```

```

        it-it-qwerty    Italian.
        ja-jp-qwerty    Japanese.
        pt-br-qwerty    Portuguese/Brazilian.
        sv-se-qwerty    Swedish.
        tr-tr-qwerty    Turkish.
        failsafe         Unknown keyboard.
set security {rdp | nla | tls | any}    Security mode for RDP connection.
    rdp    Standard RDP encryption.
    nla    Network Level Authentication.
    tls    TLS encryption.
    any    Allow the server to choose the type of security.
set preconnection-id {integer}    The numeric ID of the RDP source (0-2147483648). range[0-2147483648]
set preconnection-blob {string}    An arbitrary string which identifies the RDP source. size[511]
set load-balancing-info {string}    The load balancing information or cookie which should be provided to
the connection broker. size[511]
set port {integer}    Remote port. range[0-65535]
set logon-user {string}    Logon user. size[35]
set logon-password {password_string}    Logon password. size[128]
set sso {disable | static | auto}    Single Sign-On.
    disable    Disable SSO.
    static    Static SSO.
    auto    Auto SSO.
config form-data
    edit {name}
    # Form data.
        set name {string}    Name. size[35]
        set value {string}    Value. size[63]
    next
set sso-credential {sslvpn-login | alternative}    Single sign-on credentials.
    sslvpn-login    SSL-VPN login.
    alternative    Alternative.
set sso-username {string}    SSO user name. size[35]
set sso-password {password_string}    SSO password. size[128]
set sso-credential-sent-once {enable | disable}    Single sign-on credentials are only sent once to
remote server.
    next
next
end

```

config bookmarks

A configuration method to configure bookmarks to add to the user group.

apptype {citrix | ftp | portforward | rdp | smb | ssh | telnet | vnc | web}

The identifier of the service to associate with the bookmark.

- `citrix`: Citrix web server interface
- `ftp`: FTP services
- `portforward`: port forwarding
- `rdp`: Windows Terminal services
- `smb`: SMB/CIFS (Windows file share) services
- `ssh`: SSH services
- `telnet`: telnet services
- `vnc`: VNC services
- `web`: HTTP/HTTPS services (this is set by default)

folder <folder>

Note: This entry is only available when `apptype` is set to either `ftp` or `smb`.

The folder path.

host <host>

Note: This entry is only available when `apptype` is set to either `portforward`, `rdp`, `ssh`, `telnet`, or `vnc`.

The host IP address or FQDN.

listening-port <port-number>

Note: This entry is only available when `apptype` is set to `portforward`.

The listening port, set to 0 by default.

remote-port <port-number>

Note: This entry is only available when `apptype` is set to `portforward`.

The remote port, set to 0 by default.

show-status-window {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `apptype` is set to `portforward`.

Enable or disable (by default) the status window display.

url <url>

The URL for this bookmark.

description <description>

The description of the bookmark, with a maximum length of 129 characters.

server-layout {en-us-qwerty | de-de-qwertz | fr-fr-azerty | it-it-qwerty | sv-se-qwerty | failsafe}

Note: This entry is only available when `apptype` is set to `rdp`. Also note that this entry is called `keyboard-layout` in FortiOS 5.2.

The keyboard layout. Select from a number of different layouts.

- `en-us-qwerty`: The American-English QWERTY layout. This is set by default.
- `de-de-qwertz`: The Deutsch QWERTZ layout.
- `fr-fr-azerty`: The French AZERTY layout.
- `it-it-qwerty`: The Italian QWERTY layout.
- `sv-se-qwerty`: The Swedish QWERTY layout.
- `failsafe`: Forces all keyboard events to be sent as Unicode.

security {rdp | nla | tls | any}

Note: This entry is only available when `apptype` is set to `rdp`.

The type of encryption security.

- `rdp`: Standard RDP encryption (set by default)
- `nla`: Network Level Authentication (NLA)
- `tls`: TLS encryption
- `any`: Allow the server to choose the type of security.

port <integer>

Note: This entry is only available when `apptype` is set to either `rdp` or `vnc`.

The remote port. Set the value between 1-65535. The default value is set to 3389.

logon-user <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `apptype` is set to `rdp`.

The name of the user.

logon-password <password>

Note: This entry is only available when `apptype` is set to either `rdp` or `vnc`.

The user's password.

sso {disable | static | auto}

A Single-Sign On (SSO) bookmark that automatically enters the login credentials for the bookmark destination.

- `disable`: This is not an SSO bookmark
- `static`: This is an SSO bookmark
- `auto`: Determines whether SSO is used or not automatically

sso-credential {sslvpn-login | alternative}

Note: This entry is only available when `sso` is set to either `static` or `auto`.

How the user's credentials are submitted.

- `sslvpn-login`: The bookmark enters the user's SSL VPN credentials.
- `alternative`: Alternative credentials are given, as defined in the `sso-username` and `sso-password` entries (see below).

sso-username <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `sso-credential` is set to `alternative`.

The user's alternative username.

sso-password <password>

Note: This entry is only available when `sso-credential` is set to `alternative`.

The user's alternative password.

config form-data

Note: This configuration option is only available when `sso` is set to `static`.

A configuration method to set form data values. Edit to create new and specify the settings using the entry available. When configuring an entry, as an administrator configuring bookmarks for users, enter `%username%` to represent the user's SSL VPN user name. Enter `%passwd%` to represent the user's password.

waf

Introduction.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [waf main-class](#)
- [waf profile](#)
- [waf signature](#)
- [waf sub-class](#)

waf main-class

Introduction.

```
config waf main-class
  edit {id}
    # Hidden table for datasource.
    set name {string}    Main signature class name. size[127]
    set id {integer}     Main signature class ID. range[0-4294967295]
  next
end
```

waf profile

Use this command to configure web application firewall options.

Command	Description
<code>set extended-log {enable disable}</code>	<p>When extended UTM log is enabled, more HTTP header information will be logged when a UTM event happens.</p> <p>Note that the following HTTP header fields are included in extended-log: http method, client content type, server content type, user agent, referer, and x-forward-for.</p>

```
config waf profile
  edit {name}
  # Web application firewall configuration.
  set name {string}    WAF Profile name. size[35]
  set external {disable | enable}    Disable/Enable external HTTP Inspection.
  set extended-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable extended logging.
  config signature
    config main-class
      edit {id}
      # Main signature class.
      set id {integer}    Main signature class ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): waf.main-class.id
      set status {enable | disable}    Status.
      set action {allow | block | erase}    Action.
        allow    Allow.
        block    Block.
        erase    Erase credit card numbers.
      set log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
      set severity {high | medium | low}    Severity.
        high    High severity.
        medium    Medium severity.
        low    Low severity.
    next
  config disabled-sub-class
    edit {id}
    # Disabled signature subclasses.
    set id {integer}    Signature subclass ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): waf.sub-class.id
  next
  config disabled-signature
    edit {id}
    # Disabled signatures
    set id {integer}    Signature ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): waf.signature.id
  next
  set credit-card-detection-threshold {integer}    The minimum number of Credit cards to detect violation.
range[0-128]
  config custom-signature
    edit {name}
    # Custom signature.
    set name {string}    Signature name. size[35]
    set status {enable | disable}    Status.
    set action {allow | block | erase}    Action.
```

```

        allow Allow.
        block Block.
        erase Erase credit card numbers.
set log {enable | disable} Enable/disable logging.
set severity {high | medium | low} Severity.
    high High severity.
    medium Medium severity.
    low Low severity.
set direction {request | response} Traffic direction.
    request Match HTTP request.
    response Match HTTP response.
set case-sensitivity {disable | enable} Case sensitivity in pattern.
set pattern {string} Match pattern. size[511]
set target {option} Match HTTP target.
    arg HTTP arguments.
    arg-name Names of HTTP arguments.
    req-body HTTP request body.
    req-cookie HTTP request cookies.
    req-cookie-name HTTP request cookie names.
    req-filename HTTP request file name.
    req-header HTTP request headers.
    req-header-name HTTP request header names.
    req-raw-uri Raw URI of HTTP request.
    req-uri URI of HTTP request.
    resp-body HTTP response body.
    resp-hdr HTTP response headers.
    resp-status HTTP response status.
next
config constraint
config header-length
set status {enable | disable} Enable/disable the constraint.
set length {integer} Length of HTTP header in bytes (0 to 2147483647). range[0-2147483647]
set action {allow | block} Action.
    allow Allow.
    block Block.
set log {enable | disable} Enable/disable logging.
set severity {high | medium | low} Severity.
    high High severity.
    medium Medium severity.
    low Low severity.

```

```
config content-length
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the constraint.
  set length {integer}  Length of HTTP content in bytes (0 to 2147483647). range[0-2147483647]
  set action {allow | block}  Action.
    allow Allow.
    block Block.
  set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging.
  set severity {high | medium | low}  Severity.
    high High severity.
    medium Medium severity.
    low Low severity.
config param-length
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the constraint.
  set length {integer}  Maximum length of parameter in URL, HTTP POST request or HTTP body in bytes (0 to
2147483647). range[0-2147483647]
  set action {allow | block}  Action.
    allow Allow.
    block Block.
  set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging.
  set severity {high | medium | low}  Severity.
    high High severity.
    medium Medium severity.
    low Low severity.
config line-length
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the constraint.
  set length {integer}  Length of HTTP line in bytes (0 to 2147483647). range[0-2147483647]
  set action {allow | block}  Action.
    allow Allow.
    block Block.
  set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging.
  set severity {high | medium | low}  Severity.
    high High severity.
    medium Medium severity.
    low Low severity.
config url-param-length
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the constraint.
  set length {integer}  Maximum length of URL parameter in bytes (0 to 2147483647). range[0-2147483647]
  set action {allow | block}  Action.
    allow Allow.
    block Block.
```

```
    set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging.
    set severity {high | medium | low}  Severity.
        high    High severity.
        medium  Medium severity.
        low     Low severity.
config version
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the constraint.
    set action {allow | block}  Action.
        allow  Allow.
        block  Block.
    set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging.
    set severity {high | medium | low}  Severity.
        high    High severity.
        medium  Medium severity.
        low     Low severity.
config method
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the constraint.
    set action {allow | block}  Action.
        allow  Allow.
        block  Block.
    set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging.
    set severity {high | medium | low}  Severity.
        high    High severity.
        medium  Medium severity.
        low     Low severity.
config hostname
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the constraint.
    set action {allow | block}  Action.
        allow  Allow.
        block  Block.
    set log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging.
    set severity {high | medium | low}  Severity.
        high    High severity.
        medium  Medium severity.
        low     Low severity.
config malformed
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the constraint.
    set action {allow | block}  Action.
        allow  Allow.
        block  Block.
```

```
    set log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
    set severity {high | medium | low}    Severity.
        high    High severity.
        medium  Medium severity.
        low     Low severity.
config max-cookie
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the constraint.
    set max-cookie {integer}    Maximum number of cookies in HTTP request (0 to 2147483647). range[0-
2147483647]
    set action {allow | block}    Action.
        allow  Allow.
        block  Block.
    set log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
    set severity {high | medium | low}    Severity.
        high    High severity.
        medium  Medium severity.
        low     Low severity.
config max-header-line
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the constraint.
    set max-header-line {integer}    Maximum number HTTP header lines (0 to 2147483647). range[0-2147483647]
    set action {allow | block}    Action.
        allow  Allow.
        block  Block.
    set log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
    set severity {high | medium | low}    Severity.
        high    High severity.
        medium  Medium severity.
        low     Low severity.
config max-url-param
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the constraint.
    set max-url-param {integer}    Maximum number of parameters in URL (0 to 2147483647). range[0-2147483647]
    set action {allow | block}    Action.
        allow  Allow.
        block  Block.
    set log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
    set severity {high | medium | low}    Severity.
        high    High severity.
        medium  Medium severity.
        low     Low severity.
config max-range-segment
```

```

    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the constraint.
    set max-range-segment {integer}   Maximum number of range segments in HTTP range line (0 to 2147483647).
range[0-2147483647]
    set action {allow | block}    Action.
        allow    Allow.
        block    Block.
    set log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
    set severity {high | medium | low}    Severity.
        high    High severity.
        medium    Medium severity.
        low    Low severity.
config exception
    edit {id}
    # HTTP constraint exception.
        set id {integer}    Exception ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set pattern {string}    URL pattern. size[511]
        set regex {enable | disable}    Enable/disable regular expression based pattern match.
        set address {string}    Host address. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
        set header-length {enable | disable}    HTTP header length in request.
        set content-length {enable | disable}    HTTP content length in request.
        set param-length {enable | disable}    Maximum length of parameter in URL, HTTP POST request or HTTP
body.
        set line-length {enable | disable}    HTTP line length in request.
        set url-param-length {enable | disable}    Maximum length of parameter in URL.
        set version {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HTTP version check.
        set method {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HTTP method check.
        set hostname {enable | disable}    Enable/disable hostname check.
        set malformed {enable | disable}    Enable/disable malformed HTTP request check.
        set max-cookie {enable | disable}    Maximum number of cookies in HTTP request.
        set max-header-line {enable | disable}    Maximum number of HTTP header line.
        set max-url-param {enable | disable}    Maximum number of parameters in URL.
        set max-range-segment {enable | disable}    Maximum number of range segments in HTTP range line.
    next
config method
    set status {enable | disable}    Status.
    set log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
    set severity {high | medium | low}    Severity.
        high    High severity
        medium    medium severity

```



```

        low      low severity
set default-allowed-methods {option}  Methods.
    get      HTTP GET method.
    post     HTTP POST method.
    put      HTTP PUT method.
    head     HTTP HEAD method.
    connect  HTTP CONNECT method.
    trace    HTTP TRACE method.
    options  HTTP OPTIONS method.
    delete  HTTP DELETE method.
    others   Other HTTP methods.
config method-policy
edit {id}
# HTTP method policy.
set id {integer}  HTTP method policy ID. range[0-4294967295]
set pattern {string}  URL pattern. size[511]
set regex {enable | disable}  Enable/disable regular expression based pattern match.
set address {string}  Host address. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name
set allowed-methods {option}  Allowed Methods.
    get      HTTP GET method.
    post     HTTP POST method.
    put      HTTP PUT method.
    head     HTTP HEAD method.
    connect  HTTP CONNECT method.
    trace    HTTP TRACE method.
    options  HTTP OPTIONS method.
    delete  HTTP DELETE method.
    others   Other HTTP methods.

next
config address-list
set status {enable | disable}  Status.
set blocked-log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable logging on blocked addresses.
set severity {high | medium | low}  Severity.
    high      High severity.
    medium    Medium severity.
    low       Low severity.
config trusted-address
edit {name}
# Trusted address.

```

```
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
    config blocked-address
    edit {name}
    # Blocked address.
    set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    next
    config url-access
    edit {id}
    # URL access list
    set id {integer}    URL access ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set address {string}    Host address. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    set action {bypass | permit | block}    Action.
        bypass    Allow the HTTP request, also bypass further WAF scanning.
        permit    Allow the HTTP request, and continue further WAF scanning.
        block    Block HTTP request.
    set log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
    set severity {high | medium | low}    Severity.
        high    High severity.
        medium    Medium severity.
        low    Low severity.
    config access-pattern
    edit {id}
    # URL access pattern.
    set id {integer}    URL access pattern ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set srcaddr {string}    Source address. size[63] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name,firewall.addrgrp.name
    set pattern {string}    URL pattern. size[511]
    set regex {enable | disable}    Enable/disable regular expression based pattern match.
    set negate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable match negation.
    next
    next
    set comment {string}    Comment. size[1023]
next
end
```

waf signature

Introduction.

```
config waf signature
  edit {id}
    # Hidden table for datasource.
    set desc {string}    Signature description. size[511]
    set id {integer}     Signature ID. range[0-4294967295]
  next
end
```

waf sub-class

Introduction.

```
config waf sub-class
  edit {id}
    # Hidden table for datasource.
    set name {string}    Signature subclass name. size[127]
    set id {integer}     Signature subclass ID. range[0-4294967295]
  next
end
```

wanopt

Use these commands to configure FortiGate WAN optimization.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [wanopt auth-group](#)
- [wanopt cache-service](#)
- [wanopt content-delivery-network-rule](#)
- [wanopt peer](#)
- [wanopt profile](#)
- [wanopt remote-storage](#)
- [wanopt settings](#)
- [wanopt webcache](#)

Note that, as of FortiOS 6.0's release, both `forticache-service` and `storage` have been removed.

wanopt auth-group

Use this command to configure WAN optimization authentication groups, which can be used to support secure tunneling between WAN optimization peers.

```
config wanopt auth-group
    edit {name}
        # Configure WAN optimization authentication groups.
        set name {string}    Auth-group name. size[35]
        set auth-method {cert | psk}    Select certificate or pre-shared key authentication for this authentication
group.
            cert    Certificate authentication.
            psk    Pre-shared secret key authentication.
        set psk {password_string}    Pre-shared key used by the peers in this authentication group. size[128]
        set cert {string}    Name of certificate to identify this peer. size[35] - datasource(s): vpn.cer-
tificate.local.name
        set peer-accept {any | defined | one}    Determine if this auth group accepts, any peer, a list of defined peers,
or just one peer.
```

```
any      Accept any peer that can authenticate with this auth group.
defined  Accept only the peers added with the wanopt peer command.
one      Accept the peer added to this auth group using the peer option.
set peer {string}  If peer-accept is set to one, select the name of one peer to add to this authentication
group. The peer must have added with the wanopt peer command. size[35] - datasource(s): wanopt.peer.peer-host-id
next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

auth-method {cert | psk}

Enter your preferred authentication method:

- Use `cert` (by default) to authenticate using a certificate. Once set, use the `cert` entry to specify the name of the certificate (see below).
- Use `psk` to authenticate using a pre-shared key. Once set, use the `psk` entry to specify the pre-shared key (see below).

cert <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `auth-method` is set to `cert`. Local certificate to be used by the peers in this authentication group. The certificate must have already been installed on the FortiGate before entering it here.

psk <preshared-key>

Note: This entry is only available when `auth-method` is set to `psk`. Pre-shared key to be used for the authentication group.

peer-accept {any | defined | one}

Specify whether the authentication group can be used for `any` peer, only the `defined` peers that have been added to the FortiGate unit, or just `one` specific peer. If you select `one`, use the `peer` entry to add the name of the peer to the authentication group.

peer

Note: This entry is only available when `peer-accept` is set to `one`. Name of one peer to add to this authentication group. The peer must have already been added to the FortiGate before entering it here.

wanopt cache-service

Use this command to configure cache-service clusters for WAN optimization and webcaching between multiple FortiGates. The result is that the cache-service daemons between different FortiGates can collaborate together for serving web-cache-entries.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config wanopt cache-service</code>	New <code>config</code> command. Configure cache-service clusters between multiple FortiGates.

```
config wanopt cache-service
    set prefer-scenario {balance | prefer-speed | prefer-cache}  Set the preferred cache behavior towards the balance
    between latency and hit-ratio.
        balance          Balance between speed and cache hit ratio.
        prefer-speed      Prefer response speed at the expense of increased cache bypasses.
        prefer-cache      Prefer improving hit-ratio through increasing latency tolerance.
    set collaboration {enable | disable}  Enable/disable cache-collaboration between cache-service clusters.
    set device-id {string}  Set identifier for this cache device. size[35]
    set acceptable-connections {any | peers}  Set strategy when accepting cache collaboration connection.
        any              We can accept any cache-collaboration connection.
        peers            We can only accept connections that are already in src-peers.
config dst-peer
    edit {device-id}
    # Modify cache-service destination peer list.
        set device-id {string}  Device ID of this peer. size[35]
        set auth-type {integer}  Set authentication type for this peer. range[0-255]
```

```

        set encode-type {integer}    Set encode type for this peer. range[0-255]
        set priority {integer}      Set priority for this peer. range[0-255]
        set ip {ipv4 address any}    Set cluster IP address of this peer.
    next
config src-peer
edit {device-id}
# Modify cache-service source peer list.
    set device-id {string}    Device ID of this peer. size[35]
    set auth-type {integer}    Set authentication type for this peer. range[0-255]
    set encode-type {integer}    Set encode type for this peer. range[0-255]
    set priority {integer}      Set priority for this peer. range[0-255]
    set ip {ipv4 address any}    Set cluster IP address of this peer.
next
end

```

wanopt content-delivery-network-rule

Use this command to configure WAN optimization content delivery network rules, including video-cache matching rules.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
config wanopt content-delievry-network-rule	New config command. Edit web-caching options, including video-cache matching rules.

```

config wanopt content-delivery-network-rule
edit {name}
# Configure WAN optimization content delivery network rules.
    set name {string}    Name of table. size[35]
    set comment {string}    Comment about this CDN-rule. size[255]
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WAN optimization content delivery network rules.
config host-domain-name-suffix
    edit {name}

```

```

    # Suffix portion of the fully qualified domain name (eg. fortinet.com in "www.fortinet.com").
    set name {string}    Suffix portion of the fully qualified domain name. size[64]
  next
set category {vcache | youtube}    Content delivery network rule category.
    vcache    Vcache content delivery network.
    youtube    Youtube content delivery network.
set request-cache-control {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HTTP request cache control.
set response-cache-control {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HTTP response cache control.
set response-expires {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HTTP response cache expires.
set text-response-vcache {enable | disable}    Enable/disable caching of text responses.
set updateserver {enable | disable}    Enable/disable update server.
config rules
  edit {name}
  # WAN optimization content delivery network rule entries.
  set name {string}    WAN optimization content delivery network rule name. size[35]
  set match-mode {all | any}    Match criteria for collecting content ID.
    all    Must match all of the match entries.
    any    Must match any of the match entries.
  set skip-rule-mode {all | any}    Skip mode when evaluating skip-rules.
    all    Must match all skip entries.
    any    Must match any skip entries.
  config match-entries
    edit {id}
    # List of entries to match.
    set id {integer}    Rule ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set target {option}    Option in HTTP header or URL parameter to match.
      path    Match with the URL path.
      parameter    Match with the URL parameters.
      referrer    Match with the Referrer option in HTTP header.
      youtube-map    Match Youtube content-id collection.
      youtube-id    Match Youtube content-id.
      youku-id    Match Youku content-id.
    config pattern
      edit {string}
      # Pattern string for matching target (Referrer or URL pattern, eg. "a", "a*c", "*a*",
"a*c*e", and "*").
      set string {string}    Pattern strings. size[64]
    next
  next
config skip-entries

```



```

edit {id}
# List of entries to skip.
  set id {integer}    Rule ID. range[0-4294967295]
  set target {option} Option in HTTP header or URL parameter to match.
    path             Match with the URL path.
    parameter        Match with the URL parameters.
    referrer         Match with the Referrer option in HTTP header.
    youtube-map      Match Youtube content-id collection.
    youtube-id       Match Youtube content-id.
    youku-id         Match Youku content-id.
  config pattern
    edit {string}
      # Pattern string for matching target (Referrer or URL pattern, eg. "a", "a*c", "**a*",
      "a*c*e", and "*").
      set string {string} Pattern strings. size[64]
    next
  next
config content-id
  set target {option} Option in HTTP header or URL parameter to match.
    path             Match with the URL path.
    parameter        Match with the URL parameters.
    referrer         Match with the Referrer option in HTTP header.
    youtube-map      Match Youtube content-id collection.
    youtube-id       Match Youtube content-id.
    youku-id         Match Youku content-id.
    hls-manifest     Match with HLS manifest.
    dash-manifest    Match with DASH manifest.
    hls-fragment     Match HLS stream fragment.
    dash-fragment    Match DASH stream fragment.
  set start-str {string} String from which to start search. size[35]
  set start-skip {integer} Number of characters in URL to skip after start-str has been matched.
range[0-4294967295]
  set start-direction {forward | backward} Search direction from start-str match.
    forward          Forward direction.
    backward         Backward direction.
  set end-str {string} String from which to end search. size[35]
  set end-skip {integer} Number of characters in URL to skip after end-str has been matched. range
[0-4294967295]
  set end-direction {forward | backward} Search direction from end-str match.
    forward          Forward direction.

```

```
        backward Backward direction.
    set range-str {string}    Name of content ID within the start string and end string. size[35]
next
next
end
```

wanopt peer

Use this command to add WAN optimization peers. This command identifies the other FortiGate units, or peers, that the local FortiGate can form WAN optimization tunnels with. When the remote FortiGate unit connects to the local FortiGate unit to start a WAN optimization tunnel, the remote FortiGate unit local host ID is requested. If the local host ID matches a peer added to the local FortiGate unit, then the local FortiGate unit can accept WAN optimization tunnel from the remote FortiGate unit.

```
config wanopt peer
    edit {peer-host-id}
        # Configure WAN optimization peers.
        set peer-host-id {string}    Peer host ID. size[35]
        set ip {ipv4 address any}    Peer IP address.
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

edit <peer_name>

Add the local host ID of the remote FortiGate unit. When the remote FortiGate unit connects to the local FortiGate unit to start a WAN optimization tunnel, the WAN optimization setup request include the remote FortiGate unit local host ID. If the local host ID in the setup request matches a peer added to the local FortiGate unit, then the local FortiGate unit can accept WAN optimization tunnel setup requests from the remote FortiGate unit.

ip <ipv4-address>

IP address of the interface that the remote FortiGate unit will use to connect to the local FortiGate unit — this is usually the interface connected to the WAN.

wanopt profile

Use this command to configure WAN optimization profiles that work in conjunction with security policies to accept specific traffic. All sessions accepted by a firewall policy, that include a WAN optimization profile, and that match that WAN optimization profile, are processed by WAN optimization. WAN optimization profiles must be added to the FortiGates at each end of the tunnel. To learn more about WAN optimization, including profiles and configuration examples, see [WAN optimization](#).

```
config wanopt profile
    edit {name}
        # Configure WAN optimization profiles.
        set name {string}    Profile name. size[35]
        set transparent {enable | disable}    Enable/disable transparent mode.
        set comments {string}    Comment. size[255]
        set auth-group {string}    Optionally add an authentication group to restrict access to the WAN Optimization tunnel to peers in the authentication group. size[35] - datasource(s): wanopt.auth-group.name
        config http
            set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HTTP WAN Optimization.
            set secure-tunnel {enable | disable}    Enable/disable securing the WAN Opt tunnel using SSL. Secure and non-secure tunnels use the same TCP port (7810).
            set byte-caching {enable | disable}    Enable/disable byte-caching for HTTP. Byte caching reduces the amount of traffic by caching file data sent across the WAN and in future serving it from the cache.
            set prefer-chunking {dynamic | fix}    Select dynamic or fixed-size data chunking for HTTP WAN Optimization.
                dynamic    Select dynamic data chunking to help to detect persistent data chunks in a changed file or in an embedded unknown protocol.
                fix        Select fixed data chunking.
            set tunnel-sharing {private | shared | express-shared}    Tunnel sharing mode for aggressive/non-aggressive and/or interactive/non-interactive protocols.
                private    For profiles that accept aggressive protocols such as HTTP and FTP so that these aggressive protocols do not share tunnels with less-aggressive protocols.
                shared     For profiles that accept nonaggressive and non-interactive protocols.
                express-shared    For profiles that accept interactive protocols such as Telnet.
            set log-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
            set port {integer}    Single port number or port number range for HTTP. Only packets with a destination port number that matches this port number or range are accepted by this profile. range[1-65535]
            set ssl {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSL/TLS offloading (hardware acceleration) for HTTPS traffic in this tunnel.
            set ssl-port {integer}    Port on which to expect HTTPS traffic for SSL/TLS offloading. range[1-65535]
            set unknown-http-version {reject | tunnel | best-effort}    How to handle HTTP sessions that do not comply with HTTP 0.9, 1.0, or 1.1.
                reject    Reject or tear down HTTP sessions that do not use HTTP 0.9, 1.0, or 1.1.
```

```

        tunnel      Pass HTTP traffic that does not use HTTP 0.9, 1.0, or 1.1 without applying HTTP pro-
protocol optimization, byte-caching, or web caching. TCP protocol optimization is applied.
        best-effort Assume all HTTP sessions comply with HTTP 0.9, 1.0, or 1.1. If a session uses a dif-
ferent HTTP version, it may not parse correctly and the connection may be lost.
        set tunnel-non-http {enable | disable} Configure how to process non-HTTP traffic when a profile configured
for HTTP traffic accepts a non-HTTP session. Can occur if an application sends non-HTTP traffic using an HTTP des-
tination port.
    config cifs
        set status {enable | disable} Enable/disable HTTP WAN Optimization.
        set secure-tunnel {enable | disable} Enable/disable securing the WAN Opt tunnel using SSL. Secure and non-
secure tunnels use the same TCP port (7810).
        set byte-caching {enable | disable} Enable/disable byte-caching for HTTP. Byte caching reduces the amount
of traffic by caching file data sent across the WAN and in future serving if from the cache.
        set prefer-chunking {dynamic | fix} Select dynamic or fixed-size data chunking for HTTP WAN Optimization.
            dynamic Select dynamic data chunking to help to detect persistent data chunks in a changed file or
in an embedded unknown protocol.
            fix      Select fixed data chunking.
        set tunnel-sharing {private | shared | express-shared} Tunnel sharing mode for aggressive/non-aggressive
and/or interactive/non-interactive protocols.
            private For profiles that accept aggressive protocols such as HTTP and FTP so that these
aggressive protocols do not share tunnels with less-aggressive protocols.
            shared  For profiles that accept nonaggressive and non-interactive protocols.
            express-shared For profiles that accept interactive protocols such as Telnet.
        set log-traffic {enable | disable} Enable/disable logging.
        set port {integer} Single port number or port number range for CIFS. Only packets with a destination port
number that matches this port number or range are accepted by this profile. range[1-65535]
    config mapi
        set status {enable | disable} Enable/disable HTTP WAN Optimization.
        set secure-tunnel {enable | disable} Enable/disable securing the WAN Opt tunnel using SSL. Secure and non-
secure tunnels use the same TCP port (7810).
        set byte-caching {enable | disable} Enable/disable byte-caching for HTTP. Byte caching reduces the amount
of traffic by caching file data sent across the WAN and in future serving if from the cache.
        set tunnel-sharing {private | shared | express-shared} Tunnel sharing mode for aggressive/non-aggressive
and/or interactive/non-interactive protocols.
            private For profiles that accept aggressive protocols such as HTTP and FTP so that these
aggressive protocols do not share tunnels with less-aggressive protocols.
            shared  For profiles that accept nonaggressive and non-interactive protocols.
            express-shared For profiles that accept interactive protocols such as Telnet.
        set log-traffic {enable | disable} Enable/disable logging.
        set port {integer} Single port number or port number range for MAPI. Only packets with a destination port

```

```

number that matches this port number or range are accepted by this profile. range[1-65535]
config ftp
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HTTP WAN Optimization.
    set secure-tunnel {enable | disable}    Enable/disable securing the WAN Opt tunnel using SSL. Secure and non-
secure tunnels use the same TCP port (7810).
    set byte-caching {enable | disable}    Enable/disable byte-caching for HTTP. Byte caching reduces the amount
of traffic by caching file data sent across the WAN and in future serving if from the cache.
    set prefer-chunking {dynamic | fix}    Select dynamic or fixed-size data chunking for HTTP WAN Optimization.
        dynamic    Select dynamic data chunking to help to detect persistent data chunks in a changed file or
in an embedded unknown protocol.
        fix        Select fixed data chunking.
    set tunnel-sharing {private | shared | express-shared}    Tunnel sharing mode for aggressive/non-aggressive
and/or interactive/non-interactive protocols.
        private    For profiles that accept aggressive protocols such as HTTP and FTP so that these
aggressive protocols do not share tunnels with less-aggressive protocols.
        shared     For profiles that accept nonaggressive and non-interactive protocols.
        express-shared    For profiles that accept interactive protocols such as Telnet.
    set log-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
    set port {integer}    Single port number or port number range for FTP. Only packets with a destination port
number that matches this port number or range are accepted by this profile. range[1-65535]
config tcp
    set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable HTTP WAN Optimization.
    set secure-tunnel {enable | disable}    Enable/disable securing the WAN Opt tunnel using SSL. Secure and non-
secure tunnels use the same TCP port (7810).
    set byte-caching {enable | disable}    Enable/disable byte-caching for HTTP. Byte caching reduces the amount
of traffic by caching file data sent across the WAN and in future serving if from the cache.
    set byte-caching-opt {mem-only | mem-disk}    Select whether TCP byte-caching uses system memory only or both
memory and disk space.
        mem-only    Byte caching with memory only.
        mem-disk    Byte caching with memory and disk.
    set tunnel-sharing {private | shared | express-shared}    Tunnel sharing mode for aggressive/non-aggressive
and/or interactive/non-interactive protocols.
        private    For profiles that accept aggressive protocols such as HTTP and FTP so that these
aggressive protocols do not share tunnels with less-aggressive protocols.
        shared     For profiles that accept nonaggressive and non-interactive protocols.
        express-shared    For profiles that accept interactive protocols such as Telnet.
    set log-traffic {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging.
    set port {string}    Single port number or port number range for TCP. Only packets with a destination port
number that matches this port number or range are accepted by this profile.
    set ssl {enable | disable}    Enable/disable SSL/TLS offloading.

```

```

        set ssl-port {integer}    Port on which to expect HTTPS traffic for SSL/TLS offloading. range[1-65535]
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

transparent {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable transparent mode for this profile. When enabled, WAN optimization keeps the original source address of the packets, so servers appear to receive traffic directly from clients. When disabled, the source address of the packets received by servers is changed to the address of the FortiGate interface, so servers appear to receive packets from the FortiGate. Routing on the server network is simpler in this case because client addresses are not involved, however the server won't be able to tell which individual client is sending traffic.

comments <comments>

Optional comments.

auth-group <group>

Note: Assigning an authentication group is mandatory if `secure-tunnel` has been enabled for the profile. Peer authentication group to be used by this WAN optimization profile. Both client and server FortiGates must add the same authentication group, with both the same names and pre-shared key or certificate.

config {http | cifs | mapi | ftp | tcp}

Use this configuration method to determine various WAN optimization settings for each protocol. The table below depicts those entries that are available for certain protocols (port numbers are the default values for each protocol):

Protocols	http	cifs	mapi	ftp	tcp
byte-caching-opt					✓
prefer-chunking	✓	✓		✓	
port	80	445	135	21	1-65535

Protocols	http	cifs	mapi	ftp	tcp
ssl	✓				✓
ssl-port	443				443 990 995 465 993
unknown-http-version	✓				
tunnel-non-http	✓				

status {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the profile.

secure-tunnel {enable | disable}

Note: This entry can only be enabled when an authentication group has already been assigned to the profile (see the `auth-group` entry above).

Enable or disable (by default) the use of AES-128bit-CBC SSL to encrypt and secure traffic in the WAN optimization tunnel.

The FortiGates use FortiASIC acceleration to accelerate SSL decryption and encryption of the secure tunnel. The secure tunnel uses the same TCP port as a non-secure tunnel (TCP port 7810).

byte-caching {enable | disable}

Enable (by default, *except* `tcp` which is set to `disable`) or disable WAN optimization byte caching for the traffic accepted by this profile.

Byte caching is a WAN optimization technique that reduces the amount of data that has to be transmitted across a WAN by caching file data to be retrieved later, as required.

byte-caching-opt {mem-only | mem-disk}

Note: This entry is only available when configuring `tcp`.

Byte caching method:

- **mem-only:** Byte caching with memory only (set by default).
- **mem-disk:** Byte caching with memory and disk.

prefer-chunking {dynamic | fix}

Note: This entry is only available when configuring either `http`, `cifs`, or `ftp`.

Data chunking preference:

- **dynamic:** Dynamic data chunking preferred. Use to help detect persistent data chunks in a changed file or in an embedded unknown protocol.
- **fix:** Fixed-size data chunking preferred (set by default).

Note that, while `prefer-chunking` is not available in `tcp` or `mapi`, TCP chunking algorithm will be `dynamic`, so long as `byte-caching-opt` is set to `mem-disk`. MAPI only uses `dynamic`, and thus has no option.

tunnel-sharing {private | shared | express-shared}

Tunnel sharing mode:

- **private:** Used for profiles that accept aggressive protocols such as HTTP and FTP so as to not share tunnels with less-aggressive protocols (set by default).
- **shared:** Used for profiles that accept non-aggressive and non-interactive protocols.
- **express-shared:** Used for profiles that accept interactive protocols, such as Telnet.

log-traffic {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable traffic logging.

port <number>

Port used by each protocol for the profile. Only packets whose destination port number matches this port number or port number range will be accepted by and subject to this profile.

Set the value between 1-65535 (default values vary between each protocol; see table above).

ssl {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when configuring either `http` or `tcp`.

Enable or disable (by default) SSL offloading for HTTPS traffic.

If enabled, the profile will be ready to accept SSL-encrypted traffic (HTTPS traffic) because `ssl-port` will become available and is set to 443 by default (see entry below). Also, when enabled, you must add an SSL server for each HTTP server that you want to offload SSL encryption/decryption for by using the `config wanopt ssl-server` command.

ssl-port <https-ports>

Note: This entry is only available when `ssl` is set to `enable`.

Ports used for HTTPS traffic offloading. Set value between 1-65535 (default values vary between each protocol; see table above).

unknown-http-version {reject | tunnel | best-effort}

Note: This entry is only available when configuring `http`.

Action to take when an unknown version of HTTP is encountered. Unknown HTTP sessions are those that don't comply with HTTP 0.9, 1.0, or 1.1.

- **reject:** Rejects requests with unknown HTTP version.
- **tunnel:** Tunnels requests with unknown HTTP version (set by default).
- **best-effort:** Proceeds with best effort.

tunnel-non-http {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when configuring `http`.

Enable to pass non-HTTP sessions through the tunnel without applying protocol optimization, byte-caching, or web-caching. TCP protocol optimization is applied to non-HTTP sessions. Disable (by default) to drop non-HTTP sessions that were otherwise accepted by the profile.

wanopt remote-storage

Use this command to configure a remote storage cache service.

Some FortiGate devices don't have sufficient memory or disk space to run a cache service. This feature allows a FortiGate to connect to a FortiCache that has a higher cache capability than most FortiGates.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config wanopt remote-storage</code>	<p>New config command.</p> <p>Configure a FortiCache as a remote cache service for FortiGate.</p>

```
config wanopt remote-storage
    set status {disable | enable}    Enable/disable using remote device as Web cache storage.
    set local-cache-id {string}      ID that this device uses to connect to the remote device. size[35]
    set remote-cache-id {string}     ID of the remote device to which the device connects. size[35]
    set remote-cache-ip {ipv4 address any}  IP address of the remote device to which the device connects.
end
```

wanopt settings

Use this command to enable traffic logging for WAN optimization and WAN optimization web-caching sessions.

```
config wanopt settings
    set host-id {string}    Local host ID (must also be entered in the remote FortiGate's peer list). size[35]
    set tunnel-ssl-algorithm {high | medium | low}    Relative strength of encryption algorithms accepted during tunnel
negotiation.
        high    High encryption. Allow only AES and ChaCha.
        medium  Medium encryption. Allow AES, ChaCha, 3DES, and RC4.
        low     Low encryption. Allow AES, ChaCha, 3DES, RC4, and DES.
    set auto-detect-algorithm {simple | diff-req-resp}  Auto detection algorithms used in tunnel negotiations.
        simple    Use the same TCP option value in SYN/SYNACK packets. Backward compatible.
        diff-req-resp  Use different TCP option values in SYN/SYNACK packets to avoid false positive detection.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

host-id <id>

Local host ID/name (set to `default-id` by default). Make sure that the local host ID is also entered in the other FortiGate's peer list.

tunnel-ssl-algorithm {high | medium | low}

Relative strength of encryption accepted for SSL tunnel negotiation:

- **high:** Encryption allows AES and 3DES (set by default).
- **medium:** Encryption allows AES, 3DES, and RC4.
- **low:** Encryption allows AES, 3DES, RC4, and DES.

auto-detect-algorithm {simple | diff-req-resp}

Automatic detection algorithms used in tunnel negotiation:

- **simple:** Use the same TCP option value from SYN/SYNACK packets. Backward compatible (set by default).
- **diff-req-resp:** Use different TCP option value than in SYN/SYNACK packets to avoid false positive detection.

wanopt webcache

Use this command to change how the WAN optimization web-cache operates. In most cases the default settings are acceptable, however you may wish to change them to improve performance or optimize the cache for your specific configuration.

```
config wanopt webcache
    set max-object-size {integer}    Maximum cacheable object size in kB (1 - 2147483 kb (2GB). All objects that exceed
this are delivered to the client but not stored in the web cache. range[1-2147483]
    set neg-resp-time {integer}    Time in minutes to cache negative responses or errors (0 - 4294967295, default = 0
which means negative responses are not cached). range[0-4294967295]
    set fresh-factor {integer}    Frequency that the server is checked to see if any objects have expired (1 - 100,
default = 100). The higher the fresh factor, the less often the checks occur. range[1-100]
    set max-ttl {integer}    Maximum time an object can stay in the web cache without checking to see if it has expired
on the server (default = 7200 min (5 days); maximum = 5256000 min (10 years)). range[1-5256000]
    set min-ttl {integer}    Minimum time an object can stay in the web cache without checking to see if it has expired
on the server (default = 5 min; maximum = 5256000 (10 years)). range[1-5256000]
    set default-ttl {integer}    Default object expiry time (default = 1440 min (1 day); maximum = 5256000 min (10
years)). This only applies to those objects that do not have an expiry time set by the web server. range[1-5256000]
    set ignore-ims {enable | disable}    Enable/disable ignoring the if-modified-since (IMS) header.
    set ignore-conditional {enable | disable}    Enable/disable controlling the behavior of cache-control HTTP 1.1 header
values.
    set ignore-pnc {enable | disable}    Enable/disable ignoring the pragma no-cache (PNC) header.
    set ignore-ie-reload {enable | disable}    Enable/disable ignoring the PNC-interpretation of Internet Explorer's
```

```
Accept: / header.  
    set cache-expired {enable | disable}    Enable/disable caching type-1 objects that are already expired on arrival.  
    set cache-cookie {enable | disable}    Enable/disable caching cookies. Since cookies contain information for or about  
individual users, they not usually cached.  
    set reval-pnc {enable | disable}    Enable/disable revalidation of pragma-no-cache (PNC) to address bandwidth con-  
cerns.  
    set always-revalidate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable revalidation of requested cached objects, which have  
content on the server, before serving it to the client.  
    set cache-by-default {enable | disable}    Enable/disable caching content that lacks explicit caching policies from  
the server.  
    set host-validate {enable | disable}    Enable/disable validating "Host:" with original server IP.  
    set external {enable | disable}    Enable/disable external Web caching.  
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

max-object-size <kb>

Maximum cacheable object size in kB. All objects retrieved that are larger than the maximum size are delivered to the client but are not stored in the web cache. Set value between 1-2147483 (or 1kB to just over 2GB). The default value is set to 512000 (or 512MB).

neg-resp-time <minutes>

Period of time in minutes to cache negative responses. The default value is set to 0, meaning no negative responses will be cached.

fresh-factor <percentage>

The fresh factor as a percentage. For cached objects that don't have an expiry time, the web cache periodically checks the server to see if any objects have expired. The higher the fresh factor, the less often the checks occur. Set the value between 0-100. The default value is set to 100.

max-ttl

Maximum time-to-live period in minutes an object can stay in the web cache without checking to see if it has expired on the server. Set the value between 1-5256000. The default value is set to 7200 (or five days).

min-ttl

Minimum time-to-live period in minutes an object can stay in the web cache without checking to see if it has expired on the server. Set the value between 1-5256000. The default value is set to 5.

default-ttl

The default period of time in minutes before an object expires. This only applies to those objects that do not already have an expiry time set by the web server. Set the value between 1-5256000. The default value is set to 1440 (or one day).

ignore-ims {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the if-modified-since (IMS) header to be ignored. If the time specified by the IMS header in the client's conditional request is greater than the last modified time of the object in the cache, it is likely that the copy in the cache is stale. If so, HTTP does a conditional GET to the Overlay Caching Scheme (OCS), based on the last modified time of the cached object. Enabling `ignore-ims` overrides this behaviour.

ignore-conditional {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) controlling the behaviour of cache-control header values. HTTP 1.1 provides additional controls to the client over the behaviour of caches concerning the staleness of the object. Depending on various Cache-Control headers, the FortiGate can be forced to consult the OCS before serving the object from the cache. For more information about the behaviour of cache-control header values, see [RFC 2616](#).

ignore-pnc {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the pragma no-cache (PNC) header to be ignored. Typically, if a client sends an HTTP GET request with a PNC header, a cache must consult the OCS before serving the content. This means the FortiGate always re-fetches the entire object from the OCS, even if the cached copy of the object is fresh. Because of this, PNC requests can degrade performance and increase server-side bandwidth. Enabling `ignore-pnc` ignores the PNC header from the client request.

ignore-ie-reload {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the FortiGate to ignore the PNC interpretation of Internet Explorer's Accept: / header. Some versions of Internet Explorer issue Accept: / headers instead of PNC headers when you select **Refresh**. When an Accept header has only the / value, the FortiGate unit treats it as a PNC header if it is a type-N object. Enabling `ignore-ie-reload` ignores this interpretation.

cache-expired {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) caching of type-1 objects that are already expired upon acquisition. When this setting is enabled, type-1 objects that are already expired at the time of acquisition are cached (if all other conditions make the object cachable). If disabled, expired type-1 objects are considered non-cachable.

cache-cookie {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the caching of cookies. Typically, it is best to not perform cookie caching, as HTTP responses with cookies contain specific user data.

reval-pnc {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) PNC revalidation to address bandwidth concerns. The PNC header in a client's request can affect the efficiency of the FortiGate unit from a bandwidth gain perspective. If you do not want to completely ignore PNC in client requests (such as when using the `ignore-pnc` entry shown above), you can lower the impact of the PNC by enabling `reval-pnc`.

always-revalidate {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the revalidation of requested cached objects, which have content on the server, before serving it to the client.

cache-by-default {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the caching of content that lack explicit caching policies from the server.

host-validate {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the validation of Host: header with original server IP.

external {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) external cache.

webfilter

Use these commands to configure FortiGate Web Filtering.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [webfilter content](#)
- [webfilter content-header](#)
- [webfilter fortiguard](#)
- [webfilter ftgd-local-cat](#)
- [webfilter ftgd-local-rating](#)
- [webfilter ips-urlfilter-cache-setting](#)
- [webfilter ips-urlfilter-setting | ips-urlfilter-setting6](#)
- [webfilter override](#)
- [webfilter profile](#)
- [webfilter search-engine](#)
- [webfilter urlfilter](#)

Note that, as of FortiOS 6.0's release, `cookie-ovrd` has been removed.

webfilter content

Introduction.

```
config webfilter content
  edit {id}
    # Configure Web filter banned word table.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set name {string}   Name of table. size[35]
    set comment {string} Optional comments. size[255]
    config entries
      edit {name}
        # Configure banned word entries.
```

```

        set name {string}    Banned word. size[127]
        set pattern-type {wildcard | regexp}    Banned word pattern type: wildcard pattern or Perl regular expres-
sion.
            wildcard    Wildcard pattern.
            regexp      Perl regular expression.
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable banned word.
        set lang {option}    Language of banned word.
            western    Western.
            simch      Simplified Chinese.
            trach      Traditional Chinese.
            japanese   Japanese.
            korean     Korean.
            french     French.
            thai       Thai.
            spanish    Spanish.
            cyrillic   Cyrillic.
        set score {integer}    Score, to be applied every time the word appears on a web page (0 - 4294967295,
default = 10). range[0-4294967295]
        set action {block | exempt}    Block or exempt word when a match is found.
            block      Block matches.
            exempt     Exempt matches.
    next
next
end

```

webfilter content-header

Introduction.

```

config webfilter content-header
    edit {id}
    # Configure content types used by Web filter.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set name {string}    Name of table. size[35]
        set comment {string}    Optional comments. size[255]
    config entries
        edit {pattern}
        # Configure content types used by web filter.
            set pattern {string}    Content type (regular expression). size[31]

```



```
        set action {block | allow | exempt}    Action to take for this content type.
            block    Block content type.
            allow    Allow content type.
            exempt   Exempt content type.
        set category {string}    Categories that this content type applies to.
    next
next
end
```

webfilter fortiguard

Introduction.

```
config webfilter fortiguard
    set cache-mode {ttl | db-ver}    Cache entry expiration mode.
        ttl        Expire cache items by time-to-live.
        db-ver     Expire cache items when the server DB version changes.
    set cache-prefix-match {enable | disable}    Enable/disable prefix matching in the cache.
    set cache-mem-percent {integer}    Maximum percentage of available memory allocated to caching (1 - 15%). range[1-15]
    set ovrd-auth-port-http {integer}    Port to use for FortiGuard Web Filter HTTP override authentication range[0-65535]
    set ovrd-auth-port-https {integer}    Port to use for FortiGuard Web Filter HTTPS override authentication. range[0-65535]
    set ovrd-auth-port-warning {integer}    Port to use for FortiGuard Web Filter Warning override authentication. range[0-65535]
    set ovrd-auth-https {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of HTTPS for override authentication.
    set warn-auth-https {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of HTTPS for warning and authentication.
    set close-ports {enable | disable}    Close ports used for HTTP/HTTPS override authentication and disable user overrides.
    set request-packet-size-limit {integer}    Limit size of URL request packets sent to FortiGuard server (0 for default). range[576-10000]
    set ovrd-auth-port {integer}    Port to use for FortiGuard Web Filter override authentication. range[0-65535]
end
```

webfilter ftgd-local-cat

Use this command to configure FortiGuard web filter local categories.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set status {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable FortiGuard web filtering category overrides for local and remote categories. When disabled, <code>ssl-exempt</code> , <code>webfilter</code> , and <code>proxy-address</code> cannot use the category. The status cannot be set to <code>disable</code> if it has been referenced.

```
config webfilter ftgd-local-cat
  edit {desc}
  # Configure FortiGuard Web Filter local categories.
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the local category.
  set id {integer}  Local category ID. range[140-191]
  set desc {string}  Local category description. size[79]
next
end
```

webfilter ftgd-local-rating

Introduction.

```
config webfilter ftgd-local-rating
  edit {url}
  # Configure local FortiGuard Web Filter local ratings.
  set url {string}  URL to rate locally. size[511]
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable local rating.
  set rating {string}  Local rating.
next
end
```

webfilter ips-urlfilter-cache-setting

Introduction.

```
config webfilter ips-urlfilter-cache-setting
    set dns-retry-interval {integer}    Retry interval. Refresh DNS faster than TTL to capture multiple IPs for hosts. 0
means use DNS server's TTL only. range[0-2147483]
    set extended-ttl {integer}    Extend time to live beyond reported by DNS. 0 means use DNS server's TTL range[0-
2147483]
end
```

webfilter {ips-urlfilter-setting | ips-urlfilter-setting6}

Use this command to configure IPV4 and IPV6 IPS URL filter settings.



Similar entries can be found under both `ips-urlfilter-setting` and `ips-urlfilter-setting6`, so only one CLI syntax is shown.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config webfilter ips-urlfilter-setting6</code>	Configure IPS URL filter settings for IPv6.
<code>config webfilter {ips-urlfilter-setting ips-urlfilter-setting6}</code> <code>edit <address></code> <code>set geo-filter <country name></code> <code>next</code> <code>end</code>	Filter based on geographical location. Note that the route will not be installed if the resolved IP address belongs to the country in the filter.

```
config webfilter ips-urlfilter-setting
    set device {string}    Interface for this route. size[35] - datasource(s): system.interface.name
```

```

    set distance {integer}    Administrative distance (1 - 255) for this route. range[1-255]
    set gateway {ipv4 address} Gateway IP address for this route.
    set geo-filter {string}    Filter based on geographical location. Route will NOT be installed if the resolved IP
address belongs to the country in the filter. size[255]
end

```

webfilter override

Introduction.

```

config webfilter override
    edit {id}
        # Configure FortiGuard Web Filter administrative overrides.
        set id {integer}    Override rule ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set status {enable | disable}    Enable/disable override rule.
        set scope {user | user-group | ip | ip6}    Override either the specific user, user group, IPv4 address, or IPv6
address.
            user            Override the specified user.
            user-group      Override the specified user group.
            ip              Override the specified IP address.
            ip6             Override the specified IPv6 address.
        set ip {ipv4 address}    IPv4 address which the override applies.
        set user {string}    Name of the user which the override applies. size[64]
        set user-group {string}    Specify the user group for which the override applies. size[63] - datasource(s): user-
.group.name
        set old-profile {string}    Name of the web filter profile which the override applies. size[35] - datasource(s):
webfilter.profile.name
        set new-profile {string}    Name of the new web filter profile used by the override. size[35] - datasource(s):
webfilter.profile.name
        set ip6 {ipv6 address}    IPv6 address which the override applies.
        set expires {string}    Override expiration date and time, from 5 minutes to 365 from now (format: yyyy/mm/dd
hh:mm:ss).
        set initiator {string}    Initiating user of override (read-only setting). size[64]
    next
end

```

webfilter profile

Use this command configure web filter profiles.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config ftgd-wf set options {http-err-detail ...} next ...</pre>	Removed deprecated option <code>http-err-detail</code> .
<pre>set extended-log {enable disable} set web-extended-all-action-log {enable disable}</pre>	<p>When extended UTM log is enabled, more HTTP header information will be logged when a UTM event happens.</p> <p>Note that the following HTTP header fields are included in extended-log: http method, client content type, server content type, user agent, referer, and x-forward-for.</p>
<pre>set youtube-channel-status [disable blacklist whitelist] config youtube-channel-filter edit <id> set channel-id <url-channel-id> set comment [comment] next ...</pre>	<p>Allow or block certain YouTube channels with new YouTube channel filter options. When defining <code>channel-id</code>, both the full URL or just the Channel ID suffix are acceptable.</p> <p>Note that <code>config youtube-channel-filter</code> is only available when <code>youtube-channel-status</code> is set to either <code>blacklist</code> or <code>whitelist</code>.</p>
<pre>config webfilter profile edit {name} # Configure Web filter profiles. set name {string} Profile name. size[35] set comment {string} Optional comments. size[255] set replacemsg-group {string} Replacement message group. size[35] - datasource(s): system.replacemsg-group.- name set inspection-mode {proxy flow-based} Web filtering inspection mode.</pre>	

```

        proxy      Proxy.
        flow-based  Flow based.
set options {option}  Options.
    activexfilter    ActiveX filter.
    cookiefilter     Cookie filter.
    javafilter       Java applet filter.
    block-invalid-url Block sessions contained an invalid domain name.
    jscript          Javascript block.
    js               JS block.
    vbs              VB script block.
    unknown          Unknown script block.
    intrinsic        Intrinsic script block.
    wf-referer       Referring block.
    wf-cookie        Cookie block.
    per-user-bwl     Per-user black/white list filter
set https-replacemsg {enable | disable}  Enable replacement messages for HTTPS.
set ovrdr-perm {bannedword-override | urlfilter-override | fortiguard-wf-override | contenttype-check-override}
Permitted override types.
    bannedword-override    Banned word override.
    urlfilter-override     URL filter override.
    fortiguard-wf-override FortiGuard Web Filter override.
    contenttype-check-override Content-type header override.
set post-action {normal | block}  Action taken for HTTP POST traffic.
    normal Normal, POST requests are allowed.
    block  POST requests are blocked.
config override
    set ovrdr-cookie {allow | deny}  Allow/deny browser-based (cookie) overrides.
        allow Allow browser-based (cookie) override.
        deny  Deny browser-based (cookie) override.
    set ovrdr-scope {option}  Override scope.
        user      Override for the user.
        user-group Override for the user's group.
        ip        Override for the initiating IP.
        browser   Create browser-based (cookie) override.
        ask       Prompt for scope when initiating an override.
    set profile-type {list | radius}  Override profile type.
        list      Profile chosen from list.
        radius    Profile determined by RADIUS server.
    set ovrdr-dur-mode {constant | ask}  Override duration mode.
        constant Constant mode.

```

```

        ask          Prompt for duration when initiating an override.
set ovr-dur {string}  Override duration.
set profile-attribute {option}  Profile attribute to retrieve from the RADIUS server.
    User-Name          Use this attribute.
    NAS-IP-Address      Use this attribute.
    Framed-IP-Address   Use this attribute.
    Framed-IP-Netmask   Use this attribute.
    Filter-Id           Use this attribute.
    Login-IP-Host       Use this attribute.
    Reply-Message       Use this attribute.
    Callback-Number     Use this attribute.
    Callback-Id         Use this attribute.
    Framed-Route        Use this attribute.
    Framed-IPX-Network  Use this attribute.
    Class               Use this attribute.
    Called-Station-Id   Use this attribute.
    Calling-Station-Id  Use this attribute.
    NAS-Identifier       Use this attribute.
    Proxy-State         Use this attribute.
    Login-LAT-Service   Use this attribute.
    Login-LAT-Node      Use this attribute.
    Login-LAT-Group     Use this attribute.
    Framed-AppleTalk-Zone Use this attribute.
    Acct-Session-Id     Use this attribute.
    Acct-Multi-Session-Id Use this attribute.
config ovr-user-group
    edit {name}
        # User groups with permission to use the override.
        set name {string}  User group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
    next
config profile
    edit {name}
        # Web filter profile with permission to create overrides.
        set name {string}  Web profile. size[64] - datasource(s): webfilter.profile.name
    next
config web
    set bword-threshold {integer}  Banned word score threshold. range[0-2147483647]
    set bword-table {integer}  Banned word table ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): webfilter.content.id
    set urlfilter-table {integer}  URL filter table ID. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): web-
filter.urlfilter.id

```

```

        set content-header-list {integer}    Content header list. range[0-4294967295] - datasource(s): web-
filter.content-header.id
        set blacklist {enable | disable}    Enable/disable automatic addition of URLs detected by FortiSandbox to
blacklist.
        set whitelist {option}    FortiGuard whitelist settings.
            exempt-av                Exempt antivirus.
            exempt-webcontent        Exempt web content.
            exempt-activex-java-cookie Exempt ActiveX-JAVA-Cookie.
            exempt-dlp                Exempt DLP.
            exempt-rangeblock        Exempt RangeBlock.
            extended-log-others      Support extended log.
        set safe-search {url | header}    Safe search type.
            url        Insert safe search string into URL.
            header     Insert safe search header.
        set youtube-restrict {none | strict | moderate}    YouTube EDU filter level.
            none        Full access for YouTube.
            strict      Strict access for YouTube.
            moderate    Moderate access for YouTube.
        set log-search {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging all search phrases.
        config keyword-match
            edit {pattern}
                # Search keywords to log when match is found.
                set pattern {string}    Pattern/keyword to search for. size[64]
            next
        set youtube-channel-status {disable | blacklist | whitelist}    YouTube channel filter status.
            disable    Disable YouTube channel filter.
            blacklist  Block matches.
            whitelist  Allow matches.
        config youtube-channel-filter
            edit {id}
                # YouTube channel filter.
                set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
                set channel-id {string}    YouTube channel ID to be filtered. size[255]
                set comment {string}    Comment. size[255]
            next
        config ftgd-wf
            set options {error-allow | rate-server-ip | connect-request-bypass | ftgd-disable}    Options for FortiGuard
Web Filter.
                error-allow        Allow web pages with a rating error to pass through.
                rate-server-ip      Rate the server IP in addition to the domain name.

```



```

        connect-request-bypass Bypass connection which has CONNECT request.
        ftgd-disable           Disable FortiGuard scanning.
set exempt-quota {string}     Do not stop quota for these categories.
set ovrd {string}            Allow web filter profile overrides.
config filters
    edit {id}
    # FortiGuard filters.
    set id {integer}         ID number. range[0-255]
    set category {integer}    Categories and groups the filter examines. range[0-255]
    set action {block | authenticate | monitor | warning}    Action to take for matches.
        block                Block access.
        authenticate         Authenticate user before allowing access.
        monitor              Allow access while logging the action.
        warning              Allow access after warning the user.
    set warn-duration {string} Duration of warnings.
    config auth-usr-grp
        edit {name}
        # Groups with permission to authenticate.
        set name {string}    User group name. size[64] - datasource(s): user.group.name
    next
    set log {enable | disable} Enable/disable logging.
    set override-replacemsg {string} Override replacement message. size[28]
    set warning-prompt {per-domain | per-category}    Warning prompts in each category or each domain.
        per-domain          Per-domain warnings.
        per-category        Per-category warnings.
    set warning-duration-type {session | timeout}    Re-display warning after closing browser or after a
timeout.
        session             After session ends.
        timeout             After timeout occurs.
    next
config quota
    edit {id}
    # FortiGuard traffic quota settings.
    set id {integer}         ID number. range[0-4294967295]
    set category {string}    FortiGuard categories to apply quota to (category action must be set to mon-
itor).

    set type {time | traffic} Quota type.
        time                Use a time-based quota.
        traffic              Use a traffic-based quota.
    set unit {B | KB | MB | GB} Traffic quota unit of measurement.

```

```

        B   Quota in bytes.
        KB  Quota in kilobytes.
        MB  Quota in megabytes.
        GB  Quota in gigabytes.
    set value {integer}    Traffic quota value. range[1-4294967295]
    set duration {string}   Duration of quota.
    set override-replacemsg {string}  Override replacement message. size[28]
next
    set max-quota-timeout {integer}    Maximum FortiGuard quota used by single page view in seconds (excludes
streams). range[1-86400]
    set rate-image-urls {disable | enable}    Enable/disable rating images by URL.
    set rate-javascript-urls {disable | enable}  Enable/disable rating JavaScript by URL.
    set rate-css-urls {disable | enable}    Enable/disable rating CSS by URL.
    set rate-crl-urls {disable | enable}    Enable/disable rating CRL by URL.
set wisp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable web proxy WISP.
config wisp-servers
    edit {name}
    # WISP servers.
        set name {string}    Server name. size[64] - datasource(s): web-proxy.wisp.name
    next
set wisp-algorithm {primary-secondary | round-robin | auto-learning}    WISP server selection algorithm.
    primary-secondary    Select the first healthy server in order.
    round-robin          Select the next healthy server.
    auto-learning        Select the lightest loading healthy server.
set log-all-url {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging all URLs visited.
set web-content-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging blocked web content.
set web-filter-activex-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging ActiveX.
set web-filter-command-block-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging blocked commands.
set web-filter-cookie-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging cookie filtering.
set web-filter-applet-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging Java applets.
set web-filter-jscript-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging JScripts.
set web-filter-js-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging Java scripts.
set web-filter-vbs-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging VBS scripts.
set web-filter-unknown-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging unknown scripts.
set web-filter-referer-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging referrers.
set web-filter-cookie-removal-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging blocked cookies.
set web-url-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging URL filtering.
set web-invalid-domain-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging invalid domain names.
set web-ftgd-err-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging rating errors.
set web-ftgd-quota-usage {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging daily quota usage.

```

```

        set extended-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable extended logging for web filtering.
        set web-extended-all-action-log {enable | disable}    Enable/disable extended any filter action logging for web
filtering.
    next
end

```

webfilter search-engine

Introduction.

```

config webfilter search-engine
    edit {name}
        # Configure web filter search engines.
        set name {string}    Search engine name. size[35]
        set hostname {string}    Hostname (regular expression). size[127]
        set url {string}    URL (regular expression). size[127]
        set query {string}    Code used to prefix a query (must end with an equals character). size[15]
        set safesearch {disable | url | header}    Safe search method. You can disable safe search, add the safe search
string to URLs, or insert a safe search header.
            disable    Site does not support safe search.
            url        Safe search selected with a parameter in the URL.
            header    Safe search selected by search header (i.e. youtube.edu).
        set charset {utf-8 | gb2312}    Search engine charset.
            utf-8    UTF-8 encoding.
            gb2312    GB2312 encoding.
        set safesearch-str {string}    Safe search parameter used in the URL. size[79]
    next
end

```

webfilter urlfilter

Use this command to configure URL filter lists.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre> config entries edit <id> set dns-address-family {ipv4 ipv6 both} next ... </pre>	Resolve either IPv4, IPv6, or both kinds of address from DNS server.
<pre> config webfilter urlfilter edit {id} # Configure URL filter lists. set id {integer} ID. range[0-4294967295] set name {string} Name of URL filter list. size[35] set comment {string} Optional comments. size[255] set one-arm-ips-urlfilter {enable disable} Enable/disable DNS resolver for one-arm IPS URL filter operation. set ip-addr-block {enable disable} Enable/disable blocking URLs when the hostname appears as an IP address. config entries edit {id} # URL filter entries. set id {integer} Id. range[0-4294967295] set url {string} URL to be filtered. size[511] set type {simple regex wildcard} Filter type (simple, regex, or wildcard). simple Simple URL string. regex Regular expression URL string. wildcard Wildcard URL string. set action {exempt block allow monitor} Action to take for URL filter matches. exempt Exempt matches. block Block matches. allow Allow matches (no log). monitor Allow matches (with log). set status {enable disable} Enable/disable this URL filter. set exempt {option} If action is set to exempt, select the security profile operations that exempt URLs skip. Separate multiple options with a space. av AntiVirus scanning. web-content Web filter content matching. activex-java-cookie ActiveX, Java, and cookie filtering. dlp DLP scanning. fortiguard FortiGuard web filtering. range-block Range block feature. pass Pass single connection from all. </pre>	

```

        all                Exempt from all security profiles.
set web-proxy-profile {string}  Web proxy profile. size[63] - datasource(s): web-proxy.profile.name
set referrer-host {string}    Referrer host name. size[255]
set dns-address-family {ipv4 | ipv6 | both}  Resolve IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or both from DNS
server.
        ipv4  Resolve IPv4 address from DNS server.
        ipv6  Resolve IPv6 address from DNS server.
        both  Resolve both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses from DNS server.
next
next
end
```

web-proxy

Use these commands to configure the FortiGate web proxy. You can use the FortiGate web proxy and interface settings to enable explicit HTTP and HTTPS proxying on one or more interfaces. When enabled, the FortiGate unit becomes a web proxy server. All HTTP and HTTPS session received by interfaces with explicit web proxy enabled are intercepted by the explicit web proxy relayed to their destinations.

To use the explicit proxy, users must add the IP address of a FortiGate interface and the explicit proxy port number to the proxy configuration settings of their web browsers.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- [web-proxy debug-url](#)
- [web-proxy explicit](#)
- [web-proxy forward-server](#)
- [web-proxy forward-server-group](#)
- [web-proxy global](#)
- [web-proxy profile](#)
- [web-proxy url-match](#)
- [web-proxy wisp](#)

web-proxy debug-url

Use this command to configure debug URL addresses.

```
config web-proxy debug-url
  edit {name}
    # Configure debug URL addresses.
    set name {string}    Debug URL name. size[63]
    set url-pattern {string}  URL exemption pattern. size[511]
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable this URL exemption.
    set exact {enable | disable}  Enable/disable matching the exact path.
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

url-pattern <string>

URL exemption pattern.

status {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable this URL exemption.

exact {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable match exact path.

web-proxy explicit

Note: This command is only available when the FortiGate is in Proxy-based inspection mode.

Use this command to enable the explicit web proxy and the TCP port used by the explicit proxy.

To avoid repetition, only the following entries are available to begin with until `status` is set to `enable`:

- `status`
- `ipv6-status`
- `strict-guest`
- `https-replacement-message`
- `ssl-algorithm`

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>config pac-policy edit <id> set srcaddr <src-addr> set srcaddr6 <src-addr6> set dstaddr <dst-addr> set pac-file-name <pac-file-name> set pac-file-data "<pac-file>" set comments [comment] next ...</pre>	<p>Configure proxy auto-config (PAC) policies. PAC files are used to automatically choose the appropriate proxy server for browsers and other user agents, but not every user in an organization is going to have the same criteria for what is appropriate. Supporting multiple PAC files means more granular control. To support the use of multiple PAC files, a PAC policy is used.</p> <p>Note that <code>config pac-policy</code> is only available when <code>status</code> is set to <code>enable</code>, and <code>pac-file-server-status</code> is set to <code>enable</code>.</p>

```
config web-proxy explicit
  set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the explicit Web proxy for HTTP and HTTPS session.
  set ftp-over-http {enable | disable}  Enable to proxy FTP-over-HTTP sessions sent from a web browser.
  set socks {enable | disable}  Enable/disable the SOCKS proxy.
  set http-incoming-port {string}  Accept incoming HTTP requests on one or more ports (0 - 65535, default = 8080).
  set https-incoming-port {string}  Accept incoming HTTPS requests on one or more ports (0 - 65535, default = 0, use
the same as HTTP).
  set ftp-incoming-port {string}  Accept incoming FTP-over-HTTP requests on one or more ports (0 - 65535, default =
0; use the same as HTTP).
  set socks-incoming-port {string}  Accept incoming SOCKS proxy requests on one or more ports (0 - 65535, default =
0; use the same as HTTP).
  set incoming-ip {ipv4 address any}  Restrict the explicit HTTP proxy to only accept sessions from this IP address.
An interface must have this IP address.
  set outgoing-ip {ipv4 address any}  Outgoing HTTP requests will have this IP address as their source address. An
interface must have this IP address.
  set ipv6-status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable allowing an IPv6 web proxy destination in policies and all IPv6
related entries in this command.
  set incoming-ip6 {ipv6 address}  Restrict the explicit web proxy to only accept sessions from this IPv6 address. An
interface must have this IPv6 address.
  set outgoing-ip6 {ipv6 address}  Outgoing HTTP requests will leave this IPv6. Multiple interfaces can be specified.
Interfaces must have these IPv6 addresses.
  set strict-guest {enable | disable}  Enable/disable strict guest user checking by the explicit web proxy.
  set pref-dns-result {ipv4 | ipv6}  Prefer resolving addresses using the configured IPv4 or IPv6 DNS server (default
= ipv4).
    ipv4  Prefer the IPv4 DNS server.
    ipv6  Prefer the IPv6 DNS server.
  set unknown-http-version {reject | best-effort}  Either reject unknown HTTP traffic as malformed or handle unknown
```



```

HTTP traffic as best as the proxy server can.
    reject      Reject requests with an unknown HTTP version.
    best-effort  Accept requests with an unknown HTTP version and use best efforts to handle the session.
    set realm {string}  Authentication realm used to identify the explicit web proxy (maximum of 63 characters). size
[63]
    set sec-default-action {accept | deny}  Accept or deny explicit web proxy sessions when no web proxy firewall
policy exists.
    accept  Accept requests. All explicit web proxy traffic is accepted whether there is an explicit web proxy
policy or not.
    deny    Deny requests unless there is a matching explicit web proxy policy.
    set https-replacement-message {enable | disable}  Enable/disable sending the client a replacement message for HTTPS
requests.
    set message-upon-server-error {enable | disable}  Enable/disable displaying a replacement message when a server
error is detected.
    set pac-file-server-status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable Proxy Auto-Configuration (PAC) for users of this
explicit proxy profile.
    set pac-file-url {string}  PAC file access URL.
    set pac-file-server-port {string}  Port number that PAC traffic from client web browsers uses to connect to the
explicit web proxy (0 - 65535, default = 0; use the same as HTTP).
    set pac-file-name {string}  Pac file name. size[63]
    set pac-file-data {string}  PAC file contents enclosed in quotes (maximum of 256K bytes).
    config pac-policy
        edit {policyid}
        # PAC policies.
        set policyid {integer}  Policy ID. range[1-100]
        set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable policy.
        config srcaddr
            edit {name}
            # Source address objects.
            set name {string}  Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name, firewall.proxy-address.name, firewall.proxy-addrgrp.name
            next
        config srcaddr6
            edit {name}
            # Source address6 objects.
            set name {string}  Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address6.name, firewall.addrgrp6.name
            next
        config dstaddr
            edit {name}

```

```
        # Destination address objects.
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): fire-
wall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name
        next
        set pac-file-name {string}    Pac file name. size[63]
        set pac-file-data {string}    PAC file contents enclosed in quotes (maximum of 256K bytes).
        set comments {string}    Optional comments. size[1023]
    next
    set ssl-algorithm {high | medium | low}    Relative strength of encryption algorithms accepted in HTTPS deep scan:
high, medium, or low.
        high    High encryption. Allow only AES and ChaCha.
        medium  Medium encryption. Allow AES, ChaCha, 3DES, and RC4.
        low     Low encryption. Allow AES, ChaCha, 3DES, RC4, and DES.
    set trace-auth-no-rsp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable logging timed-out authentication requests.
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

append {outgoing-ip | outgoing-ip6} <ip-addresses>

Note: This entry is *not* available in Transparent mode.

Append IP addresses (IPv4 or IPv6) that outgoing HTTP requests will leave through. Note that an interface must have this IP address to be configured here.

status {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the explicit web proxy for HTTP and HTTPS sessions.

ftp-over-http {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) ability to proxy FTP sessions sent from a web browser. Once enabled, use the `ftp-incoming-port` entry to set the port that FTP-over-HTTP requests will be accepted on. Note that the explicit proxy only supports FTP with a web browser, not with a standalone FTP client.

socks {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the Socket Secure (SOCKS) proxy. Once enabled, use the `socks-incoming-port` entry to set the port number that SOCKS traffic from client web browsers will use to connect to the explicit proxy.

http-incoming-port <port>

Port number that HTTP traffic from client web browsers will use to connect to the explicit proxy. Set the value between 0-65535. The default is set to 8080. Note that explicit proxy users must configure their web browser's HTTP proxy settings to use this port.

https-incoming-port <port>

Port number that HTTPS traffic from client web browsers will use to connect to the explicit proxy. Set the value between 0-65535. The default is set to 0, meaning it will use the same port as HTTP. Note that explicit proxy users must configure their web browser's HTTPS proxy settings to use this port.

ftp-incoming-port <port>

Note: This entry is only available when `ftp-over-http` is set to `enable`.

Port number that FTP-over-HTTP traffic from client web browsers will use to connect to the explicit proxy. Set the value between 0-65535. The default is set to 0. Port number that FTP-over-HTTP traffic from client web browsers will use to connect to the explicit proxy. Set the value between 0-65535. The default is set to 0, meaning it will use the same port as HTTP. Note that explicit proxy users must configure their web browser's FTP proxy settings to use this port.

socks-incoming-port <port>

Note: This entry is only available when `socks` is set to `enable`.

Port number that SOCKS traffic from client web browsers will use to connect to the explicit proxy. Set the value between 0-65535. The default is set to 0, meaning it will use the same port as HTTP.

{incoming-ip | incoming-ip6} <ip-addresses>

Note: This entry is *not* available in Transparent mode.

IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of a FortiGate interface that should accept sessions for the explicit web proxy. Use this command to restrict the explicit web proxy to only accepting sessions from one FortiGate interface. The destination IP address of explicit web proxy sessions should match this IP address.

{outgoing-ip | outgoing-ip6} <ip-addresses>

Note: This entry is *not* available in Transparent mode. IP addresses (IPv4 or IPv6) that outgoing HTTP requests will leave through. Note that an interface must have this IP address to be configured here. Multiple interfaces can be specified. This IP address becomes the source address of web proxy sessions exiting the FortiGate.

ipv6-status {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) IPv6 web proxy functionality. Note that all entries in this command involving IPv6 are only available when `ipv6-status` is set to `enable`.

strict-guest {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) strict guest user check in explicit proxy.

unknown-http-version {reject | best-effort}

Action to take when the proxy server handles an unknown HTTP version request or message:

- **reject:** Treats the HTTP traffic as malformed and drops it (set by default; more secure option).
- **best-effort:** Attempts to handle the HTTP traffic as best as it can.

realm <name>

Name of the authentication realm used to identify the explicit web proxy. Text string can be up to a maximum of 63 characters. If the realm's name includes spaces, enclose it in quotes. No special characters are permitted; only use alphanumeric characters. When a user authenticates with the explicit proxy the HTTP authentication dialog includes the realm so users can use the realm to identify the explicit web proxy.

sec-default-action {accept | deny}

Determines whether the explicit web proxy accepts or denies (by default) sessions if firewall policies have *not* been added for the explicit web proxy.

https-replacement-message {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the return of a replacement message for HTTPS requests.

message-upon-server-error {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the return of a replacement message upon server error detection.

pac-file-server-status {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) Proxy Auto-Configuration (PAC) file server settings.

pac-file-server-port <port>

Note: This entry is only available when `pac-file-server-status` is set to `enable`.

Port number that PAC traffic from client web browsers will use to connect to the explicit proxy. Set the value between 0-65535. The default is set to 0, meaning it will use the same port as HTTP. Note that explicit proxy users must configure their web browser's PAC proxy settings to use this port.

pac-file-name <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `pac-file-server-status` is set to `enable`.

Name of the PAC file. The default is set to `proxy.pac`.

pac-file-data <file>

Note: This entry is only available when `pac-file-server-status` is set to `enable`.

Contents of the PAC file made available from the explicit proxy server for PAC support. Enclose the PAC file text in quotes. The maximum PAC file size is 8192 bytes. You can also copy the contents of a PAC text file and paste the contents into the CLI, so long as the pasted content is between two quotation marks. You can use any PAC file syntax that is supported by your users's browsers. The FortiGate does not parse the PAC file.

pac-file-url <url>

Note: This entry is only available to read when you enter `get`; you *cannot* use this entry to edit the PAC file URL. The PAC file URL is made up of the values entered in both `pac-file-server-port` and `pac-file-name` entries.

Displays the PAC file URL in the following format:

`http://<interface-ip>:<pac-port>/<pac-name>`

By default, `<pac-port>` references the value entered in the `http-incoming-port` entry (see above). However, it will instead reference the value entered in `pac-file-server-port` *if* it is changed from its default value. The `<interface-ip>` component of the URL is the interface of the explicit web proxy.

If the explicit web proxy is enabled on multiple interfaces there will be multiple PAC URLs. If you have configured an `incoming-ip` (see entry above) then only one PAC file URL is listed. This URL is to be distributed to PAC users.

ssl-algorithm {high | medium | low}

Relative strength of encryption accepted for deep scan:

- **high:** Encryption allows AES and 3DES.
- **medium:** Encryption allows AES, 3DES, and RC4.
- **low:** Encryption allows AES, 3DES, RC4, and DES (set by default).

trace-auth-rsp {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) tracing (or logging) of timed-out authentication requests.

web-proxy forward-server

Use this command to support explicit web proxy forwarding, also known as proxy chaining.

```
config web-proxy forward-server
edit {name}
# Configure forward-server addresses.
set name {string}    Server name. size[63]
set addr-type {ip | fqdn}    Address type of the forwarding proxy server: IP or FQDN.
    ip    Use an IP address for the forwarding proxy server.
    fqdn  Use the FQDN for the forwarding proxy server.
set ip {ipv4 address any}    Forward proxy server IP address.
set fqdn {string}    Forward server Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN). size[255]
set port {integer}    Port number that the forwarding server expects to receive HTTP sessions on (1 - 65535,
default = 3128). range[1-65535]
set healthcheck {disable | enable}    Enable/disable forward server health checking. Attempts to connect through
the remote forwarding server to a destination to verify that the forwarding server is operating normally.
set monitor {string}    URL for forward server health check monitoring (default = http://www.google.com). size
[255]
```

```
        set server-down-option {block | pass}    Action to take when the forward server is found to be down: block ses-
sions until the server is back up or pass sessions to their destination.
            block    Block sessions until the server is back up.
            pass     Pass sessions to their destination bypassing the forward server.
        set comment {string}    Comment. size[63]
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

ip <ipv4-address>

Note: This entry is only available when `addr-type` is set to `ip`. IP address of the forwarding proxy server.

fqdn <fqdn>

Note: This entry is only available when `addr-type` is set to `fqdn`. Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the forwarding proxy server.

addr-type {ip | fqdn}

Address type of the forwarding proxy server: IP (by default) or FQDN.

port <port>

Port number that the forwarding server expects to receive HTTP sessions on. Set the value between 1-65535. The default is set to 3128.

healthcheck {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) proxy server health check, a function that attempts to connect to a web server to make sure that the remote forwarding server is operating. Once enabled, use the `monitor` entry to set the forward health checking URL.

monitor <url>

Note: This entry is only available when `health-check` is set to `enable`. URL to use for health check monitoring. If the web proxy can't connect to this URL, it will assume that forwarding server is down. The default is set to `http://www.google.com`.

server-down-option {block | pass}

Action to take when the forwarding server is down:

- **block:** Blocks sessions until the server comes back up (set by default).
- **pass:** Allows sessions to connect to their destination.

comment [string]

Optional comments.

web-proxy forward-server-group

Use this command to configure a load-balanced group of web proxy forward servers.

```
config web-proxy forward-server-group
    edit {name}
        # Configure a forward server group consisting of multiple forward servers. Supports failover and load balancing.
        set name {string}    Configure a forward server group consisting of one or multiple forward servers. Supports fail-
over and load balancing. size[63]
        set affinity {enable | disable}    Enable/disable affinity, attaching a source-ip's traffic to the assigned for-
warding server until the forward-server-affinity-timeout is reached (under web-proxy global).
        set ldb-method {weighted | least-session}    Load balance method: weighted or least-session.
            weighted        Load balance traffic to forward servers based on assigned weights.
            least-session    Send new sessions to the server with lowest session count.
        set group-down-option {block | pass}    Action to take when all of the servers in the forward server group are
down: block sessions until at least one server is back up or pass sessions to their destination.
            block    Block sessions until at least one server in the group is back up.
            pass     Pass sessions to their destination bypassing servers in the forward server group.
    config server-list
        edit {name}
            # Add web forward servers to a list to form a server group. Optionally assign weights to each server.
            set name {string}    Forward server name. size[63] - datasource(s): web-proxy.forward-server.name
```



```
        set weight {integer}    Optionally assign a weight of the forwarding server for weighted load balancing
(1 - 100, default = 10) range[1-100]
        next
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

config server-list

A configuration method to determine the load balancing weight for web proxy forwarding servers.

Note: You can only create entries if a web proxy forwarding server has already been created on the FortiGate. To do so, go to **Network > Explicit Proxy > Web Proxy Forwarding Servers** and select **Create New**.

weight <weight>

Weight (or ratio) of this server for load balancing. Set the value between 1-100. The default is set to 10.

affinity {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable attaching source-ip's traffic to assigned forward-server until the `forward-server-affinity-timeout` is reached (see [web-proxy global](#)).

ldb-method {weighted | least-session}

Load-balancing method:

- **weighted:** Distribute to server based on weight (set by default).
- **least-session:** Distribute to server with lowest session count.

group-down-option {block | pass}

Action to take if all forward servers are down:

- **block:** Blocks traffic (set by default).
- **pass:** Passes traffic through.

web-proxy global

Use this command to configure global web proxy settings that control how the web proxy functions and handles web traffic. Typically, you should not have to change the default settings of this command. Also, if your FortiGate is operating with multiple VDOMS, these settings affect all VDOMS.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set max-waf-body-cache-length <kb></code>	Default value for this option has been changed from 100 KB to 32 KB.

```
config web-proxy global
    set fast-policy-match {enable | disable}    Enable/disable fast matching algorithm for explicit and transparent proxy
    policy.
    set proxy-fqdn {string}    Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) that clients connect to (default = default.fqdn) to con-
    nect to the explicit web proxy. size[255]
    set max-request-length {integer}    Maximum length of HTTP request line (2 - 64 Kbytes, default = 8). range[2-64]
    set max-message-length {integer}    Maximum length of HTTP message, not including body (16 - 256 Kbytes, default =
    32). range[16-256]
    set strict-web-check {enable | disable}    Enable/disable strict web checking to block web sites that send incorrect
    headers that don't conform to HTTP 1.1.
    set forward-proxy-auth {enable | disable}    Enable/disable forwarding proxy authentication headers.
    set tunnel-non-http {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allowing non-HTTP traffic. Allowed non-HTTP traffic is
    tunneled.
    set unknown-http-version {reject | tunnel | best-effort}    Action to take when an unknown version of HTTP is
    encountered: reject, allow (tunnel), or proceed with best-effort.
        reject    Rejects requests with unknown HTTP version.
        tunnel    Tunnels requests with unknown HTTP version.
        best-effort    Allow unknown HTTP requests and process them using best efforts.
    set forward-server-affinity-timeout {integer}    Period of time before the source IP's traffic is no longer assigned
    to the forwarding server (6 - 60 min, default = 30). range[6-60]
```

```

    set max-waf-body-cache-length {integer}    Maximum length of HTTP messages processed by Web Application Firewall
(WAF) (10 - 1024 Kbytes, default = 32). range[10-1024]
    set webproxy-profile {string}    Name of the web proxy profile to apply when explicit proxy traffic is allowed by
default and traffic is accepted that does not match an explicit proxy policy. size[63] - datasource(s): web-proxy.-
profile.name
    set learn-client-ip {enable | disable}    Enable/disable learning the client's IP address from headers.
    set learn-client-ip-from-header {true-client-ip | x-real-ip | x-forwarded-for}    Learn client IP address from the
specified headers.
        true-client-ip    Learn the client IP address from the True-Client-IP header.
        x-real-ip        Learn the client IP address from the X-Real-IP header.
        x-forwarded-for    Learn the client IP address from the X-Forwarded-For header.
    config learn-client-ip-srcaddr
        edit {name}
        # Source address name (srcaddr or srcaddr6 must be set).
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address.name, firewall.addrgrp.name
        next
    config learn-client-ip-srcaddr6
        edit {name}
        # IPv6 Source address name (srcaddr or srcaddr6 must be set).
        set name {string}    Address name. size[64] - datasource(s): firewall.address6.name, firewall.addrgrp6.name
        next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

proxy-fqdn <fqdn>

FQDN for the proxy for that clients use to connect. The default is set to `default.fqdn`.

max-request-length <kb>

Maximum length in kilobytes (kB) of the HTTP request line. Set the value between 2-64. The default is set to 4.

max-message-length <kb>

Maximum length in kB of the HTTP message, not including the body. Set the value between 16-256. The default is set to 32.

strict-web-check {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the blocking of web sites that send incorrect headers that don't conform to HTTP 1.1 (see [RFC 2616](#) for more information). Enabling this option may block some commonly used websites.

forward-proxy-auth {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the forwarding of proxy authentication headers. Note that this option is only practical when in explicit mode, because proxy authentication headers are always forwarded when in transparent mode. By default, in explicit mode, proxy authentication headers are blocked by the explicit web proxy. Therefore, enable this entry if you need to allow proxy authentication through the explicit web proxy.

tunnel-non-http {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the allowance of non-HTTP traffic.

unknown-http-version {reject | tunnel | best-effort}

Action to take when an unknown version of HTTP is encountered. Unknown HTTP sessions are those that don't comply with HTTP 0.9, 1.0, 1.1.

- **reject:** Rejects requests with unknown HTTP version.
- **tunnel:** Tunnels requests with unknown HTTP version.
- **best-effort:** Proceeds with best effort (set by default).

forward-server-affinity-timeout <minutes>

Period of time in minutes before the source IP's traffic will no longer be assigned to the forward server. Set the value between 6-60 (or six minutes to one hour). The default is set to 30.

max-waf-body-cache-length <kb>

Maximum length in KB of HTTP message processed by the Web Application Firewall (WAF). Set the value between 10-1024 (or 10KB to just over 1MB). The default is set to 32.

webproxy-profile <name>

Web proxy profile name.

learn-client-ip {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the learning of client IP addresses from headers.

web-proxy profile

Use this command to configure web proxy profiles that control how the web proxy functions and handles web traffic.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set header-x-authenticated-user {pass add remove} set header-x-authenticated-groups {pass add remove} set log-header-change {enable disable}</pre>	<p>Action to take regarding the authenticated user's name in the header information for upstream proxies. This option can be used when a FortiGate is operating as an explicit proxy and authenticating users.</p> <p>Pass, add, or remove the user and/or group HTTP header, and enable or disable the logging of HTTP header changes.</p>

```
config web-proxy profile
  edit {name}
    # Configure web proxy profiles.
    set name {string}    Profile name. size[63]
    set header-client-ip {pass | add | remove}  Action to take on the HTTP client-IP header in forwarded requests:
forwards (pass), adds, or removes the HTTP header.
      pass    Forward the same HTTP header.
      add     Add the HTTP header.
      remove  Remove the HTTP header.
    set header-via-request {pass | add | remove}  Action to take on the HTTP via header in forwarded requests: for-
wards (pass), adds, or removes the HTTP header.
      pass    Forward the same HTTP header.
      add     Add the HTTP header.
```

```

        remove Remove the HTTP header.
    set header-via-response {pass | add | remove} Action to take on the HTTP via header in forwarded responses:
forwards (pass), adds, or removes the HTTP header.
        pass Forward the same HTTP header.
        add Add the HTTP header.
        remove Remove the HTTP header.
    set header-x-forwarded-for {pass | add | remove} Action to take on the HTTP x-forwarded-for header in for-
warded requests: forwards (pass), adds, or removes the HTTP header.
        pass Forward the same HTTP header.
        add Add the HTTP header.
        remove Remove the HTTP header.
    set header-front-end-https {pass | add | remove} Action to take on the HTTP front-end-HTTPS header in for-
warded requests: forwards (pass), adds, or removes the HTTP header.
        pass Forward the same HTTP header.
        add Add the HTTP header.
        remove Remove the HTTP header.
    set header-x-authenticated-user {pass | add | remove} Action to take on the HTTP x-authenticated-user header
in forwarded requests: forwards (pass), adds, or removes the HTTP header.
        pass Forward the same HTTP header.
        add Add the HTTP header.
        remove Remove the HTTP header.
    set header-x-authenticated-groups {pass | add | remove} Action to take on the HTTP x-authenticated-groups
header in forwarded requests: forwards (pass), adds, or removes the HTTP header.
        pass Forward the same HTTP header.
        add Add the HTTP header.
        remove Remove the HTTP header.
    set strip-encoding {enable | disable} Enable/disable stripping unsupported encoding from the request header.
    set log-header-change {enable | disable} Enable/disable logging HTTP header changes.
    config headers
        edit {id}
        # Configure HTTP forwarded requests headers.
        set id {integer} HTTP forwarded header id. range[0-4294967295]
        set name {string} HTTP forwarded header name. size[79]
        set action {add-to-request | add-to-response | remove-from-request | remove-from-response} Action when
HTTP the header forwarded.
            add-to-request Add the HTTP header to request.
            add-to-response Add the HTTP header to response.
            remove-from-request Remove the HTTP header from request.
            remove-from-response Remove the HTTP header from response.
        set content {string} HTTP header's content. size[255]

```

```
        next
    next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

header-client-ip {pass | add | remove}

Action to take on client IP in forwarded requests header. Set the action to one of the following:

- **pass:** Forwards the same HTTP header.
- **add:** Adds the HTTP header.
- **remove:** Removes the HTTP header.

The default is set to `pass`.

header-via-request {pass | add | remove}

Action to take on via-request header in forwarded requests. The default is set to `pass`.

header-via-response {pass | add | remove}

Action to take on via-response header in forwarded requests. The default is set to `pass`.

header-x-forwarded-for {pass | add | remove}

Action to take on X-Forwarded-For (XFF) header in forwarded requests. The default is set to `pass`. XFF is a common non-standard request field, used to identify originating IP addresses of clients, and is also an email-header indicating that an email was forwarded from one or more accounts.

header-front-end-https {pass | add | remove}

Action to take on Front-End-Https header in forwarded requests. The default is set to `pass`. The Front-End-Https header is used for communication between front-end and back-end servers for SSL and formulating URLs using HTTPS instead of HTTP.

strip-encoding {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) stripping of unsupported encoding in request header.

config headers

Use this configuration method to define HTTP forwarded requests headers for action.

name <name>

HTTP forwarded header name.

action <action>

Action to take when HTTP header is forwarded:

- **add-to-request:** Add HTTP header to request (set by default).
- **add-to-response:** Add HTTP header to response.
- **remove-from-request:** Remove HTTP header from request.
- **remove-from-response:** Remove HTTP header from response.

content <content>

Enter the HTTP header content.

web-proxy url-match

Use this command to define URLs for forward-matching or cache exemption.

```
config web-proxy url-match
  edit {name}
  # Exempt URLs from web proxy forwarding and caching.
    set name {string}    Configure a name for the URL to be exempted. size[63]
    set status {enable | disable}  Enable/disable exempting the URLs matching the URL pattern from web proxy forwarding and caching.
    set url-pattern {string}  URL pattern to be exempted from web proxy forwarding and caching. size[511]
```



```
        set forward-server {string}    Forward server name. size[35] - datasource(s): web-proxy.forward-server.name,web-  
proxy.forward-server-group.name  
        set cache-exemption {enable | disable}    Enable/disable exempting this URL pattern from caching.  
        set comment {string}    Comment. size[255]  
    next  
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

status {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable per URL pattern web proxy forwarding and cache exemptions.

url-pattern <string>

The URL pattern.

forward-server <name>

Name of the forward server.

cache-exemption {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) a cache exemption list. When enabled, the specified URL pattern will be exempted from caching.

comment [string]

Optional comments.

web-proxy wisp

Use this command to configure web proxy Websense wireless Internet service provider (WISP) servers.

```
config web-proxy wisp
  edit {name}
    # Configure Wireless Internet service provider (WISP) servers.
    set name {string}    Server name. size[35]
    set comment {string}  Comment. size[255]
    set outgoing-ip {ipv4 address any}    WISP outgoing IP address.
    set server-ip {ipv4 address any}    WISP server IP address.
    set server-port {integer}    WISP server port (1 - 65535, default = 15868). range[1-65535]
    set max-connections {integer}    Maximum number of web proxy WISP connections (4 - 4096, default = 64). range[4-4096]
    set timeout {integer}    Period of time before WISP requests time out (1 - 15 sec, default = 5). range[1-15]
  next
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

comment [string]

Optional comments.

outgoing-ip <ip-address>

WISP outgoing IP address.

server-ip <ip-address>

WISP server IP address.

server-port <port>

WISP server port. Set the value between 1-65535. The default is set to 15868.

max-connections <integer>

Maximum number of web proxy WISP connections. Set the value between 4-4096. The default is set to 64.

timeout <seconds>

Period of time in seconds before WISP requests timeout. Set the value between 1-15. The default is set to 5.

wireless-controller

Use `config wireless-controller` to configure virtual wireless access points that can be associated with multiple physical wireless access points, thereby extending the range of your wireless network.

This section includes syntax for the following commands:

- `wireless-controller ap-status`
- `wireless-controller ble-profile`
- `wireless-controller bonjour-profile`
- `wireless-controller global`
- `wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-3gpp-cellular`
- `wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-ip-address-type`
- `wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-nai-realm`
- `wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-network-auth-type`
- `wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-roaming-consortium`
- `wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-venue-name`
- `wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-conn-capability`
- `wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-operator-name`
- `wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-osu-provider`
- `wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-wan-metric`
- `wireless-controller hotspot20 hs-profile`
- `wireless-controller hotspot20 icon`
- `wireless-controller hotspot20 qos-map`
- `wireless-controller inter-controller`
- `wireless-controller qos-profile`
- `wireless-controller setting`
- `wireless-controller timers`
- `wireless-controller utm-profile`
- `wireless-controller vap`
- `wireless-controller vap-group`

- [wireless-controller wids-profile](#)
- [wireless-controller wtp](#)
- [wireless-controller wtp-group](#)
- [wireless-controller wtp-profile](#)

wireless-controller ap-status

Use this command to designate detected access points as either accepted, rogue, or rogue APs that are suppressed. To see information about detected access points, use the `get wireless-controller scan` command.

```
config wireless-controller ap-status
  edit {id}
    # Configure access point status (rogue | accepted | suppressed).
    set id {integer}    AP ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set bssid {mac address}  Access Point's (AP's) BSSID.
    set ssid {string}    Access Point's (AP's) SSID. size[32]
    set status {rogue | accepted | suppressed}  Access Point's (AP's) status: rogue, accepted, or suppressed.
      rogue      Rogue AP.
      accepted   Accepted AP.
      suppressed Suppressed AP.
  next
end
```

bssid <mac-address>

The access point's basic service set identifier (BSSID), expressed as the AP's wireless MAC address.

ssid <name>

The access point's SSID, expressed as the network name for the wireless interface.

status {rogue | accepted | suppressed}

Status of the AP:

- **rogue:** Defines an AP as undesirable, but still available.
- **accepted:** Defines an AP as accepted in the wireless network.

- **suppressed:** Actively prevents users from connecting to these rogue APs.

If you have rogue APs in your network, you can choose to monitor them. See [Monitoring rogue APs](#).

wireless-controller ble-profile

Introduction.

```
config wireless-controller ble-profile
edit {name}
# Configure Bluetooth Low Energy profile.
set name {string}    Bluetooth Low Energy profile name. size[35]
set comment {string}  Comment. size[63]
set advertising {ibeacon | eddystone-uid | eddystone-url}  Advertising type.
    ibeacon          iBeacon advertising.
    eddystone-uid    Eddystone UID advertising.
    eddystone-url    Eddystone URL advertising.
set ibeacon-uuid {string}  Universally Unique Identifier (UUID; automatically assigned but can be manually
reset). size[63]
set major-id {integer}    Major ID. range[0-65535]
set minor-id {integer}    Minor ID. range[0-65535]
set eddystone-namespace {string}  Eddystone namespace ID. size[10]
set eddystone-instance {string}  Eddystone instance ID. size[6]
set eddystone-url {string}  Eddystone URL. size[127]
set eddystone-url-encode-hex {string}  Eddystone encoded URL hexadecimal string size[54]
set txpower {option}      Transmit power level (default = 0).
    0    Transmit power level 0 (-21 dBm)
    1    Transmit power level 1 (-18 dBm)
    2    Transmit power level 2 (-15 dBm)
    3    Transmit power level 3 (-12 dBm)
    4    Transmit power level 4 (-9 dBm)
    5    Transmit power level 5 (-6 dBm)
    6    Transmit power level 6 (-3 dBm)
    7    Transmit power level 7 (0 dBm)
    8    Transmit power level 8 (1 dBm)
    9    Transmit power level 9 (2 dBm)
    10   Transmit power level 10 (3 dBm)
    11   Transmit power level 11 (4 dBm)
    12   Transmit power level 12 (5 dBm)
```

```

        set beacon-interval {integer}    Beacon interval (default = 100 msec). range[40-3500]
        set ble-scanning {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) scanning.
    next
end

```

wireless-controller bonjour-profile

Configure Bonjour gateway support for WiFi networks.

```

config wireless-controller bonjour-profile
    edit {name}
        # Configure Bonjour profiles. Bonjour is Apple's zero configuration networking protocol. Bonjour profiles allow APs
        and FortiAPs to connect to networks using Bonjour.
        set name {string}    Bonjour profile name. size[35]
        set comment {string}    Comment. size[63]
        config policy-list
            edit {policy-id}
                # Bonjour policy list.
                set policy-id {integer}    Policy ID. range[1-65535]
                set description {string}    Description. size[63]
                set from-vlan {string}    VLAN ID from which the Bonjour service is advertised (0 - 4094, default = 0).
size[63]
                set to-vlan {string}    VLAN ID to which the Bonjour service is made available (0 - 4094, default = all).
size[63]
                set services {option}    Bonjour services for the VLAN connecting to the Bonjour network.
                    all                All services.
                    airplay            AirPlay.
                    afp                AFP (Apple File Sharing).
                    bit-torrent        BitTorrent.
                    ftp                FTP.
                    ichat              iChat.
                    itunes             iTunes.
                    printers            Printers.
                    samba              Samba.
                    scanners            Scanners.
                    ssh                SSH.
                    chromecast         ChromeCast.
            next
        next
    next
end

```

```
    next
end
```

Comment

Optional comment for the Bonjour profile.

config policy-list

Bonjour policy list.

description

Description for the Bonjour profile policy.

from-vlan <id>

VLAN ID from which the Bonjour service will be advertised (0 - 4094, default = 0).

to-vlan <id>

Vlan ID to which the Bonjour service should be made available (0 - 4094, default = all).

services {all | airplay | afp | bit-torrent | ftp | ichat | itunes | printers | samba | scanners | ssh | chromecast}

Services for the VLAN.

wireless-controller global

Use this command to configure global settings for physical access points, also known as WLAN Termination Points (WTPs), configured using the Control and Provisioning of Wireless Access Points (CAPWAP) protocol.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set image-download {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable WTP image download at join time.
<code>set control-message-offload {ebp-frame aeroscout-tag ap-list sta-list sta-cap-list stats aeroscout-mu}</code>	Configure CAPWAP control message data channel offload.

```

config wireless-controller global
    set name {string}    Name of the wireless controller. size[35]
    set location {string} Description of the location of the wireless controller. size[35]
    set image-download {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WTP image download at join time.
    set max-retransmit {integer}    Maximum number of tunnel packet retransmissions (0 - 64, default = 3). range[0-64]
    set control-message-offload {option}    Configure CAPWAP control message data channel offload.
        ebp-frame        Ekahau blink protocol (EBP) frames.
        aeroscout-tag    AeroScout tag.
        ap-list          Rogue AP list.
        sta-list         Rogue STA list.
        sta-cap-list     STA capability list.
        stats            WTP, radio, VAP, and STA statistics.
        aeroscout-mu     AeroScout Mobile Unit (MU) report.
    set data-ethernet-II {enable | disable}    Configure the wireless controller to use Ethernet II or 802.3 frames with
    802.3 data tunnel mode (default = disable).
    set link-aggregation {enable | disable}    Enable/disable calculating the CAPWAP transmit hash to load balance ses-
    sions to link aggregation nodes (default = disable).
    set mesh-eth-type {integer}    Mesh Ethernet identifier included in backhaul packets (0 - 65535, default = 8755).
    range[0-65535]
    set fiapp-eth-type {integer}    Ethernet type for Fortinet Inter-Access Point Protocol (IAPP), or IEEE 802.11f, pack-
    ets (0 - 65535, default = 5252). range[0-65535]
    set discovery-mc-addr {multicast ipv4 address}    Multicast IP address for AP discovery (default = 244.0.1.140).
    set max-clients {integer}    Maximum number of clients that can connect simultaneously (default = 0, meaning no lim-
    itation). range[0-4294967295]
    set rogue-scan-mac-adjacency {integer}    Maximum numerical difference between an AP's Ethernet and wireless MAC val-
    ues to match for rogue detection (0 - 31, default = 7). range[0-31]
    set ipsec-base-ip {ipv4 address}    Base IP address for IPsec VPN tunnels between the access points and the wireless
    controller (default = 169.254.0.1).
    set wtp-share {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sharing of WTPs between VDOMs.
    set ap-log-server {enable | disable}    Enable/disable configuring APs or FortiAPs to send log messages to a syslog
    server (default = disable).
    set ap-log-server-ip {ipv4 address}    IP address that APs or FortiAPs send log messages to.

```

```
    set ap-log-server-port {integer}    Port that APs or FortiAPs send log messages to. range[0-65535]
end
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

name <name>

Name for the wireless network.

location <location>

Location of the wireless network.

max-retransmit

Maximum number of retransmissions for tunnel packet. Set the value between 0-64. The default is set to 3.

data-ethernet-ii {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the use of Ethernet frame type with 802.3 data tunnel mode.

link-aggregation {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) CAPWAP transmit hash calculation for selecting link aggregation secondaries.

mesh-eth-type

Mesh identifier included in packets, especially useful if debugging is required. Set the value between 0-65535. The default is set to 8755.

fiapp-eth-type

Ethernet type for Fortinet Inter-Access Point Protocol (IAPP), or IEEE 802.11F, packets. Set the value between 0-65535. The default is set to 5252.

discovery-mc-addr <multicast-address>

Multicast IP address for AP discovery. The default is set to 244.0.1.140.

max-clients <number>

Maximum number of clients that can connect simultaneously. The default is set to 0, meaning no limitation.

rogue-scan-mac-adjacency

Maximum numerical difference between an AP's Ethernet and wireless MAC values to match for rogue detection. MAC adjacency can be used to help with rogue detection, as AP WiFi interface MAC addresses are usually in the same range as its wired MAC address. LAN and WiFi network MAC addresses are matched when they are within a defined numerical distance of each other. Set the value between 0-31. The default is set to 7.

ipsec-base-ip <value>

Base IP address for WTP IPsec VPN tunnel. The default is 169.254.0.1.

ap-log-server {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the AP log server.

ap-log-server-ip <ip>

AP log server IP address.

ap-log-server-port <port>

AP log server port number.

wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-3gpp-cellular

Introduction.

```

config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-3gpp-cellular
  edit {name}
    # Configure 3GPP public land mobile network (PLMN).
    set name {string}    3GPP PLMN name. size[35]
    config mcc-mnc-list
      edit {id}
        # Mobile Country Code and Mobile Network Code configuration.
        set id {integer}  ID. range[1-6]
        set mcc {string}  Mobile country code. size[3]
        set mnc {string}  Mobile network code. size[3]
      next
    next
  end

```

wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-ip-address-type

Introduction.

```

config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-ip-address-type
  edit {name}
    # Configure IP address type availability.
    set name {string}    IP type name. size[35]
    set ipv6-address-type {not-available | available | not-known}  IPv6 address type.
      not-available      Address type not available.
      available          Address type available.
      not-known          Availability of the address type not known.
    set ipv4-address-type {option}  IPv4 address type.
      not-available      Address type not available.
      public             Public IPv4 address available.
      port-restricted    Port-restricted IPv4 address available.
      single-NATed-private  Single NATed private IPv4 address available.
      double-NATed-private Double NATed private IPv4 address available.
      port-restricted-and-single-NATed Port-restricted IPv4 address and single NATed IPv4 address available.
      port-restricted-and-double-NATed Port-restricted IPv4 address and double NATed IPv4 address available.
      not-known          Availability of the address type is not known.
    next
  end

```

wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-nai-realm

Introduction.

```

config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-nai-realm
    edit {name}
    # Configure network access identifier (NAI) realm.
    set name {string}    NAI realm list name. size[35]
    config nai-list
        edit {name}
        # NAI list.
        set name {string}    NAI realm name. size[35]
        set encoding {disable | enable}    Enable/disable format in accordance with IETF RFC 4282.
        set nai-realm {string}    Configure NAI realms (delimited by a semi-colon character). size[255]
        config eap-method
            edit {index}
            # EAP Methods.
            set index {integer}    EAP method index. range[1-5]
            set method {option}    EAP method type.
                eap-identity    Identity.
                eap-md5        MD5.
                eap-tls        TLS.
                eap-ttls        TTLS.
                eap-peap        PEAP.
                eap-sim        SIM.
                eap-aka        AKA.
                eap-aka-prime    AKA'.
        config auth-param
            edit {index}
            # EAP auth param.
            set index {integer}    Param index. range[1-4]
            set id {non-eap-inner-auth | inner-auth-eap | credential | tunneled-credential}    ID of
authentication parameter.
                non-eap-inner-auth    Non-EAP inner authentication type.
                inner-auth-eap        Inner authentication EAP method type.
                credential            Credential type.
                tunneled-credential    Tunneled EAP method credential type.
            set val {option}    Value of authentication parameter.
                eap-identity            EAP Identity.
                eap-md5                EAP MD5.

```



```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-network-auth-type
  edit {name}
  # Configure network authentication type.
  set name {string} Authentication type name. size[35]
  set auth-type {acceptance-of-terms | online-enrollment | http-redirection | dns-redirection} Network authentication type.
    acceptance-of-terms Acceptance of terms and conditions.
    online-enrollment Online enrollment supported.
    http-redirection HTTP and HTTPS redirection.
    dns-redirection DNS redirection.
  set url {string} Redirect URL. size[255]
next
end
```

wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-roaming-consortium

Introduction.

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-roaming-consortium
  edit {name}
  # Configure roaming consortium.
  set name {string} Roaming consortium name. size[35]
  config oi-list
    edit {index}
    # Organization identifier list.
    set index {integer} OI index. range[1-10]
    set oi {string} Organization identifier. size[10]
    set comment {string} Comment. size[35]
  next
next
end
```

wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-venue-name

Introduction.

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-venue-name
  edit {name}
```

```
# Configure venue name duple.
set name {string}    Name of venue name duple. size[35]
config value-list
  edit {index}
  # Name list.
  set index {integer}  Value index. range[1-10]
  set lang {string}    Language code. size[3]
  set value {string}   Venue name value. size[252]
next
end
```

wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-conn-capability

Introduction.

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-conn-capability
edit {name}
# Configure connection capability.
set name {string}    Connection capability name. size[35]
set icmp-port {closed | open | unknown}  Set ICMP port service status.
  closed    The port is not open for communication.
  open      The port is open for communication.
  unknown   The port may or may not be open for communication.
set ftp-port {closed | open | unknown}  Set FTP port service status.
  closed    The port is not open for communication.
  open      The port is open for communication.
  unknown   The port may or may not be open for communication.
set ssh-port {closed | open | unknown}  Set SSH port service status.
  closed    The port is not open for communication.
  open      The port is open for communication.
  unknown   The port may or may not be open for communication.
set http-port {closed | open | unknown}  Set HTTP port service status.
  closed    The port is not open for communication.
  open      The port is open for communication.
  unknown   The port may or may not be open for communication.
set tls-port {closed | open | unknown}  Set TLS VPN (HTTPS) port service status.
  closed    The port is not open for communication.
  open      The port is open for communication.
```



```

        unknown    The port may or may not be open for communication.
    set pptp-vpn-port {closed | open | unknown}    Set Point to Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) VPN port service
status.
        closed    The port is not open for communication.
        open      The port is open for communication.
        unknown    The port may or may not be open for communication.
    set voip-tcp-port {closed | open | unknown}    Set VoIP TCP port service status.
        closed    The port is not open for communication.
        open      The port is open for communication.
        unknown    The port may or may not be open for communication.
    set voip-udp-port {closed | open | unknown}    Set VoIP UDP port service status.
        closed    The port is not open for communication.
        open      The port is open for communication.
        unknown    The port may or may not be open for communication.
    set ikev2-port {closed | open | unknown}    Set IKEv2 port service for IPsec VPN status.
        closed    The port is not open for communication.
        open      The port is open for communication.
        unknown    The port may or may not be open for communication.
    set ikev2-xx-port {closed | open | unknown}    Set UDP port 4500 (which may be used by IKEv2 for IPsec VPN) ser-
vice status.
        closed    The port is not open for communication.
        open      The port is open for communication.
        unknown    The port may or may not be open for communication.
    set esp-port {closed | open | unknown}    Set ESP port service (used by IPsec VPNs) status.
        closed    The port is not open for communication.
        open      The port is open for communication.
        unknown    The port may or may not be open for communication.
next
end

```

wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-operator-name

Introduction.

```

config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-operator-name
    edit {name}
        # Configure operator friendly name.
        set name {string}    Friendly name ID. size[35]
        config value-list

```

```

        edit {index}
        # Name list.
        set index {integer}    Value index. range[1-10]
        set lang {string}      Language code. size[3]
        set value {string}     Friendly name value. size[252]
    next
next
end

```

wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-osu-provider

Introduction.

```

config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-osu-provider
    edit {name}
    # Configure online sign up (OSU) provider list.
    set name {string}    OSU provider ID. size[35]
    config friendly-name
    edit {index}
    # OSU provider friendly name.
    set index {integer}    OSU provider friendly name index. range[1-10]
    set lang {string}      Language code. size[3]
    set friendly-name {string}    OSU provider friendly name. size[252]
    next
    set server-uri {string}    Server URI. size[255]
    set osu-method {oma-dm | soap-xml-spp | reserved}    OSU method list.
        oma-dm        OMA DM.
        soap-xml-spp    SOAP XML SPP.
        reserved        Reserved.
    set osu-nai {string}    OSU NAI. size[255]
    config service-description
    edit {service-id}
    # OSU service name.
    set service-id {integer}    OSU service ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set lang {string}      Language code. size[3]
    set service-description {string}    Service description. size[252]
    next
    set icon {string}    OSU provider icon. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.hotspot20.icon.name

```

```
    next
end
```

wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-wan-metric

Introduction.

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-wan-metric
edit {name}
# Configure WAN metrics.
set name {string}    WAN metric name. size[35]
set link-status {up | down | in-test}    Link status.
    up        Link up.
    down      Link down.
    in-test   Link in test state.
set symmetric-wan-link {symmetric | asymmetric}    WAN link symmetry.
    symmetric Symmetric WAN link (uplink and downlink speeds are the same).
    asymmetric Asymmetric WAN link (uplink and downlink speeds are not the same).
set link-at-capacity {enable | disable}    Link at capacity.
set uplink-speed {integer}    Uplink speed (in kilobits/s). range[0-4294967295]
set downlink-speed {integer}    Downlink speed (in kilobits/s). range[0-4294967295]
set uplink-load {integer}    Uplink load. range[0-255]
set downlink-load {integer}    Downlink load. range[0-255]
set load-measurement-duration {integer}    Load measurement duration (in tenths of a second). range[0-65535]
next
end
```

wireless-controller hotspot20 hs-profile

Introduction.

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 hs-profile
edit {name}
# Configure hotspot profile.
set name {string}    Hotspot profile name. size[35]
set access-network-type {option}    Access network type.
    private-network        Private network.
    private-network-with-guest-access    Private network with guest access.
```

```

        chargeable-public-network      Chargeable public network.
        free-public-network             Free public network.
        personal-device-network         Personal devices network.
        emergency-services-only-network Emergency services only network.
        test-or-experimental            Test or experimental.
        wildcard                        Wildcard.
set access-network-internet {enable | disable}  Enable/disable connectivity to the Internet.
set access-network-asra {enable | disable}      Enable/disable additional step required for access (ASRA).
set access-network-esr {enable | disable}       Enable/disable emergency services reachable (ESR).
set access-network-uesa {enable | disable}      Enable/disable unauthenticated emergency service accessible (UESA).
set venue-group {option} Venue group.
    unspecified      Unspecified.
    assembly         Assembly.
    business         Business.
    educational      Educational.
    factory          Factory and industrial.
    institutional    Institutional.
    mercantile       Mercantile.
    residential      Residential.
    storage          Storage.
    utility          Utility and miscellaneous.
    vehicular        Vehicular.
    outdoor          Outdoor.
set venue-type {option} Venue type.
    unspecified      Unspecified.
    arena            Arena.
    stadium          Stadium.
    passenger-terminal Passenger terminal.
    amphitheater     Amphitheater.
    amusement-park   Amusement park.
    place-of-worship Place of worship.
    convention-center Convention center.
    library          Library.
    museum           Museum.
    restaurant       Restaurant.
    theater          Theater.
    bar              Bar.
    coffee-shop       Coffee shop.
    zoo-or-aquarium   Zoo or aquarium.
    emergency-center  Emergency coordination center.

```

doctor-office	Doctor or dentist office.
bank	Bank.
fire-station	Fire station.
police-station	Police station.
post-office	Post office.
professional-office	Professional office.
research-facility	Research and development facility.
attorney-office	Attorney office.
primary-school	Primary school.
secondary-school	Secondary school.
university-or-college	University or college.
factory	Factory.
hospital	Hospital.
long-term-care-facility	Long term care facility.
rehab-center	Alcohol and drug rehabilitation center.
group-home	Group home.
prison-or-jail	Prison or jail.
retail-store	Retail store.
grocery-market	Grocery market.
auto-service-station	Auto service station.
shopping-mall	Shopping mall.
gas-station	Gas station.
private	Private residence.
hotel-or-motel	Hotel or motel.
dormitory	Dormitory.
boarding-house	Boarding house.
automobile	Automobile or truck.
airplane	Airplane.
bus	Bus.
ferry	Ferry.
ship-or-boat	Ship or boat.
train	Train.
motor-bike	Motor bike.
muni-mesh-network	Muni mesh network.
city-park	City park.
rest-area	Rest area.
traffic-control	Traffic control.
bus-stop	Bus stop.
kiosk	Kiosk.
set hessid {mac address}	Homogeneous extended service set identifier (HESSID).

```

set proxy-arp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Proxy ARP.
set l2tif {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Layer 2 traffic inspection and filtering.
set pame-bi {disable | enable}    Enable/disable Pre-Association Message Exchange BSSID Independent (PAME-BI).
set anqp-domain-id {integer}    ANQP Domain ID (0-65535). range[0-65535]
set domain-name {string}    Domain name. size[255]
set osu-ssid {string}    Online sign up (OSU) SSID. size[255]
set gas-comeback-delay {integer}    GAS comeback delay (0 or 100 - 4000 milliseconds, default = 500). range[100-
4000]
set gas-fragmentation-limit {integer}    GAS fragmentation limit (512 - 4096, default = 1024). range[512-4096]
set dgaf {enable | disable}    Enable/disable downstream group-addressed forwarding (DGAF).
set deauth-request-timeout {integer}    Deauthentication request timeout (in seconds). range[30-120]
set wnm-sleep-mode {enable | disable}    Enable/disable wireless network management (WNM) sleep mode.
set bss-transition {enable | disable}    Enable/disable basic service set (BSS) transition Support.
set venue-name {string}    Venue name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.hotspot20.anqp-venue-name.-
name
set roaming-consortium {string}    Roaming consortium list name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-
controller.hotspot20.anqp-roaming-consortium.name
set nai-realm {string}    NAI realm list name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.hotspot20.anqp-nai-
realm.name
set oper-friendly-name {string}    Operator friendly name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-con-
troller.hotspot20.h2qp-operator-name.name
config osu-provider
edit {name}
# Manually selected list of OSU provider(s).
set name {string}    OSU provider name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.hotspot20.h2qp-osu-
provider.name
next
set wan-metrics {string}    WAN metric name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.hotspot20.h2qp-wan-met-
ric.name
set network-auth {string}    Network authentication name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-
controller.hotspot20.anqp-network-auth-type.name
set 3gpp-plmn {string}    3GPP PLMN name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.hotspot20.anqp-3gpp-cel-
lular.name
set conn-cap {string}    Connection capability name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-
controller.hotspot20.h2qp-conn-capability.name
set qos-map {string}    QoS MAP set ID. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.hotspot20.qos-map.name
set ip-addr-type {string}    IP address type name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.hotspot20.anqp-
ip-address-type.name
next
end

```

wireless-controller hotspot20 icon

Introduction.

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 icon
  edit {name}
    # Configure OSU provider icon.
    set name {string}    Icon list ID. size[35]
    config icon-list
      edit {name}
        # Icon list.
        set name {string}    Icon name. size[255]
        set lang {string}    Language code. size[3]
        set file {string}    Icon file. size[255]
        set type {option}    Icon type.
                               bmp    BMP image.
                               gif    GIF image.
                               jpeg   JPEG image.
                               png    PNG image.
                               tiff   TIFF image.
        set width {integer}  Icon width. range[1-65535]
        set height {integer} Icon height. range[1-65535]
      next
    next
  end
```

wireless-controller hotspot20 qos-map

Introduction.

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 qos-map
  edit {name}
    # Configure QoS map set.
    set name {string}    QOS-MAP name. size[35]
    config dscp-except
      edit {index}
        # Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) exceptions.
        set index {integer}    DSCP exception index. range[1-21]
        set dscp {integer}    DSCP value. range[0-63]
      end
    end
  end
```

```

        set up {integer}    User priority. range[0-7]
    next
    config dscp-range
    edit {index}
    # Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) ranges.
    set index {integer}    DSCP range index. range[1-8]
    set up {integer}    User priority. range[0-7]
    set low {integer}    DSCP low value. range[0-63]
    set high {integer}    DSCP high value. range[0-63]
    next
next
end

```

wireless-controller inter-controller

Define the role of the primary and secondary controllers on the FortiAP unit, allowing the unit to decide the order in which the FortiAP selects the FortiGate.

```

config wireless-controller inter-controller
    set inter-controller-mode {disable | l2-roaming | 1+1}    Configure inter-controller mode (disable, l2-roaming, 1+1,
default = disable).
        disable        Disable inter-controller mode.
        l2-roaming    Enable layer 2 roaming support between inter-controllers.
        1+1            Enable 1+1 fast failover mode.
    set inter-controller-key {password_string}    Secret key for inter-controller communications. size[127]
    set inter-controller-pri {primary | secondary}    Configure inter-controller's priority (primary or secondary,
default = primary).
        primary        Primary fast failover mode.
        secondary        Secondary fast failover mode.
    set fast-failover-max {integer}    Maximum number of retransmissions for fast failover HA messages between peer wire-
less controllers (3 - 64, default = 10). range[3-64]
    set fast-failover-wait {integer}    Minimum wait time before an AP transitions from secondary controller to primary
controller (10 - 86400 sec, default = 10). range[10-86400]
    config inter-controller-peer
    edit {id}
    # Fast failover peer wireless controller list.
    set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
    set peer-ip {ipv4 address}    Peer wireless controller's IP address.
    set peer-port {integer}    Port used by the wireless controller's for inter-controller communications (1024 -
49150, default = 5246). range[1024-49150]

```



```
        set peer-priority {primary | secondary}    Peer wireless controller's priority (primary or secondary, default
= primary).
            primary    Primary fast failover mode.
            secondary   Secondary fast failover mode.
    next
end
```

inter-controller-mode

Configure inter-controller mode (disable, l2-roaming, 1+1). Default = disable.

inter-controller-key <password>

Secret key for inter-controller communications.

inter-controller-pri {primary | secondary}

Configure inter-controller's priority (primary or secondary, default = primary).

fast-failover-max <value>

Maximum number of retransmissions for fast failover HA messages between peer wireless controllers (3 - 64, default = 10).

fast-failover-wait <value>

Minimum wait time before an AP transitions from secondary controller to primary controller (10 - 86400 sec, default = 10).

config inter-controller-peer

Fast failover peer wireless controller list.

peer-ip <ip-address>

Peer wireless controller's IP address.

peer-port <port-number>

Peer wireless controller's port (1024 - 49150, default = 5246).

peer-priority {primary | secondary}

Peer wireless controller's priority (primary or secondary, default = primary).

wireless-controller qos-profile

Configure quality of service (QoS) profiles where you can add WiFi multi-media (WMM) control and Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) mapping.

Note that:

- **call-capacity and bandwidth-admission-control are only available when call-admission-control is set to enable.**
- **bandwidth-capacity is only available when bandwidth-admission-control is set to enable.**
- **All DSCP mapping options are only available when dscp-wmm-mapping is set to enable.**
- **wmm is already set to enable by default. If wmm is set to disable, the following entries are not available: wmm-uapsd, call-admission-control, and dscp-wmm-mapping.**

QoS profiles can be assigned under the `config wireless-controller vap` command using `qos-profile`.

```
config wireless-controller qos-profile
  edit {name}
  # Configure WiFi quality of service (QoS) profiles.
    set name {string}    WiFi QoS profile name. size[35]
    set comment {string}  Comment. size[63]
    set uplink {integer}  Maximum uplink bandwidth for Virtual Access Points (VAPs) (0 - 2097152 Kbps, default = 0,
0 means no limit). range[0-2097152]
    set downlink {integer} Maximum downlink bandwidth for Virtual Access Points (VAPs) (0 - 2097152 Kbps, default
= 0, 0 means no limit). range[0-2097152]
    set uplink-sta {integer} Maximum uplink bandwidth for clients (0 - 2097152 Kbps, default = 0, 0 means no
limit). range[0-2097152]
    set downlink-sta {integer} Maximum downlink bandwidth for clients (0 - 2097152 Kbps, default = 0, 0 means no
limit). range[0-2097152]
    set burst {enable | disable}  Enable/disable client rate burst.
    set wmm {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WiFi multi-media (WMM) control.
    set wmm-uapsd {enable | disable} Enable/disable WMM Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery (U-APSD) power
save mode.
```

```
    set call-admission-control {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WMM call admission control.
    set call-capacity {integer}    Maximum number of Voice over WLAN (VoWLAN) phones allowed (0 - 60, default = 10).
range[0-60]
    set bandwidth-admission-control {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WMM bandwidth admission control.
    set bandwidth-capacity {integer}    Maximum bandwidth capacity allowed (1 - 600000 Kbps, default = 2000). range
[1-600000]
    set dscp-wmm-mapping {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) mapping.
    config dscp-wmm-vo
        edit {id}
        # DSCP mapping for voice access (default = 48 56).
        set id {integer}    DSCP WMM mapping numbers (0 - 63). range[0-63]
        next
    config dscp-wmm-vi
        edit {id}
        # DSCP mapping for video access (default = 32 40).
        set id {integer}    DSCP WMM mapping numbers (0 - 63). range[0-63]
        next
    config dscp-wmm-be
        edit {id}
        # DSCP mapping for best effort access (default = 0 24).
        set id {integer}    DSCP WMM mapping numbers (0 - 63). range[0-63]
        next
    config dscp-wmm-bk
        edit {id}
        # DSCP mapping for background access (default = 8 16).
        set id {integer}    DSCP WMM mapping numbers (0 - 63). range[0-63]
        next
    next
end
```

comment

Optional comment.

uplink

Maximum uplink bandwidth for VAP in Kbps (0 - 2097152, default = 0).

downlink

Maximum downlink bandwidth for VAP in Kbps (0 - 2097152, default = 0).

uplink-sta

Maximum uplink bandwidth for STA in Kbps (0 - 2097152, default = 0).

downlink-sta

Maximum downlink bandwidth for STA in Kbps (0 - 2097152, default = 0).

burst

Enable or disable (by default) STA rate burst.

wmm

Enable (by default) or disable WiFi multi-media (WMM) control.

wmm-uapsd

Enable (by default) or disable WMM Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery (U-APSD) power save mode.

call-admission-control

Enable or disable (by default) WMM call admission control.

call-capacity

Maximum number of VoWLAN phones allowed (0 - 60, default = 10)

bandwidth-admission-control

Enable or disable (by default) WMM bandwidth admission control.

bandwidth-capacity

Maximum bandwidth capacity allowed in Kbps (1 - 600000, default = 2000).

dscp-wmm-mapping

Enable or disable (by default) Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) mapping.

dscp-wmm-vo

DSCP mapping for voice access category (default = 48 56).

dscp-wmm-vi

DSCP mapping for video access category (default = 32 40).

dscp-wmm-be

DSCP mapping for best effort access category (default = 0 24).

dscp-wmm-bk

DSCP mapping for background access category (default = 8 16).

wireless-controller setting

Use this command to configure VDOM-specific options for the wireless controller.

```
config wireless-controller setting
    set account-id {string}    FortiCloud customer account ID. size[63]
    set country {option}      Country or region in which the FortiGate is located. The country determines the 802.11 bands
    and channels that are available.
        NA    NO_COUNTRY_SET
        AL    ALBANIA
        DZ    ALGERIA
        AO    ANGOLA
```

AR	ARGENTINA
AM	ARMENIA
AU	AUSTRALIA
AT	AUSTRIA
AZ	AZERBAIJAN
BH	BAHRAIN
BD	BANGLADESH
BB	BARBADOS
BY	BELARUS
BE	BELGIUM
BZ	BELIZE
BO	BOLIVIA
BA	BOSNIA AND HERZEGOVINA
BR	BRAZIL
BN	BRUNEI DARUSSALAM
BG	BULGARIA
KH	CAMBODIA
CL	CHILE
CN	CHINA
CO	COLOMBIA
CR	COSTA RICA
HR	CROATIA
CY	CYPRUS
CZ	CZECH REPUBLIC
DK	DENMARK
DO	DOMINICAN REPUBLIC
EC	ECUADOR
EG	EGYPT
SV	EL SALVADOR
EE	ESTONIA
FI	FINLAND
FR	FRANCE
GE	GEORGIA
DE	GERMANY
GR	GREECE
GL	GREENLAND
GD	GRENADA
GU	GUAM
GT	GUATEMALA
HT	HAITI

HN	HONDURAS
HK	HONG KONG
HU	HUNGARY
IS	ICELAND
IN	INDIA
ID	INDONESIA
IR	IRAN
IE	IRELAND
IL	ISRAEL
IT	ITALY
JM	JAMAICA
JO	JORDAN
KZ	KAZAKHSTAN
KE	KENYA
KP	NORTH KOREA
KR	KOREA REPUBLIC
KW	KUWAIT
LV	LATVIA
LB	LEBANON
LI	LIECHTENSTEIN
LT	LITHUANIA
LU	LUXEMBOURG
MO	MACAU SAR
MK	MACEDONIA, FYRO
MY	MALAYSIA
MT	MALTA
MX	MEXICO
MC	MONACO
MA	MOROCCO
MZ	MOZAMBIQUE
MM	MYANMAR
NP	NEPAL
NL	NETHERLANDS
AN	NETHERLANDS ANTILLES
AW	ARUBA
NZ	NEW ZEALAND
NO	NORWAY
OM	OMAN
PK	PAKISTAN
PA	PANAMA

PG PAPUA NEW GUINEA
PY PARAGUAY
PE PERU
PH PHILIPPINES
PL POLAND
PT PORTUGAL
PR PUERTO RICO
QA QATAR
RO ROMANIA
RU RUSSIA
RW RWANDA
SA SAUDI ARABIA
RS REPUBLIC OF SERBIA
ME MONTENEGRO
SG SINGAPORE
SK SLOVAKIA
SI SLOVENIA
ZA SOUTH AFRICA
ES SPAIN
LK SRI LANKA
SE SWEDEN
SD SUDAN
CH SWITZERLAND
SY SYRIAN ARAB REPUBLIC
TW TAIWAN
TZ TANZANIA
TH THAILAND
TT TRINIDAD AND TOBAGO
TN TUNISIA
TR TURKEY
AE UNITED ARAB EMIRATES
UA UKRAINE
GB UNITED KINGDOM
US UNITED STATES2
PS UNITED STATES (PUBLIC SAFETY)
UY URUGUAY
UZ UZBEKISTAN
VE VENEZUELA
VN VIET NAM
YE YEMEN


```
        ZB  ZAMBIA
        ZW  ZIMBABWE
        JP  JAPAN14
        CA  CANADA2
    set duplicate-ssid {enable | disable}    Enable/disable allowing Virtual Access Points (VAPs) to use the same SSID
name in the same VDOM.
    set fapc-compatibility {enable | disable}    Enable/disable FAP-C series compatibility.
end
```

account-id

FortiCloud customer account ID.

country <country>

Country of operation for your wireless network. This determines the radio channels that are available. Note that you must set the country before you configure access point (WTP) profiles. To display all available countries, enter `set country ?`. The default is set to US (United States).

duplicate ssid

Enable or disable (by default) allowance of VAPs to use the same SSID name in the same VDOM.

wireless-controller timers

Use this command to alter global timers for physical access points, also known as WTPs configured using CAPWAP.

```
config wireless-controller timers
    set echo-interval {integer}    Time between echo requests sent by the managed WTP, AP, or FortiAP (1 - 255 sec,
default = 30). range[1-255]
    set discovery-interval {integer}    Time between discovery requests (2 - 180 sec, default = 5). range[2-180]
    set client-idle-timeout {integer}    Time after which a client is considered idle and times out (20 - 3600 sec,
default = 300, 0 for no timeout). range[20-3600]
    set rogue-ap-log {integer}    Time between logging rogue AP messages if periodic rogue AP logging is configured (0 -
1440 min, default = 0). range[0-1440]
    set fake-ap-log {integer}    Time between recording logs about fake APs if periodic fake AP logging is configured (0
- 1440 min, default = 1). range[1-1440]
    set darrp-optimize {integer}    Time for running Dynamic Automatic Radio Resource Provisioning (DARRP) optimizations
```

```
(0 - 86400 sec, default = 1800). range[0-86400]
    set darrp-day {option}    Weekday on which to run DARRP optimization.
        sunday    Sunday.
        monday    Monday.
        tuesday    Tuesday.
        wednesday Wednesday.
        thursday   Thursday.
        friday     Friday.
        saturday   Saturday.
    config darrp-time
        edit {time}
        # Time at which DARRP optimizations run (you can add up to 8 times).
        set time {string}    Time. size[5]
        next
    set sta-stats-interval {integer}    Time between running client (station) reports (1 - 255 sec, default = 1). range
[1-255]
    set vap-stats-interval {integer}    Time between running Virtual Access Point (VAP) reports (1 - 255 sec, default =
15). range[1-255]
    set radio-stats-interval {integer}    Time between running radio reports (1 - 255 sec, default = 15). range[1-255]
    set sta-capability-interval {integer}    Time between running station capability reports (1 - 255 sec, default = 30).
range[1-255]
    set sta-locate-timer {integer}    Time between running client presence flushes to remove clients that are listed but
no longer present (0 - 86400 sec, default = 1800). range[0-86400]
    set ipsec-intf-cleanup {integer}    Time period to keep IPsec VPN interfaces up after WTP sessions are disconnected
(30 - 3600 sec, default = 120). range[30-3600]
    set ble-scan-report-intv {integer}    Time between running Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) reports (10 - 3600 sec, default
= 30). range[10-3600]
end
```

echo-interval

Period of time in seconds before the WTP sends Echo Requests after joining AC. Set the value between 1-255 (or one second to four minutes and 25 seconds). The default is set to 30.

discovery-interval

Period of time in seconds between discovery requests. Set the value between 2-180 (or two seconds to three minutes). The default is set to 5.

client-idle-timeout

Period of time in seconds before client is considered idle and timeouts. Set the value between 20-3600 (or 20 seconds to one hour), or 0 for no timeout. The default is set to 300.

rogue-ap-log

Intervals of time in minutes for periodic logging of rogue APs. Set the value between 0-1440 (or no logging to one day). The default is set to 0.

fake-ap-log

Intervals of time in minutes for periodic logging of fake APs. Fake APs serve to attract potential hackers and other intruders so as to collect information about them. Set the value between 0-1440 (or no interval to one day). The default is set to 1.

darrp-optimize

Intervals of time in seconds for Dynamic Automatic Radio Resource Provisioning (DARRP) optimization. Set the value between 0-86400 (or no interval to one day). The default is set to 1800.

sta-stats-interval

Intervals of time in seconds between station statistic reports. Set the value between 1-255 (or one second to four minutes and 25 seconds). The default is set to 1.

vap-stats-interval

Intervals of time in seconds between VAP statistic reports. Set the value between 1-255 (or one second to four minutes and 25 seconds). The default is set to 15.

radio-stats-interval

Intervals of time in seconds between radio statistic reports. Set the value between 1-255 (or one second to four minutes and 25 seconds). The default is set to 15.

sta-capability-interval

Intervals of time in seconds between station capability reports. Set the value between 1-255 (or one second to four minutes and 25 seconds). The default is set to 30.

sta-locate-timer

Intervals of time in seconds between station presence flushes by the WTP. Set the value between 0-86400 (or no interval to one day). The default is set to 1800.

ipsec-intf-cleanup

Time period to keep IPsec VPN interface after WTP sessions are disconnected (default = 120 sec).

wireless-controller utm-profile

Use this command to configure Unified Threat Management (UTM) profiles in order to enforce UTM policies on a local bridge SSID when Smart AP's are managed by FortiGate. These profiles can be assigned under `config wireless-controller vap`.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>config wireless-controller utm-profile</code>	New <code>config</code> command. Configure UTM profiles.

```
config wireless-controller utm-profile
edit {name}
# Configure UTM (Unified Threat Management) profile.
set name {string}    UTM profile name. size[35]
set comment {string} Comment. size[63]
set utm-log {enable | disable}  Enable/disable UTM logging.
set ips-sensor {string}  IPS sensor name. size[35] - datasource(s): ips.sensor.name
```

```
set application-list {string}    Application control list name. size[35] - datasource(s): application.list.name
set antivirus-profile {string}    AntiVirus profile name. size[35] - datasource(s): antivirus.profile.name
set webfilter-profile {string}    WebFilter profile name. size[35] - datasource(s): webfilter.profile.name
set scan-botnet-connections {disable | monitor | block}    Block or monitor connections to Botnet servers or disable Botnet scanning.
    disable    Do not scan connections to botnet servers.
    monitor    Log connections to botnet servers.
    block      Block connections to botnet servers.
next
end
```

wireless-controller vap

Use this command to configure Virtual Access Points (VAPs). The following entries have `append` options, whereby you can add values without needing to retype the whole list of values:

- selected-usergroups
- broadcast-suppression
- rates-11a
- rates-11bg
- rates-11n-ss12
- rates-11n-ss34
- rates-11ac-ss12
- rates-11ac-ss34

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.2.

Command	Description
<code>set portal-type mac-auth</code>	Set portal type for authentication and MAC authentication.

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<pre>set radio-sensitivity {enable disable} set radio-5g-threshold <dbm> set radio-2g-threshold <dbm></pre>	<p>Enable and specify Receiver Start of Packet (RX-SOP) detection thresholds in dBm. Received manage frames will be dropped when the signal strength is less than the configured thresholds. Set the threshold ranges between -95 and -20.</p> <p>Note that <code>radio-5g-threshold</code> and <code>radio-2g-threshold</code> are only available when <code>radio-sensitivity</code> is set to <code>enable</code>.</p>

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<pre>set dhcp-option82-insertion {enable disable} set dhcp-option82-circuit-id-insertion {style-1 style-2 disable} set dhcp-option82-remote-id-insertion {style-1 disable}</pre>	<p>Enable or disable DHCP option 82 insert options. All entries are set to <code>disable</code> by default.</p> <p>Note that the <code>id-insertion</code> options are only available when <code>dhcp-option82-insertion</code> is set to <code>enable</code>.</p>
<pre>set mac-auth-bypass {enable disable}</pre>	<p>Enable or disable MAC authentication bypass for Captive Portal SSID.</p>
<pre>set utm-profile <name></pre>	<p>Apply UTM profiles, created under <code>config wireless-controller utm-profile</code>, to VAPs.</p>
<pre>set local-lan {allow deny}</pre>	<p>Allow or deny a client connected to a VAP, whose traffic is not tunneled to the controller, to access the local network.</p> <p>When <code>local-lan</code> is set to <code>allow</code> (by default), FortiAP allows clients on the SSID to access the local LAN and the Internet (same way as before). When <code>local-lan</code> is set to <code>deny</code>, FortiAP prevents clients on the SSID from accessing the local LAN but still allows them to connect to the Internet. In addition, Intra-SSID Privacy is enforced, meaning clients on the SSID cannot communicate with each other.</p> <p>Note that this entry is only available when <code>local-standalone-nat</code> is set to <code>enable</code>.</p>
<pre>set quarantine {enable disable}</pre>	<p>Manual quarantining can be configured here, in order to consolidate previous CLI syntax.</p>

Command	Description
	Host endpoints can be entered in a single place and it will be quarantined throughout the access layer devices on the Security Fabric.
<pre>set captive-portal-session-timeout-interval <seconds></pre>	<p>Configure a session timeout interval in seconds for Captive Portal users. Set the range between 0 - 864000 (or no timeout to ten days). The default is set to 0.</p> <p>Note that that this command is only available when <code>local-standalone</code> is set to enable, security is set to <code>captive-portal</code>, and then <code>portal-type</code> is set to either <code>cmcc</code> or <code>cmcc-macauth</code>.</p>
<pre>config wireless-controller vap edit {name} # Configure Virtual Access Points (VAPs). set name {string} Virtual AP name. size[15] set vdom {string} Name of the VDOM that the Virtual AP has been added to. size[31] - datasource(s): sys- tem.vdom.name set fast-roaming {enable disable} Enable/disable fast-roaming, or pre-authentication, where supported by clients (default = disable). set external-fast-roaming {enable disable} Enable/disable fast roaming or pre-authentication with external APs not managed by the FortiGate (default = disable). set mesh-backhaul {enable disable} Enable/disable using this VAP as a WiFi mesh backhaul (default = dis- able). This entry is only available when security is set to a WPA type or open. set max-clients {integer} Maximum number of clients that can connect simultaneously to the VAP (default = 0, meaning no limitation). range[0-4294967295] set max-clients-ap {integer} Maximum number of clients that can connect simultaneously to each radio (default = 0, meaning no limitation). range[0-4294967295] set ssid {string} IEEE 802.11 service set identifier (SSID) for the wireless interface. Users who wish to use the wireless network must configure their computers to access this SSID name. size[32] set broadcast-ssid {enable disable} Enable/disable broadcasting the SSID (default = enable). set security-obsolete-option {enable disable} Enable/disable obsolete security options. set security {option} Security mode for the wireless interface (default = wpa2-only-personal). open Open. captive-portal Captive portal. wep64 WEP 64-bit. wep128 WEP 128-bit. wpa-personal WPA/WPA2 personal. wpa-personal+captive-portal WPA/WPA2 personal with captive portal.</pre>	

```

        wpa-enterprise          WPA/WPA2 enterprise.
        wpa-only-personal       WPA personal.
        wpa-only-personal+captive-portal WPA personal with captive portal.
        wpa-only-enterprise     WPA enterprise.
        wpa2-only-personal       WPA2 personal.
        wpa2-only-personal+captive-portal WPA2 personal with captive portal.
        wpa2-only-enterprise     WPA2 enterprise.
        osen                    OSEN.
    set pmf {disable | enable | optional} Protected Management Frames (PMF) support (default = disable).
    set pmf-assoc-comeback-timeout {integer} Protected Management Frames (PMF) comeback maximum timeout (1-20
sec). range[1-20]
    set pmf-sa-query-retry-timeout {integer} Protected Management Frames (PMF) SA query retry timeout interval (1
- 5 100s of msec). range[1-5]
    set okc {disable | enable} Enable/disable Opportunistic Key Caching (OKC) (default = enable).
    set voice-enterprise {disable | enable} Enable/disable 802.11k and 802.11v assisted Voice-Enterprise roaming
(default = disable).
    set fast-bss-transition {disable | enable} Enable/disable 802.11r Fast BSS Transition (FT) (default = dis-
able).
    set ft-mobility-domain {integer} Mobility domain identifier in FT (1 - 65535, default = 1000). range[1-65535]
    set ft-r0-key-lifetime {integer} Lifetime of the PMK-R0 key in FT, 1-65535 minutes. range[1-65535]
    set ft-over-ds {disable | enable} Enable/disable FT over the Distribution System (DS).
    set eapol-key-retries {disable | enable} Enable/disable retransmission of EAPOL-Key frames (message 3/4 and
group message 1/2) (default = enable).
    set tkip-counter-measure {enable | disable} Enable/disable TKIP counter measure.
    set external-web {string} URL of external authentication web server. size[127]
    set external-logout {string} URL of external authentication logout server. size[127]
    set mac-auth-bypass {enable | disable} Enable/disable MAC authentication bypass.
    set radius-mac-auth {enable | disable} Enable/disable RADIUS-based MAC authentication of clients (default =
disable).
    set radius-mac-auth-server {string} RADIUS-based MAC authentication server. size[35]
    config radius-mac-auth-usergroups
        edit {name}
            # Selective user groups that are permitted for RADIUS mac authentication.
            set name {string} User group name. size[64]
        next
    set auth {psk | radius | usergroup} Authentication protocol.
        psk      Use a single Pre-shared Key (PSK) to authenticate all users.
        radius    Use a RADIUS server to authenticate clients.
        usergroup Use a firewall usergroup to authenticate clients.
    set encrypt {TKIP | AES | TKIP-AES} Encryption protocol to use (only available when security is set to a WPA

```



```

type).
    TKIP      Use TKIP encryption.
    AES       Use AES encryption.
    TKIP-AES  Use TKIP and AES encryption.
set keyindex {integer}  WEP key index (1 - 4). range[1-4]
set key {password_string}  WEP Key. size[128]
set passphrase {password_string}  WPA pre-shared key (PSK) to be used to authenticate WiFi users. size[128]
set radius-server {string}  RADIUS server to be used to authenticate WiFi users. size[35]
set acct-interim-interval {integer}  WiFi RADIUS accounting interim interval (60 - 86400 sec, default = 0).
range[60-86400]
set local-standalone {enable | disable}  Enable/disable AP local standalone (default = disable).
set local-standalone-nat {enable | disable}  Enable/disable AP local standalone NAT mode.
set ip {ipv4 classnet host}  IP address and subnet mask for the local standalone NAT subnet.
set dhcp-lease-time {integer}  DHCP lease time in seconds for NAT IP address. range[300-8640000]
set local-bridging {enable | disable}  Enable/disable bridging of wireless and Ethernet interfaces on the
FortiAP (default = disable).
set local-lan {allow | deny}  Allow/deny traffic destined for a Class A, B, or C private IP address (default =
allow).
    allow  Allow traffic destined for a Class A, B, or C private IP address.
    deny   Deny traffic destined for a Class A, B, or C private IP address.
set local-authentication {enable | disable}  Enable/disable AP local authentication.
config usergroup
    edit {name}
        # Firewall user group to be used to authenticate WiFi users.
        set name {string}  User group name. size[64]
    next
set portal-message-override-group {string}  Replacement message group for this VAP (only available when secur-
ity is set to a captive portal type). size[35]
config portal-message-overrides
    set auth-disclaimer-page {string}  Override auth-disclaimer-page message with message from portal-message-
overrides group. size[35]
    set auth-reject-page {string}  Override auth-reject-page message with message from portal-message-overrides
group. size[35]
    set auth-login-page {string}  Override auth-login-page message with message from portal-message-overrides
group. size[35]
    set auth-login-failed-page {string}  Override auth-login-failed-page message with message from portal-mes-
sage-overrides group. size[35]
    set portal-type {option}  Captive portal functionality. Configure how the captive portal authenticates users
and whether it includes a disclaimer.
        auth  Portal for authentication.

```

```

        auth+disclaimer Portal for authentication and disclaimer.
        disclaimer      Portal for disclaimer.
        email-collect   Portal for email collection.
        cmcc            Portal for CMCC.
        cmcc-macauth    Portal for CMCC and MAC authentication.
        auth-mac        Portal for authentication and MAC authentication.
    config selected-usergroups
        edit {name}
        # Selective user groups that are permitted to authenticate.
        set name {string} User group name. size[64]
        next
        set security-exempt-list {string} Optional security exempt list for captive portal authentication. size[35]
        set security-redirect-url {string} Optional URL for redirecting users after they pass captive portal authentication. size[127]
        set intra-vap-privacy {enable | disable} Enable/disable blocking communication between clients on the same SSID (called intra-SSID privacy) (default = disable).
        set schedule {string} VAP schedule name. size[35]
        set ldpc {disable | rx | tx | rxtx} VAP low-density parity-check (LDPC) coding configuration.
            disable Disable LDPC.
            rx Enable LDPC when receiving traffic.
            tx Enable LDPC when transmitting traffic.
            rxtx Enable LDPC when both receiving and transmitting traffic.
        set mpsk {enable | disable} Enable/disable multiple pre-shared keys (PSKs.)
        set mpsk-concurrent-clients {integer} Number of pre-shared keys (PSKs) to allow if multiple pre-shared keys are enabled. range[0-65535]
        config mpsk-key
            edit {key-name}
            # Pre-shared keys that can be used to connect to this virtual access point.
            set key-name {string} Pre-shared key name. size[35]
            set passphrase {password_string} WPA Pre-shared key. size[128]
            set concurrent-clients {string} Number of clients that can connect using this pre-shared key. size[15]
            set comment {string} Comment. size[255]
            next
        set split-tunneling {enable | disable} Enable/disable split tunneling (default = disable).
        set vlanid {integer} Optional VLAN ID. range[0-4094]
        set vlan-auto {enable | disable} Enable/disable automatic management of SSID VLAN interface.
        set dynamic-vlan {enable | disable} Enable/disable dynamic VLAN assignment.
        set captive-portal-radius-server {string} Captive portal RADIUS server domain name or IP address. size[63]
        set captive-portal-radius-secret {password_string} Secret key to access the RADIUS server. size[128]
        set captive-portal-macauth-radius-server {string} Captive portal external RADIUS server domain name or IP

```

```

address. size[63]
    set captive-portal-macauth-radius-secret {password_string}    Secret key to access the macauth RADIUS server.
size[128]
    set captive-portal-ac-name {string}    Local-bridging captive portal ac-name. size[35]
    set captive-portal-session-timeout-interval {integer}    Session timeout interval (0 - 864000 sec, default = 0).
range[0-864000]
    set alias {string}    Alias. size[25]
    set multicast-rate {0 | 6000 | 12000 | 24000}    Multicast rate (0, 6000, 12000, or 24000 kbps, default = 0).
        0        Use the default multicast rate.
        6000    6 Mbps.
        12000   12 Mbps.
        24000   24 Mbps.
    set multicast-enhance {enable | disable}    Enable/disable converting multicast to unicast to improve performance
(default = disable).
    set broadcast-suppression {option}    Optional suppression of broadcast messages. For example, you can keep DHCP
messages, ARP broadcasts, and so on off of the wireless network.
        dhcp-up        Suppress broadcast uplink DHCP messages.
        dhcp-down      Suppress broadcast downlink DHCP messages.
        dhcp-starvation Suppress broadcast DHCP starvation req messages.
        arp-known      Suppress broadcast ARP for known wireless clients.
        arp-unknown    Suppress broadcast ARP for unknown wireless clients.
        arp-reply       Suppress broadcast ARP reply from wireless clients.
        arp-poison      Suppress ARP poison messages from wireless clients.
        arp-proxy       Reply ARP requests for wireless clients as a proxy.
        netbios-ns      Suppress NetBIOS name services packets with UDP port 137.
        netbios-ds      Suppress NetBIOS datagram services packets with UDP port 138.
        ipv6            Suppress IPv6 packets.
        all-other-mc    Suppress all other multicast messages.
        all-other-bc    Suppress all other broadcast messages.
    set me-disable-thresh {integer}    Disable multicast enhancement when this many clients are receiving multicast
traffic. range[2-256]
    set probe-resp-suppression {enable | disable}    Enable/disable probe response suppression (to ignore weak sig-
nals) (default = disable).
    set probe-resp-threshold {string}    Minimum signal level/threshold in dBm required for the AP response to probe
requests (-95 to -20, default = -80). size[7]
    set radio-sensitivity {enable | disable}    Enable/disable software radio sensitivity (to ignore weak signals)
(default = disable).
    set quarantine {enable | disable}    Enable/disable station quarantine (default = enable).
    set radio-5g-threshold {string}    Minimum signal level/threshold in dBm required for the AP response to receive
a packet in 5G band(-95 to -20, default = -76). size[7]

```

```

    set radio-2g-threshold {string}    Minimum signal level/threshold in dBm required for the AP response to receive
a packet in 2.4G band (-95 to -20, default = -79). size[7]
    set vlan-pooling {wtp-group | round-robin | hash | disable}    Enable/disable VLAN pooling, to allow grouping of
multiple wireless controller VLANs into VLAN pools (default = disable). When set to wtp-group, VLAN pooling occurs with
VLAN assignment by wtp-group.
        wtp-group    Enable VLAN pooling with VLAN assignment by wtp-group.
        round-robin  Enable VLAN pooling with round-robin VLAN assignment.
        hash         Enable VLAN pooling with hash-based VLAN assignment.
        disable      Disable VLAN pooling.
config vlan-pool
    edit {id}
    # VLAN pool.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4094]
        set wtp-group {string}    WTP group name. size[35]
    next
    set dhcp-option82-insertion {enable | disable}    Enable/disable DHCP option 82 insert (default = disable).
    set dhcp-option82-circuit-id-insertion {style-1 | style-2 | disable}    Enable/disable DHCP option 82 circuit-id
insert (default = disable).
        style-1    ASCII string composed of AP-MAC;SSID;SSID-TYPE. For example, "xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx;wifi;s".
        style-2    ASCII string composed of AP-MAC. For example, "xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx".
        disable    Disable DHCP option 82 circuit-id insert.
    set dhcp-option82-remote-id-insertion {style-1 | disable}    Enable/disable DHCP option 82 remote-id insert
(default = disable).
        style-1    ASCII string in the format xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx containing MAC address of client device.
        disable    Disable DHCP option 82 remote-id insert.
    set ptk-rekey {enable | disable}    Enable/disable PTK rekey for WPA-Enterprise security.
    set ptk-rekey-intv {integer}    PTK rekey interval (1800 - 864000 sec, default = 86400). range[1800-864000]
    set gtk-rekey {enable | disable}    Enable/disable GTK rekey for WPA security.
    set gtk-rekey-intv {integer}    GTK rekey interval (1800 - 864000 sec, default = 86400). range[1800-864000]
    set eap-reauth {enable | disable}    Enable/disable EAP re-authentication for WPA-Enterprise security.
    set eap-reauth-intv {integer}    EAP re-authentication interval (1800 - 864000 sec, default = 86400). range[1800-
864000]
    set qos-profile {string}    Quality of service profile name. size[35]
    set hotspot20-profile {string}    Hotspot 2.0 profile name. size[35]
    set rates-11a {option}    Allowed data rates for 802.11a.
        1            1 Mbps supported rate.
        1-basic      1 Mbps BSS basic rate.
        2            2 Mbps supported rate.
        2-basic      2 Mbps BSS basic rate.
        5.5          5.5 Mbps supported rate.

```

```
5.5-basic 5.5 Mbps BSS basic rate.
11        11 Mbps supported rate.
11-basic  11 Mbps BSS basic rate.
6         6 Mbps supported rate.
6-basic   6 Mbps BSS basic rate.
9         9 Mbps supported rate.
9-basic   9 Mbps BSS basic rate.
12        12 Mbps supported rate.
12-basic  12 Mbps BSS basic rate.
18        18 Mbps supported rate.
18-basic  18 Mbps BSS basic rate.
24        24 Mbps supported rate.
24-basic  24 Mbps BSS basic rate.
36        36 Mbps supported rate.
36-basic  36 Mbps BSS basic rate.
48        48 Mbps supported rate.
48-basic  48 Mbps BSS basic rate.
54        54 Mbps supported rate.
54-basic  54 Mbps BSS basic rate.
set rates-11bg {option} Allowed data rates for 802.11b/g.
1         1 Mbps supported rate.
1-basic   1 Mbps BSS basic rate.
2         2 Mbps supported rate.
2-basic   2 Mbps BSS basic rate.
5.5      5.5 Mbps supported rate.
5.5-basic 5.5 Mbps BSS basic rate.
11        11 Mbps supported rate.
11-basic  11 Mbps BSS basic rate.
6         6 Mbps supported rate.
6-basic   6 Mbps BSS basic rate.
9         9 Mbps supported rate.
9-basic   9 Mbps BSS basic rate.
12        12 Mbps supported rate.
12-basic  12 Mbps BSS basic rate.
18        18 Mbps supported rate.
18-basic  18 Mbps BSS basic rate.
24        24 Mbps supported rate.
24-basic  24 Mbps BSS basic rate.
36        36 Mbps supported rate.
36-basic  36 Mbps BSS basic rate.
```

```
48          48 Mbps supported rate.
48-basic    48 Mbps BSS basic rate.
54          54 Mbps supported rate.
54-basic    54 Mbps BSS basic rate.
set rates-11n-ss12 {option}    Allowed data rates for 802.11n with 1 or 2 spatial streams.
mcs0/1      Data rate for MCS index 0 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs1/1      Data rate for MCS index 1 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs2/1      Data rate for MCS index 2 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs3/1      Data rate for MCS index 3 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs4/1      Data rate for MCS index 4 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs5/1      Data rate for MCS index 5 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs6/1      Data rate for MCS index 6 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs7/1      Data rate for MCS index 7 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs8/2      Data rate for MCS index 8 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs9/2      Data rate for MCS index 9 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs10/2     Data rate for MCS index 10 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs11/2     Data rate for MCS index 11 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs12/2     Data rate for MCS index 12 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs13/2     Data rate for MCS index 13 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs14/2     Data rate for MCS index 14 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs15/2     Data rate for MCS index 15 with 2 spatial streams.
set rates-11n-ss34 {option}    Allowed data rates for 802.11n with 3 or 4 spatial streams.
mcs16/3     Data rate for MCS index 16 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs17/3     Data rate for MCS index 17 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs18/3     Data rate for MCS index 18 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs19/3     Data rate for MCS index 19 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs20/3     Data rate for MCS index 20 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs21/3     Data rate for MCS index 21 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs22/3     Data rate for MCS index 22 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs23/3     Data rate for MCS index 23 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs24/4     Data rate for MCS index 24 with 4 spatial streams.
mcs25/4     Data rate for MCS index 25 with 4 spatial streams.
mcs26/4     Data rate for MCS index 26 with 4 spatial streams.
mcs27/4     Data rate for MCS index 27 with 4 spatial streams.
mcs28/4     Data rate for MCS index 28 with 4 spatial streams.
mcs29/4     Data rate for MCS index 29 with 4 spatial streams.
mcs30/4     Data rate for MCS index 30 with 4 spatial streams.
mcs31/4     Data rate for MCS index 31 with 4 spatial streams.
set rates-11ac-ss12 {option}    Allowed data rates for 802.11ac with 1 or 2 spatial streams.
mcs0/1      Data rate for MCS index 0 with 1 spatial stream.
```

```

mcs1/1    Data rate for MCS index 1 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs2/1    Data rate for MCS index 2 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs3/1    Data rate for MCS index 3 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs4/1    Data rate for MCS index 4 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs5/1    Data rate for MCS index 5 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs6/1    Data rate for MCS index 6 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs7/1    Data rate for MCS index 7 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs8/1    Data rate for MCS index 8 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs9/1    Data rate for MCS index 9 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs10/1   Data rate for MCS index 10 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs11/1   Data rate for MCS index 11 with 1 spatial stream.
mcs0/2    Data rate for MCS index 0 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs1/2    Data rate for MCS index 1 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs2/2    Data rate for MCS index 2 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs3/2    Data rate for MCS index 3 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs4/2    Data rate for MCS index 4 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs5/2    Data rate for MCS index 5 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs6/2    Data rate for MCS index 6 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs7/2    Data rate for MCS index 7 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs8/2    Data rate for MCS index 8 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs9/2    Data rate for MCS index 9 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs10/2   Data rate for MCS index 10 with 2 spatial streams.
mcs11/2   Data rate for MCS index 11 with 2 spatial streams.
set rates-11ac-ss34 {option} Allowed data rates for 802.11ac with 3 or 4 spatial streams.
mcs0/3    Data rate for MCS index 0 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs1/3    Data rate for MCS index 1 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs2/3    Data rate for MCS index 2 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs3/3    Data rate for MCS index 3 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs4/3    Data rate for MCS index 4 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs5/3    Data rate for MCS index 5 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs6/3    Data rate for MCS index 6 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs7/3    Data rate for MCS index 7 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs8/3    Data rate for MCS index 8 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs9/3    Data rate for MCS index 9 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs10/3   Data rate for MCS index 10 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs11/3   Data rate for MCS index 11 with 3 spatial streams.
mcs0/4    Data rate for MCS index 0 with 4 spatial streams.
mcs1/4    Data rate for MCS index 1 with 4 spatial streams.
mcs2/4    Data rate for MCS index 2 with 4 spatial streams.
mcs3/4    Data rate for MCS index 3 with 4 spatial streams.

```

```

        mcs4/4    Data rate for MCS index 4 with 4 spatial streams.
        mcs5/4    Data rate for MCS index 5 with 4 spatial streams.
        mcs6/4    Data rate for MCS index 6 with 4 spatial streams.
        mcs7/4    Data rate for MCS index 7 with 4 spatial streams.
        mcs8/4    Data rate for MCS index 8 with 4 spatial streams.
        mcs9/4    Data rate for MCS index 9 with 4 spatial streams.
        mcs10/4   Data rate for MCS index 10 with 4 spatial streams.
        mcs11/4   Data rate for MCS index 11 with 4 spatial streams.
    set utm-profile {string}    UTM profile name. size[35]
    set mac-filter {enable | disable}    Enable/disable MAC filtering to block wireless clients by mac address.
    set mac-filter-policy-other {allow | deny}    Allow or block clients with MAC addresses that are not in the filter list.
        allow    Allow clients with MAC addresses that are not in the filter list.
        deny     Block clients with MAC addresses that are not in the filter list.
    config mac-filter-list
        edit {id}
            # Create a list of MAC addresses for MAC address filtering.
            set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
            set mac {mac address}    MAC address.
            set mac-filter-policy {allow | deny}    Deny or allow the client with this MAC address.
                allow    Allow the client with this MAC address.
                deny     Block the client with this MAC address.
        next
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

dhcp-option82-insertion {enable | disable}

Note: This feature is not supported for LAN port bridges or local-stand-alone NAT SSID. However, this feature is supported for Bridge and Tunnel modes and Mesh SSIDs. Both FortiGate and FortiAP must run FortiOS 6.0.

Enable or disable (by default) the options to set the Circuit ID (dhcp-option82-circuit-id-insertion) and Remote ID (dhcp-option82-remote-id-insertion) for DHCP packets. This can help determine which FortiAP the request came from and for which SSID it was requested.

The Circuit ID includes information specific to the circuit that the request came in in (i.e. the Ethernet MAC address of the FortiAP, with SSID and security type). The Remote ID includes information on the remote host end of the circuit (i.e. the station, or client MAC address).

vdom <name>

Name of the VLAN ID, if a VLAN will be used.

fast-roaming {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable fast-roaming, or pre-authentication, where supported by clients.

external-fast-roaming {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) pre-authentication with external non-managed AP.

mesh-backhaul {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `security` is set to a WPA type or `open`.

Enable or disable (by default) to use this VAP as a WiFi mesh backhaul. WiFi clients cannot connect directly to this SSID.

max-clients <number>

Maximum number of clients that can connect simultaneously. The default is set to 0, meaning no limitation.

max-clients-ap <number>

Maximum number of clients that can connect simultaneously per AP radio. The default is set to 0, meaning no limitation.

ssid <name>

IEEE 802.11 service set identifier, or network name, for the wireless interface. Users who wish to use the wireless network must configure their computers with this network name.

broadcast-ssid {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable broadcasting of the SSID. Broadcasting enables clients to connect to the wireless network without first knowing the SSID. For better security, however, it is best to *not* broadcast the SSID.

security {open | captive-portal | wpa-personal | wpa-personal+captive-portal | wpa-enterprise | wpa2-only-personal | wpa2-only-personal+captive-portal | wpa2-only-enterprise}

Security mode for the wireless interface. Wireless users must use the same security mode to connect to the same wireless interface.

- **open:** No security; any wireless user can connect to the network (*not* recommended).
- **captive-portal:** Users are authenticated through a captive web portal.
- **wpa-personal:** WPA-Personal security, WPA or WPA2.
- **wpa-personal+captive-portal:** WPA-Personal security, WPA only, with captive portal.
- **wpa-enterprise:** WPA-Enterprise security, WPA or WPA2.
- **wpa2-only-personal:** WPA-Personal security, WPA2 only (set by default).
- **wpa2-only-personal+captive-portal:** WPA-Personal security, WPA2 only, with captive portal.
- **wpa2-only-enterprise:** WPA-Enterprise security, WPA2 only.

pmf {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) Protected Management Frames (PMF) support. PMF works by adding a Message Integrity Check (MIC) to control packets being sent between a computer and an AP. If a control packet is being spoofed by a malicious device, the MIC check will fail, and discard the frame. This protects users from malicious attackers attempting to exchange encrypted traffic.

voice-enterprise {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) 802.11k and 802.11v assisted Voice-Enterprise roaming.

fast-bss-transition {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) 802.11r Fast BSS Transition .

okc {enable | disable}

Enable or disable Opportunistic Key Caching (OKC), an 802.11i defined technique available for authentication between a single AP and a station. OKC caching allows an authenticated station and AP to roam away from each other, come back, and not be required to perform a full authentication exchange. Only the 802.11i 4-way handshake is performed to establish transient encryption keys.

radius-mac-auth {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) MAC address authentication of clients. Once enabled, use the `radius-mac-auth-server` entry to specify the server (see entry below).

radius-mac-auth-server <server>

Note: This entry is only available when `radius-mac-auth` is set to `enable`.

RADIUS-based MAC authentication server.

portal-message-override-group <name>

Note: This entry is only available when `security` is set to a captive portal type.

Replacement message group for this VAP. For this entry to be configured, the replacement message must have already been configured using the `config system replacemsg-group` command.

portal-type {auth | auth+disclaimer | disclaimer | email-collect}

Note: This entry is only available when `security` is set to a captive portal type.

Captive portal type:

- **auth:** A purely authentication portal (set by default).
- **auth+disclaimer:** Authentication portal with a disclaimer.
- **disclaimer:** Just a disclaimer.
- **email-collect:** Portal for email collection.
- **auth-mac:** Portal for authentication and MAC authentication.

selected-usergroups <groups>

Note: This entry is only available when `security` is set to a captive portal type.

Selective user groups that are permitted to authenticate.

security-exempt-list [name]

Note: This entry is only available when `security` is set to a captive portal type.

Optional security exempt list for captive portal authentication, as configured under the `config user security-exempt-list` command.

security-redirect-url [url]

Note: This entry is only available when `security` is set to a captive portal type.

Optional URL for user-redirection after user passes captive portal authentication.

encrypt {TKIP | AES | TKIP-AES}

Note: This entry is only available when `security` is set to a WPA type.

Encryption protocol to use:

- **TKIP:** Temporal Key Integrity Protocol, used by the older WPA standard. It is a more secure encryption than WEP, (the original WLAN security protocol), however it too is now deprecated.
- **AES:** Advanced Encryption Standard. This protocol is commonly used with the newer WPA2 standard (set by default).
- **TKIP-AES:** Use both TKIP and AES protocols in order to provide backward compatibility for legacy devices. This option is not recommended, however, as attackers will only need to breach the weaker encryption of the two (TKIP).

passphrase <psk>

Note: This entry is only available when `security` is set to a WPA type.

Pre-shared key (PSK) for WPA. Set the hexadecimal value between 8-63 characters in length.

intra-vap-privacy {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) blocking of communication between clients of the same AP.

schedule <name>

VAP schedule name.

ldpc

VAP low-density parity-check (LDPC) coding configuration.

mpsks {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) multiple PSK support.

local-standalone {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) AP local standalone.

local-bridging {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) bridging of wireless and Ethernet interfaces on the FortiAP.

split-tunneling {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) split tunneling. When enabled, split tunneling allows local traffic on the AP to remain local instead of being routed through the WiFi controller.

vlanid <id>

VLAN ID, if a VLAN will be used.

dynamic-vlan {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) dynamic VLAN assignment for users based on RADIUS attributes.

multicast-rate <kbps>

Multicast rate in kbps: 0 (set by default), 6000, 12000, or 24000. Higher multicast rates mean that only close, strong signals are allowed. A high device environment will require a higher multicast rate so as to decrease the range between devices and the router.

multicast-enhance {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) conversion of multicast to unicast to improve performance.

broadcast-suppression [suppression-type]

Optional suppression of broadcast message types:

- **dhcp-up:** Uplink DHCP messages
- **dhcp-down:** Downlink DHCP messages
- **dhcp-starvation:** DHCP starvation req messages
- **arp-known:** ARP for known messages
- **arp-unknown:** ARP for unknown messages
- **arp-reply:** ARP reply from wireless clients
- **arp-poison:** ARP poison messages from wireless clients
- **arp-proxy:** ARP requests for wireless clients as a proxy
- **netbios-ns:** NetBIOS name services packets with UDP port 137
- **netbios-ds:** NetBIOS datagram services packets with UDP port 138
- **ipv6:** IPv6 packets
- **all-other-mc:** All other multicast messages
- **all-other-bc:** All other broadcast messages

me-disable-thresh <subscribers>

Multicast enhancement threshold. Set value between 2-256 subscribers. The default is set to 32.

probe-resp-suppression {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) ignoring of weak signals. When enabled, use the `probe-resp-threshold` entry to define the minimum signal level required for AP response.

probe-resp-threshold <min-level>

Note: This entry is only available when `probe-resp-suppression` is set to `enable`.

Minimum signal level/threshold in dBm required for AP response to probe requests. Set the value between -95 to -20. The default is set to -80.

vlan-pooling {wtp-group | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) VLAN pooling, allowing you to group multiple wireless controller VLANs into VLAN pools. These pools are used to load-balance sessions evenly across multiple VLANs. When set to `wtp-group`, VLAN pooling occurs with VLAN assignment by `wtp-group`.

gtk-rekey {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `security` is set to a WPA type. Enable or disable (by default) WPA re-key interval option. When enabled, use the `gtk-rekey-intv` entry to set the re-key interval time.

gtk-rekey-intv <interval>

Note: This entry is only available when `gtk-rekey` is set to `enable`.

WPA re-key interval in seconds. Increase the value for those users who may require a longer time period. Set the value between 1800-864000 (or 30 minutes to 10 days).

rates-11a <data-rate>

Data rates permitted for 802.11a in Mbps.

rates-11bg <data-rate>

Data rates permitted for 802.11b/g in Mbps.

rates-11n-ss12 <data-rate>

Data rates permitted for 802.11n with 1 or 2 spatial streams.

rates-11n-ss34 <data-rate>

Data rates permitted for 802.11n with 3 or 4 spatial streams.

rates-11ac-ss12 <data-rate>

Data rates permitted for 802.11ac with 1 or 2 spatial streams.

rates-11ac-ss34 <data-rate>

Data rates permitted for 802.11ac with 3 or 4 spatial streams.

wireless-controller vap-group

Use this command to add multiple SSIDs to VAP groups.

```
config wireless-controller vap-group
  edit {name}
    # Configure virtual Access Point (VAP) groups.
    set name {string}    Group Name size[35]
    set comment {string}  Comment. size[255]
    config vaps
      edit {name}
        # List of SSIDs to be included in the VAP group.
        set name {string}  vap name size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
      next
    next
  end
```

append vaps <ssid>

Append SSIDs to be included in the VAP group.

comment [string]

Optional comments.

vaps <ssids>

List of SSIDs to be included in the VAP group.

wireless-controller wids-profile

Use this command to configured Wireless Intrusion Detection (WIDS) profiles.

```
config wireless-controller wids-profile
  edit {name}
    # Configure wireless intrusion detection system (WIDS) profiles.
    set name {string} WIDS profile name. size[35]
    set comment {string} Comment. size[63]
    set sensor-mode {disable | foreign | both} Scan WiFi nearby stations (default = disable).
        disable Disable the scan.
        foreign Enable the scan and monitor foreign channels. Foreign channels are all other available channels
than the current operating channel.
        both Enable the scan and monitor both foreign and home channels. Select this option to monitor all
WiFi channels.
    set ap-scan {disable | enable} Enable/disable rogue AP detection.
    set ap-bgscan-period {integer} Period of time between background scans (60 - 3600 sec, default = 600). range
[60-3600]
    set ap-bgscan-intv {integer} Period of time between scanning two channels (1 - 600 sec, default = 1). range[1-
600]
    set ap-bgscan-duration {integer} Listening time on a scanning channel (10 - 1000 msec, default = 20). range
[10-1000]
    set ap-bgscan-idle {integer} Waiting time for channel inactivity before scanning this channel (0 - 1000 msec,
default = 0). range[0-1000]
    set ap-bgscan-report-intv {integer} Period of time between background scan reports (15 - 600 sec, default =
30). range[15-600]
    set ap-bgscan-disable-day {option} Optionally turn off scanning for one or more days of the week. Separate the
days with a space. By default, no days are set.
        sunday Sunday.
        monday Monday.
        tuesday Tuesday.
        wednesday Wednesday.
        thursday Thursday.
        friday Friday.
        saturday Saturday.
```

```

        set ap-bgscan-disable-start {string}    Start time, using a 24-hour clock in the format of hh:mm, for disabling
background scanning (default = 00:00).
        set ap-bgscan-disable-end {string}    End time, using a 24-hour clock in the format of hh:mm, for disabling back-
ground scanning (default = 00:00).
        set ap-fgscan-report-intv {integer}    Period of time between foreground scan reports (15 - 600 sec, default =
15). range[15-600]
        set ap-scan-passive {enable | disable}  Enable/disable passive scanning. Enable means do not send probe request
on any channels (default = disable).
        set ap-auto-suppress {enable | disable} Enable/disable on-wire rogue AP auto-suppression (default = disable).
        set wireless-bridge {enable | disable} Enable/disable wireless bridge detection (default = disable).
        set deauth-broadcast {enable | disable} Enable/disable broadcasting de-authentication detection (default = dis-
able).
        set null-ssid-probe-resp {enable | disable} Enable/disable null SSID probe response detection (default =
disable).
        set long-duration-attack {enable | disable} Enable/disable long duration attack detection based on user con-
figured threshold (default = disable).
        set long-duration-thresh {integer}    Threshold value for long duration attack detection (1000 - 32767 usec,
default = 8200). range[1000-32767]
        set invalid-mac-oui {enable | disable} Enable/disable invalid MAC OUI detection.
        set weak-wep-iv {enable | disable}    Enable/disable weak WEP IV (Initialization Vector) detection (default = dis-
able).
        set auth-frame-flood {enable | disable} Enable/disable authentication frame flooding detection (default =
disable).
        set auth-flood-time {integer}    Number of seconds after which a station is considered not connected. range[5-
120]
        set auth-flood-thresh {integer}    The threshold value for authentication frame flooding. range[1-100]
        set assoc-frame-flood {enable | disable} Enable/disable association frame flooding detection (default = dis-
able).
        set assoc-flood-time {integer}    Number of seconds after which a station is considered not connected. range[5-
120]
        set assoc-flood-thresh {integer}    The threshold value for association frame flooding. range[1-100]
        set spoofed-deauth {enable | disable} Enable/disable spoofed de-authentication attack detection (default = dis-
able).
        set asleep-attack {enable | disable} Enable/disable asleep attack detection (default = disable).
        set eapol-start-flood {enable | disable} Enable/disable EAPOL-Start flooding (to AP) detection (default = dis-
able).
        set eapol-start-thresh {integer}    The threshold value for EAPOL-Start flooding in specified interval. range[2-
100]
        set eapol-start-intv {integer}    The detection interval for EAPOL-Start flooding (1 - 3600 sec). range[1-3600]
        set eapol-logoff-flood {enable | disable} Enable/disable EAPOL-Logoff flooding (to AP) detection (default =

```

```

disable).
    set eapol-logoff-thresh {integer}    The threshold value for EAPOL-Logoff flooding in specified interval. range
[2-100]
    set eapol-logoff-intv {integer}    The detection interval for EAPOL-Logoff flooding (1 - 3600 sec). range[1-3600]
    set eapol-succ-flood {enable | disable}    Enable/disable EAPOL-Success flooding (to AP) detection (default = dis-
able).
    set eapol-succ-thresh {integer}    The threshold value for EAPOL-Success flooding in specified interval. range[2-
100]
    set eapol-succ-intv {integer}    The detection interval for EAPOL-Success flooding (1 - 3600 sec). range[1-3600]
    set eapol-fail-flood {enable | disable}    Enable/disable EAPOL-Failure flooding (to AP) detection (default = dis-
able).
    set eapol-fail-thresh {integer}    The threshold value for EAPOL-Failure flooding in specified interval. range[2-
100]
    set eapol-fail-intv {integer}    The detection interval for EAPOL-Failure flooding (1 - 3600 sec). range[1-3600]
    set eapol-pre-succ-flood {enable | disable}    Enable/disable premature EAPOL-Success flooding (to STA) detection
(default = disable).
    set eapol-pre-succ-thresh {integer}    The threshold value for premature EAPOL-Success flooding in specified
interval. range[2-100]
    set eapol-pre-succ-intv {integer}    The detection interval for premature EAPOL-Success flooding (1 - 3600 sec).
range[1-3600]
    set eapol-pre-fail-flood {enable | disable}    Enable/disable premature EAPOL-Failure flooding (to STA) detection
(default = disable).
    set eapol-pre-fail-thresh {integer}    The threshold value for premature EAPOL-Failure flooding in specified
interval. range[2-100]
    set eapol-pre-fail-intv {integer}    The detection interval for premature EAPOL-Failure flooding (1 - 3600 sec).
range[1-3600]
    set deauth-unknown-src-thresh {integer}    Threshold value per second to deauth unknown src for DoS attack (0: no
limit). range[0-65535]
    next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

comment [string]

Optional comments.

sensor-mode {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) radio sensor mode.

ap-scan {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) rogue AP scanning. Once enabled, configure a series of AP scanning options (see entries below).

ap-bgscan-period <seconds>

Note: This entry is only available when `ap-scan` is set to `enable`. Period of time in seconds between background scans. Set the value between 60-3600 (or one minute to one hour). The default is set to 600 (or ten minutes).

ap-bgscan-intv <seconds>

Note: This entry is only available when `ap-scan` is set to `enable`. Period of time in seconds between two scanning channels. Set the value between 1-600 (or one seconds to ten minutes). The default is set to 1.

ap-bgscan-duration <milliseconds>

Note: This entry is only available when `ap-scan` is set to `enable`. Listening time in milliseconds on a scanning channel. Set the value between 10-1000. The default is set to 20.

ap-bgscan-idle <milliseconds>

Note: This entry is only available when `ap-scan` is set to `enable`. Period of idle-time in milliseconds before channel scanning. Set the value between 0-1000. The default is set to 0.

ap-bgscan-report-intv <seconds>

Note: This entry is only available when `ap-scan` is set to `enable`. Period of time in seconds between background scan reports. Set the value between 15-600 (or 15 seconds to ten minutes). The default is set to 30.

ap-bgscan-disable-day {sunday | monday | tuesday | wednesday | thursday | friday | saturday}

Note: This entry is only available when `ap-scan` is set to `enable`. Days of the week when background scanning is *disabled*. By default, no days are set. When this entry is set (to any number of days), use the `ap-bgscan-disable-start` and `ap-bgscan-disable-end` entries to determine start and end times; the period between these two times is when background scanning is disabled.

ap-bgscan-disable-start <hh:mm>

Note: This entry is only available when `ap-bgscan-disable-day` is configured. Start time, in the format of hh:mm, for disabling background scanning. The default is set to 00:00.

ap-bgscan-disable-end <hh:mm>

Note: This entry is only available when `ap-bgscan-disable-day` is configured. End time, in the format of hh:mm, for disabling background scanning. The default is set to 00:00.

ap-fgscan-report-intv <seconds>

Note: This entry is only available when `ap-scan` is set to `enable`. Period of time in seconds between foreground scan reports. Set the value between 15-600 (or 15 seconds to ten minutes). The default is set to 15.

ap-scan-passive {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `ap-scan` is set to `enable`. Enable or disable (by default) passive scanning on all channels.

rogue-scan {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `ap-scan` is set to `enable`. Enable or disable (by default) rogue AP on-wire scan.

wireless-bridge {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default)

deauth-broadcast {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) detection of wireless bridge operation, used to raise awareness if your network *doesn't* use a wireless bridge.

null-ssid-probe-resp {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) null SSID probe response detection.

long-duration-attack {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) long-duration attack detection. When enabled, use the `long-duration-thresh` entry to define the threshold.

long-duration-thresh <milliseconds>

Duration of time in milliseconds for long-duration attack detection. Set the value between 1000-32767 (or one second to over 32 seconds). The default is set to 8200 (or just over eight seconds).

invalid-mac-oui {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) detection of spoofed MAC addresses. The first three bytes should indicate a known manufacturer.

weak-wep-iv {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) detection of APs using weak WEP encryption.

auth-frame-flood {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) detection of authentication frame flood attacks.

assoc-frame-flood {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) detection of association frame flood attacks.

spoofed-deauth {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) detection of spoofed deauthentication packets.

asleep-attack {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) detection of asleep attacks, attempts to crack Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol (LEAP) security. LEAP is a wireless LAN authentication method that allows clients to re-authenticate frequently, giving the client a new WEP key each time. Enable or disable (by default) detection of asleep attacks, attempts to crack Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol (LEAP) security. LEAP is a wireless LAN authentication method that allows clients to re-authenticate frequently, giving the client a new WEP key each time.

eapol-start-flood {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) detection of Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) over LAN (EAPoL) START flood attacks.

eapol-logoff-flood {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) detection of EAPoL LOGOFF flood attacks.

eapol-succ-flood {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) detection of EAPoL SUCC flood attacks.

eapol-fail-flood {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) detection of EAPoL FAIL flood attacks. When enabled, use the `eapol-fail-intv` entry to define the detection interval.

eapol-fail-thresh <threshold>

Note: This entry is only available when `eapol-fail-flood` is set to `enable`. The EAPoL FAIL detection threshold interval. Set the value between 2-100. The default is set to 10.

eapol-fail-intv <seconds>

Note: This entry is only available when `eapol-fail-flood` is set to `enable`. Interval of time in seconds between EAP FAIL detection. Set the value between 1-3600 (or one second to one hour). The default is set to 1.

eapol-pre-succ-flood {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) detection of EAPoL premature SUCC flood attacks.

eapol-pre-fail-flood {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) detection of EAPoL premature FAIL flood attacks.

deauth-unknown-src-thresh <seconds>

Threshold value per second to deauthenticate unknown sources for DoS attacks. The default is set to 10. Set to 0 for no limitation.

wireless-controller wtp

Use this command to configure various wireless transaction protocol (WTP) settings, including VAP override options and physical APs for management by the wireless controller, also known as an Access Controller (AC). **Note:** Radio 2 settings are only available for FortiAP models with dual radios.

```
config wireless-controller wtp
  edit {wtp-id}
    # Configure Wireless Termination Points (WTPs), that is, FortiAPs or APs to be managed by FortiGate.
    set wtp-id {string}    WTP ID. size[35]
    set index {integer}    Index (0 - 4294967295). range[0-4294967295]
    set admin {discovered | disable | enable}    Configure how the FortiGate operating as a wireless controller dis-
covers and manages this WTP, AP or FortiAP.
    set name {string}    WTP, AP or FortiAP configuration name. size[35]
    set location {string}    Field for describing the physical location of the WTP, AP or FortiAP. size[35]
    set wtp-profile {string}    WTP profile name to apply to this WTP, AP or FortiAP. size[35] - datasource(s): wire-
less-controller.wtp-profile.name
    set wtp-mode {normal | remote}    WTP, AP, or FortiAP operating mode; normal (by default) or remote. A tunnel
mode SSID can be assigned to an AP in normal mode but not remote mode, while a local-bridge mode SSID can be assigned to
an AP in either normal mode or remote mode.
        normal    Normal WTP, AP, or FortiAP.
        remote    Remote WTP, AP, or FortiAP.
    set bonjour-profile {string}    Bonjour profile name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.bonjour-pro-
file.name
    set override-led-state {enable | disable}    Enable to override the profile LED state setting for this FortiAP.
You must enable this option to use the led-state command to turn off the FortiAP's LEDs.
    set led-state {enable | disable}    Enable to allow the FortiAPs LEDs to light. Disable to keep the LEDs off. You
may want to keep the LEDs off so they are not distracting in low light areas etc.
    set override-wan-port-mode {enable | disable}    Enable/disable overriding the wan-port-mode in the WTP profile.
    set wan-port-mode {wan-lan | wan-only}    Enable/disable using the FortiAP WAN port as a LAN port.
        wan-lan    Use the FortiAP WAN port as a LAN port.
```



```

        wan-only Do not use the WAN port as a LAN port.
    set override-ip-fragment {enable | disable} Enable/disable overriding the WTP profile IP fragment prevention
    setting.
    set ip-fragment-preventing {tcp-mss-adjust | icmp-unreachable} Method by which IP fragmentation is prevented
    for CAPWAP tunneled control and data packets (default = tcp-mss-adjust).
        tcp-mss-adjust TCP maximum segment size adjustment.
        icmp-unreachable Drop packet and send ICMP Destination Unreachable
    set tun-mtu-uplink {integer} Uplink tunnel maximum transmission unit (MTU) in octets (eight-bit bytes). Set
    the value to either 0 (by default), 576, or 1500. range[576-1500]
    set tun-mtu-downlink {integer} Downlink tunnel MTU in octets. Set the value to either 0 (by default), 576, or
    1500. range[576-1500]
    set override-split-tunnel {enable | disable} Enable/disable overriding the WTP profile split tunneling set-
    ting.
    set split-tunneling-acl-path {tunnel | local} Split tunneling ACL path is local/tunnel.
        tunnel Split tunneling ACL list traffic will be tunnel.
        local Split tunneling ACL list traffic will be local NATed.
    set split-tunneling-acl-local-ap-subnet {enable | disable} Enable/disable automatically adding local sub-
    network of FortiAP to split-tunneling ACL (default = disable).
    config split-tunneling-acl
        edit {id}
        # Split tunneling ACL filter list.
        set id {integer} ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set dest-ip {ipv4 classnet} Destination IP and mask for the split-tunneling subnet.
    next
    set override-lan {enable | disable} Enable to override the WTP profile LAN port setting.
    config lan
        set port-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid} LAN port mode.
            offline Offline.
            nat-to-wan NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
            bridge-to-wan Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
            bridge-to-ssid Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
        set port-ssid {string} Bridge LAN port to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
        set port1-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid} LAN port 1 mode.
            offline Offline.
            nat-to-wan NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
            bridge-to-wan Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
            bridge-to-ssid Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
        set port1-ssid {string} Bridge LAN port 1 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
        set port2-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid} LAN port 2 mode.
            offline Offline.

```

```

        nat-to-wan      NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-wan   Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-ssid  Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
set port2-ssid {string} Bridge LAN port 2 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
set port3-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid} LAN port 3 mode.
        offline        Offline.
        nat-to-wan      NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-wan   Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-ssid  Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
set port3-ssid {string} Bridge LAN port 3 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
set port4-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid} LAN port 4 mode.
        offline        Offline.
        nat-to-wan      NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-wan   Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-ssid  Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
set port4-ssid {string} Bridge LAN port 4 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
set port5-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid} LAN port 5 mode.
        offline        Offline.
        nat-to-wan      NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-wan   Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-ssid  Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
set port5-ssid {string} Bridge LAN port 5 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
set port6-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid} LAN port 6 mode.
        offline        Offline.
        nat-to-wan      NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-wan   Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-ssid  Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
set port6-ssid {string} Bridge LAN port 6 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
set port7-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid} LAN port 7 mode.
        offline        Offline.
        nat-to-wan      NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-wan   Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-ssid  Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
set port7-ssid {string} Bridge LAN port 7 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
set port8-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid} LAN port 8 mode.
        offline        Offline.
        nat-to-wan      NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-wan   Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-ssid  Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
set port8-ssid {string} Bridge LAN port 8 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name

```

```

    set override-allowaccess {enable | disable}    Enable to override the WTP profile management access con-
figuration.
    set allowaccess {telnet | http | https | ssh}    Control management access to the managed WTP, FortiAP, or AP.
Separate entries with a space.
        telnet    TELNET access.
        http      HTTP access.
        https     HTTPS access.
        ssh       SSH access.
    set override-login-passwd-change {enable | disable}    Enable to override the WTP profile login-password (admin-
istrator password) setting.
    set login-passwd-change {yes | default | no}    Change or reset the administrator password of a managed WTP,
FortiAP or AP (yes, no, default, or no, default = no).
        yes       Change the managed WTP, FortiAP or AP's administrator password. Use the login-password option
to set the password.
        default   Keep the managed WTP, FortiAP or AP's administrator password set to the factory default.
        no        Do not change the managed WTP, FortiAP or AP's administrator password.
    set login-passwd {password_string}    Set the managed WTP, FortiAP, or AP's administrator password. size[31]
config radio-1
    set radio-id {integer}    radio-id range[0-2]
    set override-band {enable | disable}    Enable to override the WTP profile band setting.
    set band {option}    WiFi band that Radio 1 operates on.
        802.11a        802.11a.
        802.11b        802.11b.
        802.11g        802.11g/b.
        802.11n        802.11n/g/b radio at 2.4GHz band.
        802.11n-5G      802.11n/a at 5GHz.
        802.11n,g-only  802.11n/g at 2.4GHz.
        802.11g-only    802.11g.
        802.11n-only    802.11n at 2.4GHz.
        802.11n-5G-only 802.11n at 5GHz.
        802.11ac        802.11ac/n/a radio.
        802.11ac,n-only 802.11ac/n.
        802.11ac-only   802.11ac.
    set override-analysis {enable | disable}    Enable to override the WTP profile spectrum analysis con-
figuration.
    set spectrum-analysis {enable | disable}    Enable/disable spectrum analysis to find interference that would
negatively impact wireless performance.
    set override-txpower {enable | disable}    Enable to override the WTP profile power level configuration.
    set auto-power-level {enable | disable}    Enable/disable automatic power-level adjustment to prevent co-chan-
nel interference (default = enable).

```

```

        set auto-power-high {integer}    Automatic transmission power high limit in decibels (dB) of the measured
power referenced to one milliwatt (mW), or dBm (10 - 17 dBm, default = 17). range[0-4294967295]
        set auto-power-low {integer}    Automatic transmission power low limit in dBm (the actual range of transmit
power depends on the AP platform type). range[0-4294967295]
        set power-level {integer}    Radio power level as a percentage of the maximum transmit power (0 - 100,
default = 100). range[0-100]
        set override-vaps {enable | disable}    Enable to override WTP profile Virtual Access Point (VAP) settings.
        set vap-all {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the automatic inheritance of all Virtual Access Points
(VAPs) (default = enable).
        config vaps
            edit {name}
                # Manually selected list of Virtual Access Points (VAPs).
                set name {string}    Virtual Access Point (VAP) name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-con-
troller.vap-group.name,wireless-controller.vap.name
            next
            set override-channel {enable | disable}    Enable to override WTP profile channel settings.
            config channel
                edit {chan}
                    # Selected list of wireless radio channels.
                    set chan {string}    Channel number. size[3]
                next
            config radio-2
                set radio-id {integer}    radio-id range[0-2]
                set override-band {enable | disable}    Enable to override the WTP profile band setting.
                set band {option}    WiFi band that Radio 1 operates on.
                    802.11a            802.11a.
                    802.11b            802.11b.
                    802.11g            802.11g/b.
                    802.11n            802.11n/g/b radio at 2.4GHz band.
                    802.11n-5G        802.11n/a at 5GHz.
                    802.11n,g-only    802.11n/g at 2.4GHz.
                    802.11g-only      802.11g.
                    802.11n-only      802.11n at 2.4GHz.
                    802.11n-5G-only    802.11n at 5GHz.
                    802.11ac          802.11ac/n/a radio.
                    802.11ac,n-only    802.11ac/n.
                    802.11ac-only      802.11ac.
                set override-analysis {enable | disable}    Enable to override the WTP profile spectrum analysis con-
figuration.
                set spectrum-analysis {enable | disable}    Enable/disable spectrum analysis to find interference that would

```

```

negatively impact wireless performance.
    set override-txpower {enable | disable}    Enable to override the WTP profile power level configuration.
    set auto-power-level {enable | disable}    Enable/disable automatic power-level adjustment to prevent co-channel interference (default = enable).
    set auto-power-high {integer}    Automatic transmission power high limit in decibels (dB) of the measured power referenced to one milliwatt (mW), or dBm (10 - 17 dBm, default = 17). range[0-4294967295]
    set auto-power-low {integer}    Automatic transmission power low limit in dBm (the actual range of transmit power depends on the AP platform type). range[0-4294967295]
    set power-level {integer}    Radio power level as a percentage of the maximum transmit power (0 - 100, default = 100). range[0-100]
    set override-vaps {enable | disable}    Enable to override WTP profile Virtual Access Point (VAP) settings.
    set vap-all {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the automatic inheritance of all Virtual Access Points (VAPs) (default = enable).
    config vaps
        edit {name}
        # Manually selected list of Virtual Access Points (VAPs).
        set name {string}    Virtual Access Point (VAP) name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap-group.name,wireless-controller.vap.name
        next
        set override-channel {enable | disable}    Enable to override WTP profile channel settings.
        config channel
            edit {chan}
            # Selected list of wireless radio channels.
            set chan {string}    Channel number. size[3]
            next
            set image-download {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WTP image download.
            set mesh-bridge-enable {default | enable | disable}    Enable/disable mesh Ethernet bridge when WTP is configured as a mesh branch/leaf AP.
            set coordinate-enable {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WTP coordinates (X,Y axis).
            set coordinate-x {string}    X axis coordinate. size[15]
            set coordinate-y {string}    Y axis coordinate. size[15]
            set coordinate-latitude {string}    WTP latitude coordinate. size[19]
            set coordinate-longitude {string}    WTP longitude coordinate. size[19]
        next
    end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

config {radio-1 | radio-2}

A configuration method to set various override options for Radio 1 and/or Radio 2.

override-band {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the override of a specific AP-mode radio band. When enabled, use the `band` entry to configure the band.

band {802.11b | 802.11g | 802.11n | 802.11n,g-only | 802.11g-only | 802.11n-only}

Note: This entry is only available when `override-band` is set to `enable`.

Band of AP-mode radio. Note that this entry becomes available at the same time as `channel` does. In order to set the band, `channel` must be empty. To do this, enter `unset channel`. The channel may then be set after the band.

override-txpower {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the override of transmission power. When enabled, use the `auto-power-level` and `power-level` entries to configure further power level options.

auto-power-level {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `override-txpower` is set to `enable`.

Enable or disable (by default) automatic transmission power adjustment. When enabled, use the `auto-power-high` and `auto-power-low` entries to configure the high and low limitations. When disabled, use the `power-level` entry to configure the power level percentage.

auto-power-high <dBm>

Note: This entry is only available when `override-txpower` is set to `enable` and `auto-power-level` is then set to `enable`.

Automatic transmission power high limit in decibels (dB) of the measured power referenced to one milliwatt (mW), or dBm. Set the value between 10-17. The default is set to 17.

auto-power-low <dBm>

Note: This entry is only available when `override-txpower` is set to `enable` and `auto-power-level` is then set to `enable`.

Automatic transmission power low limit in dBm. Set the value between 1-17. The default is set to 10.

power-level <percentage>

Note: This entry is only available when `override-txpower` is set to `enable` and `auto-power-level` is then set to `disable`.

Radio power level as a percentage; as such, set the value between 0-100. The default is set to 100.

The maximum power level (i.e. 100%) will set to the regulatory maximum for your region, as determined by the country entry under `config wireless-controller setting`.

override-vaps {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the override of VAPs. When enabled, use the `vap-all` and `vaps` entries to configure the VAPs carried on the physical AP.

vap-all {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `override-vaps` is set to `enable`.

Enable or disable (by default) the automatic inheritance of all VAPs. If disabled, you can select specific VAPs by using the `vaps` entry (see below).

vaps <vaps>

Note: This entry is only available when `override-vaps` is set to `enable` and `vap-all` is then set to `disable`.

Specific VAPs carried on this physical AP. Separate each value with a space to add multiple VAPs. Values can also be added using `append`.

override-channel {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the override of channels. When enabled, use the `channel` entry to enter the channels used by the AP.

channel {1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11}

Note: This entry is only available when either `override-band` or `override-channel` are set to `enable`.

Wireless radio channels to override. Separate each value with a space to add multiple channels. Values can also be added using `append`.

config split-tunneling-acl

Note: This configuration method is only available when `split-tunneling-acl-local-ap-subnet` is set to `enable`.

A configuration method to set various split tunneling access control list (ACL) filter lists.

dest-ip <ipv4>

IPv4 destination address to be added to the ACL filter.

config lan

Note: This configuration method is only available when `override-lan` is set to `enable`.

A configuration method to set WTP port mode.

port-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid}

LAN port mode:

- **offline:** No port bridging (by default)
- **nat-to-wan:** Bridge NAT to the incoming WAN interface
- **bridge-to-wan:** Bridge all LAN ports to the WAN interface
- **bridge-to-ssid:** Bridge all LAN ports to the SSID

admin {discovered | disable | enable}

Enable (by default) or disable the AC to provide service to this WTP, or have the WTP discovered through either discovery or join request messages.

name <name>

Name for the AP.

location <location>

Location of the AP.

wtp-profile <profile>

Name of the WTP profile to apply to this AP, as created under `config wireless-controller wtp-profile`.

wtp-mode {normal | remote}

AP operating mode: `normal` (by default) or `remote`. A tunnel mode SSID can be assigned to an AP in normal mode but not remote mode, while a local-bridge mode SSID can be assigned to an AP in either normal mode or remote mode.

override-led-state {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the override of LED state. When enabled, use the `led-state` entry to enable or disable use of LEDs on WTP.

led-state {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `override-led-state` is set to `enable`. Enable (by default) or disable the use of LEDs on WTP.

override-ip-fragment {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) the override of IP fragmentation. When enabled, use the `ip-fragment-preventing`, `tun-mtu-uplink`, and `tun-mtu-downlink` entries to configure IP fragmentation settings.

ip-fragment-preventing {tcp-mss-adjust | icmp-unreachable}

Note: This entry is only available when `override-ip-fragment` is set to `enable`. Method by which IP fragmentation is prevented for CAPWAP tunneled control and data packets:

- **tcp-mss-adjust:** TCP maximum segment adjustment (by default).
- **icmp-unreachable:** Drop packet and send an Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) Destination Unreachable error message.

tun-mtu-uplink <bytes>

Note: This entry is only available when `override-ip-fragment` is set to `enable`. Uplink tunnel maximum transmission unit (MTU) in octets (eight-bit bytes). An MTU is the largest size packet or frame that can be sent in a packet. Set the value to either 0 (by default), 576, or 1500.

tun-mtu-downlink <bytes>

Note: This entry is only available when `override-ip-fragment` is set to `enable`. Downlink tunnel MTU in octets. Set the value to either 0 (by default), 576, or 1500.

override-split-tunnel {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) to override split-tunneling. When enabled, use the `split-tunneling-acl-local-ap-subnet` entry to enable/disable the configuration of ACL filter lists.

split-tunneling-acl-local-ap-subnet {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `override-split-tunnel` is set to `enable`. Enable or disable (by default) specified destinations to be accessed locally instead of through the WiFi controller. When enabled, the `split-tunneling-acl` configuration method will become available.

override-lan {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) to override the WTP LAN port. When enabled, the `lan` configuration method will become available.

override-allowaccess {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) to override management-access per protocol. When enabled, use the `allowaccess` entry to set the protocols permitted management-access.

allowaccess {telnet | http | https | ssh}

Note: This entry is only available when `override-allowaccess` is set to `enable`. Protocols to allow management-access to managed APs: `telnet`, `http`, `https`, and `ssh`. Separate each value with a space to add multiple protocols. Values can also be added using `append`.

override-login-passwd-change {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) to override the login-password of managed APs. When enabled, use the `login-passwd-change` entry to determine password-change settings.

login-passwd-change {yes | default | no}

Note: This entry is only available when `override-login-passwd-change` is set to `enable`. Login password options:

- **yes:** Change login password of the managed AP
- **default:** Reset login password to factory default
- **no:** Do not change login password (by default)

image-download {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable image download of WTP to the AP. In addition, you can use the following command to import the WTP firmware file from a TFTP server:

```
execute wireless-controller upload-wtp-image tftp <filename> <TFTP server address>
```

mesh-bridge-enable {default | enable | disable}

Enable, disable, or use default (by default) mesh Ethernet bridge local settings on the WTP (when the WTP is configured as a mesh branch-leaf AP).

coordinate-enable {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) AP coordinates. When enabled, use the `coordinate-x` and `coordinate-y` entries to set the AP's X and Y axes.

coordinate-x <string>

Note: This entry is only available when `coordinate-enable` is set to `enable`. X axis coordinate of the AP.

coordinate-y <string>

Note: This entry is only available when `coordinate-enable` is set to `enable`. Y axis coordinate of the AP.

wireless-controller wtp-group

Use this command to add FortiAP models to WTP groups. A FortiAP can belong to no more than one FortiAP group. FortiAP Groups facilitate the application of FortiAP profiles to large numbers of FortiAPs. Through the VLAN Pool feature, a FortiAP Group can be associated with a VLAN to which WiFi clients will be assigned.

Note: A configuration method to add member devices to WTP groups created for the model's platform type. In order to add member devices, you must have already used the `platform-type` entry to add a FortiAP model, as per the example CLI configuration below; a group called **wtp-group-1** is created for a FortiAP-221C device and one member device is added:

```
config wireless-controller wtp-group
  edit wtp-group-1
    set platform-type 221C
  config wtp-list
```

```
edit FP221C3X14019926
end
end

config wireless-controller wtp-group
edit {name}
# Configure WTP groups.
set name {string} WTP group name. size[35]
set platform-type {option} FortiAP models to define the WTP group platform type.
    AP-11N Default 11n AP.
    220B FAP220B/221B.
    210B FAP210B.
    222B FAP222B.
    112B FAP112B.
    320B FAP320B.
    11C FAP11C.
    14C FAP14C.
    223B FAP223B.
    28C FAP28C.
    320C FAP320C.
    221C FAP221C.
    25D FAP25D.
    222C FAP222C.
    224D FAP224D.
    214B FK214B.
    21D FAP21D.
    24D FAP24D.
    112D FAP112D.
    223C FAP223C.
    321C FAP321C.
    C220C FAPC220C.
    C225C FAPC225C.
    C23JD FAPC23JD.
    C24JE FAPC24JE.
    S321C FAPS321C.
    S322C FAPS322C.
    S323C FAPS323C.
    S311C FAPS311C.
    S313C FAPS313C.
    S321CR FAPS321CR.
    S322CR FAPS322CR.
```

```

        S323CR  FAPS323CR.
        S421E   FAPS421E.
        S422E   FAPS422E.
        S423E   FAPS423E.
        421E    FAP421E.
        423E    FAP423E.
        221E    FAP221E.
        222E    FAP222E.
        223E    FAP223E.
        224E    FAP224E.
        S221E   FAPS221E.
        S223E   FAPS223E.
        U421E   FAPU421EV.
        U422EV  FAPU422EV.
        U423E   FAPU423EV.
        U221EV  FAPU221EV.
        U223EV  FAPU223EV.
        U24JEV  FAPU24JEV.
        U321EV  FAPU321EV.
        U323EV  FAPU323EV.
    config wtps
        edit {wtp-id}
        # WTP list.
        set wtp-id {string}  WTP ID. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.wtp.wtp-id
    next
end

```

wireless-controller wtp-profile

Use this command to configure WTP profiles (or FortiAP Profiles as shown in the GUI), which define radio settings for a particular platform/FortiAP model. FortiAP units contain two radio transceivers, making it possible to provide both 2.4GHz 802.11b/g/n and 5GHz 802.11a/n service from the same AP. The profile also selects which SSIDs the APs will carry.

For example, a FortiAP can be configured to carry all SSIDs on one radio, while the other only carries a specific SSID. The radios can also be used for monitoring, used for the Rogue AP detection feature. See [Monitoring rogue APs](#) for more details, and [config wireless-controller wids-profile](#) for various AP detection settings.

Note: Radio 2 settings are only available for FortiAP models with dual radios.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>set control-message-offload {ebp-frame aeroscout-tag ap-list sta-list sta-cap-list stats aeroscout-mu}</code>	Configure CAPWAP control message data channel offload.
<code>config lbs</code> <code>...</code>	Configuration method to set various location based service (LBS) options. Enable or disable and configure various options including Ekahua blink mode, AeroScout Real Time Location Service (RTLS) support, FortiPresence monitoring, and client station locating services.
<code>set ext-info-enable {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable station/VAP/radio extension information, providing more detailed statistics for troubleshooting purposes.
<code>set lldp {enable disable}</code>	Enable or disable (by default) Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) for the WTP or FortiAP.
<pre>config wireless-controller wtp-profile edit {name} # Configure WTP profiles or FortiAP profiles that define radio settings for manageable FortiAP platforms. set name {string} WTP (or FortiAP or AP) profile name. size[35] set comment {string} Comment. size[255] config platform set type {option} WTP, FortiAP or AP platform type. There are built-in WTP profiles for all supported FortiAP models. You can select a built-in profile and customize it or create a new profile. AP-11N Default 11n AP. 220B FAP220B/221B. 210B FAP210B. 222B FAP222B. 112B FAP112B. 320B FAP320B. 11C FAP11C. 14C FAP14C. 223B FAP223B.</pre>	

28C	FAP28C.
320C	FAP320C.
221C	FAP221C.
25D	FAP25D.
222C	FAP222C.
224D	FAP224D.
214B	FK214B.
21D	FAP21D.
24D	FAP24D.
112D	FAP112D.
223C	FAP223C.
321C	FAP321C.
C220C	FAPC220C.
C225C	FAPC225C.
C23JD	FAPC23JD.
C24JE	FAPC24JE.
S321C	FAPS321C.
S322C	FAPS322C.
S323C	FAPS323C.
S311C	FAPS311C.
S313C	FAPS313C.
S321CR	FAPS321CR.
S322CR	FAPS322CR.
S323CR	FAPS323CR.
S421E	FAPS421E.
S422E	FAPS422E.
S423E	FAPS423E.
421E	FAP421E.
423E	FAP423E.
221E	FAP221E.
222E	FAP222E.
223E	FAP223E.
224E	FAP224E.
S221E	FAPS221E.
S223E	FAPS223E.
U421E	FAPU421EV.
U422EV	FAPU422EV.
U423E	FAPU423EV.
U221EV	FAPU221EV.
U223EV	FAPU223EV.

```

        U24JEV  FAPU24JEV.
        U321EV  FAPU321EV.
        U323EV  FAPU323EV.
set control-message-offload {option}  Enable/disable CAPWAP control message data channel offload.
    ebp-frame      Ekahau blink protocol (EBP) frames.
    aeroscout-tag  AeroScout tag.
    ap-list        Rogue AP list.
    sta-list       Rogue STA list.
    sta-cap-list   STA capability list.
    stats          WTP, radio, VAP, and STA statistics.
    aeroscout-mu   AeroScout Mobile Unit (MU) report.
set ble-profile {string}  Bluetooth Low Energy profile name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.ble-
profile.name
set wan-port-mode {wan-lan | wan-only}  Enable/disable using a WAN port as a LAN port.
    wan-lan  Enable using a WAN port as a LAN port.
    wan-only Disable using a WAN port as a LAN port.
config lan
    set port-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid}  LAN port mode.
        offline      Offline.
        nat-to-wan    NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-wan Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-ssid Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
    set port-ssid {string}  Bridge LAN port to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
    set port1-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid}  LAN port 1 mode.
        offline      Offline.
        nat-to-wan    NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-wan Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-ssid Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
    set port1-ssid {string}  Bridge LAN port 1 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
    set port2-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid}  LAN port 2 mode.
        offline      Offline.
        nat-to-wan    NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-wan Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-ssid Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
    set port2-ssid {string}  Bridge LAN port 2 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
    set port3-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid}  LAN port 3 mode.
        offline      Offline.
        nat-to-wan    NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-wan Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
        bridge-to-ssid Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.

```



```

set port3-ssid {string}    Bridge LAN port 3 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
set port4-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid}    LAN port 4 mode.
    offline                Offline.
    nat-to-wan             NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
    bridge-to-wan          Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
    bridge-to-ssid         Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
set port4-ssid {string}    Bridge LAN port 4 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
set port5-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid}    LAN port 5 mode.
    offline                Offline.
    nat-to-wan             NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
    bridge-to-wan          Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
    bridge-to-ssid         Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
set port5-ssid {string}    Bridge LAN port 5 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
set port6-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid}    LAN port 6 mode.
    offline                Offline.
    nat-to-wan             NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
    bridge-to-wan          Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
    bridge-to-ssid         Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
set port6-ssid {string}    Bridge LAN port 6 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
set port7-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid}    LAN port 7 mode.
    offline                Offline.
    nat-to-wan             NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
    bridge-to-wan          Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
    bridge-to-ssid         Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
set port7-ssid {string}    Bridge LAN port 7 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
set port8-mode {offline | nat-to-wan | bridge-to-wan | bridge-to-ssid}    LAN port 8 mode.
    offline                Offline.
    nat-to-wan             NAT WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
    bridge-to-wan          Bridge WTP LAN port to WTP WAN port.
    bridge-to-ssid         Bridge WTP LAN port to SSID.
set port8-ssid {string}    Bridge LAN port 8 to SSID. size[15] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.vap.name
set energy-efficient-ethernet {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of energy efficient Ethernet on WTP.
set led-state {enable | disable}    Enable/disable use of LEDs on WTP (default = disable).
config led-schedules
    edit {name}
        # Recurring firewall schedules for illuminating LEDs on the FortiAP. If led-state is enabled, LEDs will be
        # visible when at least one of the schedules is valid. Separate multiple schedule names with a space.
        set name {string}    LED schedule name. size[35] - datasource(s): fire-
        wall.schedule.group.name, firewall.schedule.recurring.name
    next

```

```
set dtls-policy {clear-text | dtls-enabled | ipsec-vpn}    WTP data channel DTLS policy (default = clear-text).
    clear-text      Clear Text Data Channel.
    dtls-enabled    DTLS Enabled Data Channel.
    ipsec-vpn       IPsec VPN Data Channel.
set dtls-in-kernel {enable | disable}    Enable/disable data channel DTLS in kernel.
set max-clients {integer}    Maximum number of stations (STAs) supported by the WTP (default = 0, meaning no cli-
ent limitation). range[0-4294967295]
set handoff-rssi {integer}    Minimum received signal strength indicator (RSSI) value for handoff (20 - 30,
default = 25). range[20-30]
set handoff-sta-thresh {integer}    Threshold value for AP handoff. range[0-4294967295]
set handoff-roaming {enable | disable}    Enable/disable client load balancing during roaming to avoid roaming
delay (default = disable).
config deny-mac-list
    edit {id}
        # List of MAC addresses that are denied access to this WTP, FortiAP, or AP.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set mac {mac address}    A WiFi device with this MAC address is denied access to this WTP, FortiAP or AP.
    next
set ap-country {option}    Country in which this WTP, FortiAP or AP will operate (default = NA, automatically use
the country configured for the current VDOM).
    NA    NO_COUNTRY_SET
    AL    ALBANIA
    DZ    ALGERIA
    AO    ANGOLA
    AR    ARGENTINA
    AM    ARMENIA
    AU    AUSTRALIA
    AT    AUSTRIA
    AZ    AZERBAIJAN
    BH    BAHRAIN
    BD    BANGLADESH
    BB    BARBADOS
    BY    BELARUS
    BE    BELGIUM
    BZ    BELIZE
    BO    BOLIVIA
    BA    BOSNIA AND HERZEGOVINA
    BR    BRAZIL
    BN    BRUNEI DARUSSALAM
    BG    BULGARIA
```

KH	CAMBODIA
CL	CHILE
CN	CHINA
CO	COLOMBIA
CR	COSTA RICA
HR	CROATIA
CY	CYPRUS
CZ	CZECH REPUBLIC
DK	DENMARK
DO	DOMINICAN REPUBLIC
EC	ECUADOR
EG	EGYPT
SV	EL SALVADOR
EE	ESTONIA
FI	FINLAND
FR	FRANCE
GE	GEORGIA
DE	GERMANY
GR	GREECE
GL	GREENLAND
GD	GRENADA
GU	GUAM
GT	GUATEMALA
HT	HAITI
HN	HONDURAS
HK	HONG KONG
HU	HUNGARY
IS	ICELAND
IN	INDIA
ID	INDONESIA
IR	IRAN
IE	IRELAND
IL	ISRAEL
IT	ITALY
JM	JAMAICA
JO	JORDAN
KZ	KAZAKHSTAN
KE	KENYA
KP	NORTH KOREA
KR	KOREA REPUBLIC

KW KUWAIT
LV LATVIA
LB LEBANON
LI LIECHTENSTEIN
LT LITHUANIA
LU LUXEMBOURG
MO MACAU SAR
MK MACEDONIA, FYRO
MY MALAYSIA
MT MALTA
MX MEXICO
MC MONACO
MA MOROCCO
MZ MOZAMBIQUE
MM MYANMAR
NP NEPAL
NL NETHERLANDS
AN NETHERLANDS ANTILLES
AW ARUBA
NZ NEW ZEALAND
NO NORWAY
OM OMAN
PK PAKISTAN
PA PANAMA
PG PAPUA NEW GUINEA
PY PARAGUAY
PE PERU
PH PHILIPPINES
PL POLAND
PT PORTUGAL
PR PUERTO RICO
QA QATAR
RO ROMANIA
RU RUSSIA
RW RWANDA
SA SAUDI ARABIA
RS REPUBLIC OF SERBIA
ME MONTENEGRO
SG SINGAPORE
SK SLOVAKIA

```

SI SLOVENIA
ZA SOUTH AFRICA
ES SPAIN
LK SRI LANKA
SE SWEDEN
SD SUDAN
CH SWITZERLAND
SY SYRIAN ARAB REPUBLIC
TW TAIWAN
TZ TANZANIA
TH THAILAND
TT TRINIDAD AND TOBAGO
TN TUNISIA
TR TURKEY
AE UNITED ARAB EMIRATES
UA UKRAINE
GB UNITED KINGDOM
US UNITED STATES2
PS UNITED STATES (PUBLIC SAFETY)
UY URUGUAY
UZ UZBEKISTAN
VE VENEZUELA
VN VIET NAM
YE YEMEN
ZB ZAMBIA
ZW ZIMBABWE
JP JAPAN14
CA CANADA2

```

```

set ip-fragment-preventing {tcp-mss-adjust | icmp-unreachable} Select how to prevent IP fragmentation for
CAPWAP tunneled control and data packets (default = tcp-mss-adjust).
    tcp-mss-adjust TCP maximum segment size adjustment.
    icmp-unreachable Drop packet and send ICMP Destination Unreachable
set tun-mtu-uplink {integer} Uplink CAPWAP tunnel MTU (0, 576, or 1500 bytes, default = 0). range[576-1500]
set tun-mtu-downlink {integer} Downlink CAPWAP tunnel MTU (0, 576, or 1500 bytes, default = 0). range[576-
1500]
set split-tunneling-acl-path {tunnel | local} Split tunneling ACL path is local/tunnel.
    tunnel Split tunneling ACL list traffic will be tunnel.
    local Split tunneling ACL list traffic will be local NATed.
set split-tunneling-acl-local-ap-subnet {enable | disable} Enable/disable automatically adding local sub-
network of FortiAP to split-tunneling ACL (default = disable).

```

```

config split-tunneling-acl
    edit {id}
        # Split tunneling ACL filter list.
        set id {integer}    ID. range[0-4294967295]
        set dest-ip {ipv4 classnet}    Destination IP and mask for the split-tunneling subnet.
    next
    set allowaccess {telnet | http | https | ssh}    Control management access to the managed WTP, FortiAP, or AP.
    Separate entries with a space.
        telnet    TELNET access.
        http      HTTP access.
        https     HTTPS access.
        ssh       SSH access.
    set login-passwd-change {yes | default | no}    Change or reset the administrator password of a managed WTP,
    FortiAP or AP (yes, default, or no, default = no).
        yes      Change the managed WTP, FortiAP or AP's administrator password. Use the login-password option
    to set the password.
        default  Keep the managed WTP, FortiAP or AP's administrator password set to the factory default.
        no      Do not change the managed WTP, FortiAP or AP's administrator password.
    set login-passwd {password_string}    Set the managed WTP, FortiAP, or AP's administrator password. size[31]
    set lldp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) for the WTP, FortiAP, or AP
    (default = disable).
    set poe-mode {auto | 8023af | 8023at | power-adapter}    Set the WTP, FortiAP, or AP's PoE mode.
        auto      Automatically detect the PoE mode.
        8023af    Use 802.3af PoE mode.
        8023at    Use 802.3at PoE mode.
        power-adapter    Use the power adapter to control the PoE mode.
config radio-1
    set radio-id {integer}    radio-id range[0-2]
    set mode {disabled | ap | monitor | sniffer}    Mode of radio 1. Radio 1 can be disabled, configured as an
    access point, a rogue AP monitor, or a sniffer.
        disabled  Radio 1 is disabled.
        ap        Radio 1 operates as an access point that allows WiFi clients to connect to your network.
        monitor   Radio 1 operates as a dedicated monitor. As a monitor, the radio scans for other WiFi
    access points and adds them to the Rogue AP monitor list.
        sniffer   Radio 1 operates as a sniffer capturing WiFi frames on air.
    set band {option}    WiFi band that Radio 1 operates on.
        802.11a    802.11a.
        802.11b    802.11b.
        802.11g    802.11g/b.
        802.11n    802.11n/g/b at 2.4GHz.

```

```

802.11n-5G      802.11n/a at 5GHz.
802.11ac        802.11ac/n/a.
802.11n,g-only  802.11n/g at 2.4GHz.
802.11g-only    802.11g.
802.11n-only    802.11n at 2.4GHz.
802.11n-5G-only 802.11n at 5GHz.
802.11ac,n-only 802.11ac/n.
802.11ac-only   802.11ac.

set protection-mode {rtscts | ctsonly | disable}  Enable/disable 802.11g protection modes to support back-
wards compatibility with older clients (rtscts, ctsonly, disable).
    rtscts  Enable 802.11g protection RTS/CTS mode.
    ctsonly Enable 802.11g protection CTS only mode.
    disable Disable 802.11g protection mode.

set powersave-optimize {option}  Enable client power-saving features such as TIM, AC VO, and OBSS etc.
    tim          TIM bit for client in power save mode.
    ac-vo        Use AC VO priority to send out packets in the power save queue.
    no-obss-scan Do not put OBSS scan IE into beacon and probe response frames.
    no-11b-rate  Do not send frame using 11b data rate.
    client-rate-follow Adapt transmitting PHY rate with receiving PHY rate from a client.

set transmit-optimize {option}  Packet transmission optimization options including power saving, aggreg-
ation limiting, retry limiting, etc. All are enabled by default.
    disable      Disable packet transmission optimization.
    power-save   Tag client as operating in power save mode if excessive transmit retries occur.
    aggr-limit   Set aggregation limit to a lower value when data rate is low.
    retry-limit  Set software retry limit to a lower value when data rate is low.
    send-bar     Limit transmission of BAR frames.

set amsdu {enable | disable}  Enable/disable 802.11n AMSDU support. AMSDU can improve performance if sup-
ported by your WiFi clients (default = enable).

set coexistence {enable | disable}  Enable/disable allowing both HT20 and HT40 on the same radio (default =
enable).

set short-guard-interval {enable | disable}  Use either the short guard interval (Short GI) of 400 ns or
the long guard interval (Long GI) of 800 ns.

set channel-bonding {80MHz | 40MHz | 20MHz}  Channel bandwidth: 80, 40, or 20MHz. Channels may use both 20
and 40 by enabling coexistence.
    80MHz  80 MHz channel width.
    40MHz  40 MHz channel width.
    20MHz  20 MHz channel width.

set auto-power-level {enable | disable}  Enable/disable automatic power-level adjustment to prevent co-chan-
nel interference (default = disable).

set auto-power-high {integer}  Automatic transmit power high limit in dBm (the actual range of transmit

```

```

power depends on the AP platform type). range[0-4294967295]
    set auto-power-low {integer}    Automatic transmission power low limit in dBm (the actual range of transmit
power depends on the AP platform type). range[0-4294967295]
    set power-level {integer}    Radio power level as a percentage of the maximum transmit power (0 - 100,
default = 100). range[0-100]
    set dtim {integer}    DTIM interval. The frequency to transmit Delivery Traffic Indication Message (or Map)
(DTIM) messages (1 - 255, default = 1). Set higher to save client battery life. range[1-255]
    set beacon-interval {integer}    Beacon interval. The time between beacon frames in msec (the actual range of
beacon interval depends on the AP platform type, default = 100). range[0-65535]
    set rts-threshold {integer}    Maximum packet size for RTS transmissions, specifying the maximum size of a
data packet before RTS/CTS (256 - 2346 bytes, default = 2346). range[256-2346]
    set frag-threshold {integer}    Maximum packet size that can be sent without fragmentation (800 - 2346 bytes,
default = 2346). range[800-2346]
    set ap-sniffer-bufsize {integer}    Sniffer buffer size (1 - 32 MB, default = 16). range[1-32]
    set ap-sniffer-chan {integer}    Channel on which to operate the sniffer (default = 6). range[0-4294967295]
    set ap-sniffer-addr {mac address}    MAC address to monitor.
    set ap-sniffer-mgmt-beacon {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sniffer on WiFi management Beacon frames
(default = enable).
    set ap-sniffer-mgmt-probe {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sniffer on WiFi management probe frames
(default = enable).
    set ap-sniffer-mgmt-other {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sniffer on WiFi management other frames
(default = enable).
    set ap-sniffer-ctl {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sniffer on WiFi control frame (default = enable).
    set ap-sniffer-data {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sniffer on WiFi data frame (default = enable).
    set channel-utilization {enable | disable}    Enable/disable measuring channel utilization.
    set spectrum-analysis {enable | disable}    Enable/disable spectrum analysis to find interference that would
negatively impact wireless performance.
    set wids-profile {string}    Wireless Intrusion Detection System (WIDS) profile name to assign to the radio.
size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.wids-profile.name
    set darrp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Distributed Automatic Radio Resource Provisioning (DARRP) to
make sure the radio is always using the most optimal channel (default = disable).
    set max-clients {integer}    Maximum number of stations (STAs) or WiFi clients supported by the radio. Range
depends on the hardware. range[0-4294967295]
    set max-distance {integer}    Maximum expected distance between the AP and clients (0 - 54000 m, default =
0). range[0-54000]
    set frequency-handoff {enable | disable}    Enable/disable frequency handoff of clients to other channels
(default = disable).
    set ap-handoff {enable | disable}    Enable/disable AP handoff of clients to other APs (default = disable).
    set vap-all {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the automatic inheritance of all Virtual Access Points
(VAPs) (default = enable).

```



```

config vaps
  edit {name}
    # Manually selected list of Virtual Access Points (VAPs).
    set name {string}    Virtual Access Point (VAP) name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-con-
troller.vap-group.name,wireless-controller.vap.name
  next
  config channel
    edit {chan}
      # Selected list of wireless radio channels.
      set chan {string}    Channel number. size[3]
    next
    set call-admission-control {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WiFi multimedia (WMM) call admission control
to optimize WiFi bandwidth use for VoIP calls. New VoIP calls are only accepted if there is enough bandwidth available
to support them.
    set call-capacity {integer}    Maximum number of Voice over WLAN (VoWLAN) phones supported by the radio (0 -
60, default = 10). range[0-60]
    set bandwidth-admission-control {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WiFi multimedia (WMM) bandwidth admis-
sion control to optimize WiFi bandwidth use. A request to join the wireless network is only allowed if the access point
has enough bandwidth to support it.
    set bandwidth-capacity {integer}    Maximum bandwidth capacity allowed (1 - 600000 Kbps, default = 2000).
range[1-600000]
  config radio-2
    set radio-id {integer}    radio-id range[0-2]
    set mode {disabled | ap | monitor | sniffer}    Mode of radio 2. Radio 2 can be disabled, configured as an
access point, a rogue AP monitor, or a sniffer.
      disabled    Radio 2 is disabled.
      ap          Radio 2 operates as an access point that allows WiFi clients to connect to your network.
      monitor     Radio 2 operates as a dedicated monitor. As a monitor, the radio scans for other WiFi
access points and adds them to the Rogue AP monitor list.
      sniffer     Radio 2 operates as a sniffer capturing WiFi frames on air.
    set band {option}    WiFi band that Radio 2 operates on.
      802.11a      802.11a.
      802.11b      802.11b.
      802.11g      802.11g/b.
      802.11n      802.11n/g/b at 2.4GHz.
      802.11n-5G   802.11n/a at 5GHz.
      802.11ac     802.11ac/n/a.
      802.11n,g-only 802.11n/g at 2.4GHz.
      802.11g-only 802.11g.
      802.11n-only 802.11n at 2.4GHz.

```

```

    802.11n-5G-only  802.11n at 5GHz.
    802.11ac,n-only  802.11ac/n.
    802.11ac-only    802.11ac.
    set protection-mode {rtscts | ctsonly | disable}  Enable/disable 802.11g protection modes to support back-
wards compatibility with older clients (rtscts, ctsonly, disable).
    rtscts  Enable 802.11g protection RTS/CTS mode.
    ctsonly  Enable 802.11g protection CTS only mode.
    disable  Disable 802.11g protection mode.
    set powersave-optimize {option}  Enable client power-saving features such as TIM, AC VO, and OBSS etc.
    tim  TIM bit for client in power save mode.
    ac-vo  Use AC VO priority to send out packets in the power save queue.
    no-obss-scan  Do not put OBSS scan IE into beacon and probe response frames.
    no-11b-rate  Do not send frame using 11b data rate.
    client-rate-follow  Adapt transmitting PHY rate with receiving PHY rate from a client.
    set transmit-optimize {option}  Packet transmission optimization options including power saving, aggreg-
ation limiting, retry limiting, etc. All are enabled by default.
    disable  Disable packet transmission optimization.
    power-save  Tag client as operating in power save mode if excessive transmit retries occur.
    aggr-limit  Set aggregation limit to a lower value when data rate is low.
    retry-limit  Set software retry limit to a lower value when data rate is low.
    send-bar  Limit transmission of BAR frames.
    set amsdu {enable | disable}  Enable/disable 802.11n AMSDU support. AMSDU can improve performance if sup-
ported by your WiFi clients (default = enable).
    set coexistence {enable | disable}  Enable/disable allowing both HT20 and HT40 on the same radio (default =
enable).
    set short-guard-interval {enable | disable}  Use either the short guard interval (Short GI) of 400 ns or
the long guard interval (Long GI) of 800 ns.
    set channel-bonding {80MHz | 40MHz | 20MHz}  Channel bandwidth: 80, 40, or 20MHz. Channels may use both 20
and 40 by enabling coexistence.
    80MHz  80 MHz channel width.
    40MHz  40 MHz channel width.
    20MHz  20 MHz channel width.
    set auto-power-level {enable | disable}  Enable/disable automatic power-level adjustment to prevent co-chan-
nel interference (default = disable).
    set auto-power-high {integer}  Automatic transmit power high limit in dBm (the actual range of transmit
power depends on the AP platform type). range[0-4294967295]
    set auto-power-low {integer}  Automatic transmission power low limit in dBm (the actual range of transmit
power depends on the AP platform type). range[0-4294967295]
    set power-level {integer}  Radio power level as a percentage of the maximum transmit power (0 - 100,
default = 100). range[0-100]

```

```

    set dtim {integer}    DTIM interval. The frequency to transmit Delivery Traffic Indication Message (or Map)
(DTIM) messages (1 - 255, default = 1). Set higher to save client battery life. range[1-255]
    set beacon-interval {integer}    Beacon interval. The time between beacon frames in msec (the actual range of
beacon interval depends on the AP platform type, default = 100). range[0-65535]
    set rts-threshold {integer}    Maximum packet size for RTS transmissions, specifying the maximum size of a
data packet before RTS/CTS (256 - 2346 bytes, default = 2346). range[256-2346]
    set frag-threshold {integer}    Maximum packet size that can be sent without fragmentation (800 - 2346 bytes,
default = 2346). range[800-2346]
    set ap-sniffer-bufsize {integer}    Sniffer buffer size (1 - 32 MB, default = 16). range[1-32]
    set ap-sniffer-chan {integer}    Channel on which to operate the sniffer (default = 6). range[0-4294967295]
    set ap-sniffer-addr {mac address}    MAC address to monitor.
    set ap-sniffer-mgmt-beacon {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sniffer on WiFi management Beacon frames
(default = enable).
    set ap-sniffer-mgmt-probe {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sniffer on WiFi management probe frames
(default = enable).
    set ap-sniffer-mgmt-other {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sniffer on WiFi management other frames
(default = enable).
    set ap-sniffer-ctl {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sniffer on WiFi control frame (default = enable).
    set ap-sniffer-data {enable | disable}    Enable/disable sniffer on WiFi data frame (default = enable).
    set channel-utilization {enable | disable}    Enable/disable measuring channel utilization.
    set spectrum-analysis {enable | disable}    Enable/disable spectrum analysis to find interference that would
negatively impact wireless performance.
    set wids-profile {string}    Wireless Intrusion Detection System (WIDS) profile name to assign to the radio.
size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-controller.wids-profile.name
    set darrp {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Distributed Automatic Radio Resource Provisioning (DARRP) to
make sure the radio is always using the most optimal channel (default = disable).
    set max-clients {integer}    Maximum number of stations (STAs) or WiFi clients supported by the radio. Range
depends on the hardware. range[0-4294967295]
    set max-distance {integer}    Maximum expected distance between the AP and clients (0 - 54000 m, default =
0). range[0-54000]
    set frequency-handoff {enable | disable}    Enable/disable frequency handoff of clients to other channels
(default = disable).
    set ap-handoff {enable | disable}    Enable/disable AP handoff of clients to other APs (default = disable).
    set vap-all {enable | disable}    Enable/disable the automatic inheritance of all Virtual Access Points
(VAPs) (default = enable).
    config vaps
        edit {name}
            # Manually selected list of Virtual Access Points (VAPs).
            set name {string}    Virtual Access Point (VAP) name. size[35] - datasource(s): wireless-con-
troller.vap-group.name,wireless-controller.vap.name

```

```

    next
    config channel
    edit {chan}
    # Selected list of wireless radio channels.
    set chan {string}    Channel number. size[3]
    next
    set call-admission-control {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WiFi multimedia (WMM) call admission control
to optimize WiFi bandwidth use for VoIP calls. New VoIP calls are only accepted if there is enough bandwidth available
to support them.
    set call-capacity {integer}    Maximum number of Voice over WLAN (VoWLAN) phones supported by the radio (0 -
60, default = 10). range[0-60]
    set bandwidth-admission-control {enable | disable}    Enable/disable WiFi multimedia (WMM) bandwidth admis-
sion control to optimize WiFi bandwidth use. A request to join the wireless network is only allowed if the access point
has enough bandwidth to support it.
    set bandwidth-capacity {integer}    Maximum bandwidth capacity allowed (1 - 600000 Kbps, default = 2000).
range[1-600000]
    config lbs
    set ekahau-blink-mode {enable | disable}    Enable/disable Ekahau blink mode (now known as AiRISTA Flow) to
track and locate WiFi tags (default = disable).
    set ekahau-tag {mac address}    WiFi frame MAC address or WiFi Tag.
    set erc-server-ip {ipv4 address any}    IP address of Ekahau RTLS Controller (ERC).
    set erc-server-port {integer}    Ekahau RTLS Controller (ERC) UDP listening port. range[1024-65535]
    set aeroscout {enable | disable}    Enable/disable AeroScout Real Time Location Service (RTLS) support
(default = disable).
    set aeroscout-server-ip {ipv4 address any}    IP address of AeroScout server.
    set aeroscout-server-port {integer}    AeroScout server UDP listening port. range[1024-65535]
    set aeroscout-mu {enable | disable}    Enable/disable AeroScout Mobile Unit (MU) support (default = disable).
    set aeroscout-ap-mac {bssid | board-mac}    Use BSSID or board MAC address as AP MAC address in AeroScout AP
messages (default = bssid).
        bssid    Use BSSID as AP MAC address in AeroScout AP messages.
        board-mac    Use board MAC address as AP MAC address in AeroScout AP messages.
    set aeroscout-mmureport {enable | disable}    Enable/disable compounded AeroScout tag and MU report (default
= enable).
    set aeroscout-mu-factor {integer}    AeroScout MU mode dilution factor (default = 20). range[0-4294967295]
    set aeroscout-mu-timeout {integer}    AeroScout MU mode timeout (0 - 65535 sec, default = 5). range[0-65535]
    set fortipresence {foreign | both | disable}    Enable/disable FortiPresence to monitor the location and
activity of WiFi clients even if they don't connect to this WiFi network (default = disable).
        foreign    FortiPresence monitors foreign channels only. Foreign channels means all other available
channels than the current operating channel of the WTP, AP, or FortiAP.
        both    Enable FortiPresence on both foreign and home channels. Select this option to have

```

```

FortiPresence monitor all WiFi channels.
    disable Disable FortiPresence.
    set fortipresence-server {ipv4 address any} FortiPresence server IP address.
    set fortipresence-port {integer} FortiPresence server UDP listening port (default = 3000). range[300-
65535]
    set fortipresence-secret {password_string} FortiPresence secret password (max. 16 characters). size[123]
    set fortipresence-project {string} FortiPresence project name (max. 16 characters, default = for-
tipresence). size[16]
    set fortipresence-frequency {integer} FortiPresence report transmit frequency (5 - 65535 sec, default =
30). range[5-65535]
    set fortipresence-rogue {enable | disable} Enable/disable FortiPresence finding and reporting rogue APs.
    set fortipresence-unassoc {enable | disable} Enable/disable FortiPresence finding and reporting unas-
sociated stations.
    set station-locate {enable | disable} Enable/disable client station locating services for all clients,
whether associated or not (default = disable).
    set ext-info-enable {enable | disable} Enable/disable station/VAP/radio extension information.
next
end

```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.

config platform

A configuration method to assign the AP hardware type.

type <platform>

WTP platform type/model. For a full list of options, enter `set type ?` (or see [wireless-controller wtp-group](#)). The default is set to 220B.

config deny-mac-list

A configuration methods to deny specific wireless MAC addresses.

mac <mac-address>

Wireless MAC address to deny.

config split-tunneling-acl

A configuration method to set various split tunneling access control list (ACL) filter lists.

dest-ip <ipv4-netmask>

IPv4 destination address to be added to the ACL filter.

config {radio-1 | radio-2}

A configuration method to set various options for Radio 1 and/or Radio 2.

mode {disabled | ap | monitor | sniffer}

Radio mode for the AP:

- **disabled:** Radio is not used; *all* other entries are unavailable *except* `powersave-optimize`.
- **ap:** Radio provides wireless AP service (set by default); all other entries are available.
- **monitor:** Radio performs monitoring only; the only other entries available when this is set are `powersave-optimize`, `spectrum-analysis`, and `wids-profile`.
- **sniffer:** Radio performs scanning only; the only other entries available when this is set are `powersave-optimize`, all `ap-sniffer` related entries, and `spectrum-analysis`.

band {802.11b | 802.11g | 802.11n | 802.11n,g-only | 802.11g-only | 802.11n-only}

Band of AP-mode radio. The `n` bands operate at 2.4GHz.

protection-mode {rtscts | ctsonly | disable}

Note: This entry is only available under `radio-2`. 802.11g protection mode:

- **rtscts:** Enables 802.11g protection in Request to Send/Clear to Send (RTS/CTS) mode, reducing frame collisions
- **ctsonly:** Enables 802.11g protection in CTS mode
- **disable:** Disables 802.11g protection

powersave-optimize {tim | ac-vo | no-obss-scan | no-11b-rate | client-rate-follow}

Power-saving optimization options:

- **tim:** Set traffic indication map (TIM) bit for client in power save mode. TIM bit mask indicates to any sleeping listening stations if the AP has any buffered frames present.
- **ac-vo:** Use Access Category (AC) Voice (VO) priority to send packets in the power save queue. AC VO is one of the highest classes/priority levels used to ensure quality of service (QoS).
- **no-obss-scan:** Do not put Overlapping Basic Service Set (OBSS), or high-noise (i.e. non-802.11), scan IE into a Beacon or Probe Response frame.
- **no-11b-rate:** Do not send frame using 11b data rate.
- **client-rate-follow:** Adapt transmitted PHY rate to PHY rate received from client.

Separate each value with a space to add multiple values. Values can also be added using `append`.

ap-sniffer-buFSIZE <mb>

Note: This entry is only available when `mode` is set to `sniffer`. AP's sniffer buffer size in MB. Set the value between 1-32. The default is set to 16.

ap-sniffer-chan <channel>

Note: This entry is only available when `mode` is set to `sniffer`. Channel on which to operate the sniffer. The default is set to 6.

ap-sniffer-addr <mac-address>

Note: This entry is only available when `mode` is set to `sniffer`. MAC address to monitor.

ap-sniffer-mgmt-beacon {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `mode` is set to `sniffer`. Enable (by default) or disable sniffer on WiFi management Beacon frame.

ap-sniffer-mgmt-probe {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `mode` is set to `sniffer`. Enable (by default) or disable sniffer on WiFi management Probe frame.

ap-sniffer-mgmt-other {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `mode` is set to `sniffer`. Enable (by default) or disable sniffer on WiFi management Other frame.

ap-sniffer-ctl {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `mode` is set to `sniffer`. Enable (by default) or disable sniffer on WiFi Control frame.

ap-sniffer-data {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available when `mode` is set to `sniffer`. Enable (by default) or disable sniffer on WiFi Data frame.

transmit-optimize {disable | power-save | aggr-limit | retry-limit | send-bar}

Packet transmission optimization options (enabled by default; all options except `disable`):

- **disable:** No packet transmission optimization
- **power-save:** Tags client as operating in power save mode if excessive transmit retries occur
- **aggr-limit:** Sets a lower aggregation limit when the data rate is low
- **retry-limit:** Sets a lower retry limit when data rate is low
- **send-bar:** Limit transmission of Block Acknowledgement Request (BAR) frames

Separate each value with a space to add multiple values. Values can also be added using `append`.

amsdu {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available under `radio-2`. Enable (by default) or disable Aggregate MAC Service Data Unit (A-MSDU) support, allowing multiple frames to be combined into one larger frame.

coexistence {enable | disable}

Note: This entry is only available under `radio-2`. Enable (by default) or disable HT20/HT40 coexistence support, where bandwidths that use 20MHz and 40MHz can be used in the same channel.

channel-bonding {40MHz | 20MHz}

Note: This entry is only available under `radio-2`. Channel bandwidth: either 40MHz or 20MHz. Channels may use both by enabling the `coexistence` entry (see above).

auto-power-level {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) automatic power-level adjustment to prevent co-channel interference. When enabled, use the `auto-power-high` and `auto-power-low` entries to configure the high and low limitations. When disabled, use the `power-level` entry to configure the power level percentage.

auto-power-high <dBm>

Note: This entry is only available when `auto-power-level` is set to `enable`. Automatic transmission power high limit in decibels (dB) of the measured power referenced to one milliwatt (mW), or dBm. Set the value between 10-17. The default is set to 17.

auto-power-low <dBm>

Note: This entry is only available when `auto-power-level` is set to `enable`. Automatic transmission power low limit in dBm. Set the value between 1-17. The default is set to 10.

power-level <percentage>

Note: This entry is only available when `auto-power-level` is set to `disable`. Radio power level as a percentage; as such, set the value between 0-100. The default is set to 100. The maximum power level (i.e. 100%) will set to the regulatory maximum for your region, as determined by the country entry under `config wireless-controller setting`.

dtim <interval>

Interval between an Delivery Traffic Indication Message (DTIM), a kind of TIM that informs clients about the presence of buffered multicast/broadcast data on the AP. Set the value between 1-255. The default is set to 1.

beacon-interval <milliseconds>

Interval between beacon packets. AP broadcast beacons or TIMs to synchronize wireless networks. Set the value between 40-3500 (or 40 milliseconds to 3.5 seconds). The default is set to 100 (or a tenth of a second). In an environment with high interference, a low `beacon-interval` value might improve network performance. In a location with few wireless nodes, you can increase this value.

rts-threshold <bytes>

Maximum packet size for RTS transmissions, specifying the maximum size of a data packet before RTS/CTS. This will consume more bandwidth, therefore reducing the throughput, however the more RTS packets there are the fewer instances of packet loss will occur. Set the value between 256-2346 (or 256

bytes to over 2kB). The default is set to 2346, meaning that effectively it will never be used, as the maximum packet size in Ethernet networks can only be 1518 bytes (including all headers and maximum data size).

channel-utilization {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) channel utilization measurement.

frag-threshold <bytes>

Note: This entry is only available when `band` has been set. Maximum packet size that can be sent without fragmentation. Range is 800 to 2346 bytes. Set the value between 256-2346 (or 256 bytes to over 2kB).

spectrum-analysis {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) spectrum analysis, a method for finding interference that would negatively impact wireless performance.

wids-profile

Note: This entry is only available when `mode` is set to either `ap` or `monitor`. WIDS profile name to assign to the radio, as configured under the `wireless-controller wids-profile` command.

darrp {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) Distributed Automatic Radio Resource Provisioning (DARRP), a feature that autonomously and periodically determines the best-suited channel for wireless communication. This allows FortiAP units to select their channel so they do not interfere with each other in large-scale deployments. You can optimize DARRP further under the `wireless-controller timers` command.

max-clients <integer>

Maximum expected number of STAs supported by the radio. The default is set to 0.

max-distance <meters>

Maximum expected distance in meters between the AP and clients. This adjusts the ACK timeout to maintain throughput at the maximum distance. Set the value between 0-54000 (or no distance to just over 33.5 miles). The default is set to 0.

frequency-handoff {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) frequency handoff of clients to other channels. When enabled, you can optimize handoff further by using the `handoff-rssi` and `handoff-sta-thresh` entries.

ap-handoff {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) handoff of clients to other APs.

vap-all {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable the automatic inheritance of all VAPs.

vaps <vaps>

Specific VAPs carried on this physical AP. Separate each value with a space to add multiple VAPs. A maximum of eight VAPs may be added. Values can also be added using `append`.

channel {1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11}

Wireless radio channels. Separate each value with a space to add multiple channels. Values can also be added using `append`.

config lbs

A configuration method to set various location based service (LBS) options.

ekahau-blink-mode {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default)

ekahau-tag <mac-address>

WiFi frame MAC address.

erc-energy-ip <ip-address>

IP address of the Ekahau real-time location system (RTLS) controller.

er-server-port <port>

Ekahau RTLS controller UDP listening port.

aeroscout {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) AeroScout support.

aeroscout-server-ip <ip-address>

AeroScout server IP address.

aeroscout-server-port <port>

AeroScout server UDP listening port.

aeroscout-mu-factor <mu-factor>

AeroScout Mobile Unit (MU) mode dilution factor. The default is set to 20.

aeroscout-mu-timeout <seconds>

AeroScout MU mode timeout in seconds. Set the value between 0-65535 (or not timeout to over 18 hours). The default is set to 5.

fortipresence {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) FortiPresence support.

fortipresence-server <ip-address>

FortiPresence server IP address.

fortipresence-port <port>

FortiPresence server UDP listening port. Set the value between 300-65535. The default is set to 3000.

fortipresence-secret <password>

FortiPresence secret password, with a maximum length of eight characters.

fortipresence-project <name>

Name of the FortiPresence project, with a maximum length of 16 characters. The default is set to `fortipresence`.

fortipresence-frequency <seconds>

FortiPresence report transmit frequency in seconds. Set the value between 5-65535 (or five seconds to over 18 hours). The default is set to 30.

fortipresence-rogue {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) FortiPresence reporting Rogue APs.

fortipresence-unassoc {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) FortiPresence reporting unassociated stations.

station-locate {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) client station locating services for all clients, whether associated or not.

comment [string]

Optional comments.

led-state {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable use of LEDs on WTP.

dtls-policy {clear-text | dtls-enabled}

WTP data channel DTLS policy.

- clear-text: (set by default).
- dtls-enabled:

Separate each value with a space to add multiple options. Values can also be added using `append`.

max-clients <number>

The default is set to 0, meaning there is no client limitation.

handoff-rssi <rssi>

Minimum received signal strength indicator (RSSI) value for handoff. Set the value between 20-30. The default is set to 25.

handoff-sta-thresh <threshold>

Threshold value for AP handoff. Set the value between 5-35. The default is set to 30.

handoff-roaming {enable | disable}

Enable (by default) or disable client load balancing during roaming to avoid roaming delay.

ap-country <country>

Country in which this AP will operate. To display all available countries, enter `set country ?`. The default is set to US (United States).

ip-fragment-preventing {tcp-mss-adjust | icmp-unreachable}

Method by which IP fragmentation is prevented for CAPWAP tunneled control and data packets:

- **tcp-mss-adjust:** TCP maximum segment adjustment (by default).
- **icmp-unreachable:** Drop packet and send an Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) Destination Unreachable error message.

Separate with a space to add both values. Values can also be added using `append`.

tun-mtu-uplink <bytes>

Uplink tunnel maximum transmission unit (MTU) in octets (eight-bit bytes). An MTU is the largest size packet or frame that can be sent in a packet. Set the value to either 0 (by default), 576, or 1500.

tun-mtu-downlink <bytes>

Downlink tunnel MTU in octets. Set the value to either 0 (by default), 576, or 1500.

split-tunneling-acl-local-ap-subnet {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) specified destinations to be accessed locally instead of through the WiFi controller.

allowaccess {telnet | http | https | ssh}

Protocols to allow management-access to managed APs: `telnet`, `http`, `https`, and `ssh`. Separate each value with a space to add multiple protocols. Values can also be added using `append`.

login-passwd-change {yes | default | no}

Login password options:

- **yes:** Change login password of the managed AP
- **default:** Reset login password to factory default
- **no:** Do not change login password (by default)

When set to `yes`, use the `login-passwd` entry to determine the password of the managed AP.

login-passwd <password>

Note: This entry is only available when `login-passwd-change` is set to `yes`. Login password of the managed AP.

lldp {enable | disable}

Enable or disable (by default) Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP), a vendor-neutral link layer protocol used by network devices for advertising their identity, capabilities, and neighbours.

execute

The execute commands perform immediate operations on the FortiGate unit, including:

- Maintenance operations, such as back up and restore the system configuration, reset the configuration to factory settings, update antivirus and attack definitions, view and delete log messages, set the date and time.
- Network operations, such as view and clear DHCP leases, clear arp table entries, use `ping` or `traceroute` to diagnose network problems.
- Generate certificate requests and install certificates for VPN authentication.

api-user

Generate keys for API users.

```
execute api-user generate-key Generate key for API users.
    {name} API user name.
```

Variable	Description
<code>config flash <comment></code>	Back up the system configuration to the flash disk. Optionally, include a comment.
<code>config ftp <filename_str> <server_ipv4[:port_int] server_fqdn[:port_int]> [<username_str> [<password_str>]] [<backup_password_str>]</code>	Back up the system configuration to an FTP server. Optionally, you can specify a password to protect the saved data. Back up the system configuration to a configured management station. If you are adding a comment, do not add spaces, underscore characters (<code>_</code>), or quotation marks (" <code>"</code>) or any other punctuation marks.
<code>config management-station <comment_str></code>	The comment you enter displays in both the portal website and FortiGate web-based manager (System > Maintenance > Revision).
<code>config tftp <filename_str> <server_ipv4> [<backup_password_str>]</code>	Back up the system configuration to a file on a TFTP server. Optionally, you can specify a password to protect the saved data.
<code>config usb <filename_str> [<backup_password_str>]</code>	Back up the system configuration to a file on a USB disk. Optionally, you can specify a password to protect the saved data.
<code>config usb-mode [<backup_password_str>]</code>	Back up the system configuration to a USB disk (Global admin only). Optionally, you can specify a password to protect the saved data.
<code>config-with-forticlient-info ftp <filename_str> <server_ipv4[:port_int] server_fqdn[:port_int]> [<username_</code>	Back up the system configuration to a file on an FTP server. Optionally, you can specify a password to protect the saved data.

Variable	Description
str> [<password_str>]] [<backup_password_str>]	
config-with-forticlient-info tftp <filename_str> <server_ipv4> [<backup_password_str>]	Back up the system configuration to a file on a TFTP server. Optionally, you can specify a password to protect the saved data.
config-with-forticlient-info usb [<backup_password_str>]	Back up the system configuration to a file on a USB disk. Optionally, you can specify a password to protect the saved data.
config-with-forticlient-info usb-mode [<backup_password_str>]	Back up the system configuration to a USB disk (Global admin only). Optionally, you can specify a password to protect the saved data.
full-config ftp <filename_str> <server_ipv4[:port_int] server_fqdn[:port_int]> [<username_str> [<password_str>]] [<backup_password_str>]	Back up the full system configuration to a file on an FTP server. You can optionally specify a password to protect the saved data.
full-config tftp <filename_str> <server_ipv4> [<backup_password_str>]	Back up the full system configuration to a file on a TFTP server. You can optionally specify a password to protect the saved data.
full-config usb <filename_str> [<backup_password_str>]	Back up the full system configuration to a file on a USB disk. You can optionally specify a password to protect the saved data.
full-config usb-mode <filename_str> [<backup_password_str>]	Back up the full system configuration to a file on a USB disk (Global admin only). You can optionally specify a password to protect the saved data.
ipsuserdefsig ftp <filename_str> <server_ipv4[:port_int] server_fqdn[:port_int]> [<username_str> [<password_str>]]	Backup IPS user-defined signatures to a file on an FTP server.
ipsuserdefsig tftp tftp <filename_str> <server_ipv4>	Back up IPS user-defined signatures to a file on a TFTP server.
{disk memory} alllogs ftp <server_ipv4[:port_int] server_fqdn[:port_int]> [<username_str> <password_str>]	Back up either all memory or all hard disk log files for this VDOM to an FTP server. The disk option is available on FortiGate models that log to a hard disk.
	The file name has the form: <log_file_name>_<VDOM>_<date>_<time>
	Back up either all memory or all hard disk log files for this VDOM to a TFTP server. The disk option is available on FortiGate models that log to a hard disk.
{disk memory} alllogs tftp <server_ipv4>	The file name has the form: <log_file_name>_<VDOM>_<date>_<time>
	Back up either all memory or all hard disk log files for this VDOM to a USB disk. The disk option is available on FortiGate models that log to a hard disk.
	The file name has the form: <log_file_name>_<VDOM>_<date>_<time>
{disk memory} log ftp <server_ipv4[:port_int] server_fqdn[:port_int]> <username_str> <password_str> {traffic	Back up the specified type of log file from either hard disk or memory to an FTP server.

Variable	Description
event ids virus webfilter spam dlp voip app-ctrl netscan}	The disk option is available on FortiGate models that log to a hard disk.
{disk memory} log tftp <server_ipv4> {traffic event ids virus webfilter spam dlp voip app-ctrl netscan}	Back up the specified type of log file from either hard disk or memory to a TFTP server.
{disk memory} log usb {traffic event ids virus webfilter spam dlp voip app-ctrl netscan}	The disk option is available on FortiGate models that log to a hard disk.
	Back up the specified type of log file from either hard disk or memory to a USB disk.
	The disk option is available on FortiGate models that log to a hard disk.

Example

This example shows how to backup the FortiGate unit system configuration to a file named `fgt.cfg` on a TFTP server at IP address 192.168.1.23.

```
execute backup config tftp fgt.cfg 192.168.1.23
```

auto-script

Commands to run and save the output of scripts created using the `config system auto-script` command. You can start and stop scripts, transfer their results to an FTP or TFTP server, delete save script output, display saved script output and so on.

```
execute auto-script backup ftp Backup output file to FTP sever.
    {name} Script name.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port] FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}|{user} FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd} FTP password.
```

```
execute auto-script backup tftp Backup output file to TFTP sever.
    {name} Script name.
    {ip} IP address of TFTP server.
```

```
execute auto-script delete Delete output of executed scripts.
    {name} Script name.
```

```
execute auto-script result Display output of executed scripts.
    {name} Script name.
```

```
execute auto-script start Start script.
    {name} Script name.
```

```
execute auto-script status  List of scripts currently running or executed.
```

```
execute auto-script stop  Stop script.  
    {name}    Script name.
```

```
execute auto-script stopall  Stop all scripts currently running.
```

Example

This example shows how to backup the output file created by a script to an FTP server. The name of the script is `scriptname`. The FTP server to send the output file to has an IP address of 192.168.1.23. The account on the server has the user name `ftpuser` and the password `ftpswd`.

```
execute auto-script backup ftp scriptname 192.168.1.23 ftpuser ftpswd
```

backup

Back up the FortiGate configuration files, logs, or IPS user-defined signatures file to a TFTP or FTP server, USB disk, or a management station. Management stations can either be a FortiManager unit, or FortiGuard Analysis and Management Service.

When virtual domain configuration is enabled (in [global](#), `vdom-admin` is enabled), the content of the backup file depends on the administrator account that created it.

A backup of the system configuration from the super admin account contains the global settings and the settings for all of the VDOMs. Only the super admin can restore the configuration from this file.

When you back up the system configuration from a regular administrator account, the backup file contains the global settings and the settings for the VDOM to which the administrator belongs. Only a regular administrator account can restore the configuration from this file.

Syntax

Backup the configuration to the flash disk

```
execute backup config flash  Backup config file to flash.  
    {comment}    Make a comment for this config backup.
```

Backup the configuration to an FTP server

```
execute backup config ftp  Backup config file to ftp server.  
    {string}    Make a file name (path) on the FTP server.  
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.  
    {Enter}||{user}    FTP username may be needed.  
    {passwd}    FTP password.  
    {Enter}||{passwd}  Optional password to protect the backup content.
```

Backup the configuration to FortiManager (in backup mode)

```
execute backup config management-station Backup config file to management station.  
    {comment} Make a comment for this config backup.
```

Backup the configuration to a TFTP server

```
execute backup config tftp Backup config file to TFTP server.  
    {string} Make a file name (path) on the TFTP server.  
    {ip} IP address of TFTP server.  
    {Enter}|{passwd} Optional password to protect the backup content.
```

Backup the configuration to an external USB disk

```
execute backup config usb Backup config file to USB disk.  
    {string} Make a file name on the USB disk.  
    {Enter}|{passwd} Optional password to protect the backup content.
```

Specify a password for USB backups

The password is used to encrypt the backup and must be used to restore or view the configuration file.

```
execute backup config usb-mode Backup config file for USB mode.  
    {Enter}|{passwd} Optional password to protect the backup file.
```

Backup the configuration including FortiClient information to an FTP server

```
execute backup config-with-forticlient-info ftp Backup config (with FortiClient info) file  
to FTP server.  
    {string} Make a file name (path) on the FTP server.  
    {ftp server}[:ftp port] FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.  
    {Enter}|{user} FTP username may be needed.  
    {passwd} FTP password.  
    {Enter}|{passwd} Optional password to protect the backup content.
```

Backup the configuration including FortiClient information to an external USB disk

```
execute backup config-with-forticlient-info usb Backup config (with FortiClient info) file  
to USB disk.  
    {string} Make a file name on the USB disk.  
    {Enter}|{passwd} Optional password to protect the backup content.
```

Specify a password for USB backups that include FortiClient information

```
execute backup config-with-forticlient-info usb-mode Backup config (with FortiClient info)  
file for USB mode.  
    {Enter}|{passwd} Optional password to protect the backup file.
```

Backup all log files to an FTP server

```
execute backup disk alllogs ftp Backup all log files to FTP server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}|{user}  FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd}  FTP password.
```

Backup all log files to a TFTP server

```
execute backup disk alllogs tftp Backup all log file(s) to TFTP server.
    {ip}  IP address of TFTP server.
```

Backup all log files to an external USB disk

```
execute backup disk alllogs usb Backup all log files to USB.
```

Backup IPS archive files to an FTP server

```
execute backup disk ipsarchives ftp Backup IPS archive file(s) to FTP server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}|{user}  FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd}  FTP password.
```

Backup IPS archive files to a TFTP server

```
execute backup disk ipsarchives tftp Backup IPS archive file(s) to TFTP server.
    {ip}  IP address of TFTP server.
```

Backup IPS archive files to an external USB disk

```
execute backup disk ipsarchives usb Backup IPS archive file(s) to USB.
```

Backup specific log files to an FTP server

```
execute backup disk log ftp Backup specific log file(s) to FTP server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
    {user}  ftp username
    {passwd}  FTP password.
    {string}  , traffic, event, virus, webfilter, ips, emailfilter, anomaly, voip, dlp, app-ctrl, waf, gtp, dns, ssh
```

Backup specific log files to a TFTP server

```
execute backup disk log tftp Backup specific log file(s) to TFTP server.
    {ip}  IP address of TFTP server.
    {string}  , traffic, event, virus, webfilter, ips, emailfilter, anomaly, voip,
```

```
dlp, app-ctrl, waf, gtp, dns, ssh
```

Backup specific log files to an external USB disk

```
execute backup disk log usb Backup specific log file(s) to USB.
    {string}    , traffic, event, virus, webfilter, ips, emailfilter, anomaly, voip, dlp,
app-ctrl, waf, gtp, dns, ssh
```

Backup the full configuration file to an FTP server

```
execute backup full-config ftp Backup full config file to FTP server.
    {string}    Make a file name (path) on the FTP server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}||{user}    FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd}    FTP password.
    {Enter}||{passwd}  Optional password to protect the backup content.
```

Backup the full configuration file to a TFTP server

```
execute backup full-config tftp Backup full config file to TFTP server.
    {string}    Make a file name (path) on the TFTP server.
    {ip}    IP address of TFTP server.
    {Enter}||{passwd}  Optional password to protect the backup content.
```

Backup the full configuration file to an FTP server

```
execute backup full-config usb Backup full config file to USB disk.
    {string}    Make a file name on the USB disk.
    {Enter}||{passwd}  Optional password to protect the backup content.
```

Specify a password for full configuraton USB backups

```
execute backup full-config usb-mode Backup full config file for USB mode.
    {Enter}||{passwd}  Optional password to protect the backup file.
```

Backup user defined IPS signatures to an FTP server

```
execute backup ipsuserdefsig ftp Backup user defined IPS signatures to FTP server.
    {string}    Make a file name (path) on the FTP server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}||{user}    FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd}    FTP password.
```

Backup user defined IPS signatures to a TFTP server

```
execute backup ipsuserdefsig tftp Backup user defined IPS signatures to TFTP server.
    {string}    Make a file name (path) on the TFTP server.
```

```
{ip}    IP address of TFTP server.
```

Backup all memory logs to an FTP server

```
execute backup memory alllogs ftp Backup all log files to FTP server.
{ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
{Enter}|{user}    FTP username may be needed.
{passwd}    FTP password.
```

Backup all memory logs to a TFTP server

```
execute backup memory alllogs tftp Backup all log file(s) to TFTP server.
{ip}    IP address of TFTP server.
```

Backup specific memory log files to an FTP server

```
execute backup memory log ftp Backup specific log file(s) to FTP server.
{ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
{user}    ftp username
{passwd}    FTP password.
{string}    , traffic, event, virus, webfilter, ips, emailfilter, anomaly,
voip, dlp, app-ctrl, waf, gtp, dns, ssh
```

Backup specific memory log files to a TFTP server

```
execute backup memory log tftp Backup specific log file(s) to TFTP server.
{ip}    IP address of TFTP server.
{string}    , traffic, event, virus, webfilter, ips, emailfilter, anomaly, voip,
dlp, app-ctrl, waf, gtp, dns, ssh
```

Example

This example shows how to backup the FortiGate unit system configuration to a file named `fgt.cfg` on a TFTP server at IP address 192.168.1.23.

```
execute backup config tftp fgt.cfg 192.168.1.23
```

batch

Execute a series of CLI commands. `execute batch` commands are controlled by the Maintenance (`mntgrp`) access control group.

Syntax

```
execute batch start  Batch mode start.
```

```
execute batch end  Batch mode end.
```

```
execute batch lastlog  Read the result of last batch commands.
```

```
execute batch status  Batch mode status.
```

end — exit session and run the batch commands

lastlog — read the result of the last batch commands

start — start batch mode

status — batch mode status reporting if batch mode is running or stopped

Example

To start batch mode:

```
execute batch start
Enter batch mode...
```

To enter commands to run in batch mode:

```
config system global
  set refresh 5
end
```

To execute the batch commands:

```
execute batch end
Exit and run batch commands...
```

bypass-mode

Use this command to manually switch a FortiGate that has bridge ports into bypass mode. This is available in transparent mode only. If manually switched to bypass mode, the unit remains in bypass-mode until bypass mode is disabled.

Syntax

```
execute bypass-mode  manually switch between normal mode and bypass mode
                    {enable/disable}  enter/leave bypass mode
```


carrier-license

Use this command to enter a FortiOS Carrier license key if you have installed a FortiOS Carrier build on a FortiGate unit and need to enter a license key to enable FortiOS Carrier functionality.

Contact Fortinet Support for more information about this command.

Syntax

```
execute carrier-license <license_key>
```

Variable	Description
<license_key>	Enter the FortiOS Carrier license key supplied by Fortinet.

central-mgmt

Update Central Management Service account information. Also used receive configuration file updates from an attached FortiManager unit.

Syntax

```
execute central-mgmt register-device Register device to FortiManager from unregistered device list.
```

```
    {fmg-serial-no} FortiManager serial number.
```

```
    {fmg-register-password} Register password in to FortiManager.
```

```
execute central-mgmt set-mgmt-id Management ID of Central Management Service.
```

```
    {management id} Management ID (must be entered in encrypted format).
```

```
execute central-mgmt unregister-device Remove device from its manager's device list.
```

```
    {fmg-serial-no} FortiManager serial number.
```

set-mgmt-id is used to change or initially set the management ID, or your account number for Central Management Services. This account ID must be set for the service to be enabled.

register-device registers the FortiGate unit with a specific FortiManager unit specified by serial number. You must also specify the administrator name and password that the FortiManager unit uses to log on to the FortiGate unit.

unregister-device removes the FortiGate unit from the specified FortiManager unit's device list.

update is used to update your Central Management Service contract with your new management account ID. This command is to be used if there are any changes to your management service account.

Example

If you are registering with the Central Management Service for the first time, and your account number is 123456, you would enter the following:

```
execute central-mgmt set-mgmt-id 123456
```

cfg reload

Use this command to restore the saved configuration when the configuration change mode is `manual` or `revert`. This command has no effect if the mode is `automatic`, the default. The `set cfg-save` command in `system global` sets the configuration change mode.

When you reload the saved system configuration, the your session ends and the FortiGate unit restarts.

In the default configuration change mode, `automatic`, CLI commands become part of the saved unit configuration when you execute them by entering either `next` or `end`.

In `manual` mode, commands take effect but do not become part of the saved configuration unless you execute the `execute cfg save` command. When the FortiGate unit restarts, the saved configuration is loaded. Configuration changes that were not saved are lost.

The `revert` mode is similar to `manual` mode, except that configuration changes are saved automatically if the administrative session is idle for more than a specified timeout period. This provides a way to recover from an erroneous configuration change, such as changing the IP address of the interface you are using for administration. You set the timeout in `system global` using the `set cfg-revert-timeout` command.

Syntax

```
execute cfg reload Reboot to reload the configs.
```

Example

This is sample output from the command when successful:

```
# execute cfg reload
configs reloaded. system will reboot.This is sample output from the command when not in
runtime-only configuration mode:
# execute cfg reload
no config to be reloaded.
```

cfg save

Use this command to save configuration changes when the configuration change mode is `manual` or `revert`. If the mode is `automatic`, the default, all changes are added to the saved configuration as you make them and this command has no effect. The `set cfg-save` command in `system global` sets the configuration change mode.

In `manual` mode, commands take effect but do not become part of the saved configuration unless you execute the `execute cfg save` command. When the FortiGate unit restarts, the saved configuration is loaded. Configuration changes that were not saved are lost.

The `revert` mode is similar to `manual` mode, except that configuration changes are reverted automatically if the administrative session is idle for more than a specified timeout period. This provides a way to recover from an erroneous configuration change, such as changing the IP address of the interface you are using for administration. To change the timeout from the default of 600 seconds, go to `system global` and use the `set cfg-revert-timeout` command.

Syntax

```
execute cfg save    Save configs.
```

Example

This is sample output from the command:

```
# execute cfg save
config saved.
```

This is sample output when not in runtime-only configuration mode. It also occurs when in runtime-only configuration mode and no changes have been made:

```
# execute cfg save
no config to be saved.
```

clear system arp table

Clear all the entries in the arp table.

Syntax

```
execute clear system arp table    Clear system ARP table.
```

cli check-template-status

Reports the status of the secure copy protocol (SCP) script template.

Syntax

```
execute cli check-template-status    Check SCP script template running status.
```

cli status-msg-only

Enable or disable displaying standardized CLI error output messages. If executed, this command stops other debug messages from displaying in the current CLI session. This command is used for compatibility with FortiManager.

Syntax

```
execute cli status-msg-only CLI standardized error output.  
    {enable/disable} Enable/disable CLI standardized error output.
```

Variable	Description	Default
status-msg-only [enable disable]	Enable or disable standardized CLI error output messages. Entering the command without enable or disable disables displaying standardized output.	enable

client-reputation

Use these commands to retrieve or remove client reputation information.

Syntax

To erase all client reputation data

```
execute client-reputation erase
```

To retrieve client reputation host count

```
execute client-reputation host-count <rows>
```

To retrieve client reputation host details

```
execute client-reputation host detail <host>
```

To retrieve client reputation host summary

```
execute client-reputation host summary <host>
```

To purge old data

```
execute client-reputation purge
```

To view the top n records

```
execute client-reputation <n | all>
```

date

Get or set the system date.

Syntax

```
execute date System date.  
           {yyyy-mm-dd}   yyyy: 2001-2037, mm: 1-12, dd: 1-31.
```

dhcp lease-clear

Clear all DHCP leases for a specific IP address or for all IP addresses for the DHCP servers in the current VDOM.

Syntax

```
execute dhcp lease-clear Clear all DHCP leases.  
           {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx} Clear lease(s) on this IP address.  
           all Clear all leases.
```

dhcp lease-list

List all DHCP leases for a specific interface or list all of the DHCP leases in the current VDOM.

Syntax

```
execute dhcp lease-list List all DHCP leases.  
           {interface} List leases on this interface.
```

dhcp6 lease-clear

Clear all DHCPv6 leases for a specific IP address or for all IP addresses for the DHCP servers in the current VDOM.

Syntax

```
execute dhcp6 lease-clear  Clear all DHCPv6 leases.  
    {xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx}  Clear lease(s) on this IPv6 address.  
    all  Clear all leases.
```

dhcp6 lease-list

List all DHCPv6 leases for a specific interface or list all of the DHCP leases in the current VDOM.

Syntax

```
execute dhcp6 lease-list  List all DHCPv6 leases.  
    {interface}  List leases on this interface.
```

disk

Use this command to list and format hard disks installed in FortiGate units or individual partitions on these hard disks.

Syntax

```
execute disk format  Format a partition.  
  
execute disk list  List disk devices and partitions.  
  
execute disk scan  Scan a partition and fix errors.
```

Variable	Description
format	Format the referenced disk partitions or disks. Separate reference numbers with spaces. If you enter a partition reference number the disk partition is formatted. If you enter a disk reference number the entire disk and all of its partitions are formatted.
list	List the disks and partitions and the reference number for each one.
scan	Scan a disk or partition and repair errors.

The `execute disk format` command formats the specified partitions or disks and then reboots the system if a reboot is required. The `execute disk scan` command scans and repairs a disk partition and then reboots the system.

In most cases you need to format the entire disk only if there is a problem with the partition. Formatting the partition removes all data from the partition. Formatting the disk removes all data from the entire disk and creates a single partition on the disk.

Examples

Use the following command to list the disks and partitions.

```
execute disk list
```

```
Disk Internal(boot) ref: 14.9GB type: SSD [ATA SanDisk SSD U100] dev: /dev/sda
partition ref: 3 14.4GB, 14.4GB free mounted: Y label: 7464A257123E07BB dev: /dev/sda3
```

In this example, there is only one partition and its reference number is 3.

Enter the following command to format the partition.

```
execute disk format 3
```

After a confirmation message the FortiGate unit formats the partition and restarts. This can take a few minutes.

Enter the following command to scan disk partition 3:

```
# execute disk scan 3
scan requested for: 3/Internal (device=/dev/sda3)
This action requires the unit to reboot.
Do you want to continue? (y/n)
```

disk raid

Use this command to view information about and change the raid settings on FortiGate units that support RAID.

Syntax

Disable RAID for the FortiGate

```
execute disk raid disable  disable RAID
```

Enable RAID

```
execute disk raid enable  enable RAID
{RAID level}    supported: Raid-0, Raid-1  (default: Raid-0)
```

Rebuild a RAID

Rebuild RAID on the FortiGate unit at the same RAID level. You can only execute this command if a RAID error has been detected. Changing the RAID level takes a while and deletes all data on the disk array.

```
execute disk raid rebuild rebuild RAID
```

Rebuild a RAID with a different RAID level

```
execute disk raid rebuild-level rebuild RAID with new level  
{RAID level} supported: Raid-0, Raid-1
```

Display information about a RAID configuration

```
execute disk raid status show RAID status
```

Examples

Use the following command to display information about the RAID disk array in a FortiGate-82C.

```
execute disk raid status  
RAID Level: Raid-1  
RAID Status: OK  
RAID Size: 1000GB  
  
Disk 1: OK Used 1000GB  
Disk 2: OK Used 1000GB  
Disk 3: OK Used 1000GB  
Disk 4: Unavailable Not-Used 0GB
```

disconnect-admin-session

Disconnect an administrator who is logged in.

Syntax

```
execute disconnect-admin-session Disconnect logged-in admin user.  
{integer} Index of user to be disconnected in logged-users table.
```

To determine the index of the administrator that you want to disconnect, view the list of logged-in administrators by using the following command:

```
execute disconnect-admin-session ?
```

The list of logged-in administrators looks like this:

```
Connected:  
INDEX  USERNAME  TYPE  FROM  TIME  
0      admin    WEB   172.20.120.51  Mon Aug 14 12:57:23 2006  
1      admin2   CLI   ssh(172.20.120.54) Mon Aug 14 12:57:23 2006
```


Example

This example shows how to disconnect the logged administrator `admin2` from the above list.

```
execute disconnect-admin-session 1
```

dsscc

Run the PCI DSS compliance check. The results of the check are displayed on the GUI under **Log & Report > Compliance Events**.

Syntax

```
execute dsscc Run PCI DSS compliance check now.
```

enter

Use this command to switch to a VDOM and check that VDOM's settings

Syntax

```
execute enter Select virtual domain.  
            {name} VDOM name.
```

Use “?” to see a list of available VDOMs.

erase-disk

Use this command to reformat the boot device or any installed hard disks. Use the ? to list the disks that can be erased.

Syntax

```
execute erase-disk Erase a disk.
```

extender

Use these commands to perform the following FortiExtender operations:

- Delete FortiExtender images uploaded to the FortiGate.
- Dial into the configured service provider.
- Hang up or disconnect from the current service provider.
- List uploaded FortiExtender images.
- Push a FortiExtender image from the FortiGate to a connected FortiExtender.
- Restart a FortiExtender .
- Restart the FortiExtender process running on the FortiGate.
- Upload a FortiExtender from an FTP or TFTP server to the FortiGate.

Syntax

```
execute extender delete-fortiextender-image Delete FortiExtender images.
```

```
execute extender dial Force FortiExtender to dial.
    {SN} FortiExtender serial number.
```

```
execute extender hangup Force FortiExtender to hangup.
    {SN} FortiExtender serial number.
```

```
execute extender list-fortiextender-image List FortiExtender images.
```

```
execute extender push-fortiextender-image Push FortiExtender image to a managed FortiEx-
tender.
    filename FortiExtender image filename.
    sn FortiExtender serial number.
```

```
execute extender reset-fortiextender Restart managed FortiExtender.
    {all}||{SN} FortiExtender serial number.
```

```
execute extender restart-fortiextender-daemon Restart ForExtender AC daemon.
```

```
execute extender upload-fortiextender-image ftp Upload FortiExtender image from FTP server.
    {string} FortiExtender image file name on the remote server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port] FTP server IP, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}||{user} FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd} FTP password.
```

```
execute extender upload-fortiextender-image tftp Upload FortiExtender image from TFTP
server.
    {string} File name on the TFTP server.
    {ip} IP address of TFTP server.
```

factoryreset

Reset the FortiGate configuration to factory default settings.

Syntax

```
execute factoryreset  Reset to factory default now.
```

If `keepvmlicense` is specified (VM models only), the VM license is retained after reset.

Apart from the `keepvmlicense` option, this procedure deletes all changes that you have made to the FortiGate configuration and reverts the system to its original configuration, including resetting interface addresses.

factoryreset2

Reset the FortiGate configuration to factory default settings except VDOM, interface, and static route settings.

Syntax

```
execute factoryreset2  Reset to factory default except system.global.vdom-admin/VDOMs/system.interface/system.settings/router.static/router.static6.
```

If `keepvmlicense` is specified (VM models only), the VM license is retained after reset.

firewall ssh generate local-ca

Generate the default SSH local CA.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>execute firewall ssh generate local-ca</code>	New execute command.

Syntax

```
execute firewall ssh generate local-ca  Generate the default ssh local key.  
{string}  Local CA name.
```

firewall ssh generate local-key

Generate the default SSH local key.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>execute firewall ssh generate local-key</code>	New <code>execute</code> command.

Syntax

```
execute firewall ssh generate local-key {string} Local key name.
```

formatlogdisk

Format the FortiGate hard disk to enhance performance for logging.

Syntax

```
execute formatlogdisk Format log disk.
```



In addition to deleting logs, this operation erases all other data on the disk, including quarantined files, web and WAN optimization caches, and databases for antivirus and IPS. This command does not delete information such as configuration files and firmware images because they are not stored on logging disks.

forticarrier-license

Use this command to perform a FortiOS Carrier license upgrade.

Syntax

```
execute forticarrier-license forticarrier-license  
    {activation-code} Format:0000-0000-0000-0000-0001 or <license-key> Format:0000-  
0000-0000-0000-0000-0000-00
```

forticlient

Use these commands to manage FortiClient licensing.

Syntax

To view FortiClient license information

```
execute forticlient info Show FortiClient license information.
```

To show current FortiClient count

```
execute forticlient list Show FortiClient current count.  
    {connection type} FortiClient connection type.  
    {start line} Start line.  
    {max result} Maximum result.
```

where <connection_type> is one of:

- 0 - IPsec
- 1 - SSLVPN
- 2 - NAC (Endpoint Security)
- 3 - WAN optimization
- 4 - Test

FortiClient-NAC

Use the following command to load a FortiClient license onto a FortiGate unit.

Syntax

```
execute FortiClient-NAC update-registration-license <code>
```

where <code> is the FortiClient registration license key/activation code.

fortiguard-log

Use this to manage FortiCloud operation (formerly called FortiGuard Analysis and Management Service).

Syntax

To retrieve the FortiCloud agreement

```
execute fortiguard-log agreement  Get agreement (testing only).
```

To activate FortiCloud certification

```
execute fortiguard-log certificate-activation  Activate FortiCloud certification.
      {code}  Activation code.
```

To create a FortiCloud account

```
execute fortiguard-log create-account  Create FortiCloud account (testing only).
      {id}  FortiCloud account ID.
      {password}  Password.
      {email confirm}  Email confirmation.
```

Display the FortiCloud domain used by the FortiGate

```
execute fortiguard-log domain  Get FortiCloud domain (testing only).
```

To join FortiCloud

```
execute fortiguard-log join  Join FortiCloud (testing only).
```

To log in to a FortiCloud account

```
execute fortiguard-log login  Login FortiCloud (testing only).
      {id}  FortiCloud account ID.
      {password}  Password.
      {domain}  FortiCloud domain.
      {email confirm}  Email confirmation.
```

To test connection to a FortiCloud account

```
execute fortiguard-log try  Try FortiCloud (testing only).
      {id}  FortiCloud account ID.
      {password}  Password.
      {email confirm}  Email confirmation.
```

To update the FortiGate's FortiCloud contract

```
execute fortiguard-log update  Update FortiCloud Contract.
```

To add a FortiCloud activation code

```
execute fortiguard-message add Add FortiGuard Message Service activation code.
    {activation code} Activation code for FortiGuard Message Service.
```

To view information about FortiCloud

```
execute fortiguard-message info Show info about FortiGuard Message Service.
```

To update FortiCloud

```
execute fortiguard-message update Force to update FortiGuard Message Service.
```

fortitoken

Use these commands to activate and synchronize a FortiToken device. FortiToken devices are used in two-factor authentication of administrator and user account logons. The device generates a random six-digit code that you enter during the logon process along with user name and password.

Before they can be used to authenticate account logins, FortiToken devices must be activated with the FortiGuard service. When successfully activated, the status of the FortiToken device will change from New to Active.

Synchronization is sometimes needed due to the internal clock drift of the FortiToken device. It is not unusual for new FortiToken units to require synchronization before being put into service. Synchronization is accomplished by entering two sequential codes provided by the FortiToken.

Syntax

To activate one or more FortiToken devices

```
execute fortitoken activate <serial_number> [serial_number2 ... serial_numbern]
execute fortitoken activate Activate FortiToken(s) with FortiGuard.
    {id} FortiToken ID.
        {id} FortiToken ID.
            {id} FortiToken ID.
                {id} FortiToken ID.
                    {id} FortiToken ID.
                        {id} FortiToken ID.
                            {id} FortiToken ID.
                                {id} FortiToken ID.
                                    {id} FortiToken ID.
                                        {id} FortiToken ID.
                                            {id} FortiToken ID.
                                                {id} FortiToken ID.
                                                    {id} FortiToken ID.
                                                        {id} FortiToken ID.
                                                            {id} FortiToken ID.
                                                                {id} FortiToken ID.
                                                                    {id} FortiToken ID.
                                                                        {id} FortiToken ID.
```

```

ID.                                     {id} FortiToken

FortiToken ID.                         {id}

FortiToken ID.                         {id}

FortiToken ID.                         {id}

```

To import FortiToken OTP seeds from an FTP server

```

execute fortitoken import ftp Import FortiToken seeds file from FTP server.
    {file name} FortiToken seeds file name.
    {ip}[:ftp port] IP address of server, can also include port.
    {Enter}||{user} FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd} FTP password.

```

To import FortiToken OTP seeds from a TFTP server

```

execute fortitoken import tftp Import FortiToken seeds file from TFTP server.
    {file name} FortiToken seeds file name.
    {ip} IP address of server.

```

To import FortiToken OTP seeds from an external USB disk

```

execute fortitoken import usb Import FortiToken seeds file from USB drive.
    {file name} FortiToken seeds file name.

```

To import a set of FortiToken serial numbers

```

execute fortitoken import-sn-file Import FTK_200 serial number from FortiCare.
    {FTK_200 Serial Number} FTK_200 serial number.

```

FortiCare returns a set of 200 serial numbers that are in the same serial number range as the specified FortiToken device.

To synchronize a FortiToken

```

execute fortitoken sync Synchronize FortiToken by adjusting for drift of internal clock.
    {id} FortiToken ID.
    {code} FortiToken code.
    {next code} Next FortiToken code.

```


fortitoken-mobile

Use these commands to activate and synchronize a FortiToken Mobile card. FortiToken Mobile cards are used in two-factor authentication of administrator and user account logons. The FortiGate unit sends a random six-digit code to the mobile device by email or SMS that the user enters during the logon process along with user name and password.

Syntax

To import FortiToken Mobile serial numbers

```
execute fortitoken-mobile import Import a list of tokens from FortiGuard to the FortiGate unit.  
                                {code} Software Token Redemption Certificate.
```

To poll a FortiToken Mobile state

```
execute fortitoken-mobile poll Poll soft token states.
```

To provision a FortiToken Mobile

```
execute fortitoken-mobile provision Provision a soft token.  
                                {sn} MobileToken serial number.
```

To renew a locked FortiToken Mobile

```
execute fortitoken-mobile renew Renew a locked mobile FortiToken.  
                                {sn} MobileToken serial number.
```

fsso refresh

Use this command to manually refresh user group information from Directory Service servers connected to the FortiGate unit using the Fortinet Single Sign On (FSSO) agent.

Syntax

```
execute fsso refresh Refresh FSSO groups.
```

ha disconnect

Use this command to disconnect a FortiGate unit from a functioning cluster. You must specify the serial number of the unit to be disconnected. You must also specify an interface name and assign an IP address and netmask to this interface of the disconnected unit. You can disconnect any unit from the cluster even the primary unit. After the unit is disconnected the cluster responds as if the disconnected unit has failed. The cluster may renegotiate and may select a new primary unit.

To disconnect the unit from the cluster, the `execute ha disconnect` command sets the HA mode of the disconnected unit to standalone. In addition, all interface IP addresses of the disconnected unit are set to 0.0.0.0. The interface specified in the command is set to the IP address and netmask that you specify in the command. In addition all management access to this interface is enabled. Once the FortiGate unit is disconnected you can use SSH, telnet, HTTPS, or HTTP to connect to and manage the FortiGate unit.

Syntax

```
execute ha disconnect Disconnect from HA cluster.  
    {string}    Serial number.  
        {string}    Interface name.  
            {ip}    IP or subnet of the interface.  
                {netmask}    Netmask of the interface.
```

Serial number

The serial number of the cluster unit to be disconnected.

Interface name

The name of the interface to configure. The command configures the IP address and netmask for this interface and also enables all management access for this interface.

Example

This example shows how to disconnect a cluster unit with serial number FGT5002803033050. The internal interface of the disconnected unit is set to IP address 1.1.1.1 and netmask 255.255.255.0.

```
execute ha disconnect FGT5002803033050 internal 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
```

ha ignore-hardware-revision

Use this command to allow FortiGates of different hardware revisions of the same model form a cluster. In some cases different hardware versions have different amounts of physical memory and this may prevent the FortiGates from forming a cluster. If you enter this command the FortiGates in the cluster will also revert to use the same amount of memory as the FortiGate with the lowest amount of memory, allowing them to form a cluster.

Syntax

To view ignore-hardware-revision status

```
execute ha ignore-hardware-revision status
```

To set ignore-hardware-revision status

```
execute ha ignore-hardware-revision {enable | disable}
```

ha manage

Use this command from the CLI of a FortiGate unit in an HA cluster to log into the CLI of another unit in the cluster. Usually you would use this command from the CLI of the primary unit to log into the CLI of a subordinate unit. However, if you have logged into a subordinate unit CLI, you can use this command to log into the primary unit CLI, or the CLI of another subordinate unit.

You can use CLI commands to manage the cluster unit that you have logged into. If you make changes to the configuration of any cluster unit (primary or subordinate unit) these changes are synchronized to all cluster units.

Syntax

```
execute ha manage Slave cluster index.  
{string} Slave cluster index.
```

Selecting the unit to log into

To select the unit to log into you enter its operating cluster index. The operating cluster index is assigned by the FGCP according to cluster unit serial number. The cluster unit with the highest serial number has an operating cluster index of 0. The cluster unit with the second highest serial number has an operating cluster index of 1 and so on.

Enter ? to list the operating cluster indexes of the cluster units that you can log into. The list does not show the unit that you are already logged into.

Example

This example shows how to log into a subordinate unit in a cluster of three FortiGate units. In this example, you have already logged into the primary unit. The primary unit has serial number FGT3082103000056. The subordinate units have serial numbers FGT3012803021709 and FGT3082103021989.

```
execute ha manage ?  
<id>    please input slave cluster index.  
<0>     Subsidiary unit FGT3012803021709  
<1>     Subsidiary unit FGT3082103021989
```

Type 0 and press enter to connect to the subordinate unit with serial number FGT3012803021709 and log in with a valid administrator account. The CLI prompt changes to the host name of this unit. To return to the primary unit, type `exit`.

From the subordinate unit you can also use the `execute ha manage` command to log into the primary unit or into another subordinate unit. Enter the following command:

```
execute ha manage ?
<id>    please input slave cluster index.
<1>     Subsidiary unit FGT3082103021989
<2>     Subsidiary unit FGT3082103000056
```

Type 2 and press enter to log into the primary unit or type 1 and press enter to log into the other subordinate unit with a valid administrator account. The CLI prompt changes to the host name of this unit.

ha set-priority

Use this command to temporarily change the device priority of a FortiGate unit in a cluster.

Syntax

```
execute ha set-priority Set HA priority.
                        {string}  Serial number.
                        {integer}  HA priority.
```

ha synchronize

Use this command from a subordinate unit in an HA cluster to manually synchronize its configuration with the primary unit or to stop a synchronization process that is in progress.

Syntax

```
execute ha synchronize {start | stop}
```

start

Start synchronizing the cluster configuration.

stop

Stop the cluster from completing synchronizing its configuration.

interface dhcp6client-renew

Renew the DHCPv6 client on the specified interface.

Syntax

```
execute interface dhcp6client-renew Renew DHCPv6 lease.  
    {interface} Renew DHCPv6 lease on this interface.
```

Example

This is the output for renewing the DHCP client on port1 before the session closes:

```
# execute interface dhcp6client-renew port1  
renewing dhcp6 lease on port1
```

interface dhcpclient-renew

Renew the DHCP client for the specified interface.

Syntax

```
execute interface dhcpclient-renew Renew DHCP lease.  
    {interface} Renew DHCP lease on this interface.
```

Example

This is the output for renewing the DHCP client on port1 before the session closes:

```
# execute interface dhcpclient-renew port1  
renewing dhcp lease on port1
```

interface pppoe-reconnect

Reconnect to the PPPoE service on the specified PPPoE interface.

Syntax

```
execute interface pppoe-reconnect Reconnect to PPPoE server.  
    {interface} Reconnect PPPoE on this interface.
```

log backup

Use this command to back up all logs, index files, and report databases. The files are compressed and combined into a TAR archive.

Syntax

```
execute log backup Backup logs and report databases to local storage device.  
    {path} Path to store logs and report databases.
```

log client-reputation-report

Use these commands to control client-reputation log actions.

Syntax

To accept a host so that it has its own baselines

```
execute log client-reputation-report accept <policy-id> <host>
```

To clear all auto-profile data

```
execute log client-reputation-report clear
```

To ignore a host, removing it from the abnormal list

```
execute log client-reputation-report ignore <policy-id> <host>
```

To refresh the data of one option result

```
execute log client-reputation-report refresh <policy-id> <option> <action>
```

<option> is one of bandwidth, session, failconn, geo, or app

<action> is one of data, baseline, or data_baseline (both data and baseline)

To get baseline/average information of one option

```
execute log client-reputation-report result baseline <policy-id> <option>
```

<option> is one of bandwidth, session, or failconn

To get hourly data of a host visiting a country or using an application

```
execute log client-reputation-report result details {hourly | total} <policy-id> <option>  
    <name> <host>
```

<option> is geo or app

<name> is the name of the country or application

To list abnormal hosts of one or all options

```
execute log client-reputation-report result list <policy-id> <option>
```

<option> is geo, app, or all

To list periodical data of one host of one option

```
execute log client-reputation-report result period <policy-id> <option> <host> <periods>
```

<option> is one of bandwidth, session, failconn, geo, or app

<periods> is number of periods to list

To list the top 10 abnormal hosts of one option

```
execute log client-reputation-report result top10 <policy-id> <option>
```

<option> is one of bandwidth, session, failconn, geo, or app

To run reports immediately

```
execute log client-reputation-report run <policy-id>
```

log convert-oldlogs

Use this command to convert old compact logs to the new format. This command is available only if you have upgraded from an earlier version of FortiOS and have old compact logs on your system.

Syntax

```
execute log convert-oldlogs
```

log delete

Use this command to clear all logs for a selected category. Enter `execute log delete ?` to see the categories.

Syntax

```
execute log delete Delete local logs of one category.
```

log delete-all

Use this command to clear all log entries for this VDOM in memory and current log files on hard disk. If your FortiGate unit has no hard disk, only log entries in system memory will be cleared. You will be prompted to confirm the command.

Syntax

```
execute log delete-all Delete all local logs.
```

log delete-oldlogs

Use this command to delete old compact logs. This command is available only if you have upgraded from an earlier version of FortiOS and have old compact logs on your system.

Syntax

```
execute log delete-oldlogs
```

log detail

Display UTM-related log entries for traffic log entries in this VDOM. Enter `execute log detail ?` to see the category list,

Syntax

```
execute log detail Display utm log entries for a particular traffic log.
    {category} Category for UTM logs
    {utmref} You can copy and paste it from log display result by tuning on it
using 'exec log filter show-utm-ref 1'
```

log display

Use this command to display log messages for this VDOM that you have selected with the `execute log filter` command.

Syntax

```
execute log display  Display filtered log entries.
```

The console displays the first 10 log messages. To view more messages, run the command again. You can do this until you have seen all of the selected log messages. To restart viewing the list from the beginning, use the commands

```
execute log filter start-line 1
execute log display
```

You can restore the log filters to their default values using the command

```
execute log filter reset
```

log downgrade-log

Use this command to downgrade existing logs to v5.0 format prior to a firmware downgrade to FortiOS v5.0.

Syntax

```
execute log downgrade-log
```

log filter

Use this command to select log messages in this VDOM for viewing or deletion. You can view one log category on one device at a time. Optionally, you can filter the messages to select only specified date ranges or severities of log messages. For traffic logs, you can filter log messages by source or destination IP address.

Commands are cumulative. If you omit a required variable, the command displays the current setting.

Use as many `execute log filter` commands as you need to define the log messages that you want to view.

Syntax

```
execute log filter category  Category.
    {category}  Category name, press enter for options.
```

```
execute log filter device  Device to get log from.
    {device}  Device name, press enter for options.
```

```
execute log filter dump  Dump current filter settings.
```

```
execute log filter field  Filter by field.
    {name}  Field name, press enter for options.
    {argument 1}  Field search argument 1, press enter for more help.
    {argument 2}  <argument 2>
```

```
    {argument 3}    <argument 3>
      {argument 4}    <argument 4>
        {argument 5}    <argument 5>
          {argument 6}    <argument 6>
            {argument 7}    <argument 7>
```

```
execute log filter ha-member HA member.
    sn    Serial number of HA member.
```

```
execute log filter max-checklines Maximum number of lines to check.
    number    0 or (100 - 1000000).
```

```
execute log filter reset Reset filter.
    {enter|all|field}    <enter|all> to reset all, <field> to reset field only.
```

```
execute log filter show-utm-ref Whether to show utmref field. This field contains the
information to locate UTM logs for the traffic log
    number    0 or 1
```

```
execute log filter start-line Start line to display.
    number    >=1
```

```
execute log filter view-lines Lines per view.
    number    Number of lines to view (5 - 1000).
```

log flush-cache

Use this command to clear the log cache and save cached logs.

Syntax

```
execute log flush-cache Write disk log cache of current category to disk in compressed
format.
```

log flush-cache-all

Use this command to clear the entire log cache and save all cached logs.

Syntax

```
execute log flush-cache-all Write disk log cache of all categories to disk in compressed
format.
```

log {fortianalyzer | fortianalyzer-cloud} test-connectivity

Use this command to test the connection to the FortiAnalyzer or FortiAnalyzer Cloud. This command is available only when FortiAnalyzer or FortiAnalyzer Cloud are configured.

Syntax

```
execute log fortianalyzer test-connectivity  Query FortiAnalyzer connection status.
```

Example

When FortiAnalyzer is connected, the output looks like this:

```
FortiAnalyzer Host Name: FortiAnalyzer-800B
FortiGate Device ID: FG50B3G06500085
Registration: registered
Connection: allow
Disk Space (Used/Allocated): 468/1003 MB
Total Free Space: 467088 MB
Log: Tx & Rx
Report: Tx & Rx
Content Archive: Tx & Rx
Quarantine: Tx & Rx
```

When FortiAnalyzer is not connected, the output is: Connect Error

log fortiguard test-connectivity

Use this command to test the connection to FortiCloud.

Syntax

```
execute log fortiguard test-connectivity  Query FortiGuard connection status.
```

log list

You can view the list of current and rolled log files for this VDOM on the console. The list shows the file name, size and timestamp.

Syntax

```
execute log list  List current and rolled log files info.  
                  {category}  Category name, press enter for options.
```

To see a list of available categories, enter

```
execute log list
```

Example

The output looks like this:

```
elog 8704 Fri March 6 14:24:35 2009  
elog.1 1536 Thu March 5 18:02:51 2009  
elog.2 35840 Wed March 4 22:22:47 2009
```

At the end of the list, the total number of files in the category is displayed. For example:

```
501 event log file(s) found.
```

log rebuild-sqlldb

Use this command to rebuild the SQL database from log files.

If run in the VDOM context, only this VDOM's SQL database is rebuilt. If run in the global context, the SQL database is rebuilt for all VDOMs.

If SQL logging is disabled, this command is unavailable.

Syntax

```
execute log rebuild-sqlldb
```

log recreate-sqlldb

Use this command to recreate SQL log database.

If SQL logging is disabled, this command is unavailable.

Syntax

```
execute log recreate-sqlldb
```

log-report reset

Use this command to delete all logs, archives and user configured report templates.

Syntax

```
execute log-report reset
```

log restore

Use this command to restore up all logs, index files, and report databases from a backup file created with the [log backup on page 1374](#) command.

This command will wipe out all existing logs and report database for the vdom. It is only available for debug firmware builds.

It is recommended to kill reportd and miglogd prior to running this command.

```
kill -3 1  
killall miglogd  
killall reportd
```

Syntax

```
execute log restore <file name>
```

where <file name> is the name of the backup file to use.

log roll

Use this command to roll all log files.

Syntax

```
execute log roll Roll log files now.
```

log shift-time

Use this command in conjunction with the [log backup on page 1374](#) and [log restore on page 1381](#) commands. You can load a log set generated previously to do demos or testing without needing to regenerate data.

Syntax

```
execute log shift-time <number of hours>
```

log upload

Use this command to upload logs to a FortiAnalyzer or to FortiCloud.

Syntax

```
execute log upload Upload log and archives to FortiAnalyzer/FortiCloud.
```

log upload-progress

Use this command to display the progress of the latest log upload.

Syntax

```
execute log upload-progress Check FortiCloud upload progress.
```

lte-modem

Use this command to display the progress of the latest log upload.

Syntax

Cold reboot the LTE modem

```
execute lte-modem cold-reboot Cold reboot LTE Modem.
```

Download LTE modem firmware from an FTP server

```
execute lte-modem get-modem-firmware ftp Load image from FTP server.  
    {string} Image file name(path) on the remote server.  
    {ftp server}[:ftp port] FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.  
    {Enter}|{user} FTP username may be needed.  
    {passwd} FTP password.
```

Download LTE modem firmware from a TFTP server

```
execute lte-modem get-modem-firmware tftp  Restore image from TFTP server.  
    {string}  Image file name on the TFTP server.  
    {ip}     IP address.
```

Download LTE modem firmware from an external USB disk

```
execute lte-modem get-modem-firmware usb  Restore image from USB disk.  
    {string}  Image file name on the USB disk.
```

Download an LTE modem Carrier PRI file from an FTP server

```
execute lte-modem get-pri-firmware ftp  Load image from FTP server.  
    {string}  Image file name(path) on the remote server.  
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.  
    {Enter}||{user}  FTP username may be needed.  
    {passwd}  FTP password.
```

Download an LTE modem Carrier PRI file from a TFTP server

```
execute lte-modem get-pri-firmware tftp  Restore image from TFTP server.  
    {string}  Image file name on the TFTP server.  
    {ip}     IP address.
```

Download an LTE modem Carrier PRI file from a external USB disk

```
execute lte-modem get-pri-firmware usb  Restore image from USB disk.  
    {string}  Image file name on the USB disk.
```

Power off the LTE modem

```
execute lte-modem power-off  Power off LTE Modem.
```

Power on the LTE modem

```
execute lte-modem power-on  Power on LTE Modem.
```

Purge LTE modem billing data

```
execute lte-modem purge-billing-data  Purge all existing LTE Modem billing data.
```

Reboot the LTE modem

```
execute lte-modem reboot  Warm reboot LTE Modem.
```

Set the LTE modem operation mode to online or low power

```
execute lte-modem set-operation-mode Set LTE Modem operation mode.
      ( 0, 1)  Operation mode.
0 - Online
1 - Low Power
```

Upgrade LTE modem firmware

```
execute lte-modem start-upgrade Start LTE Modem firmware upgrade.
```

Upgrade LTE modem firmware from boot mode

```
execute lte-modem start-upgrade-boot-mode Start LTE Modem firmware upgrade, from boot mode.
```

Create an LTE modem wireless profile

```
execute lte-modem wireless-profile create Create a wireless profile.
      {name}  Wireless profile name 1 to 16 characters.
      (0, 1)  Wireless profile type.
0 - 3GPP
1 - 3GPP2
      (0 - 4)  Wireless profile PDP type.
0 - IPV4
1 - PPP
2 - IPV6
3 - IPV4V6
      {name}  Wireless profile APN name 0 to 32 characters.
      (0 - 3)  Wireless profile authentication type.
0 - None
1 - PAP
2 - CHAP
3 - PAP and CHAP
      {name}|{Enter}  Wireless profile user Name 1 to 32 characters,
or <Enter> if authentication is none.
      {password}  Wireless profile password 1 to 32 characters.
```

Delete an LTE modem wireless profile

```
execute lte-modem wireless-profile delete Delete a wireless profile from the Modem.
      (1-16)  Wireless profile ID.
```

List the saved LTE modem wireless profiles

```
execute lte-modem wireless-profile list List all the wireless profiles in the Modem.
```


Modify an LTE modem wireless profile

```
execute lte-modem wireless-profile modify  Modify a wireless profile.
    (1-16)  Wireless profile ID.
        {name}  Wireless profile name 1 to 16 characters.
        (0, 1)  Wireless profile type.
0 - 3GPP
1 - 3GPP2
        (0 - 4)  Wireless profile PDP type.
0 - IPV4
1 - PPP
2 - IPV6
3 - IPV4V6
        {name}  Wireless profile APN name 0 to 32 characters.
        (0 - 3)  Wireless profile authentication type.
0 - None
1 - PAP
2 - CHAP
3 - PAP and CHAP
        {name}|{Enter}  Wireless profile user name 1 to 32 char-
acters, or <Enter> if authentication is none.
        {password}  Wireless profile password 1 to 32 char-
acters.
```

Test an LTE modem wireless profile

```
execute lte-modem wireless-profile test  Test wireless profiles.
    (1-16)|{Enter}  Wireless profile ID.
```

modem dial

Dial the modem.

The dial command dials the accounts configured in `config system modem` until it makes a connection or it has made the maximum configured number of redial attempts.

This command can be used if the modem is in Standalone mode.

Syntax

```
execute modem dial  Manually dial the MODEM.
```

modem hangup

Hang up the modem.

This command can be used if the modem is in Standalone mode.

Syntax

```
execute modem hangup    Manually hang up the MODEM.
```

modem trigger

This command sends a signal to the modem daemon, which causes the state machine to re-evaluate its current state. If for some reason the modem should be connected but isn't, then it will trigger a redial. If the modem should not be connected but is, this command will cause the modem to disconnect.

Syntax

```
execute modem trigger    Trigger the MODEM if it is stuck.
```

mrouters clear

Clear multicast routes, RP-sets, IGMP membership records or routing statistics.

Syntax

Clear PIM dense mode routes

```
execute mrouters clear dense-routes    Clear PIM dense mode routes.
    {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx}    Group IP address.
    {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx}    Source IP address.
```

Clear IGMP memberships:

```
execute mrouters clear igmp-group    Clear all IGMP entries for one or all groups.
    {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx}    Group IP address.
    {string}    Interface name.
```

```
execute mrouters clear igmp-interface    Clear all IGMP entries from one interface.
    {string}    Interface name.
```

Clear multicast routes:

```
execute mrouters clear multicast-routes    Clear all PIM dense mode and sparse mode routes.
    {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx}    Group IP address.
    {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx}    Source IP address.
```

Clear PIM-SM RM sets

```
execute mrouter clear sparse-mode-bsr  Clear PIM-SM RP sets learned from the BSR.
```

Clear PIM-SM RM sets (sparse mode routes)

```
execute mrouter clear sparse-routes  Clear PIM sparse mode routes.
    {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx}  Group IP address.
    {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx}  Source IP address.
```

Clear statistics:

```
execute mrouter clear statistics  Clear PIM routing statistics. {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx} Group IP
address. {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx} Source IP address.
```

nsx

Use this command to import, list, and delete VMware NSX security groups.

Syntax

Delete VMware NSX security groups

```
execute nsx group delete  Delete NSX Security Groups.
    {vdom}  VDOM.
    {filter}  Name Filter.
```

Import VMware NSX security groups

```
execute nsx group import  Import NSX Security Groups.
    {vdom}  VDOM.
    {filter}  Name Filter.
```

List VMware NSX security groups

```
execute nsx group list  List NSX Security Groups.
    {filter}  Name Filter.
```

pbx

Use this command to view active channels and to delete, list or upload music files for when music is playing while a caller is on hold.

Syntax

```
execute pbx active-call <list>
```

```

execute pbx extension <list>
execute pbx ftgd-voice-pkg {sip-trunk}
execute pbx music-on-hold {delete | list | upload}
execute pbx prompt upload ftp <file.tgz> <ftp_server_address>[:port] [<username>]
[password>]
execute pbx prompt upload tftp <file.tgz> <ftp_server_address>[:port] [<username>]
[password>]
execute pbx prompt upload usb <file.tgz> <ftp_server_address>[:port] [<username>]
[password>]
execute pbx restore-default-prompts
execute pbx sip-trunk list

```

Variables**Description**

active-call <list>	Enter to display a list of the active calls being processed by the FortiGate Voice unit.
extension <list>	Enter to display the status of all extensions with SIP phones that have connected to the FortiGate Voice unit.
ftgd-voice-pkg {sip-trunk}	Enter to retrieve FortiGuard voice package sip trunk information.
music-on-hold {delete list upload}	Enter to either delete, list or upload music on hold files. You can upload music on hold files using FTP, TFTP, or from a USB drive plugged into the FortiGate Voice unit.
prompt upload ftp <file.tgz> <ftp_server_address>[:port] [<username>] [password>]	Upload new pbx voice prompt files using FTP. The voice prompt files should be added to a tar file and zipped. This file would usually have the extension tgz. You must include the filename, FTP server address (domain name of IPv4 address) and if required the username and password for the server.
prompt upload tftp <file.tgz> <ftp_server_address>[:port] [<username>] [password>]	Upload new pbx voice prompt files using TFTP. The voice prompt files should be added to a tar file and zipped. This file would usually have the extension tgz. You must include the filename and TFTP server IP address.
prompt upload usb <file.tgz> <ftp_server_address>[:port] [<username>] [password>]	Upload new pbx voice prompt files from a USB drive plugged into the FortiGate Voice unit. The voice prompt files should be added to a tar file and zipped. This file would usually have the extension tgz. You must include the filename.
restore-default-prompts	Restore default English voicemail and other PBX system prompts. Use this command if you have changed the default prompts and want to restore the default settings.
sip-trunk list	Enter to display the status of all SIP trunks that have been added to the FortiGate Voice configuration.

Example command output

Enter the following command to view active calls:

```

execute pbx active-call

Call-From    Call-To    Durationed
6016         6006      00:00:46

```

Enter the following command to display the status of all extensions

```

execute pbx extension list
Extension Host Dialplan
6052 Unregister company-default
6051 Unregister company-default
6050 Unregister company-default
6022 Unregister company-default
6021/6021 172.30.63.34 company-default
6020 Unregister company-default

```

Enter the following command to display the status of all SIP trunks

```
execute pbx sip-trunk list
Name      Host      Username      Account-Type      State
Provider_1 192.169.20.1 +5555555      Static            N/A
```

ping

Send an ICMP echo request (ping) to test the network connection between the FortiGate unit and another network device.

Syntax

```
execute ping PING command.
           {ip} IP address.
```

You can enter an IP address, or a domain name. The FortiGate must be able to resolve the domain name.

Example

This example shows how to ping a host with the IP address 172.20.120.16.

```
#execute ping 172.20.120.16

PING 172.20.120.16 (172.20.120.16): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 172.20.120.16: icmp_seq=0 ttl=128 time=0.5 ms
64 bytes from 172.20.120.16: icmp_seq=1 ttl=128 time=0.2 ms
64 bytes from 172.20.120.16: icmp_seq=2 ttl=128 time=0.2 ms
64 bytes from 172.20.120.16: icmp_seq=3 ttl=128 time=0.2 ms
64 bytes from 172.20.120.16: icmp_seq=4 ttl=128 time=0.2 ms
--- 172.20.120.16 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.2/0.2/0.5 ms
```

ping6

Send an ICMP echo request (ping) to test the network connection between the FortiGate unit and an IPv6 capable network device.

Syntax

```
execute ping6 PINGv6 command.
```

Example

This example shows how to ping a host with the IPv6 address 12AB:0:0:CD30:123:4567:89AB:CDEF.

```
execute ping6 12AB:0:0:CD30:123:4567:89AB:CDEF
```

ping-options, ping6-options

Set ICMP echo request (ping) options to control the way ping or ping6 tests the network connection between the FortiGate unit and another network device.

Syntax

Adaptive Ping

```
execute ping-options adaptive-ping Adaptive ping <enable|disable>.  
      {string}    <enable|disable>.
```

```
execute ping6-options adaptive-ping Adaptive ping <enable|disable>.  
      {string}    <enable|disable>.
```

Ping or Ping6 datagram size (default 56 bytes)

```
execute ping-options data-size Integer value to specify datagram size in bytes.  
      {integer}    Integer value [0,65507].
```

```
execute ping6-options data-size Integer value to specify datagram size in bytes.  
      {integer}    Integer value [0,65507].
```

Set the DF bit in the IP header

```
execute ping-options df-bit Set DF bit in IP header <yes | no>.  
      {string}    <yes | no>.
```

The interface through which to ping the destination

```
execute ping-options interface Auto | <outgoing interface>.  
      {string}    Auto | <outgoing interface>.
```

```
execute ping6-options interface Auto | <outgoing interface>.  
      {string}    Auto | <outgoing interface>.
```

Time interval

Between sending ping packets in seconds.

```
execute ping-options interval Integer value to specify seconds between two pings.  
{integer} Integer value > 0.
```

```
execute ping6-options interval Integer value to specify seconds to wait between two pings.  
{integer} Integer value > 0.
```

Pattern (in hex format)

Used to fill in the optional data buffer at the end of the ICMP packet. This allows you to send out packets of different sizes for testing the effect of packet size on the connection.

```
execute ping-options pattern Hex format of pattern, e.g. 00ffaabb.  
{string} Hex format of pattern, e.g. 00ffaabb.
```

```
execute ping6-options pattern Hex format of pattern, e.g. 00ffaabb.  
{string} Hex format of pattern, e.g. 00ffaabb.
```

Repeat count

The number of times to repeat the ping, default is 5.

```
execute ping-options repeat-count Integer value to specify how many times to repeat PING.  
{integer} Integer value [1, 2147483647]
```

```
execute ping6-options repeat-count Integer value to specify how many times to repeat PING.  
{string} Integer value > 0.
```

Reset

Reset ping or ping6 settings to defaults.

```
execute ping-options reset Reset settings.
```

```
execute ping6-options reset Reset settings.
```

Source interface

The source interface from which to send the ping. Allows you to test connections to different network segments from the specified interface. **auto** (the default) selects the source address and interface based on the route destination IP address.

```
execute ping-options source Auto | <source interface IP>.  
{xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx} <source interface IP> | Auto
```

```
execute ping6-options source Auto | <source interface IP>.  
{xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx} <source interface IP> | Auto
```

Timeout

How long to wait (in seconds) before the ping times out (default is 2)

```
execute ping-options timeout Integer value to specify timeout in seconds.
{integer} Integer value >= 0.
```

```
execute ping6-options timeout Integer value to specify timeout in seconds.
{integer} Integer value >= 0.
```

ToS (Type of Service)

Set the ToS field in the packet header to provide an indication of the quality of service wanted.

```
execute ping-options tos IP type-of-service option.
{string}
```

```
default IP TOS defaults to 0
lowcost IP TOS minimize cost
lowdelay IP TOS minimize delay
reliability IP TOS maximize reliability
throughput IP TOS maximize throughput
```

```
execute ping6-options tos IP type-of-service option.
{string}
```

```
default IP TOS defaults to 0
lowcost IP TOS minimize cost
lowdelay IP TOS minimize delay
reliability IP TOS maximize reliability
throughput IP TOS maximize throughput
```

Time to live

Time to live is the number of hops the ping or ping6 packet should be allowed to make before being discarded or returned (default 64).

```
execute ping-options ttl Integer value to specify time-to-live.
{integer} Integer value [1,255].
```

```
execute ping6-options ttl Integer value to specify time-to-live.
{integer} Integer value [1,255]
```

Validate reply

Optionally validate reply data by setting validate-reply to yes (no by default).

```
execute ping-options validate-reply Validate reply data <yes | no>.
{string} <yes | no>.
```

```
execute ping6-options validate-reply Validate reply data <yes | no>.
{string} <yes | no>.
```


View settings

View current ping or ping6 settings.

```
execute ping-options view-settings View the current settings for PING option.
```

```
execute ping6-options view-settings View the current settings for PING option.
```

```
execute ping-options data-size <bytes>
execute ping-options df-bit {yes | no}
execute ping-options pattern <2-byte_hex>
execute ping-options repeat-count <repeats>
execute ping-options source {auto | <source-intf_ip>}
execute ping-options timeout <seconds>
execute ping-options tos <service_type>
execute ping-options ttl <hops>
execute ping-options validate-reply {yes | no}
execute ping-options view-settings
```

Example

Use the following command to increase the number of pings sent.

```
execute ping-options repeat-count 10
```

Use the following command to send all pings from the FortiGate interface with IP address 192.168.10.23.

```
execute ping-options source 192.168.10.23
```

policy-packet-capture delete-all

Use this command to delete captured packets. You will be asked to confirm that you want delete the packets.

Syntax

```
execute policy-packet-capture delete-all Delete all captured packet.
```

reboot

Restart the FortiGate unit. You can also optionally add a message that will appear in a log indicating the reason for the reboot. If the message is more than one word it must be enclosed in quotes.



Abruptly powering off your FortiGate unit may corrupt its configuration. Using the `execute reboot` and `execute shutdown` commands ensures proper shutdown procedures are followed to prevent any loss of configuration.

Syntax

```
execute reboot Reboot now.  
    comment comment  
        {string} Reboot comments.
```

Example

This example shows the reboot command with a message included.

```
execute reboot comment "December monthly maintenance"
```

replace device

Replace a managed FortiAP or a managed FortiSwitch with a new one. Using this execute command makes it easier to replace a failed FortiAP or FortiSwitch device with a new one without having to re-configure the new device. The configuration of the existing device is just transferred to the new one.

Syntax

```
execute replace-device fortiap FortiAP.  
    {fortiap-id} Old FortiAP serial number.  
    {fortiap-id} New FortiAP serial number.  
  
execute replace-device fortiswitch FortiSwitch.  
    {fortiswitch-id} Existing FortiSwitch serial number.  
    {fortiswitch-id} New FortiSwitch serial number.
```

report

Use these commands to manage reports.

Syntax

Flash report caches

```
execute report flush-cache Flush report caches
```

Recreate the report database

```
execute report recreate-db Recreate the report database
```

Generate a report

```
execute report run generate a report
    [layout name]    Layout name for a report. If not provided, the default layout will
be used.
    [Start Time]     Start time of the report time period ("yyyy-mm-dd hh").
    [End Time]       End time of the report time period ("yyyy-mm-dd hh").
```

Reset report templates

```
execute report-config reset    Reset report templates to the factory default
```

restore

Use this command to:

- restore the configuration from a file
- change the FortiGate firmware
- change the FortiGate backup firmware
- restore an IPS custom signature file

When virtual domain configuration is enabled (in `system global`, `vdom-admin` is enabled), the content of the backup file depends on the administrator account that created it.

A backup of the system configuration from the super admin account contains the global settings and the settings for all of the VDOMs. Only the super admin account can restore the configuration from this file.

A backup file from a regular administrator account contains the global settings and the settings for the VDOM to which the administrator belongs. Only a regular administrator account can restore the configuration from this file.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>execute restore script ftp</code>	New execute commands.
<code>execute restore script lastlog</code>	
<code>execute restore script scp</code>	
<code>execute restore script tftp</code>	

Syntax

Update the antivirus database from an FTP server

Update the antivirus database on the FortiGate by downloading it from an FTP server.

```
execute restore av ftp    Restore antivirus database from FTP server.
    {string}             Antivirus data base file name (path) on the remote server.
```

```

{ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
{Enter}||{user}  FTP username may be needed.
{passwd}  FTP password.

```

Update the antivirus database from a TFTP server

Update the antivirus database on the FortiGate by downloading it from a TFTP server.

```

execute restore av tftp  Restore antivirus database from TFTP server.
    {string}  Antivirus database file name on the TFTP server.
    {ip}  IP address.

```

Load a configuration file from a DHCP server

```

execute restore config dhcp  Load config file via DHCP.
    {port}  Port to be DHCP client.
    {Enter} | {vlanid}  Enter or specify VLAN ID to create a VLAN on the <port>.

```

Load a configuration file from flash

Restore the specified revision of the system configuration from the flash disk.

```

execute restore config flash  Load config file from flash to firewall.
    {revision}  Revision ID on the flash.

```

Load a configuration file from an FTP server

Restore the system configuration from an FTP server. The new configuration replaces the existing configuration, including administrator accounts and passwords.

If the backup file was created with a password, you must specify the password.

```

execute restore config ftp  Load config file from FTP server.
    {string}  Configure file name(path) on the remote server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}||{user}  FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd}  FTP password.
    {Enter}||{passwd}  Password may be needed to restore.

```

Load a configuration file from a management station (PC)

```

execute restore config management-station normal  Load normal config file from management
station to firewall.
    {revision}  Revision to retrieve, or enter '0' to get latest revision list.

```

Load a configuration management script from a management station (PC)

```

execute restore config management-station script  Load script config file from management
station to firewall.

```

```
{revision}    Revision to retrieve, or enter '0' to get latest revision list.
```

Load a configuration file template from a management station (PC)

```
execute restore config management-station template  Load template config file from management station to firewall.
```

```
{revision}    Revision to retrieve, or enter '0' to get latest revision list.
```

Load a configuration file from a TFTP server

Restore the system configuration from a TFTP server. The new configuration replaces the existing configuration, including administrator accounts and passwords.

If the backup file was created with a password, you must specify the password.

```
execute restore config tftp  Load config file from TFTP server to firewall.
{string}    File name on the TFTP server.
{ip}        IP address.
{Enter}||{passwd}  Password may be needed to restore.
```

Load a configuration file from an external USB disk

```
execute restore config usb  Load config file from USB disk to firewall.
{string}    File name on USB disk.
{Enter}||{passwd}  Password may be needed to restore.
```

Specify the password for restoring a configuration file from an external USB disk

```
execute restore config usb-mode  Load config file from USB disk and reboot.
{Enter}||{passwd}  Optional password to protect.
```

Load a firmware image from flash

```
execute restore image flash  Restore image from flash.
{revision}    Image revision ID on flash.
```

Load a firmware image from an FTP server

```
execute restore image ftp  Load image from FTP server.
{string}    Image file name(path) on the remote server.
{ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
{Enter}||{user}    FTP username may be needed.
{passwd}    FTP password.
```

Load a firmware image from a management station (PC)

```
execute restore image management-station  Restore image from Management station.
{string}    Image ID on the server.
```

Load a firmware image from a TFTP server

```
execute restore image tftp  Restore image from TFTP server.
    {string}  Image file name on the TFTP server.
    {ip}     IP address.
```

Load a firmware image from an external USB disk

```
execute restore image usb  Restore image from USB disk.
    {string}  Image file name on the USB disk.
```

Install an IPS update from an FTP server

```
execute restore ips ftp  Restore IPS database from FTP server.
    {string}  IPS data base file name (path) on the remote server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}||{user}  FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd}  FTP password.
```

Install an IPS update from a TFTP server

```
execute restore ips tftp  Restore IPS database from TFTP server.
    {string}  IPS database file name on the TFTP server.
    {ip}     IP address.
```

Install user defined IPS signatures from an FTP server

```
execute restore ipsuserdefsig ftp  Restore user-defined ips signatures file from FTP server.
    {string}  User-defined ips signatures file on the remote server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}||{user}  FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd}  FTP password.
```

Install user defined IPS signatures from a TFTP server

```
execute restore ipsuserdefsig tftp  Restore user defined IPS signatures file from TFTP
server.
    {string}  File name on the TFTP server.
    {ip}     IP address of TFTP server.
```

Update FortiGuard packages from an FTP server

You can update the internet service database and other FortiGuard package files.

```
execute restore other-objects ftp  Restore other FortiGuard packages from FTP server.
    Current support: Internet-service Database Apps/Maps and URL White List.
```

```

{string}    Other FortiGuard package file name on the FTP server.
{ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
{Enter}||{user}    FTP username may be needed.
{passwd}    FTP password.

```

Update FortiGuard packages from a TFTP server

You can update the internet service database and other FortiGuard package files.

```

execute restore other-objects tftp  Restore other FortiGuard packages from TFTP server.
Current support: Internet-service Database Apps/Maps and URL White List.
{string}    Other FortiGuard package file name on the TFTP server.
{ip}        IP address.

```

Load script from an FTP server

```

execute restore script ftp  Load script from FTP server.
{string}    Script on the remote server.
{ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
{Enter}||{user}    FTP username may be needed.
{passwd}    FTP password.

```

View last restored script

```

execute restore script lastlog  Read the result of last restored script.

```

Load script from an SCP server to the firewall

```

execute restore script scp  Load script from SCP server to firewall.
{string}    File name on the SCP server.
{ip}        IP address.
{user}      User name.
{Enter}||{passwd}  Enter or input password.

```

Load script from a TFTP server to the firewall

```

execute restore script tftp  Load script from TFTP server to firewall.
{string}    File name on the TFTP server.
{ip}        IP address.
{Enter}||{passwd}  Password may be needed to restore.

```

Load a backup firmware image from an FTP server

```

execute restore secondary-image ftp  Load image from FTP server.
{string}    Image file name(path) on the remote server.
{ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
{Enter}||{user}    FTP username may be needed.
{passwd}    FTP password.

```

Load a backup firmware image from a TFTP server

```
execute restore secondary-image tftp  Restore image from TFTP server.
    {string}    Image file name on the TFTP server.
    {ip}        IP address.
```

Load a backup firmware image from an external USB disk

```
execute restore secondary-image usb  Restore image from USB disk.
    {string}    Image file name on the USB disk.
```

Download a VM license file from an FTP server

```
execute restore vmlicense ftp  Restore VM license from FTP server.
    {string}    VM license file name(path) on the remote server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}|{user}  FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd}        FTP password.
```

Download a VM license file from a TFTP server

```
execute restore vmlicense tftp  restore VM license from tftp server
    {string}    VM license file name on the tftp server
    {ip}        IP address.
```

Example

This example shows how to upload a configuration file from a TFTP server to the FortiGate unit and restart the FortiGate unit with this configuration. The name of the configuration file on the TFTP server is `backupconfig`. The IP address of the TFTP server is 192.168.1.23.

```
execute restore config tftp backupconfig 192.168.1.23
```

revision

Use these commands to manage configuration and firmware image files on the local disk.

Syntax

To delete a configuration file

```
execute revision delete config  Delete config revision on local disk.
    {revision}    Revision ID on local disk.
    {rev_id}      place holder for multiple Revision IDs, at most 10 a time.
```


To delete a firmware image file

```
execute revision delete image Delete image revision on local disk.
    {revision} Revision ID on local disk.
    {rev_id} place holder for multiple Revision IDs, at most 10 a time.
```

To list the configuration files stored on the FortiGate disk

```
execute revision list config List config revision on local disk.
```

To list the firmware image files stored on the FortiGate disk

```
execute revision list image List image revision on local disk.
```

router clear bfd session

Use this command to clear bi-directional forwarding (BFD) sessions.

Syntax

```
execute router clear bfd session <src_ip> <dst_ip> <interface>
execute router clear bfd session Clear BFD session.
    {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx} Source IP address.
    {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx} Destination IP address.
    {string} Interface name.
```

router clear bgp

Use this command to clear BGP peer connections.

Syntax

Clear BGP peers

```
execute router clear bgp all Clear all BGP peers.
```

Clear a BGP peer by AS number

```
execute router clear bgp as Clear BGP peer by AS number.
```

Clear BGP route flap dampening information

```
execute router clear bgp dampening
```

 Clear route flap dampening information.**Clear all BGP external peers**

```
execute router clear bgp external
```

 Clear all external peers.**Clear BGP route flap statistics**

```
execute router clear bgp flap-statistics
```

 Clear route flap statistics.**Clear BGP peers by IP address**

```
execute router clear bgp ip
```

 Clear BGP peer by IP address.**Clear a BGP peer by IPv6 address**

```
execute router clear bgp ipv6
```

 Clear BGP peer by IPv6 address.

router clear ospf process

Use this command to clear and restart the OSPF router.

Syntax

Clear and restart an OSPF router

```
execute router clear ospf process
```

 Clear and restart OSPF router.**Clear and restart an OSPFv6 router**

```
execute router clear ospf6 process
```

 Clear and restart OSPF6 router.

router restart

Use this command to restart the routing software.

Syntax

```
execute router restart Restart routing software.
```

sdn tag nsx

Use this command to tag VMs based on their IP addresses.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<pre>execute sdn tag nsx <ip> <tagname> {0 1}</pre>	<p>New <code>execute</code> command.</p> <p>Find VMs based on their IP addresses and tag them. Specify the IP address, tag name, and enable or disable use of SpoofGuard (where 0 is disable and 1 is enable).</p>

Syntax

```
execute sdn tag nsx SDN tag NSX VM.  
    {ip-addr} VM IP address.  
    {tagname} Tag name.  
    {0/1} Disable/enable use of Spoofguard.
```

send-fds-statistics

Use this command to send an FDS statistics report now, without waiting for the FDS statistics report interval to expire.

Syntax

```
execute send-fds-statistics Send FortiGuard statistics.
```

sensor detail

Use this command to provide information on the FortiGate's hardware components. This command is only supported on select FortiGate models.

Syntax

`execute sensor detail` List detailed sensors and readings

If you have VDOMs configured on your FortiGate, enter:

```
config global
    execute sensor detail
end
```

Example

```
# execute sensor detail
1 +3.3V alarm=0 value=3.3342 threshold_status=0
  type=2/1
  upper_non_recoverable=3.6906
  upper_critical=3.6258
  upper_non_critical=3.5124
  lower_non_critical=3.0912
  lower_critical=2.994
  lower_non_recoverable=2.9292
2 +5V alarm=0 value=5.0725 threshold_status=0
  type=2/1
  upper_non_recoverable=5.587
  upper_critical=5.489
  upper_non_critical=5.342
  lower_non_critical=4.6805
  lower_critical=4.5335
  lower_non_recoverable=4.4355
3 +12V alarm=0 value=12.195 threshold_status=0
  type=2/1
  upper_non_recoverable=14.083
  upper_critical=13.729
  upper_non_critical=13.434
  lower_non_critical=10.602
  lower_critical=10.366
  lower_non_recoverable=10.012
. . .
```

sensor list

Use this command to provide information on the FortiGate's hardware components. This command is only supported on select FortiGate models.

Syntax

`execute sensor list` List sensors and readings

If you have VDOMs configured on your FortiGate, enter:

```
config global
  execute sensor list
end
```

Example

```
# execute sensor list
1 +3.3V alarm=0 value=3.2856 threshold_status=0
2 +5V alarm=0 value=5.0235 threshold_status=0
3 +12V alarm=0 value=12.136 threshold_status=0
4 CPU VCCP alarm=0 value=0.9609 threshold_status=0
5 CPU VTT alarm=0 value=1.0589 threshold_status=0
6 CPU PVSA alarm=0 value=0.9315 threshold_status=0
7 P1V8 alarm=0 value=1.7841 threshold_status=0
8 P1V5 alarm=0 value=1.4999 threshold_status=0
9 PCH +1.05V alarm=0 value=1.04 threshold_status=0
10 VCC 2V5 alarm=0 value=2.432 threshold_status=0
11 MAIN 12V alarm=0 value=11.904 threshold_status=0
12 VCC 1V15 alarm=0 value=1.136 threshold_status=0
13 DDR3 VTT alarm=0 value=0.736 threshold_status=0
14 RPS 12V alarm=1 value=0 threshold_status=0x7
15 NCT +3.3V alarm=0 value=3.216 threshold_status=0
16 NCT VBAT alarm=0 value=3.264 threshold_status=0
17 NCT +3.3VSB alarm=0 value=3.216 threshold_status=0
18 NCT VTT alarm=0 value=1.04 threshold_status=0
19 DTS CPU alarm=0 value=50 threshold_status=0
20 CPU Core 0 alarm=0 value=49 threshold_status=0
21 CPU Core 1 alarm=0 value=50 threshold_status=0
22 TD1 alarm=0 value=37 threshold_status=0
23 TD2 alarm=0 value=25 threshold_status=0
24 FAN_TMP_3 alarm=0 value=35 threshold_status=0
25 LM75 U72 alarm=0 value=28 threshold_status=0
26 LM75 U65 alarm=0 value=31 threshold_status=0
27 LM75 U62 alarm=0 value=32 threshold_status=0
28 FAN1 alarm=0 value=4900 threshold_status=0
29 FAN2 alarm=0 value=5000 threshold_status=0
30 FAN3 alarm=0 value=4700 threshold_status=0
```

set system session filter

Use these commands to define the session filter for `get system session` commands.

Syntax

To clear filter settings

```
execute set system session filter clear all  Clear session filter.
```

```
execute set system session filter clear dport  Clear destination port.
```

```
execute set system session filter clear dst   Clear destination IP.

execute set system session filter clear duration   Clear duration.

execute set system session filter clear expire   Clear expire.

execute set system session filter clear policy   Clear policy ID.

execute set system session filter clear proto   Clear protocol.

execute set system session filter clear sport   Clear source port.

execute set system session filter clear src   Clear source IP.

execute set system session filter clear vd   Clear virtual domain.
```

To specify the destination port

```
execute set system session filter dport   Destination port.
      {xxxx}   <0-65535> (from).
      {xxxx}   <0-65535> (to).
```

To specify destination IP address

```
execute set system session filter dst   Destination IP address.
      {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx}   Destination IP (from).
      {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx}   Destination IP (to).
```

To specify duration

```
execute set system session filter duration   duration
      {xxx}   Duration (from).
      {xxx}   Duration (to).
```

To specify expiry

```
execute set system session filter expire   expire
      {xxx}   Expire (from).
      {xxx}   Expire (to).
```

To list the filter settings

```
execute set system session filter list   List system session filter.
```

To invert (or negate) filter settings

```
execute set system session filter negate dport Inverse destination port.

execute set system session filter negate dst Inverse destination IP.

execute set system session filter negate duration Inverse duration.

execute set system session filter negate expire Inverse expire.

execute set system session filter negate policy Inverse policy ID.

execute set system session filter negate proto Inverse protocol.

execute set system session filter negate sport Inverse source port.

execute set system session filter negate src Inverse source IP.

execute set system session filter negate vd Inverse virtual domain.
```

To specify firewall policy ID

```
execute set system session filter policy Policy ID.
    {xxx} Policy ID (from).
    {xxx} Policy ID (to).
```

To specify protocol

```
execute set system session filter proto Protocol number.
    {xx} <0-255> (from).
    {xx} <0-255> (to).
```

To specify source port

```
execute set system session filter sport Source port.
    {xxxx} <0-65535> (from).
    {xxxx} <0-65535> (to).
```

To specify source IP address

```
execute set system session filter src Source IP address.
    {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx} Source IP (from).
    {xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx} Source IP (to).
```

To specify virtual domain

```
execute set system session filter vd Index of virtual domain. -1 matches all.  
{xxx} Index of virtual domain. -1 matches all.
```

set-next-reboot

Use this command to start the FortiGate unit with primary or secondary firmware after the next reboot. Available on models that can store two firmware images. By default, the FortiGate unit loads the firmware from the primary partition.

VDOM administrators do not have permission to run this command. It must be executed by a super administrator.

Syntax

```
execute set-next-reboot set next reboot command  
{primary/secondary} partition
```

sfp-mode-sgmii

Change the SFP mode for an NP2 card to SGMII. By default when an AMC card is inserted the SFP mode is set to SERDES mode by default.

If a configured NP2 card is removed and re-inserted, the SFP mode goes back to the default.

In these situations, the `sfpmode-sgmii` command will change the SFP mode from SERDES to SGMII for the interface specified.

Syntax

```
execute sfpmode-sgmii <interface>
```

<interface> is the NP2 interface where you are changing the SFP mode.

shutdown

Shut down the FortiGate unit now. You will be prompted to confirm this command.



Abruptly powering off your FortiGate unit may corrupt its configuration. Using the `execute reboot` and `execute shutdown` commands ensures proper shutdown procedures are followed to prevent any loss of configuration.

Syntax

```
execute shutdown Shutdown now.  
           comment comment  
           {string} Reboot comments.
```

`comment` is optional but you can use it to add a message that will appear in the event log message that records the shutdown. The `comment` message of the does not appear on the Alert Message console. If the message is more than one word it must be enclosed in quotes.

Example

This example shows the reboot command with a message included.

```
execute shutdown comment "emergency facility shutdown"
```

An event log message similar to the following is recorded:

```
2009-09-08 11:12:31 critical admin 41986 ssh(172.20.120.11) shutdown User admin shutdown the  
device from ssh(172.20.120.11). The reason is 'emergency facility shutdown'
```

ssh

Use this command to establish an ssh session with another system.

Syntax

```
execute ssh Simple SSH client.  
           {user@host} User-name @ IP-address or DNS-name.  
           {port} port.
```

The port number is optional.

Example

```
execute ssh admin@172.20.120.122
```

To end an ssh session, type `exit`:

```
FGT-6028030112 # exit  
Connection to 172.20.120.122 closed.  
FGT-8002805000 #
```

switch-controller

Use this command to establish an ssh session with another system.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.1.

Command	Description
<code>execute switch-controller diagnose-connection <fortiswitch-id></code>	Get FortiSwitch connection diagnostics, including FortiLink verification, FortiLink L-2 status check, and CAPWAP L-3 status check.
<code>execute switch-controller mac-limit-violation reset all <fortiswitch-id></code>	Reset all MAC learning limit violations, on a FortiSwitch interface, or on a FortiSwitch VLAN.
<code>execute switch-controller mac-limit-violation reset interface <fortiswitch-id> <port></code>	
<code>execute switch-controller mac-limit-violation reset vlan <fortiswitch-id> <vlan-id></code>	

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>execute switch-controller get-physical-conn dot <fortiswitch-stack-id></code>	Original <code>get-physical-conn</code> command has been split in order to see FortiSwitch stack connectivity graph either in dot or standard output format.
<code>execute switch-controller get-physical-conn standard <fortiswitch-stack-id></code>	
<code>execute switch-controller get-sync-status {all group name switch-id <fortiswitch-id>}</code>	Show various synchronization status information for FortiSwitch.
<code>execute switch-controller restart-swtp-delayed all</code> <code>execute switch-controller restart-swtp-delayed sn</code> <code>execute switch-controller restart-swtp-delayed switch-group</code>	Restart delay for all FortiSwitch devices, for specific devices identified by serial number, and/or for those devices belonging to a switch group.
<code>execute switch-controller stage-tiered-swtp-image all</code> <code>execute switch-controller stage-tiered-swtp-image sn</code> <code>execute switch-controller stage-tiered-swtp-image switch-group</code>	Stage FortiSwitch image to all managed FortiSwitch devices in a stack, for specific devices identified by serial number, and/or for those devices belonging to a switch group.
<code>execute switch-controller trigger-config-sync <fortiswitch-id></code>	Trigger configuration synchronization to FortiSwitch.
<code>execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool request <fortiswitch-id> <port></code>	Show various multi-tenancy virtual pool details.
<code>execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool return</code>	

Command	Description
<code><fortiswitch-id> <port></code>	
<code>execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool show</code>	
<code>execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool show-by-pool <pool-name></code>	
<code>execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool show-by-property <property-name></code>	
<code>execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool show-by-tag <tag- name></code>	

Syntax

Reset FortiSwitch BPDU guard

```
execute switch-controller bpduguard-reset  Reset BPDUGuard on switch-interface.
    {switch}  FortiSwitch device ID.
    {port}    FortiSwitch port.
```

Clear FortiSwitch MAC entries from an interface

```
execute switch-controller clear-802-1X-interface  Clear FortiSwitch MAC entries on a single
interface.
    {FortiSwitch-id}  FortiSwitch device ID.
    {port}            FortiSwitch port.
```

Clear FortiSwitch IGMP snooping multicast groups and queries

```
execute switch-controller clear-igmp-snoop  Clear FortiSwitch IGMP snooping multicast Groups
and Queries.
    {FortiSwitch-id}  FortiSwitch device ID.
```

Execute a custom command to a managed FortiSwitch

```
execute switch-controller custom-command  Push a FortiSwitch custom command to a FortiSwitch
device.
    {cmd-name}  Names of commands to be pushed to this FortiSwitch device, as con-
figured under config switch-controller custom-command.
    {target-switch}  FortiSwitch device to push the custom command to.
```

Delete a FortiSwitch firmware image

```
execute switch-controller delete-swtp-image  Delete FortiSwitch image.
    {filename}  FortiSwitch image filename.
```

Display FortiSwitch connection diagnostics

```
execute switch-controller diagnose-connection Get FortiSwitch connection diagnostics.  
    {fortiswitch-id} FortiSwitch device ID.
```

Reset a FortiSwitch to factory default settings

```
execute switch-controller factory-reset Set FortiSwitch to factory default settings.  
    switch FortiSwitch device ID.
```

Display a FortiSwitch's connection status

```
execute switch-controller get-conn-status Get FortiSwitch connection status.  
    {fortiswitch-id} FortiSwitch device ID.
```

View FortiSwitch stack connectivity in dot output

```
execute switch-controller get-physical-conn dot Get FortiSwitch stack connectivity graph in  
dot output format.  
    {FortiSwitch-Stack-ID} FortiSwitch stack ID.
```

View FortiSwitch stack connectivity in standard output

```
execute switch-controller get-physical-conn standard Get FortiSwitch stack connectivity  
graph in standard output format.  
    {FortiSwitch-Stack-ID} FortiSwitch stack ID.
```

View FortiSwitch sync status

```
execute switch-controller get-sync-status all Get FortiSwitch sync status.
```

View FortiSwitch sync status by group

```
execute switch-controller get-sync-status group Get FortiSwitch sync status by group.  
    {group} Group Name.
```

View FortiSwitch sync status by name

```
execute switch-controller get-sync-status name Get FortiSwitch sync status by name.  
    {name} Name.
```

View FortiSwitch sync status by switch

```
execute switch-controller get-sync-status switch-id Get FortiSwitch sync status by switch.  
    {fortiswitch-id} FortiSwitch device ID.
```

List FortiSwitch firmware images

```
execute switch-controller list-swtp-image List FortiSwitch image.
```

Reset FortiSwitch loop guard data

```
execute switch-controller loop-guard-reset Reset loop-guard on switch-interface.  
    {switch} FortiSwitch device ID.  
    {port} FortiSwitch port.
```

Reset MAC learning limit violations in FortiSwitch

```
execute switch-controller mac-limit-violation reset all Reset all MAC learning limit violations in FortiSwitch.  
    {switch} FortiSwitch device ID.
```

Reset MAC learning limit violations on a FortiSwitch interface

```
execute switch-controller mac-limit-violation reset interface Reset MAC learning limit violations on a FortiSwitch interface.  
    {switch} FortiSwitch device ID.  
    {port} FortiSwitch ports.
```

Reset MAC learning limit violations on a FortiSwitch VLAN

```
execute switch-controller mac-limit-violation reset vlan Reset MAC learning limit violations on a FortiSwitch VLAN.  
    {switch} FortiSwitch device ID.  
    {vlan-id} FortiSwitch VLAN ID.
```

Reset a FortiSwitch's PoE interface

```
execute switch-controller poe-reset Reset PoE port on FortiSwitch.  
    {fortiswitch-id} FortiSwitch device ID.  
    {port} FortiSwitch port.
```

Upload a FortiSwitch image to a managed FortiSwitch

```
execute switch-controller push-swtp-image Upgrade FortiSwitch image to a managed FortiSwitch device.  
    {fortiswitch-id} FortiSwitch device ID.  
    {filename} FortiSwitch image filename.
```

Restart the FortiSwitch process

```
execute switch-controller restart-acd Restart switch-controller daemon.
```

Restart all managed FortiSwitches

```
execute switch-controller restart-swtp all Restart all FortiSwitch devices.
```

Restart a managed FortiSwitch using its serial number

```
execute switch-controller restart-swtp sn Restart FortiSwitch device identified by serial
number.
    {fortiswitch-id} FortiSwitch device ID.
```

Restart all managed FortiSwitches in a switch group

```
execute switch-controller restart-swtp switch-group Restart FortiSwitch devices belonging
to switch-group.
    {switch-group ID} Switch group ID.
```

Restart the switch controller process running on a managed FortiSwitch

```
execute switch-controller restart-swtpd Restart switch-controller daemon in FortiSwitch
device.
    {fortiswitch-id} FortiSwitch device ID.
```

Restart delay for all managed FortiSwitch devices

```
execute switch-controller restart-swtp-delayed all Restart delay all FortiSwitch devices.
```

Restart delay for those FortiSwitch devices identified by serial

```
execute switch-controller restart-swtp-delayed sn Restart delay FortiSwitch device iden-
tified by serial number.
    {fortiswitch-id} FortiSwitch device ID.
```

Restart delay for those FortiSwitch belonging to switch-group

```
execute switch-controller restart-swtp-delayed switch-group Restart delay FortiSwitch
devices belonging to switch-group.
    {switch-group ID} Switch group ID.
```

Revert a managed FortiSwitch to standalone mode

This command effectively turns off FortiLink mode and the FortiSwitch will no longer be managed by the FortiGate.

```
execute switch-controller set-standalone Set FortiSwitch to local/non-FortiLink mode.
    switch FortiSwitch device ID.
```

Upload a FortiSwitch firmware image to a managed FortiSwitch

```
execute switch-controller stage-swtp-image Stage FortiSwitch image to a managed FortiSwitch device.
    {fortiswitch-id} FortiSwitch device ID.
    {filename} FortiSwitch image filename.
```

Upload a FortiSwitch firmware image to all managed FortiSwitch devices

```
execute switch-controller stage-tiered-swtp-image all Stage image to all FortiSwitch devices.
    {filename} FortiSwitch image filename.
```

Upload a FortiSwitch firmware image to those FortiSwitch devices identified by serial

```
execute switch-controller stage-tiered-swtp-image sn Stage image to FortiSwitch device identified by serial number.
    {fortiswitch-id} FortiSwitch device ID.
    {filename} FortiSwitch image filename.
```

Upload a FortiSwitch firmware image to those FortiSwitch devices belonging to switch-group

```
execute switch-controller stage-tiered-swtp-image switch-group Stage image to FortiSwitch devices belonging to switch-group.
    {switch-group ID} Switch group ID.
    {filename} FortiSwitch image filename.
```

Trigger full configuration synchronization for FortiSwitch

```
execute switch-controller trigger-config-sync Triggers full configuration synchronization for FortiSwitch.
    {switch} FortiSwitch device ID.
```

Upload a FortiSwitch firmware image to a managed FortiSwitch from an FTP server

```
execute switch-controller upload-swtp-image ftp Upload a FortiSwitch image from FTP server.
    {string} FortiSwitch image name on the FTP server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port] FTP server IP, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}||{user} FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd} FTP password.
```

Upload a FortiSwitch firmware image to a managed FortiSwitch from a TFTP server

```
execute switch-controller upload-swtp-image tftp Upload a FortiSwitch image from TFTP server.
    {string} FortiSwitch image name on the TFTP server.
    {ip} IP address of TFTP server.
```

Request virtual port from pool

```
execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool request Request virtual port from pool.  
    {switch} FortiSwitch device ID.  
    {port} FortiSwitch port.
```

Return virtual port to pool

```
execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool return Return virtual port to pool.  
    {switch} FortiSwitch device ID.  
    {port} FortiSwitch port.
```

View details of virtual ports in pool

```
execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool show Show details of virtual ports in pool.
```

View details of virtual ports by pool name

```
execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool show-by-pool Show details of virtual ports in  
pool by pool name.  
    {pool} Pool Name.
```

View details of virtual ports by property name

```
execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool show-by-property Show details of virtual ports  
in pool by property name.  
    {property} Property Name.
```

View details of virtual ports by tag name

```
execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool show-by-tag Show details of virtual ports in  
pool by tag name.  
    {tag} Tag Name.
```

sync-session

Use this command to force a session synchronization.

Syntax

```
execute sync-session Sync all sessions from peers.
```


system custom-language import

Use this command to import a custom language file from a TFTP server.

Syntax

```
execute system custom-language import Import a custom language from the TFTP server.  
    {string}    The language name.  
    {string}    The file name on the TFTP server.  
    {ip}       IP address of the TFTP server.
```

system fortisandbox test-connectivity

Use this command to query FortiSandbox connection status.

Syntax

```
execute system fortisandbox test-connectivity Query FortiSandbox connection status.
```

tac report

Use this command to create a debug report to send to Fortinet Support. Normally you would only use this command if requested to by Fortinet Support.

Syntax

```
execute tac report Debug report.
```

telnet

Use telnet client. You can use this tool to test network connectivity.

Syntax

```
execute telnet Simple telnet client.  
    {dest}    IP address.
```

```
{port}    port
```

Type `exit` to close the telnet session.

time

Get or set the system time.

Syntax

```
execute time System time.  
           {hh:mm:ss}    hh: 0-23, mm: 0-59, ss: 0-59.
```

If you do not specify a time, the command returns the current system time.

You are allowed to shorten numbers to only one digit when setting the time. For example both 01:01:01 and 1:1:1 are allowed.

Example

This example sets the system time to 15:31:03:

```
execute time 15:31:03
```

traceroute

Test the connection between the FortiGate unit and another network device, and display information about the network hops between the device and the FortiGate unit.

Syntax

```
execute traceroute Traceroute {IP|hostname}.  
           {dest}    IP address or hostname.
```

Example

This example shows how to test the connection with <http://docs.fortinet.com>. In this example the traceroute command times out after the first hop indicating a possible problem.

```
#execute traceoute docs.fortinet.com  
traceroute to docs.fortinet.com (65.39.139.196), 30 hops max, 38 byte packets  
1 172.20.120.2 (172.20.120.2) 0.324 ms 0.427 ms 0.360 ms  
2 * * *
```

If your FortiGate is not connected to a working DNS server, you will not be able to connect to remote host-named locations with traceroute.

tracert6

Test the connection between the FortiGate unit and another network device using IPv6 protocol, and display information about the network hops between the device and the FortiGate unit.

Syntax

```
execute tracert6 Traceroute for IPv6.
```

You can use the following options:

Variable	Description
-F	Set Don't Fragment bit.
-d	Enable debugging.
-n	Do not resolve numeric address to domain name.
-f <first_ttl>	Set the initial time-to-live used in the first outgoing probe packet.
-i <interface>	Select interface to use for tracert.
-m <max_ttl>	Set the max time-to-live (max number of hops) used in outgoing probe packets.
-s <src_addr>	Set the source IP address to use in outgoing probe packets.
-q <nprobes>	Set the number probes per hop.
-w <waittime>	Set the time in seconds to wait for response to a probe. Default is 5.
-z <sendwait>	Set the time in milliseconds to pause between probes.
host	Enter the IP address or FQDN to probe.
<paddatalen>	Set the packet size to use when probing.

update-av

Use this command to manually initiate the virus definitions and engines update. To update both virus and attack definitions, use the `execute update-now` command.

Syntax

```
execute update-av Update AV engine/definitions.
```

update-geo-ip

Use this command to obtain an update to the IP geography database from FortiGuard.

Syntax

```
execute update-geo-ip  Update IP Geography DB.
```

update-ips

Use this command to manually initiate the Intrusion Prevention System (IPS) attack definitions and engine update. To update both virus and attack definitions, use the `execute update-now` command.

Syntax

```
execute update-ips  Update IPS engine/definitions.
```

update-list

Use this command to download an updated FortiGuard server list.

Syntax

```
execute update-list  Download update server list.
```

update-now

Use this command to manually initiate both virus and attack definitions and engine updates. To initiate only virus or attack definitions, use the `execute update-av` or `execute update-ids` command respectively.

Syntax

```
execute update-now  Update now.
```

update-src-vis

Use this command to trigger an FDS update of the source visibility signature package.

Syntax

```
execute update-src-vis  Update src-vis object.
```

upd-vd-license

Use this command to enter a Virtual Domain (VDOM) license key.

If you have a FortiGate- unit that supports VDOM licenses, you can purchase a license key from Fortinet to increase the maximum number of VDOMs to 25, 50, 100 or 500. By default, FortiGate units support a maximum of 10 VDOMs.

Available on FortiGate models that can be licensed for more than 10 VDOMs.

The license key is a 32-character string supplied by Fortinet. Fortinet requires your unit serial number to generate the license key



Since the release of FortiOS 5.2, upgrading VDOM licenses no longer requires a system reboot.

Syntax

```
execute upd-vd-license  Update VDOM license.
                        {license key}  VDOM license key.
```

upload

Use this command to upload system configurations and firmware images to the flash disk from FTP, TFTP, or USB sources.

Syntax

To upload configuration files from an FTP server

```
execute upload config ftp  Load config file from FTP server.
                        {string}  Configure file name(path) on the remote server.
                        {comment}  comments
                        {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
                        {Enter}||{user}  FTP username may be needed.
                        {passwd}  FTP password.
                        {Enter}||{passwd}  Password may be needed to restore.
```

To upload configuration files from a TFTP server

```
execute upload config tftp Load config from TFTP server to local disk.
    {string}    File name on the TFTP server.
    {comment}   comments
    {ip}        IP address.
```

To upload configuration files from an external USB disk

```
execute upload config usb Load config from USB to local disk.
    {string}    File name on USB disk.
    {comment}   comments
```

To upload firmware image files from an FTP server

```
execute upload image ftp Load image from FTP server.
    {string}    Image file name(path) on the remote server.
    {comment}   comments
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}|{user}  FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd}        FTP password.
```

To upload firmware image files from a TFTP server

```
execute upload image tftp Load image from TFTP server to local disk.
    {string}    File name on the TFTP server.
    {comment}   comments
    {ip}        IP address.
```

To upload firmware image files from an external USB disk

```
execute upload image usb Load image from USB to local disk.
    {string}    File name on USB disk.
    {comment}   comments
```

To upload report image files from an FTP server

```
execute upload report-img ftp upload report image file from ftp server
    {string}    Image file name(path) on the remote server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP or FQDN, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}|{user}  FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd}        FTP password.
    {Enter}
```

To upload report image files from a TFTP server

```
execute upload report-img tftp upload report image file from tftp server
    {string}    File name on the TFTP server.
```

```
{ip}    IP address.  
{Enter}
```

usb-device

Use these commands to manage FortiExplorer devices.

Syntax

Disconnect FortiExplorer devices

```
execute usb-device disconnect  Disconnect a USB device.
```

List connected FortiExplorer devices

```
execute usb-device list  Display the lists of the USB device.
```

usb-disk

Use these commands to manage your USB disks.

Syntax

Delete a file from an external USB disk

```
execute usb-disk delete  Delete file from the USB disk.  
                        {filename}  File in the USB disk.
```

Safely eject an external USB disk

```
execute usb-disk eject  Eject the USB disk.
```

Format and erase all data from an external USB disk

```
execute usb-disk format  Format the USB disk.
```

List the files on an external USB disk

```
execute usb-disk list  Display the contents of the USB disk.
```

Rename a file on an external USB disk

```
execute usb-disk rename  Rename file in the USB disk.
                        {old}  Old file in the USB disk.
                        {new}  New file in the USB disk.
```

vpn certificate ca

Use this command to import a CA certificate from a TFTP or SCEP server to the FortiGate unit, or to export a CA certificate from the FortiGate unit to a TFTP server.

Before using this command you must obtain a CA certificate issued by a CA.

Digital certificates are used to ensure that both participants in a communications session are trustworthy, prior to an encrypted VPN tunnel being set up between the participants. The CA certificate is the certificate that the FortiGate unit uses to authenticate itself to other devices.

Syntax

Export a CA certificate to a TFTP server

```
execute vpn certificate ca export tftp  Export CA certificate to a TFTP server.
                        {string}  CA certificate name.
                        {string}  File name on the TFTP server.
                        {ip}  IP address of TFTP server.
```

Import a CA certificate from a SCEP server

```
execute vpn certificate ca import auto  Import CA certificate via SCEP.
                        {string}  URL of the CA server.
                        {string}  CA Identifier (optional).
                        {ip}  Source-IP for communications to the CA server (optional).
```

Import a CA certificate bundle from a TFTP server

```
execute vpn certificate ca import bundle  Import certificate bundle from a TFTP server.
                        {string}  File name on the TFTP server.
                        {ip}  IP address of TFTP server.
```

Import a CA certificate from a TFTP server

```
execute vpn certificate ca import tftp  Import CA certificate from a TFTP server.
                        {string}  File name on the TFTP server.
                        {ip}  IP address of TFTP server.
```


Examples

Use the following command to import the CA certificate named `trust_ca` to the FortiGate unit from a TFTP server with the address `192.168.21.54`.

```
execute vpn certificate ca import trust_ca 192.168.21.54
```

vpn certificate crl

Use this command to get a CRL via LDAP, HTTP, or SCEP protocol, depending on the auto-update configuration.

In order to use this command, the authentication servers must already be configured.

Digital certificates are used to ensure that both participants in a communications session are trustworthy, prior to an encrypted VPN tunnel being set up between the participants. The CA certificate is the certificate that the FortiGate unit uses to authenticate itself to other devices.

Syntax

```
execute vpn certificate crl import auto Update CRL.  
{string} CRL name.
```

vpn certificate local export

Use this command to export a local certificate from the FortiGate unit to a TFTP server.

Digital certificates are used to ensure that both participants in a communications session are trustworthy, prior to an encrypted VPN tunnel being set up between the participants. The local certificate is the certificate that the FortiGate unit uses to authenticate itself to other devices.

Syntax

```
execute vpn certificate local export tftp Export local certificate or certificate request  
to a TFTP server.  
{string} Local certificate name.  
{string} Certificate file type ('cer' | 'p12' | 'csr').  
{string} File name on the TFTP server.  
{ip} IP address of TFTP server.
```

Example

Use the following command to export the local certificate request generated in the above example from the FortiGate unit to a TFTP server. The example uses the file name `testcert` for the downloaded file and the TFTP server address `192.168.21.54`.

```
execute vpn certificate local export branch_cert testcert 192.168.21.54
```

vpn certificate local generate

Use this command to generate a local certificate.

Digital certificates are used to ensure that both participants in an IPSec communications session are trustworthy, prior to an encrypted VPN tunnel being set up between the participants. The local certificate is the certificate that the FortiGate unit uses to authenticate itself to other devices.

When you generate a certificate request, you create a private and public key pair for the local FortiGate unit. The public key accompanies the certificate request. The private key remains confidential.

When you receive the signed certificate from the CA, use the `vpn certificate local` command to install it on the FortiGate unit.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>execute vpn certificate local generate cmp <cert-name></code>	Generate a certificate request over Certificate Management Protocol version 2 (CMPv2).

Syntax

To generate a certificate request over CMPv2

```
execute vpn certificate local generate cmp  Generate a certificate request over CMPv2.
    {string}  Local certificate name.
    {number}  Key size: 1024, 1536, 2048, 4096.
    {string}  Server ('ADDRESS:PORT' for CMP server).
    {string}  Path (Path location inside CMP server)
    {string}  SrvCert (CMDB name of CMP server's certificate)
    {string}  AuthCert (CMDB name of client's current certificate)
    {string}  User (Username for doing the IR with a pre-shared
key)
    {string}  Password (Password for doing the IR with a
pre-shared key)
    {string}  Subject (optional, e.g. "CN=User-
er,O=Org,OU=Unit").
    {string}  Subject alternative name (optional,
e.g. "DNS:dns1.com,IP:192.168.1.99").
    {ip}     Source-IP for communications to the
CMP server (optional).
```

To generate the default CA certificate used by SSL Inspection

execute vpn certificate local generate default-ssl-ca Generate the default CA certificate used by SSL Inspection.

To generate the default untrusted CA certificate used by SSL Inspection

execute vpn certificate local generate default-ssl-ca-untrusted Generate the default untrusted CA certificate used by SSL Inspection.

To generate the default RSA, DSA, and ECDSA certificate used by SSL Inspection

execute vpn certificate local generate default-ssl-key-certs Generate the default RSA, DSA and ECDSA key certs for ssl resign.

To generate the default server key used by SSL Inspection

execute vpn certificate local generate default-ssl-serv-key Generate the default server key used by SSL Inspection.

To generate an elliptical curve certificate request

```
execute vpn certificate local generate ec Generate an elliptic curve certificate request.
    {string} Local certificate name.
        {string} Elliptic curve name: secp256r1, secp384r1 and secp521r1.
        {string} Subject (Host IP/Domain Name/E-Mail).
            {string} Country name (e.g. Canada) or country code (e.g. ca).
            {string} State.
            {string} City.
            {string} Org.
            {string} Unit(s); ',' as delimiter.
            {string} Email.
            {string} Subject alternative name (optional).
            {string} URL of the CA server for signing
via SCEP (optional).
                                {string} Challenge password for signing
ing via SCEP (optional).
                                {ip} Source-IP for communications
to the CA server (optional).
                                {string} CA identifier of the
CA server for signing via SCEP (optional).
                                {string} Password for
private-key (optional).
```

To generate an RSA certificate request

```
execute vpn certificate local generate rsa Generate a RSA certificate request.
    {string} Local certificate name.
    {number} Key size: 1024, 1536, 2048, 4096.
    {string} Subject (Host IP/Domain Name/E-Mail).
```

```

        {string} Country name (e.g. Canada) or country code (e.g. ca).
        {string} State.
        {string} City.
        {string} Org.
        {string} Unit(s); ',' as delimiter.
        {string} Email.
        {string} Subject alternative name (optional).
        {string} URL of the CA server for signing
via SCEP (optional).
        {string} Challenge password for sign-
ing via SCEP (optional).
        {ip} Source-IP for communications
to the CA server (optional).
        {string} CA identifier of the
CA server for signing via SCEP (optional).
        {string} Password for
private-key (optional).

```

Certificate name

Enter a name for the certificate. The name can contain numbers (0-9), uppercase and lowercase letters (A-Z, a-z), and the special characters - and _. Other special characters and spaces are not allowed.

Elliptic curve name

Enter the elliptic curve name: `secp256r1`, `secp384r1`, or `secp521r1`.

Key Length

Enter 1024, 1536 or 2048 for the size in bits of the encryption key.

Subject

Enter the FortiGate unit host IP address, its fully qualified domain name, or an email address to identify the FortiGate unit being certified.

An IP address or domain name is preferred. If this is impossible (such as with a dialup client), use an e-mail address.

If you specify a host IP or domain name, use the IP address or domain name associated with the interface on which IKE negotiations will take place (usually the external interface of the local FortiGate unit). If the IP address in the certificate does not match the IP address of this interface (or if the domain name in the certificate does not match a DNS query of the FortiGate unit's IP), then some implementations of IKE may reject the connection. Enforcement of this rule varies for different IPSec products.

Optional Information

Enter optional information as required to further identify the certificate. You must enter the optional variables in order that they are listed below. To enter any optional variable you must enter all of the variables that come before it in the list. While entering optional variables, you can type ? for help on the next required variable.

Optional information variables

Variable	Description
Country code	Enter the two-character country code. Enter <code>execute vpn certificates</code>

Variable	Description
	<code>local generate <name_str> country</code> followed by a ? for a list of country codes. The country code is case sensitive. Enter <code>null</code> if you do not want to specify a country.
State name	Enter the name of the state or province where the FortiGate unit is located.
City name	Enter the name of the city, or town, where the person or organization certifying the FortiGate unit resides.
Organization name	Enter the name of the organization that is requesting the certificate for the FortiGate unit.
Organization unit name	Enter a name that identifies the department or unit within the organization that is requesting the certificate for the FortiGate unit.
Email address	Enter a contact e-mail address for the FortiGate unit.
CA server URL	Enter the URL of the CA (SCEP) certificate server that allows auto-signing of the request.
Challenge password	Enter the challenge password for the SCEP certificate server.

Example

Use the following command to generate a local certificate request with the name `branch_cert`, the domain name `www.example.com` and a key size of 1536.

```
execute vpn certificate local generate branch_cert 1536 www.example.com
```

vpn certificate local import

Use this command to import a local certificate to the FortiGate unit from a TFTP server.

Digital certificates are used to ensure that both participants in a communications session are trustworthy, prior to an encrypted VPN tunnel being set up between the participants. The local certificate is the certificate that the FortiGate unit uses to authenticate itself to other devices.

Syntax

```
execute vpn certificate local import tftp Import the signed certificate from a TFTP server.
    {string}    File name on the TFTP server.
    {ip}       IP address of TFTP server.
    {string}    Certificate file type ('cer'|'p12').
    {Enter}|{passwd} Password for PKCS12 file.
```

Example

Use the following command to import the signed local certificate named `branch_cert` to the FortiGate unit from a TFTP server with the address 192.168.21.54.

```
execute vpn certificate local import branch_cert 192.168.21.54
```

vpn certificate remote

Use this command to import a remote certificate from a TFTP server, or export a remote certificate from the FortiGate unit to a TFTP server. The remote certificates are public certificates without a private key. They are used as OCSP (Online Certificate Status Protocol) server certificates.

Syntax

```
execute vpn certificate remote export tftp  Export REMOTE certificate to a TFTP server.
      {string}  REMOTE certificate name.
      {string}  File name on the TFTP server.
      {ip}     IP address of TFTP server.
```

```
execute vpn certificate remote import tftp  Import REMOTE certificate from a TFTP server.
      {string}  File name on the TFTP server.
      {ip}     IP address of TFTP server.
```

vpn ipsec tunnel down

Use this command to shut down an IPsec VPN tunnel.

Syntax

```
execute vpn ipsec tunnel down  Shut down the specified IPsec tunnel.
      {phase2}  Phase2 name.
      {phase1}  Phase1 name.
      {serial}  Phase2 serial number.
```

vpn ipsec tunnel up

Use this command to activate an IPsec VPN tunnel.

Syntax

```
execute vpn ipsec tunnel up  Activate the specified IPsec tunnel.
      {phase2}  Phase2 name.
      {phase1}  Phase1 name.
      {serial}  Phase2 serial number.
```

vpn sslvpn del-all

Use this command to delete all SSL VPN connections in this VDOM.

Syntax

```
execute vpn sslvpn del-all Delete all connections under current VDOM.  
{tunnel} Press <Enter> to delete all or type "tunnel" to delete tunnel only.
```

vpn sslvpn del-tunnel

Use this command to delete an SSL tunnel connection.

Syntax

```
execute vpn sslvpn del-tunnel Delete tunnel connection.  
{index} Tunnel index.
```

vpn sslvpn del-web

Use this command to delete an active SSL VPN web connection.

Syntax

```
execute vpn sslvpn del-web Delete web connection.  
{index} Web index.
```

vpn sslvpn list

Use this command to list current SSL VPN tunnel connections.

Syntax

```
execute vpn sslvpn list List tunnel connections.  
{web|tunnel} Web or tunnel.
```

webcache

Use this command to delete objects matching a certain criteria in webcache, and to query pattern deletion status.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
<code>execute webcache delete regular-expression</code>	New execute commands.
<code>execute webcache delete simple-string</code>	
<code>execute webcache delete status</code>	
<code>execute webcache delete wildcard</code>	

Syntax

Delete objects matching a regular expression

```
execute webcache delete regular-expression  Delete objects matching a regular expression in
webcache.
      {pattern}    Pattern.
```

Delete objects matching a simple string expression

```
execute webcache delete simple-string  Delete objects matching a simple string in webcache.
      {pattern}    Pattern.
```

Query pattern deletion status

```
execute webcache delete status  Query pattern deletion status.
```

Delete objects matching a wildcard

```
execute webcache delete wildcard  Delete objects matching a wildcard in webcache.
      {pattern}    Pattern.
```

webfilter quota-reset

Use this command to reset webfilter user quotas.

Syntax

```
execute webfilter quota-reset  Reset the WF quota for a given user.
    wf-profile    Web filter profile.
    endpoint      Authenticated user or IP address.
```

wireless-controller delete-wtp-image

Use this command to delete all firmware images for WLAN Termination Points (WTPs), also known as physical access points.

Syntax

```
execute wireless-controller delete-wtp-image  Delete WTP images.
```

wireless-controller hs20-icon

Use these commands to backup, delete, list and upload HotSpot 2.0 icons.

Syntax

Backup Hot Spot 2.0 icon to an FTP server

```
execute wireless-controller hs20-icon backup-icon ftp  Backup a hotspot icon to FTP server.
    {string}      Icon file name on AC.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port]  FTP server IP, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}|{user}  FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd}       FTP password.
```

Backup Hot Spot 2.0 icon to a TFTP server

```
execute wireless-controller hs20-icon backup-icon tftp  Backup a hotspot icon to TFTP
server.
    {string}      Icon file name on AC.
    {ip}          IP address of TFTP server.
```

Delete Hot Spot 2.0 icons

```
execute wireless-controller hs20-icon delete-hs-icon  Delete hotspot icons.
```

List Hot Spot 2.0 icons

```
execute wireless-controller hs20-icon list-hs-icon List hotspot icons.
```

Upload a Hot Spot 2.0 icon from an FTP server

```
execute wireless-controller hs20-icon upload-icon ftp Upload a hotspot icon from FTP
server.
    {string} Icon file name on the remote server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port] FTP server IP, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}|{user} FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd} FTP password.
```

Upload a Hot Spot 2.0 icon from a TFTP server

```
execute wireless-controller hs20-icon upload-icon tftp Upload a hotspot icon from TFTP
server.
    {string} Icon file name on the TFTP server.
    {ip} IP address of TFTP server.
```

wireless-controller led-blink

Use this command to set the blink status LED or power LED of managed FortiAP.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
execute wireless-controller led-blink	New execute command

Syntax

```
execute wireless-controller led-blink Blink status LED or power LED of managed FortiAP.
    wtp-id WTP ID.
    mode [on | off]
    {duration} Blink duration in seconds (0 = unlimited).
```

Additional information

The following section is for those options that require additional explanation.



At present, this feature is supported by the following FortiAP models:

- FortiAP-112D, 221C, 223C, 224D, 320C, and 321C using FortiOS 5.6.2 and above.
- All FortiAP-S/W2 using FortiOS 5.6.2 and above.

Select a FortiAP from the FortiCloud WebUI and set its LED status to blink in durations of seconds, in order to help identify specific FortiAP devices in an environment consisting of many APs.

For example, in order to set the device to blink every ten seconds, enter the following:

```
execute wireless-controller led-blink FP112D3X12345678 on 10
```

wireless-controller restart-stad

Use this command to restart the wireless controller sta (station) process.

Syntax

```
execute wireless-controller restart-stad Restart sta daemon.
```

wireless-controller reset-wtp

Use this command to reset a physical access point (WTP).

If the FortiGate unit has a more recent version of the FortiAP firmware, the FortiAP unit will download and install it. Use the command [execute wireless-controller upload-wtp-image](#) to upload FortiAP firmware to the FortiGate unit.

Syntax

```
execute wireless-controller reset-wtp Restart managed WTP.  
{all}|{SN}|{wtp-group} WTP serial number or WTP group.
```

Use the `all` option to reset all APs.

wireless-controller restart-acd

Use this command to restart the wireless-controller daemon.

Syntax

```
execute wireless-controller restart-acd Restart wireless controller daemon.
```

wireless-controller restart-stad

Use this command to restart the wireless-controller sta daemon.

Syntax

```
execute wireless-controller restart-stad Restart sta daemon.
```

wireless-controller restart-wtprd

Use this command to restart the wireless access point daemon.

Syntax

```
execute wireless-controller restart-wtprd Restart local WTP daemon.
```

wireless-controller upload-wtp-image

Use this command to upload a FortiWiFi firmware image to the FortiGate unit. Wireless APs controlled by this wireless controller can download the image as needed. Use the [execute wireless-controller reset-wtp](#) command to trigger FortiAP units to update their firmware.

Syntax

FTP:

```
execute wireless-controller upload-wtp-image ftp Upload a WTP image from FTP server.
    {string} WTP image file name on the remote server.
    {ftp server}[:ftp port] FTP server IP, can be attached with port.
    {Enter}||{user} FTP username may be needed.
    {passwd} FTP password.
```

TFTP:

```
execute wireless-controller upload-wtp-image tftp  Upload a WTP image from TFTP server.  
    {string}    File name on the TFTP server.  
    {ip}       IP address of TFTP server.
```

get

The get commands retrieve information about the operation and performance of your FortiGate unit.

application internet-service status

Use this command to display Internet service information.

Syntax

```
get application internet-service status [<app-id>]
```

All application IDs are listed if <app-id> is not specified.

Example output

```
FG-5KD3914800284 # get application internet-service status 1245324
id: 1245324 app-name: "Fortinet-FortiGuard"
```

application internet-service-summary

Use this command to display information about the Internet service database.

Syntax

```
get application internet-service-summary
```

Example output

```
FG-5KD3914800284 # get application internet-service-summary
Version: 00002.00679
Timestamp: 201512161002
Number of Entries: 1267
```

certificate

Display detailed information about local and CA certificates installed on the FortiGate. This is a global level command. At the VDOM level, use get vpn certificate.

Syntax

```
get certificate {local | ca} details [certificate_name]
```

extender modem-status

Use this command to display detailed FortiExtender modem status information.

Syntax

```
get extender modem-status <serno>
```

where <serno> is the FortiExtender serial number.

Example output

```
physical_port: Internal
manufacture: Sierra Wireless, Incorporated
product: AirCard 313U
model: AirCard 313U
revision: SWI9200X_03.05.10.02AP_R4684_CARMD-EN-10527_2012/02/25_11:58:38
imsi: 310410707582825
pin_status: READY
service: N/A
signal_strength: 73
RSSI: -68 dBm
connection_status: connected
Profile 1: broadband
Profile 2: broadband
Profile 13: wap.cingular
Profile 15: broadband
NAI: w.tp
Profile: 0 Disabled
home_addr: 127.219.10.128
primary_ha: 127.218.246.40
secondary_ha: 119.75.69.176
aaa_spi: 0
ha_spi: 4
esn_imei: 012615000227604
activation_status: Activated
roaming_status: N/A
usim_status: N/A
oma_dm_version: N/A
plmn: N/A
band: B17
signal_rsrq: N/A
signal_rsrp: N/A
lte_sinr: N/A
lte_rssi: N/A
lte_rs_throughput: N/A
lte_ts_throughput: N/A
```

```
lte_physical_cellid: N/A
modem_type:
drc_cdma_evdo: N/A
current_snr: N/A
wireless_operator:
operating_mode: N/A
wireless_signal: 73
usb_wan_mac: 16:78:f7:db:01:07
```

extender sys-info

Use this command to display detailed FortiExtender system information.

Syntax

```
get extender sys-info
```

firewall dnstranslation

Use this command to display the firewall DNS translation table.

Syntax

```
get firewall dnstranslation
```

firewall iprope appctrl

Use this command to list all application control signatures added to an application control list and display a summary of the application control configuration.

Syntax

```
get firewall iprope appctrl {list | status}
```

Example output

In this example, the FortiGate unit includes one application control list that blocks the FTP application.

```
get firewall iprope appctrl list
app-list=app_list_1/2000 other-action=Pass
app-id=15896 list-id=2000 action=Block
```



```
get firewall iprope appctrl status
appctrl table 3 list 1 app 1 shaper 0
```

firewall iprope list

Use this command to list all of the FortiGate unit iprope firewall policies. Optionally include a group number in hexadecimal format to display a single policy. Policies are listed in FortiOS format.

Syntax

```
get firewall iprope list [<group_number_hex>]
```

Example output

```
get firewall iprope list 0010000c

policy flag (80000000): pol_stats
flag2 (20): ep_block shapers: / per_ip=
imflag: sockport: 1011 action: redirect index: 0
schedule() group=0010000c av=00000000 au=00000000 host=0 split=00000000
chk_client_info=0x0 app_list=0 misc=0 grp_info=0 seq=0 hash=0
npu_sensor_id=0
tunnel=
zone(1): 0 ->zone(1): 0
source(0):
dest(0):
source wildcard(0):
destination wildcard(0):
service(1):
[6:0x8:1011/(0,65535)->(80,80)]
nat(0):
mms: 0 0
```

firewall proute, proute6

Use these commands to list policy routes.

Syntax

For IPv4 policy routes:

```
get firewall proute
```

For IPv6 policy routes:

```
get firewall proute6
```

Example output

```
get firewall proute
list route policy info(vf=root):
iff=5 src=1.1.1.0/255.255.255.0 tos=0x00 tos_mask=0x00 dst=0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 protocol=80
    port=1:65535
oif=3 gwy=1.2.3.4
```

firewall service custom

Use this command to view the list of custom services. If you do not specify a <service_name> the command lists all of the pre-defined services.

Syntax

```
get firewall service custom
```

This lists the services.

To view details about all services

```
config firewall service custom
show full-configuration
```

To view details about a specific service

This example lists the configuration for the ALL_TCP service:

```
config firewall service custom
edit ALL_TCP
show full-configuration
```

Example output

This is a partial output.

```
get firewall service custom
== [ ALL ]
name: ALL
== [ ALL_TCP ]
name: ALL_TCP
== [ ALL_UDP ]
name: ALL_UDP
== [ ALL_ICMP ]
name: ALL_ICMP
== [ ALL_ICMP6 ]
name: ALL_ICMP6
== [ GRE ]
name: GRE
```

```
== [ AH ]
name: AH
== [ ESP ]
name: ESP
== [ AOL ]
name: AOL
== [ BGP ]
name: BGP
== [ DHCP ]
name: DHCP
== [ DNS ]
name: DNS
== [ FINGER ]
name: FINGER
```

firewall shaper

Use these command to retrieve information about traffic shapers.

Syntax

To get information about per-ip traffic shapers

```
get firewall shaper per-ip
```

To get information about shared traffic shapers

```
get firewall shaper traffic-shaper
```

grep

In many cases the `get` and `show` (and `diagnose`) commands may produce a large amount of output. If you are looking for specific information in a large `get` or `show` command output you can use the `grep` command to filter the output to only display what you are looking for. The `grep` command is based on the standard UNIX `grep`, used for searching text output based on regular expressions.

Information about how to use `grep` and regular expressions is available from the Internet. For example, see <http://www.opengroup.org/onlinepubs/009695399/utilities/grep.html>.

Syntax

```
{get | show | diagnose} | grep <regular_expression>
```

Example output

Use the following command to display the MAC address of the FortiGate unit internal interface:

```
get hardware nic internal | grep Current_HWaddr
Current_HWaddr 00:09:0f:cb:c2:75
```

Use the following command to display all TCP sessions in the session list and include the session list line number in the output

```
get system session list | grep -n tcp
19:tcp 1110 10.31.101.10:1862 172.20.120.122:30670 69.111.193.57:1469 -
27:tcp 3599 10.31.101.10:2061 - 10.31.101.100:22 -
38:tcp 3594 10.31.101.10:4780 172.20.120.122:49700 172.20.120.100:445 -
43:tcp 3582 10.31.101.10:4398 172.20.120.122:49574 24.200.188.171:48726 -
```

Use the following command to display all lines in HTTP replacement message commands that contain URL (upper or lower case):

```
show system replacemsg http | grep -i url
set buffer "<HTML><BODY>The page you requested has been blocked because it contains a
  banned word. URL = %%PROTOCOL%%URL%%</BODY></HTML>"
config system replacemsg http "url-block"
set buffer "<HTML><BODY>The URL you requested has been blocked. URL =
  %%URL%%</BODY></HTML>"
config system replacemsg http "urlfilter-err"
.
.
.
```

gui console status

Display information about the CLI console.

Syntax

```
get gui console status
```

Example

The output looks like this:

```
Preferences:
  User: admin
    Colour scheme (RGB): text=FFFFFF, background=000000
    Font: style=monospace, size=10pt
    History buffer=50 lines, external input=disabled
```

hardware cpu

Use this command to display detailed information about all of the CPUs in your FortiGate unit.

Syntax

```
get hardware cpu
```

Example output

```
get hardware npu legacy list
No npu ports are found
```

```
620_ha_1 # get hardware cpu
processor : 0
vendor_id : GenuineIntel
cpu family : 6
model : 15
model name : Intel(R) Core(TM)2 Duo CPU E4300 @ 1.80GHz
stepping : 13
cpu MHz : 1795.545
cache size : 64 KB
fdiv_bug : no
hlt_bug : no
f00f_bug : no
coma_bug : no
fpu : yes
fpu_exception : yes
cpuid level : 10
wp : yes
flags : fpu vme de pse tsc msr pae mce cx8 apic sep mtrr pge mca cmov pat pse36 clflush dts
        acpi mmx fxsr sse sse2 ss ht tm pbe lm pni monitor ds_cpl tm2 est
bogomips : 3578.26

processor : 1
vendor_id : GenuineIntel
cpu family : 6
model : 15
model name : Intel(R) Core(TM)2 Duo CPU E4300 @ 1.80GHz
stepping : 13
cpu MHz : 1795.545
cache size : 64 KB
fdiv_bug : no
hlt_bug : no
f00f_bug : no
coma_bug : no
fpu : yes
fpu_exception : yes
cpuid level : 10
wp : yes
flags : fpu vme de pse tsc msr pae mce cx8 apic sep mtrr pge mca cmov pat pse36 clflush dts
        acpi mmx fxsr sse sse2 ss ht tm pbe lm pni monitor ds_cpl tm2 est
bogomips : 3578.26
```

hardware memory

Use this command to display information about FortiGate unit memory use including the total, used, and free memory.

Syntax

```
get hardware memory
```

Example output

```
get hardware memory
total: used: free: shared: buffers: cached: shm:
Mem: 3703943168 348913664 3355029504 0 192512 139943936 137314304
Swap: 0 0 0
MemTotal: 3617132 kB
MemFree: 3276396 kB
MemShared: 0 kB
Buffers: 188 kB
Cached: 136664 kB
SwapCached: 0 kB
Active: 22172 kB
Inactive: 114740 kB
HighTotal: 1703936 kB
HighFree: 1443712 kB
LowTotal: 1913196 kB
LowFree: 1832684 kB
SwapTotal: 0 kB
SwapFree: 0 kB
```

hardware nic

Use this command to display hardware and status information about each FortiGate interface. The hardware information includes details such as the driver name and version and chip revision. Status information includes transmitted and received packets, and different types of errors.

Syntax

```
get hardware nic <interface_name>
```

Variable	Description
<interface_name>	A FortiGate interface name such as port1, wan1, internal, etc.

Example output

```
get hardware nic wan1
Description :FortiASIC NP6LITE Adapter
```

```

Driver Name :FortiASIC NP6LITE Driver
Board :100E
lif id :2
lif oid :66
netdev oid :66
Current_HWaddr 90:6c:ac:c5:25:40
Permanent_HWaddr 90:6c:ac:c5:25:40
===== Link Status =====
Admin :up
netdev status :down
autonego_setting:1
link_setting :1
speed_setting :10
duplex_setting :0
Speed :0
Duplex :Half
link_status :Down
===== Counters =====
Rx Pkts :0
Rx Bytes :0
Tx Pkts :0
Tx Bytes :0
Host Rx Pkts :0
Host Rx Bytes :0
Host Tx Pkts :0
Host Tx Bytes :0
Host Tx dropped :0

```

hardware npu

Use this command to display information about the network processor unit (NPU) hardware installed in a FortiGate unit. The NPUs can be built-in or on an installed AMC module.

Syntax

```

get hardware npu legacy {list | session <device_name_str> | setting <device_name_str>}
get hardware npu np1 {list | status}
get hardware npu np2 {list | performance <device_id_int> | status <device_id_int>}
get hardware npu np4 {list | status <device_id_int>}
get hardware npu np6 {dce | ipsec-stats | port-list | session-stats <device_id_int> |
    sse-stats <device_id_int> | synproxy-stats}
get hardware npu sp {list | status}

```

Example output

```

get hardware npu np1 list
ID Interface
0 port9 port10

get hardware npu np1 status
ISCP1A 10ee:0702
RX SW Done 0 MTP 0x00000000

```

```

desc_size = 0x00001000 count = 0x00000100
nxt_to_u = 0x00000000 nxt_to_f = 0x00000000
Total Number of Interfaces: 2
Number of Interface In-Use: 2
Interface[0] Tx done: 0
desc_size = 0x00004000 count = 0x00000100
nxt_to_u = 0x00000000 nxt_to_f = 0x00000000
TX timeout = 0x00000000 BD_empty = 0x00000000
HRx Packets= 0x00000000 HTXBytes = 0x00000000 HRXBytes = 0x00000000
Interface[1] Tx done: 0
desc_size = 0x00004000 count = 0x00000100
nxt_to_u = 0x00000000 nxt_to_f = 0x00000000
TX timeout = 0x00000000 BD_empty = 0x00000000
HRx Packets= 0x00000000 HTXBytes = 0x00000000 HRXBytes = 0x00000000
NAT Information:
head = 0x00000001 tail = 00000001
ISCP1A Performance [Top]:
Nr_int : 0x00000000 INTwoInd : 0x00000000 RXwoDone : 0x00000000
PKTwoEnd : 0x00000000 PKTCSerr : 0x00000000
PKTidErr : 0x00000000 PHY0Int : 0x00000000 PHY1INT : 0x00000000
CSUMOFF : 0x00000000 BADCSUM : 0x00000000 MSGINT : 0x00000000
IPSEC : 0x00000000 IPSVLAN : 0x00000000 SESMISS : 0x00000000
TOTUP : 0x00000000 RSVD MEMU : 0x00000010
MSG Performance:
QLEN: 0x00001000(QW) HEAD: 0x00000000
Performance:
TOTMSG: 0x00000000 BADMSG: 0x00000000 TOUTMSG: 0x00000000 QUERY: 0x00000000
NULLTK: 0x00000000
NAT Performance: BYPASS (Enable) BLOCK (Disable)
IRQ : 00000001 QFTL : 00000000 DELF : 00000000 FFTL : 00000000
OVTH : 00000001 QRYF : 00000000 INSF : 00000000 INVC : 00000000
ALLO : 00000000 FREE : 00000000 ALLOF : 00000000 BPENTR: 00000000 BKENTR: 00000000
PBPENTR: 00000000 PBKENTR: 00000000 NOOP : 00000000 THROT : 00000000(0x002625a0)
SWITOT : 00000000 SWDTOT : 00000000 ITDB : 00000000 OTDB : 00000000
SPISES : 00000000 FLUSH : 00000000
APS (Disabled) information:
MODE: BOTH UDPth 255 ICMPth 255 APSFLAGS: 0x00000000
IPSEC Offload Status: 0x58077dcb

```

```
get hardware npu np2 list
```

```
ID PORTS
```

```
-- -----
```

```
0 amc-sw1/1
```

```
0 amc-sw1/2
```

```
0 amc-sw1/3
```

```
0 amc-sw1/4
```

```
ID PORTS
```

```
-- -----
```

```
1 amc-dw2/1
```

```
ID PORTS
```

```
-- -----
```

```
2 amc-dw2/2
```

```
get hardware npu np2 status 0
```

```
NP2 Status
```



```
ISCP2 f7750000 (Neighbor 00000000) 1a29:0703 256MB Base f8aad000 DBG 0x00000000
RX SW Done 0 MTP 0x0
desc_alloc = f7216000
desc_size = 0x2000 count = 0x100
nxt_to_u = 0x0 nxt_to_f = 0x0
Total Interfaces: 4 Total Ports: 4
Number of Interface In-Use: 4
Interface f7750100 netdev 81b1e000 0 Name amc-sw1-1
PHY: Attached
LB Mode 0 LB IDX 0/1 LB Ports: f7750694, 00000000, 00000000, 00000000
Port f7750694 Id 0 Status Down ictr 4
desc = 8128c000
desc_size = 0x00001000 count = 0x00000100
nxt_to_u = 0x00000000 nxt_to_f = 0x00000000
Intf f7750100
Interface f7750264 netdev 81b2cc00 1 Name amc-sw1-2
PHY: Attached
LB Mode 0 LB IDX 0/1 LB Ports: f7750748, 00000000, 00000000, 00000000
Port f7750748 Id 1 Status Down ictr 0
desc = 81287000
desc_size = 0x00001000 count = 0x00000100
nxt_to_u = 0x00000000 nxt_to_f = 0x00000000
Intf f7750264
Interface f77503c8 netdev 81b2c800 2 Name amc-sw1-3
PHY: Attached
LB Mode 0 LB IDX 0/1 LB Ports: f77507fc, 00000000, 00000000, 00000000
Port f77507fc Id 2 Status Down ictr 0
desc = 81286000
desc_size = 0x00001000 count = 0x00000100
nxt_to_u = 0x00000000 nxt_to_f = 0x00000000
Intf f77503c8
Interface f775052c netdev 81b2c400 3 Name amc-sw1-4
PHY: Attached
LB Mode 0 LB IDX 0/1 LB Ports: f77508b0, 00000000, 00000000, 00000000
Port f77508b0 Id 3 Status Down ictr 0
desc = 81281000
desc_size = 0x00001000 count = 0x00000100
nxt_to_u = 0x00000000 nxt_to_f = 0x00000000
Intf f775052c
NAT Information:
cmdq_qw = 0x2000 cmdq = 82160000
head = 0x1 tail = 0x1
APS (Enabled) information:
Session Install when TMM TSE OOE: Disable
Session Install when TMM TAE OOE: Disable
IPS anomaly check policy: Follow config
MSG Base = 82150000 QL = 0x1000 H = 0x0
```

hardware status

Report information about the FortiGate unit hardware including FortiASIC version, CPU type, amount of memory, flash drive size, hard disk size (if present), USB flash size (if present), network card chipset, and WiFi chipset (FortiWifi models). This information can be useful for troubleshooting, providing information about your FortiGate unit to Fortinet Support, or confirming the features that your FortiGate model supports.

Syntax

```
get hardware status
```

Example output

```
Model name: Fortigate-620B
ASIC version: CP6
ASIC SRAM: 64M
CPU: Intel(R) Core(TM)2 Duo CPU E4300 @ 1.80GHz
RAM: 2020 MB
Compact Flash: 493 MB /dev/sda
Hard disk: 76618 MB /dev/sdb
USB Flash: not available
Network Card chipset: Broadcom 570x Tigon3 Ethernet Adapter (rev.0x5784100)
```

ips decoder status

Displays all the port settings of all the IPS decoders.

Syntax

```
get ips decoder status
```

Example output

```
# get ips decoder status
decoder-name: "back_orifice"

decoder-name: "dns_decoder"
port_list: 53

decoder-name: "ftp_decoder"
port_list: 21

decoder-name: "http_decoder"

decoder-name: "im_decoder"
```

```
decoder-name: "imap_decoder"  
port_list: 143
```

Ports are shown only for decoders with configurable port settings.

ips rule status

Displays current configuration information about IPS rules.

Syntax

```
get ips rule status
```

Example output

```
# get ips rule status  
rule-name: "IP.Land"  
rule-id: 12588  
rev: 2.464  
action: pass  
status: disable  
log: enable  
log-packet: disable  
severity: 3.high  
service: All  
location: server, client  
os: All  
application: All  
  
rule-name: "IP.Loose.Src.Record.Route.Option"  
rule-id: 12805  
rev: 2.464  
action: pass  
status: disable  
log: enable  
log-packet: disable  
severity: 2.medium  
service: All  
location: server, client  
os: All  
application: All
```

ips session

Displays current IPS session status.

Syntax

```
get ips session
```

Example output

```
get ips session

SYSTEM:
memory capacity 279969792
memory used 5861008
recent pps\bps 0\0K
session in-use 0
TCP: in-use\active\total 0\0\0
UDP: in-use\active\total 0\0\0
ICMP: in-use\active\total 0\0\0
```

ips view-map

Use this command to view the policies examined by IPS. This is mainly used for debugging. If there is no ips view map, it means IPS is not used or enabled.

Syntax

```
get ips view-map <id>
```

Example output

```
id : 1
id-policy-id : 0
policy-id : 2
vdom-id : 0
which : firewall
```

Variable	Description
id	IPS policy ID
id-policy-id	Identity-based policy ID (0 means none)
policy-id	Policy ID
vdom-id	VDOM, identified by ID number
which	Type of policy id: firewall, firewall6, sniffer, sniffer6, interface, interface6

ipsec tunnel

List the current IPSec VPN tunnels and their status.

Syntax

To view details of all IPsec tunnels:

```
get ipsec tunnel details
```

To list IPsec tunnels by name:

```
get ipsec tunnel name
```

To view a summary of IPsec tunnel information:

```
get ipsec tunnel summary
```

mgmt-data status

Use this command to display information additional to that provided by `get system status` or `get hardware status`.

Syntax

```
get mgmt-data status
```

Sample output

```
FG100D3G12801361 # get mgmt-data status

Model name: FortiGate-100D
CPU: 4
RAM: 1977 MB
is_ssd_available: 0
is_logdisk_mounted: 1
is_support_log_on_boot_device: 1
is_rev_support_wanopt: 1
```

pbx branch-office

Use this command to list the configured branch offices.

Syntax

```
get pbx branch-office
```

Example output

```
== [ Branch 15 ]  
name: Branch 15  
== [ Branch 12 ]  
name: Branch 12
```

pbx dialplan

Use this command to list the configured dial plans.

Syntax

```
get pbx dialplan
```

Example output

```
== [ company-default ]  
name: company-default  
== [ inbound ]  
name: inbound
```

pbx did

Use this command to list the configured direct inward dial (DID) numbers.

Syntax

```
get pbx did
```

Example output

```
== [ Operator ]  
name: Operator  
== [ Emergency ]  
name: Emergency
```

pbx extension

Use this command to list the configured extensions.

Syntax

```
get pbx extension
```

Example output

```
== [ 6555 ]  
extension: 6555  
== [ 6777 ]  
extension: 6777  
== [ 6111 ]  
extension: 6111
```

pbx ftgd-voice-pkg

Use this command to display the current FortiGate Voice service package status.

Syntax

```
get pbx ftgd-voice-pkg status
```

Example output

```
Status: Activated  
Total 1 Packages:  
Package Type: B, Credit Left: 50.00, Credit Used: 0.00,  
Expiration Date: 2011-01-01 12:00:00  
  
Total 1 Dids:  
12345678901  
Total 1 Efaxes:  
12345678902  
Total 0 Tollfrees:
```

pbx global

Use this command to display the current global pbx settings.

Syntax

```
get pbx global
```

Example output

```
block-blacklist : enable
country-area : USA
country-code : 1
efax-check-interval : 5
extension-pattern : 6XXX
fax-admin-email : faxad@example.com
ftgd-voice-server : service.fortivoice.com
local-area-code : 408
max-voicemail : 60
outgoing-prefix : 9
ring-timeout : 20
rtp-hold-timeout : 0
rtp-timeout : 60
voicemail-extension : *97
```

pbx ringgrp

Use this command to display the currently configured ring groups.

Syntax

```
get pbx ringgrp
```

Example output

```
== [ 6001 ]
name: 6001
== [ 6002 ]
name: 6002
```

pbx sip-trunk

Use this command to display the currently configured SIP trunks.

Syntax

```
get pbx sip-trunk
```

Example output

```
== [ __FtgdVoice_1 ]
name: __FtgdVoice_1
```


pbx voice-menu

Use this command to display the current voice menu and recorder extension configuration.

Syntax

```
get pbx voice-menu
```

Example output

```
comment : general
password : *
press-0:
ring-group : 6001
type : ring-group
press-1:
type : voicemail
press-2:
type : directory
press-3:
type : none
press-4:
type : none
press-5:
type : none
press-6:
type : none
press-7:
type : none
press-8:
type : none
press-9:
type : none
recorder-exten : *30
```

router info bfd neighbor

Use this command to list state information about the neighbors in the bi-directional forwarding table.

Syntax

```
get router info bfd neighbour
```

router info bgp

Use this command to display information about the BGP configuration.

Syntax

```
get router info bgp <keyword>
```

<keyword>	Description
cidr-only	Show all BGP routes having non-natural network masks.
community	Show all BGP routes having their COMMUNITY attribute set.
community-info	Show general information about the configured BGP communities, including the routes in each community and their associated network addresses.
community-list	Show all routes belonging to configured BGP community lists.
dampening {dampened-paths flap-statistics parameters}	Display information about dampening: Type <code>dampened-paths</code> to show all paths that have been suppressed due to flapping. Type <code>flap-statistics</code> to show flap statistics related to BGP routes. Type <code>parameters</code> to show the current dampening settings.
filter-list	Show all routes matching configured AS-path lists.
inconsistent-as	Show all routes associated with inconsistent autonomous systems of origin.
memory	Show the BGP memory table.
neighbors [<address_ipv4> <address_ipv4> advertised-routes <address_ipv4> received-prefix-filter <address_ipv4> received-routes <address_ipv4> routes]	Show information about connections to TCP and BGP neighbors.
network [<address_ipv4mask>]	Show general information about the configured BGP networks, including their network addresses and associated prefixes.
network-longer-prefixes <address_ipv4mask>	Show general information about the BGP route that you specify (for example, 12.0.0.0/14) and any specific routes associated with the prefix.
paths	Show general information about BGP AS paths, including their associated network addresses.
prefix-list <name>	Show all routes matching configured prefix list <name>.
quote-regexp <regexp_str>	Enter the regular expression to compare to the AS_PATH attribute of BGP routes (for example, ^730\$) and enable the use of output modifiers (for example, include, exclude, and begin) to search the results.

<keyword>	Description
regexp <regexp_str>	Enter the regular expression to compare to the AS_PATH attribute of BGP routes (for example, ^730\$).
route-map	Show all routes matching configured route maps.
scan	Show information about next-hop route scanning, including the scan interval setting.
summary	Show information about BGP neighbor status.

Example output

```

get router info bgp memory
Memory type Alloc count Alloc bytes
=====
BGP structure : 2 1408
BGP VR structure : 2 104
BGP global structure : 1 56
BGP peer : 2 3440
BGP as list master : 1 24
Community list handler : 1 32
BGP Damp Reuse List Array : 2 4096
BGP table : 62 248
-----
Temporary memory : 4223 96095
Hash : 7 140
Hash index : 7 28672
Hash bucket : 11 132
Thread master : 1 564
Thread : 4 144
Link list : 32 636
Link list node : 24 288
Show : 1 396
Show page : 1 4108
Show server : 1 36
Prefix IPv4 : 10 80
Route table : 4 32
Route node : 63 2772
Vector : 2180 26160
Vector index : 2180 18284
Host config : 1 2
Message of The Day : 1 100
IMI Client : 1 708
VTY master : 1 20
VTY if : 11 2640
VTY connected : 5 140
Message handler : 2 120
NSM Client Handler : 1 12428
NSM Client : 1 1268
Host : 1 64
Log information : 2 72
Context : 1 232
-----
bgp proto specfic allocations : 9408 B

```

```
bgp generic allocations : 196333 B
bgp total allocations : 205741 B
```

router info isis

Use this command to display information about the FortiGate ISIS.

Syntax

```
get router info isis interface
get router info isis neighbor
get router info isis is-neighbor
get router info isis database
get router info isis route
get router info isis topology
```

router info kernel

Use this command to display the FortiGate kernel routing table. The kernel routing table displays information about all of the routes in the kernel.

Syntax

```
get router info kernel [<routing_type_int>]
```

router info multicast

Use this command to display information about a Protocol Independent Multicasting (PIM) configuration. Multicast routing is supported in the root virtual domain only.

Syntax

```
get router info multicast <keywords>
```

<keywords>

igmp

Description

Show Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) membership information according to one of these qualifiers:

Type groups [{<interface-name> | <group-address>}] to show IGMP information for the multicast group(s) associated with the specified interface or multicast group address.

<keywords>	Description								
pim dense-mode	<p>Type <code>groups-detail</code> [{<interface-name> <group-address>}] to show detailed IGMP information for the multicast group(s) associated with the specified interface or multicast group address.</p> <p>Type <code>interface</code> [<interface-name>] to show IGMP information for all multicast groups associated with the specified interface.</p> <p>Show information related to dense mode operation according to one of these qualifiers:</p> <p>Type <code>interface</code> to show information about PIM-enabled interfaces.</p> <p>Type <code>interface-detail</code> to show detailed information about PIM-enabled interfaces.</p> <p>Type <code>neighbor</code> to show the current status of PIM neighbors.</p> <p>Type <code>neighbor-detail</code> to show detailed information about PIM neighbors.</p> <p>Type <code>next-hop</code> to show information about next-hop PIM routers.</p> <p>Type <code>table</code> [<group-address>] [<source-address>] to show the multicast routing table entries associated with the specified multicast group address and/or multicast source address.</p> <p>Show information related to sparse mode operation according to one of these qualifiers:</p> <p>Type <code>bsr-info</code> to show Boot Strap Router (BSR) information.</p> <p>Type <code>interface</code> to show information about PIM-enabled interfaces.</p> <p>Type <code>interface-detail</code> to show detailed information about PIM-enabled interfaces.</p>								
pim sparse-mode	<p>Type <code>neighbor</code> to show the current status of PIM neighbors.</p> <p>Type <code>neighbor-detail</code> to show detailed information about PIM neighbors.</p> <p>Type <code>next-hop</code> to show information about next-hop PIM routers.</p> <p>Type <code>rp-mapping</code> to show Rendezvous Point (RP) information.</p> <p>Type <code>table</code> [<group-address>] [<source-address>] to show the multicast routing table entries associated with the specified multicast group address and/or multicast source address.</p>								
<table> <tr> <td>table [<group-address>]</td><td>Show the multicast routing table entries associated with the specified multicast</td></tr> <tr> <td>[<source-address>]</td><td>group address and/or multicast source address.</td></tr> <tr> <td>table-count [<group-address>]</td><td>Show statistics related to the specified multicast group address and/or multicast</td></tr> <tr> <td>[<source-address>]</td><td>source address.</td></tr> </table>	table [<group-address>]	Show the multicast routing table entries associated with the specified multicast	[<source-address>]	group address and/or multicast source address.	table-count [<group-address>]	Show statistics related to the specified multicast group address and/or multicast	[<source-address>]	source address.	
table [<group-address>]	Show the multicast routing table entries associated with the specified multicast								
[<source-address>]	group address and/or multicast source address.								
table-count [<group-address>]	Show statistics related to the specified multicast group address and/or multicast								
[<source-address>]	source address.								

router info ospf

Use this command to display information about the FortiGate OSPF configuration and/or the Link-State Advertisements (LSAs) that the FortiGate unit obtains and generates. An LSA identifies the interfaces of all OSPF-enabled routers in an area, and provides information that enables OSPF-enabled routers to select the shortest path to a destination.

Syntax

```
get router info ospf <keyword>
```

<keyword>	Description
border-routers	Show OSPF routing table entries that have an Area Border Router (ABR) or Autonomous System Boundary Router (ASBR) as a destination. Show information from the OSPF routing database according to the of these qualifiers.
database <qualifier>	Some qualifiers require a <code>target</code> that can be one of the following values: Type <code>adv_router <address_ipv4></code> to limit the information to LSAs originating from the router at the specified IP address. Type <code>self-originate <address_ipv4></code> to limit the information to LSAs originating from the FortiGate unit. Type <code>adv-router <address_ipv4></code> to show ospf Advertising Router link states for the router at the given IP address. Type <code>asbr-summary</code> to show information about ASBR summary LSAs. Type <code>brief</code> to show the number and type of LSAs associated with each OSPF area. Type <code>external <target></code> to show information about external LSAs. Type <code>max-age</code> to show all LSAs in the MaxAge list. Type <code>network <target></code> to show information about network LSAs. Type <code>nssa-external <target></code> to show information about not-so-stubby external LSAs. Type <code>opaque-area <address_ipv4></code> to show information about opaque Type 10 (area-local) LSAs (see RFC 2370). Type <code>opaque-as <address_ipv4></code> to show information about opaque Type 11 LSAs (see RFC 2370), which are flooded throughout the AS. Type <code>opaque-link <address_ipv4></code> to show information about opaque Type 9 (link-local) LSAs (see RFC 2370). Type <code>router <target></code> to show information about router LSAs. Type <code>self-originate</code> to show self-originated LSAs. Type <code>summary <target></code> to show information about summary LSAs.
interface [<interface_name>]	Show the status of one or all FortiGate interfaces and whether OSPF is enabled on those interfaces. Show general information about OSPF neighbors, excluding down-status neighbors: Type <code>all</code> to show information about all neighbors, including down-status neighbors. Type <code><neighbor_id></code> to show detailed information about the specified neighbor only.
neighbor [all <neighbor_id> detail detail all interface <address_ipv4>]	Type <code>detail</code> to show detailed information about all neighbors, excluding down-status neighbors. Type <code>detail all</code> to show detailed information about all neighbors, including down-status neighbors. Type <code>interface <address_ipv4></code> to show neighbor information based on the FortiGate interface IP address that was used to establish the neighbor's relationship.
route	Show the OSPF routing table.
status	Show general information about the OSPF routing processes.

<keyword>	Description
virtual-links	Show information about OSPF virtual links.

router info protocols

Use this command to show the current states of active routing protocols. Inactive protocols are not displayed.

Syntax

```
get router info protocols
```

```
Routing Protocol is "rip"
Sending updates every 30 seconds with +/-50%
Timeout after 180 seconds, garbage collect after 120 seconds
Outgoing update filter list for all interface is not set
Incoming update filter list for all interface is not set
Default redistribution metric is 1
Redistributing:
Default version control: send version 2, receive version 2
Interface Send Recv Key-chain
Routing for Networks:
Routing Information Sources:
Gateway Distance Last Update Bad Packets Bad Routes
Distance: (default is 120)

Routing Protocol is "ospf 0"
Invalid after 0 seconds, hold down 0, flushed after 0
Outgoing update filter list for all interfaces is
Incoming update filter list for all interfaces is
Redistributing:
Routing for Networks:
Routing Information Sources: Gateway Distance Last Update
Distance: (default is 110) Address Mask Distance List

Routing Protocol is "bgp 5"
IGP synchronization is disabled
Automatic route summarization is disabled
Default local-preference applied to incoming route is 100
Redistributing:
Neighbor(s):
Address AddressFamily FiltIn FiltOut DistIn DistOut RouteMapIn RouteMapOut Weight
192.168.20.10 unicast
```

router info rip

Use this command to display information about the RIP configuration.

Syntax

```
get router info rip <keyword>
```

<keyword>	Description
database	Show the entries in the RIP routing database.
interface [<interface_name>]	Show the status of the specified FortiGate unit interface <interface_name> and whether RIP is enabled. If interface is used alone it lists all the FortiGate unit interfaces and whether RIP is enabled on each.

router info routing-table

Use this command to display the routes in the routing table.

Syntax

```
get router info routing-table <keyword>
```

<keyword>	Description
all	Show all entries in the routing table.
bgp	Show the BGP routes in the routing table.
connected	Show the connected routes in the routing table.
database	Show the routing information database.
details [<address_ipv4mask>]	Show detailed information about a route in the routing table, including the next-hop routers, metrics, outgoing interfaces, and protocol-specific information.
ospf	Show the OSPF routes in the routing table.
rip	Show the RIP routes in the routing table.
static	Show the static routes in the routing table.

router info vrrp

Use this command to display information about the VRRP configuration.

Syntax

```
get router info vrrp
```

Example output

```
Interface: port1, primary IP address: 9.1.1.2
VRID: 1
  vrip: 9.1.1.254, priority: 100, state: BACKUP
  adv_interval: 1, preempt: 1, start_time: 3
  vrdest: 0.0.0.0
```


router info6 bgp

Use this command to display information about the BGP IPv6 configuration.

Syntax

```
get router info6 bgp <keyword>
```

<keyword>	Description
community	Show all BGP routes having their COMMUNITY attribute set.
community-list	Show all routes belonging to configured BGP community lists.
	Display information about dampening:
dampening {dampened-paths flap-statistics parameters}	Type <code>dampened-paths</code> to show all paths that have been suppressed due to flapping.
	Type <code>flap-statistics</code> to show flap statistics related to BGP routes.
	Type <code>parameters</code> to show the current dampening settings.
filter-list	Show all routes matching configured AS-path lists.
inconsistent-as	Show all routes associated with inconsistent autonomous systems of origin.
neighbors [<address_ipv6mask>	Show information about connections to TCP and BGP neighbors.
network [<address_ipv6mask>]	Show general information about the configured BGP networks, including their network addresses and associated prefixes.
network-longer-prefixes <address_ ipv6mask>	Show general information about the BGP route that you specify (for example, 12.0.0.0/14) and any specific routes associated with the prefix.
paths	Show general information about BGP AS paths, including their associated network addresses.
prefix-list <name>	Show all routes matching configured prefix list <name>.
quote-regexp <regexp_str>	Enter the regular expression to compare to the AS_PATH attribute of BGP routes (for example, ^730\$) and enable the use of output modifiers (for example, include, exclude, and begin) to search the results.
regexp <regexp_str>	Enter the regular expression to compare to the AS_PATH attribute of BGP routes (for example, ^730\$).
route-map	Show all routes matching configured route maps.
summary	Show information about BGP neighbor status.

router info6 interface

Use this command to display information about IPv6 interfaces.

Syntax

```
get router info6 interface <interface_name>
```

Example output

The command returns the status of the interface and the assigned IPv6 address.

```
dmz2 [administratively down/down]  
2001:db8:85a3:8d3:1319:8a2e:370:7348  
fe80::209:fff:fe04:4cfd
```

router info6 kernel

Use this command to display the FortiGate kernel routing table. The kernel routing table displays information about all of the routes in the kernel.

Syntax

```
get router info6 kernel
```

router info6 ospf

Use this command to display information about the OSPF IPv6 configuration.

Syntax

```
get router info6 ospf
```

router info6 protocols

Use this command to display information about the configuration of all IPv6 dynamic routing protocols.

Syntax

```
get router info6 protocols
```

router info6 rip

Use this command to display information about the RIPng configuration.

Syntax

```
get router info6 rip
```

router info6 routing-table

Use this command to display the routes in the IPv6 routing table.

Syntax

```
get router info6 routing-table <item>
```

where <item> is one of the following:

Variable	Description
<ipv6_ip>	Destination IPv6 address or prefix.
bgp	Show BGP routing table entries.
connected	Show connected routing table entries.
database	Show routing information base.
ospf	Show OSPF routing table entries.
rip	Show RIP routing table entries.
static	Show static routing table entries.

switch-controller poe

Retrieve information about PoE ports.

Syntax

```
get switch-controller poe <vdom-name> <fortiswitch-id>
```

system admin list

View a list of all the current administration sessions.

Syntax

```
get system admin list
```

Example output

```
# get system admin list
username local device remote started
admin sshv2 port1:172.20.120.148:22 172.20.120.16:4167 2006-08-09 12:24:20
admin https port1:172.20.120.148:443 172.20.120.161:56365 2006-08-09 12:24:20
admin https port1:172.20.120.148:443 172.20.120.16:4214 2006-08-09 12:25:29
```

Variable	Description
username	Name of the admin account for this session
local	The protocol this session used to connect to the FortiGate unit.
device	The interface, IP address, and port used by this session to connect to the FortiGate unit.
remote	The IP address and port used by the originating computer to connect to the FortiGate unit.
started	The time the current session started.

system admin status

View the status of the currently logged in admin and their session.

Syntax

```
get system admin status
```

Example

The output looks like this:

```
# get system admin status
username: admin
login local: sshv2
login device: port1:172.20.120.148:22
login remote: 172.20.120.16:4167
login vdom: root
login started: 2006-08-09 12:24:20
current time: 2006-08-09 12:32:12
```

Variable	Description
username	Name of the admin account currently logged in.
login local	The protocol used to start the current session.
login device	The login information from the FortiGate unit including interface, IP address, and port number.
login remote	The computer the user is logging in from including the IP address and port number.
login vdom	The virtual domain the admin is current logged into.
login started	The time the current session started.
current time	The current time of day on the FortiGate unit

system arp

View the ARP table entries on the FortiGate unit.

This command is not available in multiple VDOM mode.

Syntax

```
get system arp
```

Example output

```
# get system arp
Address Age(min) Hardware Addr Interface
172.20.120.16 0 00:0d:87:5c:ab:65 internal
172.20.120.138 0 00:08:9b:09:bb:01 internal
```

system auto-update

Use this command to display information about the status FortiGuard updates on the FortiGate unit.

Syntax

```
get system auto-update status
get system auto-update versions
```

Example output

```
get system auto-update status
FDN availability: available at Thu Apr 1 08:22:58 2010

Push update: disable
Scheduled update: enable
    Update daily: 8:22
Virus definitions update: enable
IPS definitions update: enable
Server override: disable
Push address override: disable
Web proxy tunneling: disable
```

system central-management

View information about the Central Management System configuration.

Syntax

```
get system central-management
```

Example

The output looks like this:

```
FG600B3908600705 # get system central-management
status : enable
type : fortimanager
auto-backup : disable
schedule-config-restore: enable
schedule-script-restore: enable
allow-push-configuration: enable
allow-pushd-firmware: enable
allow-remote-firmware-upgrade: enable
allow-monitor : enable
fmg : 172.20.120.161
vdom : root
authorized-manager-only: enable
serial-number : "FMG-3K2404400063"
```

system checksum

View the checksums for global, root, and all configurations. These checksums are used by HA to compare the configurations of each cluster unit.

Syntax

```
get system checksum status
```

Example output

```
# get system checksum status
global: 7a 87 3c 14 93 bc 98 92 b0 58 16 f2 eb bf a4 15
root: bb a4 80 07 42 33 c2 ff f1 b5 6e fe e4 bb 45 fb
all: 1c 28 f1 06 fa 2e bc 1f ed bd 6b 21 f9 4b 12 88
```

system cmdb status

View information about cmdbsvr on the FortiGate unit. FortiManager uses some of this information.

Syntax

```
get system cmdb status
```

Example output

```
# get system cmdb status
version: 1
owner id: 18
update index: 6070
config checksum: 12879299049430971535
last request pid: 68
last request type: 29
last request: 78
```

Variable	Description
version	Version of the cmdb software.
owner id	Process ID of the cmdbsvr daemon.
update index	The updated index shows how many changes have been made in cmdb.
config checksum	The config file version used by FortiManager.
last request pid	The last process to access the cmdb.
last request type	Type of the last attempted access of cmdb.
last request	The number of the last attempted access of cmdb.

system fortianalyzer-connectivity

Display connection and remote disk usage information about a connected FortiAnalyzer unit.

Syntax

```
get fortianalyzer-connectivity status
```

Example output

```
# get system fortianalyzer-connectivity status
Status: connected
Disk Usage: 0%
```

system fortiguard-log-service status

Command returns information about the status of the FortiGuard Log & Analysis Service including license and disk information.

Syntax

```
get system fortiguard-log-service status
```

Example output

```
# get system fortiguard-log-service status
FortiGuard Log & Analysis Service
Expire on: 20071231
Total disk quota: 1111 MB
Max daily volume: 111 MB
Current disk quota usage: n/a
```

system fortiguard-service status

COMMAND REPLACED. Command returns information about the status of the FortiGuard service including the name, version late update, method used for the last update and when the update expires. This information is shown for the AV Engine, virus definitions, attack definitions, and the IPS attack engine.

Syntax

```
get system fortiguard-service status
```

Example output

NAME	VERSION	LAST	UPDATE	METHOD	EXPIRE
AV Engine	2.002	2006-01-26	19:45:00	manual	2006-06-12 08:00:00
Virus Definitions	6.513	2006-06-02	22:01:00	manual	2006-06-12 08:00:00
Attack Definitions	2.299	2006-06-09	19:19:00	manual	2006-06-12 08:00:00
IPS Attack Engine	1.015	2006-05-09	23:29:00	manual	2006-06-12 08:00:00

system ha-nonsync-csum

FortiManager uses this command to obtain a system checksum.

Syntax

```
get system ha-nonsync-csum
```

system ha status

Use this command to display information about an HA cluster. The command displays general HA configuration settings. The command also displays information about how the cluster unit that you have logged into is operating in the cluster.

Usually you would log into the primary unit CLI using SSH or telnet. In this case the `get system ha status` command displays information about the primary unit first, and also displays the HA state of the primary unit (the primary

unit operates in the work state). However, if you log into the primary unit and then use the `execute ha manage` command to log into a subordinate unit, (or if you use a console connection to log into a subordinate unit) the `get system status` command displays information about this subordinate unit first, and also displays the HA state of this subordinate unit. The state of a subordinate unit is work for an active-active cluster and standby for an active-passive cluster.

For a virtual cluster configuration, the `get system ha status` command displays information about how the cluster unit that you have logged into is operating in virtual cluster 1 and virtual cluster 2. For example, if you connect to the cluster unit that is the primary unit for virtual cluster 1 and the subordinate unit for virtual cluster 2, the output of the `get system ha status` command shows virtual cluster 1 in the work state and virtual cluster 2 in the standby state. The `get system ha status` command also displays additional information about virtual cluster 1 and virtual cluster 2.

Syntax

```
get system ha status
```

The command display includes the following fields. For more information see the examples that follow.

Variable	Description
Model	The FortiGate model number.
Mode	The HA mode of the cluster: a-a or a-p.
Group	The group ID of the cluster.
Debug	The debug status of the cluster.
ses_pickup	The status of session pickup: enable or disable.
load_balance	The status of the <code>load-balance-all</code> field: enable or disable. Displayed for active-active clusters only.
schedule	The active-active load balancing schedule. Displayed for active-active clusters only.
Master Slave	<p><code>Master</code> displays the device priority, host name, serial number, and actual cluster index of the primary unit.</p> <p><code>Slave</code> displays the device priority, host name, serial number, and actual cluster index of the subordinate (or backup) unit or units.</p> <p>The list of cluster units changes depending on how you log into the CLI. Usually you would use SSH or telnet to log into the primary unit CLI. In this case the primary unit would be at the top the list followed by the other cluster units.</p> <p>If you use <code>execute ha manage</code> or a console connection to log into a subordinate unit CLI, and then enter <code>get system ha status</code> the subordinate unit that you have logged into appears at the top of the list of cluster units.</p>
number of vcluster	The number of virtual clusters. If virtual domains are not enabled, the cluster has one virtual cluster. If virtual domains are enabled the cluster has two virtual clusters.
vcluster 1	The HA state (hello, work, or standby) and HA heartbeat IP address of the cluster unit that you have logged into in virtual cluster 1. If virtual domains are not enabled, <code>vcluster 1</code> displays information for the cluster. If virtual domains are enabled, <code>vcluster 1</code> displays information for virtual cluster 1.

Variable	Description
	<p>The HA heartbeat IP address is 10.0.0.1 if you are logged into a primary unit of virtual cluster 1 and 10.0.0.2 if you are logged into a subordinate unit of virtual cluster 1.</p> <p><code>vcluster 1</code> also lists the primary unit and subordinate units in virtual cluster 1. The list includes the operating cluster index and serial number of each cluster unit in virtual cluster 1. The cluster unit that you have logged into is at the top of the list.</p> <p>If virtual domains are not enabled and you connect to the primary unit CLI, the HA state of the cluster unit in virtual cluster 1 is <code>work</code>. The display lists the cluster units starting with the primary unit.</p> <p>If virtual domains are not enabled and you connect to a subordinate unit CLI, the HA state of the cluster unit in virtual cluster 1 is <code>standby</code>. The display lists the cluster units starting with the subordinate unit that you have logged into.</p> <p>If virtual domains are enabled and you connect to the virtual cluster 1 primary unit CLI, the HA state of the cluster unit in virtual cluster 1 is <code>work</code>. The display lists the cluster units starting with the virtual cluster 1 primary unit.</p> <p>If virtual domains are enabled and you connect to the virtual cluster 1 subordinate unit CLI, the HA state of the cluster unit in virtual cluster 1 is <code>standby</code>. The display lists the cluster units starting with the subordinate unit that you are logged into.</p> <p>In a cluster consisting of two cluster units operating without virtual domains enabled all clustering actually takes place in virtual cluster 1. HA is designed to work this way to support virtual clustering. If this cluster was operating with virtual domains enabled, adding virtual cluster 2 is similar to adding a new copy of virtual cluster 1. Virtual cluster 2 is visible in the <code>get system ha status</code> command output when you add virtual domains to virtual cluster 2.</p>
<code>vcluster 2</code>	<p><code>vcluster 2</code> only appears if virtual domains are enabled. <code>vcluster 2</code> displays the HA state (<code>hello</code>, <code>work</code>, or <code>standby</code>) and HA heartbeat IP address of the cluster unit that you have logged into in virtual cluster 2. The HA heartbeat IP address is 10.0.0.2 if you are logged into the primary unit of virtual cluster 2 and 10.0.0.1 if you are logged into a subordinate unit of virtual cluster 2.</p> <p><code>vcluster 2</code> also lists the primary unit and subordinate units in virtual cluster 2. The list includes the cluster index and serial number of each cluster unit in virtual cluster 2. The cluster unit that you have logged into is at the top of the list.</p> <p>If you connect to the virtual cluster 2 primary unit CLI, the HA state of the cluster unit in virtual cluster 2 is <code>work</code>. The display lists the cluster units starting with the virtual cluster 2 primary unit.</p> <p>If you connect to the virtual cluster 2 subordinate unit CLI, the HA state of the cluster unit in virtual cluster 2 is <code>standby</code>. The display lists the cluster units starting with the subordinate unit that you are logged into.</p>

system info admin status

Use this command to display administrators that are logged into the FortiGate unit.

Syntax

```
get system info admin status
```

Example

This shows sample output.

```
Index User name Login type From
0 admin CLI ssh(172.20.120.16)
1 admin WEB 172.20.120.16
```

	Variable	Description
Index		The order the administrators logged in.
User name		The name of the user account logged in.
Login type		Which interface was used to log in.
From		The IP address this user logged in from.

Related topics

[system info admin ssh on page 1475](#)

system info admin ssh

Use this command to display information about the SSH configuration on the FortiGate unit such as:

the SSH port number

the interfaces with SSH enabled

the hostkey DSA fingerprint

the hostkey RSA fingerprint

Syntax

```
get system info admin ssh
```

Example output

```
# get system info admin ssh
SSH v2 is enabled on port 22
SSH is enabled on the following 1 interfaces:
internal
SSH hostkey DSA fingerprint = cd:e1:87:70:bb:f0:9c:7d:e3:7b:73:f7:44:23:a5:99
SSH hostkey RSA fingerprint = c9:5b:49:1d:7c:ba:be:f3:9d:39:33:4d:48:9d:b8:49
```

system interface physical

Use this command to list information about the unit's physical network interfaces.

Syntax

```
get system interface physical
```

The output looks like this:

```
# get system interface physical
== [onboard]
==[dmz1]
mode: static
ip: 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
status: down
speed: n/a
==[dmz2]
mode: static
ip: 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
status: down
speed: n/a
==[internal]
mode: static
ip: 172.20.120.146 255.255.255.0
status: up
speed: 100
==[wan1]
mode: pppoe
ip: 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
status: down
speed: n/a
==[wan2]
mode: static
ip: 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
status: down
speed: n/a
==[modem]
mode: static
ip: 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
status: down
speed: n/a
```

system ip-conflict status

List interface names and IP addresses in conflict.

Syntax

```
get system ip-conflict status
```

system mgmt-csum

FortiManager uses this command to obtain checksum information from FortiGate units.

Syntax

```
get system mgmt-csum {global | vdom | all}
```

where

`global` retrieves global object checksums

`vdom` retrieves VDOM object checksums

`all` retrieves all object checksums.

system performance firewall

Use this command to display packet distribution and traffic statistics information for the FortiGate firewall.

Syntax

```
get system performance firewall packet-distribution
get system performance firewall statistics
```

Variable	Description
packet-distribution	Display a list of packet size ranges and the number of packets of each size accepted by the firewall since the system restarted. You can use this information to learn about the packet size distribution on your network. Note: these counts do not include packets offloaded to the NPU.
statistics	Display a list of traffic types (browsing, email, DNS etc) and the number of packets and number of payload bytes accepted by the firewall for each type since the FortiGate unit was restarted.

Example output

```
get system performance firewall packet-distribution
getting packet distribution statistics...
0 bytes - 63 bytes: 655283 packets
64 bytes - 127 bytes: 1678278 packets
128 bytes - 255 bytes: 58823 packets
256 bytes - 383 bytes: 70432 packets
384 bytes - 511 bytes: 1610 packets
512 bytes - 767 bytes: 3238 packets
768 bytes - 1023 bytes: 7293 packets
1024 bytes - 1279 bytes: 18865 packets
1280 bytes - 1500 bytes: 58193 packets
> 1500 bytes: 0 packets
```

```
get system performance firewall statistics
getting traffic statistics...
Browsing: 623738 packets, 484357448 bytes
DNS: 5129187383836672 packets, 182703613804544 bytes
E-Mail: 23053606 packets, 2 bytes
FTP: 0 packets, 0 bytes
Gaming: 0 packets, 0 bytes
IM: 0 packets, 0 bytes
Newsgroups: 0 packets, 0 bytes
P2P: 0 packets, 0 bytes
Streaming: 0 packets, 0 bytes
TFTP: 654722117362778112 packets, 674223966126080 bytes
VoIP: 16834455 packets, 10 bytes
Generic TCP: 266287972352 packets, 8521215115264 bytes
Generic UDP: 0 packets, 0 bytes
Generic ICMP: 0 packets, 0 bytes
Generic IP: 0 packets, 0 bytes
```

system performance status

Use this command to display FortiGate CPU usage, memory usage, network usage, sessions, virus, IPS attacks, and system up time.

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
Memory: ... freeable	<p>A new memory paramater (freeable) has been added, to highlight the amount of cache that can be freed.</p> <p>The addition of freeable to used memory can help to distinguish extreme levels of memory usage, and how it can be alleviated.</p>

Syntax

```
get system performance status
```

Variable	Description
CPU states	The percentages of CPU cycles used by user, system, nice and idle categories of processes. These categories are:

Variable	Description
	<p><code>user</code> -CPU usage of normal user-space processes</p> <p><code>system</code> -CPU usage of kernel</p> <p><code>nice</code> - CPU usage of user-space processes having other-than-normal running priority</p> <p><code>idle</code> - Idle CPU cycles</p> <p>Adding <code>user</code>, <code>system</code>, and <code>nice</code> produces the total CPU usage as seen on the CPU widget on the web-based system status dashboard.</p>
Memory states	The percentage of memory used.
Average network usage	The average amount of network traffic in kbps in the last 1, 10 and 30 minutes.
Average sessions	The average number of sessions connected to the FortiGate unit over the last 1, 10 and 30 minutes.
Virus caught	The number of viruses the FortiGate unit has caught in the last 1 minute.
IPS attacks blocked	The number of IPS attacks that have been blocked in the last 1 minute.
Uptime	How long since the FortiGate unit has been restarted.

Example output

```
get system performance status
CPU states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU0 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU1 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU2 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU3 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
Memory: 1911664k total, 1033776k used (54.1%), 774816k free (40.5%), 103072k freeable (5.4%)
Average network usage: 26 / 1 kbps in 1 minute, 25 / 0 kbps in 10 minutes, 26 / 0 kbps in 30
minutes
Average sessions: 28 sessions in 1 minute, 26 sessions in 10 minutes, 26 sessions in 30
minutes
Average session setup rate: 0 sessions per second in last 1 minute, 0 sessions per second in
last 10 minutes, 0 sessions per second in last 30 minutes
Average NPU sessions: 0 sessions in last 1 minute, 0 sessions in last 10 minutes, 0 sessions
in last 30 minutes
Average nTurbo sessions: 0 sessions in last 1 minute, 0 sessions in last 10 minutes, 0 ses-
sions in last 30 minutes
Virus caught: 0 total in 1 minute
IPS attacks blocked: 0 total in 1 minute
Uptime: 4 days, 18 hours, 27 minutes
```

system performance top

Use this command to display the list of processes running on the FortiGate unit (similar to the Linux `top` command).

You can use the following commands when `get system performance top` is running:

- Press Q or Ctrl+C to quit.
- Press P to sort the processes by the amount of CPU that the processes are using.
- Press M to sort the processes by the amount of memory that the processes are using.

Syntax

```
get system performance top [<delay_int>] <max_lines_int>]]
```

Variable	Description
<delay_int>	The delay, in seconds, between updating the process list. The default is 5 seconds.
<max_lines_int>	The maximum number of processes displayed in the output. The default is 20 lines.

system session list

Command returns a list of all the sessions active on the FortiGate unit. or the current virtual domain if virtual domain mode is enabled.

Syntax

```
get system session list
```

Example output

PROTO	EXPIRE	SOURCE	SOURCE-NAT	DESTINATION	DESTINATION-NAT
tcp	0	127.0.0.1:1083 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	0	127.0.0.1:1085 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	10	127.0.0.1:1087 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	20	127.0.0.1:1089 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	30	127.0.0.1:1091 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	40	127.0.0.1:1093 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	60	127.0.0.1:1097 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	70	127.0.0.1:1099 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	80	127.0.0.1:1101 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	90	127.0.0.1:1103 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	100	127.0.0.1:1105 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	110	127.0.0.1:1107 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	103	172.20.120.16:3548 -	172.20.120.133:22 -		
tcp	3600	172.20.120.16:3550 -	172.20.120.133:22 -		
udp	175	127.0.0.1:1026 -	127.0.0.1:53 -		
tcp	5	127.0.0.1:1084 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	5	127.0.0.1:1086 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	15	127.0.0.1:1088 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	25	127.0.0.1:1090 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	45	127.0.0.1:1094 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	59	127.0.0.1:1098 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	69	127.0.0.1:1100 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	79	127.0.0.1:1102 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	99	127.0.0.1:1106 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		
tcp	109	127.0.0.1:1108 -	127.0.0.1:514 -		


```
tcp 119 127.0.0.1:1110 - 127.0.0.1:514 -
```

Variable	Description
PROTO	The transfer protocol of the session.
EXPIRE	How long before this session will terminate.
SOURCE	The source IP address and port number.
SOURCE-NAT	The source of the NAT. '-' indicates there is no NAT.
DESTINATION	The destination IP address and port number.
DESTINATION-NAT	The destination of the NAT. '-' indicates there is no NAT.

system session status

Use this command to display the number of active sessions on the FortiGate unit, or if virtual domain mode is enabled it returns the number of active sessions on the current VDOM. In both situations it will say 'the current VDOM'.

Syntax

```
get system session status
```

Example output

```
The total number of sessions for the current VDOM: 3100
```

system session-helper-info list

Use this command to list the FortiGate session helpers and the protocol and port number configured for each one.

Syntax

```
get system session-helper-info list
```

Example output

```
list builtin help module:
mgcp
dcerpc
rsh
pmap
dns-tcp
dns-udp
rtsp
```

```
pptp
sip
mms
tns
h245
h323
ras
tftp
ftp
list session help:
help=pmap, protocol=17 port=111
help=rtsp, protocol=6 port=8554
help=rtsp, protocol=6 port=554
help=pptp, protocol=6 port=1723
help=rtsp, protocol=6 port=7070
help=sip, protocol=17 port=5060
help=pmap, protocol=6 port=111
help=rsh, protocol=6 port=512
help=dns-udp, protocol=17 port=53
help=tftp, protocol=17 port=69
help=tns, protocol=6 port=1521
help=mgcp, protocol=17 port=2727
help=dcerpc, protocol=17 port=135
help=rsh, protocol=6 port=514
help=ras, protocol=17 port=1719
help=ftp, protocol=6 port=21
help=mgcp, protocol=17 port=2427
help=dcerpc, protocol=6 port=135
help=mms, protocol=6 port=1863
help=h323, protocol=6 port=1720
```

system session-info

Use this command to display session information.

Syntax

```
get system session-info expectation
get system session-info full-stat
get system session-info list
get system session-info statistics
get system session-info ttl
```

Variable	Description
expectation	Display expectation sessions.
full-stat	Display detailed information about the FortiGate session table including a session table and expect session table summary, firewall error statistics, and other information.

Variable	Description
list	Display detailed information about all current FortiGate sessions. For each session the command displays the protocol number, traffic shaping information, policy information, state information, statistics and other information.
statistics	Display the same information as the <code>full-stat</code> command except for the session table and expect session table summary.
ttd	Display the current setting of the <code>config system session-ttd</code> command including the overall session timeout as well as the timeouts for specific protocols.

Example output

```
get system session-info statistics
misc info: session_count=15 exp_count=0 clash=0 memory_tension_drop=0 ephemeral=1/32752
           removeable=14
delete=0, flush=0, dev_down=0/0
firewall error stat:
error1=00000000
error2=00000000
error3=00000000
error4=00000000
tt=00000000
cont=00000000
ids_recv=00000000
url_recv=00000000
av_recv=00000000
fqdn_count=00000001
tcp reset stat:
syncqf=0 acceptqf=0 no-listener=227 data=0 ses=0 ips=0
global: ses_limit=0 ses6_limit=0 rt_limit=0 rt6_limit=0
```

system source-ip

Use this command to list defined source-IPs.

Syntax

```
get system source-ip
```

Example output

```
# get sys source-ip status
The following services force their communication to use
a specific source IP address:

service=NTP source-ip=172.18.19.101
service=DNS source-ip=172.18.19.101
vdom=root service=RADIUS name=server-pc25 source-ip=10.1.100.101
```

```
vdom=root service=TACACS+ name=tac_plus_pc25 source-ip=10.1.100.101
vdom=root service=FSAE name=pc26 source-ip=172.18.19.101
vdom=V1 service=RADIUS name=pc25-Radius source-ip=172.16.200.101
vdom=V1 service=TACACS+ name=pc25-tacacs+ source-ip=172.16.200.101
vdom=V1 service=FSAE name=pc16 source-ip=172.16.200.101
```

system startup-error-log

Use this command to display information about system startup errors. This command only displays information if an error occurs when the FortiGate unit starts up.

Syntax

```
get system startup-error-log
```

system stp list

Use this command to display Spanning Tree Protocol status.

Syntax

```
get system stp list
```

system status

Use this command to display system status information including:

- FortiGate firmware version, build number and branch point
- Virus and attack definitions version
- FortiGate unit serial number and BIOS version
- Log hard disk availability
- Host name
- Operation mode
- Virtual domains status: current VDOM, max number of VDOMs, number of NAT and TP mode VDOMs and VDOM status
- Current HA status
- System time
- Revision of the WiFi chip in a FortiWiFi unit
- VMX license status

History

The following table shows all newly added, changed, or removed entries as of FortiOS 6.0.

Command	Description
N/A	Entering <code>get system status</code> also shows VMX license status.

Syntax

```
get system status
```

Example output

```
Version: Fortigate-620B v4.0,build0271,100330 (MR2)
Virus-DB: 11.00643(2010-03-31 17:49)
Extended DB: 11.00643(2010-03-31 17:50)
Extreme DB: 0.00000(2003-01-01 00:00)
IPS-DB: 2.00778(2010-03-31 12:55)
FortiClient application signature package: 1.167(2010-04-01 10:11)
Serial-Number: FG600B3908600705
BIOS version: 04000006
Log hard disk: Available
Hostname: 620_ha_1
Operation Mode: NAT
Current virtual domain: root
Max number of virtual domains: 10
Virtual domains status: 1 in NAT mode, 0 in TP mode
Virtual domain configuration: disable
FIPS-CC mode: disable
Current HA mode: a-p, master
Distribution: International
Branch point: 271
Release Version Information: MR2
System time: Thu Apr 1 15:27:29 2010
```

test

Use this command to display information about FortiGate applications and perform operations on FortiGate applications. You can specify an application name and a test level. Enter ? to display the list of applications. The test level performs various functions depending on the application but can include displaying memory usage, dropping connections and restarting the application.

The test levels are different for different applications. In some cases when you enter the command and include an application name but no test level (or an invalid test level) the command output includes a list of valid test levels.

Syntax

```
get test <application_name_str> <test_level_int>
```

Example output

```
get test http
Proxy Worker 0 - http
[0:H] HTTP Proxy Test Usage
[0:H]
[0:H] 2: Drop all connections
[0:H] 22: Drop max idle connections
[0:H] 222: Drop all idle connections
[0:H] 4: Display connection stat
[0:H] 44: Display info per connection
[0:H] 444: Display connections per state
[0:H] 4444: Display per-VDOM statistics
[0:H] 44444: Display information about idle connections
[0:H] 55: Display tcp info per connection
```

```
get test http 4
HTTP Common
Current Connections 0/8032
```

```
HTTP Stat
Bytes sent 0 (kb)
Bytes received 0 (kb)
Error Count (alloc) 0
Error Count (accept) 0
Error Count (bind) 0
Error Count (connect) 0
Error Count (socket) 0
Error Count (read) 0
Error Count (write) 0
Error Count (retry) 0
Error Count (poll) 0
Error Count (scan reset) 0
Error Count (urlfilter wait) 0
Last Error 0
Web responses clean 0
Web responses scan errors 0
Web responses detected 0
Web responses infected with worms 0
Web responses infected with viruses 0
Web responses infected with susp 0
Web responses file blocked 0
Web responses file exempt 0
Web responses bannedword detected 0
Web requests oversize pass 0
Web requests oversize block 0
URL requests exempt 0
URL requests blocked 0
URL requests passed 0
URL requests submit error 0
URL requests rating error 0
```

```
URL requests rating block 0
URL requests rating allow 0
URL requests infected with worms 0
Web requests detected 0
Web requests file blocked 0
Web requests file exempt 0
POST requests clean 0
POST requests scan errors 0
POST requests infected with viruses 0
POST requests infected with susp 0
POST requests file blocked 0
POST requests bannedword detected 0
POST requests oversize pass 0
POST requests oversize block 0
Web request backlog drop 0
Web response backlog drop 0

HTTP Accounting
setup_ok=0 setup_fail=0 conn_ok=0 conn_inp=0
urlfilter=0/0/0 uf_lookupf=0
scan=0 clt=0 srv=0
```

user adgrp

Use this command to list Directory Service user groups.

Syntax

```
get user adgrp [<dsgrrouponame>]
```

If you do not specify a group name, the command returns information for all Directory Service groups. For example:

```
== [ DOCTEST/Cert Publishers ]
name: DOCTEST/Cert Publishers server-name: DSserv1
== [ DOCTEST/Developers ]
name: DOCTEST/Developers server-name: DSserv1
== [ DOCTEST/Domain Admins ]
name: DOCTEST/Domain Admins server-name: DSserv1
== [ DOCTEST/Domain Computers ]
name: DOCTEST/Domain Computers server-name: DSserv1
== [ DOCTEST/Domain Controllers ]
name: DOCTEST/Domain Controllers server-name: DSserv1
== [ DOCTEST/Domain Guests ]
name: DOCTEST/Domain Guests server-name: DSserv1
== [ DOCTEST/Domain Users ]
name: DOCTEST/Domain Users server-name: DSserv1
== [ DOCTEST/Enterprise Admins ]
name: DOCTEST/Enterprise Admins server-name: DSserv1
== [ DOCTEST/Group Policy Creator Owners ]
name: DOCTEST/Group Policy Creator Owners server-name: DSserv1
```

```
== [ DOCTEST/Schema Admins ]  
name: DOCTEST/Schema Admins server-name: DSserv1
```

If you specify a Directory Service group name, the command returns information for only that group. For example:

```
name : DOCTEST/Developers  
server-name : ADServ1
```

The `server-name` is the name you assigned to the Directory Service server when you configured it in the `user fsae` command.

vpn certificate

Display detailed information about local and CA certificates installed on the FortiGate. This is a VDOM level command. The global command is `get certificate`.

Syntax

```
get vpn certificate {local | ca} details [certificate_name]
```

vpn ike gateway

Use this command to display information about FortiGate IPsec VPN IKE gateways.

Syntax

```
get vpn ike gateway [<gateway_name_str>]
```

vpn ipsec tunnel details

Use this command to display detailed information about IPsec tunnels.

Syntax

```
get vpn ipsec tunnel details
```

vpn ipsec tunnel name

Use this command to display information about a specified IPsec VPN tunnel.

Syntax

```
get vpn ipsec tunnel name <tunnel_name_str>
```

vpn ipsec tunnel summary

Use this command to display summary information about IPsec tunnels.

Syntax

```
get vpn ipsec tunnel summary
```

vpn ipsec stats crypto

Use this command to display information about the FortiGate hardware and software crypto configuration.

Syntax

```
get vpn ipsec stats crypto
```

Example output

```
get vpn ipsec stats crypto
```

IPsec crypto devices in use:

CP6 (encrypted/decrypted):

null:	0	0
des:	0	0
3des:	0	0
aes:	0	0

CP6 (generated/validated):

null:	0	0
md5:	0	0
sha1:	0	0
sha256:	0	0

SOFTWARE (encrypted/decrypted):

null:	0	0
des:	0	0
3des:	0	0
aes:	0	0

SOFTWARE (generated/validated):

null:	0	0
md5:	0	0
sha1:	0	0

```
sha256: 0      0
```

vpn ipsec stats tunnel

Use this command to view information about IPsec tunnels.

Syntax

```
get vpn ipsec stats tunnel
```

Example output

```
#get vpn ipsec stats tunnel
tunnels
total: 0
static/ddns: 0
dynamic: 0
manual: 0
errors: 0
selectors
total: 0
up: 0
```

vpn ssl monitor

Use this command to display information about logged in SSL VPN users and current SSL VPN sessions.

Syntax

```
get vpn ssl monitor
```

vpn status l2tp

Use this command to display information about L2TP tunnels.

Syntax

```
get vpn status l2tp
```

vpn status pptp

Use this command to display information about PPTP tunnels.

Syntax

```
get vpn status pptp
```

vpn status ssl

Use this command to display SSL VPN tunnels and to also verify that the FortiGate unit includes the CP6 or greater FortiASIC device that supports SSL acceleration.

Syntax

```
get vpn status ssl hw-acceleration-status
get vpn status ssl list
```

Variable	Description
hw-acceleration-status	Display whether or not the FortiGate unit contains a FortiASIC device that supports SSL acceleration.
list	Display information about all configured SSL VPN tunnels.

webfilter categories

List the FortiGuard Web Filtering categories.

Syntax

```
get webfilter categories
```

Example output (partial)

```
FG-5KD3914800284 # get webfilter categories
g01 Potentially Liable:
  1 Drug Abuse
  3 Hacking
  4 Illegal or Unethical
  5 Discrimination
  6 Explicit Violence
```

```
12 Extremist Groups
59 Proxy Avoidance
62 Plagiarism
83 Child Abuse
g02 Adult/Mature Content:
  2 Alternative Beliefs
  7 Abortion
  8 Other Adult Materials
  9 Advocacy Organizations
11 Gambling
13 Nudity and Risque
14 Pornography
15 Dating
16 Weapons (Sales)
57 Marijuana
63 Sex Education
64 Alcohol
65 Tobacco
66 Lingerie and Swimsuit
67 Sports Hunting and War Games
g04 Bandwidth Consuming:
19 Freeware and Software Downloads
24 File Sharing and Storage
25 Streaming Media and Download
72 Peer-to-peer File Sharing
75 Internet Radio and TV
76 Internet Telephony
g05 Security Risk:
26 Malicious Websites
61 Phishing
86 Spam URLs
88 Dynamic DNS
...
```

webfilter ftgd-statistics

Use this command to display FortiGuard Web Filtering rating cache and daemon statistics.

Syntax

```
get webfilter ftgd-statistics
```

Example output

```
get webfilter ftgd-statistics
```

```
Rating Statistics:
=====
DNS failures : 0
DNS lookups : 0
Data send failures : 0
```

```
Data read failures : 0
Wrong package type : 0
Hash table miss : 0
Unknown server : 0
Incorrect CRC : 0
Proxy request failures : 0
Request timeout : 0
Total requests : 0
Requests to FortiGuard servers : 0
Server errored responses : 0
Relayed rating : 0
Invalid profile : 0
```

```
Allowed : 0
Blocked : 0
Logged : 0
Errors : 0
```

```
Cache Statistics:
=====
Maximum memory : 0
Memory usage : 0
```

```
Nodes : 0
Leaves : 0
Prefix nodes : 0
Exact nodes : 0
```

```
Requests : 0
Misses : 0
Hits : 0
Prefix hits : 0
Exact hits : 0
```

```
No cache directives : 0
Add after prefix : 0
Invalid DB put : 0
DB updates : 0
```

```
Percent full : 0%
Branches : 0%
Leaves : 0%
Prefix nodes : 0%
Exact nodes : 0%
```

```
Miss rate : 0%
Hit rate : 0%
Prefix hits : 0%
Exact hits : 0%
```

webfilter status

Use this command to display FortiGate Web Filtering rating information.

Syntax

```
get webfilter status [<refresh-rate_int>]
```

wireless-controller client-info

Use this command to get information about WiFi clients.

Syntax

```
get wireless-controller client-info <vfid> <interface> <client_ip>
```

The output looks like this:

```
# get wireless-controller client-info 0 test-local 192.168.2.100
count=1
status: sta_mac=10:fe:ed:26:aa:e0 ap_sn=FP320C3X14006184, ap_name=FP320C3X14006184, chan=6,
       radio_type=11N
```

wireless-controller rf-analysis

Use this command to show information about RF conditions at the access point.

Syntax

```
get wireless-controller rf-analysis [<wtp_id>]
```

Example output

```
# get wireless-controller rf-analysis
<wtp-id> wtp id

FWF60C3G11004319 (global) # get wireless-controller rf-analysis
WTP: FWF60C-WIFI0 0-127.0.0.1:15246
channel rssi-total rf-score overlap-ap interfere-ap
1 418 1 24 26
2 109 5 0 34
3 85 7 1 34
4 64 9 0 35
5 101 6 1 35
6 307 1 8 11
7 82 7 0 16
8 69 8 1 15
9 42 10 0 15
10 53 10 0 14
11 182 1 5 6
```

```
12 43 10 0 6
13 20 10 0 5
14 8 10 0 5
Controller: FWF60C3G11004319-0
channel rssi_total
1 418
2 109
3 85
4 64
5 101
6 307
7 82
8 69
9 42
10 53
11 182
12 43
13 20
14 8
```

wireless-controller scan

Use this command to view the list of access points detected by wireless scanning.

Syntax

```
get wireless-controller scan
```

Example output

CMW	SSID	BSSID	CHAN	RATE	S:N	INT	CAPS	ACT	LIVE	AGE	WIRED
UNN		00:0e:8f:24:18:6d	64	54M	16:0	100	Es	N	62576	1668	?
UNN	ftiguest	00:15:55:23:d8:62	157	130M	6:0	100	EPs	N	98570	2554	?

wireless-controller spectral-info

Use this command to display wireless controller spectrum analysis.

Syntax

```
get wireless-controller spectral-info
```

wireless-controller status

Use this command to view the numbers of wtp sessions and clients.

Syntax

```
get wireless-controller status
```

Example output

```
# get wireless-controller status
Wireless Controller :
wtp-session-count: 1
client-count : 1/0
```

wireless-controller vap-status

Use this command to view information about your SSIDs.

Syntax

```
get wireless-controller vap-status
```

Example output

```
# get wireless-controller vap-status
WLAN: mesh.root
name : mesh.root
vdom : root
ssid : fortinet.mesh.root
status : up
mesh backhaul : yes
ip : 0.0.0.0
mac : 00:ff:0a:57:95:ca
station info : 0/0
WLAN: wifi
name : wifi
vdom : root
ssid : ft-mesh
status : up
mesh backhaul : yes
ip : 10.10.80.1
mac : 00:ff:45:e1:55:81
station info : 1/0
```


wireless-controller wlchanlistlic

Use this command to display a list of the channels allowed in your region, including the maximum permitted power for each channel

the channels permitted for each wireless type (802.11n, for example)

The list is in XML format.

Syntax

```
get wireless-controller wlchanlistlic
```

Sample output

```
country name: UNITED STATES2, country code:841, iso name:US
channels on 802.11A band without channel bonding:
channel= 36 maxRegTxPower= 23 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 40 maxRegTxPower= 23 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 44 maxRegTxPower= 23 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 48 maxRegTxPower= 23 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=149 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=153 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=157 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=161 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=165 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
```

```
channels on 802.11B band without channel bonding:
channel= 1 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 2 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 3 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 4 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 5 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 6 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 7 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 8 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 9 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 10 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 11 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
```

```
channels on 802.11G band without channel bonding:
channel= 1 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 2 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 3 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 4 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 5 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 6 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 7 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 8 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 9 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 10 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 11 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
```

```
channels on 802.11N 2.4GHz band without channel bonding:
channel= 1 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 2 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 3 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 4 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 5 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 6 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 7 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 8 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 9 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 10 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 11 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
```

```
channels on 802.11N 2.4GHz band with channel bonding plus:
channel= 1 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 2 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 3 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 4 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 5 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 6 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 7 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
```

```
channels on 802.11N 2.4GHz band with channel bonding minus:
channel= 5 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 6 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 7 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 8 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 9 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 10 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 11 maxRegTxPower= 27 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
```

```
channels on 802.11N 5GHz band without channel bonding:
channel= 36 maxRegTxPower= 23 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 40 maxRegTxPower= 23 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 44 maxRegTxPower= 23 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 48 maxRegTxPower= 23 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=149 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=153 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=157 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=161 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=165 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
```

```
channels on 802.11N 5GHz band with channel bonding all:
channel= 36 maxRegTxPower= 23 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 40 maxRegTxPower= 23 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 44 maxRegTxPower= 23 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel= 48 maxRegTxPower= 23 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=149 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=153 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=157 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
channel=161 maxRegTxPower= 30 maxTxPower= 63/2 minTxPower= 63/2
```

wireless-controller wtp-status

Syntax

```
get wireless-controller wtp-status
```

Example output

```
# get wireless-controller wtp-status
WTP: FAP22B3U11005354 0-192.168.3.110:5246
wtp-id : FAP22B3U11005354
region-code :
name :
mesh-uplink : mesh
mesh-downlink : disabled
mesh-hop-count : 1
parent-wtp-id :
software-version :
local-ipv4-addr : 0.0.0.0
board-mac : 00:00:00:00:00:00
join-time : Mon Apr 2 10:23:32 2012
connection-state : Disconnected
image-download-progress: 0
last-failure : 0 -- N/A
last-failure-param:
last-failure-time: N/A
Radio 1 : Monitor
Radio 2 : Ap
country-name : NA
country-code : N/A
client-count : 0
base-bssid : 00:00:00:00:00:00
max-vaps : 7
oper-chan : 0
Radio 3 : Not Exist
WTP: FWF60C-WIFI0 0-127.0.0.1:15246
wtp-id : FWF60C-WIFI0
region-code : ALL
name :
mesh-uplink : ethernet
mesh-downlink : enabled
mesh-hop-count : 0
parent-wtp-id :
software-version : FWF60C-v5.0-build041
local-ipv4-addr : 127.0.0.1
board-mac : 00:09:0f:fe:cc:56
join-time : Mon Apr 2 10:23:35 2012
connection-state : Connected
image-download-progress: 0
last-failure : 0 -- N/A
last-failure-param:
last-failure-time: N/A
Radio 1 : Ap
country-name : US
```

```
country-code : N/A
client-count : 1
base-bssid : 00:0e:8e:3b:63:99
max-vaps : 7
oper-chan : 1
Radio 2 : Not Exist
Radio 3 : Not Exist
```

tree

The `tree` command displays FortiOS `config` CLI commands in a tree structure called the configuration tree. Each configuration command forms a branch of the tree.

Syntax

```
tree [branch] [sub-branch]
```

You can enter the `tree` command from the top of the configuration tree the command displays the complete configuration tree. Commands are displayed in the order that they are processed when the FortiGate unit starts up. For example, the following output shows the first 10 lines of `tree` command output:

```
tree
-- -- system -- [vdom] --*name (12)
+- vcluster-id (0,0)
|- <global> -- language
|- gui-ipv6
|- gui-voip-profile
|- gui-lines-per-page (20,1000)
|- admintimeout (0,0)
|- admin-concurrent
|- admin-lockout-threshold (0,0)
|- admin-lockout-duration (1,2147483647)
|- refresh (0,2147483647)
|- interval (0,0)
|- failtime (0,0)
|- daily-restart
|- restart-time

...
```

You can include a branch name with the `tree` command to view the commands in that branch:

```
tree user
-- user -- [radius] --*name (36)
    |- server (64)
    |- secret
    |- secondary-server (64)
    |- secondary-secret
    ...
    |- [tacacs+] --*name (36)
        |- server (64)
        |- secondary-server (64)
        |- tertiary-server (64)
        ...
    |- [ldap] --*name (36)
        |- server (64)
        |- secondary-server (64)
        |- tertiary-server (64)
        |- port (1,65535)
        ...
```

You can include a branch and sub branch name with the `tree` command to view the commands in that sub branch:

```

tree user local
-- [local] --*name (36)
|- status
|- type
|- passwd
|- ldap-server (36)
|- radius-server (36)
+- tacacs+-server (36)

...

```

If you enter the `tree` command from inside the configuration `tree` the command displays the tree for the current command:

```

config user ldap
tree
-- [ldap] --*name (36)
|- server (64)
|- cnid (21)
|- dn (512)
|- port (1,65535)
|- type

...

```

The `tree` command output includes information about field limits. These apply in both the CLI and the web-based manager. For a numeric field, the two numbers in parentheses show the lower and upper limits. For example (0,32) indicates that values from 0 to 32 inclusive are accepted. For string values, the number in parentheses is one more than the maximum number of characters permitted.

In the following example, the FQDN can contain up to 255 characters.

```

config firewall address
tree
-- [address] --*name (64)
    |- subnet
    |- type
    |- start-ip
    |- end-ip
    |- fqdn (256)
    |- country (3)
    |- cache-ttl (0,86400)
    |- wildcard
    |- comment
    |- visibility
    |- associated-interface (36)
    |- color (0,32)
+- [tags] --*name (64)

```



FORTINET®



Copyright© 2022 Fortinet, Inc. All rights reserved. Fortinet®, FortiGate®, FortiCare® and FortiGuard®, and certain other marks are registered trademarks of Fortinet, Inc., in the U.S. and other jurisdictions, and other Fortinet names herein may also be registered and/or common law trademarks of Fortinet. All other product or company names may be trademarks of their respective owners. Performance and other metrics contained herein were attained in internal lab tests under ideal conditions, and actual performance and other results may vary. Network variables, different network environments and other conditions may affect performance results. Nothing herein represents any binding commitment by Fortinet, and Fortinet disclaims all warranties, whether express or implied, except to the extent Fortinet enters a binding written contract, signed by Fortinet's General Counsel, with a purchaser that expressly warrants that the identified product will perform according to certain expressly-identified performance metrics and, in such event, only the specific performance metrics expressly identified in such binding written contract shall be binding on Fortinet. For absolute clarity, any such warranty will be limited to performance in the same ideal conditions as in Fortinet's internal lab tests. In no event does Fortinet make any commitment related to future deliverables, features or development, and circumstances may change such that any forward-looking statements herein are not accurate. Fortinet disclaims in full any covenants, representations, and guarantees pursuant hereto, whether express or implied. Fortinet reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice, and the most current version of the publication shall be applicable.